This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ Make non-commercial use of the files We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ Maintain attribution The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ Keep it legal Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com/](http://books.google.com/)
THE GLOBE EDITION.

MORTE DARTHUR.

MORTE DARThUR

Sir Thomas Malory's Book
of King Arthur and of his Noble Knights
of the Round Table

The original edition of Caxton revised for modern use,

WITH AN INTRODUCTION,

BY

SIR EDWARD STRACHEY, BART.

SECOND EDITION.

London:
MACMILLAN AND CO.
1868
Oxford:

By T. Combe, M.A., E. B. Gardner, E. P. Hall, and H. Latham, M.A.

Printers to the University.
CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

§ 1. THE ORIGIN AND MATTER OF THE BOOK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

§ 2. THE TEXT AND ITS SEVERAL EDITIONS.


§ 3. AN ESSAY ON CHIVALRY.


THE BOOK OF KING ARTHUR.

PREFACE OF WILLIAM CAXTON. | 1 |

THE TABLE OR RUBRYSSHE OF THE CONTENTS OF CHAPTERS. | 3 |

THE BOOK OF KING ARTHUR, BOOKS I TO XXI. | 25 |

NOTES | 488 |

GLOSSARY | 493 |
INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. The Origin and Matter of the Book.

We owe this our English Epic of Morte Arthur to Sir Thomas Malory, and to William Caxton the first English printer. Caxton’s Preface shows (what indeed would have been certain from his appeal to the ‘Knights of England’ at the end of ‘The Order of Chivalry’) that however strongly he, ‘William Caxton, simple person,’ may have been urged to undertake the work by ‘divers gentlemen of this realm of England,’ he was not less moved by his own love and reverence for the noble acts of chivalry, and his deep sense of his duty and responsibility in printing what he believed would be for the instruction and profit of his readers, ‘of whatsoever estate or degree.’ But to Sir Thomas Malory he gives all the honour of having provided him with the copy which he printed. I retain the more usual spelling of Sir Thomas Malory’s name, though it is also written Malorye and Maleore. The last indeed is the form in the words with which he himself concludes his work; but as Caxton printed, and therefore knew, this no less than the other forms, and as even so late as the time of Marvell and Pym men of education did not keep to one way of writing their own names, we cannot infer that one is more correct than the others, though probably we may that Malory most nearly represents the pronunciation to us. Malory was an old Yorkshire name in Leland’s time¹, and is mentioned in the next century in Burton’s ‘Description of Leicestershire’; but we have nothing but the name to connect Sir Thomas Malory with these families. Leland indeed, according to the ‘Biographia Britannica,’ says he was a Welchman. From his own words we learn that he was a knight, and from his adding that he was ‘a servant of Jesu both day and night,’ as well as from the general tone of the book, it has been inferred that he was a priest. And he tells us that he ended his book in the ninth year of Edward the Fourth, or about fifteen years before Caxton

¹ There be 2 Lordshipps lyenge not very far from Ripon. . . . Malory hath Hutton Coniers. Thes Lands cam to their Aunciters by two Dowghtars, Heirs Generall of that Coniers. Malory hath another Place callyd Higbe Studly, a little from Fontaines.’ Leland’s Itinerary, viii. 2. p. 55. Hearne, 1712.


³ Biographia Britannica, art. ‘Caxton,’ but no reference is given by which to verify the quotation.
finished printing it. It has been usual to assume that, because Caxton says that Sir Thomas Malory took his work ‘out of certain books of French and reduced it into English,’ he was a mere compiler and translator. But the book itself shows that he was its author—its ‘maker,’ as he would have called it. Notwithstanding his occasionally inartificial manner of connecting the materials drawn from the old romances—‘in Welch many, and also in French, and some in English’—there is an epic unity and harmony, and a beginning, middle, and end, which, if they have come by chance and not of design, have come by that chance which only befalls an Homeric or a Shakespeare-like man. If we compare the first part of Malory’s work with the old prose romance¹ which supplied the materials for it, we see at once how he has converted that prose into poetry, giving life and beauty to the coarse clods of earth, and transmuting by his art the legends which he yet faithfully preserves. For the long and repulsive narrative of Merlin’s origin he substitutes a slight allusion to it; without disguising what he probably believed to be at least an half historical record of Arthur’s birth, he gives a grace and dignity to the story by the charms of his mother’s character, the finer touches of which are wanting in the original: and so through the whole of this part of the story. The plan of the book is properly epic. While the glory of Arthur as the head of the kingdoms no less than of the chivalry of Christendom is only in its early dawn, Merlin warns him that the seeds of death will spring up in all this fair promise through the sin of himself and of his queen. Still the fame and the honour of the king and his knights of the Round Table open continually into new and brighter forms, which seem above the reach of any adverse fate, till the coming of the Sangreal, into the quest of which all the knights enter with that self-reliance which had become them so well in the field of worldly chivalry, but which would be of no avail now. They are now to be tried by other tests than those by which they had been proved as ‘earthly knights and lovers,’ tests which even Launcelot, Ector de Maris, Gawaine, and the other chiefest of the fellowship could not stand. The quest is achieved by the holy knights alone: two depart from this life to a higher, while Sir Bors, not quite spotless, yet forgiven and sanctified, the link between the earthly and the spiritual worlds, returns to aid in restoring the glory of the feasts and tournaments at Camelot and Westminster. But the curse is at work: the severance between good and evil which had been declared through the Sangreal cannot be closed again; and the tragic end comes on, in spite of the efforts—touching from their very weakness—of Arthur and Launcelot to avert the woe, the one by vainly trying to resist temptation, the other by refusing to believe evil of his dearest friend. The black clouds open for a moment as the sun goes down; and we see Arthur in the barge which bears him to the Holy

¹ Merlin, or the Early History of King Arthur, edited by Henry B. Wheatley, for the Early English Text Society, 1865-8. This is a translation, contemporary with Malory’s work, from the French which he doubtless used.
Isle; Guenever, the nun of Almesbury, living in fasting, prayers, and alms-deeds; and Launcelot with his fellowship, once knights but now hermit-priests, ‘doing bodily all manner of service.’

Nor are the marks of harmony and unity less plain in the several characters than in the events of the story. Arthur is a true knight, sharing the characteristics of his nobler knights, yet he differs from them all in showing also that he is, and feels himself to be, a king; as when—with an imperiousness which reminds us of Froissart’s story of Edward III refusing to listen to Sir Walter Manny’s remonstrances on behalf of the burgesses of Calais—he tells Sir Launcelot that he ‘takes no force whom he grieves,’ or insists on his entering the lists against a tired knight whom he is not willing to see victorious over the whole field; or as when he sadly regrets that he cannot do battle for his wife, though he believes her innocent, but must be a rightful judge according to the laws. There are many others of the Round Table who are ‘very perfect gentle knights,’ yet we feel that Launcelot stands distinct among them all in the pre-eminence of his knightliness, notwithstanding his one great sin. Thus, to take one of many instances, who but Launcelot would have borne the taunts and the violence of Gawaine with his humble patience and ever-renewed efforts for a reconciliation, when he was leaving the realm, and when he was besieged in Joyous Gard. Modern critics of great name agree in censuring Sir Thomas Malory for departing from the old authorities who represented Gawaine as the very counterpart of Launcelot in knightly character: but I rather see a proof of Malory’s art in giving us a new Gawaine with a strongly individual character of his own. Gawaine’s regard for his mother’s honour, his passion for Ettard, and his affection for his brothers, are savage impulses driving him to unknighthly and unworthy deeds, yet he is far from being represented as a mere villain. If Malory depicts him thirsting to revenge upon Launcelot the unintentional killing of Gaheris and Gareth, he depicts also his long previous affection for Launcelot and his opposition to the hostility of his other brother, Mordred, against him; his devotion to his uncle Arthur; his hearty repentance towards Launcelot at the last; and his entreaty that he would ‘see his tomb, and pray some prayer more or less for his soul.’ Nor must we forget that it was by the prayer of those ladies for whom Gawaine had ‘done battle in a rightwise quarrel,’ that his ghost was permitted to give Arthur a last warning. Distinct again from the character of this fierce knight is that of the Saracen Palamides, whose unquestionable courage and skill in deeds of chivalry also want—though in another way than Gawaine’s—the gentleness, the meekness, and the delicate sense of honour of the Christian knight. Sir Dinadan again, who can give and take hard knocks if need be, though he has no great bodily strength, and who is always bantering the good knights who know and esteem him with his humorous protests against love and arms, is a distinctly drawn character. So is Merlin; so are many others whose names I might recite. The dignity of queen Guenever towards her husband and her court is not less marked than her guilty passion
for Launcelot, and the unreasoning jealousy it excites in her. The wife-like simplicity of Igraine, the self-surrender beyond all limit, though from different impulses, of the two Elaines, the pertness of the damsel Linet, and the piety and self-sacrifice of Sir Percivale's sister, will occur to the reader among the distinctive characteristics of the different ladies and damsels who live and move, each in her own proper form, in the story. Sir Thomas Malory, as we know, found many of these men and women already existing in the old romances as he represents them to us; but we may believe that those earlier books were to him something of what the pages of Plutarch and Holinshed were to Shakspeare.

In the Introduction to Southey's edition of Morte Arthur the student will find an account of the principal early prose romances in which sources of Sir Thomas Malory's book have been found, and the English translation of one of these has been mentioned above; while the volumes of Ellis, Sir Walter Scott's 'Sir Tristrem,' and the publications of the Early English Text and the Camden Societies, and of Mr. Furnivall, supply specimens of the metrical romances of the like kind. But as they are only attractive to the antiquarian student, who requires the originals and not abstracts, I shall say no more of them here.

Nor shall I attempt to illustrate Malory's book by the ancient historical or legendary accounts of the British King Arthur. The most recent critics are disposed to prefer Gibbon's belief to Milton's scepticism as to the actual existence of Arthur: but of the history and the geography of the book before us we can only say that they are something

'Apart from place, withholding time,
But flattering the golden prime'

of the great hero of English romance. We cannot bring within any limits of history the events which here succeed each other, when the Lords and Commons of England, after the death of King Uther at St. Alban's, assembled at the greatest church of London, guided by the joint policy of the magician Merlin and the Christian bishop of Canterbury, and elected Arthur to the throne; when Arthur made Carlion, or Camelot, or both, his head-quarters in a war against Cornwall, Wales, and the North, in which he was victorious by help of the king of France; when he met the demand for tribute by the Roman emperor Lucius with a counter-claim to the empire for himself as the real representative of Constantine, held a parliament at York to make the necessary arrangements, crossed the sea from Sandwich to Barflete in Flanders, met the united forces of the Romans and Saracens in Burgundy, slew the emperor in a great battle, together with his allies, the sown of Syria, the king of Egypt, and the king of Ethiopia, sent their bodies to the Senate and Podesta of Rome as the only tribute he would pay, and then followed over the mountains through Lombardy and Tuscany to Rome, where he was crowned emperor by the Pope, 'sojourning there a time, established all his lands from Rome unto France, and gave lands and realms unto his servants and knights,' and so returned home to England, where he
INTRODUCTION.

seems thenceforth to have devoted himself wholly to his duties as the head of Christian knighthood.

There is indeed one point of the legendary history on which the reader may wish me to give some explanation:—What was the Sangreal? Graal or greal (derived from crater) in the Romance language signifies a drinking-vessel, a dish, or a tureen: and according to the romances of Le S. Graal, Lancelot du Lac, Perceforest, and Morte Arthur, the Sangreal, or Holy Graal, was the dish which held the paschal lamb of the Last Supper. Joseph of Arimathea having gone into the house where the Supper had been eaten, took away the dish, and in it received the blood from the wounds of Jesus; and this dish, 'with part of the blood of our Lord,' he brought with him into England, and with it converted many heathens; and it was kept in a tower expressly built for it at Corbenicy. The romance of Merlin says that 'this vessel was brought to this said knight [Joseph of Arimathea] by our Lord Jesus Christ while he was in prison xl. winter, him to comfort,' but does not mention its earlier history. And notwithstanding the authority of Perceforest that the Sangreal was preserved in England, it may still be seen in the cathedral of Genoa, there called Sacro Catino, with the same tradition as to its original uses as is given above. It was brought from Cæsarea in 1201, and is an hexagonal dish, of two palms width, long supposed to be of real emerald, which it resembles in colour and brilliancy.

The geography of Arthur's Roman war is very coherent; but that of the rest of the book it is often impossible to harmonise. The scene opens within a night's ride of the castle of Tintagil, the ruins of which may still be seen in Cornwall. Thence we pass to St. Alban's, to London, and to Carlion. This last is, no doubt, Caerleon-upon-Usk; but it seems through this, as in other romances, to be interchangeable in the author's mind with Carlisle, or (as written in its Anglo-Norman form) Cardoile, which latter in the History of Merlin is said to be in Wales, while elsewhere Wales and Cumberland are confounded in like manner. So of Camelot, where Arthurchiefly held his court, Caxton in his Preface speaks as though it were in Wales, probably meaning Caerleon, where the Roman amphitheatre is still called Arthur's Round Table. Malory himself, though at page 49 he seems to connect Camelot with Avelion, or Glastonbury, yet farther on, page 63, says that Camelot is Winchester, where, too, there is a Round Table, mentioned by Caxton, and still to be seen,—an oaken board with the knights' names on it. And yet at the time these authorities wrote Camelot itself existed in Somersetshire with its proper name, and with all the remains of an important town and fortress, and, doubtless, the traditions of Arthur which Leland found there, and which in great part at least remain to this day. Leland calls it Camallate or Camalat, 'sometime a famous town or castle, upon a very torre or hill, wonderfully

1 Roquefort, Glossaire de Langue Romane, art. 'Graal': where are also given the original passages from the first three romances named in the text.
enstrengthened of nature. Four ditches and as many walls surrounded a central space of about thirty acres where foundations and remains of walls might be seen, and whence Roman pavements, urns, coins, and other relics have been found up to the present time. I find it called the Castle of Camelbek in maps of the dates of 1575 and 1610, and in that of the 1727 edition of Camden's Magna Britannica, the text of which says 'the inhabitants call it King Arthur's Palace.' But soon after that date a learned antiquarian writes that the name had been superseded by that of Cadbury. Castle, which trilingual appellation may seem to indicate the Roman, British, and Saxon possessors by whom it was probably held in succession. The neighbouring villages which, according to Leland, bore 'the name of Camalat with an addition, as Queen-Camel,' still exist as Queen-Camel, or East Camel, and West Camel, and near by runs the river Camel, crossed by Arthur's Bridge. Arthur's Well still springs from the hill-side, and if Arthur's Hunting Causeway in the field below, Arthur's Round Table and Arthur's Palace within the camp, cannot still, as of old, be pointed out to the visitor, the peasant girl will still tell him that within that charmed circle they who look may see through golden gates a king sitting in the midst of his court. Drayton describes the river Ivel in Somersetshire as

'The nearest neighbouring flood to Arthur's ancient seat, Which made the Britaines name thro' all the world so great. Like Camelot what place was ever yet renown'd? Where, as at Caerleon, oft he kept the Table Round, Most famous for the sports at Pentecost so long, From whence all knightly deeds and brave achievements sprong.'

Glastonbury—founded by Joseph of Arimathea, and his burial-place, though his body was vainly sought in Edward III's reign—still claims to possess the coffin of Arthur. It is said that Henry II found the bodies of Arthur and Guenever there, and that Guenever had yellow hair. Their skulls were afterwards taken for relics by Edward Longshanks and Eleanor.

Almesbury, where Guenever died a nun, is a town in Wiltshire, seven and a half miles from Salisbury, where may still be seen the ruins of its celebrated abbey. The name was originally Ambrosebury, then Ambresbury, and lastly Amesbury, as it is now spelt.

Joyous Gard, Launcelot's favourite castle, is sometimes identified with Berwick. Malory tells us that 'some men say it was Anwick, and some men say it was Bamborow.' Bamborow, or Bamborough, is in Northumberland, sixteen miles south-east of Berwick. The castle, founded in the middle of the sixth century, which is the supposed time of Arthur's reign, stands on a high rock projecting into the North Sea. It now contains a granary, hospital, and other endowments made for the poor in 1715 by Lord Crewe, bishop of Durham. Did he think of his

1 Itinerary, ii. pp. 38, 39; Hearne, 1711.
2 Somersetshire Illustrated, by John Strachey, MS. 1736. 3 Polyolbion, 3rd Song.
predecessor Launcelot, and his doles of 'flesh, fish, wine and ale, and twelve pence

to any man and woman, come who would?'

The names of some other places in this book are given in the Glossary.

Lastly, the perplexed question of the morality of the book demands our notice.

If it does not deserve the unqualified denunciation of the learned Ascham, it

cannot be denied that Morte Arthur exhibits a picture of a society far lower

than our own in morals, and depicts it with far less repugnance to its evil

elements, on the part either of the author or his personages, than any good man

would now feel. Still—with the exception of stories like those of the birth of

Arthur and Galahad, which show not only another state of manners from our own,

but also a really different standard of morals from any which we should now hold

up—the writer does for the most part endeavour, though often in but an imperfect and

confused manner, to distinguish between vice and virtue, and honestly to reprobate

the former; and thus shows that his object is to recognise and support the nobler

elements of the social state in which he lived, and to carry them towards new

triumphs over the evil. And even where, as in the story of Tristram, there is

palliation rather than reprobation of what Sir Walter Scott justly calls 'the extreme

ingratitude and profligacy of the hero,' still the fact that such palliation, by repre-

senting King Mark as the most worthless of men, was thought necessary in the

later, though not in the earlier, romance on the same subject, shows an upward

progress in morals; while a real effort to distinguish virtue from vice is to be seen

in the story of Launcelot, with his sincere though weak struggles against tempta-

tion, and his final penitence under the punishment of the woes which his guilt has

brought on all dear to him as well as to himself. Or if we look at the picture

which Chaucer's works give us of the co-existence in one mind—and that perhaps

the noblest of its age—of the most virtuous Christian refinement and the most

brutish animal coarseness, and then see how in the pages of Malory, inferior as we

must hold him to be to Chaucer, the brutish vice has dwindled to half its former

size, and is far more clearly seen to be vice, while the virtue, if not more elevated

in itself, is more avowedly triumphant over the evil, we find the same upward

progress. And I cannot doubt that it was helped on by this book, and that

notwithstanding Ascham's condemnation of Morte Arthur, Caxton was right in

believing that he was serving God and his countrymen by printing it; and

that he justly estimated its probable effect when he says, 'Herein may be seen noble

chivalry, courtesy, humanity, friendliness, hardness, love, friendship, cowardice,

murder, hate, virtue, sin. Do after the good, and leave the evil, and it shall bring

you to good fame and renommé. . . . All is written for our doctrine, and for to

beware that we fall not to vice nor sin, but to exercise and follow virtue, by which

we may come and attain to good fame and renommé in this life, and after this short

and transitory life to come unto everlasting bliss in heaven; the which He grant

us that reigneth in heaven, the blessed Trinity. Amen.'
§ 2. THE TEXT, AND ITS SEVERAL EDITIONS.

The first edition of Le Morte Darthur was printed by Caxton at Westminster in 1485, as he tells us in the colophon. Two copies only are known: they are folio, black-letter, with wide margin, and among the finest specimens of Caxton's printing. One is in the library of the Earl of Jersey at Osterley; and the other in that of Earl Spencer at Althorp. The Osterley copy, which has the autograph 'Oxford' on the first leaf, was sold with the Harleian Library to Osborne the bookseller, and apparently bought of him for £5 5s. by Bryan Fairfax, who sold his library to Mr. Child, maternal ancestor of the Earl of Jersey. It is perfect, except that it has no title-page, though, as the Proheme or Preface begins at the top of the recto of signature ij (not 'a ij' as Dibdin says), I infer that a title did exist on the leaf j, thus shown to be wanting. The Althorp copy, which was bought at Mr. Lloyd's sale in 1816 for £370, had eleven leaves deficient; but these were supplied by Mr. Whittaker in fac-simile from the Osterley copy with remarkable skill, though on collation with the original I have found some oversight.

The two next editions of Morte Arthur were printed by Wynkyn de Worde, the chief workman and successor of Caxton, in 1498 and 1529. Only one copy of each is known. That of 1498 is in the Althorp Library: it wants the Title and part of the Table of Contents, but contains the Preface, which is a reprint of that of Caxton, though it here follows instead of preceding the Table of Contents. This edition, which has numerous woodcuts, is not an exact reprint of Caxton's; there are differences of spelling and occasionally of a word; and the passage in the last chapter but one, beginning 'Oh ye mighty and pompous lords,' and ending with 'turn again to my matter,' which is not in Caxton's edition, appears here, as in all later editions. The edition of 1529 is in the British Museum, and wants the Title, Preface, and part of the Table of Contents.

In 1557 the book was reprinted by William Copland, with the title of 'The story of the most noble and worthy kynge Arthur, the whiche was one of the worthyes chrysten, and also of his noble and valiuite knyghtes of the rounde

2 Dibdin's Supplement to the Bibliotheca Spenceriana, vol. ii. p. 213; or Ædes Althorpiane, vol. vi. p. 213. I would here express my thanks to Earl Spencer for sending to the British Museum for my use his Caxton, and his unique copy of Wynkyn de Worde's first edition of Morte Arthur, as also for favouring me with details of information respecting the former; and to the Earl of Jersey for permitting me to examine his Caxton at Osterley.
3 As the passage is worth preserving I have given it at the end of the volume, Note A, p. 488.
INTRODUCTION.

Table. Newly imprinted and corrected mccccclvij. ¶ Imprinted at London by Wyllyam Copland.' And on the title-page, above the last line, is a woodcut of St. George and the Dragon, of which that on the title-page of Southey's edition is a bad copy. A copy of this edition is in the British Museum, with a note that this is the only one with a title which the annotator has seen.

There is a folio edition by Thomas East, without date, in the British Museum; and there is said to be a quarto edition, also without date.

The next, and last black-letter, edition is that of 1634, which has been reprinted by Mr. Wright, and which contains the woodcut of the Round Table with Arthur in the middle and his knights around, a copy of which is familiar to many of us in one of the small editions of 1816. From the fact of an omission in this edition which exactly corresponds with a complete leaf in East's folio, Mr. Wright concludes that the one was printed from the other. Each succeeding edition departs more than the previous one from the original of Caxton; but if we compare this of 1634 with Caxton's, we find the variations almost infinite. Besides re-modelling the preface, dividing the book into three parts, and modernising the spelling and many of the words, there are a number of more or less considerable variations and additions, of which Mr. Wright has given some of the more important in his notes, but which I estimate at above twenty thousand in the whole; and which have plainly arisen in the minor instances from the printer reading a sentence and then printing it from recollection, without farther reference to his 'copy,' but in the others from a desire to improve the original simplicity by what the editor calls 'a more eloquent and ornated style and phrase.'

No new edition seems to have been published till 1816, when two independent editions appeared, one in two, and the other in three 4mo. volumes. Both are modernised for popular use, and are probably the volumes through which most of us made our first acquaintance with King Arthur and his knights; but neither has any merit as to its editing.

In 1817 Messrs. Longmans & Co. published an edition in two volumes quarto, with an introduction and notes by Southey, who says, 'The present edition is a reprint with scrupulous exactness from the first edition by Caxton, in Earl Spencer's library.' As it appears from a note² that he had nothing to do with the superintendence of the press, which was undertaken by Mr. Upcott, he was probably unaware that eleven leaves were, as I have mentioned above, then wanting in the copy from which this reprint was made. These had not then been restored in fac-simile; for Earl Spencer's copy contains a note, signed by Messrs. Longmans and dated 1816, which gives a list of the pages then wanting; and, in fact, the substitutes for them which actually appear in Southey's edition differ widely from the restored, or the original, text. Thus in chapter xii. of the last book, besides the interpolation of the long passage 'O ye myghty and

¹ Vol. i. p. xxviii. ² Ibid. p. lviii.
pompous lorde,' &c.; which is not in Caxton, there are in the first eleven lines thirty-five variations of spelling and punctuation, besides the introduction of the words 'but continually mourned un—' and 'needfully as nature required,' which are not in Caxton, and the change of Caxton's 'on the tombe of kyng Arthur & quene Guenever' into 'on kynge Arthur's & quene Gwenever's tombe.' And thus throughout the pages in question—seventeen in number—the spelling constantly, and words and even sentences occasionally, differ from the real text of Caxton.

When at page 113 of volume i. the editor introduces the words 'certayne cause' to complete the sense, he is careful to call attention, in a foot-note, to the fact that these words are not in the original, but taken from 'the second edition,' by which I presume he means that of 1498. But when he subsequently supplies seventeen pages which were also not in his original, he gives no hint of the fact; and his reticence has been so successful that for fifty years the interpolations have passed as genuine among learned critics, who have quoted from them passages wholly spurious as Caxton's genuine text. It was only last year that, in collating Earl Spencer's copy with the edition of Southey, I discovered that these passages—to which my attention was directed by Messrs. Longmans' note above mentioned—did not correspond with Caxton's text, as represented by Whittaker's restorations: and on afterwards collating them with the Osterley text itself I found the like result. It remained to trace them to their real sources. This has not been so easy as might be supposed, for though it was evident that Mr. Upcott must have had recourse to one or other of the existing editions, the interpolated passages in fact agree exactly with none of them. But a careful collation of the last four chapters of the book (which include more than half the interpolations, and may be taken as a fair specimen of the whole) with the old texts, leaves no doubt that, with the exception of the first thirty-six lines of chapter x, they were taken, like the two words mentioned above, from the first edition of Wynkyn de Worde, but with the spelling occasionally altered, and here and there a small word put in, left out, or changed. These alterations throw an ingenious disguise over the whole; but if we penetrate through this we find that in these four chapters there are only thirteen words differing from those in Wynkyn de Worde's first edition, and these unimportant; while in his second edition, and in those of Copland, and East, the variations from Mr. Upcott's text of the same chapters are respectively fifty-seven, fifty-six, and fifty in number, and many of them important in kind: and if we go to the edition of 1634 we find the differences still greater, except as to those thirty-six lines, which are supplied from this edition, as they were wanting in the other copy. But the colophon, or concluding paragraph of the book, Mr. Upcott could not take from any of

---

1 The pages are vol. i. p. 167, line 18, to p. 169, line 17; p. 275, third line from bottom, to p. 279, line 5 from bottom; vol. ii. p. 202, line 13, to p. 204, line 14; p. 446, line 5, to end of 455.

2 An account of these interpolations was given by me in the Athenæum of Sept. 7 and Dec. 10, 1867, and Feb. 10, 1868.
the editions which followed that of Caxton; for though Wynkyn de Worde might, and in fact did, supply at least one or two of the first words, the latter part of his colophon relates to his own edition, and departs widely from that of Caxton, while those in the later editions are still more unlike; and yet Mr. Upcott’s colophon is a tolerable, though not an exact, representation of that of Caxton. But his other materials can be ascertained beyond a doubt. They are, the colophon as given by Ames, and repeated by Dibdin in a modernised and otherwise inexact form, and that which first appeared in the Catalogue of the Harleian Library, and was thence copied in the article on Caxton in the Biographia Britannica, and also in Herbert’s Additions to Ames. The colophons of Ames and of the Harleian Catalogue have important variations from each other and from that of Caxton; and as Mr. Upcott adopts some portions of each which are not found either in the other, or in Caxton, we see the manner in which the paragraph in question was compounded. Each stone of the ingeniously fitted mosaic may be referred to the place from which it was taken. We cannot indeed choose positively between Ames and Dibdin, or among the Harleian Catalogue, the Biographia, and Herbert; but as the two paragraphs which are required in addition to that of Wytken de Worde are both found in Herbert’s Ames, it seems most probable that Mr. Upcott had recourse to that work, though another combination would have served the purpose equally well. That the interpolated passages are not taken from the Osterley Caxton itself, even in the roughest and most careless manner, is quite evident.

Lastly, in 1858 Mr. Wright published an edition reprinted from that of 1634, with an introduction and notes of considerable interest.

The Early English Text Society promise us a reprint of the original Caxton which shall be free from the faults of that of Southey, which meanwhile is, except in the interpolated passages, a very faithful representation of that original for the purposes of the antiquarian and philologist; and whatever like interest there may be in the edition of 1634 is available in the reprint of Mr. Wright. But neither is readable with pleasure by any but the student, and the two modernised editions are out of print. What is wanted, therefore, is an edition for ordinary readers, and especially for boys, from whom the chief demand for this book will always come; and such an edition the present professes to be. It is a reprint of the original Caxton with the spelling modernised, and those few words which are unintelligibly obsolete replaced by others which, though not necessarily unknown to Caxton, are still in use, yet with all old forms retained which do not interfere with this requirement of being readable. For when, as indeed is oftenest the case, the context makes even an obsolete phrase probably, if not precisely, known,
I have left it in the text, and given its meaning in the Glossary, in which I have chiefly followed Roquefort, Halliwell, and Wright. In the Glossary I have also added a few geographical notes for those readers who may care for them. And for the like reason—of making the book readable—such phrases or passages as are not in accordance with modern manners have been also omitted or replaced by others which either actually occur or might have occurred in Caxton's text elsewhere. I say manners, not morals, because I do not profess to have remedied the moral defects of the book which I have already spoken of. Mr. Tennyson has shown us how we may deal best with this matter for modern uses, in so far as Sir Thomas Malory has himself failed to treat it rightly; and I do not believe that when we have excluded what is offensive to modern manners there will be found anything practically injurious to the morals of English boys, for whom I have chiefly undertaken this work, while there is much of moral worth which I know not where they can learn so well as from the ideals of magnanimity, courage, courtesy, reverence for women, gentleness, self-sacrifice, chastity, and other manly virtues, exhibited in these pages.

The omissions, not many, were essential to the publication of the book at all for popular reading; but if any one blames the other departures from the exact form of the original, I would ask him to judge from the specimens of the old type and spelling which I have given at the end of each book, and of the volume, whether a literal and verbal reproduction of the whole would not be simply unreadable except by students of old English. And if some departure from the original was necessary, it was reasonable to carry it so far as, though no farther than, my purpose required. And, subject to these conditions, the present volume is in fact a more accurate reproduction of Caxton's text than any other except that of Southey. I have, indeed, made use of Southey's text for this edition, having satisfied myself by collation with the Althorp and Osterley Caxtons that it is an accurate reprint excepting as to the passages above mentioned; and these have been taken by me, in like manner, from the only existing original.

There is no title-page, as I have already mentioned, to the Osterley or the Althorp Caxton, that which is given by several bibliographers being only an extract, not very critically selected, from Caxton's preface. But it is evident from Caxton's colophon that the real title or name of the book was Le Morre Darthur, and he explains that it was so 'entitled' notwithstanding it treated of Arthur's birth, life, and acts as well as death, and also of the adventures of his knights of the Round Table. And the concluding words of Malory, 'Here is the end of the death of Arthur,' taken with their context, point to the same title. It was indeed before Malory's time, and has been ever since, the traditional title of this story. We have Mort Artus and Morte Arthure in the earlier times; Ascham, in Henry VIII's reign, calls this book La Morte d'Arthure; Tyrwhitt, Mort d'Arthur; and Walter Scott and Southey, Morte Arthur, which last probably many of us are familiar with as the old name which we heard from our own fathers.
§ 3. AN ESSAY ON CHIVALRY.

Sr. Augustine replied to the enquiry, What is time? by saying, 'I know when you do not ask me;' and a like answer suggests itself to us if we try to find an adequate reply to the question, What is Chivalry? For chivalry is one of those words, like love, duty, patriotism, loyalty, which make us feel their meaning, and the reality of what they mean, though their ideal and comprehensive character hinders us from readily putting it into the forms of a definition. When the alchemist in the Eastern tale compounds, with all the resources of his art, the universal solvent before the expectant eyes of his pupil, the pupil, seeing the mysterious fluid lie quietly in the crucible, exclaims, with not unreasonable doubt, 'O Sage, be not deceived: how can that which dissolves all things be itself contained in a ladle?' And how shall chivalry, sparkling and flashing everywhere as it runs through that great complicated tissue of human life which we call modern civilisation,—how shall chivalry, the humaniser of society, be brought within the limits of a definition?

Chivalry, indeed, exists for us in spirit rather than in outward and visible form. It no longer comes to us with the outward symbols of war-horse, and armour, and noble birth, and strength of arm, and high-flown protestations of love and gallantry; yet we never fail to know and feel its presence, silent and unobtrusive as it now is: we recognise the lady and the gentleman not less surely now than they did in old times; and we acknowledge their rights and their power over us now no less than then. And if the spirit of chivalry does live among us still, we may read its past history by its present light, and say in Spenser's words,—

*By infusion sweete*

Of thine own spirit which doth in me survive,
I follow still the footing of thy feete,
That with thy meaning so I may the rather meete.*

Let us then look back to those times when chivalry had an outward, visible form, and was embodied in its own proper institutions, with orders, and statutes, and courts of its own jurisdiction, and rituals, and customs, like those of other great social institutions and members of the body politic.

The deluge of the Teutonic nations which broke up the old Roman civilisation threatened for some centuries to overwhelm Europe with mere barbarism. We know now that the germs of a far higher and better civilisation were everywhere ready to open into life as soon as the fury of that deluge had spent itself; but for a long period the evil seemed mightier than the good. From time to time the
clear head, the noble heart and conscience, and the strong arm of an Alfred, a Charlemagne, or an Otho, might bring a temporary calm and order into the storm; but when the personal influences of such great men were withdrawn, society relapsed again and again into ever new anarchy, and war—at once the effect and the cause of anarchy—savage, cruel war became the business of all men throughout Europe. The selfish, the rapacious, and the unscrupulous fought for power, and plunder, and love of fighting; and while violence could only be resisted by violence, and each man had to defend himself, his family, and his possessions as best he could, with no effectual aid from law and government, there was a constant tendency to increasing barbarism and brutish, or worse than brutish, instead of human, existence.

But man differs from the brutes in this, that while he can fall lower than they, he can also rise higher, and that even the passions and the impulses which he has in common with them may be subdued, and refined, and modified, till they become the servants and instruments of his human life, and the means by which all that is properly spiritual in his being may be reflected and symbolised upon this earth in outward, visible form. The nobler races of men—the historical races, as they have been called—constantly show this aptitude for contending with these downward tendencies of our nature, and for advancing, through the conquest of them, to new and higher life.

And so it was in the Middle Ages. The Church was, no doubt, the great civiliser of the nations: still, whatever aid the State derived from the Church, it then, no less than now, had a position and processes of its own, by which it did its own work of civilisation too. And its first great work for controlling the universal anarchy of which I have spoken was the extension and firm establishment of that half-patriarchal, half-military organisation which we call the Feudal System. Every man who was not rich and powerful enough to be a lord became—willingly or unwillingly—a vassal; and all men, from the king downwards, were bound to each other for reciprocal service and protection—a service and protection partly military, but partly patriarchal, since they were rendered not by men strangers to each other except for what Mr. Carlyle calls 'the nexus of cash payment,' but united by ties of family, and neighbourhood, and clanship, and by the interests and sympathies that grow out of these. But the protector of his own vassals easily became the invader of the rights and ravages of the possessions of his neighbour and his vassals; and so the old evils of anarchy and violence grew afresh out of the remedy which had been devised to meet them. The 'monarchies sank into impotence; petty, lawless tyrants trampled all social order under foot,' says a recent historian of this period, 'and all attempts after scientific instruction and artistic pleasures were as effectually crushed by this state of general insecurity as the external well-being and material life of the people. This was a dark and stormy period for Europe, merciless, arbitrary, and violent. It is a sign of the prevailing feeling of misery and hopelessness that, when the first thousand years of our era were drawing to their close, the people in every country in Europe
INTRODUCTION.

looked with certainty for the destruction of the world. Some squandered their wealth in riotous living, others bestowed it for the good of their souls on churches and convents; weeping multitudes lay day and night around the altars; some looked forward with dread, but most with secret hope, towards the burning of the earth and the falling in of heaven. Their actual condition was so miserable that the idea of destruction was relief, spite of all its horrors.

The palliatives with which men tried to meet the evils of the times indicate the greatness of the evils, but also the moral feeling which was the promise of better things. Such was the so-called 'Peace of the King,' by which private wars were not to be entered on till forty days after the committal of the alleged crime which was to be avenged; and the 'Truce of God,' by which all these acts of private hostility were suspended from Thursday to Monday in each week. And at the Council of Cleremont, held by Urban II in November, 1095, a severe censure was pronounced against the licence of private war; the Truce of God was confirmed; women and priests were placed under the safeguard of the Church; and a protection of three years was extended to husbandmen and merchants, the defenceless victims of military rapine. We are reminded of the law of Moses, which provided Cities of Refuge for the man who accidentally and without malice killed his neighbour, but who could not look for protection from the vengeance of the family of the slain man except within those special safeguards. In each case there is the same unreasoning rage of the half-civilised man brought face to face with the demands of religion and civil law: and each is obliged to yield something to the other till the better cause has had time to prepare and strengthen itself for a more complete triumph.

Chivalry, then, was the offspring of the same spirit which dictated the Peace of the King, the Truce of God, and the decrees of the Council of Cleremont. Chivalry has another name—Knighthood—and the two are wanted to express all that we mean by either. The chevalier was the soldier who rode the war-horse: he whose birth entitled him, and whose wealth gave him the means, to ride at the head of his vassals and retainers to the war: all ideas of lordship, and mastery, and outward dignity and power, are here embodied before us. But this 'chevalier,' this 'ritter,' or rider of the war-horse, was also to be a 'knecht,' or servant: 'He that will be chief among you, let him be your servant.' The knight was to obey, no less than to command; he was to exert his strength and power, not for selfish ends, but in the service of others; and especially in the service of the poor, the weak, and the oppressed, who could not help or defend themselves. It was, indeed, no new discovery in the world, that such are the duties of him who possesses power, and above all the power of the sword; and they who have tried to trace the origin

1 Von Sybel's History of the Crusades, English Translation, p. ii.
2 For this distinction I am indebted to my friend the Rev. F. D. Maurice, whose genius lights up every subject it approaches.
INTRODUCTION.

of chivalry to some particular place and time have had to go to the Germans of Tacitus, to the Crusaders, to the Saracens, to the Romans, the Greeks, the Trojans, the Hebrews, only to come to the conclusion that chivalry belongs in its spirit to man as man; though the form in which that spirit was clothed in Europe in the Middle Ages has an individuality of which some of the sources may be ascertained, and though from that time forward its power has been established, and extended, in a manner, and with a greatness unknown to the ancients.

In those days society was essentially military. In this our own time the main offices, interests, and occupations of the great body politic are non-military, and the army is but a small portion of the nation, specially trained for a minor, though indispensable, function therein. Peace, for its own sake, and for the sake of the objects which can only be obtained by the arts and with the opportunities of peace, is the end and aim of every civilised nation now; and war is only an occasional means to secure that end. But in the Middle Ages war was, or seemed to be, the chief end of life to the greater part of every nation, and especially to all who possessed rank, and wealth, and power, and were in fact the leaders of the nation. And therefore chivalry, the spirit which was to humanise those warriors, needed to be warlike too, and thus to sympathise with those to whom it addressed itself.

Much, too, of its special form it no doubt owed to that wonderful race of heroes, the Normans. The romantic love of adventure; the religious and the martial enthusiasm; the desire to revenge injuries, and to win wealth and power; the delight in arms and horses, in the luxury of dress, and in the exercises of hunting and hawking; the eloquence and sagacity in council; the patience with which when need was they could endure the inclemency of every climate, and the toil and abstinence of a military life; and the gentleness, the affability and the gallantry, which were the characteristics of the Norman race; these must have been more or less impressed on men's minds wherever the Norman sway or influence extended, from England to Sicily, and must have reproduced something of themselves in the social habits and manners of the times. When we read the description of William of the Iron Arm, the first Norman count of Apulia, so strong, so brave, so affable, so generous, and so sage above other men—a lion in battle, a lamb in society, and an angel in council—we are reminded of the heroes of chivalry in the days of its greatest refinement, the Black Prince, Sir John Chandos, and Sir Walter of Manny, as they still live in the pages of Froissart; or their counterparts in romance, King Arthur, Sir Launcelot, Amadis of Gaul, or Palmerin of England.

The Normans, the latest of the Teutonic races who descended, full of wild life, from their mountains and forests, upon the comparatively civilised plains of Europe, may have brought a newer and fresher feeling for those old manners and customs which Tacitus describes as characterising the Germans of his time, and which are with so much probability connected with the chivalry of the Middle Ages. In ancient Germany, and in Scandinavia, it was the custom for each youth, when he was of an age to bear arms, to be presented with a sword, a shield, and a lance, by
his father, or some near relation, in an assembly of the chiefs of the nation; and from that time he became a member of the commonwealth, and ranked as a citizen. He then entered the train of some chief, of whom he and his brother youths became the followers and companions, forming one brotherhood, though not without ranks and degrees, while a generous spirit of equality ran through all.

In ancient Germany, too, women were held in a peculiar reverence, beyond what was known in the other—and otherwise more civilized—nations of antiquity; and the presence of women in the hour of battle with their husbands, brothers, and fathers, was regarded by those warriors as an incentive to courage, and a pledge of victory, which (as they boasted) their Roman foes were unable to appeal to for themselves. And this old Teutonic reverence for women conspired with the new Christian reverence for the Virgin Mary as the type and representative at once of her sex and of the Church, to supply the purer and nobler elements of the gallantry which forms so large a part, not only of the romance, but of the actual history, of chivalry.

But Christianity exercised not only an indirect, but also a direct and avowed action upon the forms of chivalry, as they attained to their full proportions. Knighthood was certainly a feature and distinction of society before the days of Charlemagne, who in permitting the governor of Friesland to make knights by girding them with a sword, and giving them a blow, adds, "as is the custom." But no ritual of the Church as yet consecrated that custom. Charlemagne girt the sword on his son Louis the Good without religious ceremonies; and a century later the Saxon king of England, Edward the Elder, clothed Athelstan in a soldier's dress of scarlet, and girded him with a girdle ornamented with precious stones and a sword with sheath of gold, but without religious rites. But in the next century, in the reign of Edward the Confessor, we read that Hereward, a noble Anglo-Saxon youth, was knighted by the Abbot of Peterborough, with confession, absolution, and prayer that he might be a true knight. And this the historian describes as the custom of the English, as indeed it was, or soon became, that of all Europe; the Normans resisting the innovation longest, but at last adopting it with their wonted ardour. The candidate for knighthood confessed his sins on the eve of his consecration (for such it now was), and passed the night in prayer and fasting in the church: the godfathers, the bath, the white garment, and the tonsure (sometimes limited indeed to a single lock) were the symbols of the new and holy state of life to which he was now called: next morning he heard mass, offered his sword on the altar, where it was blessed by the priest; and he was created a knight—either by the priest of highest rank present, or by some knight, who, in virtue of his knighthood, was qualified to confer the sacred office he had himself received—in the name of God, of St. George, and of St. Michael the Archangel. He swore, and received the holy communion in confirmation of his oath, to fulfil the duties of his profession; to speak the truth; to maintain the right; to protect women, the poor, and the distressed; to practise courtesy; to pursue the infidels; to despise the
INTRODUCTION.

allurements of ease and safety, and to maintain his honour in every perilous adventure. And the Council of Cleremont, of which I have already spoken—as if in order to give the sanction of the Church in a still more formal and comprehensive manner to the whole system of chivalry—decreed that every person of noble birth, on attaining the age of twelve years, should take a solemn oath before the bishop of his diocese to defend to the uttermost the oppressed, the widow, and the orphans; that women of noble birth, both married and single, should enjoy his especial care; and that nothing should be wanting in him to render travelling safe, and to destroy tyranny.

Thus, as has been justly observed, all the humanities of chivalry were sanctioned by legal and ecclesiastical power: it was intended that they should be spread over the whole face of Christendom, in order to check the barbarism and ferocity of the times. While the form of chivalry was martial, its objects became to a great extent religious and social: from a mere military array chivalry obtained the name of the Order, the Holy Order, and a character of seriousness and solemnity was given to it; and it was accounted an honourable office above all offices, orders, and acts of the world, except the order of priesthood.

The education for knighthood usually began at a still earlier age than that mentioned in the Canons of Cleremont. The castles of the princes and nobles were the schools of those days, at least for the youth of their own class. Every feudal lord had his court, to which he drew the sons and daughters of the poorer gentry of his domains; and if he were a knight distinguished for his merits, his castle was also frequented by the children of men of equal rank and reputation with himself: for the prudent and careful father would often have some brother in arms whom he thought better fitted than himself to educate his children in the accomplishments and duties of his station. So, long after, Ben Jonson, looking back on those old times, and picturing them in their ideal aspect, says, that then

‘Goodness gave the greatness,
And greatness worship: every house became
An academy of honour.’

And that this method of education

‘By a line
Of institution from our ancestors,
Hath been deriv’d down to us, and receiv’d
In a succession, for the noblest way
Of breeding up our youth in letters, arms,
Fair mien, discourses, civil exercises,
And all the blazon of a gentleman.
Where can he learn to vault, to ride, to fence,
To move his body gracefuller, to speak
His language purer, or to tune his mind
Or manners more to the harmony of nature,
Than in these nurseries of nobility?’
INTRODUCTION.

The boy of gentle birth, when he thus began his education, was called by the names of Childe, or Damoiseau, or Valet, said to be a contraction of Vassalet or little Vassal, and also Page, though this last name was originally appropriated to the youths of inferior rank. He usually entered the castle which was to be his school about the age of seven or eight. He was to learn modesty, obedience, and address in arms and horsemanship, and was duly exercised in the use of his weapons, beginning with such as were suited to his strength. He was instructed how to guide a horse with grace and dexterity, how to use the bow and the sword, and how to manage the lance,—an art which was taught him by making him ride against a wooden figure, which, if not struck in true knightly fashion, was so contrived as to turn round and give the awkward cavalier a blow with its wooden sword. He attended his lord in the chase, and learnt all its arts; he attended him also in many offices which we should now call menial, but which were then held to be the proper symbols of modesty and obedience for the youth of highest birth and rank. Thus the Black Prince was held to show the highest respect to the French king, his prisoner, by personal attendance on him. In the words of Froissart: 'The same day of the battle, at night, the prince made a supper in his lodging to the French king, and to the most part of the great lords that were prisoners . . . . and always the prince served before the king as humbly as he could, and would not sit at the king's board for any desire that the king could make; but he said he was not sufficient to sit at the table with so great a prince as the king was.'

And not the least important of the youth's duties were those towards the ladies of the house in which he lived. He was to wait on them rather as attending a sort of superior beings to whom adoration and obsequious service were due, than as ministering to the convenience of human creatures like himself. The most modest demeanour, the most profound respect, were to be observed in the presence of these fair idols. And as not only the youths, but the maidens—the damoiselles no less than the damoiseaux—were sent to the courts of the barons and their ladies for education, it would often happen that this veneration in which the boy was so early trained towards the ladies of maturer years, would find an object in some young maiden whose more suitable age might lead him, as he grew up, from mere boyish regard to that passionate and abiding devotion which was the duty of every true knight to his lady, and by the strength of which he held that all his power for good was to be maintained. Here is a description of the beginning of the loves of Amadis and Oriana, which is as charming as it is simple; and which, though we find it in the pages of a romance, we cannot doubt is a picture of actual life and manners. 'Oriana,' says the old book, 'was about ten years old, the fairest creature that ever was seen; wherefore she was called the one "without a peer". . . . The child of the sea (that is, Amadis) was now twelve years old, but in stature and size he seemed fifteen, and he served the queen; but, now that Oriana was there, the queen gave her the child of the sea, that he should serve her, and Oriana said that "it pleased her;" and that word which she said, the child kept in his heart, so that
he never lost it from his memory, and in all his life he was never weary of serving her, and his heart was surrendered to her; and this love lasted as long as they lasted, for as well as he loved her did she also love him. But the child of the sea, who knew nothing of her love, thought himself presumptuous to have placed his thoughts on her, and dared not speak to her; and she, who loved him in her heart, was careful not to speak more with him than with another; but their eyes delighted to reveal to the heart what was the thing on earth that they loved best. And now the time came that he thought he could take arms if he were knighted; and this he greatly desired, thinking that he would do such things that, if he lived, his mistress should esteem him.'

Such was the beginning of the loves of Amadis and Oriana, so famous in romance, and so generally held by knights and ladies to be a model for themselves. Constancy, such as that of Amadis, was a virtue of the true lover which those times of long inevitable separations and absences demanded in forms hardly known in our days; and in proportion was it insisted upon, and held in honour. So Spenser says:

'Young knight whatever, that dost arms profess,
And through long labours huntest after fame,
Beware of fraud, beware of fickleness,
In choice and change of thy dear loved dame;
Lest thou of her believe too lightly blame,
And rash misweening do thy heart remove;
For unto knight there is no greater shame,
Than lightness and inconstancy in love.'

The peerless Amadis passed with more than ordinary rapidity to the rank of knighthood. The youth more usually remained an esquire—the next step to that of page—till he was twenty. He attended the knight to whose person he was attached, dressed and undressed him, trained his horses, kept his arms bright and burnished, and did the honours of the household to the strangers who visited it; so that Spenser takes the squire as the type of such courtesy. Here is Chancer's description of the squire:

'With him there was his son, a youngé squire,
A lover and a lusty bachelor,
With lockés curl'd as they were laid in press;
Of twenty years of age he was, I guess,
Of his stature he was of even length,
And wonderly deliver, and great of strength;
And he had been some time in chevachie (military expeditions),
In Flanders, in Artois, and Picardie,
And borne him well, as of so little space,
In hope to standen in his lady's grace.
Embroider'd was he, as it were a mead
All full of freshé flowers, white and red;
Singing he was, or fluting, all the day;
He was as fresh as is the month of May;
INTRODUCTION.

Short was his gown, with sleeves long and wide:
Well could he sit on horse, and faire ride;
He couldé songés make, and well indite,
Just, and eke dance, and well pourtray and write:
So hot he loved, that by nightertale
He slept no more than doth the nightingale.
Courteous he was; lowly and serviceable;
And carv'd before his father at the table.'

I have already spoken of the religious rites with which the esquire was admitted into the order of knighthood, and of the solemn and noble engagements into which he then entered. He had next to 'win his spurs,' as it was called; a phrase happily illustrated in the story of Edward III and the Black Prince, which Froissart thus relates:—

'This battle between Broy and Cressy, this Saturday, was right cruel and fell, and many a feat of arms done that came not to my knowledge. . . . In the morning, the day of the battle, certain Frenchmen and Almagnes perforce opened the archers of the prince's battle, [division as we should now say,] and came and fought with the men of arms, hand to hand. Then the second battle of the Englishmen came to succour the prince's battle, the which was time, for they had as then much ado. And they with the prince sent a messenger to the king, who was on a little windmill hill: then the knight said to the king, "Sir, the earl of Warwick, and the earl of Oxford, Sir Reynold Cobham, and other, such as lie about the prince your son, are fiercely fought withal, and are sore handled, wherfore they desire you that you and your battle will come and aid them, for if the Frenchmen increase, as they doubt they will, your son and they shall have much ado." Then the king said, "Is my son dead, or hurt, or on the earth felled?" "No, sir," quoth the knight, "but he is hardly matchèd, wherfore he hath need of your aid." "Well," said the king, "return to him, and to them that sent you hither, and say to them, that they send no more to me for any adventure that falleth, as long as my son is alive: and also say to them, that they suffer him this day to win his spurs; for, if God be pleased, I will this day's work be his, and the honour thereof, and to them that be about him." Then the knight returned again to them, and showed the king's words, the which greatly encouraged them, and repented in that they had sent to the king as they did.' Brave knights, to be 'greatly encouraged' by such stern though manly words. We are reminded of the not less brave and knightly demeanour of Sir Colin Halket and his men at Waterloo, when the Duke of Wellington rode up and asked how they were, and the general replied that two-thirds of the brigade were down, and the remainder so exhausted that the relief of fresh troops, for however short a time, was most desirable. But when the duke said that no relief was possible, that all depended on them, the answer which the officer made for himself and his men was, 'Enough, my lord, we stand here till the last man falls.'

Thenceforth the knight's career depended, he would not have said on himself, but on God and his lady; and if we may judge by the ordinary language of the
romances, his lady was often the object of actual adoration, little differing from that he would have addressed to the saints in the hour of danger or of triumph. Philosophic divines teach us that although the worship of the saints may become in practice a gross and degrading superstition, it has in it an element of true, and in itself ennobling, faith in ideals of humanity more or less perfectly revealed in human form: and so while we smile at the fictions of extravagant fancy in which the mediæval knight was wont to clothe his love, and his professions of love, for his mistress, we cannot reasonably doubt that in the main, and for that time of youthful imaginations rather than of sober reasonings, the knight was right. When I think of what society was, and what it would still be, without the humanizing influences of womanhood and ladyhood, and what it is by means of these, I say that the tree may be judged by its fruits, and that it is from a right noble stock, rightly and wisely cultivated in the main, in those old days, that we are still gathering such noble fruits. Much evil there was along with the good; and, what is worse, much confusion between good and evil. I need not tell the reader of chivalry romances, or of Mr. Tennyson's glorious reproductions of some of their incidents in modern form of thought as well as language, how painfully this confusion defaces many of the fairest characters and most interesting tales of chivalry, while the historical records of the times in which those romances were written and read, show that the actual state of morals and manners exhibited the like confusions of good and evil, in the ideals as well as in the conduct of life. But, as I have already observed, we see, at least in the romance before us, the good contending with, and mastering the evil, and this not least in the end of the story of the guilty loves of Guenever and Launcelot, the knight whose fame in romance perhaps surpasses that of Amadis, though even mediæval morality was obliged to censure the constancy of Launcelot's love, while it might unhesitatingly extol that of Amadis.

Mr. Tennyson has, I may assume, made every one familiar with the retirement of queen Guenever to the nunnery of Almesbury, and with the death of Arthur; and I venture for the completion of this sketch to show, though from the present volume, how the old story which the poet chiefly follows relates the death and draws the character of Launcelot. Launcelot, when he heard of those events, went to Almesbury, and after taking leave of the queen, resolved to follow her example; and became a hermit and penitent, taking up his abode in a forest where was an hermitage and a chapel that stood between two cliffs; and there he served God day and night with prayers and fastings. Thus he, and other knights who followed his example, 'endured great penance six years, and then Sir Launcelot took the habit of priesthood, and a twelvemonth he sang mass.' At the end of that time a vision directed him to take the body of queen Guenever, now dead at Almesbury, and bury her with king Arthur at Glastonbury. Then the story goes on:—'And when she was put in the earth Sir Launcelot swooned and lay long still, while the hermit came out and awaked him, and said, Ye be to blame, for ye displease God with
such manner of sorrow making. Truly, said Sir Launcelot, I trust I do not displease God, for He knoweth mine intent, for my sorrow was not, nor is not, for any rejoicing of sin, but my sorrow may never have end. For when I remember of her beauty, and of her noblesse, that was both with her king and with her; so when I saw his corpse and her corpse so lie together, truly mine heart would not serve to sustain my careful body. Also when I remember me how by my default, and mine orgule, and my pride, that they were both laid full low, that were peerless that ever was living of christian people, wit ye well, said Sir Launcelot, this remembered, of their kindness and mine unkindness, sank so to my heart, that all my natural strength failed me, so that I might not sustain myself.’ The story goes on to say that there he wasted away, praying night and day at the tomb of the king and queen. He died, and was taken to his own castle of Joyous Gard to be buried. ‘And right thus as they were at their service there came Sir Ector de Maris, that had seven year sought all England, Scotland, and Wales, seeking his brother Sir Launcelot. And when Sir Ector heard such noise and light in the quire of Joyous Gard he alight, and put his horse from him, and came into the quire, and there he saw men sing and weep. And all they knew Sir Ector, but he knew not them. Thien went Sir Bors unto Sir Ector, and told him how there lay his brother Sir Launcelot dead. And then Sir Ector threw his shield, sword, and helm from him; and when he beheld Sir Launcelot’s visage he fell down in a swoon; and when he awaked it were hard for any tongue to tell the doleful complaints that he made for his brother. Ah, Launcelot, he said, thou were head of all Christian knights! And now, I dare say, said Sir Ector, thou Sir Launcelot, there thou liest, that thou were never matched of earthly knight’s hands; and thou were the courtiest knight that ever bare shield; and thou were the truest friend to thy lover that ever bestrode horse; and thou were the truest lover, of a sinful man, that ever loved woman; and thou were the kindest man that ever strake with sword; and thou were the goodliest person ever came among press of knights; and thou was the meekest man and the gentlest that ever ate in hall among ladies; and thou were the sternest knight to thy mortal foe that ever put spear in the rest.’

Let me compare with this Chaucer’s description of the knight of his times:—

`A knight there was, and that a worthy man,
That from the time that he first began
To riden out, he loved chivalry,
Truth and honôr, freedom and courtesy.
Full worthy was he in his lordés war,
And thereto had he ridden, no man farre,
As well in Christendom as in Heatheness,
And ever honoured for his worthiness.
At Alisandre he was when it was won:
Full often-time he had the board begun`
INTRODUCTION.

Aboven allé nations in Prusse:¹
In Lethowe he had he reyséd², and in Russe,
No Christian man so oft, of his degree:
In Germade at the siege eke had he be
Of Algésir, and ridden in Belmarie;
At Leyés was he, and at Satalie,
When they were won; and in the Greaté Sea
At many a noble army had he be.
At mortal battles had he been fifteen,
And foughten for our faith at Tramissene
In listés thriés, and aye slain his foe.
This ilké worthy knight had been also
Sometimé with the lord of Palathe
Against another heathen in Turkey;
And evermore he had a sovereign prize³,
And though that he was worthy he was wise,
And of his port as meek as is a maid.
He never yet no villainy ne said
In all his life unto no manner wight:
He was a very perfect, gentle knight.⁴

In an age when all men, not of the clergy, were divided between the two classes of freemen or gentlemen, and serfs or villains, and the villains were in habits and in human culture little better than the domestic animals of which they shared the labours, the knight almost inevitably belonged to the class of free, or gentle, birth. Still, in theory always, and to a great extent in practice, it was not his birth, but his personal merit, which qualified him for knighthood. The personal merit would oftener exist, and still oftener come to light, where it had the advantages and aids of education and general social culture. But if it was recognised in the villain, or man of no rights of birth, he might be, and often was, knighted, and was thereby immediately enfranchised, and accounted a gentleman, in law no less than in name. Thus Froissart tells us of Sir Robert Sale, the governor of Norwich, that 'he was no gentleman born, but he had the grace to be reputed sage and valiant in arms, and for his valiantness King Edward made him knight.' He was governor during the popular insurrection of which Wat Tyler and Jack Straw were the London leaders; and he was invited to put himself at the head of one of the risings by men who urged upon him——'Sir Robert, ye are a knight and a man greatly beloved in this country, and renowned a valiant man; and though ye be thus, yet we know you well: ye be no gentleman born, but son to a villain, such as we be: therefore come you with us, and be our master, and we shall make you so great a lord that one quarter of England shall be under your obeisance.' He refused, and they killed him. The same king also knighted a man-at-arms, who had originally been a tailor, and who greatly distinguished himself under the name of Sir John Hacond,

¹ Having gone to find adventures in Prussia with the Teutonic knights who carried on war with the still Pagan Lithuania, he had been often placed at the head of the table above the like adventurers from other nations, in compliment to his especial merit.
² Ridden in arms.
³ Praise.
or Hawkwood. And the courtly as well as knightly Chaucer, who must more or less have reflected the feeling of the royal and noble personages among whom he lived, goes farther, and asserts that not only does virtue make the gentleman, but also baseness of mind the villain or churl:

'Though you understand in thine intent,
That this is not mine intendement,
To clepen no wight in no age
Only gentle for his lineage;
But whoso that is virtuous,
And in his port nought outrageous,
Though he be not gentle born,
Thou may'st well see this in sooth,
That he is gentle because he doth
As longeth to a gentleman;
Of them none other deem I can:
For certainly, withouten drede,
A churl is deemed by his deed,
Of high or low, as you may see,
Or of what kindred that he be.'

Akin to this recognition of gentleness of mind and manners, as that which made a gentleman, was the sense of brotherhood among knights and gentlemen, which led them to trust in each other's honour, even when they were fighting under the banners of hostile kings. The chronicles are full of the instances of such consideration of the English and French knights for each other in the wars between the two nations; and it is not without probability that to these and suchlike manifestations of the spirit of chivalry have been traced the courtesy and humanity which characterise modern warfare in a degree unknown to the ancients.

Much indeed of barbarism and cruelty there was in the usages of war in the best times of chivalry, even of the knights among themselves, and still more when they came, with passions infuriated by resistance, upon the people of lower rank than themselves. Edward III of England, and the knights whom he gathered round him, are held alike by contemporary historians and romance writers, and by those of modern times, to have best exhibited the characteristics of chivalry in its day of greatest refinement as well as splendour; yet no one can read the chronicles of even the admiring Froissart without seeing how much savage passion and cruelty was often mingled with their better dispositions: though we do see also that the cruelty was not because, but in spite of, their chivalry. Froissart laments bitterly the iniquity of the massacre by the Black Prince of the people of Limoges, men, women, and children, more than three thousand. And when Edward III, before him, intended, as would seem, to have treated the town of Calais in like manner, not only did the French knights who had offered to surrender declare that they would 'endure as much pain as knights ever did, rather than the poorest lad in the town should have any more evil than the greatest of us all'—showing that they made no selfish distinction between the noble and the villain—but the English
knights, headed by Sir Walter of Manny, that flower of knighthood, protested to
the utmost against their king's purpose. And when he had yielded so far to their
urgency as to say that he would be content with the lives of the six chief burgesses,
Sir Walter of Manny again remonstrated, saying, 'Ah, noble king, for God's sake
refrain your courage: ye have the name of sovereign noblesse; therefore now do
not a thing that should blemish your renown, nor to give cause to some to speak
of you villainy [to charge you with conduct unworthy of a knight and gentleman];
every man will say it is a great cruelty to put to death such honest persons, who by
their own wills put themselves into your grace to save their company. Then the
king wryed away from him, and commanded to send for the hangman, and said,
"They of Calais had caused many of my men to be slain, wherefore these shall die
in likewise."

It needed a stronger influence than that of Sir Walter of Manny to save their
lives: and this brings me to speak of the Lady of the mediaeval times; the Lady,
who was the counterpart of the Knight, and without whom he could never have
existed. Here, indeed, I meet a difficulty which reminds me of what Coleridge
says of the female characters of Shakspere, that their truth to nature, and therefore
their beauty, consists in the absence of strongly marked features. It is impossible
to read the poems, romances, or chronicles of the mediaeval times, without feeling
all through how important a part the lady plays everywhere; and yet it is far from
easy to draw her from her retirement and bring distinctly before ourselves what she
did, and get a picture of her as definite as we can do of the knight. Still I must
try to trace the outlines of such a picture of one lady:—Philippa, queen of
Edward III, whom Froissart calls 'the most gentle queen, most liberal, and most
courteous that ever was queen in her days;' and who was the very type and repre-
sentative of the lady, in the highest and best sense, in an age in which the
ladies—such as the princess Blanche, the good queen Ann, the countess of Salis-
bury, Jane de Montfort, and the wife of Charles de Blois—were renowned for their
gentle or their heroic characters.

When Isabel, queen of Edward II, visited Hainault with her son, afterwards
Edward III, we are told that William, earl of Hainault, 'had four fair daughters,
Margaret, Philippa, Jane, and Isabella: among whom the young Edward set most
his love and company on Philippa; and also the young lady in all honour was
more conversant with him than any of her sisters.' Queen Isabel had come to ask
for aid against her enemies, and Froissart gives an account of the discussion be-
tween the earl and his council, who objected on prudent grounds to interfering
with the quarrels of the English, and the earl's brother, Sir John Hainault, who
maintained that 'all knights ought to aid to their powers all ladies and damsels
chased out of their own countries, being without counsel or comfort.' The earl
finally yielded, saying, 'My fair brother, God forbid that your good purpose should
be broken or let. Therefore, in the name of God, I give you leave; and kissed him,
straining him by the hand in sign of great love.' The whole passage is too long
to quote, but thus much gives a lively picture of the temper of the home and court in which the young Philippa was brought up.

Her marriage with Edward, then only fifteen years old, was agreed on, and sanctioned by the Pope. I am sorry to say that the chronicler gives no account of the lady's bridal outfit, except in the general terms, that 'there was devised and purveyed for their apparel, and for all things honourable that belonged to such a lady, who should be queen of England.' They were married, and she arrived in England and was crowned, 'with great justs, tourneys, dancing, carolling, and great feasts, the which endured the space of three weeks.' And then 'this young queen Philippa abode still in England, with small company of any persons of her own country, saving one who was named Walter of Manny, who was her carver, and after did so many great prowesses in divers places, that it were hard to make mention of them.' If we couple this statement, that she retained hardly any of her own people, with that which Froissart makes in reviewing her whole life, that 'she loved always her own nation where she was born,' we have pleasing thoughts suggested of the cheerful acceptance of new duties in a foreign land by the young wife; while, if I had space to describe in detail the noble life of Sir Walter of Manny, the reader would agree with me that his habitual presence in the English court must have done much to make both Edward and the Black Prince, as well as the rest of the princes and nobles, what they were, as knights and gentlemen.

The next glimpse we get of the queen is when she appears, accompanied with three hundred ladies and damsels 'of noble lineage, and apparelled accordingly, at the yearly feast at Windsor, in honour of the order and brotherhood of the Knights of the Blue Garter, there established on St. George's day.' Again, when the king of Scots had advanced to Newcastle, while king Edward lay before Calais, we see the queen arriving to meet the English army, and going from division to division, 'desiring them to do their devoir'—duty was then, as now, the English soldier's word—'to defend the honour of her lord the king of England, and, in the name of God, every man to be of good heart and courage; promising them that to her power she would remember them as well or better as though her lord the king were there personally. Then the queen departed from them, recommending them to God and St. George.' She does not seem, like some of the ladies of that generation, to have considered the field to be her place while the battle was going on; but after it was won she returned, and with her council made all necessary arrangements and plans. Shortly after she joined her husband while he lay before Calais, 'bringing many ladies and damsels with her, as well to accompany her, as to see their husbands, fathers, brethren, and other friends that lay at siege there before Calais, and had done a long time.' And I think we may attribute it as well

1 It appears from Morte Arthur, p. 474, that London was the proper place to go to, 'to buy all manner of things that longed unto a wedding.'
to the general humanising influence of all those ladies, as to the personal persuasion of Philippa, that Calais did not suffer the same horrors of war as did Limoges at the hands of the Black Prince. To what I have already quoted from Froissart as to this story, I must now add what he tells us of Philippa, after Edward had refused to hear Sir Walter of Mannya. 'Then the queen kneeled down, and sore weeping, said, "Ah, gentle sir, sith I passed the sea in great peril, I have desired nothing of you; therefore now I humbly require you, in the honour of the Son of the Virgin Mary, and for the love of me, that ye will take mercy of these six burgesses." The king beheld the queen, and stood still in a study a space, and then said, "Ah dame, I would ye had been as now in some other place; ye make such request to me that I cannot deny you; wherefore I give them to you, to do your pleasure with them."'

And lastly, as a counterpart to the picture I have already given you of the death of the knight of romance, here is the account of the death of her who was the lady of the brightest day of historical chivalry:

In the mean season there fell in England a heavy case and a common: howbeit it was right piteous for the king, his children, and all his realm; for the good queen of England—that so many good deeds had done in her time, and so many knighthood succoured, and ladies and damosels comforted, and had so largely departed of her goods to her people, and naturally loved always the nation of Haynault, the country where she was born—she fell sick in the castle of Windsor, the which sickness continued on her so long, that there was no remedy but death; and the good lady, when she knew that there was no remedy but death, she desired to speak with the king her husband, and when he was before her, she put out of her bed her right hand, and took the king by his right hand, who was right sorrowful at his heart. Then she said, "Sir, we have in peace, joy, and great prosperity, used all our time together: sir, now I pray you at our departing, that ye will grant me three desires." The king, right sorrowfully weeping, said, "Madam, desire what ye will, I grant it." The three requests of the dying woman were—that the king should pay all that she owed to any man; that he should fulfil all the promises she had made to the churches where she had "had her devotion," and that "it might please him to take none other sepulture, whensoever it should please God to call him out of this transitory life, but beside her in Westminster." The king, all weeping, said, "Madam, I grant all your desire." Then the good lady and queen made on her the sign of the cross, and commended the king her husband to God, and her youngest son Thomas, who was there beside her; and anon after she yielded up the spirit, which I believe surely the holy angels received with great joy up to heaven; for in all her life she did neither in thought nor deed thing to lose her soul, as far as any creature could know. Thus the good queen of England died in the year of our Lord 1369, in the vigil of our Lady, in the midst of August.'

We have all pictured to ourselves, again and again, how the lady sat in her bower with her embroidery and her missal or romance, and saw from her lattice
window her knight going from the castle with lance and pennon, hoping to meet his foe: how the minstrel recited in the castle hall the feats of arms of this or that hero in some distant battle-field; and how the matron or the maiden heard those feats, and thought with silent joy that it was her lord, her husband, or her lover, whose deeds were thus winning the praises of the troubadour, and the applause of the listening knights and squires. We have all seen in imagination the tournament, with the pomp and splendour of its mimic contests: contests which surpassed the Olympic and Corinthian games of classic antiquity, not only in their gorgeous show, but still more in the presence of the ladies, noble in birth, and fame, and beauty; whose scarf, or glove, the combatants wore as the token of that favour which was their highest incentive to distinguish themselves; and from whose hands the conqueror received the prize of skill and bravery; while the honourably vanquished might be sure that he would have the hardly less welcome lot of being cared for by the same ladies, who never shrank from this their acknowledged and well fulfilled duty of tending the wounded knight.

Perhaps too we have listened in fancy to the proceedings of the so-called Courts or Parliaments of Love, in which the ladies were wont to hear questions of gallantry gravely argued on both sides by poets pleading in verse, and then to give their judgments according to the logical and metaphysical rules which the schoolmen applied to theological enquiries. But I can now but remind my reader that such things were; and must hasten forward, leaving ungathered flowers that would make many a wreath and nasegay.

The golden age of chivalry was the period from about the middle of the eleventh to the end of the fourteenth century. We may say, with Gibbon, that the Crusades were at once a cause and an effect of chivalry. In the Crusades the spirit of knighthood, with all its characteristic features, actuated vast bodies of men of every rank and nation, and found a foe believed by all Christendom to be to it what the individual robber and plunderer was to the knight errant who went forth in his own country to defend or rescue the widow and orphan and their possessions, or the traveller along the road which passed the castle of some powerful though unworthy baron. The chivalry at home was kept alive, and raised to its highest energy, both in man and woman, by the chivalry in the Holy Land. It is in this period that the chief institutions of chivalry took their rise, or reached their full form; while their ruder features were gradually softened with the increasing refinement of the times, till they presented that aspect with which we find them in the days of Edward III and the Black Prince, as drawn by Froissart or Chaucer, or in the romances which were then written or remodelled out of older materials, and which show that even in the estimation of other nations the English court then afforded the pattern of knighthood for Christendom.

Thenceforward the outward forms of chivalry began to decay; very gradually indeed, and not without apparent resuscitations from time to time. But no real revival was possible; for the immortal spirit was seeking new habitations for itself,
more fitted to the new world which was succeeding to that of the Middle Ages. And perhaps Cervantes, by helping to tear up with his merciless satire the last remnants of an honest faith in the old forms of chivalry, did as real, though we cannot say as genial, a service to the cause of chivalry itself, as Spenser did in endeavouring to preserve its spirit by transferring it to the region of allegory. The last expiring token of the old spirit in the old forms which I have found, is in the records of the Knights of Malta—the Knights Hospitallers of St. John of Jerusalem—when the news of the great earthquake in Sicily, in 1783, arrived at Malta. Then those poor feeble-minded sybarites remembered for a moment their manhood and their knighthood, and their vows as Hospitallers: they manned their galleys, and, with food and clothing and medicines, and the consolations of their faith, were speedily seen, in their half-military, half-priestly garb—the armour covered by the black robe with the white cross—at the bedside of the wounded and the dying, as they lay amid the still tottering ruins of their devastated houses. In a very few years, in that same generation, the Order had passed away for ever: but it is pleasant to him who stands in the palace of the Grand Masters among the trophies of their former greatness, or treads the aisles of the cathedral of St. John, where every step is upon the emblazoned gravestone of a knight, to think of this, and not of any less worthy deed, as their last act.

  'The knight's bones are dust,
   And his good sword rust:
   His soul is with the saints, I trust.'——

but he has left to us an imperishable and a rich inheritance, won for us by him. To him we owe our MANNERS—all that world of existence implied in the names LADY and GENTLEMAN. Through the Middle Ages it was 'Our Lady,' the Virgin mother, who embodied and represented to all men and women, from the prince to the peasant, their ideals of womanhood and ladyhood. In modern times St. Paul has been held to be the model of a gentleman; in whose acts and writings are found all the principles, maxims, and spirit of a character entirely chivalrous, in the amplest sense of the term: while one of our old dramatists has ventured, in words of touching tenderness and reverence, to point to a yet higher realisation of that ideal;——

  'The best of men
   That e'er wore earth about him, was a sufferer,
   A soft, meek, patient, humble, tranquil spirit;
   The first true gentleman that ever breathed.'

And it was the transference of these Christian ethics into the practice of common, daily, worldly life, in rude, half-barbarous times, which we owe to the knights and ladies of the Middle Ages; a transference effected slowly, and with much mixture of evil with the good: nor is the work nearly completed yet; but the worth of it can hardly be overrated.

There is not indeed all, but there is much, truth in the old motto, 'Manners
makyth man.' Manners, like laws, create a region and atmosphere of virtue within which all good more easily lives and grows, and evil finds it harder to maintain itself. How large a portion of the small, spontaneous kindnesses of hourly life, in which, after all, so much of our happiness consists, are not only unknown, but impossible, where habitual, unaffected politeness is wanting.

But manners are good, not only as affording a fairer field for the exercise of the higher virtues, but good in themselves. They are a real part of the beauty and grace of our human life. Courtesy, and self-possession, and deference and respect for others; modesty and gentleness towards all men, and recognition in all of the true gold of humanity, whether it bear the guinea stamp or no; love of truth and honour; and not only readiness, but eagerness to help the weak, and defend their cause against the strong; and all these irradiated and glorified, as often as may be, by that sentiment which

'Gives to every power a double power,
   Above their functions and their offices;'

these are the things which make the lady and the gentleman.

And if it should seem as though the chivalry of our own times is reduced to something less noble than that of old, when men risked life, and things dearer than life, in defending the weak and attacking the oppressor in his strongholds—when the hardness of the actual fight against evil-doers was not exaggerated in the romances which pictured the knights contending with dragons and enchanters and giants—we must remember that our nineteenth century world is yet far from cleared of the monstrous powers of evil, which still oppress and devour the weak; and that a battle, not really less resolute, nor, if need be, less desperate, than those of old, is still carried on by those who, under the modest guise of common life, are fighting in the true spirit of chivalry—uniting the most adventurous enthusiasm with the most patient endurance, and both with the gentlest service of the poor, the weak, and the oppressed; and, what is most worthy of admiration, the service of the morally poor, and weak, and oppressed, who, but for such deliverers, must remain in a house of bondage darker than can be built or barred by earthly hands.

But whether we are content with the chivalry of manners, or aspire to a place in the brotherhood of the chivalry of action, our principles, our maxims, and our examples have come down to us as an inheritance from the past:—an inheritance common to all who care to claim it; and won for us by the old knights, fighting in the name of God and of their ladies.

— My principal authorities—whose words as well as facts I have frequently availed myself of—are Mill's History of Chivalry, which alone almost exhausts the subject; Gibbon's Decline and Fall; Godwin's Life of Chaucer; Scott's Essay on Chivalry; Lord Berners's Froissart; and Southey's Amadis of Gaul.
THE BOOK OF

KING ARTHUR

AND OF HIS NOBLE

KNIGHTS OF THE ROUND TABLE.
PREFACE OF WILLIAM CAXTON.

After that I had accomplished and imprinted divers histories, as well of confection as of other historical and pious acts of great conquerors and heroes, and also certain books of engravings and doctrine, many noble and courteous gentlemen of this realm of England, and demanded me many and sundry books, wherefore I have not done and imprinted the noble history of Saint Greal, and of the most renowned Christian king, first and chief of his three best Christian, and worthy, Arthur, which ought most to be remembered amongst us Englishmen; for it notoriously known through the universal world, that there be nine worthy the best that ever were, that is to three Paynims, three Jews, and three Christian men. As for the Paynims, were tofore the Incarnation of Christ, which were named, the first is Troy, of whom the history is written both in ballad and in prose, the second is Alexander the Great, and the third is Julius Caesar, Emperor of Rome, whom the histories be well known had. And as for the three Jews, which also were tofore the incarnation of our Lord, of whom the first was Duke of Saba, which brought the children of Israel into the land of behest, the second is king of Jerusalem, and the third is Machabeus. Of these three the compiler rehearseth all their noble histories and acts. And since the said incarnations have been three noble Christian men, and admitted through the universal world into the number of the nine best and worthy. Of whom was first the noble Arthur, whose noble acts I purpose to write in this present book here following. The second was Charlemain, or Charles the Great, of whom the history is had in many places, both in French and in English. And the third and last was Godfrey of Bolone, of whose acts and life I made a book unto the excellent prince and king of noble memory, king Edward the Fourth. The said noble gentlemen instantly required me to imprinted the history of the said noble king and conqueror king Arthur, and of his knights, with the history of the Saint Greal, and of the death and ending of the said Arthur; affirming that I ought rather to imprint his acts and noble feats, than of Godfrey of Bolone, or any of the other eight, considering that he was a man born within this realm, and king and emperor of the same: and that there be in French divers and many noble volumes of his acts, and also of his knights. To whom I answered that divers men hold opinion that there was no such Arthur, and that all such books as been made of him, be but feigned and fables, because that some chronicles make of him no mention, nor remember him nothing, nor of his knights. Whereto they answered, and one in special said, that in him that should say or think that there was never such a king called Arthur, might well be reared great folly and blindness. For he said that there were many evidences of the contrary. First ye may see his
seen and read beyond the sea, not had in our maternal tongue; Welsh be many and also in French some in English but no where all. Wherefore, such as he been draw out briefly into I have after the simple com God hath sent to me, under the correction of all noble and gentlemen, enprised to a book of the noble histories said king Arthur, and of certain knights, after a copy unto me of which copy Sir Thomas Mal take out of certain books of and reduced it into English. according to my copy, have it in print, to the intent that may see and learn the noble chivalry, the gentle and virtuous that some knights used in the by which they came to honour, they that were vicious were punished oft put to shame and rebuke; hum seaching all noble lords and ladies all other estates of what estate ever they been of, that shall see and this said book and work, the take the good and honest acts remembrance, and to follow the Wherein they shall find many and pleasant histories, and most renowned acts of humanity, knes, and chivalry. For herein seen noble chivalry, courtesy, friendship, hardness, love, fr cowardice, murder, hate, virt sin. Do after the good and evil, and it shall bring you fame and renowne. And for the time this book shall be pleasant read in, but for to give faith all that is true that is contained ye be at your liberty: but all is for our doctrine, and for to bewe we fall not to vice nor sin, but wise and follow virtue, by the what may come and attain to god and renown in this life, and a short and transitory life to which everlasting bliss in heaven; th He grant us that reigneth in the blessed Trinity. Amen.
n to proceed forth in this said
the which I direct unto all noble
s, lords and ladies, gentlemen or
women, that desire to read or hear
f the noble and joyous history of
cat conqueror and excellent king,
Arthur; sometime king of this
realm, then called Britain; I,
m Caxton, simple person, present
book following, which I have en-
to imprint: and treateth of the
acts, feats of arms of chivalry,
s, hardiness, humanity, love,
sy, and very gentleness, with
wonderful histories and adven-
And for to understand briefly
content of this volume, I have
it into XXI Books, and every
chaptered, as hereafter shall be
grace follow. The First Book
treathow Uther Pendragon gat
oble conqueror king Arthur, and
neth xxviii chapters. The Second
treatheth of Balin the noble knight,
containeth xix chapters. The Third
treatheth of the marriage of king
r to queen Guenever, with other
s, and containeth xv chapters. The
Book, how Merlin was assotted,
war made to king Arthur, and
neth xxix chapters. The Fifth
treatheth of the conquest of Lucius
aperor, and containeth xii chap-
The Sixth Book treatheth of Sir
elot and Sir Lionel, and marvel-
ventures, and containeth xviii
rs. The Seventh Book treatheth
oble knight called Sir Gareth, and
by Sir Kay Beaumains, and
neth xxxvi chapters. The Eighth
treatheth of the birth of Sir Tristram
the noble knight, and of his acts, and
containeth xli chapters. The Ninth
Book treatheth of a knight named by
Sir Kay Le Cote male taille, and also
of Sir Tristram, and containeth xiv
chapters. The Tenth Book treatheth
of Sir Tristram, and other marvellous
adventures, and containeth lxxxviii
chapters. The Eleventh Book treatheth of Sir
Launcelot and Sir Galahad, and
containeth xiv chapters. The Twelfth
Book treatheth of Sir Launcelot and his
madness, and containeth xiv chapters.
The Thirteenth Book treatheth how Gala-
had came first to king Arthur's court,
and the quest how the Sangreal was
begun, and containeth xx chapters. The
Fourteenth Book treatheth of the quest
of the Sangreal, and containeth x chapters.
The Fifteenth Book treatheth of Sir
Launcelot, and containeth vi chapters.
The Sixteenth Book treatheth of Sir Bors and Sir Lionel his brother, and
containeth xvii chapters. The Seventeenth Book treatheth of the Sangreal,
and containeth xxxiii chapters. The Eighteenth Book treatheth of Sir Laun-
celot and the queen, and containeth
xv chapters. The Nineteenth Book
treatheth of queen Guenever and Laun-
celot, and containeth xiii chapters. The
Twentieth Book treatheth of the piteous
death of Arthur, and containeth xxi
chapters. The Twenty-first Book treatheth of his last departing, and how Sir Launcelot
came to revenge his death, and containeth
xiii chapters. The sum is twenty-one
books, which contain the sum of five
hundred and seven chapters, as more
plainly shall follow hereafter.
The Table or Rubrysshe

of the

Content of Chapters.

Shortly of the First Book of King Arthur.

First how Uther Pendragon sent for the duke of Cornwall and Igraine his wife, and of their departing suddenly again. Chap. i.

How Uther Pendragon made war on the duke of Cornwall, and how by the means of Merlin he made the duchess his queen. Chap. ii.

Of the birth of king Arthur, and of his nouriture, and of the death of king Uther Pendragon; and how Arthur was chosen king; and of wonders and marvels of a sword that was taken out of a stone by the said Arthur. Chap. iii.

How king Arthur pulled out the sword divers times. Chap. iv.

How king Arthur was crowned and how he made officers. Chap. v.

How king Arthur held in Wales, at a Pentecost, a great feast, and what kings and lords came to his feast. Chap. vi.

Of the first war that king Arthur had, and how he won the field. Chap. vii.

How Merlin counselled king Arthur to send for king Ban and king Bors, and of their counsel taken for the war. Chap. viii.

Of a great tourney made by king Arthur and the two kings Ban and Bors, and how they went over the sea. Chap. ix.

How eleven kings gathered a great host against king Arthur. Chap. x.

Of a dream of the king with the hundred knights. Chap. xi.

How the eleven kings with their host fought against Arthur and his host, and many great feats of the war. Chap. xii.

Yet of the same battle. Chap. xiii.

Yet more of the same battle. Chap. xiv.

Yet more of the said battle, and how it was ended by Merlin. Chap. xv.

How king Arthur, king Ban, and king Bors rescued king Leodegrance, and other incidents. Chap. xvi.

How king Arthur rode to Carlion, and of his dream, and how he saw the questing beast. Chap. xvii.

How king Pellinore took Arthur’s horse and followed the questing beast, and how Merlin met with Arthur. Chap. xviii.

How Ulfius appeached queen Igraine, Arthur’s mother, of treason; and how a knight came and desired to have the death of his master revenged. Chap. xix.

How Grislet was made knight and justed with a knight. Chap. xx.

How twelve knights came from Rome and asked truage for this land of Arthur, and how Arthur fought with a knight. Chap. xxi.
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How Merlin saved Arthur's life, and threw an enchantment upon king Pel-linore, and made him to sleep.</td>
<td>xxii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Arthur by the mean of Merlin got Excalibur his sword of the Lady of the Lake.</td>
<td>xxiii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How tidings came to Arthur that king Ryons had overcome eleven kings, and how he desired Arthur's beard to trim his mantle.</td>
<td>xxiv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How all the children were sent for that were born on May-day, and how Mordred was saved.</td>
<td>xxv.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## The Second Book

Of a damsel which came girded with a sword, for to find a man of such virtue to draw it out of the scabbard.  
Chap. i.

How Balin, arrayed like a poor knight, pulled out the sword, which afterward was cause of his death.  
Chap. ii.

How the Lady of the Lake demanded the knight's head that had won the sword, or the maiden's head.  
Chap. iii.

How Merlin told the adventure of this damsel.  
Chap. iv.

How Balin was pursued by Sir Lanceor, knight of Ireland, and how he justified and slew him.  
Chap. v.

How a damsel which was love to Lanceor, slew herself for love, and how Balin met with his brother Balan.  
Chap. vi.

How a dwarf reproved Balin for the death of Lanceor, and how king Mark of Cornwall found them, and made a tomb over them.  
Chap. vii.

How Merlin prophesied that two the best knights of the world should fight there, which were Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram.  
Chap. viii.

How Balin and his brother, by the counsel of Merlin, took king Ryons and brought him to king Arthur.  
Chap. ix.

How king Arthur had a battle against Nero and king Lot of Orkney; and how king Lot was deceived by Merlin, and how twelve kings were slain.  
Chap. x.

Of the interment of twelve kings, and of the prophecy of Merlin how Balin should give the dolorous stroke.  
Chap. xi.

How a sorrowful knight came tofore Arthur, and how Balin fetched him, and how that knight was slain by a knight invisible.  
Chap. xii.

How Balin and the damsel met with a knight which was in like wise slain, and how the damsel bled for the custom of a castle.  
Chap. xiii.

How Balin met with that knight named Garlon at a feast, and there he slew him to have his blood to heal there-with the son of his host.  
Chap. xiv.

How Balin fought with king Pellam, and how his sword brake, and how he gat a spear, wherewith he smote the dolorous stroke.  
Chap. xv.

How Balin was delivered by Merlin, and saved a knight that would have slain himself for love.  
Chap. xvi.

How that knight slew his love, and a knight with her; and after how he slew himself with his own sword, and how Balin rode toward a castle where he lost his life.  
Chap. xvii.

How Balin met with his brother Balan, and how each of them slew other unknown, till they were wounded to death.  
Chap. xviii.

How Merlin buried them both in one tomb, and of Balin's sword.  
Chap. xix.
Here follow the Chapters of the Third Book.

How king Arthur took a wife, and wedded Guenever daughter to Leodegrance, king of the land of Cameliard, with whom he had the Round Table.  
Chap. i.  
How the knights of the Round Table were ordained and their siege blessed by the bishop of Canterbury.  
Chap. ii.  
How a poor man riding upon a lean mare desired of king Arthur to make his son knight.  
Chap. iii.  
How Sir Tor was known for son of king Pellinore, and how Gawaine was made knight.  
Chap. iv.  
How at the feast of the wedding of king Arthur to Guenever, a white hart came into the hall, and thirty couple hounds, and how a brachet pinched the hart, which was taken away.  
Chap. v.  
How Sir Gawaine rode for to fetch again the hart, and how two brethren fought each against other for the hart.  
Chap. vi.  
How the hart was chased into a castle, and there slain; and how Gawaine slew a lady.  
Chap. vii.  
How four knights fought against Sir Gawaine and Gaheris, and how they were overcome and their lives saved at the request of four ladies.  
Chap. viii.  
How Sir Tor rode after the knight with the brachet, and of his adventure by the way.  
Chap. ix.  
How Sir Tor found the brachet with a lady, and how a knight assailed him for the said brachet.  
Chap. x.  
How Sir Tor overcame the knight, and how he lost his head at the request of a lady.  
Chap. xi.  
How king Pellinore rode after the lady and the knight that led her away, and how a lady desired help of him; and how he fought with two knights for that lady, of whom he slew that one at the first stroke.  
Chap. xii.  
How king Pellinore got the lady, and brought her to Camelot to the court of king Arthur.  
Chap. xiii.  
How on the way he heard two knights as he lay by night in a valley, and of other adventures.  
Chap. xiv.  
How when he was come to Camelot he was sworn upon a book to tell the truth of his quest.  
Chap. xv.  

Here follow the Chapters of the Fourth Book.

How Merlin was assotted, and doted on one of the ladies of the lake, and how he was shut in a rock under a stone, and there died.  
Chap. i.  
How five kings came into this land to war against king Arthur, and what counsel Arthur had against them.  
Chap. ii.  
How king Arthur had ado with them, and overthrew them, and slew the five kings, and made the remnant to flee.  
Chap. iii.  
How the battle was finished or he came, and how the king founded an abbey where the battle was.  
Chap. iv.  
How Sir Tor was made knight of the Round Table, and how Bagdemagus was displeased.  
Chap. v.  
How king Arthur, king Uriens, and Sir Accolon of Gaul chased an hart, and of their marvellous adventure.  
Chap. vi.  
How Arthur took upon him to fight, to be delivered out of prison, and also for to deliver twenty knights that were in prison.  
Chap. vii.  
How Accolon found himself by a well, and he took upon him to do battle against Arthur.  
Chap. viii.  
Of the battle between king Arthur and Accolon.  
Chap. ix.  
How king Arthur's sword that he fought
with brake, and how he recovered of Accolon his own sword Excalibur, and overcame his enemy. Chap. x.

How Accolon confessed the treason of Morgan le fay, king Arthur's sister, and how she would have done slay him. Chap. xi.

How Arthur accorded the two brethren, and delivered the twenty knights, and how Sir Accolon died. Chap. xii.

How Morgan would have slain Sir Uriens her husband, and how Sir Ewain her son saved him. Chap. xiii.

How queen Morgan le fay made great sorrow for the death of Accolon, and how she stole away the scabbard from Arthur. Chap. xiv.

How Morgan le fay saved a knight that should have been drowned, and how king Arthur returned home again. Chap. xv.

How the damsel of the lake saved king Arthur from a mantle which should have burnt him. Chap. xvi.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Ewain met with twelve fair damsels, and how they complained on Sir Marhaus. Chap. xvii.

How Sir Marhaus justed with Sir Gawaine and Sir Ewain, and overthrew them both. Chap. xviii.

How Sir Marhaus, Sir Gawaine, and Sir Ewain met three damsels, and each of them took one. Chap. xix.

How a knight and a dwarf strove for a lady. Chap. xx.

How king Pellaeas suffered himself to be taken prisoner because he would have a sight of his lady, and how Sir Gawaine promised him for to get to him the love of his lady. Chap. xxi.

How Sir Gawaine came to the lady Ettard, and how Sir Pellaeas found them sleeping. Chap. xxii.

How Sir Pellaeas loved no more Ettard, by the mean of the damsel of the lake, whom he loved ever after. Chap. xxiii.

How Sir Marhaus rode with the damsel, and how he came to the duke of the South Marches. Chap. xxiv.

How Sir Marhaus fought with the duke and his six sons, and made them to yield them. Chap. xxv.

How Sir Ewain rode with the damsel of sixty year of age, and how he gat the prize at tourneying. Chap. xxvi.

How Sir Ewain fought with two knights, and overcame them. Chap. xxvii.

How at the year's end all three knights with their three damsels met at the fountain. Chap. xxviii.

How twelve aged ambassadors of Rome came to king Arthur to demand truage for Britain. Chap. i.

How the kings and lords promised to king Arthur aid and help against the Romans. Chap. ii.

How king Arthur held a parliament at York, and how he ordained how the realm should be governed in his absence. Chap. iii.

How king Arthur being shipped, and lying in his cabin, had a marvellous dream, and of the exposition thereof. Chap. iv.

How a man of the country told to him of a marvellous giant, and how he fought and conquered him. Chap. v.

How king Arthur sent Sir Gawaine and other to Lucius, and how they were assailed and escaped with worship. Chap. vi.

How Lucius sent certain spies in a bushment, for to have taken his knights, being prisoners, and how they were letted. Chap. vii.

How a senator told to Lucius of their discomfort, and also of the great battle between Arthur and Lucius. Chap. viii.

How Arthur, after he had achieved the battle against the Romans, entered into Almaine, and so into Italy. Chap. ix.

Of a battle done by Gawaine against
# CONTENTS

| Chap. x. | How Sir Gawaine returned to King Arthur with his prisoners, and how the king won a city, and how he was crowned emperor. |
| Chap. xi. | How the Saracens came out of a wood for to rescue their beasts, and of a great battle. |
| Chap. i. | How Sir Launcelot and Sir Lionel departed from the court for to seek adventures, and how Sir Lionel left him sleeping, and was taken. |
| Chap. ii. | How Sir Ector followed for to seek Sir Launcelot, and how he was taken by Sir Turquine. |
| Chap. iii. | How four queens found Launcelot sleeping, and how by enchantment he was taken and led into a castle. |
| Chap. iv. | How Sir Launcelot was delivered by the mean of a damsel. |
| Chap. v. | How a knight found Sir Launcelot, and how Sir Launcelot fought with the knight. |
| Chap. vi. | How Sir Launcelot was received of king Bagdemagus’s daughter, and he made his complaint to her father. |
| Chap. vii. | How Sir Launcelot behaved him in a tournament, and how he met with Sir Turquine leading Sir Gaheris. |
| Chap. viii. | How Sir Launcelot and Sir Turquine fought together. |
| Chap. ix. | How Sir Turquine was slain, and how Sir Launcelot bad Sir Gaheris deliver all the prisoners. |
| Chap. x. | How Sir Launcelot rode with the damsel and slew a knight that distressed all ladies, and also a villain that kept a bridge. |
| Chap. xi. | How Sir Launcelot slew two giants, and made a castle free. |
| Chap. xii. | How Sir Launcelot rode disguised in Sir Kay’s harness, and how he smote down a knight. |
| Chap. xiii. | How Sir Launcelot jousted against four knights of the Round Table, and overthrew them. |
| Chap. xiv. | How Sir Launcelot followed a bracket into a castle, where he found a dead knight, and how he after was required of a damsel to heal her brother. |
| Chap. xv. | How Sir Launcelot came into the Chapel Perilous, and gat there of a dead corpse a piece of the cloth and a sword. |
| Chap. xvi. | How Sir Launcelot, at the request of a lady, recovered a falcon, by which he was deceived. |
| Chap. xvii. | How Sir Launcelot overtook a knight which chased his wife to have slain her, and how he said to him. |
| Chap. xviii. | How Sir Launcelot came to king Arthur’s court, and how there were recounted all his noble feats and acts. |

---

## Here follow the Chapters of the Sixth Book.

<p>| Chap. i. | How Beaumains came to king Arthur’s court, and demanded three petitions of king Arthur. |
| Chap. ii. | How Beaumains desired the battle, and how it was granted to him, and how he desired to be made knight of Sir Launcelot. |
| Chap. iii. | How Beaumains departed, and how he gat of Sir Kay a spear and a shield, and how he justed and fought with Sir Launcelot. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS.</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Beaumains told to Sir Launcelot to come, and how he was dubbed Sir Launcelot, and afterook the damsel.</td>
<td>Chap. v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Beaumains fought and slew nights at a passage.</td>
<td>Chap. vi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beaumains fought with the knight: black lands, and fought with all he fell down and died.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chap. vii.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The brother of the knight that was met with Beaumains, and fought Beaumains till he was yielded.</td>
<td>Chap. viii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The damsel ever rebuked Beaumains, and would not suffer him to her table, but called him kitchen</td>
<td>Chap. ix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The third brother, called the red knight, jousted and fought against Beaumains, and how Beaumains overcame him.</td>
<td>Chap. x.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Beaumains suffered great rest of the damsel, and he suffered grievously.</td>
<td>Chap. xi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Beaumains fought with Sir of inde, and made him to be m.</td>
<td>Chap. xii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodly communication between servants and Beaumains, and how told him that his name was Sir G.</td>
<td>Chap. xiii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The lady that was besieged had from her sister how she had fought a knight to fight for her, and battles he had achieved.</td>
<td>Chap. xiv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The damsel and Beaumains came to a siege, and came to a sycamore and there Beaumains blew an and then the knight of the red came to fight with him.</td>
<td>Chap. xv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The two knights met together, and their talking, and how they began battle.</td>
<td>Chap. xvi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After long fighting Beaumains overthrew the knight and would have slain him, but at the request of the lords saved his life, and made him to him to the lady.</td>
<td>Chap. xvii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The knight yielded him, and how Beaumains made him to go unto king Arthur's court, and to cry Sir Launcelot mercy.</td>
<td>Chap. xviii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Beaumains came to the lady, and when he came to the castle the gates were closed against him, and of the words that the lady said to him.</td>
<td>Chap. xix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Sir Beaumains rode after to rescue his dwarf, and came into the castle where he was.</td>
<td>Chap. xx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Sir Gareth, otherwise called Beaumains, came to the presence of his lady, and how they took acquaintance, and of their love.</td>
<td>Chap. xxi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How at night came an armed knight, and fought with Sir Gareth, and how sore hurt in the thigh, smote off the knight's head.</td>
<td>Chap. xxii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How the said knight came again the next night, and was beheaded again.</td>
<td>Chap. xxiii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And how at the feast of Pentecost all the knights that Sir Gareth had overcome came and yielded them to king Arthur.</td>
<td>Chap. xxiv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How king Arthur pardoned them, and demanded of them where Sir Gareth was.</td>
<td>Chap. xxv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How the queen of Orkney came to this feast of Pentecost, and Sir Gawaine and his brethren came to ask her blessing.</td>
<td>Chap. xxvi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How king Arthur sent for the lady Liones, and how she let cry a tourney at her castle, where as came many knights.</td>
<td>Chap. xxvii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How king Arthur went to the tournament with his knights, and how the lady received him worshipfully, and how the knights encountered.</td>
<td>Chap. xxviii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How the knights bare them in battle.</td>
<td>Chap. xxix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yet of the said tournament.</td>
<td>Chap. xxx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Sir Gareth was espied by the heralds, and how he escaped out of the field.</td>
<td>Chap. xxxi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Sir Gareth came to a castle where he was well lodged, and how he joined with a knight and slew him.</td>
<td>Chap. xxxii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Sir Gareth fought with a knight that held within his castle thirty ladies, and how he slew him.</td>
<td>Chap. xxxiii.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Here follow the Chapters of the Eighth Book.

How Sir Tristram de Liones was born, and how his mother died at his birth, wherefore she named him Tristram. Chap. i.

How the step-mother of Sir Tristram had ordained poison for to have poisoned Sir Tristram. Chap. ii.

How Sir Tristram was sent into France, and had one to govern him named Gouvernail, and how he learned to harp, hawk, and hunt. Chap. iii.

How Sir Marhaus came out of Ireland for to ask truage of Cornwall, or else he would fight therefore. Chap. iv.

How Tristram enterprized the battle to fight for the truage of Cornwall, and how he was made knight. Chap. v.

How Sir Tristram arrived into the island for to furnish the battle with Sir Marhaus. Chap. vi.

How Sir Tristram fought against Sir Marhaus, and achieved his battle, and how Sir Marhaus fled to his ship. Chap. vii.

How Sir Marhaus, after that he was arrived in Ireland, died of the stroke that Tristram had given to him, and how Tristram was hurt. Chap. viii.

How Sir Tristram was put to the keeping of La Beale Isoud, for to be healed of his wound. Chap. ix.

How Sir Tristram won the degree at a tournament in Ireland, and there made Palamides to bear no harness in a year. Chap. x.

How the queen espied that Sir Tristram had slain her brother, Sir Marhaus, by his sword, and in what jeopardy he was. Chap. xi.

How Sir Tristram departed from the king and La Beale Isoud out of Ireland for to come into Cornwall. Chap. xii.

How Sir Tristram and king Mark hurt each other for the love of a knight’s wife. Chap. xiii.

How Sir Tristram came to the lady, and how her husband fought with Sir Tristram. Chap. xiv.

How Sir Bleoberis demanded the fairest lady in king Mark’s court, whom he took away, and how he was fought with. Chap. xv.

How Sir Tristram fought with two knights of the Round Table. Chap. xvi.

How Sir Tristram fought with Sir Bleoberis for a lady, and how the lady was put to choice to whom she would go. Chap. xvii.

How the lady forsook Sir Tristram and abode with Sir Bleoberis, and how she desired to go to her husband. Chap. xviii.

How king Mark sent Sir Tristram for La Beale Isoud toward Ireland, and how by fortune he arrived into England. Chap. xix.

How king Anguish of Ireland was summoned to come to king Arthur’s court for treason. Chap. xx.

How Sir Tristram rescued a child from a knight, and how Gouvernail told him of king Anguish. Chap. xxi.

How Sir Tristram fought for Sir Anguish and overcame his adversary, and how his adversary would never yield him. Chap. xxii.

How Sir Blamor desired Tristram to slay him, and how Sir Tristram spared
CONTENTS.

him, and how they took appoint-
ment. Chap. xxiii.
How Sir Tristram demanded La Beale
Isoud for king Mark, and how Sir
Tristram and Isoud drank the love
drink. Chap. xxiv.
How Sir Tristram and Isoud were in
prison, and how he fought for her
beauty, and smote off another lady’s
head. Chap. xxv.
How Sir Tristram fought with Sir
Brennor, and at the last smote off
his head. Chap. xxvi.
How Sir Galahad fought with Sir Tris-
tram, and how Sir Tristram yielded
him and promised to fellowship with
Launcelot. Chap. xxvii.
How Sir Launcelot met with Sir Carados
bearing away Sir Gawaine, and of the
rescue of Sir Gawaine. Chap. xxviii.
Of the wedding of king Mark to La
Beale Isoud, and of Bragwaine her
maid, and of Palamides. Chap. xxix.
How Palamides demanded queen Isoud,
and how Lambegus rode after to
rescue her, and of the escape of
Isoud. Chap. xxx.
How Sir Tristram rode after Palamides,
and how he found him and fought
with him, and by the mean of Isoud
the battle ceased. Chap. xxxi.
How Sir Tristram brought queen Isoud
home, and of the debate of king Mark
and Sir Tristram. Chap. xxxii.
How Sir Lamorak justed with thirty
knights, and Sir Tristram at the re-
quest of king Mark smote his horse
down. Chap. xxxiii.
How Sir Lamorak sent an horn to
king Mark in despite of Sir Tristram,
and how Sir Tristram was driven into
a chapel. Chap. xxxiv.
How Sir Tristram was holpen by his
men, and of queen Isoud, which was
put in a lazarcote, and how Tristram
was hurt. Chap. xxxv.
How Sir Tristram served in war the
king Howell of Britain and slew his
adversary in the field. Chap. xxxvi.
How Sir Suppinables told Sir Tristram
how he was defamed in the court of
king Arthur, and of Sir Lamorak.
Chap. xxxvii.
How Sir Tristram and his wife arrived
in Wales, and how he met there with
Sir Lamorak. Chap. xxxviii.
How Sir Tristram fought with Sir Na-
bon and overcame him, and made Sir
Lamorak lord of the isle. Chap. xxxix.
How Sir Lamorak departed from Sir
Tristram, and how he met with Sir
Frol, and after with Sir Launcelot.
Chap. xl.
How Sir Lamorak slew Sir Frol, and
of the courteous fighting with Sir
Belliance his brother. Chap. xli.

Here follow the Chapters of the Ninth Book.

How a young man came into the court
of king Arthur, and how Sir Kay
called him in scorn La Cote Male
Talie. Chap. i.
How a damsel came unto the court and
desired a knight to take on him an
inquest, which La Cote Male Talie
embriziz. Chap. ii.
How La Cote Male Talie overthrew
Sir Dagonet the king’s fool, and of
the rebuke that he had of the damsel.
Chap. iii.
How La Cote Male Talie fought against
an hundred knights, and how he
escaped by the mean of a lady.
Chap. iv.
How Sir Launcelot came to the court
and heard of La Cote Male Talie,
and how he followed after him, and
how La Cote Male Talie was prisoner.
Chap. v.
How Sir Launcelot fought with six
knights, and after with Sir Brian, and
how he delivered the prisoners.
Chap. vi.
How Sir Launcelot met with the damsel
named Maledisant, and named her the damsel Bienpensant. Chap. vii.
How La Cote Male Taille was taken prisoner, and after rescued by Sir Launcelet, and how Sir Launcelet overcame four brethren. Chap. viii.
How Sir Launcelet made La Cote Male Taille lord of the castle of Pendragon, and after was made knight of the Round Table. Chap. ix.
How La Beale Isoud sent letters unto Sir Tristram by her maid Bragwaine, and of divers adventures of Sir Tristram. Chap. x.
How Sir Tristram met with Sir Lamorak de Galis, and how they fought, and after accorded never to fight together. Chap. xi.
How Sir Palamides followed the questing beast, and how he smote down both Sir Tristram and Sir Lamorak with one spear. Chap. xii.
How Sir Lamorak met with Sir Meliagance, and fought together for the beauty of queen Guenever. Chap. xiii.
How Sir Kay met with Sir Tristram, and after of the shame spoken of the knights of Cornwall, and how they justed. Chap. xv.
How king Arthur was brought into the Forest Perilous, and how Sir Tristram saved his life. Chap. xvi.
How Sir Tristram came to La Beale Isoud, and how Kehydus began to love La Beale Isoud, and of a letter that Tristram found. Chap. xvii.
How Sir Tristram departed from Tintagil, and how he sorrowed, and was so long in a forest till he was out of his mind. Chap. xviii.
How Sir Tristram souse Dagonet in a well, and how Palamides sent a damsel to seek Tristram, and how Palamides met with king Mark. Chap. xix.
How it was noised how Sir Tristram was dead, and how La Beale Isoud would have slain herself. Chap. xx.
How king Mark found Sir Tristram naked, and made him to be brought home to Tintagil, and how there known by a brachet. Chap.
How king Mark, by the advice of his council, banished Sir Tristram of Cornwall the term of ten years. Chap.
How a damsel sought help to Sir Launcelet against thirty knights. Chap.
How Sir Tristram and Sir Launcelet came to a lodging where they were lodged just with two knights. Chap.
How Sir Tristram justed with Sir Sagramor le Desiro, and of how Sir Gawaine turned Sir Tristram from Morgan le Fay. Chap.
How Sir Tristram and Sir Gawaine had two battles to have fought against the two knights, but they durst not come. Chap.
How damsel Bragwaine found Sir Tristram sleeping by a well, and how she delivered letters to him from Beale. Chap.
How Sir Tristram had a fall of Palamides, and how Launcelot overthrew him, and laid him on the ground, and he was assailed with twelve knights. Chap.
How Sir Tristram behaved himself that day of the tournament, and that day he had the prize. Chap.
How Sir Tristram returned again to Arthur's party, because he was assailed by Palamides on that party. Chap.
How Sir Tristram found Palamides asleep at a well, and brought him with him to his lodging. Chap.
How Sir Tristram smote down the twelve Palamides, and how he justed with Arthur, and other feats. Chap.
How Sir Launcelot hurt Sir Tristram, and how after Sir Tristram smote down Sir Palamides. Chap.
How the prize of the third day was given to Sir Launcelot, and Sir Launcelot gave it unto Sir Tristram. Chap.
How Sir Palamides came to the castle where Sir Tristram was, and of the quest that Sir Launcelot and ten knights made for Sir Tristram.

Chap. xxxvi.

How Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan were taken and put in prison.

Chap. xxxvii.

How king Mark was sorry for the good renown of Sir Tristram: some of Arthur's knights justed with knights of Cornwall.

Chap. xxxviii.

Of the treason of king Mark, and how Sir Gaheris smote him down, and Andred his cousin.

Chap. xxxix.

How after that Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan had been long in prison they were delivered.

Chap. xli.

How Sir Dinadan rescued a lady from Sir Breuse Saunce Pite, and how Sir Tristram received a shield of Morgan le Fay.

Chap. xlii.

How Sir Tristram took with him the shield, and also how he slew the paramour of Morgan le Fay.

Chap. xliii.

How Morgan le Fay buried her paramour, and how Sir Tristram praised Sir Launcelot and his kin.

Chap. xliv.

How Sir Tristram at a tournament bare the shield that Morgan le Fay had delivered him.

Chap. xlv.

Here follow the Chapters of the Tenth Book.

How Sir Tristram justed and smote down king Arthur, because he told him not the cause why he bare that shield.

Chap. i.

How Sir Tristram saved Sir Palamides' life, and how they promised to fight, together within a fortnight.

Chap. ii.

How Sir Tristram sought a strong knight that had smitten him down, and many other knights of the Round Table.

Chap. iii.

How Sir Tristram smote down Sir Sangoram le Desirous, and Sir Dodinas le Savage.

Chap. iv.

How Sir Tristram met at the perron with Sir Launcelot, and how they fought together unknown.

Chap. v.

How Sir Launcelot brought Sir Tristram to the court, and of the great joy that the king and other made for the coming of Sir Tristram.

Chap. vi.

How for despite of Sir Tristram king Mark came with two knights into England, and how he slew one of the knights.

Chap. vii.

How king Mark came to a fountain where he found Sir Lamorak complaining for the love of king Lot's wife.

Chap. viii.

How king Mark, Sir Lamorak, and Sir Dinadan came to a castle, and how king Mark was known there.

Chap. ix.

How Sir Berluse met with king Mark, and how Sir Dinadan took his part.

Chap. x.

How king Mark mocked Sir Dinadan, and how they met with six knights of the Round Table.

Chap. xi.

How the six knights sent Sir Dagonet to just with king Mark, and how king Mark refused him.

Chap. xii.

How Sir Palamides by adventure met king Mark flying, and how he overthrew Dagonet and other knights.

Chap. xiii.

How king Mark and Sir Dinadan heard Sir Palamides making great sorrow and mourning for La Beale Isoud.

Chap. xiv.

How king Mark had slain Sir Amant wrongfully tofore king Arthur, and Sir Launcelot fetched king Mark to king Arthur.

Chap. xv.

How Sir Dinadan told Sir Palamides of the battle between Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram.

Chap. xvi.

How Sir Lamorak justed with divers knights of the castle, wherein was Morgan le Fay.

Chap. xvii.

How Sir Palamides would have justed...
for Sir Lamorak with the knights of the castle. Chap. xviii.
How Sir Lamorak justed with Sir Palamides and hurt him grievously. Chap. xix.
How it was told Sir Launcelot that Dagonet chased king Mark, and how a knight overthrew him and six knights. Chap. xx.
How king Arthur let do cry a justs, and how Sir Lamorak came in and overthrew Sir Gawaine and many other. Chap. xxi.
How king Arthur made king Mark to be accorded with Sir Tristram, and how they departed toward Cornwall. Chap. xxii.
How Sir Percivale was made knight of king Arthur, and how a dumb maid spake, and brought him to the Round Table. Chap. xxiii.
How Sir Lamorak visited king Lot’s wife, and how Sir Gaheris slew her which was his own mother. Chap. xxiv.
How Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred met with a knight fleeing, and how they both were overthrown, and of Sir Dinadan. Chap. xxv.
How king Arthur, the queen, and Launcelot received letters out of Cornwall, and of the answer again. Chap. xxvi.
How Sir Launcelot was wroth with the letter that he received from king Mark, and of Dinadan, which made a lay of king Mark. Chap. xxxvii.
How Sir Tristram was hurt, and of a war made to king Mark; and of Sir Tristram, how he promised to rescue him. Chap. xxviii.
How Sir Tristram overcame the battle, and how Elias desired a man to fight body for body. Chap. xxix.
How Sir Elias and Sir Tristram fought together for the truage, and how Sir Tristram slew Elias in the field. Chap. xxx.
How at a great feast that king Mark made, an harper came and sang the lay that Dinadan had made. Chap. xxxi.
How king Mark slew by treason his brother Boudwin, for good service that he had done to him. Chap. xxxii.
How Anglides, Boudwin’s wife, escaped with her young son, Alisander le Orphelin, and came to the castle of Arundel. Chap. xxxiii.
How Anglides gave the bloody doublet to Alisander her son the same day that he was made knight, and the charge withal. Chap. xxxiv.
How it was told to king Mark of Alisander, and how he would have slain Sir Sadok for saving of his life. Chap. xxxv.
How Sir Alisander wan the prize at a tournament, and of Morgan le Fay; and how he fought with Sir Malgma and slew him. Chap. xxxvi.
How queen Morgan le Fay had Alisander in her castle, and how she healed his wounds. Chap. xxxvii.
How Alisander was delivered from the queen Morgan le Fay by the means of a damsel. Chap. xxxviii.
How Alisander met with Alice la Bele Pilgrim, and how he justed with two knights; and after of him and of Sir Mordred. Chap. xxxix.
How Sir Galahalt did do cry a justs in Surluse, and queen Gueneve’s knights should just against all that would come. Chap. xl.
How Sir Launcelot fought in the tournament, and how Sir Palamides did arms there for a damsel. Chap. xli.
Of the third day, and how Sir Palamides justed with Sir Lamorak, and other things. Chap. xliv.
Of the fourth day, and of many great feats of arms. Chap. xlv.
Of the fifth day, and how Sir Lamorak behaved him. Chap. xlvii.
How Sir Palamides fought with Corsabrin for a lady, and how Palamides slew Corsabrin. Chap. xlviii.
Of the sixth day, and what then was done. Chap. xlviii.

Of the seventh battle, and how Sir Launcelot, being disguised like a maid, smote down Sir Dinadan. Chap. xlix.

How by treason Sir Tristram was brought to a tournament for to have been slain, and how he was put in prison. Chap. 1.

How king Mark let do counterfeit letters from the Pope, and how Sir Percivale delivered Sir Tristram out of prison. Chap. li.

How Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud came into England, and how Sir Launcelot brought them to Joyous Gard. Chap. lii.

How by the counsel of La Beale Isoud Sir Tristram rode armed, and how he met with Sir Palamides. Chap. liii.

Of Sir Palamides, and how he met with Sir Bleoberis and with Sir Ector, and of Sir Percivale. Chap. liv.

How Sir Tristram met with Sir Dinadan, and of their devices, and what he said to Sir Gawaine's brethren. Chap. lv.

How Sir Tristram smote down Sir Agravaine and Sir Gaheris, and how Sir Dinadan was sent for by La Beale Isoud. Chap. lvi.

How Sir Dinadan met with Sir Tristram, and with justing with Sir Palamides Sir Dinadan knew him. Chap. lvii.

How they approached the castle Lonzep, and of other devices of the death of Sir Lamerak. Chap. lviii.

How they came to Humber bank, and how they found a ship there, wherein lay the body of king Hermance. Chap. lix.

How Sir Tristram with his fellowship came and were with an host which after fought with Sir Tristram; and other matters. Chap. lxi.

How Palamides went for to fight with two brethren for the death of king Hermance. Chap. lx.

The copy of the letter written for to revenge the king's death, and how Sir Palamides fought for to have the battle. Chap. lxii.

Of the preparation of Sir Palamides and the two brethren that should fight with him. Chap. lxiii.

Of the battle between Sir Palamides and the two brethren, and how the two brethren were slain. Chap. lxiv.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides met Breuse Saunce Pite, and how Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud went unto Lonzep. Chap. lxv.

How Sir Palamides justed with Sir Galihodin and after with Sir Gawaine, and smote them down. Chap. lxvi.

How Sir Tristram and his fellowship came unto the tournament of Lonzep; and of divers justs and matters. Chap. lxvii.

How Sir Tristram and his fellowship justed, and of the noble feats that they did in that tourneying. Chap. lxviii.

How Sir Tristram was unhorsed and smitten down by Sir Launcelot, and after that Sir Tristram smote down king Arthur. Chap. lxix.

How Sir Tristram changed his harness and it was all red, and how he demeaned him, and how Sir Palamides slew Launcelot's horse. Chap. lxx.

How Sir Launcelot said to Sir Palamides, and how the prize of that day was given unto Sir Palamides. Chap. lxxi.

How Sir Dinadan provoked Sir Tristram to do well. Chap. lxxii.

How king Arthur and Sir Launcelot came to see La Beale Isoud, and how Palamides smote down king Arthur. Chap. lxxiii.

How the second day Palamides forsook Sir Tristram, and went to the contrary part against him. Chap. lxxiv.

How Sir Tristram departed out of the field, and awaked Sir Dinadan, and changed his array into black. Chap. lxxv.

How Sir Palamides changed his shield and his armour for to hurt Sir Tristram, and how Sir Launcelot did to Sir Tristram. Chap. lxxvi.

How Sir Tristram departed with La
Beale Isoud, and how Sir Palamides followed and excused him. Chap. lxxvii.

How king Arthur and Sir Launcelot came into their pavilions as they sat at supper, and of Palamides. Chap. lxxviii.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides did the next day, and how king Arthur was unhorsed. Chap. lxxxix.

How Sir Tristram turned to king Arthur’s side, and how Sir Palamides would not. Chap. lxx.

How Sir Bleoberis and Sir Ector reported to queen Guenever of the beauty of La Beale Isoud. Chap. lxxxi.

How Palamides complained by a well, and how Epinogris came and found him, and of their both sorrows. Chap. lxxxii.

How Sir Palamides brought to Sir Epinogris his lady, and how Sir Palamides and Sir Safire were assailed. Chap. lxxxiii.

How Sir Palamides and Sir Safire conducted Sir Epinogris to his castle, and of other adventures. Chap. lxxxiv.

How Sir Tristram made him ready to rescue Sir Palamides, but Sir Launcelot rescued him or he came. Chap. lxxxv.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Launcelot, with Palamides, came to joyous Gard, and of Palamides and Sir Tristram. Chap. lxxxvi.

How there was a day set between Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides for to fight, and how Sir Tristram was hurt. Chap. lxxxvii.

How Sir Palamides kept his day to have foughten but Sir Tristram might not come, and other things. Chap. lxxxviii.

---

**Here follow the Chapters of the Eleventh Book.**

How Sir Launcelot rode on his adventure, and how he helped a dolorous lady from her pain, and how that he fought with a dragon. Chap. i.

How Sir Launcelot came to Pelles, and of the Sangreal, and how he begat Galahad on Elaine, king Pelles’ daughter. Chap. ii.

How Sir Launcelot was displeased when he knew that he had been deceived, and how Galahad was born. Chap. iii.

How Sir Bors came to dame Elaine and saw Galahad, and how he was fed with the Sangreal. Chap. iv.

How Sir Bors made Sir Pedivere to yield him, and of marvellous adventures that he had, and how he achieved them. Chap. v.

How Sir Bors departed; and how Sir Launcelot was rebuked of the queen Guenever, and of his excuse. Chap. vi.

How dame Elaine, Galahad’s mother, came in great estate to Camelot, and how Sir Launcelot behaved him there. Chap. vii.

How dame Brisen by enchantment brought Sir Launcelot to Elaine, and how queen Guenever rebuked him. Chap. viii.

How dame Elaine was commanded by queen Guenever to avoid the court, and how Sir Launcelot became mad. Chap. ix.

What sorrow queen Guenever made for Sir Launcelot, and how he was sought by knights of his kin. Chap. x.

How a servant of Sir Aglovale was slain, and what vengeance Sir Aglovale and Sir Percivale did therefore. Chap. xi.

How Sir Percivale departed secretly from his brother, and how he loosed a knight bound with a chain; and of other things. Chap. xii.

How Sir Percivale met with Sir Ector, and how they fought long, and each had almost slain other. Chap. xiii.

How by miracle they were both made whole by the coming of the holy vessel of Sangreal. Chap. xiv.
Here follow the Chapters of the Twelfth Book.

Sir Launcelot in his madness took his ord and fought with a knight, after leapt into a bed. Chap. i.

Sir Launcelot was carried in an litter, and how Sir Launcelot ed Sir Bliaunt his host. Chap. ii.

Sir Launcelot fought against a and slew him, and how he was and brought to an hermitage. Chap. iii.

Sir Launcelot was known by dame e, and was borne into a chamber, after healed by the Sangreal. Chap. iv.

Sir Launcelot, after that he was e, and had his mind, he was ed, and how that Elaine desired le for him. Chap. v.

Sir Launcelot came into the Joysele, and there he named himself evaluator Mal Felt. Chap. vi.

Sir Tristram and Sir Percivale fought thither and Sir Percivale fought him. Chap. vii.

How each of them knew other, and of their courtesy; and how his brother Ector came unto him, and of their joy. Chap. viii.

How Sir Bors and Sir Lionel came to king Brandegore, and how Sir Bors took his son Helene le Blank, and of Sir Launcelot. Chap. ix.

How Sir Launcelot, with Sir Percivale and Sir Ector, came to the court, and of the great joy of him. Chap. x.

How La Beale Isoud counselled Sir Tristram to go unto the court to the great feast of Pentecost. Chap. xi.

How Sir Tristram departed unarmed and met with Sir Palamedes, and how they smote each other, and how Palamedes forbade him. Chap. xii.

How Sir Tristram got him harness of a knight which was hurt, and how he overthrew Sir Palamedes. Chap. xiii.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Palamedes fought long together, and after accorded; and how Sir Tristram made him to be christened. Chap. xiv.

Here follow the Chapters of the Thirteenth Book.

: the Vigil of the feast of Pent- entered into the hall before king ar a damsel, and desired Sir celot for to come and dub a rt, and how he went with her. Chap. i.

The letters were found written in siege Perilous, and of the mar- adventure of the sword in a . Chap. ii.

Sir Gawaine assayed to draw his sword, and how an old man ght in Galahad. Chap. iii.

The old man brought Galahad to siege Perilous, and set him therein, how all the knights marvelled. Chap. iv.

King Arthur shewed the stone hoving on the water to Galahad, and how he drew out the sword. Chap. v.

How king Arthur had all the knights together for to just in the meadow beside Winchester or they departed. Chap. vi.

How the queen desired to see Galahad; and after all the knights were replenished with the holy Sangreal, and how all they avowed the enquest of the same. Chap. vii.

How great sorrow was made of the king and ladies for the departing of the knights, and how they departed. Chap. viii.

How Galahad gat him a shield, and how they sped that presumed to take down the said shield. Chap. ix.
CONTENTS.

How Galahad departed with the shield, and how king Evelake had received this shield of Joseph of Aramathye. Chap. x.

How Joseph made a cross on the white shield with his blood, and how Galahad was by a monk brought to a tomb. Chap. xi.

Of the marvel that Sir Galahad saw and heard in the tomb, and how he made Melias knight. Chap. xii.

Of the adventure that Melias had, and how Galahad revenged him, and how Melias was carried into an abbey. Chap. xiii.

How Galahad departed, and how he was commanded to go to the castle of maidens to destroy the wicked custom. Chap. xiv.

How Sir Galahad fought with the knights of the castle, and destroyed the wicked custom. Chap. xv.

How Sir Gawaine came to the abbey for to follow Galahad, and how he was shriven to a hermit. Chap. xvi.

How Sir Galahad met with Sir Launcelot and with Sir Percivale, and smote them down, and departed from them. Chap. xvii.

How Sir Launcelot, half sleeping and half waking, saw a sick man borne in a litter, and how he was healed with the Sangreal. Chap. xviii.

How a voice spake to Sir Launcelot, and how he found his horse and his helm borne away, and after went afoot. Chap. xix.

How Sir Launcelot was shriven, and what sorrow he made; and of good ensamples which were shewed to him. Chap. xx.

Here follow the Chapters of the Fourteenth Book.

How Sir Percivale came to a recluse and asked counsel, and how she told him that she was his aunt. Chap. i.

How Merlin likened the Round Table to the world, and how the knights that should achieve the Sangreal should be known. Chap. ii.

How Sir Percivale came into a monastery where he found king Evelake, which was an old man. Chap. iii.

How Sir Percivale saw many men of arms bearing a dead knight, and how he fought against them. Chap. iv.

How a yeoman desired him to get again an horse, and how Sir Percivale’s hackney was slain, and how he got an horse. Chap. v.

Of the great danger that Sir Percivale was in by his horse, and how he saw a serpent and a lion fight. Chap. vi.

Of the vision that Sir Percivale saw, and how his vision was expounded, and of his lion. Chap. vii.

How Sir Percivale saw a ship coming to him-ward, and how the lady of the ship told him of her disherittance. Chap. viii.

How Sir Percivale promised her help, and how he required her of love, and how he was saved from the fiend. Chap. ix.

How Sir Percivale for penance rowed himself through the thigh; and how she was known for the devil. Chap. x.
followeth the Fifteenth Book, which is of Sir Launcelot.

Launcelot came into a chapel, he found dead, in a white shirt, of religion of an hundred wind.
Chap. i.
and man, how men would have him, and it would not be; and Sir Launcelot took the hair of man.
Chap. ii.
ion that Sir Launcelot had, and he told it to an hermit, and he counsel of him.
Chap. iii.

Here follow the Chapters of the Sixteenth Book.

Gawaine was nigh weary of rest of Sangreal, and of his mar's dream.
Chap. i.
vision of Sir Ector, and how he with Sir Uwayne les Avoutres, orn brother.
Chap. ii.
Gawaine and Sir Ector came hermitage to be confessed, and they told to the hermit their
Chap. iii.
hermit expounded their vision.
Chap. iv.
good counsel that the hermit o them.
Chap. v.
Bors met with an hermit, and he was confessed to him, and penance enjoined to him.
Chap. vi.
Bors was lodged with a lady, how he took on him for to fight a champion for her land.
Chap. vii.
vision which Sir Bors had that and how he fought and over his adversary.
Chap. viii.
lady was restored to her lands battle of Sir Bors, and of parting, and how he met Sir taken and beaten with thorns,
Chap. ix.
and also of a maid which should have been dishonoured.
Chap. x.

How the hermit expounded to Sir Launcelot his vision, and told him that Sir Galahad was his son.
Chap. iv.

How Sir Launcelot justed with many knights, and he was taken.
Chap. v.

How Sir Launcelot told his vision unto a woman, and how she expounded it to him.
Chap. vi.

How Sir Bors left to rescue his brother, and rescued the damsel; and how it was told him that Lionel was dead.
Chap. x.

How Sir Bors told his dream to a priest which he had dreamed, and of the counsel that the priest gave to him.
Chap. xi.

How the devil in a woman's likeness would have tempted Sir Bors, and how by God's grace he escaped.
Chap. xii.

Of the holy communication of an abbot to Sir Bors, and how the abbot counselled him.
Chap. xiii.

How Sir Bors met with his brother Sir Lionel, and how Sir Lionel would have slain Sir Bors.
Chap. xiv.

How Sir Colgrevance fought against Sir Lionel for to save Sir Bors, and how the hermit was slain.
Chap. xv.

How Sir Lionel slew Sir Colgrevance, and how after he would have slain Sir Bors.
Chap. xvi.

How there came a voice which charged Sir Bors to touch not him, and of a cloud that came between them.
Chap. xvii.
Here follow the Chapters of the Seventeenth Book.

How Sir Galahad fought at a tournament, and how he was known of Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector de Maiis. Chap. i.

How Sir Galahad rode with a damsel, and came to the ship whereas Sir Bors and Sir Percivale were in. Chap. ii.

How Sir Galahad entered into the ship, and of a fair bed therein, with other marvellous things, and of a sword. Chap. iii.

Of the marvels of the sword and of the scabbard. Chap. iv.

How king Pelles was smitten through both thighs because he drew the sword, and other marvellous histories. Chap. v.

How Solomon took David's sword by the counsel of his wife, and of other matters marvellous. Chap. vi.

A wonderful tale of king Solomon and his wife. Chap. vii.

How Galahad and his fellows came to a castle, and how they were wont withal, and how they slew their adversaries, and other matters. Chap. viii.

How the three knights, with Percivale's sister, came into the waste forest, and of an hart and four lions and other things. Chap. ix.

How they were desired of a strange custom, the which they would not obey; and how they fought and slew many knights. Chap. x.

How Sir Percivale's sister bled a dish full of blood for to heal a lady; wherefore she died; and how that the body was put in a ship. Chap. xi.

How Galahad and Percivale found in a castle many tombs of maidens that had bled to death. Chap. xii.

How Sir Launcelot entered into the ship where Sir Percivale's sister lay dead; and how he met with Sir Galahad his son. Chap. xiii.

How a knight brought unto Sir Galahad an horse, and bad him come from his father Sir Launcelot. Chap. xiv.

How Sir Launcelot was tofore the door of the chamber wherein the holy Sangreal was. Chap. xv.

How Sir Launcelot had lain fourteen days and as many nights as a dead man, and other divers matters. Chap. xvi.

How Sir Launcelot returned towards Logris, and of other adventures which he saw in the way. Chap. xvii.

How Galahad came to king Mordrain, and of other matters and adventures. Chap. xviii.

How Sir Percivale and Sir Bors met with Sir Galahad, and how they came to the castle of Carbonek, and other matters. Chap. xix.

How Galahad and his fellows were fed of the holy Sangreal, and how our Lord appeared to them, and other things. Chap. xx.

How Galahad anointed with the blood of the spear the maimed king, and of other adventures. Chap. xxi.

How they were fed with the Sangreal while they were in prison, and how Galahad was made king. Chap. xxii.

Of the sorrow that Percivale and Bors made when Galahad was dead; and of Percivale how he died, and other matters. Chap. xxiii.
Here follow the Chapters of the Eighteenth Book.

Chap. i. queen commanded Sir Launcelot to void the court, and of the sor at Launcelot made.

Chap. ii. a dinner that the queen made was a knight poisoned, which lord laid on the queen.

Chap. iii. Mador appeached the queen of, and there was no knight fight for her at the first time.

Chap. iv. queen required Sir Bors to her, and how he granted ondition; and how he warned Launcelot thereof.

Chap. v. the day Sir Bors made him to fight for the queen; and how he should fight how another ged him.

Chap. vi. Launcelot fought against Sir for the queen, and how he Sir Mador and discharged en.

Chap. vii. the truth was known by the of the lake, and of divers matters.

Chap. viii. Launcelot rode to Astolat, and a sleeve to bear upon his the request of a maid.

Chap. ix. tourney began at Winchester, at knights were at the justs, er things.

Chap. x. Launcelot and Sir Lavaine in the field against them of thur's court, and how Launcelot hurt.

Chap. xi. Launcelot and Sir Lavaine out of the field, and in what y Launcelot was.

How Launcelot was brought to an hermit for to be healed of his wound, and of other matters. Chap. xiii.

How Sir Gawaine was lodged with the lord of Astolat, and there had knowledge that it was Sir Launcelot that bare the red sleeve. Chap. xiv.

Of the sorrow that Sir Bors had for the hurt of Launcelot; and of the anger that the queen had because Launcelot bore the sleeve. Chap. xv.

How Sir Bors sought Launcelot and found him in the hermitage, and of the lamentation between them. Chap. xvi.

How Sir Launcelot armed him to assay if he might bear arms, and how his wound burst out again. Chap. xvii.

How Sir Bors returned and told tidings of Sir Launcelot, and of the tourney, and to whom the prize was given. Chap. xviii.

Of the great lamentation of the fair maid of Astolat when Launcelot should depart, and how she died for his love. Chap. xix.

How the corpse of the maid of Astolat arrived tofore king Arthur, and of the burying, and how Sir Launcelot offered the mass-penny. Chap. xx.

Of great justs done all a Christmas, and of a great justs and tourney ordained by king Arthur, and of Sir Launcelot. Chap. xxi.

How Launcelot after that he was hurt of a gentlewoman came to an hermit, and of other matters. Chap. xxii.

How Sir Launcelot behaved him at the justs, and other men also. Chap. xxiii.

How king Arthur marvelled much of the justing in the field, and how he rode and found Sir Launcelot. Chap. xxiv.

How true love is likened to summer. Chap. xxv.
Here follow the Chapters of the Nineteenth Book.

How queen Guenever rode on Maying with certain knights of the Round Table and clad all in green. Chap. i.
How Sir Meliagrance took the queen and all her knights, which were sore hurt in fighting. Chap. ii.
How Sir Launcelot had word how the queen was taken, and how Sir Meliagrance laid a bushment for Launcelot. Chap. iii.
How Sir Launcelot’s horse was slain, and how Sir Launcelot rode in a cart for to rescue the queen. Chap. iv.
How Sir Meliagrance required forgiveness of the queen, and how she appeared Sir Launcelot, and other matters. Chap. v.
How Sir Launcelot came in the night to the queen, and how Sir Meliagrance appeached the queen of treason. Chap. vi.
How Sir Launcelot answered for the queen, and waged battle against Sir Meliagrance. And how Sir Launcelot was taken in a trap. Chap.
How Sir Launcelot was delivered of prison by a lady, and took a war-courser, and came for to keep his honour. Chap.
How Sir Launcelot came the same day to that Sir Meliagrance abode him in the field, and dressed him to battle. Chap.
How Sir Urre came into Arthur’s court for to be healed of his wounds, how king Arthur would begin to handle him. Chap.
How king Arthur handled Sir Urre, after him many other knights of the Round Table. Chap.
How Sir Launcelot was commanded by King Arthur to handle his wounds, anon he was all whole, and how he thanked God. Chap.
How there was a party made of a hundred knights against an hundred knights, and of other matters. Chap.

Here followeth the Book of the Piteous History which is the Morte or Death of king Arthur, and the Chapters the Twentieth Book.

How Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred were busy upon Sir Gawaine for to disclose the love between Sir Launcelot and queen Guenever. Chap. i.
How Sir Agravaine disclosed their love to king Arthur, and how king Arthur gave them licence to take him. Chap. ii.
How Sir Launcelot was espied in the queen’s chamber, and how Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred came with twelve knights to slay him. Chap. iii.
How Sir Launcelot slew Sir Colgrevance, and armed him in his harness, and after slew Sir Agravaine, and twelve of his fellows. Chap.
How Sir Launcelot came to Sir I, and told him how he had sped, in what adventure he had been, how he escaped. Chap.
Of the counsel and advice which was taken by Sir Launcelot and by his friends for to save the queen. Chap.
How Sir Mordred rode hastily to king to tell him of the affray death of Sir Agravaine and the other knights. Chap.
CONTENTS.

Sir Launcelot and his kinsmen and the queen from the fire, and he slew many knights.

Chap. viii. Sorrow and lamentation of king Arthur for the death of his nephews and good knights, and also for his own wife.

Chap. ix. King Arthur at the request of Sir Gawaine concluded to make war against Sir Launcelot, and laid siege to a castle called Joyous Gard.

Chap. x. Communication between king Arthur and Sir Launcelot, and how Arthur reproved him.

Chap. xi. These cousins and kinsmen of Sir Launcelot excited him to go out to the sea, and how they made them.

Chap. xii. Sir Gawaine justed and smote Sir Lionel, and how Sir Launcelot roused king Arthur.

Chap. xiii. The pope sent his bulls to peace, and how Sir Launcelot fought the queen to king Arthur.

Chap. xiv. Deliverance of the queen to the usage Sir Gawaine had to Sir Launcelot.

Chap. xv. Of the communication between Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot, with much other language.

Chap. xvi. How Sir Launcelot departed from the king and from Joyous Gard over seaward, and what knights went with him.

Chap. xvii. How Sir Launcelot passed over the sea, and how he made great lords of the knights that went with him.

Chap. xviii. How king Arthur and Sir Gawaine made a great host ready to go over sea to make war on Sir Launcelot.

Chap. xix. What message Sir Gawaine sent to Sir Launcelot, and king Arthur laid siege to Benwick, and other matters.

Chap. xx. How Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot did battle together, and how Sir Gawaine was overthrown and hurt.

Chap. xxi. Of the sorrow that king Arthur made for the war, and of another battle where also Sir Gawaine had the worse.

Chap. xxii.

Here follow the Chapters of the Twenty-first Book.

Sir Mordred presumed and took it to be king of England, and he have married the queen, his wife.

Chap. i. How that king Arthur had tidings thereof, and came to Dover, where ordered him to let his land and of the death of Sir Gawaine.

Chap. ii. Sir Gawaine's ghost appeared to Arthur, and warned him that would not fight that day.

Chap. iii. The misadventure of an adder the began, where Mordred was and Arthur hurt to the death.

Chap. iv. How Sir Launcelot commanded to cast his sword Excalibur into the water, and how he was delivered to ladies in a barge.

Chap. v. How Sir Bedivere found him on the morrow dead in an hermitage, and how he abode there with the hermit.

Chap. vi. Of the opinion of some men of the death of king Arthur; and how queen Guenever made her a nun in Almesbury.


Chap. viii. How Sir Launcelot departed to seek the queen Guenever, and how he found her at Almesbury.
How Sir Launcelot came to the hermitage where the archbishop of Canterbury was, and how he took the habit on him. Chap. x.

How Sir Launcelot went with his seven fellows to Almesbury, and found there queen Guenever dead, whom they brought to Glastonbury. Chap. xi.

How Sir Launcelot began to sic and after died, whose body was b to Joyous Gard for to be buried. Chap.

How Sir Ector found Sir Launcelot brother dead. And how Constar reigned next after Arthur, and of end of this Book. Chap.

Explicit the Table.
THE BOOK OF

KING ARTHUR

AND OF HIS NOBLE

KNIGHTS OF THE ROUND TABLE.

The First Book of King Arthur.

CHAP. I.

Uther Pendragon sent for the Cornwall and Igraine his wife, their departing suddenly again.

In the days of Uther Pendragon, when he was king of all and so reigned, that there was no mighty duke in Cornwall that fought against him long time. And the name of the duke was called Tin-said. And so by means king Uther Pendragon, charging him to send for the duke and his wife by a great charge: and if he will not come at your summons, then may ye do your best; then have ye cause to make mighty war upon him. So that was done, and the messengers had their answers, and that was this, shortly, that neither he nor his wife would not come at him. Then was the king Uther Pendragon wonderled wroth. Then and then the king sent him plain word again, and bade him be ready and stuff him and garnish him, for within forty days he would fetch him out of the biggest castle that he hath. When the duke had this warning, anon he went and furnished and garnished two strong castles of his, of the which the one hight Tintagil and the other castle hight Terrabil. So his wife, dame Igraine, he put in the castle of Tintagil, and himself he put in the castle of Terrabil, the which had many issues and posterns out. Then in all haste came Uther with a great host, and laid a siege about the castle of Terrabil. And there he fight many
pavilions, and there was great war made on both parties, and much people slain. Then for pure anger and for great love of fair Igraine the king Uther fell sick. So came to the king Uther Sir Ulfius, a noble knight, and asked the king why he was sick. I shall tell thee, said the king; I am sick for anger and for love of fair Igraine, that I may not be whole. Well, my lord, said Sir Ulfius, I shall seek Merlin, and he shall do you remedy that your heart shall be pleased. So Ulfius departed, and by adventure he met Merlin in a beggar's array, and there Merlin asked Ulfius whom he sought? and he said he had little ado to tell him. Well, said Merlin, I know whom thou seekest, for thou seekest Merlin; therefore seek no further, for I am he, and if king Uther will well reward me, and be sworn unto me to fulfil my desire, that shall be his honour and profit more than mine, for I shall cause him to have all his desire. All this will I undertake, said Ulfius, that there shall be nothing reasonable but thou shalt have thy desire. Well, said Merlin, he shall have his intent and desire. And therefore, said Merlin, ride on your way, for I will not be long behind.

CHAP. II.

How Uther Pendragon made war on the duke of Cornwall, and how by the means of Merlin he made the duchess his queen.

Then Ulfius was glad, and rode on more than a pace till that he came to Uther Pendragon, and told him he had met with Merlin. Where is he? said the king. Sir, said Ulfius, he will not dwell long. Therewithal Ulfius was ware where Merlin stood at the porch of the pavilion's door. And then Merlin was bound to come to the king. When king Uther saw him he said he was welcome. Sir, said Merlin, I know all your heart every deal; so ye will be sworn unto me, as ye be a true king anointed, to fulfil my desire, ye shall have your desire. Then the king was sworn upon the four Evangelists. Sir, said Merlin, this is my desire: after ye shall win Igraine ye shall have a child by her, and when that is born that it shall be delivered to me for to nourish there as I will have it; for it shall be your worship and the child's avail, as mickle as the child is worth. I will well, said the king, as thou wilt have it. Now make you ready, said Merlin: this night shall you see Igraine in the castle of Tintagil, and ye shall be like the duke her husband, Ulfius shall be like Sir Brastias, a knight of the duke's, and I will be like a knight that hight Sir Jordanus, a knight of the duke's. Bet ye maye make not many questions with her nor with her men, but say you are diseased, and so lie you to bed, and rise not on the morn till I come to you, for the castle of Tintagil is but ten mile hence. So this was done as they had devised. But the duke of Tintagil espied how the king rode from the siege of Terrabil, and therefore that night he issued out of the castle at a postern, for to have distressed the king's host. And so, through his own issue, the duke himself was slain or ever the king came at the castle of Tintagil. So after the death of the duke king Uther came to the castle, more than three hours after his death; and there he found Igraine. And or day came Merlin came to the king and bade him make him ready, and so he kissed the lady Igraine and departed in all haste. But when the lady heard tell of the duke her husband, and by all record he was dead or ever king Uther came to her, then she marvelled who that might be that came to her in likeness of her lord; so she mourned privily and held her peace. Then all the barons by one assent prayed the king of accord between the lady Igraine and him. The king gave them leave for faire would he have been accorded with her. So the king put all the trust in Ulfius to entreat between them; so, by the entreat, at the last the king and she met together. Now will we do well, said Ulfius: our king is a lusty knight and wiseless, and my lady
THE BIRTH OF KING ARTHUR. 27

s a passing fair lady; it were unto us all and it might please to make her his queen. Unto were all well accorded, and to the king: and anon, like a ght, he assented thereto with I, and so in all haste they were in a morning with great mirth

ing Lot of Lothian and of then wedded Margawse that waine’s mother: and king of the land of Garlot wedded. All this was done at the request Uther. And the third sister, le Fay, was put to school in a and there she learned so much was a great clerk of nigro-
And after she was wedded to ens of the land of Gore, that Ewaine’s le Blanchehains

CHAP. III.

trib of king Arthor, and of bis re; and of the death of king Pendragon; and bow Artibur osen king; and of wonders and s of a sword that was taken out one by the said Artur.

the time came that the queen hould bear a child. So it fell half a year, as king Uther 1 his queen, he asked her, ith she owed unto him, whose child that should be born: s she sore abashed to give Dismay you not, said the king, me the truth, and I shall love better, by the faith of my body. she, I shall tell you the truth. night that my lord was dead, of his death, as his knights re-re came into my castle of Tinian like my lord in speech and nice, and two knights with him ss of his two knights Brastias ans, and so I welcomed him as I welcome my lord: and thus, as answer unto God, this child was . That is truth, said the king, as for it was I myself that came in the likeness, and therefore dismay you not, for I am father to the child. And there he told her all the cause how it was by Merlin’s counsel. Then the Queen made great joy when she knew who was the father of her child. Soon came Merlin unto the king and said, Sir, ye must purvey you for the nourishing of your child. As thou wilt, said the king, be it. Well, said Merlin, I know a lord of yours in this land, that is a passing true man and a faithful, and he shall have the nourishing of your child, and his name is Sir Ector, and he is a lord of fair livelihood in many parts in England and Wales. And this lord, Sir Ector, let him be sent for, for to come and speak with you, and desire him yourself, as he loveth you, that he will put his own child to nourishing to another woman, and that his wife nourish yours. And when the child is born let it be delivered unto me at yonder privy postern unchristened. So like as Merlin devised it was done. And when Sir Ector was come he made affiance to the king for to nourish the child like as the king desired; and there the king granted Sir Ector great rewards. Then when the lady was delivered, the king commanded two knights and two ladies to take the child bound in a cloth of gold, and that ye deliver him to what poor man ye meet at the postern gate of the castle. So the child was delivered unto Merlin, and so he bare it forth unto Sir Ector, and made an holy man to christen him, and named him Artur: and so Sir Ector’s wife nourished him with her own breast.

Then within two years king Uther fell sick of a great malady. And in the meanwhile his enemies usurped upon him, and did a great battle upon his men, and slew many of his people. Sir, said Merlin, ye may not lie so as ye do, for ye must to the field, though ye ride on an horse-litter; for ye shall never have the better of your enemies but if your person be there, and then shall ye have the victory. So it was done as Merlin had devised, and they carried the king forth in a horse-litter.
CONTENTS.

How Galahad departed with the shield, and how king Evelake had received this shield of Joseph of Aramathye. Chap. x.

How Joseph made a cross on the white shield with his blood, and how Galahad was by a monk brought to a tomb. Chap. xi.

Of the marvel that Sir Galahad saw and heard in the tomb, and how he made Melias knight. Chap. xii.

Of the adventure that Melias had, and how Galahad revenged him, and how Melias was carried into an abbey. Chap. xiii.

How Galahad departed, and how he was commanded to go to the castle of maidens to destroy the wicked custom. Chap. xiv.

How Sir Galahad fought with the knights of the castle, and destroyed the wicked custom. Chap. xv.

How Sir Gawaine came to the abbey for to follow Galahad, and how he was shriven to a hermit. Chap. xvi.

How Sir Galahad met with Sir Launcelot and with Sir Percivale, and smote them down, and departed from them. Chap. xvii.

How Sir Launcelot, half sleeping and half waking, saw a sick man borne in a litter, and how he was healed with the Sangreal. Chap. xviii.

How a voice spake to Sir Launcelot, and how he found his horse and his helm borne away, and after went afoot. Chap. xix.

How Sir Launcelot was shriven, and what sorrow he made; and of good ensamples which were shewed to him. Chap. x.

Here follow the Chapters of the Fourteenth Book.

How Sir Percivale came to a recluse and asked counsel, and how she told him that she was his aunt. Chap. i.

How Merlin likened the Round Table to the world, and how the knights that should achieve the Sangreal should be known. Chap. ii.

How Sir Percivale came into a monastery where he found king Evelake, which was an old man. Chap. iii.

How Sir Percivale saw many men of arms bearing a dead knight, and how he fought against them. Chap. iv.

How a yeoman desired him to get again an horse, and how Sir Percivale's hackney was slain, and how he gat an horse. Chap. v.

Of the great danger that Sir Percivale was in by his horse, and how he saw a serpent and a lion fight. Chap. vi.

Of the vision that Sir Percivale saw, and how his vision was expounded, and of his lion. Chap. vii.

How Sir Percivale saw a ship coming to him-ward, and how the lady of the ship told him of her disheritance. Chap. viii.

How Sir Percivale promised her help, and how he required her of love, and how he was saved from the fiend. Chap. ix.

How Sir Percivale for penance rove himself through the thigh; and how she was known for the devil. Chap. x.
HOW KING ARTHUR PULLED OUT THE SWORD.

son and young Arthur that

rode to the just-ward Sir

thorward Sir Kay, night at Allhallownmas afore.

sir Kay shall not be without

Kay shall not be without

said Arthur, and rode fast after

and when he came home and all were out to see

Then was Arthur wroth, to

himself, I will ride to the

and take the sword with

and so he handled the sword

and so he handled the sword

and took his way till he came

And as soon as Sir

and rode his way till he came

Sir Ector, and said: Sir, lo

sword of the stone; whereby

When he held the sword he returned

gate ye this sword? said

to Arthur. Sir, I will tell

I came home for my bro-

me his sword, and so I

d pulled it out of the stone

and pulled it out of the stone

ye any knights

sword? said Sir Ector. Nay,

Now, said Sir Ector to

understand ye must be king

hat cause? Sir, said Ector,

never man have drawn out this sword

but he that shall be rightwise king of

This land. Now let me see whether ye
can put the sword there as it was, and

pull it out again. That is no mastery,
said Arthur: and so he put it into

the stone. Therewith Sir Ector assayed to

to pull out the sword and failed.

CHAP. IV.

How king Arthurl pulled out the sword
divers times.

Now assay, said Sir Ector to Sir

Kay. And anon he pulled at the sword

with all his might; but it would not be.

Now shall ye assay, said Sir Ector to

Arthur. I will well, said Arthur, and

pulled it out easily. And therewithal

Sir Ector kneeled down to the earth,

and Sir Kay. Alas, said Arthur, mine

own dear father and brother, why kneel

ye to me. Nay, nay, my lord Arthur,
it is not so: I was never your father

nor of your blood, but I wote well ye

are of an higher blood than I wend ye

were. And then Sir Ector told him all,

how he was betaken him for to nourish

him, and by whose commandment, and

by Merlin’s deliverance. Then

Arthur made great dole when he un-
derstood that Sir Ector was not his

father. Sir, said Ector unto Arthur,

will ye be my good and gracious lord

when ye are king? Else were I to

blame, said Arthur, for ye are the man

in the world that I am most beholding
to, and my good lady and mother your

wife, that as well as her own hath

fostered me and kept. And if ever it

be God’s will that I be king, as ye say,
ye shall desire of me what I may do,

and I shall not fail you: God forbid I

should fail you. Sir, said Sir Ector,

I will ask no more of you but that you

will make my son, your foster-brother

Sir Kay, seneschal of all your lands.

That shall be done, said Arthur, and

more by the faith of my body, that

never man shall have that office but he

while he and I live. Therewithal they

went unto the archbishop, and told him

how the sword was achieved, and by
whom. And on Twelfth Day all the barons came thither, and to assay to take the sword who that would assay. But there afore them all there might none take it out but Arthur, wherefore there were many lords wroth, and said it was great shame unto them all and the realm, to be over governed with a boy of no high blood born. And so they fell out at that time that it was put off till Candlemas, and then all the barons should meet there again. But always the ten knights were ordainèd to watch the sword day and night, and so they set a pavilion over the stone and the sword, and five always watched. So at Candlemas many more great lords came thither for to have won the sword, but there might none prevail. And right as Arthur did at Christmas he did at Candlemas, and pulled out the sword easily, whereof the barons were sore aggrieved, and put it off in delay till the high feast of Easter. And as Arthur sped afore, so did he at Easter: yet there were some of the great lords had indignation that Arthur should be their king, and put it off in a delay till the feast of Pentecost. Then the archbishop of Canterbury by Merlin’s providence let purvey then of the best knights that they might get, and such knights as king Uther Pendragon loved best and most trusted in his days, and such knights were put about Arthur, as Sir Baudwin of Britain, Sir Kay, Sir Ulfinus, Sir Brastias. All these, with many other, were always about Arthur, day and night, till the feast of Pentecost.

CHAP. V.

How King Arthur was crowned, and how he made officers.

And at the feast of Pentecost all manner of men assayed to pull at the sword that would assay, but none might prevail but Arthur; and he pulled it out afore all the lords and commons that were there, wherefore all the commons cried at once, We will have Arthur unto our king; we will put him no more in delay, for we all see that it is God’s will that he shall be our king, and who that holdeth against it we will slay him. And therewithal they kneeled down all at once, both rich and poor, and cried Arthur mercy, because they had delayed him so long. And Arthur forgave them, and took the sword between both his hands, and offered it upon the altar where the archbishop was, and so was he made knight of the best man that was there. And so anon was the coronation made, and there was he sworn unto his lords and the commons for to be a true king, to stand with true justice from thenceforth the days of this life. Also then he made all lords that held of the crown to come in, and to do service as they ought to do. And many complaints were made unto Sir Arthur of great wrongs that were done since the death of king Uther, of many lands that were bereaved lords, knights, ladies, and gentlemen. Wherefore king Arthur made the lands to be given again unto them that owned them. When this was done that the king had established all the countries about London, then he let make Sir Kay seneschal of England; and Sir Baudwin of Britain was made constable; and Sir Ulfinus was made chamberlain; and Sir Brastias was made warden to wait upon the north from Trent forwards, for it was that time for the most part the king’s enemies. But within few years after, Arthur won all the north, Scotland, and all that were under their obedience. Also Wales, a part of it held against Arthur, but he overcame them all as he did the remnant through the noble prowess of himself and his knights of the Round Table.

CHAP. VI.

How King Arthur held in Wales at a Pentecost a great feast, and what kings and lords came to his feast.

Then the king removed into Wales, and let cry a great feast, that it should be holden at Pentecost, after the incorporation of him at the city of Carlston.
HOW KING ARTHUR HELD A GREAT FEAST.

east came king Lot of Lothian with five hundred knights.

Also there came to the feast of Gore with four hundred sered with him. Also there came to king Nentre of Garloth with six hundred knights with him. Also to the feast the king of Scot with six hundred knights with him, as but a young man. Also to the feast a king that was king with the hundred knights, his men was passing well bepoints. Also there came the Carados with five hundred And king Arthur was glad of ing, for he wend that all the knights had come for great for to have done him worship st, wherefore the king made and sent the kings and knights went. But the kings would live, but rebuked the messengerfully, and said they had no small gifts of a beardless boy come of low blood, and sent they would have none of his that they were come to give with hard swords betwixt thee the shoulders: and therefore thither, so they told to the messen last, for it was great shame to see such a boy to have so noble a realm as this land with this answer the messengers and told to king Arthur this Wherefore, by the advice of us, he took him to a strong five hundred good men with all the kings aforesaid in laid a siege tofore him, but he was well victualled. And teen days there came Merlin to the city of Carlion. the kings were passing glad of nd asked him, For what cause boy Arthur made your king? Merlin, I shall tell you the he is king Uther Pendragon's in wedlock of Igraine, the of Tintagil. After the death of thirteen days king Uther n wedded fair Igraine. And

who saith nay, he shall be king, and overcome all his enemies; and, or he die, he shall be long king of all England, and have under his obeisance Wales, Ireland, and Scotland, and more realms than I will now rehearse. Some of the kings had marvel of Merlin's words, and deemed well that it should be as he said: and some of them laughed him to scorn, as king Lot: and more other called him a witch. But then were they accorded with Merlin that king Arthur should come out and speak with the kings, and to come safe and go safe, such assurance was there made. So Merlin went unto king Arthur and told him how he had done, and bade him fear not, but come out boldly and speak with them, and spare them not, but answer them as their king and chieftain, for ye shall overcome them all whether they will or nill.

CHAP. VII.

Of the first war that king Arthur had, and bow be won the field.

Then king Arthur came out of his tower, and had under his gown a jesseraunt of double mail, and there went with him the archbishop of Canterbury, and Sir Baudwin of Britain, and Sir Kay, and Sir Brastias; these were the men of most worship that were with him. And when they were met there was no meekness, but stout words on both sides: but always king Arthur answered them, and said that he would make them to bow and he lived. Wherefore they departed with wrath, and king Arthur bade keep them well, and they bade the king keep him well. So the king returned him to the tower again, and armed him and all his knights. What will ye do? said Merlin to the kings; ye were better for to stint, for ye shall not here prevail though ye were ten so many. Be we well advised to be afraid of a dream-reader? said king Lot. With that Merlin vanished away, and came to king Arthur, and bade him set on them fiercely; and in the meanwhile there were three hundred
Here follow the Chapters of the Nineteenth Book.

How queen Guenever rode on Maying with certain knights of the Round Table and clad all in green. Chap. i.

How Sir Meliagrance took the queen and all her knights, which were sore hurt in fighting. Chap. ii.

How Sir Launcelot had word how the queen was taken, and how Sir Meliagrance laid a bushment for Launcelot. Chap. iii.

How Sir Launcelot's horse was slain, and how Sir Launcelot rode in a cart for to rescue the queen. Chap. iv.

How Sir Meliagrance required forgiveness of the queen, and how she appeased Sir Launcelot, and other matters. Chap. v.

How Sir Launcelot came in the night to the queen, and how Sir Meliagrance appeached the queen of treason. Chap. vi.

How Sir Launcelot answered for the queen, and waged battle against Sir Meliagrance. And how Sir Launcelot was taken in a trap. Chap. vii.

How Sir Launcelot was delivered out of prison by a lady, and took a white courser, and came for to keep his day. Chap. viii.

How Sir Launcelot came the same time that Sir Meliagrance abode him in the field, and dressed him to battle. Chap. ix.

How Sir Urrc came into Arthur's court for to be healed of his wounds, and how king Arthur would begin to handle him. Chap. x.

How king Arthur handled Sir Urrc, and after him many other knights of the Round Table. Chap. xi.

How Sir Launcelot was commanded by Arthur to handle his wounds, and anon he was all whole, and how they thanked God. Chap. xii.

How there was a party made of an hundred knights against an hundred knights, and of other matters. Chap. xiii.

Here followeth the Book of the Piteous History which is of the Morte or Death of king Arthur, and the Chapters of the Twentieth Book.

How Sir Agravaíne and Sir Mordred were busy upon Sir Gawaine for to disclose the love between Sir Launcelot and queen Guenever. Chap. i.

How Sir Agravaíne disclosed their love to king Arthur, and how king Arthur gave them licence to take him. Chap. ii.

How Sir Launcelot was espied in the queen's chamber, and how Sir Agravaíne and Sir Mordred came with twelve knights to slay him. Chap. iii.

How Sir Launcelot slew Sir Colgre Vance, and armed him in his harness, and after slew Sir Agravaíne and twelve of his fellows. Chap. iv.

How Sir Launcelot came to Sir Bor and told him how he had sped, and in what adventure he had been, and how he escaped. Chap. v.

Of the counsel and advice which was taken by Sir Launcelot and by his friends for to save the queen. Chap. vi.

How Sir Mordred rode hastily to the king to tell him of the affray and death of Sir Agravaíne and the other knights. Chap. vii.
CONTENTS.

How Sir Launcest and his kinsmen rescued the queen from the fire, and how he slew many knights. Chap. viii.

Of the sorrow and lamentation of king Arthur for the death of his nephews and other good knights, and also for the queen his wife. Chap. ix.

How king Arthur at the request of Sir Gawaine concluded to make war against Sir Launcelot, and laid siege to his castle called Joyous Gard. Chap. x.

Of the communication between king Arthur and Sir Launcelot, and how king Arthur reproved him. Chap. xi.

How the cousins and kinsmen of Sir Launcelot excited him to go out to battle, and how they made them ready. Chap. xii.


How the pope sent down his bulls to make peace, and how Sir Launcelot brought the queen to king Arthur. Chap. xiv.

Of the deliverance of the queen to the king by Sir Launcelot, and what language Sir Gawaine had to Sir Launcelot. Chap. xv.

Of the communication between Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot, with much other language. Chap. xvi.

How Sir Launcelot departed from the king and from Joyous Gard over sea-ward, and what knights went with him. Chap. xvii.

How Sir Launcelot passed over the sea, and how he made great lords of the knights that went with him. Chap. xviii.

How king Arthur and Sir Gawaine made a great host ready to go over sea to make war on Sir Launcelot. Chap. xix.

What message Sir Gawaine sent to Sir Launcelot, and king Arthur laid siege to Benwick, and other matters. Chap. xx.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot did battle together, and how Sir Gawaine was overthrown and hurt. Chap. xxi.

Of the sorrow that king Arthur made for the war, and of another battle where also Sir Gawaine had the worse. Chap. xxii.

Here follow the Chapters of the Twenty-first Book.

How Sir Mordred presumed and took on him to be king of England, and would have married the queen, his uncle's wife. Chap. i.

How after that king Arthur had tidings he returned and came to Dover, where Sir Mordred met him to let his landing, and of the death of Sir Gawaine. Chap. ii.

How after Sir Gawaine's ghost appeared to king Arthur, and warned him that he should not fight that day. Chap. iii.

How by misadventure of an adder the battle began, where Mordred was slain, and Arthur hurt to the death. Chap. iv.

How king Arthur commanded to cast his sword Excalibur into the water, and how he was delivered to ladies in a barge. Chap. v.

How Sir Bedivere found him on the morrow dead in an hermitage, and how he abode there with the hermit. Chap. vi.

Of the opinion of some men of the death of king Arthur; and how queen Guenever made her a nun in Almesbury. Chap. vii.


How Sir Launcelot departed to seek the queen Guenever, and how he found her at Almesbury. Chap. ix.
good men of the best that were with the kings that went straight unto king Arthur, and that comforted him greatly. Sir, said Merlin to Arthur, fight not with the sword that ye had by miracle, till that ye see ye go unto the worse; then draw it out and do your best. So forthwithal king Arthur set upon them in their lodging. And Sir Baudwin, Sir Kay, and Sir Brastias slew on the right hand and on the left hand that it was marvellous; and always king Arthur on horseback laid on with a sword, and did marvellous deeds of arms, that many of the kings had great joy of his deeds and hardiness. Then king Lot brake out on the back side, and the king with the hundred knights, and king Carados, and set on Arthur fiercely behind him. With that Sir Arthur turned with his knights and smote behind and before, and ever Sir Arthur was in the foremost press till his horse was slain underneath him. And therewith king Lot smote down king Arthur. With that his four knights received him, and set him on horseback. Then he drew his sword Excalibur, but it was so bright in his enemies’ eyes, that it gave light like thirty torches. And therewith he put them on back, and slew much people. And then the commons of Carlion arose with clubs and staves, and slew many knights; but all the kings held them together with their knights that were left alive, and so fled and departed. And Merlin came unto Arthur, and counselled him to follow them no farther.

CHAP. VIII.

How Merlin counselled king Arthur to send for king Ban and king Bors, and of their counsel taken for the war.

So after the feast and tourney king Arthur drew him unto London, and so by the counsel of Merlin the king let call his barons to council. For Merlin had told the king that the six kings that made war upon him would in all haste be awroke on him and on his lands. Wherefore the king asked counsel at them all. They could no counsel give, but said they were big enough. Ye well, said Arthur; I thank you for your good courage; but will ye all that love me speak with Merlin: ye know well that he hath done much for me, and he knoweth many things, and when he is aforesaid I would that ye payed him heartily of his best advice. All the barons said they would pray him and desire him. So Merlin was sent for, and fair desired of all the barons to give them best counsel. I shall say you, said Merlin, I warn you all, your enemies are passing strong for you, and they are good men of arms as be on life, and by this time they have gotten to them four kings more, and a mighty duke; and unless that our king hath more chivalry with him than he may make within the bounds of his own realm, and he fight with them in battle he shall be overcome and slain. What were best to do in this case said all the barons. I shall say you, said Merlin, mine advice: There are two brethren beyond the sea, and they be kings both, and marvellous good men of their hands; and that one is king Ban of Benwick, and that other is king Bors of Gaul, that is France. And on these two kings warreth a mighty man of men, the king Claudas, and striveth with them for a castle; and great war is betwixt them: but this Claudas is so mighty of goods, whereas he geteth good knights, that he putteth these two kings the most part to the worse. Wherefore this is my counsel, that our king and sovereign lord send unto the kings Ban and Bors by two trusty knights with letters well devised, that if they will come and see king Arthur and his court, and so help him in his wars, that he will be sworn unto them to help them in their wars against king Claudas. Now what say ye unto this counsel? said Merlin. This is well counselled, said the king and all the barons. Right so in all haste there were ordained to go two knights on the message unto the two kings. So were there made letters in the pleasant wise.
OF KING BAN AND KING CORS.

...king Arthur's desire. 

Stias were made the mese- 
de forth well hersed and 

did as the guise was that 
passed the sea and rode 
of Benwick. And 
were eight knights who 
d at a straight passage 
Ulfus and Brastias, and 
teen them prisoners. So 
em that they might pass, 
messeers unto king 
sent from king Arthur. 
the eight knights, ye shall 
oners, for we be knights 
. And therewith two of 
their spears, and Ulfus 
nessed their spears, and 
ith great might, and 
ights brake their spears, 
held, and bare the two 
of their saddles to the 
left them lying, and rode 
and the other six knights 
a passage to meet with 
do Ulfus and Brastias 
and so passed 

And at the fourth pas- 
t two for two, and both 
the earth: so there was 
ght knights but he was 
ruised. And when they 
ck it fortuned there were 
and Bors. And when 
e kings that there were 
ers, there were sent to 
ights of worship, the one 
lord of the country of 
Sir Pharianse a worship-
Anon they asked from 
am, and they said from 
ing of England: so they 
their arms, and made 
of other. But anon as 
wist they were messen- 
's, there was made no 
forthwith they spake with 
welcomed them in the 
se, and said they were 
unto them before all the 
therewith they kissed 
d delivered them; and 
and Bors understood the 
letters, then were they more welcome 
than they were before. And after the 
haste of the letters they gave them this 
answer, that they would fulfil the desire 
of king Arthur's writing, and let Ulfus 
and Brastias tarry there as long as 
they would, they should have such 
cheer as might be made them in those 
marches. Then Ulfus and Brastias told 
the king of the adventure at their pas- 
sages of the eight knights. Ha, ha, said 
Ban and Bors, they were my good 
friends. I would I had wist of them, 
they should not have escaped so. So 
Ulfus and Brastias had good cheer and 
great gifts as much as they might bear 
away, and had their answer by mouth 
and by writing, that those two kings 
would come unto Arthur in all the 
haste that they might. 

So the two knights rode on afore, 
and passed the sea, and came to their 
lor and told him how they had sped, 
whereof king Arthur was passing glad. 
At what time suppose ye the two kings 
will be here? Sir, said they, afore All- 
hallowmas. Then the king let purvey 
for a great feast, and let cry a great 
justs. And by Allhallowmas the two 
kings were come over the sea with three 
hundred knights well arrayed both for 
the peace and for the war. And king 
Arthur met with them ten mile out of 
London, and there was great joy as 
could be thought or made. And on Allhallowmas at the great feast sat in 
the hall the three kings, and Sir Kay 
the seneschal served in the hall, and 
Sir Lucas the butler, that was duke 
Corneus's son, and Sir Griffet that was 
the son of Cardol, these three knights 
had the rule of all the service that 
served the kings. And anon as they 
had washed and risen, all knights that 
would just made them ready. By then 
they were ready on horseback there were 
seven hundred knights. And Arthur, 
Ban, and Bors, with the archbishop of 
Canterbury, and Sir Ector, Kay's father, 
they were in a place covered with cloth 
of gold, like an hall, with ladies and 
gentlewomen, for to behold who did 
best, and thereon to give judgment.
CHAP. IX.

Of a great tourney made by king Arthur and the two kings Ban and Bors, and how they went over the Sea.

AND king Arthur and the two kings let part the seven hundred knights in two parties. And there were three hundred knights of the realm of Benwick and of Gaul turned on the other side. Then they dressed their shields, and began to couch their spears many good knights. So Griflet was the first that met with a knight, one Ladinias, and they met so eagerly that all men had wonder; and they so fought that their shields fell to pieces, and horse and man fell to the earth, and both the French knight and the English knight lay so long, that all men wend they had been dead. When Lucas the butler saw Griflet so lie, he horsed him again anon, and they two did marvellous deeds of arms with many bachelors. Also Sir Kay came out of an embushment with five knights with him, and they six smote other six down. But Sir Kay did that day marvellous deeds of arms, that there was none did so well as he that day. Then there came Ladinias and Grastian, two knights of France, and did passing well, that all men praised them. Then came there Sir Placidas, a good knight, and met with Sir Kay and smote him down, horse and man, wherefore Sir Griflet was wroth, and met with Sir Placidas so hard that horse and man fell to the earth. But when the five knights wist that Sir Kay had a fall they were wroth out of wit, and therewith each of them five bare down a knight. When king Arthur and the two kings saw them begin to wax wroth on both parts, they leapt on small hackneys, and let cry that all men should depart unto their lodging. And so they went home and unarmed them, and so to even-song and supper. And after the three kings went into a garden, and gave the prize unto Sir Kay, and to Lucas the butler, and unto Sir Griflet. And then they went unto council, and with them Gwenbans, the brother unto Sir Ban and Bors, a wise clerk, and thither went Ulfius, and Brastias, and Merlin. And after they had been in council they went unto bed. And on the morn they heard mass, and to dinner, and so to their council, and made many arguments what were best to do. At the last they were concluded, that Merlin should go with a token of king Ban, (and that was a ring,) unto his men and king Bors's: and Gracian and Placidas should go again and keep their castles and their countries, as king Ban of Benwick and king Bors of Gaul had ordained them; and so they passed the sea and came to Benwick. And when the people saw king Ban's ring, and Gracian and Placidas, they were glad, and asked how the kings fared, and made great joy of their welfare and according. And according unto the sovereign lords' desire, the men of war made them ready in all haste possible, so that they were fifteen thousand on horse and foot, and they had great plenty of victual with them by Merlin's provision. But Gracian and Placidas were left to furnish and garnish the castles for dread of king Claudias. Right so Merlin passed the sea, well victualled both by water and by land. And when he came to the sea he sent home the footmen again, and took no more with him but ten thousand men on horseback, the most part men of arms, and so shipped and passed the sea into England, and landed at Dover; and through the wit of Merlin he led the host northward, the prouiest way that could be thought, unto the forest of Bedegraine, and there in a valley he lodged them secretly.

Then rode Merlin unto king Arthur and the two kings and told them how he had sped, whereof they had great marvel, that man on earth might speed so soon, and go and come. So Merlin told them ten thousand were in the forest of Bedegraine, well armed at all points. Then was there no more to say, but to horseback went all the host.
HOW ELEVEN KINGS WARRED WITH ARTHUR.

Chap. X.

VEN KINGS GATHERED A GREAT HOST AGAINST KING ARTHUR.

so within a little space the three came unto the castle of Bedeg- and found there a passing fair rich and well beseeen, whereof d great joy, and victual they none.

was the cause of the northern hat they were reared for the and rebuke that the six kings Carlion. And those six kings means get unto them five other and thus they began to gather opile, and how they swear that al nor woe they should not ch other till they had destroyed.

And then they made an oath. at that began the oath was the Cambenet, that he would bring in five thousand men of arms, which were ready on horseback. Swore king Brandegoris of Strange, that he would bring five thousand arms on horseback. Then swore ariance of Northumberland that d bring three thousand men of. Then swore the king of the knights, that was a passing an and a young, that he would our thousand men on horseback. Here swore king Lot, a passing night and Sir Gawaine's father, would bring five thousand men on horseback. Also there swore bence, that was Sir Gawaine's of the land of Gore, and he bring six thousand men of arms eback. Also there swore king f Cornwall, that he would bring five thousand men of arms on horseback. Also there swore king Cradelmas to bring five thousand men of arms on horseback. Also there swore king Agwisance of Ireland, to bring five thousand men of arms on horseback. Also there swore king Nentres to bring five thousand men of arms on horseback. Also there swore king Carados to bring five thousand men of arms on horseback. So their whole host was of clean men of arms on horseback fifty thousand; and afoot ten thousand of good men's bodies. Then were they soon ready and mounted upon horse, and sent forth their fore-riders; for these eleven kings in their way laid siege unto the castle of Bedegrain; and so they departed and drew toward Arthur, and left few to abide at the siege, for the castle of Bedegrain was holden of king Arthur, and the men that were therein were Arthur's.

Chap. XI.

Of a dream of the king with the hundred knights.

So by Merlin's advice there were sent fore-riders to skim the country, and they met with the fore-riders of the north, and made them to tell which way the host came, and then they told it to Arthur, and by king Ban and Bors's counsel they let burn and destroy all the country afore them where they should ride.

The king with the hundred knights dreamed a wonder dream two nights afore the battle, that there blew a great wind, and blew down their castles and their towns, and after that came a water and bare it all away. All that heard of the dream said it was a token of great battle. Then, by counsel of Merlin, when they wist which way the eleven kings would ride and lodge that night, at midnight they set upon them, as they were in their pavilions. But the scout-watch by their host cried, Lords! at arms! for here be your enemies at your hand!
CHAP. XII.

How the eleven kings with their best fought against Arbur and bis host, and many great feats of the war.

Then king Arthur and king Ban and king Bors, with their good and trusty knights, set on them so fiercely that they made them overthrow their pavilions on their heads; but the eleven kings by manly prowess of arms took a fair field. But there was slain that morrow tide ten thousand good men’s bodies. And so they had afores them a strong passage, yet were they fifty thousand of hardy men. Then it drew toward day. Now shall ye do by mine advice, said Merlin unto the three kings: I would that king Ban and king Bors with their fellowship of ten thousand men were put in a wood here beside in an embushment, and keep them privy, and that they be laid or the light of the day come, and that they stir nor till ye and your knights have fought with them long; and when it is daylight dress your battle even afore them and the passage, that they may see all your host, for then they will be the more hardy when they see you but about twenty thousand, and be the gladder to suffer you and your host to come over the passage. All the three kings and the whole barons said that Merlin said passingly well, and it was done anon as Merlin had devised. So on the morn, when either host saw other, the host of the north was well comforted. Then to Ulffius and Brastias were delivered three thousand men of arms, and they set on them fiercely in the passage, and slew on the right hand and on the left hand, that it was wonder to tell. When that the eleven knights saw that there was so few a fellowship did such deeds of arms, they were ashamed, and set on them again fiercely, and there was Sir Ulffius’s horse slain under him, but he did marvellously well on foot. But the duke Eustace of Cambenet, and king Clariance of Northumberland, were alway grievous on Sir Ulffius. When Brastias saw his fellow fared so withal, he smote the duke with a spear, that horse and man fell down. That saw king Clariance, and returned to Brastias, and either smote other so that horse and man went to the earth, and so they lay long astonied, and their horses’ knees brast to the hard bone. Then came Sir Kay the seneschal with six fellows with him, and did passing well. With that came the eleven kings, and there was Grislet put to the earth, horse and man, and Lucas the butler, horse and man, by king Brandegoris and king Idres and king Agwisance. Then waxed the meddle passing hard on both parties. When Sir Kay saw Grislet on foot he rode on king Nentres and smote him down, and led his horse to Sir Grislet and horsed him again. Also Sir Kay with the same spear smote down king Lot, and hurt him passing sore. That saw the king with the hundred knights, and ran unto Sir Kay and smote him down and took his horse, and gave him to king Lot, whereof he said gramency. When Sir Grislet saw Sir Kay and Lucas the butler on foot, he took a sharp spear great and square and rode to Pined, a good man of arms, and smote horse and man down, and then he took his horse and gave him unto Sir Kay. Whenking Lot saw king Nentres on foot he ran unto Melot de la Roche and smote him down horse and man, and gave king Nentres the horse and horsed him again. Also the king of the hundred knights saw king Idres on foot; then he ran unto Gwimart de Bloi, and smote him down horse and man, and gave king Idres the horse and horsed him again; and king Lot smote down Clariance de la Forest Savage, and gave the horse unto duke Eustace. And so when they had horsed the kings again they drew them all eleven kings together, and said they would be revenged of the damage they had taken that day. The meanwhile came in Sir Ector with an eager countenance, and found Ulffius and Brastias on foot in great peril of death, that were foul bruised under the horse feet. Then king Arthur as a lion ran unto
YET OF THE SAME BATTLE.

CHAP. XIII.

Yet of the same battle.

Then Lucas saw king Agwisanse, that late had slain Moris de la Roche, and Lucas ran to him with a short spear that was great, that he gave him such a fall that the horse fell down to the earth. Also Lucas found there on foot Bloias de la Flandres and Sir Gwinas, two hardy knights, and in that woodness that Lucas was in he slew two bachelors, and horsey them again. Then waxed the battle passing hard on both parties, but Arthur was glad that his knights were horsey again, and then they fought together that the noise and sound rang by the water and the wood. Wherefore king Ban and king Boris made them ready and dressed their shields and harness, and they were so courageous that many knights shook and trembled for eagerness. All this while Lucas, and Gwinas, and Briant, and Bellias of Flanders, held strong meddle against six kings, that was king Lot, king Nentres, king Brandegoris, king Idres, king Uriens, and king Agwisanse. So with the help of Sir Kay and of Sir Grislet they held these six kings hard, that uneth they had any power to defend them. But when Sir Arthur saw the battle would not be ended by no manner he fared wood as a lion, and steered his horse here and there, on the right hand and on the left hand, that he stinted not till he had slain twenty knights. Also he wounded king Lot sore on the shoulder, and made him to leave that ground, for Sir Kay and Grislet did with king Arthur there great deeds of arms. Then Ulius, Brastias, and Sir Ector, encountered against the duke Eustace, and king Cradelmen, and king Cradelmas, and king Clariance of Northumberland, and king Carados, and against the king with the hundred knights. So these knights encountered with these kings that they made them to avoid the ground. Then king Lot made great dole for his damages and his fellows, and said unto

adelment of North Wales, and him through the left side, that e and the king fell down; and took the horse by the rein and unto Ulfius, and said, Have this nine old friend, for great need of horse. Gramercy, said Then Sir Arthur did so mar in arms that all men had When the king with the knights saw king Cradelmont on ran unto Sir Ector, that was sed, Sir Kay's father, and smote d man down, and gave the horse to king and horsey him again. Then Sir Arthur saw the king Sir Ector's horse he was wroth, in his sword he smote the king elm, that a quarter of the helm fell down, and the sword down unto the horse's neck, the king and the horse fell down round. Then Sir Kay came to ranore, seneschal with the king hundred knights, and smote him horse and man, and led the horse father Sir Ector: then Sir Ector a knight, hight Lardans, and horse and man down, and led the unto Sir Brastias that great need a horse, and was greatly bruised. Rastias beheld Lucas the butler, like a dead man under the t, and ever Sir Grislet did mar for to rescue him, and there ways fourteen knights on Sir then Brastias smote one of them elm that it went to the teeth, rode to another and smote him arm flew into the field. Then to the third, and smote him on lder that shoulder and arm flew field. And when Grislet saw he smote a knight on the temt head and helm went to the nd Grislet took the horse of light and led him unto Sir Lucas, him mount upon the horse enge his hurts. For Brastias n a knight tofore, and horsey
the eleven kings. But if ye will do as I devise we shall be slain and destroyed: let me have the king with the hundred knights, and king Agwisance, and king Idres, and the duke of Cambenet, and we five kings will have fifteen thousand men of arms with us, and we will go apart while ye six kings hold the meddle with twelve thousand, and when we see that ye have fough’ten with them long then will we come on fiercely, and else shall we never match them, said king Lot, but by this mean. So they departed as they here devised, and six kings made their party strong against Arthur, and made great war long. In the meanwhile brake the embushment of king Ban and Bors, and Lionses and Pharianse had the advart guard, and they two knights met with king Idres and his fellowship, and there began a great meddle of breaking of spears and smiting of swords with slaying of men and horses, and king Idres was near at discomfiture.

That saw Agwisance the king, and put Lionses and Pharianse in point of death: for the duke of Cambenet came on withal with a great fellowship, so these two knights were in great danger of their lives that they were fain to return, but always they rescued themselves and their fellowship marvellously. When king Bors saw those knights put aback it grieved him sore; then he came on so fast that his fellowship seemed as black as Inde. When king Lot had espied king Bors he knew him well; then he said, O defend us from death and horrible maims, for I see well we be in great peril of death; for I see yonder a king, one of the most worshipful men, and one of the best knights of the world, is inclined unto his fellowship. What is he? said the king with the hundred knights. It is, said king Lot, king Bors of Gaul; I marvel how they came into this country without witting of us all. It was by Merlin’s advice, said the knight. As for him, said king Carados, I will encounter with king Bors, if ye will rescue me when need is. Go on, said they all, we will do all that we may. Then king Carados and his host rode on a soft pace till that they came as nigh king Bors as a bow draught: then either battle let their horses run as fast as they might. And Bleoberis that was gold-son unto king Bors he bare his chief standard, that was a passing good knight. Now shall we see, said king Bors, how the northern Britons can bear their arms. And king Bors encountered with a knight, and smote him throughout with a spear that he fell dead unto the earth, and after drew his sword and did marvellous deeds of arms, that all parties had great wonder thereof; and his knights failed not but did their part, and king Carados was smitten to the earth. With that came the king with the hundred knights and rescued king Carados mightily by force of arms, for he was a passing good knight of a king, and but a young man.

CHAP. XIV.

Yet more of the same battle.

By then came into field king Ban as fierce as a lion, with bands of green and thereupon gold. Ha, ha, said king Lot, we must be discomfited, for yonder I see the most valiant knight of the world, and the man of the most renown: for such two brethren as is king Ban and king Bors are not living, wherefore we must needs void or die; and but if we avoid manly and wisely there is but death. When king Ban came into the battle, he came in so fiercely that the strokes resounded again from the wood and the water; wherefore king Lot wept for pity and dole that he saw so many good knights take their end. But through the great force of king Ban they made both the northern battles that were parted to hurtle together for great dread, and the three kings with their knights slew on ever, that it was pity to behold that multitude of the people that fled. But king Lot and the king of the hundred knights and king Morganore gathered the people together passing knightly, and did great prowess.
s, and held the battle all that day.

When the king of the hundred beheld the great damage that he did, he thrust unto him with his sword, and smote him on high upon the great stroke, and astonied him sore.

King Ban was wroth with him, and smote on him fiercely: the other saw and cast up his shield and spurred horse forward, but the stroke of an fell down and carved a cantil, shield, and the sword slid down hauberk behind his back, and rough the trapping of steel, and horse even in two pieces, that the felt the earth. Then the king of the hundred knights voided the horse, and with his sword he broched horse of king Ban through and through. With that king Ban voided from the dead horse, and then an smote at the other so eagerly note him on the helm, that he fell earth. Also in that ire he felled Morganore, and there was great matter of good knights and much.

By then came into the press Arthur, and found king Ban standing with dead men and dead horses, on foot as a wood lion, that came none nigh him as far as he reach with his sword but that he a grievous buffet; whereof king had great pity. And Arthur bloody that by his shield there no man know him, for all was and brains on his sword. And Arthur looked by him he saw a that was passing well horded, therewith Sir Arthur ran to him note him on the helm that his went unto his teeth, and the sank down to the earth dead, on Arthur took the horse by the ad led him unto king Ban, and fair brother have this horse, for the great need thereof, and me removed of your great damage. It be soon revenged, said king Ban, trust mine use is not such but of them may sore repent this. I tell, said Arthur, for I see your full actual; nevertheless, I might not come at you at that time. But when king Ban was mounted on horseback, then there began new battle the which was sore and hard, and passing great slaughter. And so through great force king Arthur, and king Ban, and king Bors made their knights a little to withdraw them. But always the eleven kings with their chivalry never turned back, and so withdrew them to a little wood, and so over a little river, and there they rested them, for on the night they might have no rest in the field.

And then the eleven kings and knights put them on a heap all together, as men adread and out of all comfort. But there was no man might pass them, they held them so hard together, both behind and before, that king Arthur had marvel of their deeds of arms, and was passing wroth. Ah, Sir Arthur, said king Ban and king Bors, blame them not, for they do as good men ought to do. For by my faith, said king Ban, they are the best fighting men and knights of most prowess that ever I saw or heard speak of, and those eleven kings are men of great worship, and if they were belonging unto you there were no king under the heaven had such eleven knights, and of such worship. I may not love them, said Arthur, they would destroy me. That wit we well, said king Ban and king Bors, for they are your mortal enemies, and that hath been proved aforehand, and this day they have done their part, and that is great pity of their willfulness.

Then all the eleven kings drew them together, and then said king Lot: Lords, ye must other ways than ye do, or else the great loss is behind: ye may see what people we have lost, and what good men we lose, because we wait always upon these footmen, and ever in saving of one of the footmen we lose ten horsemen for him; therefore this is mine advice, let us put our footmen from us, for it is near night, for the noble Arthur will not tarry on the footmen, for they may save themselves, the wood is near hand. And when we horsemen be together, look every each.
of you kings let make such ordinance
that none break upon pain of death.
And who that seeth any man dress him
to flee, lightly that he be slain, for
it is better that we slay a coward than
through a coward all we to be slain.
How say ye? said king Lot, answer
me, all ye kings. It is well said, quoth
king Nentre; so said the king of the
hundred knights; the same said the
king Carados, and king Uriens; so did
king Idres, and king Brandegoris; and
so did king Cradelmas, and the duke
of Cambenet; the same said king Clar
riance, and king Agwiscance;—and swear
they would never fail other, neither
for life nor for death. And whoso that
fled, but did as they did, should be slain.
Then they amended their harness, and
righted their shields, and took new
spear and set them on their thighs,
and stood still as it had been a plump
of wood.

CHAP. XV.

Yet more of the said battle, and how it
was ended by Merlin.

When Sir Arthur and King Ban and
Bors beheld them and all their knights,
they praised them much for their noble
cheer of chivalry, for the hardiest fighters
that ever they heard or saw. With that
there dressed them a forty noble knights,
and said unto the three kings they would
break their battle: these were their
names: Lionses, Phariance, Ulfius,
Brastias, Ector, Kay, Lucas the butcher,
Griflet la Fise de Dieu, Mariet de la
Roche, Guynes de Bloy, Briant de la
Forest Savage, Bellaus, Morians of the
Castle of Maidens, Flannedrius of the
Castle of Ladies, Annecians that was
king Bors's godson, a noble knight, La
dinas de la Rouse, Emerause, Caulas, and
Graciens le Castlein, one Bloise de la
Case, and Sir Colgreave of Gorre.
All these knights rode on afore with
spears on their thighs, and spurred their
horses mightily as the horses might run.
And the eleven kings with part of their
knights rushed with their horses as fast
as they might with their spears, and
there they did on both partie
vellous deeds of arms. So car
the thick of the press Arthur, B
Bors, and slew down right o
hands, that their horses went it
up to the fetlocks. But ever the
kings and their host were ever
visage of Arthur. Wherefore I
Bors had great marvel, consider
great slaughter that there was,
the last they were driven aback
little river. With that came M
a great black horse, and sai
Arthur: Thou hast never done
thou not done enough? of three
thousand this day hast thou left
but fifteen thousand, and it is
say Ho! For God is wroth wi
that thou wilt never have do
yonder eleven kings at this th
not be overthrown, but and t
on them any longer thy for tu
turn and they shall increase.
therefore withdraw you unto yow
ing, and rest you as soon as y
and reward your good knights wi
and with silver, for they have s
erved it; there may no riches
dear for them, for of so few men
have there were never men die
of prowess than they have done
for ye have matched this day w
best fighters of the world.
truth, said king Ban and Bors
said Merlin, withdraw you wi
list, for this three year I dare
take they shall not dare you;
then ye shall hear new tiding
then Merlin said unto Arthur:
eleven kings have more on har
they are ware of, for the Sarac
landed in their countries, mo
forty thousand that burn and sl
have laid siege at the castle V
borow, and made great destr
to therefore dread you not this th
Also Sir, all the goods that be
at this battle let it be searche
when ye have it in your hands l
given freely unto these two kings, I
Bors, that they may reward their
wittal; and that shall cause st
t to be of better will to do you se
Also ye be able to reward your sights of your own goods when it liketh you. It is well said, Arthur, and as thou hast demed it shall it be done. When it was said to Ban and Bors, they gave them as freely to their knights as it en them.

Merlin took his leave of Arthur the two kings, for to go and see the castle that dwelt in Northumr, and so he departed and came to theer, that was passing glad of his. And there he told how Arthur two kings had sped at the great and how it was ended, and told the of every king and knight of that was there. And so Bleise the battle, word by word, as told him, how it began, and by and in likewise how it was and who had the worse. All the that were done in Arthur’s days did his master Bleise do write. He did write all the battles every worthy knight did of Arthur’s.

After this Merlin departed from ter and came to king Arthur, that the castle of Bedegraine, that was the castles that stood in the of Sherwood. And Merlin was praised that king Arthur knew him: he was all befurred in black sins, and a great pair of boots, bow and arrows, in a russet gown, ought wild geese in his hand, and on the morn after Candlemas, he saw Arthur knew him not. Did Merlin unto the king, will me a gift? Wherefore said Arthur should I give thee a gift, Sir, said Merlin, ye were better a gift that is not in your than to lose great riches; for the same place where the great was, is great treasure hid in the Who told thee so, churl? said Merlin told me so, said he. Iffus and Brastias knew him well, and smiled. Sir, said these two, it is Merlin that so speaketh eu. Then king Arthur was greatly I, and had marvel of Merlin, and so had king Ban and king Bors, and so they had great disport at him.

So, in the mean while, there came a damsel which was an earl’s daughter, and his name was Sanam, and her name was Lionors, a passing fair damsel, and so she came thither for to do homage, as other lords did after the great battle. And king Arthur set his love greatly upon her, and so did she upon him, and she bare a child and his name was Borre, that was after a good knight, and of the Table Round.

Then there came word that the king of North Wales made great war upon king Leodegrance of Cameliard, for the which thing Arthur was wroth, for he loved him well and hated king Rience, for he was always against him. So by ordinance of the three kings that was sent home to Benwick, all they would depart for dread of king Claudas; Pharianc and Antemis, and Gratian, and Lionses of Payarde, with the leaders of those that should keep the kings’ lands.

CHAP. XVI.

How king Arthur, king Ban, and king Bors rescued king Leodegrance, and other incidents.

And then king Arthur and king Ban and king Bors departed with their fellowship, a twenty thousand, and came within six days into the country of Cameliard, and there rescued king Leodegrance and slew there much people of king Rience unto the number of ten thousand men, and put him to flight. And then had these three kings great cheer of king Leodegrance that thanked them of their great goodness, that they would revenge him of his enemies. And there had Arthur the first sight of Guenever, the king’s daughter of Cameliard, and ever after he loved her. After they were wedded, as it telleth in the book. So, briefly to make an end, they took their leave to go into their own countries, for king Claudas did great destruction on their lands. Then said Arthur, I will go with you. Nay, said the kings, ye shall not at this
time, for ye have much to do yet in these lands, therefore we will depart, and with the great goods that we have gotten in these lands by your gifts, we shall wage good knights, and withstand the king Claudas’s malice, for, by the grace of God, and we have need we will send to you for your succour; and if ye have need, send for us, and we will not tarry, by the faith of our bodies. It shall not, said Merlin, need that these two kings come again in the way of war: but I know well king Arthur may not be long from you, for within a year or two ye shall have great need, and then shall he revenge you on your enemies, as ye have done on his. For these eleven kings shall die all in a day, by the great might and prowess of arms of two valiant knights (as it telleth after) their names being Balin le Savage, and Balân his brother, which be marvellous good knights as be any living.

Now turn we to the eleven kings, that returned unto a city that hight Sorhautae, the which city was within king Uriens, and there they refreshed them as well as they might, and made leeches search their wounds, and sorrowed greatly for the death of their people. With that there came a messenger and told how there was come into their lands people that were lawless as well as Saracens a forty thousand, and have burnt and slain all the people that they may come by without mercy and have laid siege on the castle of Wandesborow. Alas! said the eleven kings, here is sorrow on sorrow, and if we had not warred against Arthur as we had done, he would soon revenge us: as for king Leodegrance, he loveth king Arthur better than us, and as for king Rience he hath enough to do with king Leodegrance, for he hath laid siege unto him. So they consented together to keep all the marches of Cornwall, of Wales, and of the North. So first they put king Idres in the city of Nautes in Britain with four thousand men of arms, to watch both the water and the land. Also they put in the city of Windesan king Nentre of Garlot with four thousand knights, to watch both on water and on land. Also they had of other men of war more than eight thousand, for to fortify all the fortresses in the marches of Cornwall. Also they put more knights in all the marches of Wales and Scotland with many good men of arms. And so they kept them together the space of three years, and ever allied them with mighty kings, and dukes, and lords. And in them fell king Rience of North Wales, the which was a mighty man of men, and Nero that was a mighty man of men. And all this while they furnished them and garnished them of good men of arms and victual, and of all manner of habiliment that pretendeth to the war, to avenge them for the battle of Bedegraine, as it telleth in the book of adventures following.

CHAP. XVII.

How king Arthure rode to Carlion, and of his dream, and how he saw the quelling beast.

Then after the departing of king Ban and of king Bors king Arthur rode unto Carlion. And thither came to him Lot’s wife of Orkney, in manner of a messenger, but she was sent thither to espay the court of king Arthur; and she came richly beseeen with her four sons, Gawaine, Gaheris, Agravaine, and Gareth, with many other knights and ladies, and she was a passing fair lady, wherefore the king cast great love unto her, and they were agreed, and she was his sister, on the mother side Igraine. So there she rested her a month, and at the last departed. Then the king dreamed a marvellous dream whereof he was sore adread. But all this time king Arthur knew not that king Lot’s wife was his sister. Thus was the dream of Arthur. Him thought that there was come into this land griffons and serpents, and him thought they burnt and slew all the people in the land, and then him thought he fought with them, and they did him passing great harm and wounded him full sore, but at the last he slew them. When the king awaked he was passing heavy
ream, and so to put it out of
he made him ready with many
o ride on hunting. As soon as
in the forest the king saw a great
e him. This hart will I chase,
Arthur, and so he spurred the
rode after long, and so by fine
he was like to have smitten the
the king had chased the hart so
at his horse had lost his breath,
down dead. Then a yeoman
he king another horse. So the
he habited and his
ad; he sat him down by a foun-
d there he fell in great thoughts;
he sat so him thought he heard
of hounds, to the sum of thirty.
with that the king saw coming
him the strangest beast that ever
or heard of; so the beast went
ell and drank, and the noise was
beast's belly like unto the quest-
nty couple hounds; but all the
beast drank there was no
the beast's belly, and therewith
it departed with a great noise,
the king had great marvel. And
was in great thought, and there-
fell on sleep. Right so there
knight afoot unto Arthur, and
ight, full of thought and sleepy,
if thou sawest a strange beast
way. Such one saw I, said
Arthur, that is past two miles:
ould you with the beast? said
Sir, I have followed that beast
, and have killed my horse; so
had another to follow my quest.
became one with the king's horse,
the knight saw the horse he
the king to give him the horse,
have followed this quest this
month, and either I shall achieve
bleed of the best blood of my
Pellinore that time king followed
egg beast, and after his death
omides followed it.

CHAP. XVIII.

ng Pellinore took Arthur's horse
followed the questing beast, and
Merlin met with Arthur.

night, said the king, leave that
quest and suffer me to have it, and I
will follow it another twelve month.
Ah fool, said the knight unto Arthur,
it is in vain thy desire, for it shall never
be achieved but by me, or my next kin.
Therewith he stert unto the king's horse,
and mounted into the saddle, and said,
Gramercy, this horse is mine own. Well,
said the king, thou mayest take my horse
by force, but and I might prove thee
whether thou wert better on horseback
or I. Well, said the knight, seek me
here when thou wilt, and here nigh this
well thou shalt find me; and so passed
on his way. Then the king sat in a
study, and bad his men fetch his horse
as fast as ever they might. Right so
came by him Merlin like a child of
fourteen year of age, and saluted the
king, and asked him why he was so
pensive? I may well be pensive, said
the king, for I have seen the mar-
vellest sight that ever I saw. That
know I well, said Merlin, as well as
thysel, and of all thy thoughts; but
thou art but a fool to take thought, for
it will not amend thee. Also I know
what thou art, and who was thy father,
and of whom thou wert born; king
Uther Pendragon was thy father, and
had thee of Igraine. That is false, said
king Arthur; how shouldst thou know
it? for thou art not so old of years to
know my father. Yes, said Merlin, I
know it better than ye or any man
living. I will not believe thee, said
Arthur, and was wroth with the child.
So departed Merlin; and came again
in the likeness of an old man of four-
score years of age, whereof the king
was right glad, for he seemed to be
right wise.
Then said the old man, Why are ye
so sad? I may well be heavy, said
Arthur, for many things. Also here
was a child, and told me many things
that me seemeth he should not know,
for he was not of age to know my
father. Yes, said the old man, the
child told you truth, and more would
he have told you and ye would have
suffered him. But ye have done a thing
late that God is displeased with you,
and your sister shall have a child that shall destroy you and all the knights of your realm. What are ye, said Arthur, that tell me these tidings? I am Merlin, and I was he in the child's likeness. Ah, said king Arthur, ye are a marvellous man, but I marvel much of thy words that I must die in battle. Marvel not, said Merlin, for it is God's will your body to be punished for your foul deeds. But I may well be sorry, said Merlin, for I shall die a shameful death, to be put in the earth quick, and ye shall die a worshipful death. And as they talked this, came one with the king's horse, and so the king mounted on his horse and Merlin on another, and so rode unto Carlion. And anon the king asked Ector and Ulfsus how he was born. And they told him that Uther Pendragon was his father, and queen Igraine his mother: then he said to Merlin, I will that my mother be sent for, that I may speak with her, and if she say so herself, then I will believe it. In all haste the queen was sent for, and she came and brought with her Morgan le Fay her daughter, that was as fair a lady as any might be. And the king welcomed Igraine in the best manner.

CHAP. XIX.

How Ulfsus approached queen Igraine, Arthur's mother, of treason: and how a knight came and desired to have the death of his master revenged.

Right so came Ulfsus and said openly, that the king and all might hear that were feasted that day, Ye are the falsest lady of the world, and the most traitress unto the king's person. Beware, said Arthur, what thou sayest; thou speakest a great word. I am well ware, said Sir Ulfsus, what I speak, and here is my glove to prove it upon any man that will say the contrary, that this queen Igraine is a causer of your great damage, and of your great war. For, and she would have uttered it in the life of king Uther Pendragon of the birth of you, ye had never had half the mortal wars that ye have had: most part of your barons of you knew never whose son ye were, whom ye were born. And she that you should have made it known in excusing of her worship and in likewise to all the realm; fore I prove her false to God you and to all your realm, and we say the contrary I will prove it upon body.

Then spake Igraine and said a woman, and I may not figl rather than I should be dishonoured there would some good man quarrel. More she said, Merlin knew well, and ye Sir Ulfsus, how king came to me in the castle of Tintagel, the likeness of my lord that was three hours tofore. And after I was dead king Uther wedded me; his commandment when the child was born it was delivered unto Merlii nourished by him, and so I saw my child never after, nor wot not that his name, for I knew him never. And there Ulfsus said to the Merlin is more to blame than ye. I wot, said the queen, that I a child by my lord king Uther. I wot not where he is become. Merlin took the king by the saying, This is your mother, therewith Sir Ector bare witness he nourished him by Uther's commandment. And, therewith king Arthur took his mother queen Igraine in arms and kissed her and either upon other. And then the king make a feast that lasted eight. Then on a day there came into court a squire on horseback, lea knight before him wounded to death, and told him how there a knight in the forest had reared a pavilion by a well, and hath slain master, a good knight, his name Miles; wherefore I beseech you, my master may be buried, and some knight may revenge my master death. Then the noise was great of the knight's death in the court, and man said his advice: then came G
CHAP. XX.

Griflet was made knight, and justed with a knight.

...art full young and tender of a knight, for to take so high a degree as were Sir Griflet, for he were a passing good man when he was young. And if he adventure his life for the king, as it were the right course, he shall come again unto me. So Sir Griflet rode to the court, where great dole was made for him. But through good leeches he was healed and saved.

CHAP. XXI.

How twelve knights came from Rome and asked truage for this land of Aribur, and how Aribur fought with a knight.

...thou must be a gift. What ye will, said Sir Griflet. Thou shalt promise me by the body, when thou hast justed Tha knight at the fountain, whether ye be on foot or on horseback, that ye shall come again unto me, and make no more debate. Then took Sir Griflet his horse in hand, and dressed his shield, and spear in his hand, and so he went to the court, and thereby he saw a rich horse, and thereunder a cloth stood, horse well saddled and bridled, a tree of divers colours, all good. Then Sir Griflet smote the shield with the butt of his spear, and that the shield fell down to the ground. But the knight came out of the house, and said, Fair knight, why do ye down my shield? For I will not, said Sir Griflet. It is better for ye to be with me, and late made knight, and that is nothing to mine. As for
horse and armour, with all that belongeth unto his person, be without the city or to-morrow day. Right so, or to-morrow day, he met with his man and his horse, and so mounted up, and dressed his shield, and took his spear, and bade his chamberlain tarry there till he came again.

And so Arthur rode a soft pace till it was day, and then was he aware of three churls chasing Merlin, and would have slain him. Then the king rode unto them and bade them, Flee churls! Then were they afraid when they saw a knight, and fled. O Merlin, said Arthur, here haddest thou been slain for all thy crafts, had I not been. Nay, said Merlin, not so, for I could save myself an I would, and thou art more near thy death than I am, for thou goest to the death-ward, and God be not thy friend. So as they went thus talking they came to the fountain, and the rich pavilion there by it. Then king Arthur was ware where sat a knight armed in a chair. Sir knight, said Arthur, for what cause abidest thou here, that there may no knight ride this way but if he just with thee, said the king; I rede thee leave that custom, said Arthur. This custom, said the knight, have I used and will use maugre who saith nay; and who is grieved with my custom let him amend it that will. I will amend it, said Arthur. I shall defend thee, said the knight. Anon he took his horse, and dressed his shield, and took a spear, and they met so hard either in other's shields that they all to-shivered their spears. Therewith Arthur anon pulled out his sword. Nay, not so, said the knight, it is fairer that we twain run more together with sharp spears. I will well, said Arthur, and I had any more spears. I have enow, said the knight. So there came a squire, and brought two good spears, and Arthur chose one and he another, so they spurred their horses, and came together with all their might, that either brake their spears to their hands. Then Arthur set hand on his sword. Nay, said the knight, ye shall do better; ye are a passing good juster as ever I met withal, and once for the love of the high order of knighthood let us just once again. I assent me, said Arthur. Anon there were brought two great spears, and every knight got a spear, and therewith they ran together that Arthur's spear all to-shivered. But the other knight hit him so hard in midst of the shield that horse and man fell to the earth, and therewith Arthur was eager, and pulled out his sword, and said, I will assay thee, Sir knight on foot, for I have lost the honour of horseback. I will be on horseback, said the knight. Then was Arthur wroth, and dressed his shield towards him with his sword drawn. When the knight saw that, he alight, for him thought no worship to have a knight at such avail, he to be on horseback, and he on foot, and so he alight and dressed his shield unto Arthur. And there began a strong battle with many great strokes, and so hewed with their swords that the cantels flew in the fields, and much blood they bled both, that all the place there as they fought was over-bled with blood, and thus they fought long, and rested them, and then they went to the battle again, and so hurtled together like two rams that either fell to the earth. So at the last they smote together, that both their swords met even together. But the sword of the knight smote king Arthur's sword in two pieces, wherefore he was heavy. Then said the knight unto Arthur, Thou art in my danger whether me list to save thee or slay thee, and but thou yield thee as overcome and recreant thou shalt die. As for death, said king Arthur, welcome be it when it cometh; but to yield me unto thee as recreant I had lever die than to be so shamed. And therewithal the king leapt unto Pellinore, and took him by the middle, and threw him down, and rased off his helmet. When the knight felt that he was adread, for he was a passing big man of might, and anon he brought Arthur under him, and rased off his helm, and would have smitten off his head.
CHAP. XXII.

Merlin saved Arthur's life, and threw a banishment upon King Pellinore, and bade him to sleep.

In the meantime came Merlin, and said, hold thy hand, for thou slipest thou puttest this realm in pest damage that ever was realm: a knight is a man of more worth than thou wastest of. Why, who is he the knight? It is king Arthur. Would he have slain him for dread wrath, and heaved up his sword, rewith Merlin cast an enchantment on the knight, that he fell to the earth in a great sleep. Then Merlin went to Arthur, and rode forth on his horse. Alas, said Arthur, what hast thou done, Merlin? Hast thou united my great knight by thy craft? I lived not so worshipful a knight as I had rather than the stilt of a year that he was on life; I had rather rather than he for is than ye, for he is but on sleep, I was awake within three hours. I said, said Merlin, for he is not more than ye. Also, had ye been slain had I not. Also, there liveth not a bigger man than he is one, and he shall hereafter you right good service, and his Pellinore, and he shall have two; they shall have no fellow of and of good living; and their shall be Percivale of Wales and Prince of Wales: and he shall tell name of your sister's son that the destruction of all this there three days, and then were his wounds well amended that he might ride and go, and so departed. And as they rode, Arthur said, I have no sword. No force, said Merlin, hereby is a sword that shall be yours and I may. So they rode till they came to a lake, the which was a fair water and broad, and in the midst of the lake Arthur was ware of an arm clothed in white samite, that held a fair sword in that hand. Lo, said Merlin, yonder is that sword that I spake of. With that they saw a damsel going upon the lake: What damsel is that? said Arthur. That is the Lady of the lake; said Merlin; and within that lake is a rock, and therein is as fair a place as any on earth, and richly be seen, and this damsel will come to you anon, and then speak ye fair to her that she will give you that sword. Anon withal came the damsel unto Arthur and saluted him, and he her again. Damself, said Arthur, what sword is that, that yonder the arm holdeth above the water? I would it were mine, for I have no sword. Sir Arthur king, said the damsel, that sword is mine, and if ye will give me a gift when I ask it you, ye shall have it. By my faith, said Arthur, I will give you what gift ye will ask. Well, said the damsel, go ye into yonder barge and row yourself to the sword, and take it and the scabbard with you, and I will ask my gift when I see my time. So Sir Arthur and Merlin alight, and tied their horses to two trees, and so they went into the ship, and when they came to the sword that the hand held, Sir Arthur took it up by the handles, and took it with him. And the arm and the hand went under the water; and so they came unto the land and rode forth. And then Sir Arthur saw a rich pavilion: What signifieth yonder pavilion? It is the knight's pavilion, said Merlin, that ye fought with last, Sir Pellinore, but he is now he is not there; he hath ado with a knight of yours, that hight Egglame, and they have fought together, but at the last Egglame fled, and else he had been dead, and he hath chased him.
even to Carlion, and we shall meet with him anon in the high way. That is well said, said Arthur, now have I a sword, now will I wage battle with him and be avenged on him. Sir, ye shall not so, said Merlin, for the knight is weary of fighting and chasing, so that ye shall have no worship to have ado with him; also he will not lightly be matched of one knight living; and therefore it is my counsel, let him pass, for he shall do you good service in short time, and his sons after his days. Also ye shall see that day in short space, ye shall be right glad to give him your sister to wed. When I see him, I will do as ye advise me, said Arthur. Then Sir Arthur looked on the sword, and liked it passing well. Whether liketh you better, said Merlin, the sword or the scabbard? Me liketh better the sword, said Arthur. Ye are more unwise, said Merlin, for the scabbard is worth ten of the sword, for while ye have the scabbard upon you ye shall never lose no blood, be ye never so sore wounded, therefore keep well the scabbard always with you. So they rode unto Carlion, and by the way they met with Sir Pellinore; but Merlin had done such a craft that Pellinore saw not Arthur, and he passed by without any words. I marvel, said Arthur, that the knight would not speak. Sir, said Merlin, he saw you not, for and he had seen you ye had not lightly departed. So they came unto Carlion, whereof his knights were passing glad. And when they heard of his adventures they marvelled that he would jeopard his person so alone. But all men of worship said it was merry to be under such a chieftain that would put his person in adventure as other poor knights did.

CHAP. XXIV.

How tidings came to Arthur that king Ryon's bad overcome eleven kings, and bow be desired Arthur's beard to trim his mantle.

Thus meanwhile came a messager from king Ryon of North Wales, and king he was of all Ireland, and of Isles. And this was his message: king Arthur in this wise, saying that king Ryon had comfited and overcome eleven and every each of them did him b and that was this — they gave his beards clean flayed off, as much as was; wherefore the messager ca king Arthur's beard. For king had trimmed a mantle with beards, and there lacked one part the mantle, wherefore he sent beard, or else he would enter lands, and burn and slay, and leave till he have the head a beard. Well, said Arthur, tho said thy message, the which is t villainous and lowest message th man heard sent unto a king: as mayest see my beard is full you to make a trimming of it. E thou thy king this: I owe hir homage, nor none of mine elders; it be long he shall do me hom both his knees, or else he shall I head, by the faith of my body, for the shamefulest message th I heard speak of. I see well tI met never yet with worshipful m tell him I will have his head wit do me homage. Then the m departed. Now is there any he Arthur, that knoweth king. Then answered a knight that Naram, Sir, I know the king w is a passing good man of his t few be living, and a passing man; and, Sir, doubt ye not I make war on you with a might sance. Well, said Arthur, I shall for him in short time.

CHAP. XXV.

How all the children were sent out were born on May-day, and bo dred was saved.

Then king Arthur let send for children born on May-day of lor ladies, for Merlin told king Arthur that should destroy him should t on May-day, wherefore he sent fo
OF A DAMSEL WITH A SWORD.

Upon pain of death. And so there were many lords' sons, and all were sent unto the king, and so was Mordred sent by king Lot's wife, and all were put in a ship to the sea, and some were four weeks old, and some less. And so by fortune the ship drove unto castle, and was all to-riven, and destroyed the most part, save that Mordred was cast up, and a good man found him, nourished him till he was fourteen years old, and then he brought him to court, as it rehearseth afterward toward the end of the Death of Arthur. So many lords and barons of this realm were displeased, for their children were so lost, and many put the blame on Merlin more than on Arthur; so what for dread and for love they held their peace. But when the messenger came to king Ryons then was he wood out of measure, and purveyed him for a great host, as it rehearseth after in the book of Balin le Savage that followed next after, how by adventure Balin gat the sword.

Explicit liber primus. Incepit liber secundus.

Book the Second.

CHAP. I.

Of a damsel which came girt with a sword for to find a man of such virtue to draw it out of the scabbard.

After the death of Uther Pendragon reigned Arthur his son, the which had great war in his days for to get all England into his hand. For there were many kings within the realm of England, and in Wales, Scotland, and Cornwall. So it befel on a time when king Arthur was at London, there came a knight and told the king tidings how that the king Ryons of North Wales had reared a great number of people, and were entered into the land, and burnt and slew the king's true liege people. If this be true, said Arthur, it were great shame unto mine estate but that he were mightily withstood. It is truth, said the knight, for I saw the host myself. Well, said the king, let make a cry, that all the lords, knights, and gentlemen of arms, should draw unto a castle, called Camelot in those days, and there the king would let make a council general, and a great justs.

So when the king was come thither with all his baronage, and lodged as they seemed best, there was come a damsel the which was sent on message from the great lady Lile of Avalon. And when she came before king Arthur, she told from whom she came, and how she was sent on message unto him for these causes. Then she let her mantle fall that was richly furred; and then was she girt with a noble sword, whereof the king had marvel, and said, Damsel, for what cause are ye girt with that sword? it beseemeth you not. Now shall I tell you, said the damsel: this sword that I am girt withal doth me great sorrow and cumberance, for I may not be delivered of this sword but by a knight, but he must be a passing good man of his hands and of his deeds, and without villainy or treachery, and without treason. And if I may find such a knight that hath all these virtues, he may draw out this sword out of the sheath. For I have been at king Ryons'; it was told me there were passing good knights, and he and all his knights have assayed it, and none can speed. This is a great marvel, said Arthur; if this be sooth, I will myself assay to draw out the sword, not presuming upon myself that I am the best knight, but that
I will begin to draw at your sword in giving example to all the barons, that they shall assay every one after other when I have assayed it. Then Arthur took the sword by the sheath and by the girdle, and pulled at it eagerly, but the sword would not out. Sir, said the damsel, ye need not to pull half so hard, for he that shall pull it out, shall do it with little might. Ye say well, said Arthur: now assay ye, all my barons, but beware ye be not defiled with shame, treachery, nor guile. Then it will not avail, said the damsel, for he must be a clean knight without villainy, and of a gentle stock of father side and mother side. Most of all the barons of the Round Table that were there at that time assayed all by row, but there might none speed: wherefore the damsel made great sorrow out of measure, and said, Alas! I wend in this court had been the best knights, without treachery or treason. By my faith, saith Arthur, here are good knights as I deem any been in the world, but their grace is not to help you, wherefore I am displeased.

CHAP. II.

How Balin, arrayed like a poor knight, pulled out the sword, which afterward was cause of his death.

Then fell it so that time there was a poor knight with king Arthur, that had been prisoner with him half a year and more, for slaying of a knight the which was cousin unto king Arthur. The name of this knight was called Balin, and by good means of the barons he was delivered out of prison, for he was a good man named of his body, and he was born in Northumberland. And so he went privily into the court, and saw this adventure, whereof it raised his heart, and he would assay it as other knights did, but for he was poor and poorly arrayed he put him not far in press; but in his heart he was fully assured to do as well, if his grace happed him, as any knight that there was. And as the damsel took her leave of Arthur and of all the barons, so de-
OF BALIN AND THE LADY OF THE LAKE.

Ye your destruction, and that is pity. With that the damsel de-

h after Balin sent for his horse's armour, and so would depart he court, and took his leave of Arthur. Nay, said the king, I e ye will not depart so lightly us fellowship. I suppose that ye pleased that I have shewed you ness; blame me the less, for I was formed against you, but I wend not been such a knight as ye worship and prowess, and if ye ide in this court among my fel-

But at this time I must needs beseeching you alway of your race. Truly, said the king, I am rooth for your departing; I pray r knight, that ye tarry not long, shall be right welcome to me and barons, and I shall amend all hat I have done against you.  

Thank your high-said Balin, for your bounty and ss may no man praise half to the but at this time I must needs beseeching you alway of your race. Truly, said the king, I am rooth for your departing; I pray r knight, that ye tarry not long, shall be right welcome to me and barons, and I shall amend all hat I have done against you.  

Then the most part of the Round Table said that it not this adventure all only by but by witchcraft.

CHAP. III.

The Lady of the lake demanded the t's head that had won the sword, maiden's head.

Meanwhile that this knight was him ready to depart, there came e court a lady that hight the f the lake. And she came on ck, richly beseeen, and saluted Arthur; and there asked him a he promised her when she gave e sword. That is sooth, said a gift I promised you, but I forgotten the name of my sword gave me. The name of it, said t, is Excalibur, that is as much as Cut-steel. Ye say well, said g; ask what ye will and ye shall
what adventure befell me at the getting of this sword. Alas, said the squire, ye are greatly to blame for to displease king Arthur. As for that, said Balin, I will hie me in all the haste that I may, to meet with king Ryons and destroy him, or else to die therefore; and if it may hap me to win him, then will king Arthur be my good and gracious lord. Where shall I meet with you? said the squire. In king Arthur's court, said Balin. So his squire and he departed at that time. Then king Arthur and all the court made great dole, and had shame of the death of the Lady of the lake. Then the king buried her richly.

CHAP. IV.

How Merlin told the adventure of this damsel.

At that time there was a knight the which was the king's son of Ireland, and his name was Lanceor, the which was an orgulous knight, and counted himself one of the best of the court, and he had great despite at Balin for the achieving of the sword, that any should be accounted more hardy, or of more prowess; and he asked king Arthur if he would give him leave to ride after Balin, and to revenge the despite that he had done. Do your best, said Arthur, I am right wroth with Balin, I would he were quit of the despite that he hath done to me and to my court. Then this Lanceor went to his hostry to make him ready. In the meanwhile came Merlin unto the court of king Arthur, and there was told him the adventure of the sword, and the death of the Lady of the lake. Now shall I say you, said Merlin, this same damsel that here standeth, that brought the sword unto your court, I shall tell you the cause of her coming,—she was the falsest damsel that liveth. Say not so, said they. She hath a brother, a passing good knight of prowess and a full true man, and this damsel loved another knight that held her to paramour, and this good knight her brother met with the knight that held her to paramour, and slew him by force of his sword. When this false damsel understood she went to the lady Lile of Avelion, and besought her of help, to be on her own brother. And so the lady Lile of Avelion took her this sword that she brought with her, and told her she should no man pull it out of the sheath, but if he be one of the best knights in this realm, and he should be half full of prowess, and with that she should slay her brother. This cause that the damsel came into court. I know it as well as ye. she had not come into this court but she came never in fellowship of this sword to do good, but only great harm; for that knight that hath achieved this sword shall be destroyed by that sword, which will be great damage, for liveth not a knight of more than he is, and he shall do unto lord Arthur, great honour and blessing, and it is great pity he shall not, but a while, for of his strength and armyness I know not his match living.

CHAP. V.

How Balin was pursued by Sir Lanceor, knight of Ireland, and bowly hacked and slew him.

So the knight of Ireland armed at all points, and dressed his shoulder, and mounted upon his horse, and took his spear in hand, and rode after a great pace as his horse might go, and within a space on a mountain he had a meeting with Balin, and with a loud voice he cried, Abide knight, for ye shall abide ye will or nill, and the shield therefore you shall not help. Who heard the noise he turned his horse fiercely, and said, Fair knight, will ye with me, will ye justly with me? Yea, said the Irish knight, I come I after you. Peradventure, said Balin, it had been better to have ye sent from? said Balin. I am
he court of king Arthur, said the
of Ireland, that come hither for
enge the despite ye did this day
g Arthur and to his court. Well,
alin, I see well I must have ado
you, that me forthinketh for to
king Arthur, or any of his court;
our quarrel is full simple, said
unto me, for the lady that is
did me great damage, and else
I have been loth as any knight
weth for to slay a lady. Make
lady, said the knight Lanceor, and
you unto me, for that one
abide in the field. Then they
their spears, and came together as
as their horses might drive, and
the might smote Balin on the shield,
ll went shivers of his spear, and
hit him through the shield, and
suberk perished, and so pierced
his body and the horse croup,
son turned his horse fiercely and
out his sword, and wist not that
slaun him, and then he saw him
dead corpse.

CHAP. VI.
damsel, which was love to Lanceor,
herself for love; and how Balin met
his brother Balan.

he looked by him, and was
of a damsel that came riding full
the horse might ride, on a fare
he. And when she espied that
or was slain she made sorrow out
asure, and said, O Balin, two
thou hast slain and one heart,
two hearts in one body, and two
thou hast lost. And therewith
ok the sword from her love that
ad, and fell to the ground in a
. And when she arose she made
dole out of measure, the which
ried Balin passingly sore, and
it unto her for to have taken the
out of her hand, but she held it
he might not take it out of her
less he should have hurt her,
ddenly she set the pommel to the
, and rove herself through the
When Balin espied her deeds, he
was passing heavy in his heart, and
 ashamed that so fair a damsel had
destroyed herself for the love of his death.
Alas, said Balin, me repenteth sore
the death of this knight for the love of this
damsel, for there was much true love
betwixt them both. And for sorrow
he might no longer hold him, but
turned his horse and looked towards
a great forest, and there he was ware,
by the arms, of his brother Balan. And
when they were met they put off their
helms and kissed together, and wept for
joy and pity. Then Balan said, I little
wend to have met with you at this
sudden adventure; I am right glad of
your deliverance out of your dolorous
prisonment, for a man told me in the
castle of Four Stones that ye were de-
ivered, and that man had seen you in
the court of king Arthur, and therefore
I came hither into this country, for here
I supposed to find you. Anon the knight
Balin told his brother of his adventure of
the sword, and of the death of the Lady
of the lake, and how king Arthur was
displeased with him: Wherefore he
sent this knight after me that lieth here
dead; and the death of this damsel
grieveth me sore. So doth it me, said
Balan, but ye must take the adventure
that God will ordain you. Truly, said
Balin, I am right heavy that my lord
Arthur is displeased with me, for he is
the most worshipful knight that reigneth
now on earth, and his love I will get or
else I will put my life in adventure; for
the king Kyons lieth at a siege at the
castle Terrabil, and thither will we draw
in all haste, to prove our worship and
prowess upon him. I will well, said
Balan, that we do, and we will help
each other as brethren ought to do.

CHAP. VII.
How a dwarf reproved Balin for the death
of Lanceor, and bow king Mark of Corn-
wall found them, and made a tomb over
them.

Now go we hence, said Balin, and
well be we met. The meanwhile as
they talked there came a dwarf from
the city of Camelot on horseback, as
much as he might, and found the dead bodies, wherefore he made great dole, and pulled out his hair for sorrow, and said, Which of you knights have done this deed? Whereby askest thou it, said Balan. For I would wit it, said the dwarf. It was I, said Balin, that slew this knight in my defence, for hither came he to chase me, and either I must slay him or he me; and this damsel slew herself for his love, which repenteth me, and for her sake I shall owe all women the better love. Alas, said the dwarf, thou hast done great damage unto thyself, for this knight that is here dead was one of the most valiantest men that lived, and trust well, Balin, the kin of this knight will chase you through the world till they have slain you. As for that, said Balin, I fear not greatly, but I am right heavy that I have displeased my lord king Arthur for the death of this knight. So as they talked together there came a king of Cornwall riding, the which hight king Mark. And when he saw these two bodies dead, and understood how they were dead by the two knights above said, then made the king great sorrow for the true love that was betwixt them, and said, I will not depart till I have on this earth made a tomb. And there he pight his pavilions, and sought through all the country to find a tomb, and in a church they found one was fair and rich, and then the king let put them both in the earth, and put the tomb upon them, and wrote the names of them both on the tomb:—Here lieth Lanceor the king's son of Ireland that at his own request was slain by the hands of Balin, and how his lady Colombe slew herself with her love's sword for dole and sorrow.

CHAP. VIII.
How Merlin prophesied that two the best knights of the world should fight there, which were Sir Lancelot and Sir Tristram.

The meanwhile as this was adoing, in came Merlin to king Mark, and seeing all his doing said, Here shall be same place the greatest battle twwo knights that was or ever sh and the truest lovers, and yet r them shall slay other. And there wrote their names upon the tom letters of gold that should fight place, whose names were Launc Lake, and Tristram. Thou art vellous man, said king Mark Merlin, that speakest of such thou art a rude man and an u to tell of such deeds; what name? said king Mark. At thi said Merlin, I will not tell, but time when Sir Tristram is taken v sovereign lady, then ye shall he know my name, and at that t shall hear tidings that shall not you. Then said Merlin to Balin hast done thyself great hurt, l thou savedst not this lady that sl self, that might have saved her ar wouldest. By the faith of my said Balin, I might not save her, slew herself suddenly. Me rep said Merlin, because of the death lady thou shalt strike a stroke th dolorous that ever man struck, the stroke of our Lord, for thot hurt the truest knight and the most worship that now liveth through that stroke three kin shall be in great poverty, miser wretchedness, twelve year, an knight shall not be whole o wound many years. Then Merli his leave of Balin. And Balin said wist it were sooth that ye say, I do such a perilous deed as that I slay myself to make thee a liar.

with Merlin vanished away suc And then Balin and his brothe their leave of king Mark. Firs the king, tell me your name. Si Balin, ye may see his b reale swords, thereby ye may call hi knight with the two swords. A departed king Mark unto Came king Arthur, and Balin took th to king Ryons: and as they together they met with Merlin dis but they knew him not, W
HOW THEY TOOK KING RYONS.

? said Merlin. We have little said the two knights, to tell it what is thy name? said Balin. time, said Merlin, I will not see. It is evil seen, said the knights, that thou art a true man wilt not tell thy name. As said Merlin, be it as it be may, tell you wherefore ye ride this to meet king Ryons, but it will ill you without ye have my Ah, said Balin, ye are Merlin: be ruled by your counsel. Come Merlin, ye shall have great, and look that ye do knightly, shall have great need. As for Balin, dread ye not, we will we may.

CHAP. IX.

lin and his brother by the counsel Merlin took king Ryons, and brought king Arthur.

Merlin lodged them in a wood leaves beside the highway, and the briddles of their horses and a to grass, and laid them down them till it was nigh midnight. Merlin bad them rise and make ready, for the king was nigh them; stolen away from his host with core horses of his best knights, entry of them rode tofore, to the lady De Vance that the king ring. Which is the king? said Abide, said Merlin, here in a way ye shall meet with him; rewith he shewed Balin and his where he rode. Anon Balin brother met with the king, and him down, and wounded him and laid him to the ground, and they slew on the right hand and hand, and slew more than forty then; and the remnant fled. Then they again to king Ryons, and saw slain him had he not yielded to their grace. Then said he thus: full of prowess, slay me not, for life ye may win, and by my death win nothing. Then said these knights, Ye say sooth and truth; and so laid him on an horse-litter. With that Merlin was vanished, and came to king Arthur aforehand, and told him how his most enemy was taken and discomfited. By whom? said king Arthur. By two knights, said Merlin, that would please your lordship, and to-morrow ye shall know what knights they are. Anon after came the knight with the two swords, and Balan his brother, and brought with them king Ryons of North Wales, and there delivered him to the porters, and charged them with him; and so they two returned again in the dawning of the day. King Arthur came then to king Ryons and said, Sir king ye are welcome: by what adventure come ye hither? Sir, said king Ryons, I came hither by an hard adventure. Who won you? said king Arthur. Sir, said the king, the knight with the two swords and his brother, which are two marvellous knights of prowess. I know them not, said Arthur, but much I am beholden to them. Ah, said Merlin, I shall tell you, it is Balin that achieved the sword, and his brother Balan, a good knight, there liveth not a better of prowess and of worthiness; and it shall be the greatest sole of him that ever I knew of knight, for he shall not long endure. Alas, said king Arthur, that is great pity, for I am much beholden unto him, and I have ill deserved it unto him for his kindness. Nay, said Merlin, he shall do much more for you, and that shall ye know in haste. But, Sir, are ye purveyed? said Merlin; for to-morn the host of Nero, king Ryons's brother, will set on you or noon with a great host, and therefore make you ready, for I will depart from you.

CHAP. X.

How king Arthur bad a battle against Nero and king Lot of Orkney, and how king Lot was deceived by Merlin, and how twelve kings were slain.

Then king Arthur made ready his host in ten battles, and Nero was ready in the field afore the castle
Terrabil with a great host, for he had ten battles, with many more people than Arthur had. Then Nero had the vaward with the most part of his people: and Merlin came to king Lot of the Isle of Orkney, and held him with a tale of prophecy till Nero and his people were destroyed. And there Sir Kay the seneschal did passingly well, that the days of his life the worship went never from him. And Sir Hervis de Revel did marvellous deeds with king Arthur, and king Arthur slew that day twenty knights and maimed forty. At that time came in the knight with the two swords, and his brother Balan, but they two did so marvellously that the king and all the knights marvelled of them, and all they that beheld them said they were sent from heaven as angels, or devils from hell: and king Arthur said himself they were the best knights that ever he saw, for they gave such strokes that all men had wonder of them. In the meanwhile came one to king Lot, and told him while he tarried there Nero was destroyed and slain with all his people. Alas, said king Lot, I am ashamed, for by my default there is many a worshipful man slain, for and we had been together there had been none host under the heaven that had been able for to have matched with us: this deceiver with his prophecy hath mocked me. All that did Merlin, for he knew well that if king Lot had been with his body there at the first battle, king Arthur had been slain and all his people destroyed. And well Merlin knew that one of the kings should be dead that day; and loth was Merlin that any of them both should be slain, but of the twain he had lever king Lot had been slain than king Arthur.

Now what is best to do? said king Lot of Orkney, whether is me better to treat with king Arthur or to fight, for the greater part of our people are slain and destroyed. Sir, said a knight, set on Arthur, for they are weary and forfoughten, and we be fresh. As for me, said king Lot, I would that every knight would do his part as I would do mine.

And then they advanced bame smote together, and all to-shivern spears; and Arthur's knights, w help of the knight with the two and his brother Balan, put king I his host to the worse. But alw Lot held him in the foremost fro did marvellous deeds of arms, for host was borne up by his hands, abode all knights. Alas, he my endure, the which was great pity, worthy a knight as he was sh overmatched, that of late time had been a knight of king A and weded the sister of king , and for the wrong king Arth him therefore king Lot held Arthur. So there was a knig was called the knight with the beast, and at that time his righ was called Pellinore, the which good man of prowess, and he s mighty stroke at king Lot as he with all his enemies, and he faile stroke, and he smote the horse' that he fell to the ground with kir and therewith anon Sir Pellinore him a great stroke through the he head unto the brows. And then host of Orkney fled for the d king Lot; and there were slair mothers' sons. But king Pellin the blame of the death of kin wherefore Sir Gawaine reveng death of his father the tenth ye he was made knight, and slew Pellinore with his own hands, there were slain at that battle kings on the side of king Lot witl and all were buried in the ch Saint Stephen's, in Camelot; a remnant of knights and of othe buried in a great rock.

CHAP. XI.

Of the interment of twelve kings, the prophecy of Merlin, and how should give the dolorous stroke.

So at the interment came king wife Morgause, with her four Gawaine, Agravaine, Gaheris, ai reth. Also there came thithe
Sir Ewaine's father, and Morgan his wife, that was king Arthur's. All these came to the inter-
But of all these twelve kings king let make the tomb of king Lot richly, and made his tomb own; and then king Arthur let twelve images of laton and copper, ever-gilt it with gold, in the twelve kings, and each one of held a taper of wax that burnt 1 night: and king Arthur was sign of a figure standing above with a sword drawn in his hand:
the twelve figures had coun-
like unto men that were over.
All this made Merlin by his craft; and there he told the king, am dead these tapers shall burn er; and soon after the adventures Sangreal shall come among you achieved. Also he told Arthur in the worshipful knight shall:
dolorous stroke, whereof shall be vengeance. O where is Balin, lan, and Pellinore? said king
As for Pellinore, said Merlin, meet with you soon: and as a, he will not be long from you: other brother will depart; ye e him no more. By my faith, thor, they are two marvellous and namely Balin passeth of any knight that ever I found, much beholden am I unto him; that he would abide with me. Merlin, look ye keep well the 1 of Excalibur, for ye shall lose it while ye have the scabbard on, though ye have as many upon you as ye may have. So for great trust Arthur betook the 1 to Morgan le Fay his sister, 1 loved another knight better r husband king Uriens or king and she would have had Arthur ther slain, and therefore she let nother scabbard like it by entant, and gave the scabbard of ur to her love. And the knight's as called Accolon, that after had lain king Arthur. After this told unto king Arthur of the prophecy that there should be a great battle beside Salisbury, and that Mordred his sister's son should be against him. Also he told him that Basdemegus was his cousin, and germain unto king Uriens.

CHAP. XII.
How a sorrowful knight came tofore king Arthur, and how Balin fetched him, and bow that knight was slain by a knight invisible.

Within a day or two king Arthur was somewhat sick, and he let pitch his pavilion in a meadow, and there he laid him down on a pallet to sleep, but he might have no rest. Right so he heard a great noise of an horse, and therewith the king looked out at the porch of the pavilion, and saw a knight coming even by him making great dole. Abide, fair sir, said Arthur, and tell me wherefore thou makest this sorrow? Ye may little amend me, said the knight, and so passed forth to the castle of Meliot. Anon after there came Balin, and when he saw king Arthur he alight off his horse, and came to the king on foot, and saluted him. By my head, said Arthur, ye be welcome. Sir, right now came riding this way a knight making great mourn, for what cause I cannot tell, wherefore I would desire of you of your courtesy and of your gentleness to fetch again that knight either by force or else by his good-will. I will do more for your lordship than that, said Balin: and so he rode more than a pace, and found the knight with a damsel in a forest, and said, Sir knight, ye must come with me unto king Arthur, for to tell him of your sorrow. That will I not, said the knight, for it will scathe me greatly, and do you none avail. Sir, said Balin, I pray you make you ready, for ye must go with me, or else I must fight with you and bring you by force, and that were me loth to do. Will ye be my warrant, said the knight, and I go with you? Yea, said Balin, or else I will die therefore. And so he made him ready to go with Balin, and left the damsel still. And as they were even
afore king Arthur's pavilion there came one invisible, and smote this knight that went with Balin throughout the body with a spear. Alas, said the knight, I am slain under your conduct, with a knight called Garlon: therefore take my horse, that is better than your's, and ride to the damsel, and follow the quest that I was in as she will lead you, and revenge my death when ye may. That shall I do, said Balin, and that I make a vow unto knighthood. And so he departed from this knight with great sorrow. So king Arthur let bury this knight richly, and made a mention on his tomb how there was slain Herlew le Berbeus, and by whom the treachery was done,—the knight Garlon. But ever the damsel bare the truncheon of the spear with her that Sir Herlew was slain withal.

CHAP. XIII.

How Balin and the damsel met with a knight which was in likewise slain, and how the damsel bled for the custom of a castle.

So Balin and the damsel rode into a forest, and there met with a knight that had been on hunting, and that knight asked Balin for what cause he made so great sorrow. Me list not to tell you, said Balin. Now, said the knight, and I were armed as ye be I would fight with you. That should little need, said Balin; I am not afeard to tell you; and told him all the cause, how it was. Ah, said the knight, is this all: here I ensure you by the faith of my body never to depart from you while my life lasteth. And so they went to the hostelry and armed them, and so rode forth with Balin. And as they came by an hermitage even by a churchyard, there came the knight Garlon invisible, and smote this knight, Perin de Mountbeliard, through the body with a spear. Alas, said the knight, I am slain by this traitor knight that rideth invisible. Alas, said Balin, it is not the first despite that he hath done me. And there the hermit and Balin buried the knight under a rich stone, tomb royal. And on the mon found letters of gold written, he Gawaine shall revenge his death, king Lot, on the king Pel Anon after this Balin and the rode till they came to a castle there Balin alighted, and he a damsel went to go into the. And anon as Balin came with castle gate the portcullis fell down his back, and there fell many men the damsel, and would have slain. When Balin saw that, he was grieved, for he might not help the damsel. And then he went up in tower, and kept over the walls ir ditch, and hurt him not; and as pulled out his sword, and would have fought with them. And they say, they would not fight with him they did nothing but the old cuve the castle, and told him how the was sick, and had lain many ye: she might not be whole, but if a dish of silver full of blood of and a king's daughter; and th custom of this castle is that shall no damsel pass this way, but she shall bleed of her blood in a dish full. Well, said Balin, she bleed as much as she may bleed will not lose the life of her wh life lasteth. And so Balin made bleed by her good-will, but her helped not the lady. And so she rested there all night, and had right good cheer, and on the morrow passed on their ways. And as it after in the Sangreal, that Sir vale's sister helped that lady w blood, whereof she died.

CHAP. XIV.

How Balin met with that knight Garlon at a feast, and there by him, to have his blood to heal the son of his host.

Then they rode three or fou: and never met with adventure; hap they were lodged with a gen that was a rich man and well a
they sat at their supper, Balin ne complain grievously by him air. What is this noise? said Forsooth, said his host, I will I was but late at a justing, and ajusted with a knight that is unto king Pellam, and twice to him down; and then he proboquit me on my best friend, and bowed my son, that cannot be all I have of that knight's blood, rideth alway invisible, but I not his name. Ah, said Balin, that knight, his name is Garlon, I slay two knights of mine in the manner; therefore I had rather with that knight than all the this realm, for the despite he done me. Well, said his host, if you, king Pellam of Listeneise ride cry in all this country a great shall be within the twenty and no knight may come there bring his wife with him, or his and that knight, your enemy and we shall see that day. Then I you, said Balin, part of his to heal your son withal. We forward to-morrow, said his So on the morn they rode all toward Pellam, and they had fifteens' journey or they came thither; next same day began the great feast. so they alight and stabled their and went into the castle; but host might not be let in because no lady. Then Balin was well, and brought unto a chamber armed him, and they brought sleepes to his pleasure, and would Balin leave his sword behind Nay, said Balin, that do I not, is the custom of my country alway to keep his weapon with and that custom will I keep, or ill depart as I came. Then they leave to wear his sword, and went unto the castle, and was set knights of worship, and his lady. Soon Balin asked a knight, a knight in this court whose Garlon? Yonder he goeth, said he, with the black face; he is the marvellous knight that is now living, for he destroyeth many good knights, for he goeth invisible. Ah, well, said Balin, is that he? Then Balin advised him long:—If I slay him here I shall not escape, and if I leave him now peradventure I shall never meet with him again at such a good time, and much harm he will do and he live. Therewith this Garlon espied that this Balin beheld him, and then he came and smote Balin on the face with the back of his hand, and said, Knight, why beholdest thou me so? for shame, therefore, eat thy meat, and do that thou came for. Thou sayest sooth, said Balin, this is not the first despite that thou hast done me, and therefore I will do that I came for; and rose up fiercely, and clave his head to the shoulders. Give me the truncheon, said Balin to his lady, wherewith he slew your knight. Anon she gave it him, for alway she bare the truncheon with her; and therewith Balin smote him through the body, and said openly, With that truncheon thou hast slain a good knight, and now it sticketh in thy body. And then Balin called to him his host, saying, Now may ye fetch blood enough to heal your son withal.

CHAP. XV.

How Balin fought with king Pellam, and bow his sword brake, and bow he got a spear wherewith he smote the dolorous stroke.

Anon all the knights arose from the table for to set on Balin. And king Pellam himself arose up fiercely, and said, Knight, hast thou slain my brother? thou shalt die therefore or thou depart. Well, said Balin, do it yourself. Yes, said king Pellam, there shall no man have ado with thee but myself, for the love of my brother. Then king Pellam caught in his hand a grim weapon and smote eagerly at Balin, but Balin put the sword betwixt his head and the stroke, and therewith his sword burst in sunder. And when Balin was weaponless he ran into a chamber for to
seek some weapon, and so from cham-
ber to chamber, and no weapon he
could find, and alway king Pellam after
him. And at the last he entered into
a chamber that was marvellously well
ight and richly, and a bed arrayed with
cloth of gold, the richest that might be
thought, and one lying therein, and
thereby stood a table of clean gold,
with four pillars of silver that bare up
the table, and upon the table stood
a marvellous spear, strangely wrought.
And when Balin saw that spear he got
it in his hand, and turned him to king
Pellam, and smote him passing sore
with that spear, that king Pellam fell
down in a swoon, and therewith the
castle roof and walls brake and fell to
the earth, and Balin fell down so that
he might not stir foot nor hand. And
so the most part of the castle that
was fallen down through that dolorous
stroke lay upon Pellam and Balin three
days.

CIIAP. XVI.

How Balin was delivered by Merlin, and
saved a knight that would have slain
himself for love.

Then Merlin came thither and took
up Balin, and got him a good horse,
for his was dead, and bade him ride
out of that country. I would have my
damsel, said Balin. Lo, said Merlin,
where she lieth dead. And king Pellam
lay so many years sore wounded, and
might never be whole, till Galahad, the
haut prince, healed him in the quest of
the Sangreal; for in that place was part
of the blood of our Lord Jesus Christ,
that Joseph of Arimathea brought into
this land, and there himself lay in that
rich bed. And that was the same spear
that Longius smote our Lord to the
heart; and king Pellam was nigh of
Joseph's kin, and that was the most
worshipful man that lived in those days,
and great pity it was of his hurt, for
that stroke turned to great dole, trouble,
and grief.

Then departed Balin from Merlin, and
said, In this world we meet never no
more. So he rode forth through the fair
countries and cities, and found the people
dead, slain on every side. And all that
were alive cried, O Balin, thou hast
caused great damage in these countries,
for the dolorous stroke thou gavest
unto king Pellam three countries and
destroyed, and doubt not but the ven-
geance will fall on thee at the last.
When Balin was past those countries he
was passing glad. So he rode eight
days or he met with adventure. And at
the last he came into a fair forest in
a valley, and was ware of a tower, and
there beside he saw a great horse of
war tied to a tree, and there beside sat
a fair knight on the ground and made
great mourning; and he was a likely
man and a well made. Balin said, God
save you, why be ye so heavy? tell me,
and I will amend it and I may to my
power. Sir knight, said he again,
thou dost me great grief, for I was in
merry thoughts, and now thou puttest
me to more pain. Balin went a little
from him, and looked on his horse;
then heard Balin him say thus: Ah, fair
lady, why have ye broken my promise,
for thou promisedst me to meet me here
by noon, and I may curse thee that
ever ye gave me this sword, for with
this sword I slay myself—and pulled it
out; and therewith Balin start unto him,
and took him by the hand. Let go my
hand, said the knight, or else I shall
slay thee. That shall not need, said
Balin, for I shall promise you my help
to get you your lady, and ye will tell me
where she is. What is your name? said
the knight. My name is Balin le Savage.
Ah, sir, I know you well enough; ye
are the knight with the two swords, and
the man of most prowess of your hand
living. What is your name? said Balin.
My name is Garnish of the Mount, a
poor man's son, but by my prowess and
hardiness a duke hath made me knight,
and gave me lands; his name is duke
Hermel, and his daughter is she that I
love, and she me as I deemed. How
far is she hence? said Balin. But six
mile, said the knight. Now ride we
hence, said these two knights. So they
more than a pace till they came to castle, well walled and ditched. into the castle, said Balin, and she be there. So he went in, rched from chamber to chamber, und her bed, but she was not then Balin looked into a fair arden, and under a laurel tree her lie upon a quilt of green and a knight with her, and under eads grass and herbs. When aw her with the foulest knight er he saw, and she a fair lady, balin went through all the chamain, and told the knight how he her, as she had slept fast, and so t him in the place where she lay ping.

CHAP. XVII.

ut knight slew his love and a knight her, and after how he slew himself his own sword, and how Balin rode d a castle where he lost his life.

when Garnish beheld her so for pure sorrow his mouth use burst out on bleeding, and sword he smote off both their and then he made sorrow out of e and said, Oh Balin, much sorst thou brought unto me, for hou not shewn me that sight I have passed my sorrow. Foraid Balin, I did it to this intent should better thy courage, and might see and know her false and to cause you to leave love a lady: truly I did none other. Alas! I said, now is my sorrow double that not endure: now have I slain most loved in all my life. And th suddenly he rove himself on sword unto the hilts. When saw that, he dressed him thenceest folks would say he had slain and so he rode forth, and within lays he came by a cross, and were letters of gold written that is not for any knight alone to ward this castle. Then saw he an old hoar gentleman coming toward him that said, Balin le Savage, thou passest thy bounds to come this way, therefore turn again and it will avail thee. And he vanished away anon; and so he heard an horn blow as it had been the death of a beast. That blast, said Balin, is blown for me, for I am the prize, yet am I not dead. Anon withal he saw an hundred ladies and many knights, that welcomed him with fair semblance, and made him passing good cheer unto his sight, and led him into the castle, and there was dancing and minstrelsy, and all manner of joy. Then the chief lady of the castle said, Knight with the two swords, ye must have ado with a knight hereby that keepeth an island, for there may no man pass this way but he must just or he pass. That is an unhappy custom, said Balin, that a knight may not pass this way but if he just. Ye shall not have ado but with one knight, said the lady. Well, said Balin, since I shall, thereto am I ready, but travelling men are oft weary, and their horses also; but though my horse be weary my heart is not weary. I would be fain there my death should be. Sir, said a knight to Balin, me thinketh your shield is not good, I will lend you a bigger: therefore I pray you: and so he took the shield that was unknown and left his own, and so rode unto the island, and put him and his horse in a great boat, and when he came on the other side he met with a damsel, and she said, O knight Balin, why have ye left your own shield? alas! ye have put your self in great danger, for by your shield ye should have been known: it is great pity of you as ever was of knight, for of thy prowess and hardiness thou hast no fellow living. Me repenteth, said Balin, that ever I came within this country, but I may not turn now again for shame, and what adventure shall fall to me, be it life or death, I will take the adventure that shall come to me. And then he looked on his armour, and understood he was well armed, and therewith blessed him, and mounted upon his horse.
CHAP. XVIII.

How Balin met with his brother Balan, and how each of them slew other unknown, till they were wounded to death.

Then afore him he saw come riding out of a castle a knight, and his horse trapped all red, and himself in the same colour. When this knight in the red beheld Balin, him thought it should be his brother Balin because of his two swords, but because he knew not his shield, he deemed it was not he. And so they avenged their spears, and came marvellously fast together, and they smote each other in the shields, but their spears and their course were so big that it bare down horse and man, that they lay both in a swoon. But Balin was bruised sore with the fall of his horse, for he was weary of travel. And Balan was the first that rose on foot and drew his sword, and went toward Balin, and he arose and went against him, but Balan smote Balin first, and he put up his shield, and smote him through the shield and cleft his helm. Then Balin smote him again with that unhappy sword, and well nigh had felled his brother Balan, and so they fought there together till their breaths failed. Then Balin looked up to the castle, and saw the towers stand full of ladies. So they went to battle again, and wounded each other dolefully, and then they breathed oft-times, and so went unto battle, that all the place there as they fought was blood red. And at that time there was none of them both but they had either smitten other seven great wounds, so that the least of them might have been the death of the mightiest giant in this world. Then they went to battle again so marvellously that doubt it was to hear of that battle for the great bloodshedding, and their haubersks unnailed, that naked they were on every side. At the last Balan, the younger brother, withdrew him a little and laid him down. Then said Balin le Savage, What knight art thou? for or now I found never no knight that matched me. My name is said he, Balan, brother to the good knight Balin. Alas! said Balin, that ever I should see this day. And there with he fell backward in a swoon. Then Balan went on all four feet and hands, and put off the helm of his brother, and might not know him by the visage it was so full hewn and bled; but when he awoke he said, O Balan, my brother, thou hast slain me and I thee, wherefore all the wide world shall speak of us both. Alas! said Balan, that ever I saw this day, that through mishap I might not know you, for I espied well your two swords, but because ye had another shield I deemed you had been another knight. Alas! said Balin, all that made an unhappy knight in the castle, for he caused me to leave mine own shield to our both destruction, and if I might live I would destroy that castle for ill customs. They were well done, said Balan, for I had never grace to depart from them since that I came hither, for here it hapned me to slay a knight that kept this island, and since might I never depart, and no more should ye brother, and ye might have slain me as ye have, and escaped yourself with the life. Right so came the lady of the tower with four knights and six ladies and six yeomen unto them, and there she heard how they made their moan either to other, and said, We came both out of one womb, and so shall we lye both in one pit. So Balan prayed the lady of her gentleness, for his true service that she would bury them both in that same place there the battle was done. And she granted them with weeping it should be done richly in the best manner. Now will ye send for a priest, that we may receive our sacrament and receive the blessed body of our Lord Jesus Christ. Yea, said the lady, it shall be done. And so she sent for a priest and gave them their rites. Now, said Balin, when we are buried in one tomb, and the mention made over us how two brethren slew each other, there will never good knight nor good man see our tomb but they
for our souls. And so all the
and gentlewomen wept for pity.
Balan died, but Balin died
the midnight after, and so were
died both, and the lady let make
of Balan how he was there
his brother's hands, but she
Balin's name.

CHAP. XIX.

in buried them both in one tomb,
and of Balin's sword.

The morn came Merlin and let
Balin's name upon the tomb, with
gold, That her lieth Balin le
that was the knight with the
rds, and he that smote the
do
troke. Also Merlin let make
ed, that there should never man
in but he went out of his wit,
celot de Lake fordid that bed
his nobleness. And anon after
's dead, Merlin took his sword:
off the pommel, and set on
pommel. So Merlin had a
at stood afore him to handle
ord, and he assayed, and he
ot handle it. Then Merlin

Why laugh ye? said the
This is the cause, said Merlin:
all never man handle this
the best knight of the world,
shall be Sir Launcelot, or else
his son, and Launcelot with
shall slay the man that in
he loved best, that shall be
ine. All this he let write in
the pommel of the sword. Then Merlin
let make a bridge of iron and of steel
into that island, and it was but half a
foot broad, and there shall never man
pass that bridge, nor have hardiness to
go over, but if he were a passing good
man and a good knight without treachery
or villainy. Also the scabbard of Balin's
sword Merlin left it on this side the
island that Galahad should find it. Also
Merlin let make by his subtily that
Balin's sword was put in a marble stone
standing upright as great as a millstone,
and the stone hoved always above the
water, and did many years, and so by
adventure it swam down the stream to
the city of Camelot, that is in English
Winchester. And that same day Gala-
had the haut prince came with king
Arthur, and so Galahad brought with
him the scabbard, and achieved the
sword that was there in the marble
stone hoving upon the water. And on
Whitsunday he achieved the sword, as
it is rehearsed in the book of the San-
greal. Soon after this was done Merlin
came to king Arthur and told him of
the dolorous stroke that Balin gave to
king Pellam, and how Balin and Balan
fought together the most marvellous
battle that ever was heard of, and how
they were buried both in one tomb.
Alas! said king Arthur, this is the
greatest pity that ever I heard tell of
two knights, for in the world I know
not such two knights. Thus endeth the
tale of Balin and Balan, two brethren
born in Northumberland, good knights.

Sequitur iii liber.
The Third Book.

CHAP. I.

How king Arthur took a wife, and wedded Guenever daughter to Loedegrance, king of the land of Cameliard, with whom be bad the Round Table.

In the beginning of Arthur, after he was chosen king by adventure and by grace,—for the most part of the barons knew not that he was Uther Pendragon's son, but as Merlin made it openly known,—many kings and lords made great war against him for that cause; but well Arthur overcame them all; for the most part of the days of his life he was ruled much by the counsel of Merlin. So it fell on a time king Arthur said unto Merlin, My barons will let me have no rest, but needs I must take a wife, and I will none take but by thy counsel and by thine advice. It is well done, said Merlin, that ye take a wife, for a man of your bounty and nobleness should not be without a wife. Now is there any that ye love more than another? Yea, said king Arthur, I love Guenever, the daughter of king Loedegrance, of the land of Cameliard, which Loedegrance holdeth in his house the Table Round, that ye told he had of my father, Uther. And this damsel is the most valiant and fairest lady that I know living, or yet that ever I could find. Sir, said Merlin, as of her beauty and fairness she is one of the fairest on live. But and ye loved her not so well as ye do, I could find you a damsel of beauty and of goodness that should like you and please you, and your heart were not set; but there as a man's heart is set, he will be loth to return. That is truth, said king Arthur. But Merlin warned the king covertly that Guenever was not wholesome for him to take to wife, for he warned him that Launcelot should love her, and she him again; and so he turned his the adventures of the Sangreal. Merlin desired of the king to have with him that should enquire of ever, and so the king granted him Merlin went forth to king Loedeg of Cameliard, and told him of the of the king that he would have u wife Guenever his daughter. Th me, said king Loedegrance, tidings that ever I heard, that so a king of prowess and nobles wed my daughter. And as lands I will give him wist I it please him, but he hath lands e him needeth none, but I shall se a gift shall please him much mor shall give him the Table Round which Uther Pendragon gave n when it is full complete there is hidred knights and fifty. And as hundred good knights I have mys I lack fifty, for so many have bet in my days. And so king Loed delivered his daughter Guenever Merlin, and the Table Round, w hundred knights, and so they freshly, with great royalty, w water and what by land, till th came nigh unto London.

CHAP. II.

How the knights of the Round Table ordained, and their sieges blessed bishop of Canterbury.

When king Arthur heard coming of Guenever and the knights with the Table Round king Arthur made great joy for coming, and that rich presen said openly, This fair lady is welcome unto me, for I have lov long, and therefore there is no lie to me. And these knighte the Round Table please me mor right great riches. And in all ha
HOW SIR TOR WAS MADE KNIGHT.

ordain for the marriage and the n in the most honourablest could be devised. Now Mer -
cing Arthur, go thou and espy this land fifty knights which most prowess and worship, short time Merlin had found knights that should fulfil twenty knights, but no more he did. Then the bishop of Can -
was fetched, and he blessed s with great royalty and de -
nd there set the eight and nights in their sieges. And s was done Merlin said, Fair ust all arise and come to king r to do him homage; he will better will to maintain you. ey arose and did their homage. 1 they were gone Merlin found ege letters of gold that told the names that had sitten therein. sieges were void. And so anon ing Gawaine, and asked the ft. Ask, said the king, and I it you. Sir, I ask that ye me knight that same day ye fair Guenever. I will do it od will, said king Arthur, and ou all the worship that I may, by reason you are my nephew, s son.

CHAP. III.

or man riding upon a lean mare king Arthur to make bis son

ithal there came a poor man ourt, and brought with him a ; man of eighteen year of age, on a lean mare. And the poor I all men that he met, Where d king Arthur? Yonder he is, knights, wilt thou anything ? Yea, said the poor man, I came hither. Anon as he ore the king, he saluted him O king Arthur, the flower of ts and kings, I beseech Jesu : Sir, it was told me that at of your marriage ye would give the gift that he would ask out, at were unreasonable. That is truth, said the king, such cries I let make, and that will I hold, so it impair not my realm nor mine estate. Ye say well and graciously, said the poor man: Sir, I ask nothing else but that ye will make my son here a knight. It is a great thing that thou askest of me: what is thy name? said the king to the poor man. Sir, my name is Aries the cowherd. Whether cometh this of thee or of thy son? said the king. Nay Sir, said Aries, this desireth of my son and not of me. For I shall tell you I have thirteen sons, and all they will fall to what labour I put them to, and will be right glad to do labour, but this child will do no labour for me, for anything that my wife or I may do, but always he will be shooting or casting darts, and glad for to see battles, and to behold knights; and always day and night he desireth of me to be made a knight. What is thy name? said the king unto the young man. Sir, my name is Tor. The king beheld him fast, and saw he was passingly well visaged and passingly well made of his years. Well, said king Arthur to Aries the cowherd, fetch all thy sons afore me that I may see them. And so the poor man did, and all were shapen much like the poor man: but Tor was not like none of them all in shape nor in countenance, for he was much more than any of them. Now, said king Arthur unto the cowherd, where is the sword that he shall be made knight withal? It is here, said Tor. Take it out of the sheath, said the king, and require me to make you a knight. Then Tor alight off his mare, and pulled out his sword, kneel -ing, and requiring the king that he would make him knight, and that he might be a knight of the Table Round. As for a knight I will make you; and therewith smote him in the neck with the sword, saying, Be ye a good knight, and so I pray to God so ye may be, and if ye be of prowess and of worthiness ye shall be a knight of the Table Round. Now Merlin, said Arthur, say whether this Tor shall be a good knight or no. Yea, sir, he ought to be a good knight,
for he is come of as good a man as any
is on live, and of king’s blood. How so,
sir? said the king. I shall tell you,
said Merlin: this poor man, Aries the
cowherd, is not his father, he is nothing
like to him, for king Pellinore is his
father. I suppose nay, said the cow-
herd. Fetch thy wife afore me, said
Merlin, and she shall not say nay.
Anon, the wife was fetched, which was
a fair house-wife, and there she answered
Merlin full womanly. And there she
told the king and Merlin that when she
was a maid, and went to milk kine,
There met with me a stern knight, and
half by force he held me, and after that
time was born my son Tor, and he took
away from me my greyhound that I had
that time with me, and said that he
would keep the greyhound for my love.
Ah, said the cowherd, I wend not this,
but I may believe it well, for he had
never no taches of me. Sir, said Tor to
Merlin, dishonour not my mother. Sir,
said Merlin, it is more for your worship
than hurt, for your father is a good
man and a king, and he may right well
advance you and your mother, for ye
were begotten or ever she was wedded.
That is truth, said the wife. It is the
less grief to me, said the cowherd.

CHAP. IV.
How Sir Tor was known for son of king
Pellinore, and bow Gawaine was made
knight.

So on the morn king Pellinore came
to the court of king Arthur, which
had great joy of him, and told him of
Tor, how he was his son, and how he
had made him knight at the request
of the cowherd. When king Pellinore
beheld Tor he pleased him much. So the
king made Gawaine knight, but Tor was
the first he made at the feast. What is
the cause, said king Arthur, that there
be two places void in the sieges? Sir,
said Merlin, there shall no man sit in
those places but they that shall be of
most worship. But in the Siege Perilous
there shall no man sit therein but one,
and if there be any so hardy to do it he
shall be destroyed, and he that shall sit
there shall have no fellow. And
with Merlin took king Pellinore
hand, and in the one hand next
siegues and the Siege Perilous he
open audience, This is your pl:
best ye are worthy to sit therein
that is here. Therest sat Sir in great envy, and told Gah
brother, Yonder knight is put
worship, the which grieveth me
he slew our father king Lot, the
will slay him, said Gawaine,
sword that was sent me that is
trenchant. Ye shall not so, s
heris, at this time; for at this ti
but a squire, and when I ar
knight will be avenged on hi
therefore brother it is best ye s
another time, that we may have
of the court, for and we did
should trouble this high feast
well, said Gawaine, as ye will.

CHAP. V.
How at the feast of the wedding
Arthur to Guenever, a woman in
into the ball, and thirty couple
and bow a brachet pinchbed t
which was taken away.

Then was the high feast made
and the king was wedded at O
unto Dame Guenever in the ch
Saint Stephen’s, with great sol
And as every man was set after
geee, Merlin went to all the kni
the Round Table, and bad them
that none of them remove, For;
see a strange and a marvellous
ture. Right so as they sat ther
running in a white hart into t;
and a white brachet next him, an
couple of black running hound
after with a great cry, and the ha
about the Table Round. As he
other boards, the white brachet
by the haunch and pulled out a
where through the hart kept a g
and overthrew a knight that sat
board side, and therewith the
arose and took up the brachet,
went forth out of the ball, and t
horse and rode his way with the
OF SIR GAWAIN AND THE HART.

Of anon came in a lady on a
alfrey, and cried aloud to king
Sir, suffer me not to have this
for the brachet was mine that
ight led away. I may not do
h, said the king. With this
me a knight riding all armed on
horse, and took the lady away
with force, and ever she cried
le great dole. When she was
the king was glad, for she made
oise. Nay, said Merlin, ye may
these adventures so lightly, for
ventures must be brought again
it would be disworth to our
feast. I will, said the king,
be done by your advice. Then,
lin, let call Sir Gawain, for he
ng again the white hart. Also,
ust call Sir Tor, for he must
ain the brachet and the knight,
lay him. Also let call king
, for he must bring again the
k the knight, or else slay him.
ese three knights shall do mar-
ventures or they come again.
ere they called all three as it
sh afore, and every each of them
rage, and armed them surely.
Gawaine had the first request,
ore we will begin at him.

CHAP. VI.

Gawaine rode for to fetch aga-
rt, and how two brethren fought
against other for the hart.

Gawaine rode more than a pace,
eris his brother rode with him
of a squire, to do him service.
ey rode they saw two knights
horsback passing sore, so Sir
nd his brother rode betwixt
d asked them for what cause
ght so. The one knight an-
and said: We fight for a simple
for we two be two brethren,
begotten of one man and of
nan. Alas! said Sir Gawaine,
ye so? Sir, said the elder,
me a white hart this way this
many hounds chased him, and
brachet was alway next him,
and we understood it was adventure
made for the high feast of king Arthur,
and therefore I would have gone after
to have won me worship; and here my
younger brother said he would go after
the hart, for he was a better knight
than I; and for this cause we fell at
debate, and so we thought to prove
which of us both was better knight.
This is a simple cause, said Sir Ga-
waine; strange men ye should debate
withe, and not brother with brother;
therefore but if ye will do by my counsel
I will have ado with you—that is, ye shall
yield you unto me, and that ye go unto
king Arthur and yield you unto his grace.
Sir knight, said the two brethren, we are
for-foughten, and much blood have we
lost through our willfulness, and there-
fore we would be loth to have ado with
you. Then do as I will have you, said
Sir Gawaine. We will agree to fulfil your
will; but by whom shall we say that
we be thither sent? Ye may say, by
the knight that followeth the quest of
the hart that was white. Now what is
your name? said Sir Gawaine. Sor-
louse of the Forest, said the elder. And
my name is, said the younger, Brian of
the Forest. And so they departed and
went to the king's court, and Sir Ga-
waine on his quest. And as Ga-
waine followed the hart by the cry of
the hounds, even afore him there was
a great river, and the hart swam over;
and as Sir Gawaine would follow after
there stood a knight over the other side,
and said, Sir knight, come not over after
this hart, but if thou wilt just with me.
I will not fail as for that, said Sir Ga-
waine, to follow the quest that I am in,
and so made his horse to swim over the
water, and anon they get their spears
and ran together full hard, but Sir Ga-
waine smote him off his horse, and then
he turned his horse and bad him yield
him. Nay, said the knight, not so,
though thou have the better of me on
horseback: I pray thee, valiant knight,
aitly afoot, and match we together
with swords. What is your name? said
Sir Gawaine. Allardin of the Isles, said
the other. Then either dressed their
shields and smote together, but Sir Gawaine smote him so hard through the helm that it went to the brains, and the knight fell down dead. Ah I said Gaheris, that was a mighty stroke of a young knight.

CHAP. VII.

How the bart was chased into a castle, and there slain, and how Gawaine slew a lady.

Then Gawaine and Gaheris rode more than a pace after the white hart, and let slip at the hart three couple of greyhounds, and so they chased the hart into a castle, and in the chief place of the castle they slew the hart: Sir Gawaine and Gaheris followed after. Right so there came a knight out of a chamber with a sword drawn in his hand and slew two of the greyhounds, even in the sight of Sir Gawaine, and the remnant he chased them with his sword out of the castle. And when he came again, he said, O my white hart, me repenteth that thou art dead, for my sovereign lady gave thee to me, and evil have I kept thee, and thy death shall be dear bought and I live. And anon he went into his chamber and armed him, and came out fiercely, and there met he with Sir Gawaine. Why have ye slain my hounds, said Sir Gawaine, for they did but their kind, andlever I had ye had wroken your anger upon me than upon a dumb beast. Thou sayst truth, said the knight, I have avenged me on thy hounds, and so I will on thee or thou go. Then Sir Gawaine alight afoot, and dressed his shield, and they stroke together mightily, and clave their shields, and stoned their helms, and brake their haubers that the blood ran down to their feet. At the last Sir Gawaine smote the knight so hard that he fell to the earth; and then he cried mercy and yielded him, and besought him as he was a knight and gentleman to save his life. Thou shalt die, said Sir Gawaine, for slaying of my hounds. I will make amends, said the knight, unto my power. Sir Gawaine would no mercy have, but unlaced his helm to have stricken off his head so came his lady out of a cl and fell over him, and so he su her head by misadventure. Alas Gaheris, that is foul and shame done; that shame shall never fro Also, ye should give mercy unto that ask mercy; for a knight's mercy is without worship. Sir G was so astonied at the death of t lady that he wist not what he di said unto the knight, Arise, I w thee mercy. Nay, nay, said the I care for no mercy now, for the slain my love and my lady that best of all earthly things. Merej it, said Sir Gawaine, for I thou strike unto thee. But now thou go unto king Arthur, and tell thine adventures, and how th overcome by the knight that was the quest of the white hart. I t force, said the knight, whether I die. But for dread of death he to go unto king Arthur: and h him to bear one greyhound befit on his horse, and another behir. What is your name, said Sir G or we part? My name is, said the Ablamor of the Marsh. So he du toward Camelot.

CHAP. VIII.

How four knights fought against waine and Gaheris, and how th overcome, and their lives saved request of four ladies.

And Sir Gawaine went into the and made him ready to lie th night, and would have unarme What will ye do? said Gaheris, unarm you in this country? ye think ye have many enemies here. had not sooner said that won there came four knights well arm assailed Sir Gawaine hard, and sa him, Thou new made knight, the shamed thy knighthood, for a without mercy is dishonoured. thou hast slain a fair lady to th shame to the world's end, and thou not thou shalt have great i
or thou depart from us. And with one of them smote Sir Ga- ther great stroke, that nigh he fell to death, and Gaheris smote him again and so they were on the one side the other, that Sir Gawaine and his sons were in jeopardy of their lives; one with a bow, an archer, smote Gawaine through the arm that it left him wonderly sore. And as he should have been slain, there were four ladies and besought the grace of Sir Gawaine. And at the request of the ladies they sir Gawaine and Gaheris their and made them to yield them as he. Then Gawaine and Gaheris great dole. Alas! said Sir Ga- mine arm grieveth me sore, I am be maimed; and so made his piteously. Early on the mor- were came to Sir Gawaine one of the ladies that had heard all his sa and, said Sir knight, what Not good, said he. It is your fault, said the lady, for ye have passing foul deed in the slaying lady, the which will be great unto you. But be ye not of king's kin? said the lady. Yes, truly, Sir Gawaine. What is your name? The lady, ye must tell it me or ye My name is Gawaine, the king Orkney's son, and my mother is Arthur's sister. Ah, then are ye unto king Arthur, said the lady, shall so speak for you that ye have conduct to go to king Arthur's love. And so she departed and the four knights how their prisoner Arthur's nephew, and his name Gawaine, king Lot's son of Orkney. And they gave him the hart's because it was in his quest. Then they delivered Sir Gawaine under promise, that he should bare the lady with him in this manner: the head was hanged about his neck, the whole body of her lay before his horse mane. Right so rode him unto Camelot. And anon as he come, Merlin desired of king that Sir Gawaine should be sworn to tell of all his adventures, and how he slew the lady, and how he would give no mercy unto the knight, where through the lady was slain. Then the king and the queen were greatly displeased with Sir Gawaine for the slaying of the lady. And there by ordinance of the queen there was set a quest of Ladies on Sir Gawaine, and they judged him for ever while he lived to be with all ladies, and to fight for their quarrels; and that ever he should be courteous, and never to refuse mercy to him that asketh mercy. Thus was Gawaine sworn upon the four Evangelists that he should never be against lady nor gentlewoman, but if he fought for a lady and his adversary fought for another. And thus endeth the adventure of Sir Gawaine, that he did at the marriage of king Arthur. Amen.

CHAP. IX.

How Sir Tor rode after the knight with the brachet, and of his adventure by the way.

When Sir Tor was ready he mounted upon his horse's back, and rode after the knight with the brachet. So as he rode he met with a dwarf suddenly, and smote his horse on the head with a staff, that he went backward his spear's length. Why dost thou so? said Sir Tor. For thou shalt not pass this way, but if thou just with yonder knights of the pavilions. Then was Sir Tor ware where two pavilions were, and great spears stood out, and two shields hung on trees by the pavilions. I may not tarry, said Sir Tor, for I am in a quest that I must needs follow. Thou shalt not pass, said the dwarf; and therewithal he blew his horn. Then there came one armed on horseback, and dressed his shield, and came fast toward Tor, and he dressed him against him, and so ran together that Sir Tor bare him from his horse. And anon the knight yielded him to his mercy: But, sir, I have a fellow in yonder pavilion that will have ado with you anon. He shall be welcome, said Sir Tor. Then was he ware of another
knight coming with great force, and each of them dressed to other that marvel it was to see: but the knight smote Sir Tor a great stroke in the midst of the shield that his spear all to-shivered, and Sir Tor smote him through the shield so low that it went through the side of the knight, but the stroke slew him not. And therewith Sir Tor alight and smote him on the helm a great stroke, and therewith the knight yielded him, and besought him of mercy. I will well, said Sir Tor; but thou and thy fellow must go unto King Arthur, and yield you prisoners unto him. By whom shall we say are we thither sent? Ye shall say by the knight that went in the quest of the knight that went with the bracchet. Now what be your two names? said Sir Tor. My name is, said the one, Sir Felot of Langdük. And my name is, said the other, Sir Petipase of Winchelsea. Now go ye forth, said Sir Tor, and God speed you and me. Then came the dwarf and said unto Sir Tor: I pray you give me a gift. I will well, said Sir Tor: ask. I ask no more, said the dwarf, but that ye will suffer me to do you service, for I will serve no more recreant knights. Take an horse, said Sir Tor, and ride on with me. I got ye ride after the knight with the white bracchet, and I shall bring you where he is, said the dwarf. And so they rode throughout a forest, and at the last they were ware of two pavilions even by a priory, with two shields, and the one shield was renewed with white, and the other shield was red.

CHAP. X.

*How Sir Tor found the bracchet with a lady, and how a knight assailed him for the said bracchet.*

Therewith Sir Tor alighted and gave the dwarf his glaive, and so came to the white pavilion, and saw three damsels lie in it on one pallet sleeping. And so he went to the other pavilion, and there he found a lady lying sleeping therein. But there was the white bracchet, that bayed at her fast, and therewith the lady awoke and went out of the pavilion, and all her damsels. But anon as Sir Tor espied the white bracchet he took her by force, and took her to the dwarf. What, will ye so, said the lady, take my bracchet from me? Yes, said Sir Tor, this bracchet have I sought from king Arthur's court hither. Well, said the lady, knight, ye shall not go far with her but that ye shall be met, and grieved. I shall abide what adventure that cometh, by the grace of God, and so mounted upon his horse and passed on his way toward Camelot; but it was so near night he might not pass but little farther. Know ye any lodging? said Tor. I know none, said the dwarf, but here beside is an hermitage, and there ye must take lodging as ye find. And within awhile they came to the hermitage and took lodging; and was there grass, oats, and bread, for their horses; soon it was sped, and hard was their supper; but there they rested them all the night till on the morn, and heard a mass devoutly, and took their leave of the hermit, and Sir Tor prayed the hermit to pray for him. He said he would, and betook him to God: and so he mounted on horseback, and rode towards Camelot a long while. With that they heard a knight call loud that came after them, and he said, Knight, abide and yield my bracchet that thou tookest from my lady. Sir Tor returned again and beheld him how he was a seemly knight and well hested, and well armed at all points; then Sir Tor dressed his shield, and took his spear in his hands, and the other came fiercely upon him and smote both horse and man to the earth. Anon they arose lightly and drew their swords as eagerly as lions, and put their shields afore them, and smote through the shields, and the cantels fell off of both parts. Also they hewed their helms, that the hot blood ran out, and the thick mails of their hauberk they carved and rove in sunder, that the hot blood ran to the earth, and both they had many wounds and were passing weary. But Sir Tor espied that
knight fainted, and then he
upon him, and doubled his
and made him go to the earth
side. Then Sir Tor bad him
That will I not, said Abelleus,
ife lasteth and the soul is with-
ly, unless thou wilt give
rachet. That will I not do,
Tor, for it was my quest
again thy brachet, thee, or

CHAP. XI.

Tor overcame the knight, and
lost his head at the request of

that came a damsel riding on
as fast as she might drive and
a loud voice unto Sir Tor.
'Yea with me?' said Sir Tor.
he, said the damsel, for king
ove, give me a gift; I require
knight, as thou art a gentle
, said Sir Tor, ask a gift,
give it you. Gramercy, said
, Now, I ask the head of the
Abelleus, for he is the most
knight that liveth, and the
murderer. I am loth, said Sir
that gift I have given you;
take amends in that he hath
unto you. Now, said the
may not, for he slew mine
ther afore mine own eyes, that
ter knight than he, and he
ace; and I kneeled half an
him in the mire for to save
er's life, that had done him
ge, but fought with him by
of arms, and so for all that
he struck off his head; where-
ture thee, as thou art a true
give me my gift, or else I
be thee in all the court of king
for he is the falsest knight
and a great destroyer of good
Then when Abelleus heard
was more afeard, and yielded
asked mercy. I may not now,
Tor, but if I should be found
my promise, for while I would
you to mercy ye would none
ask, but if ye had the brachet again that
was my quest. And therewith he took
off his helm, and he arose and fled, and
Sir Tor after him, and smote off his
head quite. Now, sir, said the damsel,
it is near night; I pray you come and
lodge with me here at my place, it is
here fast by. I will well, said Sir Tor;
for his horse and he had fared evil since
they departed from Camelot, and so he
rode with her, and had passing good
cheer with her; and she had a passing
fair old knight to her husband that made
him passing good cheer, and well eased
both his horse and him. And on the
morn he heard his mass, and brake his
fast, and took his leave of the knight
and of the lady, that besought him to
tell them his name. Truly, he said, my
name is Sir Tor, that late was made
knight, and this was the first quest of
arms that ever I did, to bring again that
this knight Abelleus took away from
king Arthur's court. O fair knight,
said the lady and her husband, and ye
come here in our marches, come and
see our poor lodging, and it shall be
always at your commandment. So Sir
Tor departed, and came to Camelot on
the third day by noon. And the king
and the queen and all the court was
passing fain of his coming, and made
great joy that he was come again; for
he went from the court with little suc-
cour, but as king Pellinore his father
gave him an old courser, and king
Arthur gave him armour and a sword,
and else had he none other succour, but
rode so forth himself alone. And then
the king and the queen by Merlin's ad-
vice made him to swear to tell of his
adventures, and so he told and made
proofs of his deeds as it is afore re-
hearsed, wherefore the king and the
queen made great joy. Nay, nay, said
Merlin, these be but jests to that he shall
do; he shall prove a noble knight of
prowess, as good as any is living,
and gentle and courteous, and of good
parts, and passing true of his pro-
mise, and never shall outrage. Where
through Merlin's words king Arthur
gave him an earldom of lands that fell
unto him. And here endeth the quest of Sir Tor, king Pellinore's son.

CHAP. XII.

How king Pellinore rode after the lady and the knight that led her away, and bow a lady desired help of him, and bow he fought with two knights for that lady, of whom he slew the one at the first stroke.

Then king Pellinore armed him and mounted upon his horse, and rode more than a pace after the lady that the knight led away. And as he rode in a forest, he saw in a valley a damsel sit by a well, and a wounded knight in her arms, and Pellinore saluted her. And when she was ware of him, she cried over loud, Help me knight, for Christ's sake, king Pellinore! And he would not tarry he was so eager in his quest, and ever she cried an hundred times after help. When she saw he would not abide, she prayed unto God to send him as much need of help as she had, and that he might feel it or he died. So as the book telleth, the knight died that there was wounded, wherefore the lady for pure sorrow slew herself with his sword. As king Pellinore rode in that valley he met with a poor man, a labourer: Sawest thou not, said Pellinore, a knight riding and leading away a lady? Yea, said the poor man, I saw that knight, and the lady that made great dole. And yonder beneath in a valley there shall ye see two pavilions, and one of the knights of the pavilions challenged that lady of that knight, and said she was his cousin near, wherefore he should lead her no farther. And so they waged battle in that quarrel; the one said he would have her by force, and the other said he would have the rule of her because he was her kinsman, and would lead her to her kin. For this quarrel I left them fighting, and if ye will ride a pace ye shall find them fighting, and the lady was beleft with the two squires in the pavilions. I thank thee, said king Pellinore. Then he rode a wallop till that he had two pavilions, and the two ing. Anon he rode unto and saw the lady that was. He rode unto the court of king knight, said the two squires with her, yonder are two fight for this lady, go thither with them, and be agreed with then ye may have her at ye. Ye say well, said king Pellinore anon he rode betwixt them parted them, and asked the why that they fought. Sit the one, I shall tell you. To kinswoman nigh, mine aur and when I heard her comp was with him maugre her battle to fight with him said the other, whose name of Wentland, and th by my prowess of arms Arthur's court. That is said king Pellinore, for ye denly there as we were at t and took away this lady might him ready, and the my quest for to bring he you both, or else the one on in the field; therefore the with me, or I will die for promised it king Arthur. fore fight ye no more, for shall have no part of her and if ye list to fight for me, and I will defend her. the knights, make ye re shall assail you with all And as king Pellinore wo his horse from them, Sir H, his horse through with a said: Now art thou on foc are. When king Pellinore e horse was slain, lightly h his horse and pulled out hi put his shield afore him Knight, keep well thy horse shall have a buffet for thy my horse. So king Pellinore such a stroke upon the h clave the head down to th he fell to the earth dead.
OF PELLINORE AND THE LADY.

CHAP. XIII.

Pellinore to the lady and to Camelot to the court of

He turned him to the other was sore wounded. But
the other's buffet he would kneed him down and said, sin, the lady, with you at
and I require you, as ye ght, put her to no shame
What, said king Pellinore, for her? No, sir, said
will not fight with such a man as ye be. Well, said
ay well, I promise you she villainy by me, as I am
but now lacketh an ellinore, but I will have orse. Ye shall not need,
gh, for I shall give you this shall please you, so that
with me, for it is near well, said king Pellinore,
all night. And there him right good cheer, and
best with passing good and merry rest that night.
where he heard a mass, and then was brought him
ser, and king Pellinore's in him. Now, what shall
aid the knight, inasmuch your cousin at your desire of
Sir, I shall tell you; my Pellinore, of the Isles, and
able Round. Now I am knight, that such a noble
ve the rule of my cousin.
your name? said Pellinore, tell me. Sir, my name is
Logurs, and this lady my Nimue, and the knight
the other pavilion is my, a passing good knight,
is Brian of the Isles, and to do wrong, and full loth
any man, but if he be sore
that for shame he may
it is marvel, said Pellinore,
not have ado with me. Sir,
he will not have ado with no man but if
it be at his request. Bring him to the
court, said Pellinore, one of these days. Sir, we will come together. And ye shall
be welcome, said king Pellinore, to the
court of king Arthur, and greatly al-
lowed for your coming. And so he
departed with the lady, and brought
her to Camelot. So as they rode in
a valley it was full of stones, and there
the lady's horse stumbled and threw
her down, wherewith her arm was sore
bruised, and near she swooned for pain.
Alas! sir, said the lady, mine arm is
out of joint, where through I must
needs rest me. Ye shall well, said king
Pellinore. And so he alighted under
a fair tree where was fair grass, and he
put his horse thereto, and so laid him
under the tree and slept till it was nigh
night. And when he awoke he would
have ridden. Sir, said the lady, it is so
dark that ye may as well ride backward
as forward. So they abode still and
made there their lodging. Then Sir
Pellinore put off his armour; then a
little afore midnight they heard the
trotting of an horse. Be ye still, said
king Pellinore, for we shall hear of
some adventure.

CHAP. XIV.

How on the way king Pellinore heard two
knights, as be lay by night in a valley,
and of other adventures.

And therewith he armed him. So
right even afore him there met two
knights, the one came from Camelot and
the other from the north, and either sal-
luted other. What tidings at Camelot? said the one. By my head, said the other,
there have I been, and espied the court
of king Arthur, and there is such a
fellowship they may never be broken,
and well nigh all the world holdeth
with Arthur, for there is the flower of
chivalry. Now for this cause I am
riding into the north to tell our chief-
tains of the fellowship that is with-
holden with king Arthur. As for that,
said the other knight, I have brought
a remedy with me, that is the greatest
poison that ever ye heard speak of, and to Camelot will I with it, for we have a friend right nigh king Arthur, and well cherished, that shall poison king Arthur, for so he hath promised our chieftains, and received great gifts for to do it. Beware, said the other knight, of Merlin, for he knoweth all things by the devil's craft. Therefore will I not let it, said the knight. And so they departed in sunder. Anon after Pellinore made him ready, and his lady, and rode toward Camelot. And as they came by the well there as the wounded knight was and the lady, there he found the knight, and the lady eaten with lions or wild beasts all save the head, wherefore he made great sorrow, and wept passing sore, and said: Alas, her life might I have saved, but I was so fierce in my quest therefore I would not abide. Wherefore make ye such dole, said the lady. I wot not, said Pellinore, but my heart mourneth sore for the death of her, for she was a passing fair lady and a young. Now will ye do by mine advice, said the lady, take this knight and let him be buried in an hermitage, and then take the lady's head and bear it with you unto Arthur. So king Pellinore took this dead knight on his shoulders and brought him to the hermitage, and charged the hermit with the corpse, that service should be done for the soul; and take his harness for your pain. It shall be done, said the hermit, as I will answer unto God.

CHAP. XV.

How when king Pellinore was come to Camelot he was sworn upon a book to tell truth of his quest.

And therewith they departed and came there as the head of the lady lay with a fair yellow hair, that grieved king Pellinore passing sore when he looked on it, for much he cast his heart on the visage. And so by noon they came to Camelot. And the king and the queen were passing fain of his coming to the court. And there he was made to swear upon the four Evangelists to tell the truth of his quest from the one to the other. Ah, Sir Pellinore, said queen Guenever, ye were greatly to blame that ye saved not this lady's life. Madam, said Pellinore, ye were greatly to blame and ye would not save your own life ye might; but saving your pleasure, I was so furious in my quest that I would not abide, and that repenteth me, and shall the days of my life. Truly, said Merlin, ye ought sore to repent it, for the lady was your own daughter, and that knight that was dead was her love, and should have wedded her, and he was a right good knight of a young man, and would have proved a good man, and to this court was he coming, and his name was Sir Miles of the lands, and a knight came behind him and slew him with a spear, and his name is Loraine le Savage, a false knight and a coward; and sit for great sorrow and dole slew herself with his sword, and her name was Elena. And because ye would not abide and help her, ye shall see your best friend fail you when ye be in the greatest distress that ever ye were or shall be. And that penance God hath ordained you for that deed, that he that ye shall most trust to of any man alive, he shall leave you there as ye shall be slain. Me forethinketh, said king Pellinore, that this shall betide, but God may well forde destiny.

Thus when the quest was done of the white hart, the which followed Sir Gawan; and the quest of the branch followed of Sir Tor, Pellinore's son; and the quest of the lady that the knight took away, the which king Pellinore at that time followed; then the king stablished all his knights, and them that were of lands not rich he gave them lands, and charged them never to do outrage, nor murder, and always to flee treason. Also, by no mean to be cruel, but to give mercy unto him that asketh mercy, upon pain of forfeitures of their worship and lordship of king Arthur for evermore; and alway to do ladies, damsels, and gentlewomen succour upon pain of death. Also, that no
OF MERLIN'S DOTAGE.

The Fourth Book.

CHAP. I.

Merlin was assott and doted on one ladies of the lake, and how he was in a rock under a stone, and there

After these quests of Sir Gawaine, and king Pellinore, it fell so that fell in a dotage on the damsels Pellinore brought to court, he was one of the damsels of the hall bright Nimue. But Merlin let her have no rest, but always should be with her. And ever she Merlin good cheer till she had of him all manner thing that tired; and he was assotted upon that he might not be from her.

A time he told king Arthur should not dure long, but for crafts he should be put in the quick, and so he told the king things that should befall, but he warned the king to keep well sword and the scabbard, for he told how the sword and the scabbard be stolen by a woman from him the most trusted. Also he told Arthur that he should miss him: had ye never than all your lands me again. Ah, said the king, I know of your adventure, purvey and put away by your crafts that enture. Nay, said Merlin, it not be. So he departed from the And within awhile the damsel lake departed, and Merlin went evermore wheresoever she went. Times Merlin would have had her

privily away by his subtle crafts: then she made him to swear that he should never do none enchantment upon her if he would have his will. And so he sware: so she and Merlin went over the sea unto the land of Benwick, where as king Ban was king that had great war against king Claudas, and there Merlin spake with king Ban's wife, a fair lady and a good, and her name was Elaine, and there he saw young Launcelot. There the queen made great sorrow for the mortal war that king Claudas made on her lord and on her lands. Take none heaviness, said Merlin, for this same child within this twenty year shall revenge you on king Claudas, that all christendom shall speak of it: and this same child shall be the man of most worship of the world, and his first name is Galahad, that know I well, said Merlin, and since ye have confirmed him, Launcelot. That is truth, said the queen, his first name was Galahad. O, Merlin, said the queen, shall I live to see my son such a man of prowess? Yea, lady, on my peril ye shall see it, and live many winters after. And so, soon after the lady and Merlin departed; and by the way Merlin shewed her many wonders, and came into Cornwall. And always Merlin lay about the lady to have her love, and she was ever passing weary of him, and fain would have been delivered of him, for she was afeard of him because he was a devil's son, and she could not put him away by no means.

And so on a time it hapfed that Merlin shewed to her in a rock whereas
was a great wonder, and wrought by enchantment, that went under a great stone. So by her subtle working, she made Merlin to go under that stone to let her wit of the marvels there, but she wrought so there for him that he came never out for all the craft that he could do. And so she departed and left Merlin.

CHAP. II.

*How five kings came into this land to war against king Arthur, and what counsel Arthur had against them.*

And as king Arthur rode to Camelot, and held there a great feast with mirth and joy, so soon after he returned unto Cardoile, and there came unto Arthur new tidinges that the king of Denmark, and the king of Ireland that was his brother, and the king of the Vale, and the king of Soleise, and the king of the Isle of Longtainse, all these five kings with a great host were entered into the land of king Arthur, and burnt and slew clean afore them both cities and castles, that it was pity to hear. Alas, said Arthur, yet had I never rest one month since I was crowned king of this land. Now shall I never rest till I meet with those kings in a fair field, that I make mine avow; for my true liege people shall not be destroyed in my default, go with me who will, and abide who will. Then the king let write unto king Pellinore, and prayed him in all haste to make him ready with such people as he might lightest rear, and hie him after in all haste. All the barons were privily wroth that the king would depart so suddenly: but the king by no mean would abide, but made writing unto them that were not there, and bad them hie after him, such as were not at that time in the court. Then the king came to queen Guenever, and said, Lady, make you ready, for ye shall go with me, for I may not long miss you, ye shall cause me to be the more hardy, what adventure so befall me: I will not wit my lady to be in no jeopardy. Sir, said she, I am at your commandment, and shall be ready what time so ye be ready. So on the morn the queen departed with such force as they had, and came into the forest beside Humber, and lodged them. When the word arrived to the five kings about that king Arthur was beside in a forest, there was a knight unto one of the five kings, that came with them this counsel: Ye know Sir Arthur hath the flower of chivalry of the world with him, as, it is plain the great battle he did with the same kings; and therefore hie unto him, and day till that we be night; the longer he tarrieth the better it is, and we ever the weaker; and so courageous of himself, these come to the field with little people, therefore let us set upon him, and we shall slay down of his there shall none escape.

CHAP. III.

*How king Arthur bad ado with them, overthrew them, and slew the rest, and made the remnant to flee.*

Upon this counsel these five kings assented, and so they passed for their host through North Wales, and came upon Arthur by night, upon his host as the king's knights were in their pavilions; but Arthur was unarmed, and had to rest with his queen Guenever; and Sir Kay, it is not good to be unarmed: we shall have no nowe Sir Gawaine and Sir Griflet, that a little pavilion by the king; that they heard a great noise, and cried treason, treason! Alas, said Arthur, we are betrayed! Unto his fellows! then he cried. So the armed anon at all points. Then there a wounded knight unto the king, and said, Sir, save yourself and the queen, for our host is destroyed much people of ours slain. And the king and the queen and the knights took their horses, and toward Humber to pass over it, the water was so rough that th
to pass over. Now may ye said king Arthur, whether ye ride and take the adventure on, for and ye be taken they will u. It were me lever, said the to die in the water than to fall 'enemies' hands, and there be. And as they stood so talking, y saw the five kings coming on eck by themselves alone, with ears in their hands even toward Lo, said Sir Kay, yonder be the gs, let us go to them and match that were folly, said Sir Gawaine, are but four and they be five. truth, said Sir Grislet. No force, Kay, I will undertake for two of nd then may ye three undertake other three. And therewithal let his horse run as fast as he and struck one of them through old and the body a fathom, that g fell to the earth stark dead. saw Sir Gawaine and ran unto king so hard that he smote him the body. And therewithal king ran to another, and smote him the body with a spear, that he the earth dead. Then Sir Grislet to the fourth king, and gave him fall that his neck brake. Anon ran unto the fifth king, and him so hard on the helm that the clave the helm and the head to h. That was well stricken, saidthur, and worshipfully hast thou thy promise, therefore I shall thee while that I live. And that they set the queen in a nto Humber, but always queen er praised Sir Kay for his deeds, d, What lady that ye love, and you not again, she were greatly e; and among ladies, said the I shall bear your noble fame, for e a great word, and fulfilled it fully. And therewith the queen i. Then the king and the three rode into the forest, for th supposed to hear of them that were; and there king Arthur found part of his people, and told them how the five kings were dead.—

And therefore let us hold us together till it be day, and when their host have espied that their chieftains be slain, they will make such dole that they shall no more help themselves. And right so as the king said, so it was; for when they found the five kings dead, they made such dole that they fell from their horses. Therewithal came king Arthur but with a few people, and slew on the left hand and on the right hand, that well nigh there escaped no man, but all were slain to the number of thirty thousand. And when the battle was all ended, the king kneeled down and thanked God meekly. And then he sent for the queen, and soon she was come, and she made great joy of the overcoming of that battle.

CHAP. IV.

How the battle was finished or king Pellinore came, and bow king Arthur founded an abbey where the battle was.

Therewithal came one to king Arthur, and told him that king Pellinore was within three mile with a great host; and he said, Go unto him, and let him understand how we have sped. So within awhile king Pellinore came with a great host, and saluted the people and the king; and there was great joy made on every side. Then the king let search how much people of his party there was slain; and there were found but little past two hundred men slain, and eight knights of the Table Round in their pavilions. Then the king let rear and devise in the same place there as the battle was done a fair abbey, and endowed it with great livelihood, and let call it the Abbey of La Beale Adventure. But when some of them came into their countries whereof the five kings were kings, and told them how they were slain, there was made great dole. And when all king Arthur's enemies, as the king of North Wales, and the kings of the North, wist of the battle they were passing heavy. And so the king returned to Camelot in haste. And when he was come to Camelot he called king
Pellinore unto him, and said, Ye understand well, that we have lost eight knights of the best of the Table Round, and by your advice we will choose eight again of the best we may find in this court. Sir, said Pellinore, I shall counsel you after my conceit the best; there are in your court full noble knights both of old and young, and therefore by mine advice ye shall choose half of the old and half of the young. Which be the old? said king Arthur. Sir, said king Pellinore, me semeth that king Uriens that hath wedded your sister Morgan le Fay, and the king of the Lake, and Sir Hervise de Revel, a noble knight, and Sir Galgars the fourth. This is well devised, said king Arthur, and right so shall it be. Now, which are the four young knights? said Arthur. Sir, said Pellinore, the first is Sir Gawaine your nephew, that is as good a knight of his time as any is in this land; and the second, as me semeth, is Sir Grifflet le Fise de Dieu, that is a good knight, and full desirous in arms, and who may see him live he shall prove a good knight; and the third as me semeth is well to be one of the knights of the Round Table, Sir Kay the seneschal, for many times he hath done full worshipfully, and now at your last battle he did full honourably for to undertake to say two kings. By my head, said king Arthur, he is best worthy to be a knight of the Round Table of any that ye have rehearsed, and he had done no more prowess in his life days.

CHAP. V.

How Sir Tor was made knight of the Round Table, and how Bagdemagus was displeased.

Now, said king Pellinore, I shall put to you two knights, and ye shall choose which is most worthy, that is Sir Bagdemagus, and Sir Tor, my son. But because Sir Tor is my son I may not praise him, but else, and he were not my son, I durst say that of his age there is not in this land a better knight then he is, nor of better conditions, and loth to do any wrong, and loth to take any wrong. By my head, said A is a passing good knight, as spake of this day, that wot I the king, for I have seen him but he saith little, and he do more, for I know none in all the and he were as well born on his side as he is on your side, the him of prowess and of might; for I will have him at this I leave Sir Bagdemagus till another So when they were so chose assent of all the barons, so who found in their sieges every knight that here are rehearsed. And they set in their sieges, whereby Bagdemagus was wonderly wroth. Tor was advanced afore him, and suddenly he departed from and took his squire with him, long in a forest till they came to there alight and said his devoutly. The meanwhile he found written upon the cross, Bagdemagus should never return court again till he had won a body of the Round Table, body Lo, sir, said his squire, here I sit of you, therefore I counsel ye again to the court. That shall said Bagdemagus, till men spe great worship, and that I be a knight of the Round Table so he rode forth. And their way he found a branch of an that was the sign of the Sang no knight found such token: were a good liver. So as S magus rode to see many adver happe him to come to the re as the lady of the lake had pl under a stone, and there he make great dole; whereof S magus would have holpen he went unto the great stone, and so heavy that an hundred men not lift it up. When Merlin was there, he had leave his la all was in vain, for he might holpen but by her that put him. And so Sir Bagdemagus depa did many adventures, and pro a full good knight, and came
CHAP. VI.

King Arthur, king Uriens, and Sir Ton of Gaul chased an hart, and of marvellous adventures.

It befell that Arthur and many knights rode on hunting into a forest, and it happed king Arthur, Uriens, and Sir Accolon of Gaul a great hart, for they three were on horse, and so they chased it within a while they three were en mile from their fellowship. The last they chased so sore that now their horses underneath them. While they all three on foot, and they saw the hart afore thereof at a pace, and embushed. What will be said king Arthur, we are hard

Let us go on foot, said king till we may meet with some. Then were they ware of the at lay on a great water bank, and et biting on his throat, and more sounds came after. Then king blew the prise and dight the hart. The king looked about the world, a afore him in a great water a up, all apparelled with silk down water, and the ship came right xem, and landed on the sands. Arthur went to the bank and in, and saw none earthly creature. Sirs, said the king, come and let us see what is in this. So they went in all three, and it richly behanged with cloth of 3y then it was dark night, and suddenly were about them an hunches set upon all the sides of p boards, and it gave great light; erewithal there came out twelve nseys and saluted king Arthur on sees, and called him by his name, and he was right welcome, and near as they had he should have best. The king thanked them Therewithal they led the king and his two fellows into a fair chamber, and there was a cloth laid richly beseen of all that longed unto a table, and there were they served of all wines and meats that they could think; of that the king had great marvel, for he fared never better in his life as for one supper. And so when they had supped at their leisure, king Arthur was led into a chamber, a richer beseen chamber saw he never none; and so was king Uriens served, and led into such another chamber; and Sir Accolon was led into the third chamber, passing richly and well beseen: and so were they laid in their beds easily. And anon they fell on sleep, and slept marvellously sore all that night. And on the morrow king Uriens was in Camelot with his wife, Morgan le Fay. And when he awoke he had great marvel how he came there, for on the even afore he was two days' journey from Camelot. And when king Arthur awoke he found himself in a dark prison, hearing about him many complaints of woful knights.

CHAP. VII.

How Arthur took upon him to fight to be delivered out of prison, and also for to deliver twenty knights that were in prison.

What are ye that so complain? said king Arthur. We be here twenty knights prisoners, said they, and some of us have lain here seven year, and some more and some less. For what cause? said Arthur. We shall tell you, said the knights; This lord of this castle his name is Sir Damas, and he is the falsest knight that livesth, and full of treason, and a very coward as any liveth, and he hath a younger brother, a good knight of prowess, his name is Sir Ontzlake, and this traitor Damas, the elder brother, will give him no part of his livelihood but as Sir Ontzlake keepeth through prowess of his hands, and so he keepeth from him a full fair manor and a rich, and therein Sir Ontzlake dwelleth worshipfully and is well beloved of all people. And this Sir Damas our master is as evil
beloved, for he is without mercy, and he is a coward, and great war hath been betwixt them both, but Ontzlake hath ever the better, and ever he proffereth Sir Damas to fight for the livelihood, body for body; but if he will not do it to find a knight to fight for him. Unto that Sir Damas hath granted to find a knight, but he is so evil beloved and hated, that there is never a knight will fight for him. And when Damas saw this, that there was never a knight would fight for him, he hath daily lain await with many knights with him and taken all the knights in this country to see and espy their adventures: he hath taken them by force and brought them to his prison. And so he took us severally as we rode on our adventures, and many good knights have died in this prison for hunger, to the number of eighteen knights: and if any of us all that here is or hath been, would have fought with his brother Ontzlake he would have delivered us, but for because this Damas is so false and so full of treason, we would never fight for him to die for it. And we be so lean with hunger that hardly we may stand on our feet. God deliver you for his mercy, said Arthur. Anon therewithal there came a damsel unto Arthur, and asked him, What cheer? I cannot say, said he, Sir, said she, and ye will fight for my lord, ye shall be delivered out of prison, and else ye escape never with life. Now, said Arthur, that is hard, yet had I lever to fight with a knight than to die in prison: with this, said Arthur, that I may be delivered and all these prisoners I will do the battle. Yes, said the damsel. I am ready, said Arthur, and I had horse and armour. Ye shall lack none, said the damsel. Me seemeth, damsel, that I should have seen you in the court of Arthur. Nay, said the damsel, I came nere there, I am the lord's daughter of this castle. Yet was she false, for she was one of the damsels of Morgan le Fay. Anon she went unto Sir Damas, and told him how he would do battle for him, and so he sent for Arthur. And when he came, he was well coloured, and well in his limbs, that all knights that him said it were pity that such a should die in prison. So Sir Damas and he were agreed that he should take him upon this covenant, that the other knights should be delivered unto that was Sir Damas sworn. And Arthur, and also to do the battle uttermost. And with that twenty knights were brought out of dark prison into the hall and de. And so they all abode to see the battle.

CHAP. VIII.

How Accolon found himself by a wise man that he took upon him to do battle for Arthur.

Now turn we unto Accolon, that when he awoke he found himself in a deep well side, within half a day distant from that place where he had fallen. And then out of that fountain a pipe of silver out of that pipe ran water all clear into a stone of marble. When Accolon saw this he blessed him and said, Jesu save my lord king Arthur and his, king Uriens, for these damsels and women of Court, devils and no women, and if ye ensnare this misadventure, I shall find all where I may find these false women that use enchantments.

Right with that there came a knight with a great mouth and a flat nose, and saluted Sir Accolon, and said he was Accolon's of the court of the land of Mortimer. He greeted him well, and bidden him to be of strong heart, for he shall be the first to do battle with a knight at the highest of the court. And therefore she hath said to me, brother Accolon, and to thee, brother Sir Accolon, and ye shall be of the highest rank of the court. And therefore she hath said to me, brother Accolon, and to thee, brother Sir Accolon, and ye shall be of the highest rank of the court. And therefore she hath said to me, brother Accolon, and to thee, brother Sir Accolon, and ye shall be of the highest rank of the court.

Anon he said unto Sir Damas, and told him how he would do battle for him, and so he
OF THE BATTLE OF ARTHUR AND ACCOLON.

and her, now I have the sword: now ye my lady queen Morgan le Right late, said the dwarf. Then took him in his arms, and said, send me unto my lady queen, her all shall be done that I have done her, and else I will die for it. suppose, said Accolon, she hath all these crafts and enchantments battle. Ye may well believe it, dwarf. Right so there came a lady with six squires, and Sir Accolon and prayed him for and come and rest him at his
And so Accolon mounted upon horse, and went with the knight to his manor by a priory, and there passing good cheer. Then Sir sent unto his brother Sir sent bade make him ready by to: the hour of prime, and to be ready to fight with a good knight, had found a good knight that would do battle at all points. his word came unto Sir Ontzlake, was passing heavy, for he was a little toto through both arms with a spear, and made great hurt as he was wounded he would the battle on hand. So it at that time, by the means Morgan le Fay, Accolon was with Ontzlake lodged; and when he of that battle, and how Ontzlake wounded, he said he would fight, because Morgan le Fay had an Excalibur and the sheath for with the knight on the morn; the cause Sir Accolon took the sword. Then Sir Ontzlake was glad, and thanked Sir Accolon of his heart that he would do so for him. And therewithal Sir sent word unto his brother Sir that he had a knight that for should be ready in the field by the prime. So on the morn Sir was armed and well horded, and Sir Damas, When shall we to Sir, said Sir Damas, ye shall go to mass; and so Sir Damas heard a mass. Then mass was done there came a damsel from Morgan le Fay, and brought unto Sir Arthur a sword like unto Excalibur, and the scabbard, and said unto Arthur, Morgan le Fay sendeth you here your sword for great love. And he thanked her, and wend it had been so, but she was false, for the sword and the scabbard was counterfeit, and brittle, and false.

CHAP. IX.

Of the battle between king Arthur and Accolon.

And then they dressed them on both parts of the field, and let their horses run so fast that either smote other in the midst of the shield with their spears' head, that both horse and man went to the earth; and then they started up both, and pulled out their swords. The mean while that they were thus at the battle, came the damsel of the lake into the field, that put Merlin under the stone, and she came thither for love of king Arthur, for she knew how Morgan le Fay had so ordained that king Arthur should have been slain that day, and therefore she came to save his life. And so they went eagerly to the battle, and gave many great strokes. But alway king Arthur's sword bit not like Accolon's sword, but for the most part every stroke that Accolon gave wounded he sore Arthur, that it was marvel he stood; and alway his blood fell from him fast. When Arthur beheld the ground so sore be-bled he was dismayed, and then he deemed treason, that his sword was changed; for his sword bit not steel as it was wont to do, therefore he dread him sore to be dead, for ever him seemed that the sword in Accolon's hand was Excalibur, for at every stroke that Sir Accolon struck he drew blood on Arthur. Now
knights, said Accolon unto Arthur, keep thee well from me; but Arthur answered not again, and gave him such a buffet on the helm that he made him to stoop, nigh falling down to the earth. Then Sir Accolon withdrew him a little, and came on with Excalibur on high, and smote Sir Arthur such a buffet that he fell nigh to the earth. Then were they wroth both, and gave each other many sore strokes, but always Sir Arthur lost so much blood that it was marvel he stood on his feet, but he was so full of knighthood that knightly he endured the pain. And Sir Accolon lost not a deal of blood, therefore he waxed passing light, and Sir Arthur was passing feeble, and wend verily to have died; but for all that he made countenance as though he might endure, and held Accolon as short as he might. But Accolon was so bold because of Excalibur that he waxed passing hardy. But all men that beheld him said they never saw knight fight so well as Arthur did, considering the blood that he bled. So was all the people sorry for him, but the two brethren would not accord; then always they fought together as fierce knights, and Sir Arthur withdrew him a little for to rest him, and Sir Accolon called him to battle, and said, It is no time for me to suffer thee to rest. And therewith he came fiercely upon Arthur, and Sir Arthur was wroth for the blood that he had lost, and smote Accolon on high upon the helm so mightily that he made him nigh to fall to the earth; and therewith Arthur's sword brast at the cross, and fell in the grass among the blood, and the pommel and the sure handles he held in his hands. When Sir Arthur saw that, he was in great fear to die, but always he held up his shield, and lost no ground, nor bated no cheer.

CHAP. X.
How king Arthur's sword that he fought with brake, and how be recovered of Accolon his own sword Excalibur, and overcome be enemy.

Then Sir Accolon began with words of treason, and said, Knight overcome, and mayest not else also thou art weaponless, and lost much of thy blood, and loth to slay thee, therefore yield me as recreant. Nay, said I may not so, for I have promiseth the battle to the uttermost hilt of my body while me lasteth, and therefore I had lever to die a hundred times I had lever to die. And he yield me to thee; for thou weapon I shall lack no worse, thou slay me weaponless that other shame. Well, said Accolon the shame I will not spare: thee from me, for thou art the man. And therewith Accolon made such a stroke that he fell to the earth, and would have had have cried him mercy. But was expressed unto Accolon with and gave him with the pom t spoken such a buffet that he strides aback. When the dawn beheld Arthur, how full his body was, and the false that was wrought for him to have slain, she had great pity that a knight and such a man as should be destroyed. And stroke Sir Accolon struck his stroke, that by the damsel's remembrance the sword Excalibur Accolon's hand to the earth; withal Sir Arthur lightly leap got it in his hand, and forth knew that it was his sword said, Thou hast been from too long, and much damage done me. And therewith he scabbard hanging by his side, and suddenly he start to him, and scabbard from him, and also from him as far as he might. O knight, said Arthur, this thou done me great damage sword; now are ye come to death, for I shall not warrant ye shall as well be rewarded sword or ever we depart, as
me, for much pain have ye to endure, and much blood. And therewith Sir Arthur him with all his might and to the earth, and then his helm, and gave him such on the head that the blood at his ears, his nose, and his. Now will I slay thee, said Slay me ye may well, said and it please you, for ye are right that ever I found, and I hat God is with you: but for to do this battle to the ut-aid Accolon, and never to be while I lived, therefore shall I d me with my mouth, but God ny body what he will. Then remembered him, and thought have seen this knight. Now said Arthur, or I will slay thee, country art thou, and of what sir knight, said Sir Accolon, the court of king Arthur, and is Accolon of Gaul. Then far more dismayed than he was d; for then he remembered is sister Morgan le Fay; and enchantment of the ship. O it, said he, I pray you tell gave you this sword, and by had it.

CHAP. XI.

Acolon confessed the treason of le Fay, king Arthur's sister; w she would have done slay

Sir Accolon bethought him, Woe worth this sword, for by I gotten my death. It may said the king. Now Sir, said on, I will tell you: This sword in my keeping the most part twelvemonth, and Morgan le g Uries' wife, sent it me by a dwarf, to this intent that slay king Arthur her brother. shall understand king Arthur is in the world that she most because he is most of worship prowess of any of her blood.

Also, she loveth me out of measure as paramour, and I her again. And if she might bring about to slay Arthur by her crafts, she would slay her husband king Uriens lightly, and then had she devised to be king in this land, and so to reign, and she to be my queen; but that is now done, said Sir Accolon, for I am sure of my death. Well, said king Arthur, I feel by ye ye would have been king in this land. It had been great damage for to have destroyed your lord, said Arthur. It is truth, said Sir Accolon, but now I have told you truth, wherefore I pray you tell me of whence ye are, and of what court? O Accolon, said king Arthur, now I let thee wit that I am king Arthur to whom thou hast done great damage. When Accolon heard that he cried aloud, Fair sweet lord, have mercy on me, for I knew you not. O Sir Acco- lon, said king Arthur, mercy shalt thou have, because I feel by thy words at this time thou knewest not my person. But I understand well by thy words that thou hast agreed to the death of my person, and therefore thou art a traitor; but I blame thee the less, for my sister Morgan le Fay by her false crafts made thee to agree and consent to her false lusts, but I shall be sore avenged upon her and I live, that all Christendom shall speak of it. God knoweth I have honoured her and worshipped her more than all my kin, and more have I trusted her than mine own wife, and all my kin after. Then Sir Arthur called the keeps of the field, and said, Sirs, come hither, for here are we two knights that have fought unto a great damage unto us both, and like each one of us to have slain other, if it had happed so; and had any of us known other, here had been no battle, nor stroke stricken. Then all aloud cried Sir Accolon unto all the knights and men that were then there gathered together, and said to them in this manner: O lords, this noble knight that I have fought withal, the which me sore repenteth, is the most man of prowess, of manhood, and of worship
in the world, for it is himself king Arthur, our ather liege lord, and with mishap and with misadventure have I done this battle with the king and lord that I am holden withal.

CHAP. XII.

How Arthur accorded the two brethren, and delivered the twenty knights, and bow Sir Accolon died.

Then all the people fell down on their knees, and cried king Arthur mercy. Mercy shall ye have, said Arthur: here may ye see what adventures befall oft time of errant knights, how that I have fought with a knight of mine own unto my great damage and his both. But sirs, because I am sore hurt, and he both, and I had great need of a little rest, ye shall understand the opinion betwixt you two brethren: As to thee, Sir Damas, for whom I have been champion, and won the field of this knight, yet will I judge because ye Sir Damas are called an orgulous knight, and full of villainy, and not worth of prowess of your deeds, therefore I will that ye give unto your brother all the whole manor with the appurtenance, under this form, that Sir Ontzlake hold the manor of you, and yearly to give you a palfrey to ride upon, for that will become you better to ride on than upon a courser. Also I charge thee, Sir Damas, upon pain of death, that thou never distress no knights errant that ride on their adventure. And also that thou restore these twenty knights that thou hast long kept prisoners of all their harness that they be content for, and if any of them come to my court and complain of thee, by my head thou shalt die therefore. Also, Sir Ontzlake, as to you, because ye are named a good knight, and full of prowess, and true and gentle in all your deeds, this shall be your charge: I will give you that in all goodly haste ye come unto me and my court, and ye shall be a knight of mine, and if your deeds be thereafter I shall so prefer you, by the grace of God ye shall in short time be in to live as worshipfully as your Sir Damas.—God thank your la of your goodness and of your bow! I shall be from henceforth at a at your commandment: for, Sir Ontzlake, I was hurt but la an adventurous knight through t' thighs, which grieved me sore, had I done this battle 'wit'. Would, said Arthur, it had b for then had not I been hurt as I shall tell you the cause why had not been hurt as I am had been mine own sword that was from me by treason; and this was ordained aforehand to have me, and so it was brought purpose by false treason, and t' enchantment. Alas, said Sir Oi that is great pity, that ever so: man as ye are of your dee prowess, that any man or woman find in their hearts to work anything against you. I shall reward the Arthur, in short time by the g God. Now tell me, said Arthur: far am I from Camelot? Sir, two days' journey therefrom. I fain be at some place of worship Sir Arthur, that I might re Sir, said Sir Ontzlake, hereby is abbey of your elders' foundati Nuns, but three mile hence. king took his leave of all the and mounted upon horseback, Accolon with him. And whe were come to the abbey, he le leeches and search his wound Accolon's both, but Sir Accolo within four days, for he had much blood that he might not likeing Arthur was well recover when Accolon was dead he let se: on an horse-bier with six knight Camelot, and said, Bear him sister Morgan le Fay, and say send her him to a present, and t that I have my sword Excalib the scabbard. So they departe the body.
CHAP. XIII.

Fay that Accolon was dead, and his body brought unto the church, and how king Arthur had his sword again. But when queen Morgan wist that Accolon was dead she was so sorrowful that near her heart to burst. But because she would not it were known, outward she kept her countenance, and made no semblance of sorrow. But well she wist, and she abode till her brother Arthur came thither, there should no gold go for her life.

Then she went unto queen Guenever, and asked her leave to ride into the country. Ye may abide, said queen Guenever, till your brother the king come home. I may not, said Morgan le Fay, for I have such hasty tidings that I may not tarry. Well, said Guenever, ye may depart when ye will. So early on the morn, or it was day, she took her horse and rode all that day, and most part of the night, and on the morn by noon she came to the same abbey of nuns, whereas lay king Arthur, and she, knowing he was there, asked where he was: and they answered how he had laid him in his bed to sleep, for he had had but little rest these three nights. Well, said she, I charge you that none of you awake him till I do. And then she alight off her horse, and thought for to steal away Excalibur his sword, and so she went straight unto his chamber, and no man durst disobey her commandment, and there she found Arthur asleep in his bed, and Excalibur in his right hand naked. When she saw that, she was passing heavy that she might not come by the sword without she had awakened him, and then she wist she had been dead. Then she took the scabbard, and went her way on horseback. When the king awoke and missed his scabbard, he was wroth, and he asked who had been there, and they said his sister queen Morgan had been there, and had put the scabbard under her mantle, and was gone. Alas, said Arthur, falsely have ye watched me. Sir, said they all, we durst not disobey your sister’s commandment. Ah, said
the king, let fetch the best horse that may be found, and bid Sir Ontzlake arm him in all haste, and take another good horse and ride with me. So anon the king and Ontzlake were well armed, and rode after this lady; and so they came by a cross, and found a cowherd, and they asked the poor man if there came any lady late riding that way. Sir, said this poor man, right late came a lady riding with a forty horses, and to yonder forest she rode. Then they spurred their horses and followed fast, and within awhile Arthur had a sight of Morgan le Fay; then he chased as fast as he might. When she espied him following her, she rode a greater pace through the forest till she came to a plain. And when she saw she might not escape, she rode unto a lake thereby, and said, Whosoever becometh of me, my brother shall not have this scabbard. And then she let throw the scabbard in the deepest of the water, so it sank, for it was heavy of gold and precious stones. Then she rode into a valley where many great stones were, and when she saw that she must be overtaken, she shaped herself, horse and man, by enchantment, unto a great marble stone. Anon withal came Sir Arthur and Sir Ontzlake, whereas the king might not know his sister and her men, and one knight from another. Ah, said the king, here may ye see the vengeance of God, and now am I sorry that this misadventure befallen. And then he looked for the scabbard, but it would not be found. So he returned to the abbey there he came from. So when Arthur was gone she turned all into the likeness as she and they were before, and said, Sirs, now may we go where we will.

CHAP. XV.

How Morgan le Fay saved a knight that should have been drowned, and how king Arthur returned home again.

Then said Morgan, Saw ye Arthur my brother? Yea, said her knights, right well, and that ye should have found and we might have stirred from one stead, for by his warlike countenance he would have caused us to have fled. I believe you, said Morgan. And after as she rode she met a knight leading another knight on his horse before him, bound hand and foot his fold, to have drowned him in a fountain. When she saw this knight bound, she asked him, What will ye do with that knight? Lady, said he, I will drown him. For what cause? she asked. For I found him with my wife, and we shall have the same death anon. There were pitty, said Morgan le Fay: now, what say ye, knight, is it truth that he saith of you? she said to the knight that should be drowned. Nay truly, madam, he saith not right of me. Or whence be ye? said Morgan le Fay, and of what country? I am of the court of king Arthur, and my name is Manassen, cousin unto Accolon of Gaul. Ye are well, said she, and for the love of him ye shall be delivered, and ye shall have your adversary in the same case ye be in. So Manassen was loosed and the other knight bound. And anon Manassen unarmed him, and armed himself in his harness, and so mounted on horseback, and the knight afore him, and so threw him into the fountain and drowned him. And then he rode unto Morgan again, and asked her if she would anything unto king Arthur. Tell him that I rescued thee not for the love of him but for the love of Accolon, and tell him I fear him not while I can make me and them that be with me in likeness of stones; and let him wit I can do much more when I see my time. And so she departed into the country of Gore, and there was she richly received, and made her castles and towns passing strong, for always she dread much king Arthur. When the king had well rested him at the abbey he rode unto Camelot, and found his queen and his barons right glad of his coming. And when they heard of his strange adventures as is afore rehearsed, they all had marvel of the falsehood of Morgan le Fay: many
shed her burnt. Then came to the court and told the king adventure. Well, said the king, and sister, I shall so be avenged. I live, that all christendom of it. So on the morn there passed from Morgan to the king, rought with her the richest ever was seen in that court, set as full of precious stones that stand by another, and there richest stones that ever the And the damsel said, Your leth you this mantle, and hat ye should take this and in what thing she hath you she will amend it at your. When the king beheld it pleased him much, but he tle.

CHAP. XVI.

'Amself of the lake savd king from a mantle which should to him.'

That came the damsel of the he king, and said, Sir, I must you in private. Say on, said what ye will. Sir, said the t not on you this mantle till m more, and in no wise let it on you, nor on no knight of ye command the bringer put it upon her. Well, said ur, it shall be done as ye e. And then he said unto l that came from his sister, is mantle that ye have brought ee it upon you. Sir, said she, beseem me to wear a king's By my head, said Arthur, ye or it come on my back, or that here is. And so the it to be put upon her, and she fell down dead, and spake word after, and burnt Then was the king wonderly more than he was toforehand, to king Uriens, My sister your way about to betray me, and either ye, or my nephew your counsel with her to have me destroyed; but as for you, said the king to king Uriens, I deem not greatly that ye be of her counsel, for Accolon confessed to me by his own mouth, that she would have destroyed you as well as me, therefore I hold you excused; but as for your son Sir Uwayne, I hold him suspected, therefore I charge you put him out of my court. So Sir Uwayne was discharged. And when Sir Gawaine wist that, he made him ready to go with him, and said: Who so banisheth my cousin german shall banish me. So they two departed and rode into a great forest. And so they came to an abbey of monks, and there were well lodged. But when the king wist that Sir Gawaine was departed from the court there was made great sorrow among all the estates. Now, said Gaheris, Gawaine's brother, we have lost two good knights for the love of one. So on the morr they heard their masses in the abbey, and so they rode forth till they came to a great forest; then was Sir Gawaine ware in a valley by a turret, of twelve fair damsels, and two knights armed on great horses, and the damsels went to and fro by a tree. And then was Sir Gawaine ware how there hung a white shield on that tree, and ever as the damsels came by it they spit upon it, and some threw mire upon the shield.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Uwayne met with twelve fair damsels, and how they complained on Sir Marbaus.

Then Sir Gawaine and Sir Uwayne went and saluted them, and asked why they did that despite to the shield. Sirs, said the damsels, we shall tell you. There is a knight in this country that owneth this white shield, and he is a passing good man of his hands, but he hateth all ladies and gentlewomen, and therefore we do all this despite to the shield. I shall say you, said Sir Gawaine, it beseemeth evil a good knight to despise all ladies and gentlewomen, and peradventure though he hate you he hath some cause, and peradventure he
loveth in some other places ladies and gentlewomen, and to be loved again, and he be such a man of prowess as ye speak of. Now what is his name? Sir, said they, his name is Marhaus, the king’s son of Ireland. I know him well, said Sir Uwayne, he is a passing good knight as any is on live, for I saw him once proved at a jousts where many knights were gathered, and that time there might no man withstand him. Ah I said Sir Gawaine, damsel, methinketh ye are to blame, for it is to suppose he that hung that shield there he will not be long therefrom, and then may those knights match him on horseback, and that is more your worship than thus; for I will abide no longer to see a knight’s shield dishonoured. And therewith Sir Uwayne and Gawaine departed a little from them, and then were they ware where Sir Marhaus came riding on a great horse straight towards them. And when the twelve damsel saw Sir Marhaus they fled into the turret as they were wild, so that some of them fell by the way. Then the one of the knights of the tower dressed his shield, and said on high, Sir Marhaus, defend thee. And so they ran together that the knight brake his spear on Marhaus, and Sir Marhaus smote him so hard that he brake his neck and the horse’s back. That saw the other knight of the turret, and dressed him toward Marhaus, and they met so eagerly together that the knight of the turret was soon smitten down, horse and man, stark dead.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Marhaus justed with Sir Gawaine and Sir Uwayne, and overthrew them both.

And then Sir Marhaus rode unto his shield, and saw how it was defouled, and said, Of this despite I am a part avenged, but for her love that gave me this white shield I shall wear thee, and hang mine where thou wast: and so he hanged it about his neck. Then he rode straight unto Sir Gawaine and to Sir Uwayne, and asked them what they did there. They answered him they came from king Arthur’s court, and saw adventures. Well, said Sir Marhaus then here am I ready, an adventurous that will fulfil any adventure will desire. And so departed them to fetch his range. Let said Sir Uwayne unto Sir Gawaine, he is a passing good knight and living: I would not by my will if of us were matched with him said Sir Gawaine, not so; it went to us we were he not assayed, we never so good a knight. Well, Uwayne, I will assay him aforesaid. I am more weaker than ye, and smite me down then may ye revenge. So these two knights came together in great random, that Sir Uwayne said Marhaus that his spear brast it on the shield, and Sir Marhaus smote him so sore that horse and man to the earth, and hurt Sir Uwayne on his right side. Then Sir Marhaus took his horse and rode toward Gawaine with his spear. And when Sir Gawaine saw that, he dressed his shield, and adventred their spears, and they together with all the might of horses, that either knight smote so hard in the midst of their shield, Sir Gawaine’s spear brake, but Sir Marhaus’s spear held; and therewith Gawaine and his horse rushed on the earth. And lightly Sir Gawaine rose upon his feet, and pulled his sword, and dressed him toward Marhaus on foot. And Sir Marhaus that, and pulled out his sword, and come to Sir Gawaine on horse Sir knight, said Sir Gawaine, alight, or else I will slay thy Gramercy, said Sir Marhaus, of gentleness, ye teach me courtesy is not for one knight to be on foot, and the other on horseback. And then Sir Marhaus set his spear against and alighted, and tied his horse tree, and dressed his shield, and came unto other eagerly, and together with their swords the shields flew in cantels, and they their helms and their hauberks.
d either other. But Sir Ga-fro it passed nine of the clock ever stronger and stronger, till it to the hour of noon, and thrice ht was increased. All this espied haus, and had great wonder how at increased, and so they wounded passing sore. And then when it st noon, and when it drew to-gen-song, Sir Gawaine's strength and waxed passing faint, that he might dure any longer, Marhaus was then bigger and Sir knight, said Sir Marhaus, well felt that ye are a passing night, and a marvellous man of ever I felt any, while it lasteth, quarrels are not great, and it were pity to do you hurt, sel ye are passing feeble. Ah, Gawaine, gentle knight, ye say d that I should say. And there they took off their helms and either other, and there they swore to either to love other as brethren. Marhaus prayed Sir Gawaine was with him that night. And so took their horses and rode toward haus's house. And as they rode way, Sir knight, said Sir Gawaine, marvel that so valiant a man as ove no ladies nor damsels. Sir, Marhaus, they name me wrongose that give me that name, but not it be the damsels of the turret name me, and other such as they o low shall I tell you for what cause them. For they be sorceresses hanters many of them, and be a never so good of his body and prowess as man may be, they like him a stark coward to have er of him, and this is the prin-case that I hate them; and to ladies and gentlewomen I owe ice as a knight ought to do. As k rehearseth in French, there any knights that overmatched waine, for all the thrice-might had: Sir Launcelot de Lake, Sir Bors de Ganis, Sir e, Sir Pelleas, and Sir Marhaus, x knights had the better of Sir Gawaine. Then within a little while they came to Sir Marhaus's place, which was in a little priory, and there they alight, and ladies and damsels un-arm them and hastily looked to their hurts, for they were all three hurt. And so they had all three good lodging with Sir Marhaus, and good cheer: for when he wist that they were king Arthur's sister's sons, he made them all the cheer that lay in his power. And so they sojourned there a seven nights, and were well eased of their wounds, and at the last departed. Now, said Sir Marhaus, we will not part so lightly, for I will bring you through the forest: and rode day by day well a seven days or they found any adventure. At the last they came into a great forest, that was named the country and forest of Arroy, and the country of strange adventures. In this country, said Sir Marhaus, came never knight since it was christened, but he found strange adventures. And so they rode and came into a deep valley full of stones, and thereby they saw a fair stream of water; above thereby was the head of the stream, a fair fountain, and three damsels sitting thereby. And then they rode to them, and either saluted other, and the eldest had a garland of gold about her head, and she was threescore winter of age or more, and her hair was white under the garland. The second damsel was of thirty winter of age, with a circlet of gold about her head. The third damsel was but fifteen year of age, and a garland of flowers about her head. When these knights had so beheld them, they asked them the cause why they sat at that fountain. We be here, said the damsels, for this cause, if we may see any errant knights, to teach them unto strange adventures, and ye be three knights that seek adventures, and we be three damsels, and therefore each one of you must choose one of us. And when ye have done so we will lead you unto three high ways, and there each of you shall choose a way, and his damsel with him. And this day twelvemonth ye must meet here again, and God send
you your lives, and thereto ye must plight your troth. This is well said, said Sir Marhaus.

CHAP. XIX.
How Sir Marhaus, Sir Gawaine, and Sir Uwaine met three damsel, and each of them took one.

Now shall every each of us choose a damsel. I shall tell you, said Sir Uwaine: I am the youngest and most weakest of you both, therefore I will have the eldest damsel, for she hath seen much and can help me best when I have need, for I have most need of help of you both. Now, said Sir Marhaus, I will have the damsel of thirty winter age, for she fallest best to me. Well, said Sir Gawaine, I thank you, for ye have left me the youngest and the fairest, and she is most liefest to me. Then every damsel took her knight by the reins of his bridle, and brought them to the three ways, and there was their oath made to meet at the fountain that day twelvemonth and they were living, and so they kissed and departed, and every each knight set his lady behind him. And Sir Uwaine took the way that lay west, and Sir Marhaus took the way that lay south, and Sir Gawaine took the way that lay north.

Now will we begin at Sir Gawaine that held that way till he came unto a fair manor, where dwelled an old knight and a good householder, and there Sir Gawaine asked the knight if he knew any adventures in that country. I shall shew you some to-morn, said the old knight, and that marvellous. So on the morn they rode into the forest of adventures till they came to a lawn, and thereby they found a cross, and as they stood and hoved there came by them the fairest knight and the seemliest man that ever they saw, making the greatest dole that ever man made. And then he was ware of Sir Gawaine, and saluted him, and prayed God to send him such worship. As to that, said Sir Gawaine, Gramercy! Also, I pray to God that he send ye honour and worship. Ah, said the knight, I may lay that aside, for sorrow and shame cometh after worship.

CHAP. XX.
How a knight and a dwarf strow lady.

And therewith he passed unto the side of the lawn. And on the other Sir Gawaine saw ten knights that still, and made them ready with shields and spears against the knight that came by Sir Gawaine. This one knight averted a great and one of the ten knights encou with him, but this woful knight him so hard that he fell over his tail. So this same dolorous served them all, that at the least he smote down horse and man, as he did with one spear. And so they were all ten on foot they were after that one knight, and he stood ston and suffered them to pull him do his horse, and bound him hand and and tied him under the horse pell so led him with them. Oh, said Sir Gawaine, this is a doleful sight, to yonder knight so to be entreated, seemeth by the knight that he su them to bind him so, for he mak resistance. No, said his host, truth, for and he would they al too weak so to do him. Sir, said Sir Gawaine, me see were your worship to help that do knight, for me thinketh he is one best knights that ever I saw. I do for him, said Sir Gawaine, seemeth that he will have no Then said the damsel, me seem have no lust to help him. Thus talked they saw a knight on that side of the lawn, all armed sa head. And on the other side came a dwarf on horseback all save the head, with a great mout a short nose. And when the came nigh he said, Where is th should meet us here? and there she came forth out of the wood. then they began to strive for the for the knight said he would hav
THE ADVENTURE OF SIR GAWAIN.

was cried in this country a great justs three days: and all the knights of this country were there and gentlewomen; and who that proved him the best knight should have a passing good sword and a circlet of gold, and the circlet the knight should give it to the fairest lady that was at the justs. And this knight, Sir Pelleas, was the best knight that was there, and there were five hundred knights, but there was never man that ever Sir Pelleas met withal, but he struck him down, or else from his horse. And every day of three days he struck down twenty knights, therefore they gave him the prize. And forthwith he went there as the lady Etta was, and gave her the circlet, and said openly she was the fairest lady that there was, and that would he prove upon any knight that would say nay.

CHAP. XXI.

How king Pelleas suffered himself to be taken prisoner because he would have a sight of his lady, and how Sir Gawaine promised him for to get to him the love of his lady.

And so he chose her for his sovereign lady, and never to love other but her. But she was so proud that she had scorn of him, and said she would never love him, though he would die for her. Wherefore all ladies and gentlewomen had scorn of her that she was so proud, for there were fairer than she, and there was none that was there but and Sir Pelleas would have proffered them love, they would have loved him for his noble prowess. And so this knight promised the lady Etta to follow her into this country, and never to leave her till she loved him. And thus he is here the most part nigh her, and lodged by a priory, and every week she sendeth knights to fight with him. And when he hath put them to the worse, then will he suffer them willfully to take him prisoner, because he would have a sight of this lady. And alway she doth him great despite, for sometimes she maketh
her knights to tie him to his horse tail, and some to bind him under the horse belly. Thus in the most shamefullest wise that she can think he is brought to her. And all she doth it for to cause him to leave this country, and to leave his loving. But all this cannot make him to leave, for and he would have fought on foot he might have had the better of the ten knights as well on foot as on horseback. Alas! said Sir Gawaine, it is great pity of him, and after this night I will seek him to-morrow in this forest, to do him all the help that I can. So on the morn Sir Gawaine took his leave of his host Sir Carados, and rode into the forest. And at the last he met with Sir Pelleas making great moan out of measure, so each of them saluted other, and asked him why he made such sorrow. And as it is above rehearsed, Sir Pelleas told Sir Gawaine: But alway I suffer her knights to fare so with me as ye saw yesterday, in trust at the last to win her love, for she knoweth well all her knights should not lightly win me and me list to fight with them to the uttermost. Wherefore I loved her not so sore I had lever die an hundred times, and I might die so oft, rather than I would suffer that despite; but I trust she will have pity upon me at the last, for love causeth many a good knight to suffer to have his intent, but, alas! I am unfortunate. And therewith he made so great dole and sorrow that unmethe he might hold him on horseback. Now, said Sir Gawaine, leave your mourning, and I shall promise you by the faith of my body, to do all that lieth in my power to get you the love of your lady, and thereto I will plight you my troth. Ah, said Sir Pelleas, of what court are ye? tell me, I pray you, my good friend. And then Sir Gawaine said, I am of the court of king Arthur, and his sister's son, and king Lot of Orkney was my father, and my name is Sir Gawaine. And then he said, My name is Sir Pelleas, born in the Isles, and of many isles I am lord, and never have I loved lady nor damsel till now in an unhappy time; and Sir knight, since ye are so nigh cousin unto king Arthur, and a king's son, therefore betray me not but help me, for I may never come by her but by some good knight, for she is in a strong castle here fast by within this four mile, and over all this country she is lady of. And so I may never come to her presence but as I suffer her knights to take me, and but if I did so that I might have a sight of her, I had been dead long or this time, and yet fair word had I never of her, but when I am brought before her she rebuketh me in the foulest manner. And then they take my horse and harness, and put me out of the gate, and she will not suffer me to eat nor drink, and always I offer me to be her prisoner, but that she will not suffer me, for I would desire no more what pains soever I had, so that I might have a sight of her daily. Well, said Sir Gawaine, all this shall I amend, and ye will do as I shall devise. I will have your horse and your armour, and so will I ride to her castle, and tell her that I have slain you, and so shall I come within her to cause her to cherish me, and then shall I do my true part that ye shall not fail to have the love of her.

CHAP. XXII.

How Sir Gawaine came to the lady Ettard, and how Sir Pelleas found them sleeping.

And therewith Sir Gawaine plight his troth unto Sir Pelleas to be true and faithful unto him. So each one plight their troth to other, and so they changed horses and harness, and Sir Gawaine departed and came to the castle whereas stood the pavilions of this lady without the gate. And as soon as Ettard had espied Sir Gawaine she fled in toward the castle. Sir Gawaine spake on high, and bad her abide, for he was not Sir Pelleas: I am another knight that hath slain Sir Pelleas. Do off your helm, said the lady Ettard, that I may see your visage. And so when she saw that it was not Sir Pelleas she made him alight, and led him unto her castle, and asked him faithfully whether he had slain Sir Pelleas. And
her ye, and told her his name was Gawaine of the court of king Arthur, her sister's son. Truly, said she, a great pity, for he was a passing knight of his body, but of all men I hated him most, for I could be quiet of him. And for ye have im I shall be your lady, and to doing that may please you. So she Sir Gawaine good cheer. Then Gawaine said that he loved a lady, y no mean she would love him. to blame, said Ettard, and she not love you, for ye that be so well man, and such a man of prowess, is no lady in the world too good you. Will ye, said Sir Gawaine, se me to do all that ye may, by faith of your body, to get me the of my lady? Yea, sir, said she, and promise you by the faith of my.

Now, said Sir Gawaine, it self that I love so well, therefore I you hold your promise. I may loose, said the lady Ettard, but if should be forsworn. And so she d him to fulfil all his desire.

It was then in the month of May ne and Sir Gawaine went out of the and supped in a pavilion, and in pavilion she laid her damsels, the third pavilion she laid part of nights, for then she had no dread Pelleas. And there Sir Gawaine with her in that pavilion two days no nights. And on the third day morning early Sir Pelleas armed for he had never slept since Sir ne departed from him. For Sir ne had promised him, by the faith body, to come to him unto his by that priory within the space try and a night. Then Sir Pelleas ed upon horseback, and came to pavilions that stood without the and found in the first pavilion knights in three beds, and three lying at their feet. Then went the second pavilion and found gentlewomen lying in four beds. Then he went to the third pavilion and Sir Gawaine with his lady 4, and when he saw that his heart well nigh burst for sorrow, and said: Alas! that ever a knight should be found so false. And then he took his horse, and might not abide no longer for pure sorrow. And when he had ridden nigh half a mile, he turned again and thought to slay them both: and when he saw them both sleeping fast, unnethe he might hold him on horseback for sorrow, and said thus to himself, Though this knight be never so false I will never slay him sleeping; for I will never destroy the high order of knighthood. And therewith he departed again.

And or he had ridden half a mile he returned again, and thought then to slay them both, making the greatest sorrow that ever man made. And when he came to the pavilions he tied his horse to a tree, and pulled out his sword naked in his hand, and went to them there as they lay, and yet he thought it were shame to slay them sleeping, and laid the naked sword overthwart both their throats, and so took his horse and rode his way. And when Sir Pelleas came to his pavilions he told his knights and his squires how he had sped, and said thus to them: For your true and good service ye have done me I shall give you all my goods, for I will go unto my bed, and never arise until I am dead. And when that I am dead I charge you that ye take the heart out of my body and bear it her betwixt two silver dishes, and tell her how I saw her with the false knight Sir Gawaine. Right so Sir Pelleas unarmed himself and went unto his bed, making marvellous dole and sorrow.

Then Sir Gawaine and Ettard awoke out of their sleep, and found the naked sword overthwart their throats. Then she knew well it was Sir Pelleas' sword. Alas! said she to Sir Gawaine, ye have betrayed me and Sir Pelleas both, for ye told me ye had slain him, and now I know well it is not so, he is on live. And if Sir Pelleas had been as uncourteous to you as ye have been to him, ye had been a dead knight: but ye have deceived me and betrayed me falsely, that all ladies and damsels may beware
by you and me. And therewith Sir Gawaine made him ready and went into the forest. So it happened then that the damsel of the lake Nimue met with a knight of Sir Pelleas, that went on his foot in the forest making great dole, and she asked him the cause. And so the woful knight told her how that his master and lord was betrayed through a knight and a lady, and how he will never arise out of his bed till he be dead. Bring me to him, said she, anon, and I will warrant his life, he shall not die for love, and he that hath caused him so to love she shall be in as evil plight as he is or it be long, for it is no joy of such a proud lady that will have no mercy of such a valiant knight. Anon that knight brought her unto him. And when she saw him lie in his bed, she thought she saw never so likely a knight: and therewith she threw an enchantment upon him, and he fell on sleep. And threewith she rode unto the lady Ettard, and charged no man to awake him till she came again. So within two hours she brought the lady Ettard thither, and both ladies found him on sleep. Lo, said the damsel of the lake, ye ought to be ashamed for to murder such a knight. And therewith she threw such an enchantment upon her that she loved him sore, that well nigh she was out of her mind. Alas! said the lady Ettard, how is it befallen unto me that I love now him that I have most hated of any men alive. That is the righteous judgment of God, said the damsel. And then anon Sir Pelleas awaked, and looked upon Ettard. And when he saw her he knew her, and then he hated her more than any woman alive, and said: Away traitress, come never in my sight. And when she heard him say so, she wept and made great sorrow out of measure.

CHAP. XXIII.
How Sir Pelleas loved no more Ettard by means of the damsel of the lake, whom he loved ever after.

Sir knight Pelleas, said the damsel of the lake, take your horse and come with me out of this country, and love a lady that shall love you well, said Sir Pelleas, for this lady hath done me great despite and ending, and how he had never to have arisen till he be dead,—and now I hate her as ever I loved her. Thank me, said the damsel of the lake. Anon Sir Pelleas armed him, and took his horse and commanded his men to bring pavilions and his stuff where the lord of the lake would assign. So Ettard died for sorrow, and the lake rejoiced Sir Pelleas loved together during their life.

CHAP. XXIV.
How Sir Marhaus rode with the damsel of thirtof age southward. And so they came into a deep forest, and by forth they were nighted, and rode long in way, and at the last they came courtelage, and there they asked. But the man of the courtelage will lodge them for no treaty that could treat. But thus much the man said: And ye will take the nature of your lodging, I shall be there ye shall be lodged. What nature is that that I shall have lodging? said Sir Marhaus. Wit when ye come there, said the man. Sir, what adventure shall bring me thither, I pray thee, Marhaus, for I am weary, my horse and my horse. So the good man opened the gate, and without he brought him unto a fair. And then the poor man called over, and anon he was let into the hall and so told the lord how he him a knight errant and a dam would be lodged with him. Then, said the lord, it may happen repent that they took their lodgi
Marhaus was let in with torch and there was a goodly sight of men that welcomed him. And horse was led into the stable, and the damsel were brought into and there stood a mighty duke, goodly men about him. Then asked him what he hight, and once he came, and with whom Sir, said he, I am a knight Arthur’s, and knight of the Round, and my name is Sir Marhaus. I am in Ireland. And the duke to him, That me neth: the cause is this: for I thy lord, nor none of thy fel- he Table Round, and therefore self this night as well as thou for as to-morn I and my six will match with you. Is there y but that I must have ado, and your six sons at once? Marhaus. No, said the duke, cause I made mine avow, for Sir slew my seven sons in a wherefore I made mine avow e should never knight of king court lodge with me, or come I might have ado with him, but ould have a revenging of my th. What is your name? said aus; I require you tell me, and you. Wit ye well that I am of South Marches. Ah, said haus, I have heard say that been a long time a great foe lord Arthur and to his knights. ye feel to-morn, said the hall I have ado with you? said aus. Yea, said the duke, thereof I do not choose, and therefore take our chamber, and ye shall have o you belongeth. So Sir Marted, and was led to a chamber, amsel was led unto her cham- d on the morn the duke sent Marhaus, and bad make him and so Sir Marhaus arose and m, and then there was a mass e him, and he brake his fast, mounted on horseback in the the castle, there they should ntle. So there was the duke already on horseback, clean armed, and his six sons by him, and every each had a spear in his hand, and so they en- countered, where as the duke and his two sons brake their spears upon him, but Sir Marhaus held up his spear and touched none of them.

CHAP. XXV.

How Sir Marhaus fought with the duke and his six sons, and made them to yield them.

Then came the four sons by couples, and two of them brake their spears, and so did the other two. And all this while Sir Marhaus touched them not. Then Sir Marhaus ran to the duke, and smote him with his spear that horse and man fell to the earth. And so he served his sons. And then Sir Marhaus alight down, and bad the duke yield him or else he would slay him. And then some of his sons recovered, and would have set upon Sir Marhaus. Then Sir Marhaus said to the duke, Cease thy sons, or else I will do the uttermost to you all. When the duke saw he might not escape the death, he cried to his sons, and charged them to yield them to Sir Marhaus. And they kneeled all down and put the pommels of their swords to the knight, and so he received them. And then they holp up their father, and so by their common assent promised unto Sir Marhaus never to be foes unto king Arthur, and there- upon at Whitsuntide after, to come he and his sons, and put them in the king’s grace. Then Sir Marhaus departed, and within two days his damsel brought him where as was a great tourn- ment that the lady de Vawse had cried. And who that did best should have a rich circlet of gold worth a thousand besants. And there Sir Marhaus did so nobly that he was renowned, and had some time down forty knights, and so the circlet of gold was rewarded him. Then he departed from thence with great worship. And so within seven nights the damsel brought him to an earl’s place, his name was the earl Fergus,
that after was Sir Tristram's knight. And this earl was but a young man, and late come into his lands, and there was a giant fast by him that hight Taulurd, and he had another brother in Cornwall that hight Taulas, that Sir Tristram slew when he was out of his mind. So this earl made his complaint unto Sir Marhaus, that there was a giant by him that destroyed all his lands, and how he durst nowhere ride nor go for him. Sir, said the knight, whether useth he to fight on horseback or on foot? Nay, said the earl, there may no horse bear him. Well, said Sir Marhaus, then will I fight with him on foot. So on the morn Sir Marhaus prayed the earl that one of his men might bring him whereas the giant was, and so he was, for he saw him sit under a tree of holly, and many clubs of iron and gisarums about him. So this knight dressed him to the giant, putting his shield afore him, and the giant took an iron club in his hand, and at the first stroke he clave Sir Marhaus's shield in two pieces. And there he was in great peril, for the giant was a wily fighter, but at the last Sir Marhaus smote off his right arm above the elbow. Then the giant fled, and the knight after him, and so he drove him into a water, but the giant was so high that he might not wade after him. And then Sir Marhaus made the earl Fergus's man to fetch him stones, and with those stones the knight gave the giant many sore knocks, till at the last he made him fall down into the water, and so was he there dead. Then Sir Marhaus went unto the giant's castle, and there he delivered twenty-four ladies and twelve knights out of the giant's prison, and there he had great riches without number, so that the days of his life he was never poor man. Then he returned to the earl Fergus, the which thanked him greatly and would have given him half his lands, but he would none take. So Sir Marhaus dwelt with the earl nigh half a year, for he was sore bruised with the giant, and at the last he took his leave. And as he rode by the way, he met with Sir Gawaine and Sir Uwaine, and so by adventure he met with knights of king Arthur's court; there was Sir Sagramore le Desir, Osanna, Sir Dodinas le Savage, and Felot of Listinoise; and there Sir Marhaus with one spear smote down four knights, and hurt them so he departed to meet at his day after.

CHAP. XXVII.

How Sir Uwaine rode with the dauberscore years of age, and how he prize at tourneying.

Now turn we unto Sir Uwaine rode westward with his damsel of score winter of age, and she bade him there as was a tournament in march of Wales. And at that moment Sir Uwaine smote down knights, therefore was given him the prize, and that was a gerfalco a white steed trapped with cl gold. So then Sir Uwaine did strange adventures by the me old damsel, and so she bade him unto a lady that was called lady of the Rock, the which was much courteous. So there were the country two knights that brethren, and they were called perilous knights, the one high Edward of the Red Castle, and the other hight Sir Hue of the Red. And these two brethren had disdained the lady of the Rock of a bare lands by their extortion. And the knight was lodged with this lady, and made her complaint to him of the knights. Madam, said Sir Uwaine, are to blame, for they do again and again dishonour of knighthood and thieving that they made; and if it like you speak with them, because I am a knight of king Arthur's, and I will acquit them with fairness; and if they not, I shall do battle with them, the defence of your right. Grant said the lady, and there as I may acquit you, God shall. So on the third day the two knights were sent for, that should come hither to speak with the lady of the Rock. And wit ye were
THE ADVENTURE OF SIR UWAIN.

or they came with an hun-

But when this lady saw

sailor so big, she would

Sir Uwaine to go out to

no surety nor for no fair

but she made him speak

over a tower. But finally

brethren would not be en-

answered that they would

they had. Well, said Sir

a will I fight with one of

rovet that ye do this lady

at will we not, said they,

at battle we two will fight

tight at once, and therefore

ght so we will be ready at

ye will assign. And if ye

ttle the lady shall have her

. Ye say well, said Sir

refo re make you ready, so

were tomorn in the defence

right.

HAP. XXVIII.

Saw to fough t with two knight s,

\( \text{ed overcame them.} \)

here agreement made on

that no treason should be

neither party. So then the

erted and made them ready.

ght Sir Uwaine had great

on the morn he arose

ard mass, and brake his

he rode unto the plain

gates, where hoved the two

iding him. So they rode

sing sore, that Sir Edward

e brake their spears upon

And Sir Uwaine smote

that he fell over his horse,

pear brast not. And then

is horse and came upon Sir

earthed him; but they soon

d dressed their shields and

wors, and had Sir Uwaine

o his battle to the utter-

Sir Uwaine avoided his

ally, and put his shield

and drew his sword, and

ned together, and either

such strokes, and there

then wounded Sir Uwaine

passing grievously, that the lady of

the Rock wend he should have died.

And thus they fought together five

hours as men enraged out of reason.

And at the last Sir Uwaine smote Sir

Edward upon the helm such a stroke

that his sword carved unto his collar-

bone, and then Sir Hue abated his

courage. But Sir Uwaine pressed fast

to have slain him. That saw Sir Hue;

he kneeled down and yielded him to

Sir Uwaine. And he of his gentleness

received his sword, and took him by the

hand and went into the castle together.

Then the lady of the Rock was passing

glad, and the other brother made great

sorrow for his brother's death. Then

the lady was restored of all her lands,

and Sir Hue was commanded to be at

the court of king Arthur at the next feast

of Pentecost. So Sir Uwaine dwelt with

the lady nigh half a year, for it was

long he might be whole of his great

hurts. And so when it drew nigh the

term-day that Sir Gawaine, Sir Marhaus,

and Sir Uwaine should meet at the cross

way, then every knight drew him thither

to hold his promise that they had made. 

And Sir Marhaus and Sir Uwaine

brought their damsels with them, but

Sir Gawaine had lost his damsel, as it

is afore rehearsed.

CHAP. XXIX.

How at the year's end all three knights

with their three damsels met at the

fountain.

Right so at the twelvemonth's end

they met all three knights at the foun-
tain, and their damsels. But the damsel

that Sir Gawaine had could say but

little worship of him. So they de-

parted from the damsels and rode

through a great forest, and there they

met with a messenger that came from

king Arthur, that had sought them

well nigh a twelvemonth throughout

all England, Wales, and Scotland, and

charged if ever he might find Sir Ga-

waine and Sir Uwaine, to bring them to

the court again. And then were they

all glad. And so prayed they Sir
Marhaus to ride with them to the king's court. And so within twelve days they came to Camelot; and the king was passing glad of their coming, and so was all the court. Then the king made them to swear upon a book to tell him all their adventures that had befallen them that twelvemonth, and so they did. And there was Sir Marhaus well known; for there were knights that he had matched aforetime, and he was named one of the best knights living. Against the feast of Pentecost came the damsel of the lake, and brought with her Sir Pelleas. And at that high feast there was great justing of knights, and of all the knights that were at that justs Sir Pelleas had the prize, and Sir Marhaus was named the next; but Sir Pelleas was so strong that there might but few knights sit him a buffet with a spear. And at that next feast Sir Pelleas and Sir Marhaus were made knights of the Table Round, for there were two sieges void, for two knights were slain that twelve and great joy had king Arthur Pelleas and of Sir Marhaus. But loved never after Sir Gawaine, but spared him for the love of king. But oftentimes at justs and turn Sir Pelleas quit Sir Gawaine, for rehearsed in the book of French Sir Tristram many days after with Sir Marhaus in an island there they did a great battle, but last Sir Tristram slew him. Tristram was wounded that he might recover, and lay at a half a year. And Sir Pelleas worshipful knight, and was one four that achieved the Sangreal the damsel of the lake made means that never he had ado. Launcelot de Lake, for the Launcelot was at any justs tournament she would not suffer to be there that day, but if it on the side of Sir Launcelot.

Explicit liber quartus. Incepit liber quintus.

The Fifth Book.

CHAP. I.

How twelve aged ambassadors of Rome came to king Arthur to demand truage for Britain.

When king Arthur had after long war rested, and held a royal feast and Table Round with his allies of kings, princes, and noble knights all of the Round Table, there came into his hall, he sitting in his throne royal, twelve ancient men, bearing each of them a branch of olive in token that they came as ambassadors and messengers from the emperor Lucius, which was called at that time Dictator or Procuror of the Public Weal of Rome. Which said messengers, after their entering and coming into the presence of king Arthur, did to him their obeiss making to him reverence, and him in this wise: The high and great emperor Lucius sendeth to the Britain greeting, commanding to acknowledge him for thy lord, send him the truage due of this unto the empire, which thy father other before thy predecessors had as is of record, and thou as rel knowing him as thy sovereign, wilt and retainest contrary to the said decrees made by the noble worthy Julius Cesar, conqueror of the realm, and first emperor of And if thou refuse his demand commandment, know thou for
CHAP. II.

How the kings and lords promised to
king Arthurl aid and help against the
Romans.

Then answered king Anguish of Scot-
lend, Sir, ye ought of right to be above
all other kings, for unto you is none like
nor pareil in all Christendom, of knight-
hood ne of dignity, and I counsel you
never to obey the Romans, for when they
reigned on us they distressed our elders,
and put this land to great extortions and
tallages, wherefore I make here mine
avow to avenge me on them; and for
to strengthen your quarrel I shall fur-
nish twenty thousand good men of war,
and wage them on my costs, which shall
await on you with myself, when it
shall please you. And the king of
Little Britain granted him to the same
thirty thousand; wherefore king Arthur
thanked them. And then every man
agreed to make war, and to aid after
their power; that is to wit, the lord of
West Wales promised to bring thirty
thousand men, and Sir Uwaine, Sir Ider
his son, with their cousins, promised to
bring thirty thousand. Then Sir Lau-
celot with all other promised in like-
wise every man a great multitude. And
when king Arthur understood their cou-
rages and good wills he thanked them
heartily, and after let call the ambassa-
dors to hear their answer. And in pre-
sence of all his lords and knights he said
to them in this wise: I will that ye re-
turn unto your lord and Procuror of the
Common Weal for the Romans, and say
to him, Of his demand and command-
ment I set nothing, and that I know of
no truage, ne tribute, that I owe to him,
ne to none earthly prince, Christian
ne heathen; but I pretend to have and
occupy the sovereignty of the empire,
wherein I am entitled by the right of my
predecessors, sometime kings of this
land; and say to him that I am delib-
 rated, and fully concluded, to go with
mine army with strength and power unto
Rome by the grace of God to take pos-
session in the empire, and subdue them
that be rebel. Wherefore I command
him, and all them of Rome, that incontinent they make to me their hommage, and to acknowledge me for their em- peror and governor, upon pain that shall ensue. And then he commanded his treasurer to give them great and large gifts, and to pay all their expenses, and assigned Sir Cador to convey them out of the land. And so they took their leave and departed, and took their shipping at Sandwich, and passed forth by Flanders, Almain, the mountains, and all Italy, until they came unto Lucius. And after the reverence made, they made relation of their answer, like as ye tofore have heard. When the emperor Lucius had well understood their credence, he was sore moved as he had been all enraged, and said: I had supposed that Arthur would have obeyed to my commandment, and have served you himself, as him well beseemed or any other king to do. O sir, said one of the senators, let be such vain words, for we let you wit that I and my fellows were full sore afear to behold his countenance; I fear ye have made a rod for yourself, for he intendeth to be lord of this empire, which sore is to be doubted if he come, for he is all another man than ye ween, and holdeth the most noble court of the world; all other kings ne princes may not compare unto his noble maintenance. On new year’s day we saw him in his estate, which was the royallest that ever we saw, for he was served at his table with nine kings and the noblest fellowship of other princes, lords, and knights, that be in the world, and every knight approved and like a lord, and holdeth Table Round: and in his person the most manly man that liveth, and is like to conquer all the world, for unto his courage it is too little: wherefore I advise you to keep well your marches and straits in the mountains; for certainly he is a lord to be doubted. Well, said Lucius, before Easter I suppose to pass the mountains and so forth into France, and there bereave him his lands with Genoese and other mighty warriors of Tuscany and Lombardy. And I shall send for them all that be subjects and allied to the empire of Rome to come to mine aid. And forthwith sent old wise knights unto these countries following: first, to Ambage and Arrage, to Alisandrie, to Inde, to Hermonie where as the river of Euphrates runneth into Asia, to Affrike, and Europe the large, to Ertaine and Elamie, to Arabie, Egypt, and to Damaske, to Damiette and Cayer, to Capadocce, to Tarce, Turkey, Pounce, and Pampoire, to Surrie, and Galacie. And all these were subject to Rome, and many more, as Greece, Cyprus, Macedone, Calabre, Cateland, Portugal, with many thousands of Spaniards. Thus all these kings, dukes, and admirals assembled about Rome with sixteen kings at once, with great multitude of people. When the emperor understood their coming, he made ready his Romans and all the people between him and Flanders. Also he had gotten with him fifty giants which had been born of fiends; and they were ordained to guard his person, and to break the front of the battle of king Arthur.

And thus he departed from Rome, and came down the mountains for to destroy the lands that king Arthur had conquered, and came to Cologne, and besieged a castle thereby, and won it soon, and stuffed it with two hundred Saracens or infidels, and after destroyed many fair countries which Arthur had won of king Claudas. And thus Lucius came with all his host which were spread out threescore mile in breadth, and commanded them to meet with him in Burgoyne, for he purposed to destroy the realm of Little Britain.

CHAP. III.

How king Arthur held a parliament at York, and how he ordained how the realm should be governed in his absence.

Now leave we of Lucius the emperor, and speak we of king Arthur, that commanded all them of his retinue to be ready at the utas of Hilary for to hold a parliament at York. And at
HOW ARTHUR FOUGHT WITH A GIANT.

After him seemed there came out of the orient a grimly boar all black in a cloud, and his paws as big as a post; he was rugged looking roughly, he was the foulest beast that ever man saw, he roared and roamed so hideously that it were marvel to hear. Then the dreadful dragon advanced him, and came in the wind like a falcon, giving great strokes on the boar, and the boar hit him again with his grisly tusks that his breast was all bloody, and that the hot blood made all the sea red of his blood. Then the dragon flew away all on an height, and came down with such a swough, and smote the boar on the ridge, which was ten foot large from the head to the tail, and smote the boar all to powder, both flesh and bones, that it fittered all abroad on the sea. And therewith the king awoke anon and was sore abashed of this dream; and sent anon for a wise philosopher, commanding to tell him the signification of his dream. Sir, said the philosopher, the dragon that thou dreamedst of betokeneth thine own person that sailest here, and the colour of his wings be thy realms that thou hast won, and his tail which is all to-tattered signifieth the noble knights of the Round Table. And the boar that the dragon slew coming from the clouds, betokeneth some tyrant that tormenteth the people, or else thou art like to fight with some giant thyself, being horrible and abominable, whose peer ye saw never in your days; wherefore of this dreadful dream doubt thee nothing, but as a conqueror come forth thyself. Then after this soon they had sight of land, and sailed till they arrived at Barflete in Flanders, and when they were there he found many of his great lords ready as they had been commanded to await upon him.

CHAP. V.

How a man of the country told him of a marvellous giant, and how he fought and conquered him.

Then came to him an husbandman of the country, and told him how there
was in the country of Constantine, beside Brittany, a great tyrant which had slain, murdered, and devoured much people of the country, and had been sustained seven years with the children of the commons of that land, insomuch, that all the children be all slain and destroyed, and now late he hath taken the duchess of Brittany as she rode with her train, and hath led her to his lodging which is in a mountain, for to keep her to her life’s end; and many people followed her, more than five hundred, but all they might not rescue her, but they left her shrieking and crying lamentably, wherefore I suppose that he hath slain her. She was wife unto thy cousin Sir Howell, whom we call full nigh of thy blood. Now as thou art a rightful king have pity on this lady, and revenge us all as thou art a noble conqueror. Alas! said king Arthur, this is a great mischief, I had rather than the best realm that I have that I had been a furlong way tofore him, for to have rescued that lady. Now fellow, said king Arthur, canst thou bring me there as this giant haunteth? Yea, Sir, said the good man, lo yonder where as thou seest those two great fires, there thou shalt find him, and more treasure than I suppose is in all France. When the king had understood this piteous case he returned into his tent.

Then he called unto him Sir Kay and Sir Bedivere, and commanded them secretly to make ready horse and harness for himself and them twain, for after even-song he would ride on pilgrimage with them two only unto Saint Michael’s mount. And then anon he made him ready and armed him at all points, and took his horse and his shield. And so they three departed thence, and rode forth as fast as ever they might till that they came unto the foot of that mount. And there they alighted, and the king commanded them to tarry there, for he would himself go up into that mount. And so he ascended up into that hill till he came to a great fire, and there he found a careful widow wringing her hands and making great sorrow, sitting by a grave new made. And then king Arthur saluted her, and demanded of her wherefore she made such lamentation: to whom she answered, and said, Sir knight, speak soft, for ye be a devil: if he hear thee speak he will come and destroy thee; I hold thee unhappy; what dost thou here in this mountain? for if ye were such fifty as ye be, ye were not able to make resistance against this devil: here lieth a duchess dead, the which was the fairest of all the world, wife to Sir Howell, duke of Brittany; he hath murdered her. Dame, said the king, I come from the noble conqueror king Arthur, for to treat with that tyrant for his liege people. Fie upon such treaties, and the widow, he setteth not by the king, nor by no man else. But and if thou hast given him half France. Beware, approach him not too nigh, for he hath vanquished fifteen kings, and hath made him a coat full of precious stones, embroidered with their beards, which they sent him to have his love for salvation of their people at this last Christmas. And if thou wilt, speak with him at yonder great fire at supper. Well, said Arthur, I will accomplish my message for all your fearful words; and went forth by the crest of that hill, and saw where he sat at supper gnawing on a limb of a man, baking his broad limbs by the fire, and three fair damsels turning three spits, whereon were broached twelve young children late born, like young birds. When king Arthur beheld that piteous sight he had great compassion on them so that his heart bled for sorrow, and hailed him saying in this wise: He that all the world wields, give thee short life and shameful death, and the devil have thy soul! Why hast thou murdered these young innocent children, and murdered this duchess? Therefore arise and dress thee, thou glutton; for this day shalt thou die of my hand. Then the glutton anon start up and took a great club in his hand, and smote at the king that his coronal
rth. And the king hit him e carved his belly that his lown to the ground. Then drew away his club, and king in his arms that he ribs. Then the three maid downward and called to Christ comfort of Arthur. And weltered and wrung that he nile under and another time so weltering and wallowing low the hill till they came urk, and ever as they so wel smote him with his dagger, nd they came to the place two knights were and kept e. Then when they saw the the giant's arms they came him. And then the king Sir Kay to smite off the and to set it upon a trun spear and bear it to Sir I tell him that his enemy nd after let this head be arbanic that all the people behold it; and go ye two up ain and fetch me my shield, nd the club of iron. And asure take ye it, for ye shall oods out of number. So I pple and the club I desire no was the fiercest giant that rith, save one in the mount hich I overcame, but this and fiercer. Then the ed the club and the kirtle, f the treasure they took to and returned again to the anon this was known the country, wherefore the and thanked the king. And n, Give the thanks to God, goods among you. And after thur said and commanded well th that he should ordain to be built on the same worship of Saint Michael. morn the king removed at battle and came into and in a valley, and there heir tents. And the king his dinner, there came in two f whom the one was mar shal of France, and said to the king that the emperor was entered into France and had destroyed a great part, and was in Burgoyne, and had destroyed and made great slaughter of people, and burnt towns and boroughs; wherefore, if thou come not hastily, they must yield up their bodies and goods.

CHAP. VI.

How king Arthur sent Sir Gawaine and others to Lucius, and how they were assailed and escaped with worship.

Then the king did do call Sir Gawaine, Sir Bors, Sir Lionel, and Sir Bedivere, and commanded them to go straight to Sir Lucius, and say ye to him that hastily he remove out of my land. And if he will not, bid him make him ready to battle, and not distress the poor people. Then anon these noble knights dressed them to horseback. And when they came to the green wood, they saw many pavilions set in a meadow, of silk of divers colours, beside a river, and the emperor's pavilion was in the middle with an eagle displayed above. To the which tent our knights rode toward, and ordained Sir Gawaine and Sir Bors to do the message, and left in a bushment Sir Lionel and Sir Bedivere. And then Sir Gawaine and Sir Bors did their message, and commanded Lucius in Arthur's name to avoid his land, or shortly to address him to battle. To whom Lucius answered and said: Ye shall return to your lord and say ye to him, that I shall subdue him and all his lands. Then Sir Gawaine was wroth, and said, I had lever than all France fight against thee. And so had I, said Sir Bors, lever than all Britany or Burgoyne. Then a knight named Sir Gainus, high cousin to the emperor, said, Lo, how these Britons be full of pride and boast, and they brag as though they bare up all the world. Then Sir Gawaine was sore grieved with these words, and pulled out his sword and smote off his head. And therewith turned their horses and rode over waters and through woods till they came to their bushment where as
Sir Lionel and Sir Bedivere were having. The Romans followed fast after on horseback and on foot over a campaign unto a wood; then Sir Bors turned his horse and saw a knight come fast on, whom he smote through the body with a spear, that he fell dead down to the earth. Then came Caliburn, one of the strongest of Pavie, and smote down many of Arthur's knights. And when Sir Bors saw him do so much harm, he addressed toward him, and smote him through the breast, that he fell down dead to the earth. Then Sir Feldenak thought to revenge the death of Gainus upon Sir Gawaine, but Sir Gawaine was ware thereof, and smote him on the head, which stroke stinted not till it came to his breast. And then he returned and came to his fellows in the bushment. And there was a recount, for the bushment brake on the Romans, and slew and hewed down the Romans, and forced the Romans to flee and return; whom the noble knights chased unto their tents. Then the Romans gathered more people, and also footmen came on, and there was a new battle, and so much people that Sir Bors and Sir Berel were taken. But when Sir Gawaine saw that, he took with him Sir Idrus the good knight, and said he would never see king Arthur but if he rescued them, and pulled out Galatine his good sword, and followed them that led those two knights away, and he smote him that led Sir Bors, and took Sir Bors from him, and delivered him unto his fellows. And Sir Idrus in wise rescued Sir Berel. Then began the battle to be great, that our knights were in great jeopardy, wherefore Sir Gawaine sent to king Arthur for succour, and that he hie him, for I am sore wounded, and that our prisoners may pay good out of number. And the messenger came to the king, and told him his message. And anon the king did do assemble his army, but anon or he departed the prisoners were come, and Sir Gawaine and his fellows gat the field and put the Romans to flight, and after returned and came with their fellowship in such wise that no man of worship was lost of them, save that Sir Gawaine was sore hurt. Then the king did do make his wounds, and comforted him. And thus was the beginning of the first day's fighting of the Britons and Romans. And there were slain of the Romans more than ten thousand, and great joy and mirth was made that night in the host of king Arthur. And on the morrow he sent all the prisoners into Paris, under the guard of Sir Launcelot, with many knights, and of Sir Cador.

CHAP. VII.

How Lucius sent certain spies in a bushment for to have taken his knights being prisoners, and how they were letted.

Now turn we to the emperor of Rome, which espied that these prisoners should be sent to Paris, and anon he sent to lie in a bushment certain knights and princes with sixty thousand men for to rescue his knights and lords that were prisoners. And so on the morn as Sir Launcelot and Sir Cador, chieftains and governors of all them that conveyed the prisoners, as they should pass through a wood, Sir Launcelot sent certain knights to espy if any were in the woods to let them. And when the said knights came into the wood, anon they espied and saw the great embushment, and returned and told Sir Launcelot that there lay in await for them three score thousand Romans. And then Sir Launcelot with such knights as he had, and men of war to the number of ten thousand, put them in array, and met with them, and fought with them manly, and slew and cut to pieces many of the Romans, and slew many knights and admirals of the party of the Romans and Saracens: there was slain the king of Lyly and three great lords, Alakuke, Herawd, and Heringdale. But Sir Launcelot fought so nobly that no man might endure a stroke of his hand, but where he came he shewed his prowess and might, for he slew down right on every side. And the Romans and Sar-
from him as the sheep from the lion, and put them to flight. And so fought that tidings came to us, and anon he made him to the battle, and saw how they had vanquished: he embraced them knight in his arms, and said: Ye to bear all your honour and there was none of us failed of the prowess and manhood of Sir rolf more than wonder also of his cousins which did any noble feats of war. And Sir Cador told who of his knights, as Sir Berel and other Sir Sir Maurel, two good knights. His wept, and dried his kerchief, and said, Your hand destroyed you, h ye had returned again at no worship; for I call it rights to abide when they pitched. Nay, said Sir Launce the other, for once shamed be recovered.

CHAP. VIII.

Arthur told to Lucius of their dis, and also of the great battle Arthur and Lucius.

we we king Arthur and his knights which had won the field, sought their prisoners to Paris, we of a senator which escaped battle, and came to Lucius the then said to him, Sir emperor, thee to withdraw thee: what here? thou shalt win nothing arces but great strokes out of battle. For this day one of Arthur's worth in the battle and honors. Fie on thee, said Lucius, rest cowardly, for thy words more than all the loss that I say. And anon he sent forth which fight Sir Leonie, with a and bad him hie him fast tofore, and he would follow hastily after. King Arthur was warned privily, and sent his people to Sessonne, and took up the towns and castles from the Romans. Then the king commanded Sir Cador to take the rewarnd, and to take with him certain knights of the Round Table,—and Sir Launcelot, Sir Bors, Sir Kay, Sir Marrok, with Sir Marhaus, shall await on our person. Thus king Arthur distributed his host in divers parts, to the end that his enemies should not escape. When the emperor was entered into the vale of Sessonne, he might see where king Arthur was embattled and his banner displayed: and he was beset round about with his enemies, that needs he must fight or yield him, for he might not flee, but said openly unto the Romans, Sirs, I admonish you that this day ye fight and acquit you as men, and remember how Rome domineth, and is chief and head over all the earth and universal world, and suffer not these Britons this day to abide against us. And therewith he did command his trumpets blow the bloody sounds, in such wise that the ground trembled and shook. Then the battles approached, and shove and shouted on both sides, and great strokes were smitten on both sides, many men overthrown, hurt, and slain; and great valiancies, prowesses, and feats of war were that day shewed, which were over long to recount the noble feats of every man, for they should contain a whole volume. But in especial king Arthur rode in the battle, exhorting his knights to do well, and himself did as nobly with his hands as was possible a man to do; he drew out Excalibur his sword, and awaited ever where as the Romans were thickest and most grieved his people; and anon he addressed him on that part, and hewed and slew down right, and rescued his people, and he slew a great giant named Galapas, which was a man of an huge quantity and height, he shorted him and smote off both his legs by the knees, saying, Now art thou better of a size to deal with than thou were; and after smote off his head. There Sir Gawaine
fought nobly, and slew three admirals in that battle. And so did all the knights of the Round Table. Thus the battle between king Arthur and Lucius the emperor endured long. Lucius had on his side many Saracens which were slain. And thus the battle was great, and oft-sides that one party was at a vantage, and anon at a disadvantage, which endured so long till at the last king Arthur espied where Lucius the emperor fought and did wonder with his own hands. And anon he rode to him, and either smote other fiercely; and at the last Lucius smote Arthur thwart the visage, and gave him a large wound. And when king Arthur felt himself hurt anon he smote him again with Excalibur, that it cleft his head from the summit of his head, and stinted not till it came to his breast. And then the emperor fell down dead, and there ended his life. And when it was known that the emperor was slain, anon all the Romans with all their host put them to flight; and king Arthur with all his knights followed the chase, and slew down right all them that they might attain. And thus was the victory given to king Arthur, and the triumph. And there were slain on the part of Lucius more than an hundred thousand. And after, king Arthur did do ransack the dead bodies, and did do bury them that were slain of his retinue, every man according to the state and degree that he was of. And them that were hurt he let the surgeons do search their hurts and wounds, and commanded to spare no salves nor medicines till they were whole.

Then the king rode straight to the place where the emperor Lucius lay dead, and with him he found slain the Sowdan of Surrey, the king of Egypt and the king of Ethiope, which were two noble kings, with seventeen other kings of divers regions, and also sixty senators of Rome, all noble men. whom the noble king Arthur did do halm and gum with many good gums aromatic, and after did do cere them in sixty fold of cered cloth of Sendal, and laid them in chests of lead, because they not chafe nor savour; and upon a bodies their shields with their an banners were set, to the end they be known of what country the. And after, he found three senato were onlive, to whom he said, For your lives I will that ye take the bodies, and carry them with ye great Rome, and present them Potestate on my behalf, shewi my letters, and tell them that I person shall hastily be at Rome I suppose the Romans shall b how they shall demand any trime. And I command you to sa ye shall come to Rome to the Po and all the Council and Senat I send to them these dead for the tribute that they ha manded. And if they be not with these, I shall pay more coming, for other tribute owe nor none other will I pay. A thinketh this sufficeth for Brita land, and all Almaine, with Go And furthermore I charge say to them that I command upon pain of their heads never mand tribute ne tax of me ne lands.

Then with this charge and com ment the three senators afores parted with all the said dead lying, the body of Lucius in covered with the arms of the all alone, and after alway be kings in a chariot, and then the of the senators after them, and toward Rome, and shewed the tion and message to the Potest Senate, recounting the battle of France, and how the field was of much people and innumerable. Wherefore they advised them wise to move no more war that noble conqueror, Arthur his might and prowess is most doubted, seeing the noble king great multitude of knights of the Table, to whom none earthly may compare.
CHAP. IX.

After be had achieved theagainst the Romans, entered into, and so into Italy.

urn we unto king Arthur andknights, which, after the greathieved against the Romans,into Loraine, Brabant, andand thence returned into highand so over the mountainsbardly, and after into Tuscany,was a city which in no wiseheld themselves nor obey, wherewith Arthur besieged it, and layit it, and gave many assaults. And they within defendedantly. Then, on a time, the Sir Florence, a knight, andhim they lacked victual, andfrom hence great forests andwoods, wherein be many of mine with much cattle: I will thatethee ready, and go thither, and take with thee Sir Gal nephew, Sir Wisshard, Sir Cleremond, and the captain with other, and bring withthe beasts that ye there can get.

en these knights made them rode over holts and hills,forests and woods, till they to a fair meadow full of fairand grass. And there they their horses all thatinand in the springing of the next morn Sir Gawaine tookand stole away from his seek some adventures. And was ware of a man armed, his horse easily by a wood's his shield laced to his shoulder, a strong courser, without any a page bearing a mighty he knight bare in his shieldions of gold in sable caruncles of silver. When Sir Gawaineis gay knight he fewned his rode straight to him, and dehim from whence that he was. anst said he was ar, and demanded of Sir GaWhat profferest thou proud knighth boldly? Here gettest thou no prey: thou mayest prove what thou wilt, for thou shalt be my prisoner or thou depart. Then said Gawaine, Thou vauntest thee greatly, and speakest proud words; I counsel thee for all thy boast that thou make thee ready, and take thy gear to thee, tofore greater grief fall to thee.

CHAP. X.

Of a battle done by Gawaine against a Saracen, which after was yeiden and became Christian.

They took their spears, and raneach at other with all the might they had, and smote each other through their shields into their shoulders, wherefore anon they pulled out their swords, and smote great strokes, that the fire sprang out of their helms. Then Sir Gawaine was all abashed, and with Galatine, his good sword, he smote through shield and thick hauberk made of thick mails, and all to-rushed and brake the precious stones, and made him a large wound, that men might see both liver and lung. Then groaned that knight, and addressed him to Sir Gawaine, and with an awk stroke gave him a great wound, and cut a vein, which grieved Sir Ga waine sore, and he bled sore. Then the knight said to Sir Gawaine, Bind thy wound or thy bleeding change, for thou be-bleddest all thy horse and thy fair arms; for all the barbers of Britain can not stanch thy blood; for whosoever is hurt with this blade, he shall never be stanched of bleeding. Then answered Gawaine, It grieveth me but little; thy great words shall not fear me nor lessen my courage, but thou shalt suffer teen and sorrow or we depart: but tell me in haste who may stanch my bleeding? That may I do, said the knight, if I will, and so I will if thou wilt succour and aid me, that I may be christened and believe on God, and thereof I require thee of thy manhood, and it shall be great merit for thy soul. I grant, said Gawaine, so God help me, to accomplish all thy desire: but first tell me
what thou soughtest here thus alone, and of what land and liegence thou art. Sir, he said, my name is Priamus, and a great prince is my father, and he hath been rebel unto Rome, and over ridden many of their lands. My father is lineally descended of Alexander and of Hector by right line. And duke Joshua and Maccabeus were of our lineage. I am right inheritor of Alexandria and Africa, and all the out isles, yet will I believe on thy Lord that thou believest on; and for thy labour I shall give thee treasure enough. I was so elate and haughty in my heart, that I thought no man my peer, nor to me semblable. I was sent into this war with seven-score knights, and now I have encountered with thee which hast given to me of fighting my fill; wherefore sir knight I pray thee to tell me what thou art? I am no knight, said Gawaine, I have been brought up in the guardrobe with the noble king Arthur many years, for to take heed to his armour and his other array, and to point his paltocks that belong to himself. At Yule last he made me yeoman, and gave to me horse and harness and an hundred pound in money: and if fortune be my friend I doubt not but to be well advanced and holpen by my liege lord. Ah, said Priamus, if his knaves be so keen and fierce, his knights be passing good. Now, for the king's love of heaven, whether thou be a knave or a knight, tell thou me thy name. By heaven, said Sir Gawaine, now will I say thee sooth: my name is Sir Gawaine, and known I am in his court and in his chamber, and one of the knights of the Round Table: he dubbed me a duke with his own hand. Therefore grudge not if this grace is to me fortunate; it is the goodness of God that lent to me my strength. Now am I better pleased, said Priamus, than if thou hadst given me all the province, and Paris the rich. I had lever to have been torn with wild horses, than any varlet had won such praise, or any page or pricker should have had prize on me. But now, sir knight, I warn thee that hereby is a duke of Loraine with all his men, and the noblest men of Dolph lords of Lombardy, with the godly Godard, and Saracems of Spain that numbered sixty thousand men of arms; wherefore, but if we hence, it will harm us both be sore hurt, never like to. But take heed to my page that horn blow, for if he do, there be here fast by an hundred good men awaiting on my person, and take thee there shall no ransom ne silver acquit thee. Then Sir Gawaine rode over a water for him, and the knight followed him so rode forth till they came to lowswich which were in the meadow they had been all the night. Sir Wisshard was ware of Sir Gawaine and saw that he was hurt, he him sorrowfully weeping, and de fired of him who had so hurt him. Sir Gawaine told how he had fought with man, and each of them had hurt him and how he had salves to heal but I can tell you other tidings soon we shall have ado with many. Then Sir Priamus and Sir Gawaine alighted, and let their graze in the meadow, and washed them, and then the blood ran from their wounds. And Priamus from his page a phial full of waters that came out of Paradise with certain balm anointed their wounds and washed them with that water within an hour after they were whole as ever they were. And with a trumpet were they all assembled to council, and there Priamus to them what lords and knights had to rescue him, and that without they should be assailed with thousands, wherefore he counselled to withdraw them. Then Sir Gawaine said, it were great shame to the Christians to avoid without any strokes; wherefore advise to take our arms, and to be ready to meet with these Saracens and unbelieving men, and with the help of God we shall overthrow them. A
OF A BATTLE WITH THE SARACENS.

shall abide still in this field to cost as a noble knight, and we forsake yonder fellows. Now, thus cease your words, for I ye shall find in yonder woods ilious knights: they will put us to call you on: they be out, and ye are not past seven which be over few to fight any. Nevertheless, said Sir we shall once encounter them that they can do, and the best the victory.

CHAP. XI.

Saracen came out of a wood for e their beasts, and of a great

Sir Florence called to him Sir with an hundred knights, and h the herd of beasts. Then him seven hundred men of Sir Ferant of Spain on a fair springing out of the woods, to Sir Florence, and asked him ed. Then Sir Florence took , and rode against him, and in the forehead and brake bone. Then all the other ed, and thought to avenge the Sir Ferant, and smote in em, and there was great fight, y slain and laid down to ad Sir Florence with his hun sts always kept the post, and anly. Then when Priamus knight perceived the great went to Sir Gawaine and bad he should go and succour his , which were sore bested with ies. Sir, grieve you not, said ne, for their honour shall be shall not once move my horse yard but if I see more than few they be strong enough to m. And with that he saw an Sir Ethelwold and the duke men come leaping out of a h many thousands, and Pri- nights, and came straight unto e. Then Sir Gawaine com knights, and bad them not be abashed, for all shall be ours. Then they began to gallop, and met with their enemies: there were men slain and overthrown on every side. Then thrust in among them the knights of the Table Round, and smote down to the earth all them that withstood them, insomuch that they made them to recoil and flee. Truly, said Sir Gawaine, this gladdeth my heart, for now be they less in number by twenty thousand. Then entered into the battle Jubance a giant, and fought and slew downright, and distressed many of our knights, among whom was slain Sir Gherard, a knight of Wales. Then our knights took heart to them, and slew many Saracens. And then came in Sir Priamus with his pennon, and rode with the knights of the Round Table, and fought so manfully that many of their enemies lost their lives. And there Sir Priamus slew the Marquis of Moises land. And Sir Gawaine with his fellows so quit them that they had the field, but in that fight was Sir Chestelaine, a child and ward of Sir Gawaine, slain, wherefore was much sorrow made, and his death was soon avenged. Thus was the battle ended, and many lords of Lombardy and Saracens left dead in the field.

Then Sir Florence and Sir Gawaine harboured surely their people, and took great plenty of cattle, of gold and silver and great treasure and riches, and returned unto king Arthur, which lay still at the siege. And when they came to the king they presented their prisoners, and recounted their adventures, and how they had vanquished their enemies.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Gawaine returned to king Arthur with his prisoners, and how the king won a city, and bow he was crowned emperor.

Now thanked be God, said the noble king Arthur. But what manner man is he that standeth by himself? he seemeth no prisoner. Sir, said Gawaine, this is a good man of arms; he hath matched me, but he is yielden unto God and to me for to become Christian: had not
he been we should never have returned, wherefore I pray you that he may be baptized, for their liveth not a nobler man nor better knight of his hands. Then the king let him anon be christened, and did do call him his first name Priamus, and made him a duke and knight of the Table Round. And then anon the king let do cry assault to the city, and there was rearing of ladders, breaking of walls, and the ditch filled, that men with little pain might enter into the city. Then came out a duchess, and Claris the countess, with many ladies and damsels, and kneeling before king Arthur required him for the love of God to receive the city and not to take it by assault, for then should many guiltless be slain. Then the king availed his visor with a meek and noble countenance, and said, Madam, there shall none of my subjects misdoo you nor your maidens, nor to none that to you belong, but the duke shall abide my judgment. Then anon the king commanded to leave the assault; and anon the duke’s eldest son brought out the keys, and kneeling, delivered them to the king, and besought him of grace: and the king seized the town by assent of his lords, and took the duke and sent him to Dover, there for to abide prisoner the term of his life, and assigned certain rents for the dower of the duchess and for her children. Then he made lords to rule those lands, and laws, as a lord ought to do in his own country. And after he took his journey toward Rome, and sent Sir Floris and Sir Floridas tofore with five hundred men of arms, and they came to the city of Urbine, and laid there a bushment as them seemed most best for them, and rode tofore the town, where anon issued out much people and skirmished with the fore riders. Then brake out the bushment, and won the bridge, and after the town, and set upon the walls the king’s banner. Then came the king upon a hill, and saw the city and his banner on the walls, by the which he knew that the city was won. And anon he sent and commanded that none of his liege men should misuse no lady, nor maid: and when he came into the castle, and came to Sir Priamus, the duchy of London, and there a captain, a knight of his country. And when they of Milan saw that the city was won, they sent to king Arthur great sums of gold, and besought him as their lord, in pity on them, promising to be subjects for ever, and yield to him and fealty for the lands of Pavia, Petersaint, and the towns and castles, and wasted his way that to him will not, and so to Spoleto and Viterbo, and from thence he rode into the vice-county among the vises. And thence he sent to the senators whether they would know him as lord. But soon after on a Sunday came unto king Arthur all the cardinals that were left on live, and the cardinals that then dwelled in Rome, and prayed him of peace, and prayed him full large, and besought him to give licence for six days to assemble together all the senators and then to crown him emperor, as it belongeth to so high a prince. I assent, said the king, like as it was devised, and at Christmas then was crowned, and to hold my Round Table with my knights as me liketh, and then the senators made things to his enthronization. And at that appointed, as the romance telling how he came into Rome, and was crowned emperor by the Pope’s hand with royalty that could be made, he journeied there a time, and establied all his lands from Rome unto London, and gave lands and realms unto my servants and knights, to every earl and to every knight, his desert, in such wise that none might complain, rich nor poor. And he made to Sir Priamus the duchy of London, and he thanked him, and said that he would serve him the days of his life, and after made dukes and earls
endeth the fiftthe booke of the conqueste that kyng Arthur de ageynst Lucius the Emperoure of Rome, and here foloweth syxth booke, which is of syr Launcelot du lake.

The Sixth Book.

CHAP. I.

And Launcelot and Sir Lionel deser't from the court for to seek adven-tures, and bow Sir Lionel left him tog, and was taken.

And after that king Arthur was from Rome into England, then all knights of the Table Round resorted to king, and made many justs and amours; and some there were that knights which increased so in worship that they passed all bows in prowess and noble deeds, and was well proved on many. But at it was proved on Sir Launcelot; for in all tournaments and deeds of arms, both for life and death, he passed all other knights, so time he was never overcome. So Sir Launcelot increased so greatly in worship and honour; for he is the first knight that the book maketh mention of after king Arthur came from Rome. Wherefore queen Guenever had him in great favour above all other knights, and in certain he loved the queen again above all other ladies and damsels all his life, and for her he did many deeds of arms, and saved her from the fire through his noble chivalry. Thus Sir Launcelot rested him long with play and game. And then he thought himself to prove himself in strange adventures: then he bad his nephew Sir Lionel for to make him ready, for we two will seek adventures. So they mounted on their horses, armed at all rights, and rode into a deep forest, and so into a deep plain. And then the weather was hot about noon, and Sir Launcelot had great lust to sleep. Then Sir Lionel espied a great apple tree that stood by an hedge, and said, Brother, yonder is a fair shadow, there may we rest us and our horses. It is well said, fair brother, said Sir Launcelot, for this seven year I was not so sleepy as I am now. And so they there alighted, and tied their
horses unto sundry trees, and so Sir Launcelot laid him down under an apple tree, and his helm he laid under his head. And Sir Lionel waked while he slept. So Sir Launcelot was asleep passing fast. And in the meanwhile there came three knights riding, as fast fleeing as ever they might ride. And there followed them three but one knight. And when Sir Lionel saw him, him thought he saw never so great a knight nor so well faring a man, neither so well appareled unto all rights. So within a while this strong knight had overtaken one of these knights, and there he smote him to the cold earth that he lay still. And then he rode unto the second knight, and smote him so that man and horse fell down. And then straight to the third knight he rode, and he smote him behind his horse tail a spear's length. And then he alight down, and reined his horse on the bridle, and bound all the three knights fast with the reins of their own bridles. When Sir Lionel saw him do thus, he thought to assay him, and made him ready, and stilly and privily he took his horse, and thought not for to awake Sir Launcelot. And when he was mounted upon his horse he overtook this strong knight and bad him turn: and the other smote Sir Lionel so hard that horse and man he bare to the earth, and so he alight down and bound him fast, and threw him overthwart his own horse, and so he served them all four, and rode with them away to his own castle. And when he came there, he made unarm them, and beat them with thorns all naked, and after put them in a deep prison where there were many more knights that made great dolour.

CHAP. II.

*How Sir Ector followed for to seek Sir Launcelot, and how he was taken by Sir Turquine.*

When Sir Ector de Maris wist that Sir Launcelot was past out of the court to seek adventures he was wroth with himself, and made him ready to Sir Launcelot, and as he had long in a great forest, he met man that was like a forester. fellow, said Sir Ector, knowest t this country any adventures that I nigh hand? Sir, said the forest country know I well, and hereby this mile is a strong manor, an dyked, and by that manor, on t hand, there is a fair ford for to drink of, and over that ford growth a fair tree, and thereon h many fair shields that wielded sor good knights: and at the hole tree hangeth a bason of copp laton, and strike upon that bason the butt of thy spear thrice, and after thou shalt hear new tiding else hast thou the fairest grace many a year had ever knight that through this forest. Gramercy, s Ector, and departed and came tree, and saw many fair shield among them he saw his brother's Sir Lionel, and many more that that were his fellows of the Round the which grieved his heart, and he mised to revenge his brother. anon Sir Ector beat on the bason were wood, and then he gave his drink at the ford: and there c knight behind him and bad him out of the water and make him: and Sir Ector anon turned him sl and in fewer cast his spear, and the other knight a great buffet til horse turned twice about. Then well done, said the strong knight knighth thou hast stricken me therewith he rushed his horse Ector and caught him under his arm, and bare him clean out his saddle, and rode with him awa his own hall, and throw him do the midst of the floor. The na this knight was Sir Turquine. T said unto Sir Ector, For thou has this day more unto me than any did these twelve years, now will I thee thy life, so thou wilt be sw my prisoner all thy life days. said Sir Ector, that will I never p
HOW FOUR QUEENS FOUND SIR LAUNCIELOT.

that I will do mine advantage. 
repenteth, said Sir Turquine. 
he made to unarm him, and 
with thorns all naked, and after 
owa in a deep dungeon, where 
many of his fellows. But when 
saw Sir Lionel, then made he 
row. Alas, brother, said Sir 
here is my brother Sir Lauce-
air brother, I left him on sleep 
t I from him went, under an 
and what is become of him I 
you. Alas, said the knights, 
uncelot help us we may never 
ed, for we know now no knight 
able to match our master Tur-

CHAP. III.

queens found Sir Launcelot, 
and how by enchantment be 
and led into a castle.

ave we these knights prisoners, 
we of Sir Launcelot du Lake 
under the apple tree sleeping. 
at the noon there came by him 
s of great estate; and, for the 
se sun should not annoy them, 
four knights about them and 
th of green silk on four spears, 
em and the sun, and the queens 
our white mules.

they rode they heard by them 
se grimly neigh, and then were 
of a sleeping knight that lay 
under an apple tree; anon as 
ens looked on his face they 
t it was Sir Launcelot. Then 
for to strive for that knight; 
said she would have him to 

We shall not strive, said 
Fay, that was king Arthur's 
hall put an enchantment upon 
be shall not awake in six hours, 
I will lead him away unto my 
d when he is surely within 
I shall take the enchantment 
and then let him choose 
us he will have for his love. 
chantment was cast upon Sir 
and then they laid him upon 
and bare him so on horse-
xxt two knights, and brought 
him unto the castle Chariot, and there 
they laid him in a chamber cold, and at 
night they sent unto him a fair damsel 
with his supper ready dight. By that 
the enchantment was past, and when 
she came she saluted him, and asked 
him what cheer? I cannot say, fair 
damsel, said Sir Launcelot, for I wot 
not how I came into this castle but it 
be by an enchantment. Sir, said she, 
ye must make good cheer, and if ye be 
such a knight as is said ye be, I shall 
tell you more tomorn by prime of 
the day. Gramercy, fair damsel, said 
Sir Launcelot, of your good will I re- 
quire you. And so she departed. And 
there he lay all that night without com-
fort of any body.

And on the morn early came these 
four queens, passingly well beseen, all 
they bidding him good morn, and he 
them again. Sir knight, the four queens 
said, thou must understand thou art our 
prisoner, and we here know thee well, 
that thou art Sir Launcelot du Lake, 
king Ban's son. And truly we un-
derstand your worthiness that thou art the 
noblest knight living; and, as we know 
well, there can no lady have thy love 
but one, and that is queen Guenever, 
and now thou shalt lose her for ever, 
and she thee, and therefore thee beh-
hoveth now to choose one of us four. 
I am the queen Morgan le Fay, queen 
of the land of Gore, and here is the 
queen of Northgalis, and the queen of 
Eastland, and the queen of the OutIsles; 
now choose ye one of us which thou 
will have to thy love, for thou mayst 
not choose or else in this prison to die. 
This is an hard case, said Sir Launcelot, 
that either I must die or else choose one 
of you, yet had I lever to die in this 
prison with worship, than to have one 
of you to my love maugre my head. 
And therefore ye be answered, for I 
will have none of you, for ye be false 
enchantresses. And as for my lady 
dame Guenever, were I at my liberty 
as I was, I would prove it on you or 
upon yours, that she is the truest lady 
unto her lord living. Well, said the 
queens, is this your answer, that you
fought nobly, and slew three admirals in that battle. And so did all the knights of the Round Table. Thus the battle between king Arthur and Lucius the emperor endured long. Lucius had on his side many Saracens which were slain. And thus the battle was great, and of sides that one party was at a vantage, and anon at a disadvantage, which endured so long till at the last king Arthur espied where Lucius the emperor fought and did wonder with his own hands. And anon he rode to him, and either smote other fiercely: and at the last Lucius smote Arthur thwart the visage, and gave him a large wound. And when king Arthur felt himself hurt anon he smote him again with Excalibur, that it cleft his head from the summit of his head, and stinted not till it came to his breast. And then the emperor fell down dead, and there ended his life. And when it was known that the emperor was slain, anon all the Romans with all their host put them to flight; and king Arthur with all his knights followed the chase, and slew down right all them that they might attain. And thus was the victory given to king Arthur, and the triumph. And there were slain on the part of Lucius more than an hundred thousand. And after, king Arthur did do ransack the dead bodies, and did do bury them that were slain of his retinue, every man according to the state and degree that he was of. And them that were hurt he let the surgeons do search their hurts and wounds, and commanded to spare no salves nor medicines till they were whole.

Then the king rode straight to the place where the emperor Lucius lay dead, and with him he found slain the Sowdan of Surrey, the king of Egypt and the king of Ethiope, which were two noble kings, with seventeen other kings of divers regions, and also sixty senators of Rome, all noble men, whom the noble king Arthur did do balm and gum with many good gums aromatic, and after did do cery them in sixty fold of cered cloth of Sendal, and laid them in chests of lead, because they not chafe nor savour; and upon a bodies their shields with their art banners were set, to the end they be known of what country they. And after, he found three senator were onlive, to whom he said, For your lives I will that ye take the bodies, and carry them with you to great Rome, and present them Potestate on my behalf, shew in my letters, and tell them that I person shall hastily be at Rome. I suppose the Romans shall be how they shall demand any trile me. And I command you to say ye shall come to Rome to the Potestate and all the Council and Senate I send to them these dead for the tribute that they have demanded. And if they be not come with these, I shall pay more coming, for other tribute owe I nor none other will I pay. A thinketh this sufficeth for Britaine, and all Almaine, with Germany. And furthermore I charge you say to them that I command upon pain of their heads never command tribute ne tax of me ne lands.

Then with this charge and lament the three senators aforesaid parted with all the said dead lying, the body of Lucius in covered with the arms of the all alone, and after alway two bo kings in a chariot, and then the of the senators after them, and sale toward Rome, and shewed their intention and message to the Potestate Senate, recounting the battle of France, and how the field was lost much people and innumerable. Wherefore they advised them wise to move no more war as that noble conqueror, Arthur his might and prowess is most doubted, seeing the noble king great multitude of knights of the Table, to whom none earthly may compare.
CHAP. IX.

Whenafter he had achieved the

CHAP. X.

Here gettest thou no prey: thou mayest prove what thou wilt, for thou shalt be my prisoner or thou depart. Then said Gawaine, Thou vauntest thee greatly, and speakest proud words; I counsel thee for all thy boast that thou make thee ready, and take thy gear to thee, tofore greater grief fall to thee.

Of a battle done by Gawaine against a Saracen, which after was yielded and became Christian.

Then they took their spears, and ran each at other with all the might they had, and smote each other through their shields into their shoulders, wherefore anon they pulled out their swords, and smote great strokes, that the fire sprang out of their helms. Then Sir Gawaine was all abashed, and with Galatine, his good sword, he smote through shield and thick hauberk made of thick mails, and all to-rushed and brake the precious stones, and made him a large wound, that men might see both liver and lung. Then groaned that knight, and addressed him to Sir Gawaine, and with an awk stroke gave him a great wound, and cut a vein, which grieved Sir Gawaine sore, and he bled sore. Then the knight said to Sir Gawaine, Bind thy wound or thy bleeding change, for thou be-bleedest all thy horse and thy fair arms; for all the barbers of Britain can not stanch thy blood; for whosoever is hurt with this blade, he shall never be stanched of bleeding. Then answered Gawaine, It grieveth me but little; thy great words shall not fear me nor lessen my courage, but thou shalt suffer teen and sorrow or we depart: but tell me in haste who may stanch my bleeding? That may I do, said the knight, if I will, and so I will if thou wilt succour and aid me, that I may be christened and believe in God, and thereof I require thee of thy manhood, and it shall be great merit for thy soul. I grant, said Gawaine, so God help me, to accomplish all thy desire: but first tell me
sent unto Sir Launcelot three knights, with the four white shields.
And on the Tuesday they lodged them in a little leaved wood beside there the tournament should be. And there were scaffolds and holes that lords and ladies might behold and to give the prize. Then came into the field the king of Northgalis with eightscore helms. And then the three knights of Arthur stood by themselves. Then came into the field king Bagdemagus with fourscore of helms. And then they feated their spears, and came together with a great dash, and there were slain of knights, at the first recount, twelve of king Bagdemagus's party, and six of the king of Northgalis' party, and king Bagdemagus's party was far set aback.

CHAP. VII.

How Sir Launcelot behoved him in a tournament, and how he met with Sir Turquine leading away Sir Gabertis.

Wth that came Sir Launcelot du Lake, and he thrust in with his spear in the thickest of the press, and there he smote down with one spear five knights, and of four of them he brake their backs. And in that throng he smote down the king of Northgalis, and brake his thigh in that fall. All this doing of Sir Launcelot saw the three knights of Arthur. Yonder is a shrewd guest, said Sir Mador de la Porte, therefore have here once at him. So they encountered, and Sir Launcelot bare him down horse and man, so that his shoulder went out of joint. Now bealleth it to me to just, said Mordred, for Sir Mador hath a sore fall. Sir Launcelot was ware of him, and got a great spear in his hand, and met him, and Sir Mordred brake a spear upon him, and Sir Launcelot gave him such a buffet that the bow of his saddle brake, and so he flew over his horse tail, that his helm went into the earth a foot and more, that nigh his neck was broken, and there he lay long in a swoon. Then came in Sir Galateine with a spear, and Launcelot against him, with all their strength that they might drive, that both their to-brast even to their hands, and they flung out with their sword gave many a grim stroke. The Sir Launcelot wroth out of men, and then he smote Sir Gabertis the helm, that his nose burst of blood, and ears and mouth both therewith his head hung low. And his horse ran away with and he fell down to the earth.

Anon therewithal Sir Launcelot a great spear in his hand, and, seeing that great spear brake, he bare down the earth sixteen knights, some man, and some the man was the horse, and there was none but he hit surely he bare none arm day. And then he got another spear, and smote down twelve and the most part of them never after. And then the knights of the of Northgalis would just no more there the prize was given unto Bagdemagus. So either party down unto his own place, and Sir I lot rode forth with king Bagde unto his castle, and there he hating good cheer both with the and with his daughter, and then offered him great gifts. And morrow he took his leave, and told Bagdemagus that he would go and his brother Sir Lionel, that were with him when that he slept. So he his horse, and bethought them God. And there he said unto king's daughter, If ye have need of my service, I pray you have knowledge, and I shall see you, as I am true knight.

And so Sir Launcelot depart by adventure he came into the forest where he was taken sloth. And in the midst of an highway a damsel riding on a white palfrey there either saluted other. Fair said Sir Launcelot, know ye country any adventures? Sir said that damsel, here are adventure near hand, and thou durst prove Why should I not prove adventure said Sir Launcelot; for that case
ell, said she, thou seest good knight, and if thou with a good knight, I shall there is the best knight and that ever thou found, so me what is thy name, and thou art. Damel, as for my name, I take no great my name is Sir Launcelot sir, thou beseekest well, suiteth by that fall for thee, welleth a knight that will watcheth for no man that I ye overmatch him, and Sir Turquine. And, as I he hath in his prison of rt good knights threescore he hath won with his own when ye have done that e shall promise me as ye night for to go with me, ne and other damels that l daily with a false knight nt, damel, and desire I will will bring me unto this w, fair knight, come on And so she brought him l, and unto the tree where sin. So Sir Launcelot let sk, and then he beat on the e butt of his spear so hard might till the bottom fell ug he did so, but he saw ten he rode endlong the manor nigh half an hour. s he ware of a great knight an horse afore him, and he horse there lay an armed l. And ever as they came r, Sir Launcelot thought he him; then Sir Launcelot at it was Sir Gaeris, Gaer, a knight of the Table damel, said Sir Laun- monder cometh a knight at is a fellow of mine, and unto Sir Gawaine. And at naning I promise you, by the , to rescue that knight; and master sit better in the sad deliver all the prisoners that of danger, for I am sure that brethren of mine prisoners with him. By that time that either had seen other they gripped their spears unto them. Now fair knight, said Sir Launcelot, put that wounded knight off the horse, and let him rest awhile, and let us two prove our strengths. For as it is informed me, thou doest and hast done great despite and shame unto knights of the Round Table, and therefore now defend thee. And thou be of the Table Round, said Turquine, I defy thee and all thy fellowship. That is over much said, said Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. VIII.

How Sir Launcelot and Sir Turquine fought together.

And then they put their spears in the rests, and came together with their horses as fast as they might run, and either smote other in the midst of their shields, that both their horses’ backs brast under them, and the knights were both astonied, and as soon as they might avoid their horses they took their shields afore them, and drew out their swords, and came together eagerly, and either gave other many strong strokes, for there might neither shields nor harness hold their strokes. And so within awhile they had both grimly wounds, and bled passing grievously. Thus they fared two hours or more, trasying and rasing either other where they might hit any bare place. Then at the last they were breathless both, and stood leaning on their swords. Now fellow, said Sir Turquine, hold thy hand awhile, and tell me what I shall ask thee. Say on. Then Turquine said, Thou art the biggest man that ever I met withal, and the best breathed, and like one knight that I hate above all other knights; so be it that thou be not he I will lightly accord with thee, and for thy love I will deliver all the prisoners that I have, that is threescore and four, so thou wilt tell me thy name. And thou and I we will be fellows together, and never to fail the while that I live. It is well said, said Sir Launcelot, but sithen it is so
that I may have thy friendship, what knight is he that thou so hastest above all other? Faithfully, said Sir Turquine, his name is Sir Launcelot du Lake, for he slew my brother Sir Carados at the dolorous tower, that was one of the best knights on live; and therefore him I except of knights, for may I once meet with him the one of us shall make an end of other, I make mine avow. And for Sir Launcelot's sake I have slain an hundred good knights, and as many I have maimed all utterly that they might never after help themselves, and many have died in prison, and yet I have three score and four, and all shall be delivered, so thou wilt tell me thy name, so it be that thou be not Sir Launcelot.

Now see I well, said Sir Launcelot, that such a man I might be that I might have peace; and such a man I might be that there should be war mortal betwixt us: and now sir knight, at thy request I will that thou wit and know that I am Launcelot du Lake, king Ban's son of Benwick, and very knight of the Table Round. And now I defy thee, do thy best. Ah, said Turquine, Launcelot, thou art unto me most welcome that ever was knight, for we shall never part till the one of us be dead. Then they hurtled together as two wild bulls, rashing and lashing with their shields and swords that sometimes they fell both over their noses. Thus they fought still two hours and more, and never would have rest, and Sir Turquine gave Sir Launcelot many wounds that all the ground there as they fought was all bespeckled with blood.

CHAP. IX.

How Sir Turquine was slain, and bow Sir Launcelot bade Sir Gaberis deliver all the prisoners.

Then at the last Sir Turquine waxed faint, and gave somewhat aback, and bare his shield low for weariness. That espied Sir Launcelot and lep upon him fiercely and got him by the beaver of his helmet, him down on his knees, rasped off his helm, and neck in sunder. And while celot had done this he was damsel and said, Damsel, to go with you where ye me, but I have no horse said she, take this with horse, and send him into and command him to del prisoners. So Sir Lau unto Gaberis, and prye to be aggrieved for to his horse. Nay, fair lord, heris, I will that ye take your own commandment, both saved me and my hole day I say ye are the best in the world, for ye have slain the sight the mightiest man a knight, except you, that is and sir, said Sir Gaberis, tell me your name? Sir, Sir Launcelot du Lake, th help you of right for ki sake, and in especial for Gawaine's sake, your own d and when that ye come wi manor I am sure ye shall many knights of the Round I have seen many of their s know on yonder tree. Th shield, and Sir Brandel's shield, and Sir Gal and Sir Brian Listonise's shield, with many am not now advised of, as two brethren's shields, Sir Maris and Sir Lionel, pray you greet them all at say that I bid them take stuff as they find, and that my brethren go unto the abide me there till that I by the feast of Pentecost I be there, for at this time with this damsel for to sake. And so he departed theris, and Sir Gaberis we manor, and there he found porter keeping there many I withal Sir Gaberis threw
HOW LAUNCELOT SLEW A FALSE KNIGHT.

nd, and took the keys hastily he opened the room where the keys lay in a box, and there he let out all the men who were loose there. And when they saw him, they thanked him, for he was wounded. Then they asked him if he was well, and he said yes, and they hasted him to the court, and Sir Lionel and Ector de Maris went to him to see if he was wound.

That shall we not do, said Sir Kay, and I shall come to him. Then all those knights that they knew there, as the armour that they armed them, and who his own horse, and hasted unto him. And when they came, there came a forester, and his own horse, and all laden with fat venison. And he said, Here is good meat and drink, for we have not had good repast. And so they were roasted, baked, and boiled, and after supper some abode in the knight, but Sir Lionel and Sir Kay rode after him to find him if they might.

CHAP. X.

d hot rode with the damsel, and knight that distressed all the men and a villain that kept a

unto Sir Launcelot that was damsel in a fair high place, the damsel, here by this knight that distresseth gentlewomen, and at the time of them or ill-use them.

Launcelot, is he a thief and a raver of women? And likewise the order of his oath, and he liveth. But fair sir, I shall ride on afore yourself, and myself in covert, and if that he trouble you or distress you, I shall be your rescue, and learn him to be ruled as a knight. So the maid rode on by the way a soft ambling pace. And within a while came out that knight on horseback out of the wood, and his page with him, and there he put the damsel from her horse, and then she cried. With that came Launcelot as fast as he might, till he came to that knight, saying, Oh thou false knight and traitor unto knighthood, who did learn thee to distress ladies and gentlewomen? When the knight saw Sir Launcelot thus rebuking him, he answered not, but drew his sword and rode unto Sir Launcelot. And Sir Launcelot threw his spear from him, and drew out his sword, and strake him such a buffet on the helmet that he clave his head and neck unto the throat. Now hast thou thy payment that long thou hast desired. That is truth, said the damsel, for like as Turquine watched to destroy knights, so did this knight attend to destroy and distress ladies, damsels, and gentlewomen, and his name was Sir Peris de Forest Savage. Now damsel, said Sir Launcelot, will ye any more service of me? Nay sir, she said, at this time; but Almighty Jesu preserve you wheresoever ye ride or go, for the courtiest knight thou art and meekest unto all ladies and gentlewomen that now liveth. But one thing, sir knight, me thinketh ye lack, that are a knight wiseless, that ye will not love some maiden or gentlewoman, for I could never hear say that ever ye loved any of no manner degree, and that is great pity; but it is noised that ye love queen Guenever, and that she hath ordained by enchantment that ye shall never love none other but her, nor none other damsel nor lady shall rejoice you; wherefore many in this land, of high estate and low, make great sorrow. Fair damsel, said Sir Launcelot, I may not warn people to speak of me what it pleaseth them: but for to be a wedded man I think it not, for then I must couch with her, and leave arms and tournaments, battles
and adventures. And as for to say for to take my pleasure with paramours, that will I refuse in principal for dread of God. For knights that be adulterous, or wanton, shall not be happy nor fortunate unto the wars, for either they shall be overcome with a simpler knight than they be themselves, or else they shall by mishap and their cursedness slay better men than they be themselves; and who that so useth shall be unhappy, and all thing is unhappy that is about them. And so Sir Launcelot and she departed.

And then he rode in a deep forest two days and more, and had strait lodging. So on the third day he rode over a long bridge, and there start upon him suddenly a passing foul churl, and he smote his horse on the nose that he turned about, and asked him why he rode over that bridge without his licence. Why should I not ride this way? said Sir Launcelot, I may not ride beside. Thou shalt not choose, said the churl, and lashed at him with a great club shod with iron. Then Sir Launcelot drew his sword, and put the stroke aback, and clave his head unto the breast. At the end of the bridge was a fair village, and all the people men and women cried on Sir Launcelot, and said, A worse deed diddest thou never for thyself, for thou hast slain the chief porter of our castle. Sir Launcelot let them say what they would, and straight he went into the castle; and when he came into the castle he alight, and tied his horse to a ring on the wall; and there he saw a fair green court, and thither he dressed himself, for there him thought was a fair place to fight in. So he looked about, and saw much people in doors and windows, that said, Fair knight thou art unhappy.

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Launcelot slew two giants, and made a castle free.

Anon withal came there upon him two great giants, well armed all save the heads, with two horrible clubs in hands. Sir Launcelot put his afore him, and put the stroke on the one giant, and with his sword clave his head asunder. When he saw that, he ran away as he could, for fear of the horrible sight. And Sir Launcelot after him with might, and smote him on theshield and clave him to the middle. Then Launcelot went into the hall, and came afore him three score ladies, damsels, and all kneeled unto him, thanked God and him of their salutation. For, sir, said they, the men of us have been here seven years our prisoners, and we have worn manner of silk works for our meat, for we are all gentlewomen born. Blessed be the time, knight, that thou wert born; for thou hast done most worship that ever did know the world, that will we bear record we all pray you to tell us your name that we may tell our friends we delivered us out of prison. Fair dearest knight, he said, my name is Sir Launcelot. Ah, sir, said they all, we rest thou be he, for else save you we deemed, there might never have the better of these two giants many fair knights have essayed here have ended, and many times we wished after you, and the giants dread never knight but Now may ye say, said Sir Launcelot unto your friends, how and when delivered you, and greet them all me, and if that I come in any of my marches, shew me such cheer as you cause; and what treasure that the in this castle I give it you for a gift for your grievance: and the lord the owner of this castle I would receive it as is right. Fair sir, they, the name of this castle is Tremaine, and a duke owned it some time that wedded fair Igraine, and after her Uther Pendragon and great Arthur. Well, said Sir Launcelot, understand to whom this castle belongeth. And so he departed from and botaught them unto God. And
ed upon his horse, and rode strange and wild countries through many waters and valleys, was he lodged. And at the tune him happened against a home to a fair courtelage, and found an old gentlewoman him with a good will, and had good cheer for him and.

And when time was, his sight him into a fair garret over his bed. There Sir Launcelot, and set his harness by went to bed, and anon he fell

So soon after there came one sick, and knocked at the gate aste. And when Sir Launceloth this he arose up, and looked the window, and saw by the that three knights came riding one man, and all three lashed once with swords, and that turned on them knightly defended him. Truly, said Sir Launcelot, yonder one knight shall it were shame for me to seeghts on one, and if he be slain of his death. And thereook his harness and went out now by a sheet down to the, and then Sir Launcelotigh. Turn you knights unto leave your fighting with that and then they all three left turned unto Sir Launcelot, began great battle, for they three, and strake many great

Sir Launcelot, and assaulted very side. Then Sir Kay im for to have holpen Sir. Nay, sir, said he, I will your help, therefore as ye my help let me alone with. Kay for the pleasure of the fered him for to do his will, good aside. And then anon strokes Sir Launcelot had em to the earth.

they all three cried, Sir yield us unto you as man of ychless. As to that, said Sir I will not take your yielding at so that ye yield you unto Sir Kay the seneschal, on that covenant I will save your lives and else not. Fair knight, said they, that were we loth to do; for as for Sir Kay we chased him hither, and had overcome him had not ye been; therefore to yield us unto him it were no reason. Well, as to that, said Sir Launcelot, advise you well, for ye may choose whether ye will die or live, for and ye be yeilden it shall be unto Sir Kay. Fair knight, then they said, in saving our lives we will do as thou commandest us. Then shall ye, said Sir Launcelot, on Whitsunday next coming go unto the court of king Arthur, and there shall ye yield you unto queen Guenever, and put you all three in her grace and mercy, and say that Sir Kay sent you thither to be her prisoners. Sir, they said, it shall done by the faith of our bodies, and we be living. And there they swore, every knight upon his sword. And so Sir Launcelot suffered them so to depart. And then Sir Launcelot knocked at the gate with the pommel of his sword, and with that came his host, and in they entered, Sir Kay and he. Sir, said his host, I wend ye had been in your bed. So I was, said Sir Launcelot, but I arose and left out at my window for to help an old fellow of mine. And so when they came nigh the light Sir Kay knew well that it was Sir Launcelot, and therewith he kneeldown and thanked him of all his kindness that he hath holpen him twice from the death. Sir, he said, I have done nothing but that I ought to do, and ye are welcome, and here shall ye repose you and take your rest. So when Sir Kay was unarmd he asked after meat, so there was meat fetched him, and he ate strongly. And when he had supped they went to their beds, and were lodged together in one bed. On the morn Sir Launcelot arose early, and left Sir Kay sleeping: and Sir Launcelot took Sir Kay's armour and his shield and armed him: and so he went to the stable and took his horse, and took his leave of his host, and so he departed. Then soon after arose Sir Kay and missed Sir Launcelot: and then he espied that he had
his armour and his horse. Now by my faith I know well that he will grieve some of the court of king Arthur: for on him knights will be bold, and deem that it is I, and that will beguile them: and because of his armour and shield I am sure I shall ride in peace. And then soon after departed Sir Kay, and thanked his host.

CHAP. XII.
How Sir Launcelot rode disguised in Sir Kay’s harness, and bow be smote down a knight.

Now turn we unto Sir Launcelot that had ridden long in a great forest, and at the last he came into a low country full of fair rivers and meadows. And afore him he saw a long bridge, and three pavilions stood thereon of silk and sandal of divers hue. And without the pavilions hung three white shields on truncheons of spears, and great long spears stood upright by the pavilions, and at every pavilion’s door stood three fresh squires, and so Sir Launcelot passed by them, and spake no word. When he was past the three knights said that it was the proud Kay, he weeneth no knight so good as he, and the contrary is offtime proved. By my faith, said one of the knights, his name was Sir Gaunter, I will ride after him and assay him for all his pride, and ye may behold how that I speed. So this knight, Sir Gaunter, armed him, and hung his shield upon his shoulder and mounted upon a great horse, and gat his spear in his hand, and galloped after Sir Launcelot. And when he came nigh him, he cried, Abide thou proud knight Sir Kay, for thou shalt not pass quit. So Sir Launcelot turned him, and either fewrtred their spears, and came together with all their mights, and Sir Gaunter’s spear brake, but Sir Launcelot smote him down, horse and man. And when Sir Gaunter was at the earth his brethren said each one to other, Yonder knight is not Sir Kay, for he is bigger than he. I dare lay my head, said Sir Gilmere, yonder knight hath slain Sir Kay and hath taken his horse and harness. Whether it be so said Sir Raynold the third brother now go mount upon our horse rescue our brother Sir Gaunter pain of death. We all shall have enough to match that knight, for me seemeth by his person it Launcelot, or Sir Tristam, or Seales the good knight. Then and took their horses and overlaid Launcelot, and Sir Gilmere put his spear and ran to Sir Launcelot. Sir Launcelot smote him down, lay in a swoon. Sir knight, said Raynold, thou art a strong man; I suppose, thou hast slain my brother, for the which riseth my sore against thee; and if I might my worship I would not have adored thee, but needs I must take part and do; and therefore knight, he said, let him be aiding. And so they hurtled with all their mights, and all to-side both their spears. And then they their swords and lashed together. Anon therewith arose Sir Gaunter came unto his brother Sir Gilmere and bad him arise and help we our lord Sir Raynold, that yonder marvel matcheth yonder good knight. Withal they left on their horses and hurtled unto Sir Launcelot. And then he saw them come, he smote stroke unto Sir Raynold, that off his horse to the ground, and struck to the other two brethren, two strokes he strake them down earth. With that Sir Raynold be start up with his head all blood came straight unto Sir Launcelot. Let be, said Sir Launcelot, I was from thee when thou wert made. Sir Raynold, and also I know that a good knight, and loth I were thee. Gramercy, said Sir Raynold for your goodness; and I dare say me and my brethren, we will not loth to yield us unto you, with that knew thy name; for well we know are not Sir Kay. As for that be may, for ye shall yield you unto Guenever, and look that ye be with Whitsunday, and yield you ur
ers, and say that Sir Kay sent her. Then they swore it done. And so passed forth Lancelot, and each one of the helped each other as well as light.

CHAP. XIII.

Lancelot justed against four of the Round Table, and overthrew them. 

Lancelot rode into a deep wood there by in a slade he saw sights hoving under an oak, and to the east of Arthur's court; one was Sir le Desirous, and Sir Ector de Excal, Sir Gawaine, and Sir Uwaine. These four knights had espied Lancelot they wend by his arms it was Sir Kay. Now by my faith, Sagamour, I will prove Sir right, and get his spear in his hand I came toward Sir Lancelot. He Sir Lancelot was ware, and a well, and fewed his spear on him, and smote Sir Sagamour that horse and man fell both to the ground. So Sir Lancelot went to the court then shall we wit. And then had they much sorrow to get their horses again.

CHAP. XIV.

How Sir Lancelot followed a brachet into a castle where he found a dead knight, and how be after was required of a damsel to heal her brother.

Now leave we there and speak of Sir Lancelot that rode a great while in a deep forest, where he saw a black brachet, seeking in manner as it had been in the track of an hurt deer, and therewith he rode after the brachet, and he saw lie on the ground a large track of blood. And then Sir Lancelot rode after. And ever the brachet looked behind her, and so she went through a great marsh, and ever Sir Lancelot followed. And then was he ware of an old manor, and thither ran the brachet, and so over the bridge. So Sir Lancelot rode over that bridge that was old and feeble; and when he came in midst of a great hall, there he saw lie a dead knight that was a seemly man, and that brachet licked his wounds. And therewithal came out a lady weeping.
and wringing her hands, and she said, Oh knight, too much sorrow hast thou brought me. Why say ye so? said Sir Launcelot, I did never this knight no harm, for hither by track of blood this bracth brought me; and therefore fair lady be not displeased with me, for I am full sore aggrieved of your grievance. Truly sir, she said, I trow it be not ye that have slan my husband, for he that did that deed is sore wounded, and he is never likely to recover, that shall I ensure him. What was your husband's name? said Sir Launcelot. Sir, said she, his name was called Sir Gilbert, one of the best knights of the world, and he that hath slain him I know not his name. Now God send you better comfort, said Sir Launcelot. And so he departed and went into the forest again, and there he met with a damsel, the which knew him well, and she said aloud, Well be ye found, my lord; and now I require thee on thy knighthood help my brother that is sore wounded, and never stinteth bleeding, for this day fought he with Sir Gilbert and slew him in plain battle, and there was my brother sore wounded, and there is a lady a sorceress that dwellith in a castle here beside, and this day she told me my brother's wounds should never be whole till I could find a knight that would go into the chapel perilous, and there he should find a sword and a bloody cloth that the wounded knight was lapped in, and a piece of that cloth and sword should heal my brother's wounds, so that his wounds were searched with the sword and the cloth. This is a marvellous thing, said Sir Launcelot, but what is your brother's name? Sir, said she, his name is Sir Meliot de Logres. That me repenteth, said Sir Launcelot, for he is a fellow of the Table Round, and to his help I will do my power. Then, sir, said she, follow even this high way, and it will bring you unto the chapel perilous, and here I shall abide till God send you here again, and but you speed I know no knight living that may achieve that adventure.
was great joy between them, and they made Sir Launcelot all the cheer that they might, and so on the morn Sir Launcelot took his leave, and bad Sir Meliot bie him to the court of my lord Arthur, for it draweth nigh to the feast of Pentecost, and there, by the grace of God, ye shall find me. And therewith they departed.

CHAP. XVI.

How Sir Launcelot at the request of a lady recovered a falcon, by which he was deceived.

And so Sir Launcelot rode through many strange countries, over marshes and valleys, till by fortune he came to a fair castle, and as he passed beyond the castle him thought he heard two bells ring. And then was he ware of a falcon came flying over his head toward an high elm, and long lines about her feet, and as she flew unto the elm to take her perch, the lines overcast about a bough. And when she would have taken her flight she hung by the legs fast, and Sir Launcelot saw how she hung, and beheld the fair falcon perigot, and he was sorry for her. The meanwhile came a lady out of the castle, and cried on high, O Launcelot, Launcelot, as thou art flower of all knights help me to get my hawk, for and my hawk be lost my lord will destroy me; for I kept the hawk and she slipt from me, and if my lord my husband wit it, he is so hasty that he will slay me. What is your lord's name? said Sir Launcelot. Sir, she said, his name is Sir Phelot, a knight that longeth unto the king of Northgalis. Well, fair lady, since that ye know my name, and require me of knighthood to help you, I will do what I may to get your hawk, and yet truly I am an ill climber, and the tree is passing high, and few boughs to help me withal. And therewith Sir Launcelot alight, and tied his horse to the same tree, and prayed the lady to unarm him. And so when he was unarmed, he put off all his clothes unto his shirt and breeches, and with might
and force he climbed up to the falcon, and tied the lines to a great rotten branch, and threw the hawk down and it withal. Anon the lady gat the hawk in her hand, and therewithal came out Sir Phelot out of the groves suddenly, that was her husband, all armed, and with his naked sword in his hand, and said, O knight, Launcelot, now have I found thee as I would: and stood at the bole of the tree to slay him. Ah lady, said Sir Launcelot, why have ye betrayed me? She hath done, said Sir Phelot, but as I commanded her, and therefore there is none other boot but thine hour is come that thou must die. That were shame unto thee, said Sir Launcelot, thou an armed knight to slay a naked man by treason. Thou gettest none other grace, said Sir Phelot, and therefore help thyself and thou canst. Truly, said Sir Launcelot, that shall be thy shame, but since thou wilt do none other, take mine harness with thee, and hang my sword upon a bough that I may get it, and then do thy best to slay me and thou canst. Nay, nay, said Sir Phelot, for I know thee better than thou weneest, therefore thou gettest no weapon and I may keep you therewith. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, that ever knight should die weaponless. And therewith he awaited above him and under him, and over his head he saw a rounspik, a big bough leafless, and therewith he brake it off by the body; and then he came lower, and awaited how his own horse stood, and suddenly he leapt on the farther side of the horse from the knight. And then Sir Phelot lashed at him eagerly, weening to have slain him; but Sir Launcelot put away the stroke with the rounspik, and therewith he smote him on the one side of the head, that he fell down in a swoon to the ground. So then Sir Launcelot took his sword out of his hand, and struck his neck from the body. Then cried the lady, Alas, why hast thou slain my husband? I am not causer, said Sir Launcelot, for with falsehood ye would have had slain me with treason, and now it is fallen on you both. And then she swooned as though she would die. And therewithal Sir Launcelot gat all his armour as well as he might, and put it upon him, for dread of more resort, for he dreaed that the knight’s castle was so nigh. And so soon as he might he took his horse and departed, and thanked God that he had escaped that adventure.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Launcelot overtook a knight which chased his wife to have slain her, and bow he said to him.

So Sir Launcelot rode many wild ways, throughout marshes and many wild ways. And as he rode in a valley he saw a knight chasing a lady with a naked sword to have slain her. And by fortune, as this knight should have slain this lady, she cried on Sir Launcelot and prayed him to rescue her. When Sir Launcelot saw that mischief he took his horse and rode between them, saying, Knight, fie for shame, why wilt thou slay this lady? thou dost shame unto thee and all knights. What hast thou to do betwixt me and my wife? said the knight; I will slay her, maugr thy head. That shall ye not, said Sir Launcelot, for rather we two will have ado together. Sir Launcelot, said the knight, thou dost not thy part, for this lady hath betrayed me. It is not so, said the lady, truly he saith wrong on me, and because I love and cherish my cousin german, he is jealous betwixt him and me, and as I shall answer to God, there was never sin betwixt us. But, sir, said the lady, as thou art called the worshipfullest knight of the world, I require thee of true knighthood keep me and save me, for whatsoever ye say he will slay me, for he is without mercy. Have ye no doubt, said Launcelot, it shall not lie in his power. Sir, said the knight, in your sight I will be ruled as ye will have me. And so Sir Launcelot rode on the one side and she on the other: he had not ridden a while but the knight bad Sir Launcelot turn him and look behind him and said,
How Sir Launcelot returned to Arthur's court, and how there were recounted all his noble feats and acts.

Now turn me unto Sir Launcelot du Lake, that came home two days afore the feast of Pentecost. And the king and all the court were passing fain of his coming. And when Sir Gawain, Sir Uwaine, Sir Sagamour, Sir Ector de Maris, saw Sir Launcelot in Kay's armour, then they wist well it was he that smote them down all with one spear. Then there was laughing and smiling among them. And ever now and now came all the knights home that Sir Turquine had prisoners, and they all honoured and worshipped Sir Launcelot. When Sir Gaheris heard them speak, he said, I saw all the battle from the beginning to the end, and there he told king Arthur all how it was, and how Sir Turquine was the strongest knight that ever he saw except Sir Launcelot: there were many knights bear him record, nigh threescore. Then Sir Kay told the king how Sir Launcelot had rescued him when he should have been slain, and how he made the knights yield them to me, and not to him. And there they were, all three, and bare record. And by my faith, said Sir Kay, because Sir Launcelot took my harness and left me his I rode in good peace, and no man would have ado with me. Anon therewithal came the three knights that fought with Sir Launcelot at the long bridge, and there they yielded them unto Sir Kay, and Sir Kay forsook them and said he fought never with them: But I shall ease your hearts, said Sir Kay, yonder is Sir Launcelot that overcame you. When they wist that, they were
gad. And then Sir Meliot de Logres came home, and told king Arthur how Sir Launcelot had saved him from the death. And all his deeds were known, how four queens, sorceresses, had him in prison, and how he was delivered by king Bagdemagus's daughter. Also there were told all the great deeds of arms that Sir Launcelot did betwixt the two kings, that is to say, the king of Northgalis and king Bagdemagus. All the truth Sir Gahalantine did tell, and Sir Mador de la Porte, a Mordred, for they were at that tournament. Then came in to that knew Sir Launcelot when wounded Sir Belleus at the p And there, at the request of Sir celot, Sir Belleus was made kn in the Round Table.

And so at that time Sir La had the greatest name of any kn the world, and most he was ho of high and low.

Explicit the noble tale of syr Launcelot du lake, which is 1 book. Were followeth the tale of syr Gareth of Orkney, th called Beaumagnys by syr kay, and is the seventh book.

The Seventh Book.

CHAP. I.

How Beaumains came to king Arthur's court and demanded three petitions of king Arthur.

When Arthur held his Round Table most fully, it fortunated that he commanded that the high feast of Pentecost should be holden at a city and a castle, the which in those days was called Kink-Kenadon, upon the sands that marched nigh Wales. So ever the king had a custom that at the feast of Pentecost, in especial afore other feasts in the year, he would not go that day to meat until he had heard or seen of a great marvel. And for that custom all manner of strange adventures came before Arthur as at that feast before all other feasts. And so Sir Gawaine, a little tofore noon of the day of Pentecost, espied at a window three men upon horseback, and a dwarf on foot. And so the three men alight and the dwarf kept their horses, and one of the three men was higher than the other twain by a foot and a half. Then Sir Gawaine went unto the king and said, Sir, go to your

meat, for here at the hand come adventures. So Arthur went unto meat with many other kings. there were all the knights of the Table, save those that were pi or slain at a recounter. Then high feast evermore they should filled the whole number of an hundred and fifty, for then was the Round fully comphlished. Right so can the hall two men well been seen and and upon their shoulders there the goodliest young man and the that ever they all saw, and he was and long and broad in the scho and well visaged, and the faire the largest handed that ever man but he fared as though he might nor bear himself, but if he leaned their shoulders. Anon as Arth him there was made peace and and right so they went with him in high dais, without saying of any. Then this much young man pull aback, and easily stretched up st saying, King Arthur, God you and all your fair fellowship, a especial the fellowship of the Round. And for this cause I am
pray you and require you to
tree gifts, and they shall not
reasonably asked, but that ye may
ly and honourably grant them
to you no great hurt nor
the first done and gift I will
and the other two gifts I will
ay twelvemonth wheresoever
our high feast. Now ask, said
nd ye shall have your asking.
this is my petition for this
et ye will give me meat and
iently for this twelvemonth,
at that day I will ask mine other

My fair son, said Arthur,
I counsel thee, for this is but
scking, for my heart giveth me
reatly that thou art come of
orship, and greatly my conceit:
but thou shalt prove a man
orship. Sir, said he,
as it may, I have asked that
ll, said the king, ye shall
; and drink enough, I never
that none, neither my friend
But what is thy name
I cannot tell you, said
is marvel, said the king, that
est not thy name, and thou
oodliest young man that ever
then the king betook him to
he steward, and charged him
give him of all manner
drinks of the best, and
he had all manner of finding
he were a lord's son. That
the need, said Sir Kay, to do
upon him; for I dare under-
a villain born, and never will
, for and he had come of
he would have asked of you
armour, but such as he is,
edth. And since he hath no
all give him a name that shall
ains, that is Fair-hands, and
kitchen I shall bring him, and
shall have fat brows every
he shall be as fat by the
th's end as a pork hog,
the two men departed, and
to Sir Kay, that scorned him
ed him.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Launcelot and Sir Gawaine were
wroth because Sir Kay mocked Bea-
mains, and of a damsel which desired
a knight for to fight for a lady.

Thereat was Sir Gawaine wroth, and
in especial Sir Launcelot bad Sir Kay
leave his mocking, for I dare lay my
head he shall prove a man of great
worship. Let be, said Sir Kay, it may
not be, by no reason, for as he is so
hath he asked. Beware, said Sir Laun-
celot, so ye gave the good knight Brew-
nor, Sir Dinadan's brother, a name, and
ye called him La Cote Male Talle, and
that turned you to anger afterward.
As for that, said Sir Kay, this shall
never prove none such, for Sir Bustral
desired ever worship, and this desireth
bread and drink, and broth; upon pain
of my life he was fostered up in some
abbey, and, howsoever it was, they failed
meat and drink, and so hither he is come
for his sustenance. And so Sir Kay bad
get him a place and sit down to meat,
so Beaumains went to the hall door,
and set him down among boys and lads,
and there he eat sadly. And then Sir
Launcelot after meat bad him come to
his chamber, and there he should have
meat and drink enough. And so did
Sir Gawaine: but he refused them all;
he would do none other but as Sir Kay
commanded him, for no proffer. But
as touching Sir Gawaine, he had reason
to proffer him lodging, meat, and drink,
for that proffer came of his blood, for
he was nearer kin to him than he wist.
But that as Sir Launcelot did was of his
great gentleness and courtesy. So thus
he was put into the kitchen, and lay
nightly as the boys of the kitchen did.
And so he endured all that twelvemonth,
and never displeased man nor
child, but always he was meek and
mild. But ever when that he saw any
justing of knights, that would he see
and he might. And ever Sir Launcelot
would give him gold to spend, and
clothes, and so did Sir Gawaine. And
where were any masteries done thereat
would he be, and there might none cast
bar nor stone to him by two yards. Then would Sir Kay say, How liketh you my boy of the kitchen? So it passed on till the feast of Whitsuntide. And at that time the king held it at Carlion in the most royallest wise that might be, like as he did yearly.

But the king would no meat eat upon the Whitsunday until he heard some adventures. Then came there a squire to the king and said, Sir; ye may go to your meat, for here cometh a damsel with some strange adventures. Then was the king glad, and set him down. Right so there came a damsel into the hall, and saluted the king, and prayed him of succour. For whom, said the king, what is the adventure? Sir, she said, I have a lady of great worship and renown, and she is besieged with a tyrant, so that she may not out of her castle. And because here are called the noblest knights of the world, I come to you to pray you of succour. What highteth your lady, and where dwelleth she? and who is he, and what is his name, that hath besieged her? Sir king, she said, as for my lady's name that shall not ye know for me as at this time, but I let you wit she is a lady of great worship, and of great lands. And as for the tyrant that besiegeth her and destroyeth her lands, he is called the red knight of the red lawns. I know him not, said the king. Sir, said Sir Gawaine, I know him well, for he is one of the perilous knights of the world: men say that he hath seven men's strength, and from him I escaped once full hard with my life. Fair damsel, said the king, there be knights here would do their power to rescue your lady, but because ye will not tell her name, nor where she dwelleth, therefore none of my knights that be here now shall go with you by my will. Then must I speak further, said the damsel.

CHAP. III.
How Beaumains desired the battle, and how it was granted to him, and how he desired to be made knight of Sir Launcelot.
Wrru these words came before the king Beaumains, while the damsel was there, and thus he said: Sir king, God thank you, I have been these twelvemonth in your kitchen, and have had my full sustenance, and now I will ask my two gifts that be behind. Ask my peril, said the king, Sir, this shall be my two gifts. First, that ye will grant me to have this adventure of the damsel, for it belongeth unto me. This shalt have it, said the king, I grant it thee. Then, sir, this is the other gift, that ye shall bid Launcelot du Lisle make me knight, for of him I will be made knight, and else of none. And when I am past, I pray you let him ride after me, and make me knight when I require him. All this shall be done, said the king. Fie on thee, said the damsel, shall I have none but one that is your kitchen page. Then was she wroth, and took her horse and departed.

And with that there came one to Beaumains, and told him that his horse and armour was come for him, there was the dwarf come with thing that him needed in the manner. Thereat all the court was much marvel from whence came that gear. So when he saw there was none but few so goodly man as he was. And right so he came into the hall and took his leave of his Arthur and Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot, and prayed that he would after him. And so departed and after the damsel.

CHAP. IV.
How Beaumains departed, and how he of Sir Kay a spear and a shield, bow be justed and fought with Launcelot.

But there went many after to be how well he was horsed and trapp'd cloth of gold, but he had neither nor spear. Then Sir Kay said openly in the hall, I will ride after boy in the kitchen, to wit whether will know me for his better. Said Sir Launcelot and Sir Gawaine, Yet ab
So Sir Kay made him ready: his horse and his spear and for him. And right as Beaumains took the damsel, right so Kay, and said, Beaumains, know ye not me? Then he his horse and knew it was that had done him all the deathe he had heard afore. Yea, said he, I know you for an ungentle of the court, and therefore be me. Thervewith Sir Kay put : in the rest, and ran straight 1, and Beaumains came as fast a with his sword in his hand; he put away his spear with his and with a foith thrust him the side, that Sir Kay fell down I been dead, and he alight down Sir Kay's shield and his spear, upon his own horse and rode.

All that saw Sir Launcelot, did the damsel. And then he dwarf start upon Sir Kay's and so he did. By that Sir Launcelot came. Then he proferred celot to just, and either made ady, and came together so hat either bare down other to 1, and sore were they bruised. Sir Launcelot arose and helped a his horse. And then Beaumains his shield from him, and to fight with Sir Launcelot on 1 so they rushed together like pacing, racing, and joinge, to nentione of an hour, and Sir felt him so big that he mar- his strength, for he fought e a giant than a knight, and fighting was durable and pass- sive. For Sir Launcelot had so with him that he dread himself shamed, and said, Beaumains, so sore, your quarrel and mine to great but we may leave off. hat is truth, said Beaumains, with me good to feel your might, my lord, I shewed not the

CHAP. V.

How Beaumains told to Sir Launcelot his name, and how he was dubbed knight of Sir Launcelot, and after overtook the damsel.

Well, said Sir Launcelot, for I promise you by the faith of my body I had as much to do as I might to save myself from you unshamed, and therefore have ye no doubt of none earthly knight. Hope ye so that I may any while stand a proved knight? said Beaumains. Yea, said Launcelot, do ye as ye have done, and I shall be your warrant. Then, I pray you, said Beaumains, give me the order of knighthood. Then must ye tell me your name, said Launcelot, and of what kin ye be born. Sir, so that ye will not discover me I shall, said Beaumains. Nay, said Sir Launce- lot, and that I promise you by the faith of my body, until it be openly known. Then, Sir, ye said, my name is Gareth, and brother unto Sir Gawaine, of father and mother. Ah! Sir, said Launcelot, I am more gladder of you than I was, for ever me thought ye should be of great blood, and that ye came not to the court neither for meat nor for drink. And then Sir Launcelot gave him the order of knighthood. And then Sir Gareth prayed him for to depart, and let him go. So Sir Launcelot departed from him and came to Sir Kay, and made him to be borne home upon his shield, and so he was healed hard with the life, and all men scorned Sir Kay, and in especial Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot said it was not his part to rebuke no young man, for full little knew he of what birth he is come, and for what cause he came to this court. And so we leave off Sir Kay and turn we unto Beaumains. When he had overtaken the damsel anon she said, What doest thou here? thou stinkest all of the kitchen, thy clothes be foul of the grease and tallow that thou gainest in king Arthur's kitchen; weenest thou, said she, that I allow thee for yonder knight that thou killedst? Nay truly, for thou slewdest him unhappily
and cowardly, therefore turn again foul kitchen page. I know thee well, for Sir Kay named thee Beaumains; what art thou but a lubber and a turner of spits, and a ladle washer? Damsel, said Beaumains, say to me what ye will, I will not go from you whatsoever ye say, for I have undertaken to king Arthur for to achieve your adventure, and so shall I finish it to the end, or I shall die therefore. Fie on thee, kitchen knave, wilt thou finish mine adventure? thou shalt anon be met withall, that thou wouldest not for all the broth that ever thou supposedst once look him in the face. I shall assay, said Beaumains. So thus as they rode in the wood, there came a man flying all that ever he might. Whither wilt thou? said Beaumains. O lord, he said, help me, for hereby in a slade are six thieves, that have taken my lord and bound him, so I am afeard lest they will slay him. Bring me thither, said Sir Beaumains. And so they rode together until they came there as was the knight bound, and then he rode unto them and struck one unto the death, and then another, and at the third stroke he slew the third thief; and then the other three fled. And he rode after them, and he overtook them, and then those three thieves turned again and assailed Beaumains hard, but at the last he slew them, and returned and unbound the knight. And the knight thanked him, and prayed him to ride with him to his castle there a little beside, and he should worshipfully reward him for his good deeds. Sir, said Beaumains, I will no reward have, I was this day made knight of noble Sir Launcelot, and therefore I will no reward have, but God reward me. And also I must follow this damsel. And when he came nigh her, she bad him ride from her, for thou smellest all of the kitchen; wearest thou that I have joy of thee? for all this deed thou hast done, is but mishappened thee; but thou shalt see a sight that shall make thee turn again, and that lightly. Then the same knight which was rescued of the thieves rode after that damsel, and prayed her to lodge with him all that night. And it was near night the damsel rided him to his castle, and there is great cheer. And at supper there set Sir Beaumains afore the Fie, fie, said she, sir knight, ye courteous to set a kitchen place me, him besemeth better to swine than to sit afore a damsel parentage. Then the knight ashamed at her words, and stood up and set him at a side board, himself afore him. And so night they had good cheer at rest.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Beaumains fought and knights at a passage.

And on the morn the damsels took their leave and thanked them and so departed, and rode on until they came to a great for there was a great river and passage, and there were no knights on the further side, to the passage. What sayest thou, the damsel, wilt thou mate knights, or turn again? Nay Beaumains, I will not turn a knight, they were six more. And that he rushed into the water, at midst of the water either by spears upon other to their head then they drew their swords eagerly at other. And at the Beaumains smote the other helm that his head stonied, a withal he fell down in the water there was he drowned. And spurred his horse upon the land the other knight fell upon to brake his spear, and so they cut swords and fought long togeth the last Sir Beaumains clave and his head down to the shoulder so he rode unto the damsel, her ride forth on her way. said, that ever a kitchen page have that fortune to destroy doughty knights; thou weart hast done doughtily; that is for the first knight his horse:
OF BEAUMAINS AND THE BLACK KNIGHT.

he was drowned in the never it was by thy force might. And the last knight thou camest behind him and thou slewest him. Damsel, damains, ye may say what ye with whomsoever I have ado to God to serve him or and therefore I reck not what I may win your lady. Fie, wench knave, thou shalt see not shall abate thy boast. Fair e me goodly language, and te is past, for what knights be I care not, nor I doubt. Also, said she, I say it for yet mayest thou turn again worship, for and thou follow but slain, for I see all that lost is but by misadventure, prowess of thy hands. Well, may say what ye will, but ye go will follow you. Beaumains rode with that lady long time, and ever she chid would not rest. And then to a black lawn, and there black hawthorn, and thereon black banner, and on the other hung a black shield, and by it black spear great and long, and black horse covered with silk, stone fast by.

CHAP. VII.

Beaumains fought with the knight black lawns, and fought with him I down and died.

at a knight all armed in black and his name was the knight of town. Then the damsel, when at knight, she bade him flee valley, for his horse was not Brammercy, said Beaumains, ye would have me a coward. The black knight, when she him, spake and said, Damsel, sought this knight of king be your champion? Nay, said she, this is but a kitchen it was fed in king Arthur’s alms. Why cometh he, said the knight, in such array? it is shame that he beareth you company. Sir, I cannot be delivered of him, said she, for with me he rideth maugre mine head; would that ye should put him from me, or else to slay him and ye may, for he is an unhappy knave, and unhappily he hath done this day; through mishap I saw him slay two knights at the passage of the water, and other deeds he did before right marvellous, and through unhappiness. That marvelleth me, said the black knight, that any man that is of worship will have ado with him. They know him not, said the damsel, and because he rideth with me they think he is some man of worship born. That may be, said the black knight, how be it as ye say that he be no man of worship, he is a full likely person, and full like to be a strong man; but thus much shall I grant you, said the black knight, I shall put him down upon one foot, and his horse and his harness he shall leave with me, for it were shame to me to do him any more harm. When Sir Beaumains heard him say thus, he said, Sir knight, thou art full liberal of my horse and my harness, I let thee wit it cost thee nought, and whether it liketh thee or not this lawn will I pass, maugre thine head, and horse nor harness gettest thou none of me, but if thou win them with thy hands; and therefore let see what thou canst do. Sayest thou that, said the black knight, now yield thy lady from thee, for it beseeoth never a kitchen page to ride with such a lady. Thou liest, said Beaumains, I am a gentleman born, and of more high lineage than thou, and that will I prove on thy body. Then in great wrath they departed with their horses, and came together as it had been the thunder; and the black knight’s spear brake, and Beaumains thrust him through both his sides, and therewith his spear brake, and the truncheon left still in his side. But nevertheless the black knight drew his sword and smote many eager strokes and of great might, and hurt Beaumains full sore. But at the last the black knight within an hour and a half he
felled down off his horse in a swoon, and there he died. And then Beaumains saw him so well horse and armed, then he alight down, and armed him in his armour, and so took his horse, and rode after the damsel. When she saw him come nigh, she said, Away, kitchen knave, out of the wind, for the smell of thy foul clothes grieveth me. Alas, she said, that ever such a knave as thou art should by mishap slay so good a knight as thou hast done, but all this is thine unhappiness. But hereby is one shall pay thee all thy payment, and therefore yet I counsel thee, flee. It may happen me, said Beaumains, to be beaten or slain, but I warn you, fair damsel, I will not flee away nor leave your company for all that ye can say, for ever ye say that they will kill me or beat me, but how sooner it happeneth I escape, and they lie on the ground. And therefore it were as good for you to hold you still, thus all day rebuking me, for away will I not till I see the uttermost of this journey, or else I will be slain or truly beaten; therefore ride on your way, for follow you I will whatsoever happen.

CHAP. VIII.

How the brother of the knight that was slain met with Beaumains, and fought with Beaumains till be was yelden.

Thus as they rode together, they saw a knight come driving by them all in green, both his horse and his harness; and when he came nigh the damsel he asked her, Is that my brother the black knight that ye have brought with you? Nay, nay, said she, this unhappy kitchen knave hath slain your brother through unhappiness. Alas, said the green knight, that is great pity that so noble a knight as he was should so unhappily be slain, and namely of a knave's hand, as ye say that he is. Ah! traitor, said the green knight, thou shalt die for slaying of my brother, he was a full noble knight, and his name was Sir Percard. I defy thee, said Beaumains, for I let thee wit I slew him knightly, and not shamefully. Therewithall the green knight rode unto an horn green, and it hung upon a thorn, and he blew three deadly notes, and came two damsels and armed him. And then took he a great horn green shield and a green spear, and then they ran together with mights, and brake their spears in their hands. And then they drew swords, and gave many sad stripes, either of them wounded other. And at the last at an overthrown remains' horse struck the green horse upon the side, he fell to earth. And then the green knight avoided his horse lightly, and put him upon foot. That saw Beaumains, and therewithal he alight, and rushed together like two champions a long while, and sore to both. With that came the damsel, said, My lord the green knight, shame stand ye so long fight with the kitchen knave? Alas, that ever ye were made knight with such a lad match such a knight. The weed overgrew the corn, with the green knight was clad, and therewithal he gave stroke of might, and clave his horse through. When Beaumains shield cloven asunder he was ashamed of that stroke, and of his language; and then he gave him a buffet upon the helm that he fell on his knees: and so suddenly Beaumains took him upon the ground groveling, then the green knight cried him, and yielded him unto Sir Be, and prayed him to slay him; but it is in vain, said Beaumains, I shall die, but if this damsel that be with me pray me to save And therewithal he unlaced his helm like as he would slay him. I, false kitchen page, I will pray thee to save his life, for it will be so much in thy danger, shall he die, said Beaumains. hardy thou foul knave, said the green knight, suffer me not to dare a fair word may save me. Fair
How the Damself Rebuked Beaumains.

Green knight, save my life, and I thee the death of my brother, ever to become thy man, and all this avail thee not, but speak with me for thy life. Withal he made a semblance. Let be, said the damsel, knave, slay him not, for and thou shall repent it. Damself, Beaumains, your charge is to me and at your commandment I saved, and else not. Then knight with the green arms, hee quit at this damsel’s request will not make her wroth; I all that she chargeth me.

The green knight kneeled and did him homage with his knees said the damsel, Me re-en knight, of your damage, your brother’s death the black r of your help I had great aid d sheet me sore to pass this day, dread you not, said the green knight, for ye shall lodge with me and to morn I shall through this forest. So they horses and rode to his manor, fast there beside.

Chap. IX.

Damsel ever rebuked Sir Beaumains would not suffer him to sit at table, but called him kitchen boy. She rebuked Beaumains, and suffer him to sit at her table, the green knight took him and sat at table. Marvel me thinketh, green knight to the damsel, such this noble knight as ye warn you, damself, he is a full knight, and I know no knight that match him, therefore ye do wrong to rebuke him, for he shall show good service, for what he maketh himself ye shall prove that he is come of a noble of king’s lineage. Fie, fie, said the damsel, it is shame for you to say of him such worship. Truly, said the green knight, it were shame for me to say of him any disworship, for he hath proved himself a better knight than I am, yet have I met with many knights in my days, and never or this time have I found no knight his match. And so that night they went unto rest, and all that night the green knight commanded thirty knights privily to watch Beaumains, for to keep him from all treason. And so on the morn they all arose, and heard their mass and brake their fast, and then they took their horses and rode on their way, and the green knight conveyed them through the forest, and there the green knight said, My lord Beaumains, I and these thirty knights shall be alway at your summons, both early and late, at your calling, and where that ever ye will send us. It is well said, said Beaumains, when that I call upon ye must yield you unto king Arthur and all your knights. If that ye so command us, we shall be ready at all times, said the green knight. Fie, fie upon thee, said the damsel, that any good knights should be obedient unto a kitchen knave. So then departed the green knight and the damsel. And then she said unto Beaumains, Why followest thou me thou kitchen boy, cast away thy shield and thy spear and flee away, yet I counsel thee betimes or thou shall say right soon, Alas! For were thou as wight as ever was Wade, or Launcelot, Tristram, or the good knight Sir La-Morake, thou shalt not pass a pass here, that is called the pass perilous. Damself, said Beaumains, who is afeard let him flee, for it were shame to turn again since I have ridden so long with you. Well, said the damsel, ye shall soon, whether ye will or not.

Chap. X.

How the third brother, called the red knight, justified and fought against Beaumains, and bow Beaumains overcame him.

So within a while they saw a tower as white as any snow, well matchcold all
about, and double diked. And over the
tower-gate there hung a fifty shields of
divers colours; and under that tower
there was a fair meadow. And therein
were many knights and squires to be-
hold scaffolds and pavilions, for there
upon the morn should be a great tour-
ament; and the lord of the tower was in
his castle, and looked out at a window,
and saw a damsel, a dwarf, and a knight
armed at all points. By my faith, said
the lord, with that knight will I just,
for I see that he is a knight errant.
And so he armed him, and horded him
hastily. And when he was on horse-
back with his shield and his spear, it
was all red, both his horse and his
harness, and all that to him belonged.
And when that he came nigh him he
wond it had been his brother the black
knight. And then he cried aloud,
Brother what do ye in these marshes?
Nay, nay, said the damsel, it is not he;
this is but a kitchen knave, that was
brought up for alms in king Arthur's
court. Nevertheless, said the red knight,
I will speak with him or he depart. Ah,
said the damsel, this knave hath killed
thy brother, and Sir Kay named him
Beaumains, and this horse and harness
was thy brother's the black knight.
Also I saw thy brother the green knight
overcome of his hands. Now may ye
be revenged upon him, for I may never
be quit of him.

With this either knight departed in
sunder, and they came together with
all their might, and either of their horses
fell to the earth, and they avoided their
horses, and put their shields afore them,
and drew their swords, and either gave
other sad strokes, now here, now there,
racing, tracing, foining, and hurling like
two boars, the space of two hours.
And then she cried on high to the red
knight, Alas, thou noble red knight,
think what worship hath followed thee,
let never a kitchen knave endure thee so
long as he doth. Then the red knight
waxed wroth, and doubled his strokes,
and hurt Beaumains wonderly sore, that
the blood ran down to the ground,
that it was wonder to see that strong

battle. Yet at the last Sir B
strake him to the earth, and
would have slain the red knigh
t mercy, saying, Noble knight,
not, and I shall yield me to
fifty knights with me that I
commandment. And I forgive
the despite that thou hast done
and the death of my brother
knight. All this availeth not
Beaumains, but if my damsel
to save thy life. And then
made semblant to strike off
Let be, thou Beaumains, slay
for he is a noble knight, and
hardly upon thine head but
him. Then Beaumains bad
knight stand up, and thank the
now of thy life. Then the
prayed him to see his castle,
there all night. So the dam
granted him, and there they be
cheer. But always the dam
many foul words unto B
whereof the red knight be
marvel, and all that night
knight made threescore kn
catch Beaumains, that he sh
no shame nor villainy. And
morn they heard mass, and on
the red knight came before B
with his threescore knights,
he proffered him his homage,
at all times, he and his knight
him service. I thank you, Bea
mains, but this ye shall grant
I call upon you, to come afore
king Arthur and yield you up
be his knights. Sir, said the
I will be ready and my fellows;
your summons. So Sir Bea
parted and the damsel, and every
chiding him in the foulest ma

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Beaumains suffered
bukes of the damsel, and be
patiently.

DAMSEL, said Beaumains, y
courteous so to rebuke me as
me seemeth I have done you
vice, and ever ye threaten me
h knights that we meet, but
ill your boast they lie in the
the mire, and therefore I pray
me no more: and when ye
aten or yidden as recreant,
e bid me go from you shame-
irst I let you wit I will not
you, for I were worse than
would depart from you all
that I win worship. Well,
right soon there shall meet
shall pay thee all thy wages,
the most man of worship
uld, except king Arthur. I
said Beaumains; the more
worship the more shall be
ip to have ado with him.
 they were ware where was
a city rich and fair. And
em and the city a mile and
ere was a fair meadow that
w mown, and therein were
ions fair to behold. Lo, said
yond is a lord that owne-
, and his custom is when the
fair to lie in this meadow to
tourney; and ever there be
five hundred knights and
of arms, and there be all
ames that any gentleman
That goodly lord, said
, would I fain see. Thou
him time enough, said the
And so as she rode near she
pavilion where he was. Lo,
seest thou yonder pavilion,
of the colour of Inde, and all
thing that is about, men
, and horses trapped, shields
, all of the colour of Inde,
me is Sir Persant of Inde, the
iest knight that ever thou
on. It may well be, said
, but be he never so stout a
this field I shall abide till
him under his shield. Ah
she, thou were better flee be-
hy, said Beaumains, and he
knight as ye make him, he
 upon me with all his men,
five hundred knights. For
come no more but one at
all him not fail whilst my
life lasteth. Fie, fie, said the damsel,
that ever such a dirty knave should
blow such a boast. Damsel, he said,
ye are to blame so to rebuke me, for I
had lever do five battles than so to be
rebuked; let him come, and then let
him do his worst. Sir, she said, I mar-
vel what thou art, and of what kin thou
art come: boldly thou speakest, and
boldly thou hast done, that have I seen:
therefore I pray thee save thyself and
thou mayest, for thy horse and thou
have had great travail, and I dread we
dwell over long from the siege, for
it is but hence seven mile, and all
perilous passages we are past, save all
only this passage, and here I dread me
sore lest ye shall catch some hurt,
therefore I would ye were hence, that
ye were not bruised nor hurt with this
strong knight. But I let you wit this
Sir Persant of Inde is nothing of might
nor strength unto the knight that laid
the siege about my lady. As for that,
said Sir Beaumains, be it as it may; for
since I am come so nigh this knight I
will prove his might or I depart from
him, and else I shall be shamed and I
now withdraw me from him. And
therefore, damsel, have ye no doubt by
the grace of God I shall so deal with
this knight, that within two hours after
noon I shall deliver him, and then shall
we come to the siege by day light. Oh
mercy, marvel have I, said the damsel,
what manner a man ye be, for it may
never be otherwise but that ye be come
of a noble blood, for so foul and shame-
fully did never woman rule a knight as
I have done you, and ever courteously
ye have suffered me, and that came
never but of a gentle blood.

Damsel, said Beaumains, a knight
may little do that may not suffer a
damsel; for whatsoever ye said unto
me I took none heed to your words, for
the more ye said the more ye angered
me, and my wrath I wreaked upon
them that I had ado withal. And there-
fore all the missaying that ye missayed
me furthered me in my battle, and caused
me to think to shew and prove myself at
the end what I was; for peradventure
though I had meat in king Arthur's kitchen, yet I might have had meat enough in other places; but all that I did it for to prove and to assay my friends, and that shall be known another day, and whether that I be a gentleman born or none, I let you wit, fair damsel, I have done you gentleman's service, and peradventure better service yet will I do or I depart from you. Alas, she said, fair Beaumains, forgive me all that I have missaid or done against thee. With all my heart, said he, I forgive it you, for ye did nothing but as ye should do, for all your evil words pleased me; and damsel, said Beaumains, since it liketh you to say thus fair to me, wit ye well it gladdeth mine heart greatly, and now me seemeth there is no knight living but I am able enough for him.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Beaumains fought with Sir Persant of Inde, and made him to be yielded.

Wern this Sir Persant of Inde had espied them as they hoved in the field, and knightly he sent to them whether he came in war or in peace. Say to thy lord, said Beaumains, I take no force, but whether as him list himself. So the messenger went again unto Sir Persant, and told him all his answer. Well, then will I have ado with him to the utterance. And so he purveyed him and rode against him. And Beaumains saw him and made him ready, and there they met with all that ever their horses might run, and brake their spears either in three pieces, and their horses rushed so together that both their horses fell dead to the earth, and lightly they avoided their horses, and put their shields afore them, and drew their swords, and gave many great strokes, that sometime they hurtled together that they fell groveling on the ground. Thus they fought two hours and more, that their shields and their hauberks were all forsworn, and in many places they were wounded. So at the last Sir Beaumains smote him through the side of the body, and then he drew him back here and the knightly maintained his battle lo. And at the last, though him lo. Beaumains smote Sir Persant about the helm that he fell groveling on the earth, and then he leapt upon his thwart, and unlaced his helm slain him. Then Sir Persant him and asked him mercy. Wencame the damsel, and prayed his life. I will well, for it w that this noble knight sh showed mercy, said Persant, gentle and damsel; for certainly now well it was ye that slew my brood black knight, at the black th was a full noble knight, hit was Sir Percard. Also, I am s ye are he that won mine other the green knight, his name was tolepe. Also, ye won my bro red knight Sir Perimones. A since ye have won these, this do for to please you; ye sh homaage and fealty of me, and dred knights, to be always at ye mandment, to go and ride where command us. And so they were Sir Persant's pavilion, and drink wine and eat spices. And a Sir Persant made him to rest bed until supper time, and afterwards to bed again. And so we le there till on the morn.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the goodly communication bet Persant and Beaumains, and told him that his name was Sir

And so on the morn the dam Sir Beaumains heard mass an their fast, and so took their lea damsel, said Persant, whither ye away leading this knight? said, this knight is going to t that besiegeth my sister in the dangerous. Ah, ah, said Persant is the knight of the red lawn, t is the most perilous knight that now living, and a man that is mercy, and men say that he ha men's strength. God save you
OF THE LADY THAT WAS BESIEGED.

ns, from that knight, for he wrong to that lady, and that, for she is one of the fairest in the world, and me seemeth amsel is her sister. Is not Linet? said he. Yea, sir, and my lady my sister's name ones. Now shall I tell you, sante, this red knight of the th lain long at the siege, well two years, and many times he had her and he had would, longeth the time to this intent Sir Launcelot du Lake to do him, or Sir Tristram, or Sir Galis, or Sir Gawaine: his tarrying so long at the w, my lord Sir Persant of the damsel Linet, I require will make this gentleman ever he fight with the red will with all my heart, said and it please him to take knighthood of so simple am. Sir, said Beaumains, you for your good will, for I sped, for certainly the noble Launcelot made me knight. ersant, of a more renowned sight ye not be made knight. knights he may be called knighthood: and so all the that betwixt three knights clearly knighthood, that is du Lake, Sir Tristram de d Sir Lamorak de Galis: now the renown. There other knights, as Sir Pal Saracen, and Sir Sasere his also Sir Bleoberis, and Sir e Ganis his brother; also Sir Ganis, and Sir Ector de Maris, ercivale de Galis; these and be noble knights, but there at pass the three above said; God speed you well, said Sir and ye may match the red shall be called the fourth of Sir, said Beaumains, I would good fame and of knighthood. you wit I came of good men, say my father was a noble so that ye will keep it in close, and this damsel, I will tell you of what kin I am. We will not discover you, said they both, till ye command us, by the faith we owe unto God. Truly then, said he, my name is Gareth of Orkney, and king Lot was my father, and my mother is king Arthur's sister; her name is dame Morgawse, and Sir Gawaine is my brother, and Sir Agra vaine, and Sir Gaheris, and I am the youngest of them all. And yet wot not kind Arthur nor Sir Gawaine what I am.

CHAP. XIV.

How the lady that was besieged bad word from her sister bow she bad brought a knight to fight for her, and what battles be bad achieved.

So the book saith that the lady that was besieged had word of her sister's coming by the dwarf, and a knight with her, and how he had passed all the perilous passages. What manner a man is he? said the lady. He is a noble knight, truly, madam, said the dwarf, and but a young man, but he is as likely a man as ever ye saw any. What is he, said the lady, and of what kin is he come, and of whom was he made knight? Madam, said the dwarf, he is the king's son of Orkney, but his name I will not tell you as at this time; but wit ye well, of Sir Launcelot was he made knight, for of none other would he be made knight, and Sir Kay named him Beaumains. How escaped he, said the lady, from the brethren of Persant? Madam, he said, as a noble knight should. First, he slew two brethren at a passage of a water. Ah! said she, they were good knights, but they were murderers, the one hight Gherard de Breusse, and that other knight hight Sir Arnold de Breusse. Then, madam, he reencountered with the black knight, and slew him in plain battle, and so he took his horse and his armour and fought with the green knight, and wan him in plain battle, and in likewise he served the red knight, and after in the same wise he served the blue knight, and wan him in plain battle. Then, said
the lady, he hath overcome Sir Persant of Inde, one of the noblest knights of the world. And the dwarf said, He hath won all the four brethren, and slain the black knight. And yet he did more tofore: he overthrew Sir Kay, and left him nigh dead upon the ground; also he did a great battle with Sir Launcelot, and there they departed on even hands: and then Sir Launcelot made him knight. Dwarf, said the lady, I am glad of these tidings, therefore go thou in an hermitage of mine here by, and there shalt thou bear with thee of my wine in two flaggons of silver, they are of two gallons, and also two cast of bread, with fat venison baked, and dainty fowls; and a cup of gold here I deliver thee, that is rich and precious, and bear all this to mine hermitage, and put it in the hermit's hands. And then go thou unto my sister and greet her well, and command me unto that gentle knight, and pray him to eat and to drink, and make him strong; and say ye him I thank him of his courtesy and goodness, that he would take upon him such labour for me that never did him bounty nor courtesy. Also pray him that he be of good heart and good courage, for he shall meet with a full noble knight, but he is neither of bounty, courtesy, nor gentleness, for he attendeth unto no thing but to murder, and that is the cause I cannot praise him nor love him. So this dwarf departed and came to Sir Persant, where he found the damsel Linet and Sir Beaumains, and there he told them all as ye have heard, and then they took their leave; but Sir Persant took an ambling hackney and conveyed them on their ways and then beleft them to God. And so within a little while they came to that hermitage, and there they drank the wine, and eat the venison and the fowls baken.

And so when they had repasted them well, the dwarf returned again with his vessel unto the castle again, and there met with him the red knight of the red lawns, and asked him from whence that he came, and where he had been. Sir, said the dwarf, been with my lady's sister of this land and she hath been at king Arthur's court, and brought a knight with her. Then I account her travail but well. For though she had brought with her Sir Launcelot, Sir Tristram, Sir Morak, or Sir Gawaine, I would myself good enough for them: but it may well be, said the dwarf, by this knight hath passed all the passages, and hath slain the red knight, and other two more, and the green knight, the red knight, the blue knight. Then is he one of four that I have afore rehearsed. But none of those, said the dwarf, but a king's son. What is his name, the red knight of the red lawn? will I not tell you, said the dwarf. Sir Kay upon scorn named him Beaumains. I care not, said the knight, knight soever he be, for I shall deliver him; and if I ever match he shall have a shameful death, as other have had. That were pitiful the dwarf, and it is marvel that he make such shameful war upon knights.

CHAP. XV.

How the damsel and Beaumains in the siege, and came to a sycamore, and there Beaumains blew a blast, then the knight of the red lawns espied the fight with him.

Now leave we the knight and the dwarf, and speak we of Beaumains. He, all night lay in the hermitage, and in the morn he and the damsel Linet set their mass, and brake their fast. Then they took their horses and went throughout a fair forest, and then they came to a plain, and saw there many pavilions and tents, and castle, and there was much sound and great noise. And when they came to the siege Sir Beaumains espied great trees, as he rode, how there full goody armed knights by the hundred rode with their swords, and gilt spurs upon their heels, and so there hung nigh
OF THE RED KNIGHT.

Of the rich arms. Beaumains abated his coun-

and said, What meaneth this? said the damsel, abate not your ill this sight, for ye must en-

purse, or else ye be all shent, se knights came hither to this rescue my sister dame Liones, the red knight of the red lawn come them he put them to this leath, without mercy and pity. the same wise he will serve you quit you better. Now Jesu de-

aid Sir Beaumains, from such s death and disgrace of arms, han I should so be farewithal, rather be slain manly in plain were ye better, said the dam-
rust not in him is no cour-
all goeth to the death or murder; and that is pity, for ill likely man, well made of a full noble knight of prowess, d of great lands and posses-

sely, said Beaumains, he may good knight, but he useth customs, and it is marvel that th so long, that none of the rights of my lord Arthur have with him. And then they e dikes, and saw them double h full warlike walls, and e lodged many great lords walls, and there was great minstrelsy, and the sea betid one side of the walls, where y ships and mariners’ noise, and how.’ And also, there y a sycamore tree, and there rn, the greatest that ever they n elephant’s bone, and this the red lawn had hanged it that if there came any errant must blow that horn, and ne make him ready, and come do battle. But Sir, I pray he damsel Linet, blow ye not ill it be high noon, for now t prime, and now encreaseth that, as men say, he hath ’s strength. Ah, fie for shame, l, say ye never so more to me, ne were as good a knight as ever was, I shall never fail him in his most might, for either I will win worship worshipfully, or die knightly in the field. And therewith he spurred his horse straight to the sycamore tree, and blew so the horn eagerly that all the siege and the castle rang thereof. And then there kept out knights out of their tents and pavilions, and they within the castle looked over the walls and out at windows. Then the red knight of the red lawns armed him hastily, and two barons set on his spurs upon his heels, and all was blood-red, his armour, spear, and shield. And an earl buckled his helm upon his head, and then they brought him a red spear and a red steed, and so he rode into a little vale under the castle, that all that were in the castle and at the siege might behold the battle.

CHAP. XVI.

How the two knights met together, and of their talking, and how they began their battle.

Sir, said the damsel Linet unto Sir Beaumains, look ye be glad and light, for yonder is your deadly enemy, and at yonder window is my lady my sister, dame Liones. Where? said Beaumains. Yonder, said the damsel, and pointed with her finger. That is truth, said Beaumains. She beseemeth afar the fairest lady that ever I looked upon, and truly, he said, I ask no better quarrel than now for to do battle, for truly she shall be my lady, and for her I will fight. And ever he looked up to the window with glad countenance. And the lady Liones made courtesy to him down to the earth, with holding up both their hands. With that the red knight of the red lawns called to Sir Beaumains, Leave, sir knight, thy looking, and behold me, I counsel thee, for I warn thee well she is my lady, and for her I have done many strong battles. If thou have so done, said Beaumains, me seemeth it was but waste labour, for she loveth none of thy fellowship, and thou to love that loveth not thee, is but great folly.
For and I understood that she were not glad of my coming I would be advised or I did battle for her. But I understand by the besiegng of this castle, she may forbear thy fellowship. And therefore wit thou well, thou red knight of the red lawns, I love her, and will rescue her, or else to die. Sayest thou that, said the red knight, me seemeth thou ought of reason to beware by yonder knights that thou sawest hang upon yonder trees. Fie for shame, said Beaumains, that ever thou shouldest say or do evil, for in that thou shamest thyself and knighthood, and thou mayest be sure there will no lady love thee that knoweth thy wicked customs. And now thou weenest that the sight of these hanged knights should fear me. Nay truly, not so, that shameful sight causeth me to have courage and hardiness against thee, more than I would have had against thee and thou were a well-ruled knight. Make thee ready, said the red knight of the red lawns, and talk no longer with me. Then Sir Beaumains bad the damsel go from him, and then they put their spears in their rests, and came together with all their might that they had both, and either smote other in the midst of their shields, that the breastplates, horse-girths, and cruppers brast, and fell to the earth both, and the reins of their bridles in their hands, and so they lay a great while sore astonied; and all they that were in the castle and in the siege wend their necks had been broken, and then many a stranger and other said the strange knight was a big man and a noble juster, for or now we saw never no knight match the red knight of the red lawns: thus they said, both within the castle and without. Then lightly they avoided their horses, and put their shields afore them, and drew their swords, and ran together like two fierce lions, and either gave other such buffets upon their helms that they reeled backward both two strides, and then they recovered both, and hewed great pieces of their harness and their shields, that a great part fell into the fields.

CHAP. XVII.

How after long fighting Beaumains came the knight and would him, but at the request of it saved his life, and made him to the lady.

And then thus they fought past noon and never would last they lacked wind both, they stood wagging and panting, blowing and bleeding that beheld them for the most for pity. So when they had rested a while they went to battle again, racing, foining, as two bears at sometime they took the it had been two rams, and together that sometime they foined to the earth: and at some were so amazed that either to sword in stead of his own.

Thus they endured till even that there was none that be might know whether was lit the battle; and their armors far hewn that men might see the sides, and in other places naked, but ever the naked did defend. And the red knightly knight of war, and his wit taught Sir Beaumains to be he abought it full sore ere his fighting. And thus by them both, they granted eithe rest; and so they set them down two mole-hills there beside the place, and either of them wailed and took the cold wind of their pages was fast by come when they called to their harness and to set them on their commandment. And then Beaumains' helm was off he brought to the window, and there his fair lady dame Liones; and him such countenance that waxed light and jolly; and the bade the red knight of the make him ready, and let us do to the utterance. I will well knight. And then they lace helms, and their pages avo...
HO\(\text{W BEAUMAINS WON THE RED KNIGHT.}\) 143

pt together and fought freshly. The king of the red lawns fell out of his hand: and yet he him another buffet on the helm fell groveling to the earth, and knight fell over him for to hold

Then cried the maiden in high, O Sir Beaumains, where courage become! Alas, my lady beholdeth thee, and she sobbed weepeth, that maketh mine heart heavy. When Sir Beaumains her say so, he started up with a

Then came there many earls, and barons, and noble knights, and prayed that knight to save his life, and take him to your prisoner: and all they fell upon their knees and prayed him of mercy, and that he would save his life, and, Sir, they all said, it were fairer of him to take homage and fealty, and let him hold his lands of you, than for to slay him: by his death ye shall have none advantage, and his misdeeds that be done may not be undone; and therefore he shall make amends to all parties, and we all will become your men, and do you homage and fealty. Fair lords, said Beaumains, wit you well I am full loth to slay this knight, nevertheless he hath done passing ill and shamefully. But insomuch all that he did was at a lady's request I blame him the less, and so for your sake I will release him, that he shall have his life upon this covenant, that he go within the castle and yield him there to the lady, and if she will forgive and quit him, I will well; with this that he make her amends of all the trespass he hath done against her and her lands. And also, when that is done, that ye go unto the court of king Arthur, and there that ye ask Sir Launcelot mercy, and Sir Gawaine, for the evil will ye have had against them. Sir, said the red knight of the red lawns, all this will I do as ye command, and certain assurance and sureties ye shall have. And so then when the assurance was made, he made his homage and fealty, and all those earls and barons with him. And then the maiden Linet came to Sir Beaumains and unarmèd him, and searched his wounds, and stinted his blood, and in likewise she

CHAP. XVIII.

How the knight yielded him, and how Beaumains made him to go unto king Arthur's court, and to cry Sir Launcelot mercy.

How I yield me to thy mercy, Sir Beaumains bethought him the knights that he had made wept shamefully, and then he may not with my worship save for the shameful deaths thou used many full good-knights to r, said the red knight of the red old your hand and ye shall know why I put them to so shame-death. Say on, said Sir Beau-

Sir, I loved once a lady, a fair and she had her brother slain, he said it was Sir Launcelot du er else Sir Gawaine, and she me as that I loved her heartily would make her a promise by of my knighthood, for to labour arms until I met with one of and all that I might overcome I put them unto a villainous death; is the cause that I have put all knights to death, and so I ensured do all the villainy unto king knights, and that I should take vengeance upon all these knights. And, Sir, now I will thee tell that every day my strength encreaseth till noon, and all this time have I seven men's strength.
did to the red knight of the red lawns. And there they sojourned ten days in their tents, and the red knight made his lords and servants to do all the pleasure that they might unto Sir Beaumains. And so within a while the red knight of the red lawns went unto the castle and put him in the lady Lioness' grace, and so she received him upon sufficient surety; so all her hurts were well restored of all that she could complain. And then he departed unto the court of king Arthur, and there openly the red knight of the red lawns put him in the mercy of Sir Launcelot and Sir Gawaine, and there he told openly how he was overcome and by whom, and also he told all the battles from the beginning unto the ending. Mercy, said king Arthur and Sir Gawaine, we marvel much of what blood he is come, for he is a noble knight. Have ye no marvel, said Sir Launcelot, for ye shall right well wit that he is come of a ful noble blood, and as for his might and hardiness there be but few now living that is so mighty as he is, and so noble of prowess. It seemeth by you, said king Arthur, that ye know his name, and from whence he is come, and of what blood he is. I suppose I do so, said Launcelot, or else I would not have given him the order of knighthood; but he gave me such charge at that time that I should never discover him until he required me, or else it be known openly by some other.

CHAP. XIX.

How Beaumains came to the lady, and when he came to the castle the gates were closed against him, and of the words that the lady said to him.

Now turn we unto Sir Beaumains, that desired of Linet that he might see her sister his lady. Sir, said she, I would fain ye saw her. Then Sir Beaumains all armed him, and took his horse and his spear, and rode straight unto the castle. And when he came to the gate he found there many men armed, and pulled up the drawbridge and drew the port close. Then marvelled he why they would not suffer him to enter. And then he looked up to the windows and there he saw the fair Lioness said on high, Go thy way, Sir Beaumains, for as yet thou shalt not wholly my love, unto the time that thou shalt be called one of the number of thy knights. And therefore go in worship this twelvemonth, and thou shalt hear new tidings. Al lady, said Beaumains, I have served that ye should shew no strangeness, and I had wended that I should have right good cheer with unto my power I have do thank, and well I am sure I bought your love with part of the blood within my body. Fair comely knight, said dame Lioness, be not pleased nor over hasty; for with your great travail nor good love not be lost, for I consider you—your travail and labour, your boun your goodness, as me ought to do, therefore go on your way, and lo ye be of good comfort, for all that for your worship and for the better a twelvemonth will soon be and trust me, fair knight, I shall be you, and never to betray you, but death I shall love you and none And therewithal she turned her for the love of the lady castle. And so upon the morn took his horse, and rode until and then he came to a broad head upon the shield, and betook horse to the dwarf, and commended him to watch all night. Now we to the lady of the same cast thought much upon Beaumains, then she called unto her Sir C. more her brother, and prayed him
as he loved her heartily, that
ride after Sir Beaumains, and
ye wait upon him till ye may
sleeping, for I am sure in his
he will alight down in some
lay him down to sleep; and
have ye your wait upon him,
e prviest manner ye can, take,
and go ye your way with him
ever ye may or Sir Beaumains
For my sister Linet telleth me
an tell of what kindred he is
what is his right name. And
while I and my sister will ride:
castle to await when ye bring
the dwarf. And then when ye
ught him unto your castle I
him in examination myself: ttime I know what is his right
of what kindred he is come,
ever be merry at my heart.
Sir Gringamore, all this shall
after your intent. And so he
he other day and the night till
round Sir Beaumains lying by
his head upon his shield,
. And then when he saw Sir
is fast on sleep, he came stily
behind the dwarf, and plucked
under his arm, and so he rode
him as fast as ever he might
own castle. And this Sir Grin
arms were all black, and that
longed. But ever as he rode
dwarf toward his castle, he
his lord and prayed him of
nd therewith awoke Sir Beau
up he left lightly, and saw
Gringamore rode his way with
, and so Sir Gringamore rode
ight.

CHAP. XX.
Beaumains rode after to rescue
d, and came into the castle
he was.
Sir Beaumains put on his helm
buckled his shield, and took:
and rode after him all that
ight ride, through marshes and
great dales, that many times
and he plunged over the head
in deep mires, for he knew not the way,
but took the gainest way in that fury,
that many times he was like to perish.
And at the last him happened to come
to a fair green way, and there he
met with a poor man of the country
whom he saluted, and asked him
whether he met not with a knight
upon a black horse and all black harn
ness, and a little dwarf sitting behind
him with heavy cheer. Sir, said this
poor man, here by me came Sir Grin
amore the knight, with such a dwarf
mourning as ye say, and therefore I
counsel you not follow him, for he is
one of the most perilous knights of the
world, and his castle is here nigh hand
but two mile, therefore we advise you
ride not after Sir Gringamore, but if
ye owe him good will.

So leave we Sir Beaumains riding to
ward the castle, and speak we of Sir
Gringamore and the dwarf. Anon as
the dwarf was come to the castle, dame
Liones and dame Linet her sister, asked
the dwarf where was his master born,
and of what lineage he was come? And
but if thou tell me, said dame Liones,
thou shalt never escape this castle, but
ever here to be prisoner. As for that,
said the dwarf, I fear not greatly to tell
his name, and of what kin he is come.
Wit ye well he is a king's son, and his
mother is sister to king Arthur, and he
is brother to the good knight Sir Ga
waine, and his name is Sir Gareth of
Orkney. And now I have told you his
right name, I pray you, fair lady, let me
go to my lord again, for he will never
out of this country until that he have me
again. And if he be angry he will do
much harm or that he be stint, and work
you wrack in this country. As for that
threatening, said Sir Gringamore, be it
as it be may, we will go to dinner. And
so they washed and went to meat; and
made them merry and well at ease, and
because the lady Liones of the castle
was there they made great joy. Truly
madam, said Linet unto her sister, well
may he be a king's son, for he hath
many good taches on him, for he is
courteous and mild, and the most suffe-
ing man that ever I met withall. For I dare say there was never gentlewoman reviled man in so foul manner as I have rebuked him; and at all times he gave me goodly and meek answers again. And as they sat thus talking, there came Sir Gareth in at the gate with an angry countenance, and his sword drawn in his hand, and cried aloud that all the castle might hear it, saying, Thou traitor Sir Gringamore, deliver me my dwarf again, or by the faith that I owe to the order of knighthood, I shall do thee all the harm that I can. Then Sir Gringamore looked out at a window and said, Sir Gareth of Orkney, leave thy boasting words, for thou gettest not thy dwarf again. Thou coward knight, said Sir Gareth, bring him with thee, and come and do battle with me, and win him and take him. So will I do, said Sir Gringamore, and me list, but for all thy great words thou gettest him not. Ah! fair brother, said dame Liones, I would he had his dwarf again, for I would he were not wroth, for now he hath told me all my desire I keep no more of the dwarf. And also, brother, he hath done much for me, and delivered me from the red knight of the red lawns, and therefore, brother, I owe him my service afore all knights living. And wit ye well that I love him before all other, and full fain I would speak with him. But in no wise I would that he wist what I were, but that he were another strange lady. Well, said Sir Gringamore, since I know now your will, I will obey now unto him. And right therewithall he went down unto Sir Gareth, and said, Sir, I cry you mercy, and all that I have misdone I will amend it at your will. And therefore I pray you that ye would alight, and take such cheer as I can make you in this castle. Shall I have my dwarf? said Sir Gareth. Yea, sir, and all the pleasure that I can make you; for as soon as your dwarf told me what ye were, and of what blood ye are come, and what noble deeds ye have done in these marches, then I repented of my deeds. And then Sir Gareth alight, and there came his dwarf a horse. O my fellow, said I have had many adventures sake. And so Sir Gringamore by the hand, and led him to hall where his own wife was.

CHAP. XXI.
How Sir Gareth, otherwise a man, came to the presence and how they took acquaint their love.

And then came forth d arrayed like a princess, and made him passing good cheer again. And they had language and lovely countenance. And Sir Gareth thought: Would that the lady of the famous were so fair as she were all manner of games and dancing and singing. And more Sir Gareth beheld the more he loved her, and so in love that he was past his reason. And forth towardwent unto supper, and Sir Gareth not eat for his love was so wist not where he was. All espied Sir Gringamore, and supper he called his sister daughter unto a chamber and said, I have well espied your court between you and this knight, and ye wit that ye is a full noble knight and if ye can make him to will do to him all the pleasure ye can, for ye were better ye were well bestowed upon. brother, said dame Liones, I well that the knight is good knight he is of a noble house. Nothing I will assay him better, I am most beholding to him of man, for he hath had great and my love, and passed many a passage. Right so Sir Gringamore unto Sir Gareth and said, Sir, good cheer, for ye shall have cause, for this lady my sister at all times, her worship said ye well she loveth you as we
OF THE LADY LINET’S ENCHANTMENTS.

After if better may be. And I said Sir Gareth, there lived a better man than I would be. Worship, said Sir Gringamore, by promise; and as long as I shall sojourn with me, and shall be with us daily and make you all the cheer that I will, said Sir Gareth, promised to be nigh this twelvemonth. And well I know Arthur and other noble I find me where that I am twelvemonth. For I shall find, if that I be on live. he noble knight Sir Gareth the dame Lions, which he loved, and kissed her many times. She either made great joy of it, there she promised him her life to love him and none lays of her life. Then this Lion, by the assent of her lord Sir Gareth all the truth was, and how she was the that he did battle for, and as lady of the castle perilous. she told him how she caused to take away his dwarf.

CHAP. XXII.

But, came an armed knight and Sir Gareth, and be, sore at the thigh, smote off the knight’s cause, to know the certainty of your name, and of what kin me. And then she let fetch Linet the damsel, which had him many dreary ways. Sir Gareth more gladder than fore. And then they troth other to love, and never to their life lasted. And at after made clean avoidance, that any man should go unto his lady should go unto his Sir Gareth said plainly that no no further than the hall, places, he said, was an errant knight to take his and so there were ordained roses, and thereon feather beds, and there lay him down to sleep. And within awhile he looked afore him and perceived and saw come an armed knight, with many lights about him. And this knight had a long battle-axe in his hand, and made grim countenance to smite him. When Sir Gareth saw him come in that wise, he kept out of his bed, and got in his hand his sword, and kept straight toward that knight. And when the knight saw Sir Gareth come so fiercely upon him, he smote him with a thrust through the thigh, that the wound was a shaft broad, and had cut a two many veins and sinews. And therewithal Sir Gareth smote him upon the helm such a buffet that he fell groveling, and then he left over him, and unlaced his helm, and smote off his head from the body. And then he bled so fast that he might not stand, but so he laid him down upon his bed, and there he swooned, and lay as he had been dead. Then dame Lions found him, and cried aloud, that her brother Sir Gringamore heard and came down. And when he saw Sir Gareth so shamefully wounded, he was sore displeased, and said, I am shamed that this noble knight is thus honoured. Sister, said Sir Gringamore, How may this be that ye be here, and this noble knight wounded? Brother, said dame Lions, I cannot tell you, for it was not done by me, nor by mine assent. For he is my lord, and I am his, and he must be my husband, therefore, brother, I will that ye wit I shame me not to be with him, nor to do him all the pleasure that I can. Sister, said Sir Gringamore, and I will that ye wit it, and Sir Gareth both, that it was never done by me nor by mine assent that this unhappy deed was done. And there they stanch'd his bleeding as well as they might. And great sorrow made Sir Gringamore and dame Lions. And thither came dame Linet and took up the head in the sight of them all, and anointed it with an ointment as it was smitten off, and in the same wise she did to the other part there as the head stuck, and
then she set it together, and it stuck as fast as ever it did. And the knight arose lightly up, and the damsel Linet put him in her chamber. All this saw Sir Gringamore and dame Liones, and so did Sir Garrett, and well he espied that it was the damsel Linet that rode with him through the perilous passages. Ah well, damsel, said Sir Garrett, I wend ye would not have done as ye have done. My lord Garrett, said the damsel Linet, all that I have done I will avow, and all that I have done shall be for your honour and worship, and to us all. And so within a while, Sir Garrett was nigh whole, and waxed light and jocund, and sang, danced, and gamed. And at night, because he was wounded afore, he laid his armour and his sword nigh his bed side.

CHAP. XXIII.

How the said knight came again the next night, and was beheaded again. And how at the feast of Pentecost all the knights that Sir Gareth had overcome came and yielded them to king Arthur.

Right as soon as Sir Garrett was in his bed he espied an armed knight coming toward the bed, and therewith he leaped lightly out, and they hurtled together with great ire and malice all about the hall, and there was great light as it had been the number of twenty torches both before and behind, so that Sir Garrett strained him so that his old wound burst out again bleeding, but he was hot and courageous, and took no keep, but with his great force he struck down that knight, and voided his helm and struck off his head. Then he hewed the head in an hundred pieces. And when he had done so, he took up all those pieces and threw them out at a window into the ditches of the castle; and by this done he was so faint that scarcely he might stand for bleeding. And then he fell in a deadly swoon in the floor. And then dame Liones found him, and cried so that Sir Gringamore heard. And when he came and found Sir Garrett in that plight, he made great sorrow, and there he awaked Sir Gareth, and gave him a drink made there tongue tell, for she so fared with as she would have died. Right this damsel Linet before them she had fetched all the gobbe head that Sir Garrett had throw a window, and there she anoint as she had done tofore, and together again. Well, damsel said Sir Garrett, I have not des this despite that ye do unto knight, she said, I have noth but I will avow, and all that done shall to your worship i all. And then was Sir Garrett of his bleeding. But the lest that there was no man that life should heal him througho wound, but if they healed caused that stroke by enchantr So leave we Sir Garrett th Sir Gringamore and his sisters, we unto king Arthur, that at feast of Pentecost held his f there came the green knight with knights, and yielded them all up Arthur. And so there came knight, his brother, and yielded king Arthur, and threescore with him. Also there came knight, brother to them, with dred knights, and yielded th king Arthur. And the green name was Pertelope, and knight's name was Perimenes, blue knight's name was Sir P Inde. These three brethren to Arthur how they were overcome knight that a damsel had called him Beaumains. By n said the king, I marvel what k is, and of what lineage he is or was with me a twelvemonth, an and shamefully he was fostered, Kay in scorn named him Be. So right as the king stood so with these three brethren the Sir Launcelot du Lake, and king that there was come a got with six hundred knights wi Then the king went out of Ca
OF KING ARTHUR'S NEXT FEAST.

he feast, and there came to
and saluted the king in a
ner. What will ye? said
r, and what is your errand?
name is the red knight
lawns, but my name is Sir
sd, sir, wit ye well here I am
of a knight that is called
for he won me in plain
for hand, and so did never
but he that ever had the
me this thirty winter, the
manded to yield me to you
. Ye are welcome, said the
have been long a great foe
to my court, and now I trust
entreat you that ye shall be
Sir, both I and these six
ights shall always be at your
do service as may
powers. Truly, said king
m much beholding unto that
thath so put his body in
worship me and my court.
thee, Ironside, that art called
ght of the red lawns, thou art
splendid knight. And if thou
me I shall worship thee and
knight of the Table Round:
ought must be no more a
Sir, as to that I have pro-
Sir Beumains never more to
ustoms, for all the shameful
hat I used I did at the request
that I loved; and therefore I
nto Sir Launcelot, and unto
me, and ask them forgiveness
ill I had unto them, for
out to death was all only for
Sir Launcelot and Sir Ga-
ney be here now, said the
thee, now may ye say to
ye will. And then he
unto Sir Launcelot and
waine, and prayed them of
his enmity that ever he
them.

CHAP. XXIV.

Arthur pardoned them, and de-
t them where Sir Gareb was.
byly they said all at once,
e you, and we do, and pray
you that ye will tell us where we may
find Sir Beumains. Fair lords, said
Sir Ironside, I cannot tell you, for it is
full hard to find him, for all such young
knights as he is one, when they be in
their adventures be never abiding in one
place. But to say the worship that the
red knight of the red lawns and Sir
Persant and his brothers said of Beu-
mains it was marvel to hear. Well, my
fair lords, said king Arthur, wit ye
well I shall do you honour for the love
of Sir Beumains, and as soon as ever
I meet with him I shall make you all
upon one day knights of the Table
Round. And as to thee, Sir Persant of
Inde, thou hast ever been called a full
noble knight, and so have ever been thry
three brethren called. But I marvel,
said the king, that I hear not of the
black knight your brother, he was a full
noble knight. Sir, said Pertolepe the
green knight, Sir Beumains slew him
in a recounter with his spear, his name
was Sir Percard. That was great pity,
said the king, and so said many knights.
For these four brethren were full well
known in the court of king Arthur for
noble knights, for long time they had
holden war against the knights of the
Table Round. Then said Pertolepe
the green knight unto the king: At a
passage of the water of Mortaise there
encountered Sir Beumains with two
brethren that ever for the most part
kept that passage, and they were two
deadly knights, and there he slew the
eldest brother in the water, and smote
him upon the head such a buffet that he
fell down in the water and there he was
drowned, and his name was Gherard le
Breusse: and after he slew the other
brother upon the land, and his name
was Sir Arnold le Breusse.

CHAP. XXV.

How the queen of Orkney came to this feast
of Pentecost, and Sir Gawaine and his
brethren came to ask her blessing.

So then the king and they went to
meat, and were served in the best man-
ner. And as they sat at the meat, there
came in the queen of Orkney, with ladies and knights a great number. And then Sir Gawaine, Sir Agrain and Gaheris arose and went to her, and saluted her upon their knees and asked her blessing: for in fifteen year they had not seen her. Then she spake on high to her brother king Arthur: Where have ye done my young son Sir Gareth. He was here amongst you a twelve-month, and ye made a kitchen knife of him, the which is shame to you all. Alas, where have ye done my dear son that was my joy and bliss? Oh dear mother, said Sir Gawaine, I knew him not. Nor I, said the king, that now me repenteth, but thanked be God he is proved a worshipful knight as any is now living of his years, and I shall never be glad till I may find him. Ah brother, said the queen unto king Arthur, and to Sir Gawaine, and to all her sons, ye did yourself great shame when ye amongst you kept my son Gareth in the kitchen and fed him like a poor hog. Fair sister, said king Arthur, ye shall right well wit I knew him not, nor no more did Sir Gawaine nor his brethren. But since it is so that he is thus gone from us all, we must shape a remedy to find him. Also, sister, me seemeth ye might have done me to wit of his coming, and then, and I had not done well to him, ye might have blamed me. For when he came to this court he came leaning upon two men's shoulders, as though he might not have gone. And then he asked me three gifts, and one he asked the same day, that was that I would give him meat enough that twelvemonth. And the other two gifts he asked that day a twelvemonth, and that was that he might have the adventure of the damsel Linet, and the third was that Sir Launcelot should make him knight when he desired him. And so I granted him all his desire, and many in this court marvelled that he desired his sustenance for a twelvemonth, and thereby we deemed many of us that he was not come of a noble house. Sir, said the queen of Orkney unto king Arthur her brother, wit you well that I sent him unto you right well armed, and worshipfully beseeched, body, and gold and silver plentiful. It may be, said the king thereof saw we none, save that day as he departed from us, I told me that there came a dawdle suddenly, and brought him arms of a good horse, full well and richly seen, and thereat we had all marvel, whence that riches came, that we all knew all that he was come of men of war. Brother, said the queen, all that I believe, for ever since he was here he was marvellously witted; and he was faithful and true of his part. But I marvel, said she, that Sir Launcelot mock him and scorn him, and gave that name Beaumains: yet Sir Kyan the queen, named him more right than he wend; for I dare say, he be on live, he is as fair an handy man and well disposed as any is. Sister, said Arthur, let this language be still, and by the grace of God he shall be found and he be within these realms; and let all this pass, as merry, for he is proved to be a true worship and that is my joy.

CHAP. XXVI.

How king Arthur sent for the lady and how she let cry a tourney castle, where as came many knights.

Then said Sir Gawaine at brethren unto Arthur, Sir, and we give us leave we will go and see our brother. Nay, said Sir Launcelot, shall ye not need, and so said Baudwin of Britain: for as by office the king shall send unto Lionis a messenger, and pray he she will come to the court in haste that she may, and doubt she will come, and then she may ye best counsel where ye shall find him. This is well said of you, sir king. So then goodly letters were and the messenger sent forth, that day and day he went till he came unto castle perilous. And then thence dame Lionis was sent for there
HOW DAME LIONES CRIED A TOURNAMENT.

Sir Gringamore her brother reth. And when she under-
nessage, she bad him ride on 
unto king Arthur, and she 
ner after in all goodly haste. 
she came to Sir Gringamore 
Gareth, she told them all 
Arthur had sent for her. Tha 
of me, said Sir Gareth. Now 
said dame Liones, what shall 
in what manner I shall rule 
ady and my love, said Sir 
pray you in no manner of 
aknown where I am, but well 
mother is there and all my 
ad they will take upon them 
; and I wot well that they 
this, madam, I would ye said 
the king, when he question-
me: then may ye say, 
advice, that, and it like his 
, ye will do make a cry 
feast of the Assumption of 
that what knight there 
best, he shall weld you 
and. And if so be that 
lced man, that his wife shall 
gree and a coronal of gold, 
stones of virtue to the value 
and pound, and a white jere-

Liones departed and came 
thur, where she was nobly 
dod there she was sore ques-
he king, and of the queen 
And she answered, where 
was she could not tell. 
uch she said unto Arthur; 
let cry a tournament, that 
one before my castle at the 
ay of our Lady, and the cry 
is, that you my lord Arthur 
e and your knights, and I 
y, that my knights shall be 
s; and then I am sure ye 
of Sir Gareth. This is well 
d king Arthur: and so she 
And the king and she made 
ision for that tournament. 
e Liones was come to the 
illon, that was the same 
as her brother Sir Gringam 
then she told him all how 
she had done, and what promise she 
had made to king Arthur. Alas, said 
Sir Gareth, I have been so wounded by 
mishap sithen I came into this castle, 
that I shall not be able to do at that 
tournament like a knight, for I was 
ever thoroughly whole since I was 
hurt. Be ye of good cheer, said the 
damsel Linet, for I undertake within 
these fifteen days for to make you 
whole, and as lusty as ever ye were. 
And then she laid an ointment and a 
salve to him as it pleased her, that he 
was never so fresh nor so lusty. Then 
said the damsel Linet: Send you unto 
Sir Persant of Inde, and summon him 
and his knights to be here with you as 
they have promised. Also, that ye 
send unto Sir Ironside, that is the red 
knight of the red lawns, and charge him 
that he be ready with you with his 
whole sum of knights, and then shall 
ye be able to match with king Arthur 
and his knights. So this was done, and 
all knights were sent for unto the castle 
perilous. And then the red knight 
answered and said unto dame Liones, 
and to Sir Gareth, Madam, and my 
lord Sir Gareth, ye shall understand 
that I have been at the court of king 
Arthur, and Sir Persant of Inde and his 
brthren, and there we have done our 
homage as ye commanded us. Also, 
Sir Ironside said, I have taken upon 
me with Sir Persant of Inde and his 
brthren to hold party against my lord 
Sir Launcelot and the knights of that 
court. And this have I done for the 
love of my lady dame Liones, and you 
my lord Sir Gareth. Ye have well 
done, said Sir Gareth. But wit you well 
ye shall be full sore matched with the 
most noble knights of the world, there-
fore we must purvey us of good knights, 
where we may get them. That is well 
said, said Sir Persant, and worshipfully. 
And so the cry was made in England, 
Wales, and Scotland, Ireland, and Corn-
wall, and in all the out isles, and in 
Britany, and in many countries; that 
at the feast of the Assumption of our 
Lady next coming, men should come to 
the castle perilous, beside the Isle of
Avilion, and there all the knights that there came should have the choice whether them list to be on the one party with the knights of the castle, or on the other party with king Arthur. And two months was to the day that the tournament should be. And so there came many good knights that were at large, and held them for the most part against king Arthur and his knights of the Round Table, and came on the side of them of the castle. For Sir Epinogrus was the first, and he was the king's son of Northumberland, and Sir Palamides the Saracen was another, and Sir Safere his brother, and Sir Sagwarides his brother, but they were christened, and Sir Malegrine another, and Sir Brian de les Isles, a noble knight, and Sir Grummore Gummursum, a good knight of Scotland, and Sir Carados of the dolorous tower, a noble knight, and Sir Turquin his brother, and Sir Arnold and Sir Gauter, two brethren, good knights of Cornwall: there came Sir Tristram de Liones, and with him Sir Dinadan the seneschal and Sir Sadok; but this Sir Tristram was not at that time knight of the Table Round, but he was one of the best knights of the world. And so all these noble knights accompanied them with the lady of the castle, and with the red knight of the red lawns, but as for Sir Gareth, he would not take upon him more but as other mean knights.

CHAP. XXVII.

How king Arthur went to the tournament with his knights, and how the lady received him worshipfully, and how the knights encountered.

And then there came with king Arthur Sir Gawaine, Agravaine and Gaheri, his brethren. And then his nephews Sir Uwayne le Blanchemains, and Sir Aglovale, Sir Tor, Sir Percivale de Galis, and Sir Lamorak de Galis. Then came Sir Launcelot du Lake with his brethren, nephews, and cousins, as Sir Lionel, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Bors de Ganis, and Sir Galihodin, Sir Galihud, and many more of Sir Laur and Sir Dinadan, Sir I Taile his brother, a good Sir Sagramore, a good knight of the most part of the land. Also there came with king Carados, and king Urien of Gore, and king Bagden son Sir Meliaganus, and the noble prince. All princes, earls, barons, and knights, as Sir Brandile les Avoutres, and Sir Kay Sir Meliot de Logris, Sir Winchelsea, Sir Godelak came with king Arthur, as that cannot be rehearsed.

Now leave we of the knights, and let us speak of the array that was made within about the castle for both lady dame Liones ordaine upon her part for her nob all manner of lodging and came by land and by wat lacked nothing for her the other, but there was had for gold and silver fo and his knights. And the harbinger from the king, harbour him and his kings barons, and knights. A Gareth prayed dame Liones se Gareth, Sir, I will lend ye I would pray you as ye love me to have it again wh that nament is done, for that ri my beauty much more than And the virtue of my ring green it will turn to red, a it will turn in likeness to g is blue it will turn to liker
CHAP. XXVIII.

How the knights bare them in battle.

Then Sir Brian de les Isles, and Grummore Grummosum, knights of the castle, encountered with Sir Agloval and Sir Tor, and Sir Tor smote down Sir Grummore Grummosum to the earth. Then came in Sir Carados of the dolorous tower, and Sir Turquine, knights of the castle, and there encountered with them Sir Percivale de Galis and Sir Lamorak de Galis, that were two brethren, and there encountered Sir Percivale with Sir Carados, and either brake their spears unto their hands, and then Sir Turquine with Sir Lamorak, and either of them smote down other, horse and all, to the earth, and either parties rescued other and horsed them again. And Sir Arnold, and Sir Gauter, knights of the castle, encountered with Sir Brindiles and Sir Kay, and these four knights encountered mightily, and brake their spears to their hands. Then came in Sir Tristram, and Sir Saduk, and Sir Dinas, knights of the castle, and there encountered Sir Tristram with Sir Bedivere, and there Sir Bedivere was smitten to the earth, both horse and man: and Sir Saduk encountered with Sir Petipase, and there Sir Saduk was overthrown. And there Uwaine les Avoutres smote down Sir Dinas the seneschal. Then came in Sir Persant of Inde, a knight of the castle, and there encountered with him Sir Launcelot du Lake, and there he smote Sir Persant, horse and man, to the earth. Then came Sir Pertolope from the castle, and there encountered with him Sir Lionel, and there Sir Pertolope the green knight smote down Sir Lionel, brother to Sir Launcelot. All this was marked by noble heralds, who bare him best, and their names. And then came into the field Sir Perimones the red knight, Sir Persant's brother, that was a knight of the castle, and he encountered with Sir Ector de Maris, and either smote other so hard that both their horses and they fell to the earth. And then came in the red knight of the red lawns, and Sir Gareth, from the castle,
and there encountered with them Sir Bors de Ganis and Sir Bleoberis, and there the red knight and Sir Bors smote other so hard that their spears brast, and their horses fell groveling to the earth. Then Sir Bleoberis brake his spear upon Sir Gareth, but of that stroke Sir Bleoberis fell to the earth. When Sir Galihodin saw that, he bad Sir Gareth keep him, and Sir Gareth smote him to the earth. Then Sir Galihud gat a spear to avenge his brother, and in the same wise Sir Gareth served him, and Sir Dinadan and his brother La Cote Male Taille, and Sir Sagramor le Desirous, and Sir Dodinas le Savage; all these he bare down with one spear. When king Agwisance of Ireland saw Sir Gareth fare so he marvelled what he might be, that one time seemed green, and another time, at his again coming, he seemed blue. And thus at every course that he rode to and fro he changed his colour, so that there might neither king nor knight have ready cognisance of him. Then Sir Agwisance the king of Ireland encountered with Sir Gareth, and there Sir Gareth smote him from his horse, saddle and all. And then came king Carados of Scotland, and Sir Gareth smote him down, horse and man. And in the same wise he served king Uriens of the land of Gore. And then there came in Sir Bagdemagus, and Sir Gareth smote him down horse and man to the earth. And Bagdemagus’s son Meliganus brake a spear upon Sir Gareth mightily and knightly. And then Sir Galahault the noble prince cried on high, Knight with the many colours, well hast thou justed; now make thee ready that I may just with thee. Sir Gareth heard him, and he gat a great spear, and so they encountered together, and there the prince brake his spear: but Sir Gareth smote him upon the left side of the helm, that he reeled here and there, and he had fallen down had not his men recovered him. Truly, said king Arthur, that knight with the many colours is a good knight. Wherefore the king called unto him Sir Launcelot, and prayed him to encounte knight. Sir, said Launcelot, find in my heart for to forbes this time, for he hath had trait this day, and when a good I so well upon some day, it knight’s part to let him of till and, namely, when he seeth hath done so great labour: venture, said Sir Launcelot, is here this day, and peradvice best beloved with this lady be here, for I see well he p self and enforce him to do; and therefore, said Sir Launce me, this day he shall have t’ though it lay in my power from it, I would not.

CHAP. XXIX.

Yet of the said Tourna

Then when this was ó was drawing of swords; there began a sore tourna there did Sir Lamorak deeds of arms, and betwixt rak and Sir Ironside, that v knight of the red lawns, tl strong battle, and betwixt Si and Bleoberis was a strong Sir Gawaine and Sir Tristra there Sir Gawaine had the he pulled Sir Gawaine from and there he was long up defouled. Then came in Sir and he smote Sir Turquoise; and then came Sir Carados; and both at once they assails he, as the most nobllest kr world, worshipfully fought both, that all men wonde nobleness of Sir Launcelot. came in Sir Gareth and kr was Sir Launcelot that f those two perilous knights. Sir Gareth came with his and hurled them in sundr stroke would he smite to Sir That espied Sir Launcelot, it should be the good knight; and then Sir Gareth rode her and smote on the right hand
How Sir Gareth was known.

CHAP. XXX.

How Sir Gareth was espied by the heralds, and how he escaped out of the field.

But before he was in so many colours, and now he is but in one colour, that is yellow: now go, said King Arthur unto divers heralds, and ride about him, and espy what manner knight he is, for I have asked of many knights this day that be upon his party, and all say they know him not. And so an herald rode nigh Gareth as he could, and there he saw written about his helm in gold, This helm is Sir Gareth's of Orkney. Then the herald cried as he were wood, and many heralds with him, This is Sir Gareth of Orkney, in the yellow arms, that all kings and knights of Arthur's beheld him and awaited, and then they pressed all to behold him: and ever the heralds cried, This is Sir Gareth of Orkney, king Lot's son. And when Sir Gareth espied that he was discovered, then he doubled his strokes, and smote down Sir Sagramore, and his brother Sir Gawaine. O brother, said Sir Gawaine, I wend ye would not have stricken me. So when he heard him say so, he thrang here and there, and so with great pain he got out of the press, and there he met with his dwarf. O boy, said Sir Gareth, thou hast beguiled me foul this day that thou kept my ring. Give it me anon again, that I may hide my body withal; and so he took it him. And then they all wisht not where he was become; and Sir Gawaine had in manner espied where Sir Gareth rode, and then he rode after with all his might. That espied Sir Gareth, and rode lightly into the forest, that Sir Gawaine wist not where he was become. And when Sir Gareth wist that Sir Gawaine was past, he asked the dwarf of best counsel. Sir, said the dwarf, me seemeth it were best, now that ye are
escaped from spying, that ye send my lady dame Lioness her ring. It is well advised, said Sir Gareth; now have it here, and bear it to her, and say that I recommend me unto her good grace, and say I will come when I may, and I pray her to be true and faithful to me, as I will be to her. Sir, said the dwarf, it shall be done as ye command: and so he rode his way, and did his errand unto the lady. Then she said, Where is my knight Sir Gareth? Madam, said the dwarf, he bad me say that he would not be long from you. And so lightly the dwarf came again unto Sir Gareth, that would fain have had a lodging, for he had need to be repos'd. And then fell there a thunder and a rain, as heaven and earth should go together. And Sir Gareth was not a little weary, for of all that day he had but little rest, neither his horse nor he. So this Sir Gareth rode so long in that forest until the night came. And ever it lightened and thundered, as it had been wood. At the last by fortune he came to a castle, and there he heard the waits upon the walls.

CHAP. XXXI.

How Sir Gareth came to a castle where he was well lodged, and how he justed with a knight and slew him.

Then Sir Gareth rode unto the barbican of the castle, and prayed the porter fair to let him into the castle. The porter answered ungoodly again, and said, Thou gettest no lodging here. Fair sir, say not so, for I am a knight of king Arthur’s, and pray the lord or the lady of this castle to give me harbour for the love of king Arthur. Then the porter went unto the duchess, and told her how there was a knight of king Arthur’s would have harbour. Let him in, said the duchess, for I will see that knight, and for king Arthur’s sake he shall not be harbourless. Then she went up into a tower over the gate, with great torch light. When Sir Gareth saw that torch light, he cried on high, Whether thou be lord or lady, giant or champion, I take no force, so that I bourn this night, and if it must needs fight, spare me when I have rested me, for my horse be weary. Sir, said the lady, thou speakest boldly, but wit thou well of this castle loveth not nor none of his court, for ever been against him, thou were better not to this castle. For and thou night, thou must come into form, that wheresoever the lord, by lane, or by stre yield thee to him as pris, said Sir Gareth, what is y what is his name? Sir, n is the duke de la Rowe. said Sir Gareth, I shall what place I meet your lord me unto him and to his with that I understand he harm: and if I understand will I release myself and I spear and with my sword. said the duchess, and the draw-bridge down. And into the hall, and there his horse was led into a, the hall he unarmed his Madam, I will not out of night; and when it is day who will have ado with find me ready. Then wa supper, and had many. Then Sir Gareth list wel knightly he ate his meat, there was many a fair lad some of them said they goodlier man, nor so w. Then they made him a cheer. And shortly when ped, his bed was made rested him all night. And he heard mass, and broke took his leave at the du them all, and thanked her lodging, and of his And then she asked him Madam, said he, truly, Gareth of Orkney, and some Beaumains. Then kn
same knight that fought for
ones. So Sir Gareth departed,
up into a mountain, and there
a knight, his name was Sir
e, and said to Sir Gareth,
alt not pass this way, for either
alt just with me, or be my pri-
then will I just, said Sir Gareth.
they let their horses run, and
Gareth smote him throughout
, and Sir Bendelaine rode forth
castle there beside, and there died.
Gareth would have rested him,
came riding to Bendelaine's
Then his knights and his ser-
ield that it was he that had
er lord. Then they armed
good men, and came out and
Sir Gareth, and so he had
r, but his sword, and put his
ore him, and there they brake
ars upon him, and they assailed
ngly sore. But ever Sir Gareth
him as a knight.

CHAP. XXXII.

Gareth fought with a knight that
within his castle thirty ladies, and
slew him.

then they saw that they might
come him, they rode from him
their counsel to slay his horse,
they came in upon Sir Gareth,
spears they slew his horse, in
they assailed him hard. But
ere was on foot there was none
ought but he gave him such a
at he did never recover. So he
m by one and one till they were
, and there they fled, and Sir
ook a good horse that was one
, and rode his way. Then he
great pace till that he came to a
and there he heard much mourn-
adies and gentlewomen. So
me by him a page: What noise
said Sir Gareth, that I hear
his castle? Sir knight, said the
ere be within this castle thirty
all they be widows, for here
ight that waiteth daily upon this
his name is the brown knight
without pity, and he is the most perilous
knight that now liveth. And, therefore,
sir, said the page, I rede you flee. Nay,
said Sir Gareth, I will not flee, though
thou be afraid of him. And then the
page saw where came the brown knight.
Lo, said the page, yonder he cometh.
Let me deal with him, said Sir Gareth.
And when either of other had a sight,
they let their horses run, and the brown
knight brake his spear, and Sir Gareth
smote him throughout the body, that
he overthrew him to the ground stark
dead. So Sir Gareth rode into the
castle, and prayed the ladies that he
might repose him. Alas, said the ladies,
ye may not be lodged here. Make him
good cheer, said the page, for this knight
hath slain your enemy. Then they all
made him good cheer as lay in their
power. But wit ye well they made him
good cheer, for they might none other-
wise do, for they were but poor. And
so on the morn he went to mass, and
there he saw the thirty ladies kneel, and
lay groveling upon divers tombs, making
great dole and sorrow. Then Sir Gareth
wist well that in the tombs lay their
lords. Fair ladies, said Sir Gareth, ye
must at the next feast of Pentecost be
at the court of king Arthur, and say
that I Sir Gareth sent you thither. We
shall do this, said the ladies. So he
departed, and by fortune he came to a
mountain, and there he found a goodly
knight that bad him, Abide Sir knight,
and just with me. What are ye? said
Sir Gareth. My name is, said he, the
duke de la Rowe. Ah! Sir, ye are the
same knight that I lodged once in your
castle, and there I made promise unto
your lady that I should yield unto
you. Ah! said the duke, art thou that
proud knight that proffered to fight with
my knights? therefore make thee ready,
for I will have ado with thee. So they
let their horses run, and there Sir Gareth
smote the duke down from his horse.
But the duke lightly avoided his horse,
and dressed his shield, and drew his
sword, and bad Sir Gareth alight and
fight with him. So he did alight, and
they did great battle together more than
an hour, and either hurt other full sore.
At the last Sir Gareth gat the duke to
the earth, and would have slain him, and
then he yielded him to him. Then must
ye go, said Sir Gareth, unto Sir Arthur
my lord at the next feast, and say that
I Sir Gareth of Orkney sent you unto
him. It shall be done, said the duke,
and I will do to you homage and fealty
with an hundred knights with me, and
all the days of my life to do you service
where ye will command me.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Gareth fought
each against other, and bow they knew
each other by the damsel Linet.

So the duke departed, and Sir Gareth
stood there alone, and there he saw an
armed knight coming toward him. Then
Sir Gareth took the duke’s shield and
mounted upon horseback, and so with-
out bidding they ran together as it had
been the thunder. And there that
knight hurt Sir Gareth under the side
with his spear. And then they alight
and drew their swords, and gave great
strokes, that the blood trailed to the
ground. And so they fought two hours.
At the last there came the damsel Linet,
that some men call the damsel Savage,
and she came riding upon an ambling
mule, and there she cried all on high,
Sir Gawaine, Sir Gawaine, leave thy
fighting with thy brother Sir Gareth.
And when he heard her say so he threw
away his shield and his sword, and ran
to Sir Gareth and took him in his arms,
and then kneeled down and asked him
mercy. What are ye, said Sir Gareth,
that right now were so strong and so
mighty, and now so suddenly yield you
to me? O Gareth, I am your brother
Sir Gawaine, that for your sake have
had great sorrow and labour. Then Sir
Gareth unlaced his helm, and kneeled
down to him and asked him mercy.
Then they rose both, and embraced
either other in their arms, and wept a
great while or they might speak, and
either of them gave other the prize of
the battle. And there were many kind
words between them. Alas, brother, said Sir Gawaine
ought of right to worship y
were not my brother, for ye
shipped king Arthur and all
for ye have sent him more
knight this twelvemonth th
best of the Round Table hav
cept Sir Launcelot. Then
damsel Savage, that was the
that rode with Sir Gareth
and there she did stanch Si
wounds and Sir Gawaine’s.
will ye do? said the damse
me seemeth it were well
Arthur had tidings of you
your horses are so bruised
may not bear. Now, fair d
Sir Gawaine, I pray you
my lord, mine uncle king, I
tell him what adventure is to
here, and I suppose he will
long. Then she took her
lightly she came to king Arth
but two miles thence, and
had told him the tidings, th
get him a palfrey. And wh
upon his back he had the
ladies come after who that v
there was saddling and bridlin
horses, and princes’ horses, ar
him that soonest might be
when the king came there as
he saw Sir Gawaine and Sir
upon a little hill side, and th
avoided his horse. And wh
nigh Sir Gareth he would ha
but he might not, and therew
down in a swoon for gladnes
they start unto their uncle, at
him of his good grace to l
comfort. Wit ye well the
great joy, and many a piteous
he made unto Sir Gareth, as
wept as he had been a ch
that came his mother the qu
ney, dame Morgause, and wh
Sir Gareth readily in the
might not weep, but sudden;
in a swoon, and lay there j
like as she had been dead.
Sir Gareth recomforted his
such a wise that she reco
ood cheer. Then the king com-
that all manner of knights that
under his obeisance should make
liging right there for the love of
ews. And so it was done, and
ner of purveyance purveyed that
ucked nothing that might be
of tame nor wild for gold or
And then by the means of the
Savage Sir Gawaine and Sir
were healed of their wounds,
ere they sojourned eight days.
did king Arthur unto the damsel
I marvel that your sister dame
cometh not here to me, and in
that she cometh not to visit her
my nephew Sir Gareth, that
sd so much travail for her love.
, said the damsel Linet, ye must
good grace hold her excused,
noweth not that my lord Sir
is here. Go then for her, said
thur, that we may be appointed
best to be done, according unto
asure of my nephew. Sir, said
selsel, that shall be done, and so
nto her sister. And as lightly
ight she made her ready,
 came on the morn with her
Sir Gringamore, and with her
ights. And so when she was
he had all the cheer that might
, both of the king and of many
ngs and queens.

CHAP. XXXIV.
Sir Gareth acknowledged that they
each other to king Arthur, and of
pointment of their wedding.

among all these ladies she was
the fairest and peerless. Then
Sir Gareth saw her, there was
goodly look and goodly words,
men of worship had joy to be-
m. Then came king Arthur and
her kings, and dame Guenever,
queen of Orkney. And there
asked his nephew Sir Gareth
he would have that lady to his
My lord, wit you well that I love
ve all ladies living. Now, fair
id king Arthur, what say ye?

Most noble king, said dame Liones, wit
you well that my lord Sir Gareth is to
me more lever to have and hold as my
husband, than any king or prince that
is christened, and if I may not have him
I promise you I will never have none.
For, my lord Arthur, said dame Liones,
wi ye well he is my first love, and he
shall be the last: and if ye will suffer
him to have his will and free choice, I
dare say he will have me. That is
truth, said Sir Gareth, and I have not
you and hold not you as my wife, there
shall never lady nor gentlewoman re-
joice me. What nephew, said the king,
is the wind in that door I for wit ye
well I would not for the stint of my
crown to be causer to withdraw your
hearts, and wit ye well ye cannot love
so well but I shall rather increase it
than distress it. And also ye shall have
my love and my lordship in the utter-
most wise that may lie in my power.
And in the same wise said Sir Gareth's
mother. Then was there made a pro-
vision for the day of marriage, and by
the king's advice it was provided that it
should be at Michaelmas following, at
Kinkenadon by the sea-side, for there is
a plentiful country. And so it was cried
in all the places through the realm. And
then Sir Gareth sent his summons unto
all these knights and ladies that he had
won in battle tofore, that they should
be at his day of marriage at Kinkenadon
by the sands. And then dame Liones
and the damsel Linet, with Sir Gringa-
more, rode to their castle, and a goodly
and a rich ring she gave to Sir Gareth,
and he gave her another. And king
Arthur gave her a rich bee of gold, and
so she departed. And king Arthur and
his fellowship rode toward Kinkenadon,
and Sir Gareth brought his lady on the
way, and so came to the king again and
rode with him. Oh the great cheer that
Sir Launcelot made of Sir Gareth and
he of him: for there was never no
knight that Sir Gareth loved so well
as he did Sir Launcelot, and ever for the
most part he would be in Sir Launce-
lot's company: for after Sir Gareth had
espied Sir Gawaine's conditions, he
withdrew himself from his brother Sir Gawaine's fellowship, for he was vengeable, and where he hated he would be avenged with murder, and that hated Sir Gareth.

CHAP. XXXV.
Of the great royalty, and what officers were made at the feast of the wedding, and of the justs at the feast.

So it drew fast to Michaelmas, and thither came dame Liones the lady of the castle perilous and her sister dame Linet, with Sir Gringamore their brother with them: for he had the conduct of these ladies. And there they were lodged at the devise of king Arthur. And upon Michaelmas-day the bishop of Canterbury made the wedding betwixt Sir Gareth and the lady Liones with great solemnity. And king Arthur made Gaheris to wed the damsel Savage, that was dame Linet; and king Arthur made Sir Agravaine to wed dame Liones' niece, a fair lady, her name was dame Laurel. And so when this solemnization was done, there came in the green knight Sir Pertolope with thirty knights, and there he did homage and fealty unto Sir Gareth, and these knights to hold of him for evermore. Also Sir Pertolope said, I pray you that at this feast I may be your chamberlain. With a good will, said Sir Gareth, sith it liketh you to take so simple an office. Then came in the red knight with threescore knights with him, and did to Sir Gareth homage and fealty, and all those knights to hold of him for evermore, and then this Sir Perimones prayed Sir Gareth to grant him to be his chief butler at that high feast. I will well, said Sir Gareth, that ye have this office and it were better. Then came in Sir Persant of Inde with an hundred knights with him, and there he did homage and fealty unto Sir Gareth, and all his knights should do him service, and hold their lands of him for ever; and there he prayed Sir Gareth to make him his sewer chief at the feast. I will well, said Sir Gareth, that ye have it and it were better. Then came in the duke de la Rowse with an hundred knights with him, and there he did homage and fealty unto Sir Gareth, and so to hold their lands of him for ever, and he required Sir Gareth that he might serve him of the wine that day at the feast. I will well, said Sir Gareth, and it were better. Then came in the red knight of the red lawns, that was Sir Ironside, and he brought with him three hundred knights, and there he did homage and fealty, and all these knights to hold their lands of him for ever, and then he asked Sir Gareth to be his overer. I will well, said Sir Gareth, and it please you. Then came into the court thirty ladies, and all they seemed widows, and those thirty ladies brought with them many fair gentlewomen; and all they kneeled down at once unto king Arthur and to Sir Gareth, and there all those ladies told the king how Sir Gareth had delivered them from the dolorous tower, and slew the brown knight without pity, and therefore we and our heirs for evermore will do homage unto Sir Gareth of Orkney. So then the kings and queens, princes, earls and barons, and many bold knights went unto meat, and well may ye wit that there was all manner of meat plenteously, all manner revels and games, with all manner of minstrelsy that was used in those days. Also there was great justs three days. But the king would not suffer Sir Gareth to just because of his new bride: for as the French book saith that dame Liones desired the king that none that were wedded should just at that feast. So the first day there justed Sir Lamonke de Galis, for he overthrew thirty knights and did passing marvellous deeds of arms. And then king Arthur made Sir Persant of Inde and his two brethren knights of the Round Table, to their lives' end, and gave them great lands. Also the second day there justed Trumam best, and he overthrew forty knights, and did there marvellous deeds of arms. And there king Arthur made Ironside, that was the red knight the red lawns, a knight of the Tab
his life’s end, and gave him
The third day there justed
at du Lake, and he over-
ights and did many mar-
ls of arms, that all men
him. And there king
the duke de la Rowse a
Round Table to his life’s
him great lands to spend.

But when these justs were done, Sir La-
morak and Sir Tristram departed sud-
denly and would not be known, for the
which king Arthur and all the court
were sore displeased. And so they held
the court forty days with great so-
lemnity. And this Sir Gareth was a
oble knight, and a well ruled, and fair
 languaged.

This tale of syr Gareth of Orkeney that wedded dame
of the castel peryllous. And also syr Gabris wedded her
name Agnet, that was called the damoyssel saueage. And
raunyue wedded dame Laurel a Fayr lady, and grete and
landes with grete rychesse gafe with them kyng Arthur,
ly they myght lyue tyl their lyues ende.

With the xii. book the which is the first book of Sir
n de Lyonnes, & who was his fader & his moder, & hue he
ne and fosteryd. And how he was made knyghte.

The Eighth Book.

CHAP. I.

Tristram de Liones was born,
his mother died at his birth,
he named him Tristram.

king that hight Meliodas,
or and king of the country
and this king Meliodas was
ght as any was that time
by fortune he wedded king
of Cornwall; and she was
beth, that was called both
ir. And at that time king
ed, and he was whole king
Wales, and Scotland, and
her realms: howbeit there
kings that were lords of
ries, but all they held their
eg Arthur. For in Wales
ngs, and in the north were
; and in Cornwall and in
re two kings; also in Ire-

land were two or three kings; and all
were under the obeisance of king
Arthur. So was the king of France,
and the king of Britany, and all the
lordships unto Rome. And the wife of
this king Meliodas was a full meek
lady, and well she loved her lord, and
he her again, and the time came that
she should bear a child, so there was
great joy betwixt them. Then was
there a lady in that country that had
loved king Meliodas long, and by no
mean she never could get his love,
therefore she let ordain upon a day,
as king Meliodas rode on hunting,
for he was a great chaser, and there by
an enchantment she made him chase an
hart by himself alone till that he came
to an old castle, and there anon he was
taken prisoner by the lady that him
loved. When Elizabeth king Meliodas
missed, her lord, she was high out of
her wit, and she took a gentlewoman
with her, and ran into the forest to seek her lord.

And when she was far in the forest she might no farther, for she began to travail fast of her child. And she had many grimly throws, and her gentlewoman holp her all that she might, and so by miracle of our Lady of heaven she was delivered with great pains. But she had taken such cold for the default of help that deep draughts of death took her, that needs she must die and depart out of this world, there was none other boot. And when this queen Elizabeth saw that there was none other boot, then she made great dole, and said unto her gentlewoman, When ye see my lord king Meliodes recommend me unto him, and tell him what pains I endure here for his love, and how I must die here for his sake, for default of good help, and let him wit that I am full sorry to depart out of this world from him, therefore pray him to be friend to my soul. Now let me see my little child for whom I have had all this sorrow. And when she saw him she said thus: Ah my little son, thou hast murdered thy mother, and therefore I suppose, thou that art a murderer so young, thou art full likely to be a manly man in thine age. And because I shall die of the birth of thee, I charge thee, gentlewoman, that thou beseech my lord king Meliodes, that when he is christened let call him Tristram, that is as much to say as a sorrowful birth. And therewith this queen gave up the ghost and died. Then the gentlewoman laid her under the shadow of a great tree, and then she lapped the child as well as she might for cold. Right so there came the barons, following after the queen, and when they saw that she was dead, and understood none other but the king was destroyed;

CHAP. II.

How the step-mother of Sir Tristram bad ordained poison for to have poisoned Sir Tristram.

Then certain of them would have slain the child, because they would have been lords of the country of. But then through the fair speech of the gentlewoman, and by the means she made, the most part of the barons would not assent thereto. And they let carry home the dead child, and much dole was made for her. Then this meanwhile Merlin divided king Meliodes out of prison, and morn after his queen was dead, so when the king was come home, the most part of the barons made great dole for her.

But the sorrow that the king made for his queen that might no tongue. So then the king let inter her. And after he let christen his child, his wife had commanded afore his death. And then he let call his child Tristram, the sorrowful born child. The king Meliodes endured seven days without a wife, and all this time young Tristram was nourished.

Then it befel that king Meliodes wedded king Howell's daughter of Britain, and anon she had borne of king Meliodes, then was she taken and wroth that her children should enjoy the country of Liones, where this queen ordained for to poison Sir Tristram. So she let poison to put into a piece of silver in the cup, where as Tristram and her child were together, unto that intent that Tristram was thirsty he should have that drink. And so it fell upon the queen's son, as he was in the chamber, espied the cup with poison, and he wend it had been good. And because the child was thirsty, he took the cup with poison and drank freely, and therewithal the sudden child brast, and was dead. Whereat the queen wist of the death of her son, and ye well that she was heavy. But the king understood nothing of treason. Notwithstanding these would not leave this, but evermore did ordain more poison, and put it into the cup. And by fortune king Meliodes and his husband found the cup with poison, where was the poison, and he that was much thirsty took the cup for to drink thereof. And as he would have
f, the queen espied him, and then unto him and pulled the cup him suddenly. The king mar why she did so, and remembered how her son was suddenly slain poison. And then he took her hand, and said, Thou false, thou shalt tell me what man drink this is, or else I shall see. And therewith he pulled out ord, and swore a great oath that would slay her but if she told him
Ah mercy my lord, said she, shall tell you all. And then she him why she would have slain him, because her children should his land. Well, said king Meliod armored shall ye have the law. So she was condemned by the of the barons to be burnt, and so there made a great fire. And as she was at the fire to take her young Tristram kneeled afore Meliodas, and besought him to him a boon. I will well, said the gain. Then said young Tristram, ne the life of thy queen, my stepr. That is unrightfully asked, Meliodas, for thou ought of to hate her, for she would have thee with that poison and she have had her will; and for thy most is my cause that she should Sir, said Tristram, as for that, I of your mercy that ye will it her, and as for my part God it her, and I do, and so much it your highness to grant me my or God's love I require you hold promise. Since it is so, said the will that ye have her life. Then e king, I give her to you, and go he fire and take her and do with that ye will. So Sir Tristram o the fire, and by the command of the king delivered her from the But after that king Meliodas never have ado with her as at d board. But by the good means Tristram he made the king accorded. But then the king not suffer young Tristram to no longer in his court.
great gifts; for every estate loved him where that he went.

CHAP. IV.
How Sir Marhaus came out of Ireland for to ask truage of Cornwall, or else be would fight therefore.

Then it befel that king Anguish of Ireland sent to king Mark of Cornwall for his truage, that Cornwall had paid many winters. And all that time king Mark was behind of the truage for seven years. And king Mark and his barons gave unto the messager of Ireland these words and answer, that they would none pay; and bad the messager go unto his king Anguish, and tell him we will pay him no truage, but tell your lord, and he will always have truage of us of Cornwall, bid him send a trusty knight of his land that will fight for his right, and we shall find another for to defend our right. With this answer the messagers departed into Ireland. And when king Anguish understood the answer of the messagers, he was wonderly wroth. And then he called unto him Sir Marhaus, the good knight, that was nobly proved, and a knight of the Table Round. And this Sir Marhaus was brother unto the queen of Ireland. Then the king said thus: Fair brother Sir Marhaus, I pray you go into Cornwall for my sake, and do battle for our truage that of right we ought to have, and whatsoever ye spend ye shall have sufficiently more than ye shall need. Sir, said Marhaus, wit ye well that I shall not be loth to do battle in the right of you and your land with the best knight of the Table Round, for I know them for the most part what be their deeds, and for to advance my deeds and to increase my worship, I will right gladly go unto this journey for our right.

So in all haste there was made purveyance for Sir Marhaus, and he had all things that to him needed, and so he departed out of Ireland, and arrived up in Cornwall, even fast by the castle of Tintagil. And when king Mark understood that he was there arrived to fight for Ireland, then made king Mark great sorrow when he understood that the good and noble knight Sir Marhaus was come. For they knew no knight that durst have ado with him. For at that time Sir Marhaus was called one of the famousetest and renowned knights of the world.

And thus Sir Marhaus abode in the sea, and every day he sent unto king Mark for to pay the truage that was behind of seven year, or else to find a knight to fight with him for the truage. This manner of message Sir Marhaus sent daily unto king Mark. Then they of Cornwall let make cries in every place, that what knight would fight for to save the truage of Cornwall he should be rewarded so that he should fare the better the term of his life. Then some of the barons said to king Mark, and counselled him to send to the court of king Arthur for to seek Sir Lamoral du Lake, that was that time named for the marvellousest knight of all the world. Then there were some other barons that counselled the king not to do so, and said that it was labour in vain, because Sir Marhaus was a knight of the Round Table, therefore any of them will be loth to have ado with other, but if it were any knight at his own request would fight disguised and unknown. So the king and all his barons assented that it was no boot to seek any knight of the Round Table. This meanwhile came the language and the noise unto king Meliodes, how that Sir Marhaus abode battle fast by Tintagil, and how king Mark could find no manner knight to fight for him. When young Tristram heard of this he was wroth and sore ashamed that these durst no knight in Cornwall have ado with Sir Marhaus of Ireland.

CHAP. V.
How Tristram enterprized the battle to fight for the truage of Cornwall, and bow he was made knight.

Therewithal Sir Tristram went unto his father king Meliodes, and asked his
what was best to do for to re-
room Cornwall trague. For as
theth, said Sir Tristram, it were
hat Sir Marhaus, the queen's
of Ireland, should go away,
hat he were fought withall. As
said Sir Meliodes, wit ye well
tram that Sir Marhaus is called
the best knights of the world,
ght of the Table Round, and
: I know no knight in this
that is able to match with him.
Sir Tristram, that I am not
ight; and if Sir Marhaus should
part into Ireland, may I never
ship, and I were made knight
I match him. And sir, said
, I pray you give me leave to
king Mark, and so ye be not
ed of king Mark will I be made
will, said king Meliodes,
be ruled as your courage will

Sir Tristram thanked his father
And then he made him ready
into Cornwall. In the mean-
here came a messenger with
of love from king Faramon
nce's daughter unto Sir Tris-
at were full piteous letters, and
were written many complaints
But Sir Tristram had no joy
letters, nor regard unto her.
e sent him a little bracet
passing fair. But when the
dughter understood that Tris-
could not love her, as the book
he died for sorrow. And then
squire that brought the letter
bracet came again unto Sir
as after ye shall hear in the
is this young Sir Tristram rode
uncle king Mark of Cornwall.
en he came there he heard say
ere would no knight fight with
. Then went Sir Tristram
uncle and said, Sir, if ye will
the order of knighthood I will
with Sir Marhaus. What are
the king, and from whence be
Sir, said Tristram, I come
Meliodes that wedded your
and a gentleman that wit ye well
I am. King Mark beheld Sir Tristram,
and saw that he was but a young man
of age, but he was passingly well made
and big. Fair sir, said the king, what
is your name, and where were ye born?
Sir, said he again, my name is Tri-
tram, and in the country of Liones was
I born. Ye say well, said the king, and
if ye will do this battle I shall make you
knight. Therefore I come to you, said
Sir Tristram, and for none other cause.
But then king Mark made him knight.
And therewithal anon as he had made
him knight, he sent a messager unto
Sir Marhaus with letters that said that
he had found a young knight ready for
to take the battle to the uttermost. It
may well be, said Sir Marhaus; but tell
unto king Mark that I will not fight
with no knight but if he be of blood
royal, that is to say either king's son
or queen's son, born of a prince or
princess.

When king Mark understood that, he
sent for Sir Tristram de Liones and
told him what was the answer of Sir
Marhaus. Then said Sir Tristram,
Since that he sayeth so, let him wit
that I am come of father's side and
mother's side of as noble blood as he is.
For, Sir, now shall ye know that I am
king Meliodes' son, born of your own
sister dame Elizabeth, that died in the
forest in the birth of me. Yea! said
king Mark, ye are welcome fair nephew
to me. Then in all the haste the king
let horse Sir Tristram and arm him in
the best manner that might be had or
gotten for gold or silver. And then
king Mark sent unto Sir Marhaus, and
did him to wit that a better born man
than he was himself should fight with
him, and his name is Sir Tristram de
Liones, gotten of king Meliodes, and
born of king Mark's sister. Then was
Sir Marhaus glad and blithe that he
should fight with such a gentleman.
And so by the assent of king Mark and
Sir Marhaus they let ordain that they
should fight within an island nigh Sir
Marhaus' ships; and so was Sir Tris-
tram put into a vessel both his horse
and he, and all that to him belonged
both for his body and for his horse. Sir Tristram lacked nothing. And when king Mark and his barons of Cornwall beheld how young Sir Tristram departed with such a carriage to fight for the right of Cornwall, there was neither man nor woman of worship but they wept to see and understand so young a knight to jeopard himself for their right.

CHAP. VI.
How Sir Tristram arrived into the island for to furnish the battle with Sir Marbaus.

So to shorten this tale, when Sir Tristram was arrived within the island he looked to the further side, and there he saw by an anchor six ships nigh to the land, and under the shadow of the ships upon the land there hoved the noble knight Sir Marbaus of Ireland. Then Sir Tristram commanded his servant Gouvernail to bring his horse to the land, and dress his harness at all manner of rights. And then when he had so done he mounted upon his horse; and when he was in his saddle well appareled, and his shield dressed upon his shoulder, Tristram asked Gouvernail, Where is this knight that I shall have ado withall? Sir, said Gouvernail, see ye him not? I wend ye had seen him, yonder he hoveth under the shadow of his ships upon horseback, with his spear in his hand, and his shield upon his shoulder. That is truth, said the noble knight Sir Tristram, now I see him well enough. Then he commanded his servant Gouvernail to go to his vessel again, and command me unto mine uncle king Mark, and pray him if that I be slain in this battle, for to inter my body as him seemeth best, and as for me let him wit that I will never yield me for cowardice; and if I be slain and flee not, then have they lost no truage for me; and if so be that I flee or yield me as recreant, bid mine uncle never bury me in christian burials.

And upon thy life, said Sir Tristram to Gouvernail, come thou not nigh this island till that thou see me overcome or slain, or else that I win knight. So either departed from sore weeping.

CHAP. VII.
How Sir Tristram fought aga
Marbaus and achieved his ba
how Sir Marbaus fled to his Sh

And then Sir Marbaus perceiveth Tristram, and said thus: Young Sir Tristram, what dost thou here? I repenteth of thy courage, thou well I have been assayed, best knights of this land have assayed of my hands, and also matched with the best knights of the world, and therefore by my consent again unto thy vessel. I am a knight, and well proved knight, Tristram, thou shalt well wit: I will not forsake thee in this quarrel, for thy sake made knight. And thowell wit that I am a king's son, a queen, and such promise I have at mine uncle's request and making, that I shall fight with unto the uttermost, and deliver the wall from the old truage. And thou well, Sir Marbaus, that the greatest cause that thou courage have ado with you, for thou art one of the most renowned knights in the world, and because of the fame that thou hast, thou gain courage to have ado with thee, for yet was I proved with good knight since I took the order of knighthood. Day I am well pleased that I may ado with so good a knight as thou. And now wit thou well, Sir Mark that I cast me to get worship thy body, and if that I be not permitted I shall be worshipfully upon thy body, and to deliver the country of Cornwall from all of truage from Ireland for ever. Sir Marbaus had heard him say, he would, he said then thus: Fair knight, since it is so that casteth to win worship of me, I will worship mayest thou none me if thou mayest stand m
for I let thee wit for my noble proved and seen, king Arthur be knight of the Table Round. ey began to feuter their spears, ey met so fiercely together that note either other down both ed all. But Sir Marhaus smote tram a great wound in the side s spear, and then they avoided orses, and pulled out their and threw their shields afore nd then they lashed together as at were wild and courageous. en they had stricken so together en they left their strokes, and it their breathes and visors; and ey saw that that might not pre-m, then they hurtled together ns to bear either other down. ey fought still more than half a d either were wounded passing at the blood ran down freshly em upon the ground. By the stram waxed more fresher than rhaus, and better winded and and with a mighty stroke he sir Marhaus upon the helm such , that it went through his helm, rough the coif of steel, and in the brain-pan, and the sword fast in the helm and in his an that Sir Tristram pulled thrice word or ever he might pull it out is head, and there Marhaus fell in his knees, the edge of Trisword left in his brain-pan. And y Sir Marhaus rose groveling, rew his sword and his shield im, and so ran to his ships and way, and Sir Tristram had ever old and his sword. And when stram saw Sir Marhaus withdraw a said, Ah sir knight of the Table, why withdrawest thou hou dost thyself and thy kin shame, for I am but a young or now I was never proved, and than I should withdraw me from had rather be hewn in an hunes. Sir Marhaus answered no out went his way sore groaning. ir knight, said Sir Tristram, I thee thy sword and thy shield shall be mine, and thy shield shall I wear in all places where I ride on mine adventures, and in the sight of king Arthur and all the Round Table.

CHAP. VIII.

How Sir Marbaus, after he was arrived in Ireland, died of the stroke that Tristram had given him, and how Tristram was burt.

Anon Sir Marhaus and his fellowship departed into Ireland. And as soon as he came to the king his brother he let search his wounds. And when his head was searched, a piece of Sir Tristram's sword was found therein, and might never be had out of his head for no surgeons, and so he died of Sir Tristram's sword, and that piece of the sword the queen his sister kept it for ever with her, for she thought to be revenged and she might.

Now turn we again unto Sir Tristram, that was sore wounded, and full sore bled, that he might not within a little while when he had taken cold scarcely stir him of his limbs. And then he set him down softly upon a little hill, and bled fast. Then anon came Gouvernail his man with his vessel, and the king and his barons came with procession against him, and when he was come to the land king Mark took him in his arms, and the king and Sir Dinas the Seneschal led Sir Tristram into the castle of Tintagil. And then was he searched in the best manner, and laid in his bed. And when king Mark saw his wounds he wept heartily, and so did all his lords. So God me help, said king Mark, I would not for all my lands that my nephew died. So Sir Tristram lay there a month and more, and ever he was like to die of that stroke that Sir Marhaus smote him first with the spear. For, as the French book saith, the spear's head was envenomed, that Sir Tristram might not be whole. Then was king Mark and all his barons passing heavy, for they deemed none other but that Sir Tristram should not recover. Then the king let send after all manner
of leeches and surgeons, both unto men and women, and there was none that would behote him the life. Then came there a lady that was a right wise lady, and she said plainly unto king Mark and to Sir Tristram and to all his barons, that he should never be whole, but if Sir Tristram went in the same country that the venom came from, and in that country should he be holpen or else never. Thus said the lady unto the king. When king Mark understood that, he let purvey for Sir Tristram a fair vessel, well victualled, and therein was put Sir Tristram and Gouvernail with him, and Sir Tristram took his harp with him, and so he was put into the sea to sail into Ireland, and so by good fortune he arrived up in Ireland, even fast by a castle where the king and the queen was; and at his arrival he sat and harped in his bed a merry lay, such one heard they never none in Ireland afore that time. And when it was told the king and the queen of such a knight that was such an harper, anon the king sent for him, and let search his wounds, and then asked him his name. Then he answered, I am of the country of Liones, and my name is Tramtrist, that thus was wounded in a battle as I fought for a lady’s right. Truly, said king Anguish, ye shall have all the help in this land that ye may have here. But I let you wit in Cornwall I had a great loss as ever had king, for there I lost the best knight of the world, his name was Marhaus, a full noble knight, and knight of the Table Round; and there he told Sir Tristram wherefore Sir Marhaus was slain. Sir Tristram made semblant as he had been sorry, and better knew he how it was than the king.

CHAP. IX.

How Sir Tristram was put to the keeping of La Beale Isoud for to be healed of his wound.

Then the king for great favour made Tramtrist to be put in his daughter’s ward and keeping, because she was a noble surgeon. And when she had searched him she found in the bottom of his wound that therein was poison, and so she healed him within a while, and therefore Tramtrist cast great love to La Beale Isoud, for she was at that time the fairest maid and lady of the world. And there Tramtrist learned her to harp, and she began to have a great fancy unto him. And at that time Sir Palamides the Saracen was in that country, and well cherished with the king and the queen. And every day Sir Palamides drew unto La Beale Isoud, and proffered her many gifts, for he loved her passingly well. All that espied Tramtrist, and full well knew he Sir Palamides for a noble knight and a mighty man. And wit ye well Sir Tramtrist had great despit at Sir Palamides, for La Beale Isoud told Tramtrist that Sir Palamides was in will to be christened for her sake. Thus was there great envy betwixt Tramtrist and Sir Palamides. Then it befel that King Anguish let cry a great justs and a great tournament for a lady which was called the lady of the laws, and she was nigh cousin unto the king. And what man won her, three days after he should wed her, and have all her lands. This cry was made in England, Wales, Scotland, and also in France and in Britany. It befel upon a day La Beale Isoud came unto Sir Tramtrist and told him of this tournament. He answered and said, Fair lady, I am but a feeble knight, and but late I had been dead had not your good ladyship been. Now, fair lady, what would ye I should do in this matter? Well ye wot, my lady, that I may not just. Ah Tramtrist, said La Beale Isoud, why will ye not have ado at that tournament? well I wot Sir Palamides shall be there and to do what he may, and therefore Tramtrist I pray you for to be there, for else Sir Palamides is like to win the degree. Madam, said Tramtrist, as for that it may be so, for he is a proved knight, and I am but a young knight and late made, and the first battle that I did it mishappened me to be sore wounded as ye see. But and I wist ye would be my better lady, st
OF TRISTRAM AND LA BEALE ISoud.

Tournament I will be, so that ye my counsel, and let no creature knowledge that I shall just but, and such as ye will to keep unseen; my poor person shall I there for your sake, that perad Sir Palamides shall know when come. Thereto, said La Beale to your best, and as I can, said le Isoud, I shall purvey horse shire for you at my devise. As so be it, said Sir Tramtrist, I at your commandment. So at of justs there came Sir Palamides a black shield, and he over any knights, that all the people knew of him. For he put to the ir Gawaine, Gaheris, Agravaine, agus, Kay, Didos le Savage, bre le Desirous, Gumret le Petit, flet le Fise de Dieu. All these day Sir Palamides strake down earth. And then all manner of were adread of Sir Palamides, ny called him the knight with the shield. So that day Sir Palamides had great worship. Then came aushe unto Tramtrist and asked y he would not just. Sir, said s but late hurt, and as yet I dare venture me. Then came there a squire that was sent from the daughter of France unto Sir n. And when he had espied Tramstram he fell flat to his feet. t espied La Beale Isoud, what the squire made unto Sir Tris- And therewith all suddenly Sir ran unto his squire, whose was Hebes le Renoumes, and him heartily in no wise to tell e. Sir, said Hebes, I will not your name but if ye command

CHAP. X.

r Tristrain won the degree at a tument in Ireland, and there made sides to bear no harness in a

Sir Tristram asked him what those countries. Sir, he said, hither with Sir Gawaine for to be made knight, and if it please you, of your hands that I may be made knight. Await upon me as to-morn, secretly, and in the field I shall make you a knight. Then had La Beale Isoud great suspicion unto Tramtrist that he was some man of worship proved, and therewith she comforted herself, and cast more love unto him than she had done tofore. And so on the morn Sir Palamides made him ready to come into the field as he did the first day. And there he smote down the king with the hundred knights, and the king of Scotland. Then had La Beale Isoud ordained and well arrayed Sir Tramtrist in white horse and harness. And right so she let put him out at a privy postern, and so he came into the field as it had been a bright angel. And anon Sir Palamides espied him, and therewith he feuntered a spear unto Sir Tramtrist, and he again unto him. And there Sir Tris- tram smote down Sir Palamides unto the earth. And then there was a great noise of people: some said Sir Palamides had a fall, some said the knight with the black shield had a fall. And wit you well La Beale Isoud was passing glad. And then Sir Gawaine and his fellows nine had marvel what knighth it might be that had smitten down Sir Palamides. Then would there none just with Tramtrist, but all that were there forsook him, most and least. Then Sir Tristram made Hebes a knight, and caused him to put himself forth, and did right well that day. So after Sir Hebes held him with Sir Tristram. And when Sir Palamides had received this fall, wit ye well he was sore ashamed: and as privily as he might he withdrew him out of the field. All that espied Sir Tristram, and lightly he rode after Sir Palamides, and overtook him, and bad him turn, for better he would assay him or ever he departed. Then Sir Palamides turned him, and either lashed at other with their swords. But at the first stroke Sir Tristram smote down Palamides, and gave him such a stroke upon the head that he fell to the earth. So then Tristram bad
yield him and do his commandment, or else he would slay him. When Sir Palamides beheld his countenance, he dread his buffets so that he granted all his askings. Well said, said Sir Tristram, this shall be your charge. First upon pain of your life that ye forsake my lady La Beale Isoud, and in no manner wise that ye draw not to her. Also this twelvemonth and a day that ye bear none armour nor none harness of war. Now promise me this, or here shalt thou die. Alas, said Palamides, for ever am I ashamed. Then he swore as Sir Tristram had commanded him. Then for despite and anger Sir Palamides cut off his harness and threw them away. And so Sir Tristram turned again to the castle where was La Beale Isoud, and by the way he met with a damsel that asked after Sir Launcelot, that won the Dolorous Gard worshipfully, and this damsel asked Sir Tristram what he was: for it was told her that it was he that smote down Sir Palamides, by whom the ten knights of King Arthur were smitten down. Then the damsel prayed Sir Tristram to tell her what he was, and whether that he were Sir Launcelot du Lake, for she deemed that there was no knight in the world might do such deeds of arms, but if it were Launcelot. Fair damsel, said Sir Tristram, wit ye well that I am not Sir Launcelot, for I was never of such prowess, but in God is all, that he may make me as good a knight as the good knight Sir Launcelot. Now, gentle knight, said she, put up thy visor. And when she beheld his visage she thought she saw never a better man’s visage, nor a better faring knight. And then when the damsel knew certainly that he was not Sir Launcelot, then she took her leave and departed from him. And then Sir Tristram rode privily unto the postern where kept him La Beale Isoud, and there she made him good cheer, and thanked God of his good speed. So anon within a while the king and the queen understood that it was Tramtrist that smote down Sir Palamides; then was he much made of more than he was before.

CHAP. XI.

How the queen espied that Sir Tristram had slain her brother Sir Marhaus by his sword, and in what jeopardy he was.

Thus was Sir Tramtrist long there well cherished with the king and the queen, and namely with La Beale Isoud. So upon a day the queen and La Beale Isoud made a bath for Sir Tramtrist, and when he was in his bath the queen and Isoud her daughter roamed up and down in the chamber, and there whiles Gouvernail and Hebes attended upon Tramtrist, and the queen beheld his sword there as it lay upon his bed. And then by unhap the queen drew out his sword and beheld it a long while, and both they thought it a passing fair sword, but within a foot and an half of the point there was a great piece thereof out broken of the edge. And when the queen espied that gap in the sword, she remembered her of a piece of a sword that was found in the brain-pan of Sir Marhaus, the good knight that was her brother. Alas, then said she unto her daughter La Beale Isoud, this is the same traitor knight that slew my brother thine uncle. When Isoud heard her say so she was passing sore abashed, for passing well she loved Sir Tramtrist, and full well she knew the cruelty of her mother the queen. Anon therewithal the queen went unto her own chamber and sought her coffers, and there she took out the piece of the sword that was pulled out of Sir Marhaus’ head after that he was dead. And then she ran with that piece of iron to the sword that lay upon the bed. And when she put that piece of steel and iron unto the sword, it was as meet as it might be when it was new broken. And then the queen gripped that sword in her hand fiercely, and with all her might she ran straight upon Tramtrist where he sat in his bath, and there she had rived him through had not Sir Hebe gotten her in his arms, and pulled the sword from her, and else she had thrust
him through. Then when she was letted of her evil will, she ran to the king Anguish her husband, and said on her knees, Oh my lord, here have ye in your house that traitor knight that slew my brother and your servant, that noble knight Sir Marhaus. Who is that, said king Anguish, and where is he? Sir, she said, it is Sir Tramtrist, the same knight that my daughter healed. Alas, said the king, therefore am I right heavy, for he is a full noble knight as ever I saw in field. But I charge you, said the king to the queen, that ye have not ado with that knight, but let me deal with him. Then the king went into the chamber unto Sir Tramtrist, and then was he gone unto his chamber, and the king found him all ready armed to mount upon his horse. When the king saw him all ready armed to go unto horseback, the king said, Nay, Tramtrist, it will not avail to compare thee against me. But thus much I shall do for my worship and for thy love; in so much as thou art within my court, it were no worship for me to slay thee, therefore upon this condition I will give thee leave to depart from this court in safety, so thou wilt tell me who was thy father, and what is thy name, and if thou slew Sir Marhaus, my brother.

CHAP. XII.

Sir Tristram departed from the king and La Beale Isoud out of Ireland for to come into Cornwall.

Sir, said Tristram, now I shall tell you all the truth: my father's name is Meliodas, king of Liones, and my mother right Elizabeth, that was sister unto king Mark of Cornwall; and my mother died of me in the forest, and because thereof she commanded or she said that when I were christened that they should christen me Tramtrist, and because I would not be known in this country I turned my name, and let me call Tramtrist; and for the truage of Cornwall I fought for mine uncle's sake, and for the right of Cornwall that I had possessed many years. And wit ye well, said Tristram unto the king, I did the battle for the love of mine uncle king Mark, and for the love of the country of Cornwall, and for to increase mine honour. For that same day that I fought with Sir Marhaus I was made knight, and never or then did I no battle with no knight, and from me he went alive, and left his shield and his sword behind. Truly, said the king, I may not say but ye did as a knight should, and it was your part to do for your quarrel, and to increase your worship as a knight should; howbeit I may not maintain you in this country with my worship, unless that I should displeasure my barons, and my wife, and her kin. Sir, said Tristram, I thank you of your good lordship that I have had with you here, and the great goodness my lady your daughter hath shewed me, and therefore, said Sir Tristram, it may so happen that ye shall win more by my life than by my death, for in the parts of England it may happen I may do you service at some season that ye shall be glad that ever ye shewed me your good lordship. With more I promise you as I am true knight, that in all places I shall be my lady your daughter's servant and knight in right and in wrong, and I shall never fail her never to do as much as a knight may do. Also I beseech your good grace that I may take my leave at my lady your daughter, and at all the barons and knights. I will well, said the king. Then Sir Tristram went unto La Beale Isoud and took his leave of her. And then he told her all, what he was, and how he had changed his name because he would not be known, and how a lady told him that he should never be whole till he came into this country where the poison was made:—Where through I was near my death, had not your ladyship been. Oh gentle knight, said La Beale Isoud, full wo am I of thy departing, for I saw never man that I owed so good will to. And withal she wept heartily. Madam, said Sir Tristram, ye shall understand that my name is Sir Tristram de Liones, son of
king Meliodas and of his queen. And I promise you faithfully that I shall be all the days of my life your knight. Gramercy, said La Beale Isoud, and I promise you there against that I shall not be married this seven years but by your assent, and to whom that ye will I shall be married, him will I have, and he will have me if ye will consent. And then Sir Tristram gave her a ring and she gave him another, and therewith he departed from her, leaving her making great dole and lamentation. And he straight went unto the court among all the barons, and there he took his leave at most and least, and openly he said among them all, Fair lords, now it is so that I must depart. If there be any man here that I have offended unto, or that any man be with me grieved, let complain him here afore me or that ever I depart, and I shall amend it unto my power. And if there be any that will proffer me wrong, or say of me wrong or shame behind my back, say it now or never, and here is my body to make it good, body against body. And all they stood still, there was not one that would say one word, yet were there some knights that were of the queen's blood, and of Sir Marhaus's blood, but they would not meddle with him.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Tristram and king Mark burt each other for the love of a knight's wife.

So Sir Tristram departed, and took the sea, and with good wind he arrived up at Tintagil in Cornwall. And when king Mark was whole in his prosperity there came tidings that Sir Tristram was arrived and whole of his wounds; thereof was king Mark passing glad, and so were all the barons. And when he saw his time, he rode unto his father king Meliodas, and there he had all the cheer that the king and the queen could make him. And then largely king Meliodas and his queen parted of their lands and goods to Sir Tristram. Then by the licence of king Meliodas his father he returned again unto the court of king Mark, and there he lived in great joy long time, until at the last there bred a jealousy and an unkindness between king Mark and Sir Tristram, for they loved both one lady, and she was earl's wife, that hight Sir Segwride. And this lady loved Sir Tristram passing well, and he loved her again, for she was a passing fair lady, and that espied Sir Tristram well. Then king Mark understood that, and was jealous, for king Mark loved her passing well. So it fell upon a day, this lady sent a dwarf unto Sir Tristram, and had him say that as he loved her that he would be with her the next day following. Also she charged you that ye come not to her but if ye be well armed, for her lover was called a good knight. Sir Tristram answered to the dwarf. Recommend me unto my lady, and tell her I will not fail but I will be with her the term that she hath set me. And with this answer the dwarf departed. And king Mark espied that the dwarf was with Sir Tristram, upon message from Sir Segwride's wife; then king Mark sent for the dwarf. And when he was come he made the dwarf by force to tell him all, why and wherefore that he came on message to Sir Tristram. Now, said king Mark, go where thou wilt, and upon pain of death that thou say no word that thou spakest with me. So the dwarf departed from the king. And that same time that was set betwixt Sir Segwride's wife and Sir Tristram, king Mark armed him, and made him ready, and took two knights of his council with him, and so he rode afore, for to abide by the way, to await upon Sir Tristram. And as Sir Tristram came riding upon his way, with his spear in his hand, king Mark came hardling upon him with his two knights suddenly. And all three smote him with their spears, and king Mark hurt Sir Tristram on the breast right sore; and then Sir Tristram feuered his spear and smote his uncle king Mark such a stroke that he rash'd him to the earth, and bruised him that he lay still in a swoon, and it was long or he might
himself; and then he ran to the
right, and oft to the other, and
him to the cold earth, that
still. And therewithal Sir Tris-
ride forth sore wounded to the
and found her abiding him at

CHAP. XIV.

Tristram came to the lady, and
her husband fought with Sir Tris-
there she welcomed him fair,
she let put up his horse in the
se, and then she unarmèd him:
they supped lightly, and within
there came one that warned
her lord was near hand, with-
y draft. So she made Sir Tris-
prise, and so he armèd him, and
horse, and so departed. By
come Sir Segwarides, and when
knew that there had been a knight,
traitress, then he said, why hast
rayed me? And therewithal he
out a sword, and said, But if thou
who hath been here, here thou
. Ah, my lord, mercy, said the
ed held up her hands, saying,
not, and I shall tell you all who
m here. Tell anon, said Sir Seg-
to me all the truth. Anon for
he said, Here was Sir Tristram,
and by the way as he came to
ed he was sore wounded. Ah,
traitress, said Sir Segwarides,
he become? Sir, she said, he
ed, and departed on horseback,
hence half-a-mile. Ye say well,
garides. Then he armed him
and gat his horse, and rode after
ram, that rode straightway unto
. And within a while he over-
Tristram, and then he bad him
traitor knight, and Sir Tris-
non turned him against him.
rewithal Segwarides smote Sir
with a spear that it all to-
and then he swung out his
and smote fast at Sir Tristram.
h, said Sir Tristram, I counsel
ye smite no more, howbeit,
wrongs that I have done you,
I will forbear you as long as I may.
Nay, said Segwarides, that shall not be,
for either thou shalt die or I. Then
Sir Tristram drew out his sword, and
hurtled his horse unto him fiercely, and
through the waist of the body he smote
Segwarides that he fell to the earth
in a swoon. And so Sir Tristram de-
parted and left him there, and so he
rode unto Tintagil, and took his lodging
secretly, for he would not be known that
he was hurt. Also, Sir Segwarides's men
rode after their master, whom they found
lying in the field sore wounded, and
brought him home on his shield, and
there he lay long or that he were whole,
but at the last he recovered. Also king
Mark would not be a known of, that Sir
Tristram and he had met that time.
And as for Sir Tristram, he wist not
that it had been king Mark that had
met with him. And so the king's assis-
tance came to Sir Tristram, to comfort
him as he lay sick in his bed. But as
long as king Mark lived he loved never
Sir Tristram after that: though there
was fair speech, love was there none.
And thus it passed many weeks and
days, and all was forgiven and for-
gotten. For Sir Segwarides durst not
have ado with Sir Tristram, because
of his noble prowess, and also because
he was nephew unto king Mark, there-
fore he let it over slip, for he that hath
a privy hurt is loth to have a shame
outward.

CHAP. XV.

How Sir Bleoberis demanded the fairest
lady in king Mark's court, whom he
took away, and bow he was fought
with.

Then it befell upon a day, that the
good knight Bleoberis de Ganis, brother
to Blamore de Ganis, and nigh cousin
unto the good knight Sir Launcelot
du Lake,—this Bleoberis came unto
the court of king Mark, and there he
asked of king Mark a boon, to give him
what gift he would ask in his court.
When the king heard him ask so, he
marvelled of his asking, but because he
was a knight of the Round Table, and
of a great renown, king Mark granted him his whole asking. Then, said Sir Bleoberis, I will have the fairest lady in your court that me list to choose. I may not say nay, said king Mark; now choose at your adventure. And so Sir Bleoberis did chose Sir Segwarides's wife, and took her by the hand, and so went his way with her, and so he took his horse and let set her behind his squire, and rode upon his way. When Sir Segwarides heard tell that his lady was gone with a knight of king Arthur's court, then anon he armed him, and rode after that knight for to rescue his lady. So when Bleoberis was gone with this lady, king Mark and all the court was wroth that she was away. Then were there certain ladies that knew that there was great love between Sir Tristram and her, and also that lady loved Sir Tristram above all other knights. Then there was one lady that rebuked Sir Tristram in the horriblest wise, and called him coward knight, that he would for shame of his knighthood see a lady so shamefully taken away from his uncle's court. But Sir Tristram answered her thus: Fair lady, it is not my part to have ado in such matters, while her lord and husband is present here. And if it had been that her lord had not been here in this court, then for the worship of this court per-adventure I would have been her champion, and if so be Sir Segwarides speed not well, it may happen that I will speak with that good knight or ever he pass from this country. Then within awhile came one of Sir Segwarides's squires, and told in the court that Sir Segwarides was beaten sore and wounded to the point of death: as he would have rescued his lady Sir Bleoberis overthrew him, and sore hath wounded him. Then was king Mark heavy thereof, and all the court. When Sir Tristram heard of this he was ashamed and sore grieved. And then was he soon armed and on horseback, and Gouvernail his servant bare his shield and spear. And so as Sir Tristram rode fast he met with Sir Andret his cousin, that by the commandment of king Mark was sent to bring forth, and ever it lay in his power two knights of king Arthur's court, that rode by the country to seek their adventures. When Sir Tristram saw Sir Andret he asked him what tidings. Truly, said Sir Andret, there was never worse with me, for here by the commandment of king Mark I was sent to fetch two knights of king Arthur's court, and that one beat me and wounded me, and set nought by my message. Fair cousin, said Sir Tristram, ride on your way, and if I may meet them it may happen I shall revenge you. So Sir Andret rode into Cornwall, and Sir Tristram rode after the two knights, the which one hight Sagamore le Desirous, and that other hight Dodinas le Savage.

CHAP. XVI.

How Sir Tristram fought with two knights of the Round Table.

Then within awhile Sir Tristram saw them afore him two likely knights. Sir, said Gouvernail unto his master, Sir, I would counsel you not to have ado with them, for they be two proved knights of Arthur's court. As for that, said Sir Tristram, have ye no doubt but I will have ado with them to encrease my worship, for it is many day sithen I did any deeds of arms. Do as ye list, said Gouvernail. And therewithal anon Sir Tristram asked them from whence they came, and whither they would, and what they did in those marches. Sir Sagamore looked upon Sir Tristram, and had scorn of his words, and asked him again, Fair knight, be ye a knight of Cornwall? Whereby ask ye it? said Sir Tristram. For it is seldom seen, said Sir Sagamore, that ye Cornish knights be valiant men of arms: for within these two hours there met us one of you Cornish knights, and great words he spake, and anon with little might he was laid to the earth. And, as I trow, said Sir Sagamore, ye shall have the same handsel that he had. Fair lords, said Sir Tristram, it may so happen that I may better withstand than he did, and whether ye will or nill I will have ado with you, because he was my
OF SIR TRISTRAM AND SIR BLEOBERIS.

1. 

at ye beat. And therefore here best; and wit ye well but if you the better here upon this ne knight of Cornwall shall beat. When Sir Dodinas le Savage n say so, he gat a spear in his d said, Sir knight, keep well And then they departed, and gther as its had been thunder. Dodinas' spear brast in sunder, Tristram smote him with a more at he smote him clean over the cup, that nigh he had broken.

When Sir Sagramore saw his ave such a fall he marvelled ght he might be, and he dressed r with all his might, and Sir against him, and they came as the thunder, and there Sir smote Sir Sagramore a strong at he bare his horse and him to u, and in the falling he brake.

When this was done Sir Tris ked them, Fair knights, will ye e? Be there no bigger knights sert of king Arthur? It is to me to say of us knights of Corn monour, for it may happen a Cor ght may match you. That is id Sir Sagramore, that have we red; but I require thee, said Sir re, tell us your right name, by and truth that ye owe to the er of knighthood. Ye charge a great thing, said Sir Tris d sithe ye list to wit it, ye shall d understand that my name is ram de Liones, king Meliodas' d nephew unto king Mark. ere they two knights fain that met with Sir Tristram, and so yed him to abide in their fel Nay, said Sir Tristram, for I re ado with one of your fellows, e is Sir Bleoberis de Ganis. ed you well, said Sir Sagra ud Dodinas. Sir Tristram de and rode onward on his way, s he ware before him in a there rode Sir Bleoberis with varides's lady, that rode behind e upon a palfrey.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Tristram fought with Sir Bleo beris for a lady, and how the lady was put to choice to whom she would go.

Then Sir Tristram rode more than a pace until that he had overtaken him. Then spake Sir Tristram: Abide, he said, knight of Arthur's court, bring again that lady, or deliver her to me. I will do neither, said Sir Bleoberis, for I dread no Cornish knight so sore that we list to deliver her. Why, said Sir Tristram, may not a Cornish knight do as well as another knight? This same day two knights of your court, within this three mile met with me, and or ever we departed they found a Cornish knight good enough for them both. What were their names? said Bleoberis. They told me, said Sir Tristram, that the one of them hight Sir Sagramore le Desirous, and the other hight Dodinas le Savage. Ah, said Sir Bleoberis, have ye met with them? Truly they were two good knights, and men of great worship, and if ye have beat them both ye must needs be a good knight: but if it so be that ye have beat them both, yet shall ye not fear me, but ye shall beat me or ever ye have this lady. Then defend you, said Sir Tristram. So they de parted and came together like thunder, and either bare other down, horse and all, to the earth. Then they avoided their horses and lashed together eagerly with swords, and mightily, now tracing and traversing on the right hand and on the left hand more than two hours. And sometimes they rushed together with such a might that they lay both groveling on the ground. Then Sir Bleoberis de Ganis start aback, and said thus: Now, gentle good knight, a while hold your hands and let us speak to gether. Say what ye will, said Sir Tris tram, and I will answer you. Sir, said Bleoberis, I would wit of whence ye be, and of whom ye be come, and what is your name? Truly, said Sir Tristram, I fear not to tell you my name: wit ye well I am king Meliodas's son, and my mother is king Mark's sister, and my
name is Sir Tristram de Liones, and
king Mark is mine uncle. Truly, said
Bleoberis, I am right glad of you,
for ye are he that slew Marhaus,
knights, hand for hand in an island for
the truage of Cornwall; also ye over-
came Sir Palamides the good knight at
a tournament in an island, where ye
beat Sir Gawaine and his nine fellows.
Wit ye well, said Sir Tristram, that I
am the same knight. Now I have told
you my name, tell ye yours with good
will. Wit ye well that my name is Sir
Bleoberis de Ganis, and my brother
right Sir Blamor de Ganis, that is called
a good knight, and we be sister's chil-
dren unto my lord Sir Launcelot du
Lake, that we call one of the best
knight of the world. That is truth,
said Sir Tristram; Sir Launcelot is
called peerless of courtesy and of
knighthood; and for his sake, said Sir
Tristram, I will not with my good will
fight no more with you, for the great
love I have to Sir Launcelot du Lake.
In good faith, said Bleoberis, as for me,
I will be loth to fight with you. But
since ye follow me here to have this
lady, I shall prove you kindness, cour-
tesy, and gentleness, right here upon
this ground. This lady shall be betwixt
us both, and to whom that she will go,
let him have her in peace. I will well,
said Tristram, for, as I deem, she will
leave you and come to me. Ye shall
prove it anon, said Bleoberis.

CHAP. XVIII.

How the lady forsook Sir Tristram and
abode with Sir Bleoberis, and how she
desired to go to her husband.

So when she was set betwixt them
both, she said these words unto Sir
Tristram: Wit ye well, Sir Tristram de
Liones, that but late thou was the man
in the world that I most loved and
trusted, and I wend thou haddest loved
me again above all ladies. But when
thou sawest this knight lead me away,
thou madest no cheer to rescue me,
but suffered my lord Sir Segwarides
to ride after me, but until that time I
wend thou haddest loved me, and
fore now I will leave thee, an
love thee more. And therewith
went unto Sir Bleoberis. When Sir
Tristram saw her do so, he was wroth
with that lady, and siths came to the court. Sir Tristram,
Bleoberis, ye are in the default
hear, by this lady's words, she
this day, trusted you above all
knight, and, as she saith, ye
receiv'd her; therefore, wit ye well
may no man hold that will away
rather than ye should be pleased with me, I would ye be
and she would abide with you.
said the lady, I will never go with
for he that I loved most I wend
loved me. And therefore, Sir Tristram,
she said, ride as thou came, for
thou haddest overcome this knight
were likely, with thee never
have gone. And I shall pray this
so fair of his knighthood, that
pass this country he will leave
the abbey where my lord Sir Seg
lieth. Truly, said Bleoberis, I am
right, good knight Sir Tristram,
ing Mark gave me the choice of
in this court, and so this lady is
best, notwithstanding she is wed
hath a lord, and I have fulfilled my
she shall be sent unto her husband,
and in especial for your sake,
Tristram: and if she would go with
I would ye had her. I thank ye, Sir
Tristram, but for her love I no
aware what manner of lady I should
or trust. For had her lord Sir
rides been away from the court I
have been the first that should have
allowed you, but since ye have refused
as I am a true knight I shall love
passingly well that I shall love thee.
And so they took their leave of the
other and departed. And
Tristram rode unto Tintagil, and
Bleoberis rode unto the abbey
Sir Segwarides lay sore wounded
there he delivered his lady and did as a noble knight. And when Seg
warides saw his lady he was
comforted. And then she told h
n had done great battle with
and caused him to bring
These words pleased Sir
right well, that Sir Tristram
much; and so that lady told
unto king Mark betwixt
and Sir Bleoberis.

CHAP. XIX.
Mark sent Sir Tristram for La
and toward Ireland, and bou
be arrived into England.

when this was done king Mark
in his heart how he might
Tristram. And then he
himself to send Sir Tristram
d for La Beale Isoud. For
had so praised her beauty
kindness that king Mark said
ed her, whereupon he prayed
him to take his way into Ireland
message. And all this was
intent to slay Sir Tristram.
ending, Sir Tristram would
the message for no danger
that might fall for the pleasure
be, but to go he made him
most goodliest wise that
revised. For Sir Tristram
him the most goodliest
at he might find in the court,
were arrayed after the guise
then used in the goodliest
Sir Tristram departed and
sea with all his fellowship.
be he was in the broad sea,
took him and his fellowship
them back into the coast of
and there they arrived fast by
full fain they were to take
And when they were landed
m set up his pavilion upon
Camelot, and there he let
ield upon the pavilion. And
two knights of king
that one was Sir Ector de
Sir Morganor. And they
shield and bad him come out
lion for to just, and he would
shall be answered, said Sir
nd ye will tarry a little while.
de him ready, and first he
smote down Sir Ector de Maris, and
after he smote down Sir Morganor, all
with one spear, and sore bruised them.
And when they lay upon the earth they
asked Sir Tristram what he was, and
of what country he was knight. Fair
lords, said Sir Tristram, wit ye well
that I am of Cornwall. Alas, said Sir
Ector, now am I ashamed that ever any
Cornish knight should overcome me.
And then for despite Sir Ector put off
his armour from him, and went on foot,
and would not ride.

CHAP. XX.
How king Anguish of Ireland was sum-
moned to come unto king Arthur's court
for treason.

Then it fell that Sir Bleoberis and
Sir Blamor de Ganis that were bre-
thren, they had summoned the king
Anguish of Ireland to come to Arthur's
court, upon pain of forfeiture of king
Arthur's good grace. And if the king
of Ireland came not in at the day
assigned and set, the king should lose his
lands. So by it happened that at the
day assigned, king Arthur neither Sir
Launcelot might not be there for to
give the judgment, for king Arthur was
with Sir Launcelot at the castle Joyous
Gard. And so king Arthur assigned
king Carados and the king of Scots to
be there that day as judges. So when
the kings were at Camelot king An-
guish of Ireland was come to know his
accusers. Then was there Blamor de
Ganis, and appealed the king of Ireland
of treason, that he had slain a cousin of
his in his court in Ireland by treason.
The king was sore abashed of his accu-
sation, for why? he was come at the sum-
moning of king Arthur, and or that he
came at Camelot he wist not wherefore
he was sent after. And when the king
heard Sir Blamor say his will, he under-
stood full well there was none other
remedy but to answer him knightly.
For the custom was such in those days,
that and any man were appealed of any
treason or murder, he should fight body
for body, or else to find another knight
for him. And all manner of murderers in those days were called treason. So when king Anguish understood his accusing he was passing heavy, for he knew Sir Blamor de Ganis that he was a noble knight, and of noble knights come. Then the king of Ireland was simply purveyed of his answer, therefore the judges gave him respite by the third day to give his answer. So the king departed unto his lodging. The mean while there came a lady by Sir Tristram's pavilion making great dole. What aileth you, said Sir Tristram, that ye make such dole? Ah, fair knight, said the lady, I am ashamed unless that some good knight help me, for a great lady of worship sent by me a fair child and a rich unto Sir Lancelot du Lake, and hereby there met with me a knight and threw me down from my palfrey, and took away the child from me. Well my lady, said Sir Tristram, and for my lord Sir Lancelot's sake I shall get you that child again, or else I shall be beaten for it. And so Sir Tristram took his horse, and asked the lady which way the knight rode. And then she told him. And he rode after him, and within a mile he overtook that knight. And then Sir Tristram bad him turn and give again the child.

CHAP. XXI.
How Sir Tristram rescued a child from a knight, and how Gouvernail told him of king Anguish.

The knight turned his horse, and he made him ready for to fight. And then Sir Tristram smote him with a sword such a buffet that he tumbled to the earth. And then he yielded him unto Sir Tristram. Then come thy way, said Sir Tristram, and bring the child to the lady again. So he took his horse meekly and rode with Sir Tristram, and then by the way Sir Tristram asked him his name. Then he said, My name is Breuse Saunce Pité. So when he had delivered that child to the lady he said, Sir, as in this the child is well remedied. Then Sir Tristram let him go again, that sore repented him after, for he was a great foe unto many good knights, Arthur's court. Then were Sir Tristram was in his pavilion, Gouvernail his man came and told him how king Anguish of Ireland was other, and he was put in great fear, and there Gouvernail told Sir how king Anguish was summoned and appealed of murder. Truly, Tristram, these be the best tidings ever came to me this seven. Now shall the king of Ireland have of my help, for I dare say the knight in this country that is in Arthur's court dare do battle Blamor de Ganis, and for to love of the king of Ireland I will the battle upon me, and therefore Gouvernail bring me, I charge thee, that I be king. Then Gouvernail went unto Anguish of Ireland and saluted: The king welcomed him and asked what he would. Sir, said Gouvernail, here is a knight near hand that to speak with you: he bad manners would do you service. What he would, he said the king. Sir, he said, Tristram de Liones, that for your grace ye shewed him in your court, I will reward you in these countries. Come on fellow, said the king, anon, and shew me unto Sir Tristram. So the king took a little hack upon him, and few fellowship with him and came unto Sir Tristram's pavilion, when Sir Tristram saw the king unto him and would have hold of stirrup. But the king leapt from horse lightly, and either halse in arms. My gracious lord, Sir Tristram, graumercy of your greatness shewed unto me in your parts, and lands: at that time promised you to do my service at that lay in my power. And gentle, said the king unto Sir Tristram, have I great need of you; neye I so great need of no knight. How so, my good lord? said Sir Tristram. I shall tell you, said the king, am summoned and appealed for my country for the death of a knight was kin unto the good knight Sir
therefore Sir Blamor de Ganis, of Sir Bleoberis, hath appealed right with him, other to find a victor at my stead. And well I wot, my lordship ye me, these are of the blood, as Sir Launcelot and ther, are passing good knights, I men for to win in battle as I know now living. Sir, said Sir Bleoberis, for the good ye me in Ireland, and for my lady gentlewoman's sake, La Beale Isoud, take the battle for you upon dition that ye shall grant me, that one is, that ye shall me that ye are in the right, were never consenting to the death; Sir, then, said Sir Trismojens that I have done this battle, give me grace that I speed, that give me a reward, what thing be that I will ask of you. Truly, ye shall have whatsoever ask. It is well said, said Sir Bleoberis.

CHAP. XXII.
'Tristram fought for Sir An- and overcame his adversary, and his adversary would never yield

make your answer that your son is ready, for I shall die in jurel rather than to be recreant. To doubt of you, said the king, I ye should have ado with Sir ot du Lake. Sir, said Sir Trismojens, he is called the best knight of the world, and wit that the knights of his blood are en dued shame; and as for Bleoberis, brother to Sir Blamor, done battle with him, therefore he head it is no shame to call him knight. It is noised, said the at Blamor is the harder knight. For that, let him be, he shall e refused, and as he were the ght that now bareeth shield or So king Anguish departed unto bravadoes and the kings that were ne as judges, and told them had found his champion ready.

And then by the commandments of the kings Sir Blamor de Ganis and Sir Tristram were sent for, to hear the charge. And when they were come before the judges, there were many kings and knights beheld Sir Tristram, and much speech they had of him because he slew Sir Marhaus the good knight, and because he forjusted Sir Palamides the good knight. So when they had taken their charge they withdrew them for to make them ready to do battle. Then said Sir Bleoberis to his brother Sir Blamor, Fair dear brother, remember of what kin we be come of, and what a man is Sir Laun- celot du Lake, neither further nor nearer but brothers' children, and there was never none of our kin that ever was shamed in battle, and rather suffer death, brother, than to be shamed. Brother, said Blamor, have ye no doubt of me, for I shall never shame none of my blood, how be it I am sure that yonder knight is called a passing good knight, as of his time one of the world, yet shall I never yield me, nor say the loth word: well may he happen to smite me down with his great might of chivalry, but rather shall he slay me than I shall yield me as recreant. God speed you well, said Bleoberis, for ye shall find him the mightiest knight that ever ye had ado withall, for I know him, for I have had ado with him. God me speed, said Blamor de Ganis. And therewith he took his horse at the one end of the lists, and Sir Tristram at the other end of the lists, and so they feuted their spears and came together as it had been thunder, and there Sir Tristram through great might smote down Sir Blamor and his horse to the earth. Then anon Sir Blamor avoided his horse, and pulled out his sword and threw his shield afore him, and bad Sir Tristram alight; for though an horse hath failed me, I trust the earth will not fail me. And then Sir Tristram alight and dressed him unto battle, and there they lashed together strongly as racing and tracing, foaming and dashing many sad strokes, that the kings and knights had great wonder
that they might stand, for ever they fought like wood men, so that there were never knights seen fight more fiercely than they did, for Sir Blamor was so hasty that he would have no rest, that all men wondered that they had breath to stand on their feet; and all the place was bloody that they fought in. And at the last, Sir Tristram smote Sir Blamor such a buffet upon the helm that he there fell down upon his side, and Sir Tristram stood and beheld him.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir Blamor desired Tristram to slay him, and how Sir Tristram spared him, and how they took appointment.

Then when Sir Blamor might speak, he said thus: Sir Tristram de Liones, I require thee, as thou art a noble knight, and the best knight that ever I found, that thou wilt slay me out, for I would not live to be made lord of all the earth, for I had ever die with worship than live with shame; and needs, Sir Tristram, thou must slay me, or else thou shalt never win the field, for I will never say the loth word. And therefore if thou dare slay me, slay me I require thee. When Sir Tristram heard him say so knightly, he wist not what to do with him; he remembering him of both parties; of what blood he was come, and for Sir Launcelot's sake he would be full loth to slay him, and in the other party in no wise he might not choose but he must make him to say the loth word, or else to slay him. Then Sir Tristram start aback, and went to the kings that were judges, and there he kneeled down before them, and besought them for their worshipes, and for king Arthur's, and Sir Launcelot's sake, that they would take this matter in their hands. For my fair lords, said Sir Tristram, it were shame and pity that this noble knight that yonder lieth should be slain, for ye hear well shamed will he not be, and I pray to God that he never be slain nor shamed for me. And as for the king for whom I fight for, I shall him, as I am his true champion knight in this field, that he w mercy upon this good knight. said king Anguish to Sir Tristram will for your sake be ruled as have me. For I know you for knight. And therefore I will pray the kings that be here as take it in their hands. And if that were judges called Sir Bleoberis, and asked him his advice lords, said Bleoberis, though my be beaten, and hath the worst might of arms, I dare say, the Tristram hath beaten his body; not beaten his heart, and I thank is not shamed this day. And ratcl should be shamed I require y Bleoberis, let Sir Tristram slay him. It shall not be so, said the kings part adversary, both the king's champion, have pity of Sir E knighthood. My lords, said Bl I will right well as ye will.

Then the kings called the Ireland, and found him good able. And then, by all their advice Tristram and Sir Bleoberis took Blamor, and the two brethren recorded with king Anguish, and and made friends for ever. At Sir Blamor and Sir Tristram kis together, and there they made their that they would never none o two brethren fight with Sir Ti and Sir Tristram made the sam And for that gentle battle all the of Sir Launcelot loved Sir Trist th ever.

Then king Anguish and Sir T took their leave, and sailed into with great nobleness and joy. S they were in Ireland the king it known throughout all the lar and in what manner Sir Trist done for him. Then the queen that there were made the most that they might. But the joy Beale Isoud made of Sir Trist might no tongue tell, for of men she loved him most.
CHAP. XXIV.

Tristram demanded La Beale for king Mark, and how Sir Tram and Isoud drank the love

upon a day king Anguish asked stram why he asked not his or whatsoever he had promised should have it without fail.

Sir Tristram, now is it time, that I will desire, that ye will

La Beale Isoud your daughter, myself, but for mine uncle king that shall have her to wife, for I promised him. Alas, said ye, I had never than all the at I have ye would wed her. Sir, and I did, then were ed for ever in this world, and my promise. Therefore, said stram, I pray you hold your that ye promised me, for this desire, that ye will give me La Isoud to go with me into Cornr to be wedded to king Mark ncle. As for that, said king t, ye shall have her with you, with her what it please you, for to say if that ye list to wed rself, that is to me levest: and l'll give her unto king Mark your hat is in your choice.

make a short conclusion, La Isoud was made ready to go with Tram, and dame Bragwaine went r for her chief gentlewoman, any other. Then the queen, mother, gave to her and dame ine, her daughter's gentlewoman, to Gouvernail, a drink, and charged hat what day king Mark should at same day they should give at drink, so that king Mark drink to La Beale Isoud; and id the queen, I undertake either ve other the days of their life. drink was given unto dame ine and unto Gouvernail. And son Sir Tristram took the sea Beale Isoud; and when they their cabin, it happened so that they were thirsty, and they saw a little flacket of gold stand by them, and it seemed by the colour and the taste that it was noble wine. Then Sir Tristram took the flacket in his hand, and said, Madam Isoud, here is the best drink that ever ye drank, that dame Bragwaine your maiden, and Gouvernail my servant, have kept for themselves. Then they laughed and made good cheer, and either drank to other freely, and they thought never drink that ever they drank to other was so sweet nor so good. But by that their drink was in their bodies, they loved either other so well that never their love departed for weal neither for woe. And thus it hopped the love first betwixt Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud, the which love never departed the days of their life. So then they sailed till by fortune they came nigh a castle that hight Fluere, and thereby arrived for to repose them, weening to them to have had good harbourage. But anon as Sir Tristram was within the castle they were taken prisoners, for the custom of the castle was such, who that rode by that castle, and brought any lady, he must needs fight with the lord, that hight Breunor. And if it were so that Breunor wan the field, then the knight stranger and his lady he put to death, what that ever they were; and if it were so that the strange knight wan the field of Sir Breunor, then should he die and his lady both. This custom was used many winters, for it was called the Castle Fluere, that is to say the weeping castle.

CHAP. XXV.

How Sir Tristram and Isoud were in prison, and how he fought for her beauty, and smote off another lady's bead.

Thus as Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud were in prison, it happed a knight and a lady came unto them where they were, to cheer them. I have marvel, said Tristram unto the knight and the lady, what is the cause
the lord of this castle holdeth us in prison: it was never the custom of no place of worship that ever I came in, that when a knight and a lady asked harbour, and they to receive them, and after to destroy them that be his guests. Sir, said the knight, this is the old custom of this castle, that when a knight cometh here, he must needs fight with our lord, and he that is the weaker must lose his head. And when that is done, if his lady that he bringeth be fouler than our lord's wife, she must lose her head: and if she be fairer proved than is our lady, then shall the lady of this castle lose her head. Now, said Sir Tristram, this is a foul custom and a shameful. But one advantage have I, said Sir Tristram, I have a lady is fair enough, fairer saw I never in all my life days, and I doubt not for lack of beauty she shall not lose her head, and rather than I should lose my head I will fight for it on a fair field. Wherefore, sir knight, I pray you tell your lord that I will be ready as to-morn with my lady, and myself to battle, if it be so I may have my horse and mine armour. Sir, said that knight, I undertake that your desire shall be sped right well.

And then he said, Take your rest, and look that ye be up by times to make you ready and your lady, for ye shall want no thing that you behoveth. And therewith he departed, and on the morn betimes that same knight came to Sir Tristram and fetched him out and his lady, and brought him horse and armour that was his own, and bad him make him ready to the field, for all the estates and commons of that lordship were there ready to behold that battle and judgment. Then came Sir Breunor, the lord of that castle, with his lady in his hand muffled, and asked Sir Tristram where was his lady:—For and thy lady be fairer than mine, with thy sword smite off my lady's head, and if my lady be fairer than thine, with my sword I must strike off her head. And if I may win thee, yet shall thy lady be mine, and thou shalt lose thy head. Sir, said Tristram, this is a foul and horrible: and rather than I should lose her head, yet had lose my head. Nay, nay, said Sir nor, the ladies shall be first together, and the one shall be judged. Nay, I will not so, Tristram, for here is none that w righteous judgment. But I doubt said Sir Tristram, my lady is fair thine, and that will I prove and good with my hand. And when he be that will say the contrary prove it on his head. And the Sir Tristram shewed La Beale and turned her thrice about with naked sword in his hand. And Sir Breunor saw that, he did th wise turn his lady. But when Breunor beheld La Beale Isou thought he never saw a fairer lady: then he dread his lady's head she off. And so all the people that were present gave judgment that Beale Isou was the fairer lady, better made. How now, said Tristram, me seemeth it were pity the lady should lose her head, but that thou and she of long time used this wicked custom, and both there have many good knig ladies been destroyed, for that there were no loss to destroy you. Truly, said Sir Breunor, for to sooth, thy lady is fairer than mine that me sore repenteth. And so the people privily say: for of all I saw none so fair, and then thou wilt slay my lady, I doubt I shall slay thee and have the Thou shalt win her, said Sir Tr as dear as ever knight won lady because of thine own judgment, wouldest have done to my lady she had been fouler, and because evil custom, give me thy lad Tristram. And therewithall Sir tram strode unto him and took him from him, and with an awk strome off her head clean. Well said Sir Breunor, now hast thee a despite.
CHAP. XXVI.

Tristram fought with Sir Breunor and at the last smote off his horse: since I am lady-vill win thy lady and I may. They took their horses and came as it had been the thunder; and Tristram smote Sir Breunor clean from horse, and lightly he rose up; Sir Tristram came again by him at his horse throughout both the seas, that his horse hurled here and fell dead to the ground. And Breunor ran after to have slain Tristram, but Sir Tristram was light and voided his horse lightly. Never Sir Tristram might drench and his sword, the other gave ee or four sad strokes. Then shed together like two boars, and traversing mightily and two noble knights. For this mor was a proved knight, and in, and then, the death of many rights, that it was pity that he long endured. Thus they fought, and there and there two hours, wer were wounded sore. Then Sir Breunor rushed upon Sir a, and took him in his arms, for ed much in his strength. Then Tristram called the strongest highest knight of the world, for called bigger than Sir Lancelot, Lancelot was better breathed. Sir Tristram thrust Sir Breunor groveling, and then he unlaced hand strike off his head. And they that longed to the castle him and did him homage and praying him that he would abide ill a little while to fordo that stom. Sir Tristram granted.

The meanwhile one of the of the castle rode unto Sir i, the haut prince, the which Breunor's son, which was a night, and told him what misre his father had and his

CHAP. XXVII.

How Sir Galahad fought with Sir Tristram, and bow Sir Tristram yielded him and promised to fellowship with Lancelot.

Then came Sir Galahad and the king with the hundred knights with him, and this Sir Galahad proffered to fight with Sir Tristram hand for hand. And so they made them ready to go unto battle on horseback with great courage. Then Sir Galahad and Sir Tristram met together so hard that either bare other down, horse and all, to the earth. And then they avoided their horses as noble knights, and dressed their shields and drew their swords with ire and rancour, and they lashed together many sad strokes, and one while striking, another while foining, tracing and traversing as noble knights, thus they fought long, near half a day, and either were sore wounded. At the last Sir Tristram waxed light and big, and doubled his strokes, and drove Sir Galahad aback on the one side and on the other, so that he was like to have been slain. With that came the king with the hundred knights, and all that fellowship went fiercely upon Sir Tristram. When Sir Tristram saw them coming upon him, then he wist well he might not endure. Then as a wise knight of war, he said to Sir Galahad the haut prince, Sir, ye shew to me no knighthood, for to suffer all your men to have ado with me all at once, and as me seemeth ye be a noble knight of your hands, it is a great shame to you. Truly, said Sir Galahad, there is none other way but thou must yield thee to me, other else to die, said Sir Galahad to Sir Tristram. I will rather yield me to you than die, for that is more for the might of your men than for the might of your hands. And therewith Sir Tristram took his own sword by the point, and put the pommel in the hand of Sir Galahad. Therewithall came the king with the hundred knights, and hard began to assail Sir Tristram. Let be, said Sir Galahad, be
ye not so hardy to touch him, for I have given this knight his life. That is your shame, said the king with the hundred knights; hath he not slain your father and your mother? As for that, said Sir Galahad, I may not blame him greatly, for my father had him in prison, and enforced him to do battle with him, and my father had such a custom, that was a shameful custom, that what knight came there to ask harbour, his lady must needs die but if she were fairer than my mother, and if my father overcame that knight he must needs die. This was a shameful custom and usage, a knight for his harbour asking to have such harbourage. And for this custom I would never draw about him. Truly, said the king, this was a shameful custom. Yea, said Sir Galahad, so seemed me, and me seemed it had been great pity that this knight should have been slain, for I dare say he is the noblest man that beareth life, but if it were Sir Launcelot du Lake. Now fair knight, said Sir Galahad, I require thee tell me thy name, and of whence thou art, and whither thou wilt. Sir, he said, my name is Sir Tristram de Liones, and from king Mark of Cornwall I was sent on message unto king Anguish of Ireland, for to fetch his daughter to be his wife, and here she is ready to go with me into Cornwall, and her name is La Beale Isoud. And Sir Tristram, said Sir Galahad the haut prince, well be ye found in these marches, and so ye will promise me to go unto Sir Launcelot du Lake and accompany with him, ye shall go where ye will, and your fair lady with you. And I shall promise you never in all my days shall such customs be used in this castle as have been used. Sir, said Sir Tristram, now I let you wit I wend ye had been Sir Launcelot du Lake when I saw you first, and, therefore I dread you the more; and Sir, I promise you, said Sir Tristram, as soon as I may I will see Sir Launcelot and en fellowship me with him, for of all the knights of the world I most desire his fellowship.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How Sir Launcelot met with Sir Gawaine, a rescue of Sir Gawaine.

And then Sir Tristram took I when he saw his time, and took And in the mean while word came Sir Launcelot and to Sir Trist Sir Carados the mighty king, that made like a giant, had fought Sir Gawaine, and gave him such a blow that he swooned in his saddle, and that he took him by the coat pulled him out of his saddle, and bound him to the saddle bow, rode his way with him towards the castle. And as he rode, by Sir Launcelot met with Sir Gawain and anon he knew Sir Gawain lay bound after him. Ah, said Launcelot unto Sir Gawain, stands it with you? Never said Sir Gawaine, unless that me, for without ye rescue me no knight that may, but either Sir Tristram. Wherefore Sir Launcelot was heavy of Sir Gawaine's. And then Sir Launcelot bad Sir Carados, Lay down that knight, and with me. Thou art but a fool Sir Carados, for I will serve you same wise. As for that, said Sir Launcelot, spare me not, for I warn will not spare thee. And then he Sir Gawaine hand and foot, threw him to the ground. And gat his spear of his Squire and down from Sir Launcelot to fetch his And so either met with other, and their spears to their hands, and they pulled out swords and together on horseback more than hour. And at the last Sir Launcelot smote Sir Carados such a buffet the helm that it perched his brow. So then Sir Launcelot took Sir Carados by the collar and pulled him unto horse feet, and then he alight and took off his helmet and strike off his hair. And then Sir Launcelot unbound Sir Gawaine. So this same tale was told Sir Galahad and to Sir Tris
OF THE WEDDING OF KING MARK.

ye hear the nobleness that Sir Launcelot. Alas, said Sir and I had not this message in this fair lady, truly I would not or I had found Sir Launcest Sir Tristram and La Beale ent to the sea and came into, and there all the barons met

CHAP. XXIX.

Wedding of King Mark to La Beale and of Bragwaine her maid, and

non they were richly wedded at nobleyn. But ever, as the book saith, Sir Tristram and Laud loved ever together.

was there great justs and great g, and many lords and ladies at feast, and Sir Tristram was eased of all other. Thus dured long, and after the feast was bin a little while after, by the two ladies that were with queen ey ordained for hate and envy y dame Bragwaine, that was lad unto La Beale Isoud, and sent into the forest for to fetch and there she was met, and bound hand to a tree, and so she was three days. And by fortune Sir s found dame Bragwaine and delivered her from the death, brought her to a nunnerie there to be recovered. When Isoud missed her maiden wit ye well right heavy as ever was any of all earthly women she in best, the cause was for she leh her out of her country. But upon a day the queen Isoud went into the forest to put away her so, and there she went herself well and made great moan. Suddenly there came Sir Palamides and had heard all her complaint, Isoud, and if ye will be my boon I shall bring to you Bragwaine safe and sound. And he was so glad of his proffer that unadvised she granted all his. Well madam, said Sir Palamides, I trust to your promise, and if ye will abide here half an hour I shall bring her to you. I shall abide you, said La Beale Isoud. Then Sir Palamides rode forth his way to that nunnerie, and lightly he came again with dame Bragwaine; but by her good will she would not have come again, because for love of the queen she stood in adventure of her life. Notwithstanding, half against her will, she went with Sir Palamides unto the queen. And when the queen saw her she was passing glad. Now madam, said Palamides, remember upon your promise, for I have fulfilled my promise. Sir Palamides, said the queen, I wot not what is your desire, but I will that ye wit howbeit I promised you largely I thought none evil, nor I warn you none ill will I do. Madam, said Sir Palamides, as at this time ye shall not know my desire, but before my lord your husband there shall ye know that I will have my desire that ye have promised me. And therewith the queen departed and rode home to the king, and Sir Palamides rode after her. And when Sir Palamides came before the king he said, Sir king, I require you as ye be a righteous king, that ye will judge me the right. Tell me the cause, said the king, and ye shall have right.

CHAP. XXX.

How Palamides demanded queen Isoud, and how Lambeugus rode after to rescue her, and of the escape of Isoud.

Sir, said Palamides, I promised your queen Isoud to bring again dame Bragwaine that she had lost, upon this covenant, that she should grant me a boon that I would ask, and without grudging other advisement she granted me. What say ye, my lady? said the king. It is truly as he saith, said the queen, to say the sooth I promised him his asking for love and joy that I had to see her. Well madam, said the king, and if ye were hasty to grant him what boon he would ask, I will well that ye perform your promise. Then said Sir Palamides, I will that ye wit that I will have your
for him. And all manner of murderers in those days were called treason. So when king Anguish understood his accusing he was passing heavy, for he knew Sir Blamor de Ganis that he was a noble knight, and of noble knights come. Then the king of Ireland was simply purveyed of his answer, therefore the judges gave him respite by the third day to give his answer. So the king departed unto his lodging. The mean while there came a lady by Sir Tristram’s pavilion making great dolo. What aileth you, said Sir Tristram, that ye make such dolo? Ah, fair knight, said the lady, I am ashamed unless that some good knight help me, for a great lady of worship send by me a fair child and a rich unto Sir Launcelot du Lake, and thereby there met with me a knight and threw me down from my palfrey, and took away the child from me. Well my lady, said Sir Tristram, and for my lord Sir Launcelot’s sake I shall get you that child again, or else I shall be beaten for it. And so Sir Tristram took his horse, and asked the lady which way the knight rode. And then she told him. And he rode after him, and within a mile he overtook that knight. And then Sir Tristram bad him turn and give again the child.

CHAP. XXI.
How Sir Tristram rescued a child from a knight, and how Gouvernail told him of king Anguish.

The knight turned his horse, and he made him ready for to fight. And then Sir Tristram smote him with a sword such a buffet that he tumbled to the earth. And then he yielded him unto Sir Tristram. Then come thy way, said Sir Tristram, and bring the child to the lady again. So he took his horse meekly and rode with Sir Tristram, and then by the way Sir Tristram asked him his name. Then he said, My name is Breuse Saunce Pité. So when he had delivered that child to the lady he said, Sir, as in this the child is well remedied. Then Sir Tristram let him go again, that sore repented him after, for he was a great foe unto many good knights Arthur’s court. Then w Tristram was in his pavilion, Go his man came and told him how king Anguish of Ireland was other, and he was put in great fear and there Gouvernail told Sir Tristram how king Anguish was summoned appealed of murder. Truly, said Tristram, these be the best tidings ever came to me this seven ye now shall the king of Ireland have my help, for I dare say the knight in this country is Arthur’s court dare do battle with Blamor de Ganis, and for to love of the king of Ireland I will the battle upon me, and therefore Gouvernail bring me, I charge thee, king. Then Gouvernail went to Anguish of Ireland and saluted him. The king welcomed him and asked what he would. Sir, said Gouvernail, here is a knight near hand that would to speak with you: he bad me would do you service. What k he, said the king. Sir, he said, I Tristram de Liones, that for your grace ye shewed him in you will reward you in these co. Come on fellow, said the king, anon, and shew me unto Sir Tristram. So the king took a little hack but few fellowship with him until he came unto Sir Tristram’s pavilion when Sir Tristram saw the king unto him and would have hold stirrup. But the king left his horse lightly, and either halsed in arms. My gracious lord, said Tristram, gramercy of your great nesses shewed unto me in your pi and lands; and at that time promised you to do my service an it lay in my power. And gentle I said the king unto Sir Tristram have I great need of you; nev I so great need of no knight? How so, my good lord? said Sir Tristram. I shall tell you, said the king, am summoned and appealed for my country for the death of a knight was kin unto the good knight Sir
relore Sir Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis, hath appealed with him, other to find a my stead. And well I wot, thing these that are come of blood, as Sir Launcelot and, are passing good knights, men for to win in battle as I know now living. Sir, said am, for the good lordship ye in Ireland, and for my lady's sake, La Beale Isoud, ke the battle for you upon action that ye shall grant me ys: that one is, that ye shall me that ye are in the right, were never consenting to the death; Sir, then, said Sir Tris- n that I have done this battle, ve me grace that I speed, that give me a reward, what thing e that I will ask of you. Truly, ting, ye shall have whatsoever sk. It is well said, said Sir And then by the commandments of the kings Sir Blamor de Ganis and Sir Tristram were sent for, to hear the charge. And when they were come before the judges, there were many kings and knights beheld Sir Tris- tram, and much speech they had of him because he slew Sir Marhaus the good knight, and because he forjusted Sir Palamides the good knight. So when they had taken their charge they withdrew them for to make them ready to do battle. Then said Sir Bleoberis to his brother Sir Blamor, Fair dear brother, remember of what kin we be come of, and what a man is Sir Laun- celot du Lake, neither further nor nearer but brothers' children, and there was never none of our kin that ever was shamed in battle, and rather suffer death, brother, than to be shamed. Brother, said Blamor, have ye no doubt of me, for I shall never shame none of my blood, how be it I am sure that yonder knight is called a passing good knight, as of his time one of the world, yet shall I never yield me, nor say the loth word: well may he happen to smite me down with his great might of chivalry, but rather shall he slay me than I shall yield me as recreant. God speed you well, said Bleoberis, for ye shall find him the mightiest knight that ever ye had ado withall, for I know him, for I have had ado with him. God me speed, said Blamor de Ganis. And therewith he took his horse at the one end of the lists, and Sir Tristram at the other end of the lists, and so they feured their spears and came together as it had been thunder, and there Sir Tristram through great might smote down Sir Blamor and his horse to the earth. Then anon Sir Blamor avoided his horse, and pulled out his sword and threw his shield afore him, and bad Sir Tristram alight; for though an horse hath failed me, I trust the earth will not fail me. And then Sir Tristram alight and dressed him unto battle, and there they lashed together strongly as racing and tracing, foining and dashing many sad strokes, that the kings and knights had great wonder

CHAP. XXII.

Tristram fought for Sir Anc and overcame bis adversary, and s adversary would never yield

make your answer that your is ready, for I shall die in rel rather than to be recreant. doubt of you, said the king, ye should ado with Sir: du Lake. Sir, said Sir Tris- or Sir Launcelot, he is called knight of the world, and wit that the knights of his blood are and dread shame; and as for seris, brother to Sir Blamor, one battle with him, therefore head it is no shame to call him knight. It is noised, said the Blamor is the hardier knight. or that, let him be, he shall refused, and as he were the knight that now beareth shield or king Anguish departed unto ndos and the kings that were e as judges, and told them had found his champion ready.
that they might stand, for ever they fought like wood men, so that there were never knights seen fight more fiercely than they did, for Sir Blamor was so hasty that he would have no rest, that all men wondered that they had breath to stand on their feet; and all the place was bloody that they fought in. And at the last, Sir Tristram smote Sir Blamor such a buffet upon the helm that he there fell down upon his side, and Sir Tristram stood and beheld him.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir Blamor desired Tristram to slay him, and how Sir Tristram spared him, and how they took appointment.

Then when Sir Blamor might speak, he said thus: Sir Tristram de Liones, I require thee, as thou art a noble knight, and the best knight that ever I found, that thou wilt slay me out, for I would not live to be made lord of all the earth, for I had lever die with worship than live with shame; and needs, Sir Tristram, thou must slay me, or else thou shalt never win the field, for I will never say the loth word. And therefore if thou dare slay me, slay me I require thee. When Sir Tristram heard him say so knightly, he wist not what to do with him; he remembering him of both parties; of what blood he was come, and for Sir Launcelot's sake he would be full loth to slay him, and in the other party in no wise he might not choose but he must make him to say the loth word, or else to slay him. Then Sir Tristram start aback, and went to the kings that were judges, and there he kneeled down before them, and besought them for their worship, and for king Arthur's, and Sir Launcelot's sake, that they would take this matter in their hands. For my fair lords, said Sir Tristram, it were shame and pity that this noble knight that yonder lieth should be slain, for ye hear well ashamed will he not be, and I pray to God that he never be slain nor ashamed for me. And as for the king for whom I fight for, I shall him, as I am his true champion: knight in this field, that he will mercy upon this good knight. said king Anguish to Sir Tristram will for your sake be ruled as have me. For I know you for knight. And therefore I will pray the kings that be here as just take it in their hands. And that were judges called Sir Bleoberis, he said, Bleoberis, though my be beaten, and hath the worse might of arms, I dare say, that Tristram hath beaten his body I not beaten his heart, and I thank is not shamed this day. And rathe should be shamed I require ye Bleoberis, let Sir Tristram slay him. It shall not be so, said the kings part adversary, both the king's champion, have pity of Sir B knighthood. My lords, said Bl, I will right well as ye will. Then the kings called the Ireland, and found him good an able. And then, by all their advi Tristram and Sir Bleoberis took Blamor, and the two brethren w record with king Anguish, and and made friends for ever. At Sir Blamor and Sir Tristram k gather, and there they made the that they would never none of two brethren fight with Sir Tristram made the same. And for that gentle battle all the of Sir Launcelot loved Sir Tristram ever.

Then king Anguish and Sir T took their leave, and sailed into with great nobleness and joy. S they were in Ireland the king k it known throughout all the land and in what manner Sir Tristram done for him. Then the queen that there were made the most that they might. But the joy t Beale Isoud made of Sir Tristram might no tongue tell, for of men she loved him most.
CHAP. XXIV.

Tristram demanded La Beale king Mark, and how Sir and Isoud drank the love

On a day king Anguish asked why he asked not his matsoever he had promised should have it without fail.

Tristram, now is it time, that I will desire, that ye will Beale Isoud your daughter, I, but for mine uncle king shall have her to wife, for promised him. Alas, said he, had leuer than all the have ye would wed her, and I did, then were ever in this world, and promise. Therefore, said I, I pray you hold your ye promised me, for this, that ye will give me La be wedded to king Mark.

As for that, said king shall have her with you, her what it please you, say if that ye list to wed that is to me levest: and her unto king Mark your in your choice.

Take a short conclusion, La was made ready to go with, and dame Bragwaine went for her chief gentlewoman, other. Then the queen, her, gave to her and dame daughter's gentlewoman, Gourinail, a drink, and charged that day king Mark should one day they should give drink, so that king Mark to La Beale Isoud; and the queen, I undertake either the days of their life. Drink was given unto dame and unto Gourinail. And Sir Tristram took the sea Isoud; and when they their cabin, it happened so that they were thirsty, and they saw a little flasket of gold stand by them, and it seemed by the colour and the taste that it was noble wine. Then Sir Tristram took the flasket in his hand, and said, Madam Isoud, here is the best drink that ever ye drank, that dame Bragwaine your maiden, and Gourinail my servant, have kept for themselves. Then they laughed and made good cheer, and either drank to other freely, and they thought never drink that ever they drank to other was so sweet nor so good. But by that their drink was in their bodies, they loved either so well that never their love departed for weal neither for woe. And thus it happed the love first betwixt Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud, the which love never departed the days of their life. So then they sailed till by fortune they came nigh a castle that hight Pluere, and thereby arrived for to repose them, weening to them to have had good harbourage. But anon as Sir Tristram was within the castle they were taken prisoners, for the custom of the castle was such, who that rode by that castle, and brought any lady, he must needs fight with the lord, that hight Breunor. And if it were so that Breunor wan the field, then the knight stranger and his lady he put to death, what that ever they were; and if it were so that the strange knight wan the field of Sir Breunor, then should he die and his lady both. This custom was used many winters, for it was called the Castle Pluere, that is to say the weeping castle.

CHAP. XXV.

How Sir Tristram and Isoud were in prison, and how be fought for her beauty, and smote off another lady's head.

Thus as Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud were in prison, it happed a knight and a lady came unto them where they were, to cheer them. I have marvel, said Tristram unto the knight and the lady, what is the cause
the lord of this castle holdeth us in prison: it was never the custom of no place of worship that ever I came in, that when a knight and a lady asked harbour, and they to receive them, and after to destroy them that be his guests. Sir, said the knight, this is the old custom of this castle, that when a knight cometh here, he must needs fight with our lord, and he that is the weaker must lose his head. And when that is done, if his lady that he bringeth be fouler than our lord’s wife, she must lose her head: and if she be fairer proved than is our lady, then shall the lady of this castle lose her head. Now, said Sir Tristram, this is a foul custom and a shameful. But one advantage have I, said Sir Tristram, I have a lady is fair enough, fairer saw I never in all my life days, and I doubt not for lack of beauty she shall not lose her head, and rather than I should lose my head I will fight for it on a fair field. Wherefore, sir knight, I pray you tell your lord that I will be ready to-morn with my lady, and myself to battle, if it be so I may have my horse and mine armour. Sir, said that knight, I undertake that your desire shall be sped right well.

And then he said, Take your rest, and look that ye be up by times to make you ready and your lady, for ye shall want no thing that ye behoveth. And therewith he departed, and on the morn betimes that same knight came to Sir Tristram and fetched him out and his lady, and brought him horse and armour that was his own, and bad him make him ready to the field, for all the estates and commons of that lordship were there ready to behold that battle and judgment. Then came Sir Breunor, the lord of that castle, with his lady in his hand muffled, and asked Sir Tristram where was his lady:—For and thy lady be fairer than mine, with thy sword smite off my lady’s head, and if my lady be fairer than thine, with my sword I must strike off her head. And if I may win thee, yet shall thy lady be mine, and thou shalt lose thy head. Sir, said Tristram, this is a foul and horrible; and rather than n should lose her head, yet had lose my head. Nay, nay, said Sir nor, the ladies shall be first together, and the one shall be judgment. Nay, I will not so, s Tristram, for here is none that w righteous judgment. But I dou said Sir Tristram, my lady is faire thine, and that will I prove an good with my hand. And wh he be that will say the contrary prove it on his head. And th Sir Tristram shewed La Beale and turned her thrice about w naked sword in his hand. And Sir Breunor saw that, he did th wise turn his lady. But wh Breunor beheld La Beale Isou thought he never saw a fairer la then he dread his lady’s head sh off. And so all the people that there present gave judgment th Beale Isoud was the fairer lady, better made. How now, said S tram, me seemeth it were pity th lady should lose her head, but that thou and she of long time used this wicked custom, and both there have many good knig ladies been destroyed, for that were no loss to destroy you. Truly, said Sir Breunor, for to sooth, thy lady is fairer than mine that me sore repenteth. And so the people privily say; for of all I saw none so fair, and ther thou wilt slay my lady, I doubt I shall slay thee and have th Thou shalt win her, said Sir Tr as dear as ever knight won la because of thine own judgment, wouldest have done to my lady she had been fouler, and because evil custom, give me thy lad Tristram. And therewithall S tram strode unto him and took la from him, and with an awk smote off her head clean. Well said Sir Breunor, now hast the me a despite.
CHAP. XXVI.

Tristram fought with Sir Breunor at the last smote off his

eye: since I am lady-won thy lady and I may.
took their horses and came
it had been the thunder; and
smote Sir Breunor clean
horse, and lightly he rose up;
Tristram came again by him
is horse throughout both the
that his horse hurled here and
deal dead to the ground. And
eunor ran after to have slain
, but Sir Tristram was light
and voided his horse lightly.
Sir Sir Tristram might dress
and his sword, the other gave
or four sad strokes. Then
d together like two boars,
and traversing mightily and
wo noble knights. For this
r was a proved knight, and
or then, the death of many
ants, that it was pity that he
g endured. Thus they fought,
he and there nigh two hours,
were wounded sore. Then
Sir Breunor rushed upon Sir
and took him in his arms, for
much in his strength. Then
Tristram called the strongest
ghost knight of the world, for
ed bigger than Sir Launcelot,
uncelot was better breathed.
r Tristram thrust Sir Breunor
veling, and then he unlaced
and strake off his head. And
ey that longed to the castle
m and did him homage and
ving him that he would abide
little while to fordo that
m. Sir Tristram granted
meanwhile one of the
the castle rode unto Sir
the haunt prince, the which
breunor's son, which was a
ght, and told him what mis-
his father had and his

CHAP. XXVII.

How Sir Galahad fought with Sir Tristram, and how Sir Tristram yielded
him and promised to fellowship with
Launcelot.

Then came Sir Galahad and the king
with the hundred knights with him, and
this Sir Galahad proffered to fight with
Sir Tristram hand for hand. And so
they made them ready to go unto battle
on horseback with great courage. Then
Sir Galahad and Sir Tristram met to-
gether so hard that either bare other
down, horse and all, to the earth. And
then they avoided their horses as noble
knights, and dressed their shields and
drew their swords with ire and ran-
cour, and they lashed together many
sad strokes, and one while striking,
another while joining, tracing and trav-
ersing as noble knights, thus they
fought long, near half a day, and either
were sore wounded. At the last Sir
Tristram waxed light and big, and
doubled his strokes, and drove Sir Gala-
had aback on the one side and on the
other, so that he was like to have been
slain. With that came the king with
the hundred knights, and all that fellow-
ship went fiercely upon Sir Tristram.
When Sir Tristram saw them coming
upon him, then he wist well he might
not endure. Then as a wise knight
of war, he said to Sir Galahad the
haunt prince, Sir, ye shew to me no
knighthood, for to suffer all your men
to have ado with me all at once, and as
me seemeth ye be a noble knight of
your hands, it is a great shame to you.
Truly, said Sir Galahad, there is none
other way but thou must yield thee to
me, other else to die, said Sir Galahad
to Sir Tristram. I will rather yield me
to you than die, for that is more for
the might of your men than for the
might of your hands. And therewith
Sir Tristram took his own sword by
the point, and put the pommel in the
hand of Sir Galahad. Therewithall
came the king with the hundred
knights, and hard began to assail Sir
Tristram. Let be, said Sir Galahad, be
CHAP. XXVIII.

How Sir Launcelot met with Sir bearing away Sir Gawaine, a rescue of Sir Gawaine.

And then Sir Tristram took when he saw his time, and tool And in the mean while word of Sir Launcelot and to Sir Trist Sir Carados the mighty king, made like a giant, had fought Sir Gawaine, and gave him such that he swooned in his saddle, that he took him by the cazelle pulled him out of his saddle, bound him to the saddle bow rode his way with him toward castle. And as he rode, by Sir Launcelot met with Sir and anon he knew Sir Gawaine lay bound after him. Ah, Launcelot unto Sir Gawaine stands it with you? Never said Sir Gawaine, unless that me, for without ye rescue me no knight that may, but either Sir Tristram. Wherefore Sir Launcelot was heavy of Sir Gawaine's And then Sir Launcelot bad Sir Carados, Lay down that knight, and with me. Thou art but a foe Sir Carados, for I will serve you same wise. As for that, said Sir Launcelot, spare me not, for I will not spare thee. And then Sir Gawaine hand and foot, threw him to the ground. And gat his spear of his Squire and from Sir Launcelot to fetch him. And so either met with other, all their spears to their hands, and they pulled out swords and together on horseback more hour. And at the last Sir Launcelot smote Sir Carados such a buffet the helm that it perched his brow. So then Sir Launcelot took Sir by the collar and pulled him off his horse feet, and then he alight and off his helm and strike off his helma. And then Sir Launcelot unto Gawaine. So this same tale to Sir Galahad and to Sir Tri...
OF THE WEDDING OF KING MARK.

ye hear the nobleness that Sir Launcelot. Alas, said Sir and I had not this message in this fair lady, truly I would or I had found Sir Launcelot Sir Tristram and La Beale ent to the sea and came into and there all the barons met

CHAP. XXIX.

sion they were richly wedded nobly. But ever, as the book saith, Sir Tristram and La ud loved ever together.

as there great justs and great g, and many lords and ladies at feast, and Sir Tristram was sed of all other. Thus dured long, and after the feast was nin a little while after, by the wo ladies that were with queen y ordained for hate and envy / dame Bragwaine, that was d lady unto La Beale Isould, and ent into the forest for to fetch there she was met, and bound and to a tree, and so she was three days. And by fortune Sir found dame Bragwaine and delivered her from the death, ght her to a nunnery there be recovered. When Isould missed her maiden wit ye well right heavy as ever was any r of all earthly women she best, the cause was for she her out of her country.

upon a day the queen Isould to the forest to put away her and there she went herself well and made great moan. uly there came Sir Palamides I had heard all her complaint, Madame Isould, and if ye will my boon I shall bring to you gwayne safe and sound. And was so glad of his proffer that madvised she granted all his Well madam, said Sir Pala- mides, I trust to your promise, and if ye will abide here half an hour I shall bring her to you. I shall abide you, said La Beale Isoud. Then Sir Palamides rode forth his way to that nunner, and lightly he came again with dame Bragwaine; but by her good will she would not have come again, because for love of the queen she stood in ad- venture of her life. Notwithstanding, half against her will, she went with Sir Palamides unto the queen. And when the queen saw her she was passing glad. Now madam, said Palamides, remember upon your promise, for I have fulfilled my promise. Sir Palamides, said the queen, I wit not what is your desire, but I will that ye wit howbeit I promised you largely I thought none evil, nor I warn you none ill will I do. Madam, said Sir Palamides, as at this time ye shall not know my desire, but before my lord your husband there shall ye know that I will have my desire that ye have promised me. And therewith the queen departed and rode home to the king, and Sir Palamides rode after her. And when Sir Palamides came before the king he said, Sir king, I require you as ye be a righteous king, that ye will judge me the right. Tell me the cause, said the king, and ye shall have right.

CHAP. XXX.

How Palamides demanded queen Isoud, and how Lambegus rode after to rescue her, and of the escape of Isoud.

Sir, said Palamides, I promised your queen Isoud to bring again dame Bragwaine that she had lost, upon this co- ventant, that she should grant me a boon that I would ask, and without grudging other advisement she granted me. What say ye, my lady? said the king. It is truly as he saith, said the queen, to say the sooth I promised him his asking for love and joy that I had to see her. Well madam, said the king, and if ye were hasty to grant him what boon he would ask, I will well that ye perform your promise. Then said Sir Palamides, I will that ye wit what I will have your
queen to lead her and govern her where as me list. Therewith the king stood still, and bethought him of Sir Tristram, and deemed that he would rescue her. And then hastily the king answered, Take her with the adventures that shall fall of it, for Sir Palamides as I suppose thou wilt not keep her no while. As for that, said Sir Palamides, I dare right well abide the adventure. And so to make short tale, Sir Palamides took her by the hand and said, Madam, grudge not to go with me, for I desire nothing but your own promise. As for that, said the queen, I fear not greatly to go with thee, howbeit thou hast me at advantage upon my promise. For I doubt not I shall be worshipfully rescued from thee. As for that, said Sir Palamides, be it as it be may. So queen Isoud was set behind Palamides, and rode his way. Anon the king sent after Sir Tristram, but in no wise he could be found, for he was in the forest an hunting; for that was always his custom, but if he used arms, to chase and to hunt in the forests. Alas, said the king, now I am shamed for ever, that by mine own assent my lady and my queen shall be devoured. Then came forth a knight, his name was Lambegus, and he was a knight of Sir Tristram. My lord, said this knight, sith ye have trust in my lord Sir Tristram, wit ye well for his sake I will ride after your queen and rescue her, or else I shall be beaten. Gramercy, said the king, and I live, Sir Lambegus, I shall deserve it. And then Sir Lambegus armed him, and rode after as fast as he might. And then within awhile he overtook Sir Palamides: and then Sir Palamides left the queen. What art thou? said Sir Palamides, art thou Tristram? Nay, he said, I am his servant, and my name is Sir Lambegus. That me repenteth, said Sir Palamides, I had lever thou hadst been Sir Tristram. I believe you well, said Sir Lambegus, but when thou meetest with Sir Tristram thou shalt have thy hands full. And then they hurtled together and all to-brast their spears, and then they pulled out their swords and hewed on helms and hamberks. At the last Sir Palamides gave Sir Lambegus such a wound that he fell down like a dead knight to the earth. Then he looked after La Beale Isoud, and then she was gone he nigh where. Wit ye well Sir Palamides was never so heavy. So the queen ran into the forest, and there she found as well, and therein she had thought to have drowned herself. And as good fortune would, there came a knight to her that had a castle thereby, his name was Sir Adtherp. And when he found the queen in that mischief he rescued her, and brought her to his castle. And when he wist what she was, he armed him and took his horse, and said he would be avenged upon Palamides; and so he rode till he met with him, and there Sir Palamides wounded him sore, and by force he made him to tell him the cause why he did battle with him, and how he had led the queen unto his castle. Now bring me there, said Palamides, or thou shalt die of my hands. Sir, said Sir Adtherp, I am wounded I may not follow, but ride yea this way, and it shall bring you into my castle, and there within is the queen. And then Sir Palamides rode still till he came to the castle, and at a window La Beale Isoud saw Sir Palamides, then she made the gates to be shut strongly. And when he saw he might not come within the castle, he put off his bridle and his saddle, and put his horse to pasture, and set himself down at the gate like a man that was out of his wit that recked not of himself.

CHAP. XXXI.

How Sir Tristram rode after Palamides, and how he found him and fought with him, and by the mean of Isoud the battle ceased.

Now turn we unto Sir Tristram, that when he was come home and wit La Beale Isoud was gone with Sir Palamides, wit ye well he was wroth out of measure. Alas, said Sir Tristram, I am this day shamed. Then he cried to Gou-
man, Haste thee that I were on horseback, for well I wot hath no might nor strength and Sir Palamides: alas, that been in his stead. So anon as he and horsed Sir Tristram nail rode after into the forest, a while he found his knight almost wounded to the death, Tristram bare him to a forester, and him to keep him well. And he forth, and there he found so sore wounded, and he told the queen she would have drowned he had not been, and how love he had taken upon battle with Sir Palamides. my lady? said Sir Tristram. The knight, she is sure enough castle, and she can hold her Gramercy, said Sir Tristram, goodness. And so he rode to the nigh to that castle, and Tristram saw where Sir Palat the gate sleeping, and his red fast afore him. Now governail, said Sir Tristram, and sake and make him ready. So rode unto him and said, Sir arise and take to thee thine out he was in such a study and not what Gouvernail said. sail came again and told Sir that he slept, or else he was hou again, said Sir Tristram, m arise, and tell him that I immortal foe. So Gouvernail and put upon him the butt ar, and said, Sir Palamides ready, for wit ye well Sir oveth yonder, and sendeth he is thy mortal foe. And Sir Palamides arose stilly words, and got his horse and bridled him, and lightly on him, and got his spear in and either feutred their spears, fast together; and there Sir mote down Sir Palamides horse tail. Then lightly Sir put his shield afore him his sword, and there began he on both parties, for both they fought for the love of one lady, and ever she lay on the walls and beheld them how they fought out of measure, and either were wounded passing sore, but Palamides was much sorer wounded. Thus they fought tracing and traversing more than two hours, that well nigh for dole and sorrow La Beale Isoud swooned. Alas, said she, that one I loved and yet do, and the other I love not, yet it were great pity that I should see Sir Palamides slain, for well I know by that time the end be done Sir Palamides is but a dead knight, and because he is not christened I would be loth that he should die a Saracen. And therewithal she came down and besought Sir Tristram to fight no more. Ah madam, said he, what mean you? will ye have me shamed? Well ye know I will be ruled by you. I will not your dishonour, said La Beale Isoud, but I would that ye would for my sake spare this unhappy Saracen Palamides. Madam, said Sir Tristram, I will leave fighting at this time for your sake.

Then she said to Sir Palamides: This shall be your charge, that thou shalt go out of this country while I am therein. I will obey your commandment, said Sir Palamides, the which is sore against my will. Then take thy way, said La Beale Isoud, unto the court of king Arthur, and there recommend me unto queen Guenever, and tell her that I send her word that there be within the land but four lovers, that is Sir Launcelot du Lake and queen Guenever, and Sir Tristram de Liones and queen Isoud.

CHAP. XXXII.

How Sir Tristram brought queen Isoud home, and of the debate of king Mark and Sir Tristram.

And so Sir Palamides departed with great heaviness. And Sir Tristram took the queen and brought her again to king Mark, and then was there made great joy of her home coming. Who was cherished but Sir Tristram! Then Sir Tristram let fetch Sir Lambegus his
knight from the forester's house, and it was long or he was whole, but at the last he was well recovered. Thus they lived with joy and play a long while. But ever Sir Andre, that was nigh cousin unto Sir Tristram, lay in a watch to wait betwixt Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud, for to take them and slander them. So upon a day Sir Tristram talked with La Beale Isoud in a window, and that espied Sir Andre, and told it to the king. Then king Mark took a sword in his hand and came to Sir Tristram, and called him false traitor, and would have stricken him. But Sir Tristram was nigh him, and ran under his sword, and took it out of his hand. And then the king cried, Where are my knights and my men? I charge you slay this traitor. But at that time there was not one would move for his words. When Sir Tristram saw there was not one would be against him, he shook the sword to the king, and made countenance as though he would have stricken him. And then king Mark fled, and Sir Tristram followed him, and smote upon him five or six strokes flatly on the neck that he made him to fall upon the nose. And then Sir Tristram went his way and armed him, and took his horse and his man, and so he rode into that forest. And there upon a day Sir Tristram met with two brethren that were knights with king Mark, and there he strake off the head of the one, and wounded the other to the death, and he made him to bear his brother's head in his helm unto the king, and thirty more there he wounded. And when that knight came before the king to say his message, he there died afore the king and the queen. Then king Mark called his council unto him and asked advice of his barons what was best to do with Sir Tristram. Sir, said the barons, in especial Sir Dinas the seneschal, Sir, we will give you counsel for to send for Sir Tristram, for we will that ye wit many men will hold with Sir Tristram and he were hard bested. And sir, said Sir Dinas, ye shall understand that Sir Tristram is called peerless and matchless a Christian knight, and of his might and hardiness we knew none so. knight, but if it be Sir Launce Lake. And if he depart from you and go to king Arthur's court, well he will get him such friend that he will not set by your grace. And therefore, sir, I counsel you to him to your grace. I will well, said the king, that he be sent for, that we be friends. Then the barons sent Tristram under a safe conduct. When Sir Tristram came to the king was welcome, and no rehearse made, and there was game and And then the king and the queen on hunting, and Sir Tristram.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Sir Lamorak justed with knights, and Sir Tristram at re, king Mark smote his horse down.

The king and the queen mad pavilions and their tents in that beside a river, and there was dailing and justing, for there were eve knights ready to just unto all the came in at that time. And there tune came Sir Lamorak de Gal Sir Diant, and there Sir Diant right well, but at the last he had Then Sir Lamorak proffered to And when he began he fared s the thirty knights that there w one of them but that he gave him and some of them were sore h marvel, said king Mark, what kn is that doth such deeds of arm said Sir Tristram, I know him noble knight as few now be livir his name is Sir Lamorak de Ga were great shame, said the king, should go thus away, unless that of you met with him better. Sir; Tristram, me seemeth it were nship for a noble man for to ha with him; and for because at th he hath done overmuch for an knight living, therefore, as me st it were great shame and villainy to him any more at this time, inson
his horse are weary both; for is of arms that he hath done; and they be well considered, though for Sir Launcelot du Lake. or that, said king Mark, I regard as ye love me and my lady en La Beale Isoud, take your ad just with Sir Lamorak de Sir, said Sir Tristram, ye bid me ing that is against knighthood, I can deem that I shall give all, for it is no mastery, for my ad I be fresh both, and so is not e and he; and wit ye well that take it for great unkindness, for good is loth to take another at it on. But because I will not e you, as ye require me so will nd obey your commandment.

Sir Tristram armed him anon his horse, and put him ad there Sir Lamorak met him, and what with the might of a spear, and of Sir Tristram's sir Lamorak's horse fell to the ad he sitting in the saddle. Then alight as he might he avoided thele his horse, and put his fore him, and drew his sword. in he bad Sir Tristram, Alight, right, and thou darest. Nay, said Tristram, I will no more have ado xe, for I have done to thee over unto my dishonour, and to thy th. As for that, said Sir Lamorak thee no thank: since thou justed me on horseback, I recee, and I beseech thee, and thou Tristram, fight with me on foot. st so, said Sir Tristram; and wit my name is Sir Tristram de and well I know ye be Sir k de Galis, and this that I have you was against my will, but I required thereto; but to say that at your request as at this time, have no more ado with you, for me of that I have done. As shame, said Sir Lamorak, on: or on mine, bear thou it and il, for though a mare's son hath cee, now a queen's son shall not; and therefore, and thou be such a knight as men call thee, I require thee, alight, and fight with me. Sir Lamorak, said Sir Tristram, I understand your heart is great, and cause why ye have, to say the sooth: for it would grieve me and any knight should keep himself fresh and then to strike down a weary knight, for that knight nor horse was never formed that alway might stand or endure. And therefore, said Sir Tristram, I will not have ado with you, for me forthinketh of that I have done. As for that, said Sir Lamorak, I shall quit you and ever I see my time.

CHAP. XXXIV.

How Sir Lamorak sent an horn to king Mark in despite of Sir Tristram, and bow Sir Tristram was driven into a chapel.

So he departed from him with Sir Driant, and by the way they met with a knight that was sent from Morgan le Fay unto king Arthur, and this knight had a fair horn harnessed with gold, and the horn had such a virtue that there might no lady nor gentlewoman drink of that horn but if she were true to her husband, and if she were false she should spill all the drink, and if she were true to her lord she might drink peaceably. And because of queen Guenever, and in the despite of Sir Launcelot, this horn was sent unto king Arthur, and by force Sir Lamorak made that knight to tell all the cause why he bare that horn. Now shalt thou bear this horn, said Lamorak unto king Mark, or else choose thou to die for it. For I tell thee plainly, in despite and reproof of Sir Tristram thou shalt bear that horn unto king Mark his uncle, and say thou to him that I sent it him for to assay his lady, and if she be true to him he shall prove her. So the knight went his way unto king Mark, and brought him that rich horn, and said that Sir Lamorak sent it him, and thereto he told him the virtue of that horn. Then the king made queen Isoud to drink thereof, and an hundred ladies, and there were but
four ladies of all those that drank clean. Alas, said king Mark, this is a great despite; and sware a great oath that she should be burnt, and the other ladies. Then the barons gathered them together, and said plainly, they would not have those ladies burnt for an horn made by sorcery, that came from as false a sorceress and witch as then was living. For that horn did never good, but caused strife and debate, and always in her days she had been an enemy to all true lovers. So there were many knights made their avow, if ever they met with Morgan le Fay that they would shew her short courtesy. Also Sir Tristram was passing wroth that Sir Lamorak sent that horn unto king Mark, for well he knew that it was done in the despite of him; and therefore he thought to quit Sir Lamorak. Then, always, Sir Tristram used to go to queen Isoud when he might, and ever Sir Andre his cousin watched him night and day, for to take him with La Beale Isoud. And so, upon a day, Sir Andre his cousin espied the hour and the time when Sir Tristram went to his lady. And then Sir Andre gat unto him twelve knights, and he set upon Sir Tristram secretly and suddenly, and there Sir Tristram was taken with La Beale Isoud, and then was he bound hand and foot, and so was he kept until the next day. And then by assent of king Mark, and of Sir Andre, and of some of the barons, Sir Tristram was led unto a chapel which stood upon the sea rocks, there for to take his judgment; and so he was led bound with forty knights. And when Sir Tristram saw there was none other remedy but needs that he must die, then said he, Fair lords, remember what I have done for the country of Cornwall, and in what jeopardy I have been in for the weal of you all. For when I fought for the truage of Cornwall with Sir Marhaus the good knight, I was promised for to be better rewarded, when ye all refused to take the battle; therefore, as ye be good gentle knights, see me not thus shamefully to die, for it is shame to all knighthood thus to see me die. For I dare well say, said Sir Tristram, that I never yet met a knight but I was as good as better. Fie upon thee, said Sir Andre, false traitor that thou art with thy ing, for all thy boast thou shalt die. O Andre, Andre, said Sir Tristram, thou shouldst be my kinsman now thou art to me full unfriend and there were no more but thou thou wouldst not put me to death said Sir Andre, and therewith he bade Sir Andre to kill his sword and would have slain. When Sir Tristram saw him make countenance, he looked upon him hands that were fast bound unto knights, and suddenly he pulled both to him and unwrast his and then he leapt unto his cousin and wrested his sword of his hands, then he smote Sir Andre that he fell to the earth, and Sir Tristram fought till he had killed knights. So then Sir Tristram gat to his chapel and kept it mightily, The cry was great, and the people came unto Sir Andre, more than an hundred. When Sir Tristram saw the people unto him, he remembered that he was naked, and shut fast the chapel and brake the bars of a window; he leapt out and fell upon the crags sea. And so at that time Sir Andre none of his fellows might get to that time.

CHAP. XXXV.

How Sir Tristram was holpen by his lady and of queen Isoud which was Pope lazar-cote, and how Tristram was rescued.

So when they were departed, Gournail and Sir Lambegus, and Sir Se de Lushon, that were Sir Tristram's knight, sought their master. When they were escaped, then they were glad, and on the rocks they found with towels they pulled him up; then Sir Tristram asked them why Beale Isoud was, for he wended that he had been away of Andre's people and Gournail, she is put in a cote. Alas, said Sir Tristram, that full ungoode place for such a fai
say she shall not be long there.

took his men, and went there
a Beale Isoud, and fetched her
I brought her into a forest to
man, and Sir Tristram there
th her. So the good knight
en go from him.—For at this
ay not help you. So they de-
save Gouvernail. And so upon
Tristram went into the forest
port him, and then it happened
ell there on sleep. And there
an that Sir Tristram afore hand
his brother; and when this
found him he shot him through
ar with an arrow, and Sir Tris-
up and killed that man. And
mean while it was told king
Sir Tristram and La Beale
in that same manor, and as
ever he might thither he came
y knights to slay Sir Tristram.
he came there he found him
there he took La Beale Isoud
him, and kept her strait that
ans never she might wit nor
Tristram, nor he unto her.
when Sir Tristram came to
old manor, he found the track
orses, and thereby he wist his
gone. And then Sir Tristram
it sorrow, and endured with
long time, for the arrow that
art withall was envenomed.

by the means of La Beale
: told a lady that was cousin
ne Bragwaine, and she came
stram, and told him that he
: be whole by no means,—For
La Beale Isoud may not help
efore she biddeth you haste
ny to king Howel, and there
find his daughter Isoud la
ains, and she shall help thee.
Tristram and Gouvernail got
ipping, and so sailed into

And when king Howel wist
was Sir Tristram he was full
him. Sir, he said, I am come
country to have help of your
for it is told me that there
other may heal me but she.
within a while she healed him.

CHAP. XXXVI.
How Sir Tristram served in war king
Howel of Britanny and slew his adver-
sary in the field.

There was an earl that hight Grip,
and this earl made great war upon the
king, and put the king to the worse,
and besieged him. And on a time Sir
Kehydus, that was son to king Howel,
as he issued out he was sore wounded
nigh to the death. Then Gouvernail
went to the king and said, Sir, I coun-
sel you to desire my lord, Sir Tristram,
as in your need to help you. I will do
by your counsel, said the king. And so
he went unto Sir Tristram and prayed
him in his wars for to help him, for my
son Sir Kehydus may not go into the
field. Sir, said Sir Tristram, I will go
to the field, and do what I may. Then
Sir Tristram issued out of the town
with such fellowship as he might make,
and did such deeds that all Britanny
spake of him. And then at the last, by
great might and force, he slew the earl
Grip with his own hands, and more
than an hundred knights he slew that
day. And then Sir Tristram was re-
cieved right worshipfully with pro-
cession. Then king Howel embraced
him in his arms and said, Sir Tristram,
all my kingdom I will resign to thee.
God defend, said Sir Tristram, for I am
beholden unto you for your daughter's
sake to do for you. Then by the great
means of king Howel and Kehydus
his son, by great proffers there grew
great love betwixt Isoud and Sir Tris-
tram, for that lady was both good and
fair, and a woman of noble blood and
fame. And for because that Sir Tris-
tram had such cheer and riches, and all
other pleasance that he had, almost he
had forsaken La Beale Isoud. And so
upon a time Sir Tristram agreed to wed
Isoud la Blanche Mains. And at the
last they were wedded, and solemnly
held their marriage.

And in the mean while there was a
knight in Britanny, his name was Sup-
Pinables, and he came over the sea
into England, and then he came unto
the court of king Arthur, and there he met with Sir Launcelot du Lake, and told him of the marriage of Sir Tristram. Then said Sir Launcelot, Fie upon him, untrue knight to his lady; that so noble a knight as Sir Tristram is, should be found to his first lady false, La Beale Isoud, queen of Cornwall. But say ye him this, said Sir Launcelot, that of all knights in the world I loved him most, and had most joy of him, and all was for his noble deeds; and let him wit the love between him and me is done for ever, and that I give him warning from this day forth as his mortal enemy.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How Sir Suppinables told Sir Tristram how he was defamed in the court of king Arthur, and of Sir Lamorak.

Then departed Sir Suppinables unto Brittany again, and there he found Sir Tristram, and told him that he had been in king Arthur’s court. Then said Sir Tristram, Heard ye any thing of me? Truly, said Sir Suppinables, there I heard Sir Launcelot speak of you great shame, and that ye be a false knight to your lady, and he bad me to do you to wit that he will be your mortal enemy in every place where he may meet you. That me repenteth, said Tristram, for of all knights I loved to be in his fellowship. So Sir Tristram made great moan, and was ashamed that noble knights should defame him for the sake of his lady. And in this mean while La Beale Isoud made a letter unto queen Guenever, complaining of the untruth of Sir Tristram, and how he had wedded the king’s daughter of Brittany. Queen Guenever sent her another letter, and bad her be of good cheer, for she should have joy after sorrow, for Sir Tristram was so noble a knight called, that by crafts of sorcery ladies would make such noble men to wed them, but in the end, queen Guenever said, it shall be thus, that he shall hate her, and love you better than ever he did tofore.

So leave we Sir Tristram in Brittany, and speak we of Sir Lamorak, that as he sailed his ship fell on and perished all, save Sir Launcelot and his squire, and there he mightily, and fishers of the Isle vage took him up, and his squire drowned, and the shipmen had labour to save Sir Lamorak’s all the comfort that they could do the lord of that isle hight Sir Ni Noire, a great mighty giant. A Sir Nabon hath all the knights Arthur, and in no wise he wo them favor. And these fishers told Lamorak all the guise of Sir I how there came never knight of Arthur, for he was drawn limb by limb. That forthinketh me, said Sir Rak, for that knight’s death, for my cousin. And if I were as well as ever I was, I would to his death. Peace, said the fishes make here no words, for, or ye from hence, Sir Nabon must know ye have been here, or else we die for your sake. So that I be said Lamorak, of my disease have taken in the sea, I will that him that I am a knight of king A for I was never afeard to do lord.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How Sir Tristram and his wife an. Wales, and bow he met thither with Lamorak.

Now turn we unto Sir Tristram upon a day he took a little bar, his wife Isoud la Blanch Main Sir Kehydius her brother, to pla in the coasts. And when the from the land, there was a wind them into the coast of Wales up Isle of Servage, where was Sir rak, and there the barge all 1 and there dame Isoud was hurt, well as they might they gat in forest, and there by a well he saw rides and a damsel. And thei
ther. Sir, said Segwarides, I a for Sir Tristram de Liones, in the world that I have the se to hate, because ye departed between me and my wife; but t, said Segwarides, I will never oble knight for a light lady, for I pray you be my friend, I be yours unto my power, for ell ye are hard bested in this ad we shall have enough to do us to succour other. And then arides brought Sir Tristram uly thereby that was born in , and she told him all the that valley, and how there ver knight there but he were isner or slain. Wit you well said Sir Tristram, that I slew aoa, and delivered Cornwall trauge of Ireland, and I am he vered the king of Ireland from or de Ganis, and I am he that Palamides, and wit ye well, I tristram de Liones, that by the God shall deliver this woful ervage. So Sir Tristram was x; then one told him there ight of king Arthur's that was on the rocks. What is his sid Sir Tristram. We wot not, fis hers, but he keepeith it no t that he is a knight of king and by the mighty lord of this etteeth nought by. I pray you, Tristram, and ye may brin er that I may see him; and if y of the knights of Arthur's I ew him. Then the lady prayed rs to bring him to her place. he morrow they brought him a fisher's raiment. And as Sir Tristram saw him he smiled n and knew him well, but he ot Sir Tristram. Fair knight, Tristram, me seemeth by your have been diseased but late, me thinketh I should know you e. I will well, said Sir Lamorak ye have seen me and met. Fair sir, said Sir Tristram, your name. Upon a covenant ll you, said Sir Lamorak, that is, that ye will tell me whether ye be lord of this island or no, that is called Nabon le Noire. For sooth, said Sir Tristram, I am not he, nor I hold not of him, I am his foe as well ye be, and so shall I be found or I depart out of this isle. Well, said Sir Lamorak, since ye have said so largely unto me, my name is Sir Lamorak de Galis, son unto king Pellinore. For sooth, I trow well, said Sir Tristram, for, and ye said other, I know the contrary. What are ye, said Sir Lamorak, that knoweth me? I am Sir Tristram de Liones. Ah, sir, remember ye not of the fall ye did give me once, and after ye refused me to fight on foot. That was not for fear I had of you, said Sir Tristram, but me shamed at that time to have more ado with you, for me seemed ye had enough; but, Sir Lamorak, for my kindness many ladies ye put to a reproof, when ye sent the horn from Morgan le Fay to king Mark, where as ye did this in despite of me. Well, said he, and it were to do again, so would I do, for I had lever strife and debate fell in king Mark's court rather than Arthur's court, for the honour of both courts be not alike. As to that, said Sir Tristram, I know well. But that that was done, it was for despite of me, but all your malice hurt not greatly. Therefore, said Sir Tristram, ye shall leave all your malice and so will I, and let us assay how we may win worship between you and me upon this giant Sir Nabon le Noire, that is lord of this island, to destroy him. Sir, said Sir Lamorak, now I understand your knighthood, it may not be false that all men say, for of your bounty, nobless, and worship, of all knights ye are peerless; and for courtesy and gentleness I shewed you ungentleness, and that now me repenteth.

CHAP. XXXIX.

_How Sir Tristram fought with Sir Nabon and overcame him, and made Sir Lamorak lord of the isle._

In the mean time came word that Sir Nabon had made a cry that all the
people of that isle should be at his
castle the fifth day after. And the same
day the son of Nabon should be made
knight, and all the knights of that
valley and thereabout should be there
to just, and all those of the realm of
Logris should be there to just with
them of North Wales; and thither
came five hundred knights, and they of
the country brought there Sir Lamorak,
and Sir Tristram, and Sir Kehydus, and
Sir Segwarides, for they durst none
otherwise do. And then Sir Nabon
lent Sir Lamorak horse and armour at
Sir Lamorak's desire, and Sir Lamorak
justed and did such deeds of arms
that Nabon and all the people said
there was never knight that ever they
saw do such deeds of arms. For, as
the French book saith, he forjusted all
that were there, for the most part of
five hundred knights, that none abode
him in his saddle. Then Sir Nabon
proffered to play with him his play:—
For I saw never no knight do so much
upon a day. I will well, said Sir Lamorak,
play as I may, but I am weary
and sore bruised: and there either gat a
spear, but Nabon would not encounter
with Sir Lamorak, but smote his horse
in the forehead and so slew him, and
then Sir Lamorak went on foot and
turned his shield and drew his sword,
and there began strong battle on foot.
But Sir Lamorak was so sore bruised
and short breathed, that he traced and
traversed somewhat aback. Fair fellow,
said Sir Nabon, hold thy hand, and I
shall shew thee more courtesy than ever
I shewed knight, because I have seen
this day thy noble knighthood. And
therefore stand thou by, and I will wit
whether any of thy fellows will have
ado with me. Then when Sir Tristram
heard that, he stopt forth and said,
Nabon, lend me horse and sure armour,
and I will have ado with thee. Well
fellow, said Sir Nabon, go thou to
yonder pavilion, and arm thee of the
best thou findest there, and I shall play
a marvellous play with thee. Then,
said Sir Tristram, look ye play well, or
else peradventure I shall learn you a
new play. That is well said, fell
Sir Nabon. So when Sir Tristram
armed him liket best, as shielded and sworded, he drew
him on foot, for well he knew
Nabon would not abide a stro
spear, therefore he would
knight's horses. Now fair fel,
Sir Nabon, let us play. So th
fought long on foot, tracing
versing, smiting and joining lot
out any rest. At the last Sir
prayed him to tell him his nar
Nabon, I tell thee my name is
Tristram de Liones, a knight of C
under king Mark. Thou art
said Sir Nabon, for of all th
have most desired to fight with
with Sir Launcelot. So then th
eagerly together, and Sir Tristram
Sir Nabon, and so forthwith he
his son and stroke off his head
then all the country said they
hold of Sir Tristram. Nay, Sir Tristram, I will not so: here is
shipful knight Sir Lamorak do
that for me he shall be lord
in country, for he hath done her
deeds of arms. Nay, said Sir
ra, I will not be lord of this
cease for I have not deserved it as wel
therefore give ye it where ye wi
will none have. Well, said Si
tram, since ye nor I will not hav
us give it to him that hath not
deserved it. Do as ye list, s
Lamorak, for the gift is yours
will none have and I had dese
So it was given to Segwarides,
fore he thanked him, and so
lord, and worshipfully he did go
And then Sir Segwarides deliv
prisoners, and set good govern
that valley; and so he return
Cornwall, and told king Mark
Beale Isoud how Sir Tristram le
vanced him to the Isle of Serva
there he proclaimed in all Corn
all the adventures of these twol
so was it openly known. But f
was La Beale Isoud when she
tell that Sir Tristram was wel
Isoud La Blanche Mains.
CHAP. XL.

Lamorak departed from Sir m, and how he met with Sir and after with Sir Launcelot.

As we unto Sir Lamorak, that in Arthur's court; and Sir and his wife and Kehydusssel and sailed into Britanny; Howel, where he was well, and when he heard of these, as they marvelled of his noble turn we unto Sir Lamorak, when he was departed from him, he rode out of the forest to an hermitage. When he saw him he asked him from where he came. Sir, said Sir Lamorak, I saw you from this valley. Sir, said Sir, thereof I greatly marvel, for my winter I saw never no country but he was slain or villainously wounded, or that a poor prisoner. Those ill said Sir Lamorak, are for Sir Tristram slew your lord, and his son. Then the was the ad, and all his brethren, for there was no such a tyrant full of men, and therefore, sir, the valley and franchise fold of Sir Tristram. So on now Sir Lamorak departed, the rode he saw four knights against one, and that one knight him well, but at the last they had him down. And then Lamorak went betwixt them, and on why they would slay that knight, and said it was shamest one. Thou shalt well wit, four knights, that he is false. your tale, said Sir Lamorak, I hear him also speak I will say. Then said Lamorak, say, can ye not excuse you but a false knight? Sir, said he, excuse me both with my words and my hands, that I will make one of the best of them, my body. Then spake they all We will not jeopard our bodies e; but wit thou well, they said, and king Arthur were here himself, it should not lie in his power to save his life. That is too much said, said Sir Lamorak, but many speak behind a man more than they will say to his face. And because of your words, ye shall understand that I am one of the simplest of king Arthur's court: in the worship of my lord now do your best, and in despite of you I shall rescue him. And then they lashed all at once to Sir Lamorak; but anon at two strokes Sir Lamorak had slain two of them, and then the other two fled. So then Sir Lamorak turned again to that knight and asked him his name. Sir, he said, my name is Sir Frol of the Out Isles. Then he rode with Sir Lamorak and bare him company; and as they rode by the way they saw a seemly knight riding against them, and all in white. Ah, said Frol, yonder knight justed late with me, and smote me down, therefore I will just with him. Ye shall not do so, said Sir Lamorak, by my counsel, and ye will tell me your quarrel, whether ye justed at his request, or he at yours. Nay, said Sir Frol, I justed with him at my request. Sir, said Lamorak, then will I counsel you deal no more with him, for me seemeth by his countenance he should be a noble knight and no jester, for me thinketh he should be of the Table Round. Therefore I will not spare, said Sir Frol; and then he cried and said, Sir knight, make thee ready to just. That needeth not, said the knight, for I have no lust to just with thee. But yet they fearted their spears, and the white knight overthrew Sir Frol, and then he rode his way a soft pace. Then Sir Lamorak rode after him, and prayed him to tell him his name, For me seemeth ye should be of the fellowship of the Round Table. Upon a covenant, said he, I will tell you my name, so that ye will not discover my name, and also that ye will tell me yours. Then, said he, my name is Sir Lamorak de Galis. And my name is Sir Launcelot du Lake. Then they put up their swords, and kissed heartily together, and either made great joy of.
other. Sir, said Sir Lamorak, and it please you I will do you service. God defend, said Sir Launcelot, that any of so noble blood as ye be should do me service. Then he said more. I am in a quest that I must do myself alone. Now God speed you, said Sir Lamorak, and so they departed. Then Sir Lamorak came to Sir Frol and horsed him again. What knight is that? said Sir Frol. Sir, said he, it is not for you to know, nor it is no point of my charge. Ye are the more uncourteous, said Sir Frol, and therefore I will depart from you. Ye may do as ye list, said Sir Lamorak, and yet by my company you have saved the fairest flower of your garland. So they departed.

CHAP. XLII.

How Sir Lamorak slew Sir Frol, and of the courteous fighting with Sir Belliance his brother.

Then within two or three days Sir Lamorak found a knight at a well sleeping, and his lady sat with him and waked. Right so came Sir Gawaine and took the knight's lady, and set her up behind his squire. So Sir Lamorak rode after Sir Gawaine, and said, Sir Gawaine, turn again. And then said Sir Gawaine, What will ye do with me? for I am nephew to king Arthur. Sir, said he, for that cause I will spare you, else that lady should abide with me, or else ye should just with me. Then Sir Gawaine turned him and ran to him that owned the lady with his spear. But the knight with pure might smote down Sir Gawaine, and took his lady with him. All this Sir Lamorak saw, and said to himself, But I revenge my fellow, he will say of me dishonour in king Arthur's court. Then Sir Lamorak returned and proffered that knight to just. Sir, said he, I am ready. And so they came together with all their might, and there Sir Lamorak smote the knight through both sides, that he fell to the earth dead. Then the lady rode to that knight's brother that hight Sir Belliance le Orgulous, that dwelled fast thereby, and then she told hi his brother was slain. Alas, sai will be revenged. And so hors and armed him, and within a w overtook Sir Lamorak, and ba Turn, and leave that lady, for th I must play a new play, for the slain my brother Sir Frol, that better knight than ever were th might well be, said Sir Lamon this day in the field I was found ter. So they rode together, and w other, and turned their shields an their swords, and fought might noble knights proved by the sp two hours. So then Sir B prayed him to tell his name. So he, my name is Sir Lamorak de Ah, said Sir Belliance, thou art t in the world that I most hate slew my sons for thy sake, w saved thy life, and now thou hast my brother Sir Frol. Alas, how I be accorded with thee? theref fend thee, for thou shalt die; t none other remedy. Alas, said Lamorak, full well me ought to you, for ye are the man that most done for me. And therewithall Lamorak kneeled down and besong of grace. Arise, said Sir Bellia else there as thou kneelest I sh thee. That shall not need, sa Lamorak, for I will yield me you, not for fear of you, nor for strength, but your goodness make full loth to have ado with you; fore I require you, for God's sak for the honour of knighthood, me all that I have offended unt Alas, said Belliance, leave thy kn or else I shall slay thee without Then they went again unto and either wounded other, that ground was bloody there as they. And at the last Belliance withdraback and set him down softly a little hill, for he was so faint for ing that he might not stand. Sir Lamorak threw his shield up back, and asked him, What cheer? said Sir Belliance. Ah sir, yet shew you favour in your mal-eas
Sir Belliance said, Sir Lamorak was a fool, for and I had thee at advantage as thou hast done me I slay thee, but thy gentleness is so and large that I must needs the mine evil will. And then Lamorak kneeled down and unfirst his umberere, and then his And then either kissed other with weeping tears. Then Sir Lamorak led Sir Belliance to an abbey fast by, and there Sir Lamorak would not depart from Belliance till he was whole. And then they swore together that none of them should never fight against other. So Sir Lamorak departed and went to the court of king Arthur.

It leue we of sire Lamorak and of sir Tristram. And here begynned the historge of La cote male tayle.

The Ninth Book.

CHAP. I.

Young man came into the court of Arthur, and bow Sir Kay called in scorn La Cote Male Taile.

the court of king Arthur there young man and bigly made, and richly beseen, and he desired to be knight of the king, but his garment sat overthwartly, howwas rich cloth of gold. What is name? said king Arthur. Sir, my name is Brunor le Noire, within short space ye shall know am of good kin. It may well be, Sir Kay the senescal, but in mocke shall be called La Cote Male that is as much as to say, the evil coat. It is a great thing that askst, said the king; and for what wearest thou that rich coat? tell or I can well think for some cause Sir, said he, I had a father a noble, and as he rode on hunting, upon that happed him to lay him down to And there came a knight that been long his enemy. And when he was fast on sleep, he all to him; and this same coat had my on the same time, and that maketh to sit so evil upon me, for the be on it as I found it, and never shall be amended for me. Thus to have my father's death in remembrance I wear this coat till I be revenged; and because ye are called the most noblest king in the world I come to you that ye should make me knight. Sir, said Sir Lamorak and Sir Gaheris, it were well done to make him knight, for him be seemeth well of person and of countenance, that he shall prove a good man, and a good knight and a mighty; for Sir, and ye be remembered, even such one was Sir Launcelot du Lake when he came first into this court, and full few of us knew from whence he came, and now he is proved the most man of worship in the world, and all your court and all your Round Table is by Sir Launcelot worshipped and amended more than by any knight now living. That is truth, said the king, and to morrow at your request I shall make him knight. So on the morrow there was an hart found, and thither rode king Arthur with a company of his knights to slay the hart. And this young man that Sir Kay named La Cote Male Taile was there left behind with queen Guenever, and by sudden adventure there was an horrible lion kept in a strong tower of stone, and it happened that he at that time brake loose,
and came hurling afore the queen and her knights. And when the queen saw the lion, she cried, and fled, and prayed her knights to rescue her. And there was none of them all but twelve that abode, and all the other fled. Then said La Cote Male Taile, Now I see well that all coward knights be not dead: and therewithal he drew his sword and dressed him afore the lion. And that lion gaped wide, and came upon him ramping to have slain him. And he then smote him in the midst of the head such a mighty stroke that it clave his head in sunder, and dashed to the earth. Then was it told the queen how that the young man that Sir Kay named by scorn La Cote Male Taile had slain the lion. With that the king came home. And when the queen told him of that adventure he was well pleased, and said, Upon pain of mine head he shall prove a noble man, and a faithful knight, and true of his promise. Then the king forthwithal made him knight. Now Sir, said this young knight, I require you and all the knights of your court, that ye call me by none other name but La Cote Male Taile; insomuch as Sir Kay so hath named me, so will I be called. I assent me well thereeto, said the king.

CHAP. II.

How a damsel came unto the court and desired a knight to take on him an inquest, which La Cote Male Taile empriz'd.

Then that same day there came a damsel into the king's court, and she brought with her a great black shield, with a white hand in the midst holding a sword. Other picture was there none in that shield. When king Arthur saw her, he asked her from whence she came, and what she would. Sir, she said, I have ridden long and many a day with this shield many ways, and for this cause I am come to your court:—There was a good knight that owned this shield, and this knight had undertaken a great deed of arms to achieve it, and so it misfortuned him another strong knight met with him by sudden adventur there they fought long, and wounded other passing sore, and were so weary that they left that even hand. So this knight that this shield saw none other who he must die; and then he command me to bear this shield to the king Arthur, he requiring and and some good knight to take this and that he would fulfil the that he was in. Now what say this quest? said king Arthur. I any of you here that will take upon to weld this shield? Then was the one that would speak one word. Sir Kay took the shield in his hand knight, said the damsel, what is name? Wit ye well, said he, my is Sir Kay the seneschal, that is where is known. Sir, said that I lay down that shield, for wit ye shall not layeth for you, for he must better knight than ye that shal this shield. Damsel, said Sir Kay ye well I took this shield in my by your leave for to behold it, that intent, but go wheresoe shall I will not go with you. the damsel stood still a great and beheld many of those k Then spake the knight La Cote Taile, Fair damsel, I will take shield and that adventure upon n wist I should whither we journey might be, for because I day made knight I would take the adventure upon me. What is your fair young man? said the damsel name is, said he, La Cote Male Well mayest thou be called so, s damsel, the knight with the evil coat, but and thou be so hardy upon thee to bear that shield follow me, wit thou well thy ski be as well hewn as thy coat. that, said La Cote Male Taile, am so hewn I will ask you no heal me withal. And forthwith came into the court two squin brought him great horses and mour and his spears, and anon armed, and took his leave. I wo
said the king, that ye took hard adventure. Sir, said adventure is mine, and the first took upon me, and that will elsewise come of me. Then departed, and La Cote Male first after. And within a vertook the damsel. And issaid him in the foulest

CHAP. III.

Male Taile overthrew Sir the king’s fool, and of the re- bad of the damsel.

Kay ordained Sir Dagonet, s fool, to follow after La aile, and there Sir Kay ord. Sir Dagonet was horsed and bad him follow La Cote nd proffer him to just, and nd when he saw La Cote cried and bad him make just. So Sir La Cote Male Sir Dagonet over his horse in the damsel mocked La Taile, and said, Fie for art thou shamed in Ar when they send a fool to ith thee, and specially at T. Thus she rode long and within a while there came the good knight, and there h La Cote Male Taile, and Bleoberis de Ganis, as at this fight upon foot. Then maleisant rebuked him in manner, and bad him, turn 1. Ah damsel, he said, I mercy to missay me no rief is enough though ye more. I call myself never night when a mare’s son nd also I count me never night for a fall of Sir Bleo- nous he rode with her two fortune there came Sir Palamides and encountered with him, and he in the same wise served him as did Bleoberis toforehand. What dost thou here in my fellowship, said the damsel Maleisant, thou canst not sit no knight nor withstand him one buffet, but if it were Sir Dagonet. Ah fair damsel, I am not the worse to take a fall of Sir Palamides, and yet great disworp have I none, for neither Bleoberis nor yet Palamides would not fight with me on foot. As for that, said the damsel, wit thou well they have disdain and scorn to light off their horses to fight with such a mean knight as thou art. So in the meanwhile there came Sir Mordred, Sir Gawaine’s brother, and so he fell in the fellowship with the damsel Maleisant. And then they came afore the castle Orgulous, and there was such a custom that there might no knight come by that castle but either he must just or be prisoner, or at the least to lose his horse and his harness. And there came out two knights against them, and Sir Mordred justed with the foremost, and that knight of the castle smote Sir Mordred down off his horse. And then anon La Cote Male Taile justed with that other, and either of them smote other down, horse and all to the earth. And when they avoided their horses, then either of them took other’s horses. And then La Cote Male Taile rode into that knight that smote down Sir Mordred, and justed with him; and there Sir La Cote Male Taile hurt and wounded him passing sore, and put him from his horse as he had been dead. So he turned unto him that met him afore, and he took the flight toward the castle, and Sir La Cote Male Taile rode after him into the castle Orgulous, and there La Cote Male Taile slew him.

CHAP. IV.

How La Cote Male Taile fought against an hundred knights, and how he escaped by the mean of a lady.

And anon there came an hundred knights about him and assailed him; and when he saw his horse should be
slain he alight and voided his horse, and put the bridle under his feet, and so put him out of the gate. And when he had so done, he hurled in among them, and dressed his back unto a lady's chamber-wall, thinking himself that he had lever die there with worship than to abide the rebukes of the damsel Maledisant. And in the mean time as he stood and fought, that lady whose was the chamber, went out sily at her postern, and without the gates she found La Cote Male Taille's horse, and lightly she got him by the bridle and tied him to the postern. And then she went unto her chamber sily again for to behold how that one knight fought against an hundred knights. And so when she had beheld him long, she went to a window behind his back and said, Thou knight thou fightest wonderly well, but for all that at the last thou must needs die, but and thou canst through thy mighty prowess win unto yonder postern, for there have I fastened thy horse to abide thee; but wit thou well thou must think on thy worship and think not to die, for thou mayest not win unto that postern without thou do nobly and mightily. When La Cote Male Taille heard her say so, he gripped his sword in his hands, and put his shield fair afore him, and through the thickest press he thrulled through them. And when he came to the postern he found there ready four knights, and at two the first strokes he slew two of the knights, and the other fled, and so he won his horse and rode from them. And all as it was, it was rehearsed in king Arthur's court, how he slew twelve knights within the castle Orgulous. And so he rode on his way. And in the mean while the damsel said to Sir Mordred, I ween my foolish knight be either slain or taken prisoner. Then were they ware where he came riding. And when he was come unto them, he told all how he had sped, and escaped in despite of them all, and some of the best of them will tell no tales. Thou liest falsely, said the damsel, that dare I make good, but as a fool and a dastard to all knighthood they have let thee pass. That may ye prove, said La Cote Male Taille. With that she sent a courier of hers that rode alway with her, for to know the truth of this deed. And so he rode thither lightly, and asked how and in what manner that Sir La Cote Male Taille was escaped out of the castle. Then all the knights cursed him and said that he was fiend and no man; for he hath slain here twelve of our best knights, and we wend unto this day that it had been too much for Sir Launcelot du Lake, or for Sir Tristram de Liones. And in despite of us all he is departed from us, and maugre our heads.

With this answer the courier departed, and came to Maledisant his lady, and told her all how Sir La Cote Male Taille had sped at the castle Orgulous. Then she smote down her head, and said little. By my head, said Sir Mordred to the damsel, ye are greatly to blame so to rebuke him, for I warrant you plainly he is a good knight, and I doubt not but he shall prove a noble knight, but as yet he may not sit sure on horseback: for he that shall be a good horseman it must come of usage and exercise. But when he cometh to the strokes of his sword he is then noble and mighty, and that saw Sir Bleoberis and Sir Palamides, for wit ye well they are wily men of arms, and anon they know when they see a young knight by his riding, how they are sure to give him a fall from his horse or a great buffet. But for the most part they will not light on foot with young knights, for they are wight and strongly armed. For in likewise Sir Launcelot du Lake when he was first made knight he was often put to the worse upon horseback, but ever upon foot he recovered his renown, and slew and defooled many knights of the Round Table. And therefore the rebukes that Sir Launcelot did to many knights causeth them that be men of prowess to beware, for often I have seen the old proved knights rebuked and slain by them that were but young beginners. Thus they rode sure talking by the way together.
we we off a while of this tale, we of Sir Launcelot du Lake.

CHAP. V.

Launcelot came to the court and La Cote Male Taile, and bow ed after him, and bow La Cote le was prisoner.

Then he was come to the court Arthur, then heard he tell of knight La Cote Male Taile, w the lion, and how he took the adventure of the black which was named at that hardest adventure of the uly, said Sir Launcelot unto his fellowes, it was shame to all nights to suffer such a young take such adventure upon destruction: for I will that id Sir Launcelot, that that aleasiant hath borne that my a day for to seek thee knights, and that was she Sance Pité took that aher, and after Tristram dece ued that shield from him it to the damsel again. A at that time Sir Tristram my nephew Sir Blamor de quarrel that was betwixt the island and him. Then many were sorry that Sir La Cote was gone forth to that.

Truly, said Sir Launcelot, I ride after him. And with say Sir Launcelot overtook Male Taile. And then he n and the damsel Maledi l when Sir Mordred saw lot then he left their fellow s so Sir Launcelot rode with a day, and ever that damsel a Cote Male Taile, and then lot answered for him; then and rebuked Sir Launcelot.

In time Sir Tristram sent by a letter unto Sir Launcelot him of the wedding of Isoud Mains, and passing courte gly Sir Tristram wrote Launcelot, ever beseeching his good friend, and unto La Beale Isoud of Cornwall, and that Sir Launcelot would excuse him if that ever he saw her. And within short time said Sir Tristram that he would speak with La Beale Isoud and with him right hastily. Then Sir Launcelot departed from the damsel and from Sir La Cote Male Taile, for to oversee that letter, and for to write another letter unto Sir Tristram de Liones. And in the mean while La Cote Male Taile rode with the damsel until they came unto a castle that hight Pendragon, and there were six knights stood afore him, and one of them proffered to just with La Cote Male Taile. And there La Cote Male Taile smote him over his horse croup. And then the five knights set upon him all at once with their spears, and there they smote La Cote Male Taile down, horse and man, and then they alight suddenly, and set their hands upon him all at once and took him prisoner, and so led him unto the castle and kept him as prisoner. And on the morn Sir Launcelot arose and delivered the damsel with letters unto Sir Tristram, and then he took his way after La Cote Male Taile, and by the way upon a bridge there was a knight proffered Sir Launcelot to just, and Sir Launcelot smote him down, and then they fought upon foot a noble battle together, and a mighty. And at the last Sir Launcelot smote him down groveling upon his hands and his knees; and then that knight yielded him, and Sir Launcelot received him fair. Sir, said the knight, I require thee tell me your name, for much my heart giveth unto you. Nay, said Sir Launcelot, as at this time I will not tell you my name, unless then that ye tell me your name. Certainly, said the knight, my name is Sir Nerovens, that was made knight of my lord Sir Launcelot du Lake. Ah, Nerovens de Lile, said Sir Launcelot, I am right glad that ye are proved a good knight, for now wit ye well my name is Sir Launcelot du Lake. Alas, said Nerovens de Lile, what have I done. And therewithal flat ling he fell to his feet, and would have
kissed them, but Sir Launcelot would not let him; and then either made great joy of other. And then Sir Neroven told Sir Launcelot that he should not go by the castle of Pendragon, For there is a lord, a mighty knight, and many knights with him, and this night I heard say that they took a knight prisoner yesterday that rode with a damsel, and they say he is a knight of the Round Table.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Launcelot fought with six knights, and after with Sir Brian, and how he delivered the prisoners.

Ah, said Sir Launcelot, that knight is my fellow, and him shall I rescue, or else I shall lose my life therefore. And therewithal he rode fast till he came before the castle of Pendragon, and anon therewithal there came six knights, and all made them ready to set upon Sir Launcelot at once. Then Sir Launcelot feutred his spear, and smote the foremost that he brake his back in sunder, and three of them hit and three failed. And then Sir Launcelot past through them, and lightly he turned in again, and smote another knight through the breast and throughout the back, and more than an ell, and therewithal his spear brake. So then all the remnant of the four knights drew their swords, and lashed at Sir Launcelot, and at every stroke Sir Launcelot bestowed so his strokes that at four strokes sundry they avoided their saddles, passing sore wounded, and forthwith he rode hurling into that castle. And, anon the lord of the castle that was that time called Sir Brian de les isles, the which was a noble man, and a great enemy unto king Arthur, within awhile he was armed and upon horseback: and then they feutred their spears, and hurled together so strongly that both their horses rashed to the earth. And then they avoided their saddles, and dressed their shields, and drew their swords, and flung together as wood men, and there were many strokes given in a while. At the last Sir Launcelot gave to Sir Brian such a buffet跪 kneeled upon his knees, and Launcelot rashed upon him, a great force he pulled him off, and when Sir Brian saw that he be slain, he yielded him, and put his mercy and in his grace. Sir Launcelot made him to delive prisoners that he had within him, and therein Sir Launcelot found thur's knights thirty, and fort and so he delivered them and rode his way. And anon as: Male Taile was delivered his horse and his harness, and his Maledisant. The mean while rovens, that Sir Launcelot had withall afore at the bridge, he damsel after Sir Launcelot for how he sped at the castle of Pen. And then they within the cast velled what knight he was w Brian and his knights delivered prisoners. Have ye no marvel, damsel, for the best knight in th was here, and did this tourney, ye well, she said, it was Sir La Then was Sir Brian full glad, was his lady and all his knig such a man should win then when the damsel and La Co Taile understood that it was S celot du Lake that had ridd them in fellowship, and that membered her how she had him and called him coward, t she passing heavy.

CHAP. VII.

How Sir Launcelot met with the named Maledisant, and how iber the damsel Bienpensant.

So then they took their horse forth a pace after Sir L And within two mile they overt and saluted him, and thanked the damsel cried Sir Launcelot her evil deed, and saying, For I know the flower of all knigh parted even between Sir Trist you. For I have sought you Sir Launcelot, and Sir Tristra
OF THE DAMSEL BIENPENSANT.

thank God I have met with once at Camelot, I met with n, and there he rescued this with the white hand held sword, which Sir Breuse had taken away from me. damsel, said Sir Launcelot, ou my name? Sir, said she, a damsel from a knight that withall at the bridge, and she our name was Sir Launcelot. Blame have she then, said Launcelot, but her lord Sir Nero told her. But damsel, said Launcelot, upon this covenant I will you, so that ye will not rebuke Sir La Cote Male Taile no he is a good knight, and I shall prove a noble knight, sake, and pity that he should destroyed, I followed him to in this great need. Ah, you, the damsel, for I say unto you and to him shuked him neyer for no hate of him, but for great love that him: for ever I supposed that too young and too tender of him these adventures, and, by my will I would have away for jealousy that I life; for it may be no young seed that shall achieve this to the end. Perdy, said Sir it is well said, and where ye the damsel Malediant, I ou the damsel Bienpensant. ey rode forth a great while came to the border of the Surlase, and there they found a with a strong bridge like a and when Sir Launcelot and the bridge, there start them of gentlemen and yeo that said, Fair lords, ye may his bridge and this fortress that black shield that I see a bear, and therefore there as but one of you at once; choose which of you shall in this bridge first. Then lot proffered himself first to this bridge. Sir, said La Cote Male Taile, I beseech you let me enter first within this fortress, and if I may speed well I will send for you, and if it happen that I be slain, there it goeth. And if so be that I am a prisoner taken, then may ye rescue me. I am loth, said Sir Launcelot, to let you pass this passage. Sir, said La Cote Male Taile, I pray you let me put my body in this adventure. Now go your way, said Sir Launcelot, and Jesu be your speed. So he entered, and anon there met with him two brethren, the one hight Sir Plaine de Force, and the other hight Sir Plaine de Amours; and anon they met with Sir La Cote Male Taile, and first La Cote Male Taile smote down Sir Plaine de Force, and soon after he smote down Plaine de Amours, and then they dressed them to their shields and swords, and bad La Cote Male Taile alight, and so he did, and there was dashing and foaming with swords, and so they began to assail full hard La Cote Male Taile, and many great wounds they gave him upon his head and upon his breast and upon his shoulders. And as he might ever among he gave sad strokes again. And then the two brethren traced and traversed for to be of both hands of Sir La Cote Male Taile, but he by fine force and knightly prowess gat them afore him. And then when he felt himself so wounded then he doubled his strokes and gave them so many wounds that he felled them to the earth, and would have slain them had they not yielded them. And right so Sir La Cote Male Taile took the best horse that there was of them three, and so rode forth his way to the other fortress and bridge, and there he met with the third brother, whose name was Sir Pleniorius, a full noble knight, and there they justed together, and either smote other down horse and man to the earth. And then they avoided their horses, and dressed their shields, and drew their swords, and gave many sad strokes, and one while the one knight was afore on the bridge, and another while the other. And thus they fought two hours and more, and
never rested, and ever Sir Launcelot and the damsel beheld them. Alas, said the damsel, my knight fighteth passing sore and over long. Now may ye see, said Sir Launcelot, that he is a noble knight, for to consider his first battle, and his grievous wounds. And even forth with all so wounded as he is, it is great marvel that he may endure this long battle with that good knight.

CHAP. VIII.

How La Cote Male Taile was taken prisoner, and after rescued by Sir Launcelot, and how Sir Launcelot overcame four brethren.

This mean while Sir La Cote Male Taile sank right down upon the earth, what for-wounded and what for-bled he might not stand. Then the other knight had pity of him, and said, Fair young knight, dismay you not, for had ye been fresh when ye met with me, as I was, I well wot that I should not have endured so long as ye have done, and therefore for your noble deeds of arms I shall shew to you kindness and gentleness in all that I may. And forth withal this noble knight Sir Pleniorius took him up in his arms, and led him into his tower. And then he commanded him the wine, and made to search him, and to stop his bleeding wounds. Sir, said La Cote Male Taile, withdraw you from me, and hie you to yonder bridge again, for there will meet you another manner knight than ever I was. Why, said Sir Pleniorius, is there another manner knight behind of your fellowship? Yea, said La Cote Male Taile, there is a much better knight than I am. What is his name? said Pleniorius. Ye shall not know for me, said La Cote Male Taile. Well, said the knight, he shall be encountered withal, whatsoever he be. Then Sir Pleniorius heard a knight call that said, Sir Pleniorius, where art thou? either thou must deliver me the prisoner that thou hast led unto thy tower, or else come and do battle with me. Then Sir Pleniorius gat his horse, and came with a spear in his hand, galloping towards Sir Launcelot, and then they began to feutre their spears, and came together as thunder, and smote either other so mightily that their horses fell down under them. And then they avoided their horses, and pulled out their swords, and hit two bulls they lashed together with great strokes and foins, but ever Sir Launcelot recovered ground upon him, and Sir Pleniorius traced to have gone about him. But Sir Launcelot would not suffer that, but bare him backer and backer till he came nigh his tower gate, and then said Sir Launcelot, I know thee well for a good knight, but wit that well thy life and death is in my hand, and therefore yield thee to me, and thy prisoner. The other answered no word, but strake mightily upon Sir Launcelot's helm, that fire sprang out of his eye; then Sir Launcelot doubled his stroke so thick, and smote at him so mightily, that he made him kneel upon his knees, and therewith Sir Launcelot leapt upon him and pulled him groveling down. Then Sir Pleniorius yielded him, and his tower, and all his prisoners, at his will. And then Sir Launcelot received him, and took his troth, and then he rode to the other bridge, and there Sir Launcelot justed with other three of his brethren, the one hight Pillounes, and the other hight Pellogris, and the third Sir Pellandris. And first upon horseback Sir Launcelot smote them down, and afterward he beat them on foot, and made them to yield them unto him, and then he returned unto Sir Pleniorius, and there he found in his prison king Cambados of Scotland and many other knights, and all they were delivered. And then Sir La Cote Male Taile came to Sir Launcelot, and then Sir Launcelot would have given him all these fortresses and these bridges. Nay, said La Cote Male Taile, I will not have Sir Pleniorius's livelihood: with that he will grant you, my lord Sir Launcelot, to come unto king Arthur's court, and to be his knight, and all his brethren, I will pray you, my lord, to let him have his livelihood. I will well, said Sir Launcelot,
LA COTE MALE TAILE WEDS THE DAMSEL.

...he will come to the court
ur, and become his man,
en five. And as for you,
, I will undertake, said Sir
, Sir Plen-
t feast of Pentecost I will
 and ruled as king Arthur
e. Then Sir Laun-
La Cote Male Tail reposed

of the castle of Pendragon,

mean while there came
eschal, and Sir Brandiles,
 fellowshipped with them.

10 days then departed
of king Arthur’s court
fortresses. And as Sir
me by the castle of Pen-
his ten days. And as Sir
lands, because he would
with king Arthur, and
of Pendragon, and all the
, he gave to Sir La Cote

And then Sir Launcelot
, that he made once
he made him to have all
at castle and of that coun-
Cote Male Taile. And so

Arthur’s court all wholly
at Pentecost next follow-
Sir Plenorious, and Sir La

called otherwise by
or le Noire, both made
Table Round, and great
thur gave them; and there
foire weded that damsel
And after she was called
but ever after for the
was called La Cote Male

ful deeds he did after in his life, and Sir
Pleniorius proved a noble knight and
full of prowess. And all the days of
their life for the most part they awaited
upon Sir Launcelot. And Sir Plenori-
us’s brethren were ever knights of king
Arthur. And also as the French book
maketh mention, Sir La Cote Male
Tail avenged his father’s death.

CHAP. X.

How La Beale Isoud sent letters unto
Sir Tristram by her maid Bragwaine, and
of divers adventures of Sir Tristram.

Now leave we here Sir La Cote Male
Tail, and turn we unto Sir Tristram de
Liones that was in Britannia. When
La Beale Isoud understood that he was
wedd, she sent unto him by her maiden
Bragwaine as piteous letters as could be
thought and made, and her conclusion
was, that, and it pleased Sir Tristram, that
he would come to her court and bring
with him Isoud la Blanche Mains, and
they should be kept as well as she her-
self. Then Sir Tristram called unto him
Sir Kehydis and asked him whether he
would go with him into Cornwall se-
crately. He answered him that he was
ready at all times. And then he let
ordain privily a little vessel, and therein
they went, Sir Tristram, Kehydis,
dame Bragwaine, and Gouvernail Sir
Tristram’s squire. So when they were
in the sea, a contrarious wind blew
them on the coasts of North Wales,
nigh the castle perilous. Then said
Sir Tristram, Here shall ye abide me
these ten days, and Gouvernail my squire
with you. And if so be I come not
again by that day, take the next way
into Cornwall, for in this forest are
many strange adventures as I have heard
say, and some of them I cast me to
prove or I depart: and when I may I
shall hie me after you. Then Sir Tris-
tram and Kehydis took their horses
and departed from their fellowship.
And so they rode within that forest a
mile and more. And at the last Sir
Tristram saw afore him a likely knight
armed, sitting by a well, and a strong
mighty horse passing nigh him tied to
an oak, and a man howing and riding by him, leading an horse laden with spears. And this knight that sat at the well seemed by his countenance to be passing heavy. Then Sir Tristram rode near him and said, Fair knight, why sit ye so drooping? Ye seem to be a knight errant by your arms and harness, and therefore dress you to just with one of us or with both. Therewithal that knight made no words, but took his shield and buckled it about his neck, and lightly he took his horse and leapt upon him. And then he took a great spear of his squire, and departed his way a furlong. Sir Kehydus asked leave of Sir Tristram to just first. Do your best, said Sir Tristram. So they met together, and there Sir Kehydus had a fall, and was sore wounded on high above the breast. Then Sir Tristram said, Knight, that is well justed, now make you ready unto me. I am ready, said the knight. And then that knight took a greater spear in his hand and encountered with Sir Tristram, and there by great force that knight smote down Sir Tristram from his horse, and he had a great fall. Then Sir Tristram was sore ashamed, and lightly he avoided his horse and put his shield afore his shoulder, and drew his sword. And then Sir Tristram required that knight of his knighthood to alight upon foot and fight with him. I will well, said the knight. And so he alight upon foot and avoided his horse, and cast his shield upon his shoulder, and drew his sword, and there they fought a long battle together full nigh two hours.

Then Sir Tristram said, Fair knight, hold thy hand, and tell me of whence thou art, and what is thy name. As for that, said the knight, I will be advised, but and thou wilt tell me thy name, per-adventure I will tell thee mine.

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Tristram met with Sir Lamorak de Galis, and how they fought, and after accorded never to fight together.

Now fair knight, he said, my name is Sir Tristram de Liones. Sir, saith other knight, and my name is Sir Rak de Galis. Ah Sir Lamorak, Sir Tristram, well be we met, and the now of the despite that the me of the sending of the horn unto Mark's court, to the intent to have or dishonoured my lady the que Beale Isoud. And therefore well, said Sir Tristram, the one shall die or we depart. Sir, saith Lamorak, remember that we together in the isle of Service, that time ye promised me great ship. Then Sir Tristram would no longer delays, but lashed at Lamorak, and thus they fought lo either were weary of other. Then Tristram said to Sir Lamorak, In life met I never with such an that was so big and well be as ye be; therefore, said Sir Tristram, it were pity that any of us should here be mischief. Sir, saith Lamorak, for your renown and will that ye have the worship battle, and therefore I will ye unto you. And therewith he to the point of his sword to yield him. Sir Tristram, ye shall not for I know well your proviers are of your gentleness than for any dread ye have of me. And then Sir Tristram proffered him his and said, Sir Lamorak, as an on knight I yield me unto you, as to of the most noble prowess that met withal. Nay, said Sir Lam will do you gentleness. I requi- let us be sworn together that new of us shall after this day have ad other. And there withal Sir T and Sir Lamorak swore that new of them should fight against ever for weal nor for woe.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Palamides followed the beast, and be smote down both Sir Tristram and Sir Lamorak with one.

And this mean while there c Palamides the good knight fo
east that had in shape a serpent’s head, and a body that had in shape a serpent’s head, and a body haunches like a lion, and part, and in his body there haunches like a lion, and part, and in his body there noise as it had been the noise that beast made noise as it had been the noise that beast made he went. And this beast he went. And this beast Palamides followed, for it Palamides followed, for it was quest. And right so as was quest. And right so as this beast it came by Sir this beast it came by Sir 1 soon after came Pala- 1 soon after came Pala- brief this matter he smote brief this matter he smote Tristram and Sir Lamorak Tristram and Sir Lamorak he spear, and so he de- he spear, and so he de- the beast Glatiant, that the beast Glatiant, that questing beast, wherefore questing beast, wherefore knights were passing there- knights were passing there- nides would not fight on nides would not fight on—

may understand that be of may understand that be of he was never formed that he was never formed that stand, but some time stand, but some time the worse by mal-fortune. the worse by mal-fortune. the worse knight the worse knight to a rebuke. to a rebuke. Tristram and Sir Lamorak Tristram and Sir Lamorakius upon a shield betwixt ius upon a shield betwixt and led him to a forester’s and led him to a forester’s where they gave him in where they gave him in up him well, and with him up him well, and with him three days. Then the two three days. Then the two their horses and at the their horses and at the red. And then said Sir red. And then said Sir Sir Lamorak, I require you Lamorak, I require you to meet with Sir Palamides, to meet with Sir Palamides, he shall find me at the he shall find me at the where I met him, and there where I met him, and there am, shall prove whether am, shall prove whether knight than I. And so knight than I. And so ed from other a sundry ed from other a sundry Tristram rode nigh there Tristram rode nigh there Chrydus, and Sir Lamorak Chrydus, and Sir Lamorak came to a chapel, and came to a chapel, and his horse unto pasture. his horse unto pasture. here came Sir Meliagaunce here came Sir Meliagaunce Bagdemagus’s son, and Bagdemagus’s son, and his horse to pasture, and his horse to pasture, and of Sir Lamorak, and then of Sir Lamorak, and then Sir Meliagaunce made his Sir Meliagaunce made his love that he had to love that he had to smer, and there he made a smer, and there he made a quint. All this heard Sir quint. All this heard Sir Lamorak, and on the morn Sir Lamorak, and on the morn Sir Lamorak took his horse and rode unto the Lamorak took his horse and rode unto the forest, and there he met two knights forest, and there he met two knights hoving under the wood shawe. Fair hoving under the wood shawe. Fair knights, said Sir Lamorak, what do ye knights, said Sir Lamorak, what do ye hoving here and watching, and if ye be hoving here and watching, and if ye be knights errant that will just, lo I am knights errant that will just, lo I am ready. Nay, sir knight, they said, not ready. Nay, sir knight, they said, not so, we abide not here for to just with so, we abide not here for to just with you, but we lie here in await of a knight you, but we lie here in await of a knight that slew our brother. What knight that slew our brother. What knight was that, said Sir Lamorak, that ye was that, said Sir Lamorak, that ye would fain meet withal. Sir, they said, would fain meet withal. Sir, they said, it is Sir Launcelot that slew our brother, it is Sir Launcelot that slew our brother, and if ever we may meet with him he and if ever we may meet with him he shall not escape but we shall slay him. shall not escape but we shall slay him. Ye take upon you a great charge, said Ye take upon you a great charge, said Sir Lamorak, for Sir Launcelot is a Sir Lamorak, for Sir Launcelot is a noble proved knight. As for that we noble proved knight. As for that we doubt not, for there is none of us but doubt not, for there is none of us but we are good enough for him. I will not we are good enough for him. I will not believe that, said Sir Lamorak, for I believe that, said Sir Lamorak, for I heard never yet of no knight the days heard never yet of no knight the days of my life but Sir Launcelot was too of my life but Sir Launcelot was too big for him.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Lamorak met with Sir Meliagaunce, and how they fought together How Sir Lamorak met with Sir Meliagaunce, and how they fought together for the beauty of queen Guenever.

Right so as they stood talking thus, Right so as they stood talking thus, Sir Lamorak was ware how Sir Launcelot came riding straight toward them; Sir Lamorak was ware how Sir Launcelot came riding straight toward them; then Sir Lamorak saluted him, and he then Sir Lamorak saluted him, and he him again. And then Sir Lamorak him again. And then Sir Lamorak asked Sir Launcelot if there were any asked Sir Launcelot if there were any thing that he might do for him in these thing that he might do for him in these marches. Nay, said Sir Launcelot, not marches. Nay, said Sir Launcelot, not at this time, I thank you. Then either at this time, I thank you. Then either departed from other, and Sir Lamorak departed from other, and Sir Lamorak rode again there as he left the two rode again there as he left the two knights, and then he found them hid knights, and then he found them hid in the leaved wood. Fie on you, said in the leaved wood. Fie on you, said Sir Lamorak, false cowards, pity and Sir Lamorak, false cowards, pity and shame it is that any of you should take shame it is that any of you should take the high order of knighthood. So Sir the high order of knighthood. So Sir Lamorak departed from them, and Lamorak departed from them, and within a while he met with Sir Meliagaunce, within a while he met with Sir Meliagaunce, and then Sir Lamorak asked and then Sir Lamorak asked him why he loved queen Guenever as him why he loved queen Guenever as he did: For I was not far from you he did: For I was not far from you when ye made your complaint by the when ye made your complaint by the chapel. Did ye so, said Sir Melia-
gaunce, then will I abide by it: I love queen Guenever; what will ye with it? I will prove and make good that she is the fairest lady and most of beauty in the world. As to that, said Sir Lomarok, I say nay thereto, for queen Morgause of Orkney, mother to Sir Gawain, and his mother is the fairest queen and lady that beareth the life. That is not so, said Sir Meliagrance, and that will I prove with my hands upon thy body. Will ye so, said Sir Lomarok, and in a better quarrel keep I not to fight. Then they departed either from other in great wrath. And then they came riding together as it had been thunder, and either smote other so sore that their horses fell backward to the earth. And then they avoided their horses, and dressed their shields, and drew their swords. And then they hurtled together as wild boars, and thus they fought a great while. For Meliagrance was a good man and of great might, but Sir Lomarok was hard big for him, and put him always aback; but either had wounded other sore. And as they stood thus fighting, by fortune came Sir Launcelot and Sir Bleoberis riding. And then Sir Launcelot rode betwixt them, and asked them for what cause they fought so together, and ye are both knights of king Arthur.

CHAP. XIV.

How Sir Meliagrance told for what cause they fought, and bow Sir Lomarok justified with king Arthur.

Sir, said Meliagrance, I shall tell you for what cause we do this battle. I praised my lady queen Guenever, and said she was the fairest lady of the world, and Sir Lomarok said nay thereto, for he said queen Morgause of Orkney was fairer than she, and more of beauty. Ah Sir Lomarok, why sayest thou so? It is not thy part to dispraise thy princess that thou art under her obeisance and we all. And therewith he alight on foot, and said, For this quarrel make thee ready, for I will prove upon thee that queen Guenever is the fairest lady and most of bounty in the world. Sir, said Sir Lomarok, I am loth to have ado with you in this quarrel. For every man thinketh his own lady fairest; and though I praise the lady that I love most, ye should not be wroth. But though my lady queen Guenever be fairest in your eye, wit ye well queen Morgause of Orkney is fairest in mine eye, and so every knight thinketh his own lady fairest; and, wit ye well, Sir ye are the man in the world, except Sir Tristram, that I am most lothest to have ado withal. But and ye will needs fight with me, I shall endure you as long as I may. Then spake Sir Bleoberis, and said, My lord Sir Launcelot, I wist ye never so misadvised as ye are now. For Sir Lomarok saith you but reason and knightly. For I warn you I have a lady am, and me thinketh that she is the fairest lady of the world. Were this a great reason that ye should be wroth with me for such language? And well ye wot that Sir Lomarok is as noble a knight as I know, and he hath owed you and us ever good will, and therefore I pray you be good friends. Then Sir Launcelot said unto Sir Lomarok: I pray you forgive me mine evil will; and if I was misadvised I will amend it. Sir, said Sir Lomarok, the amends is soon made betwixt you and me. And so Sir Launcelot and Sir Bleoberis departed. And Sir Meliagrance and Sir Lomarok took their horses, and either departed from other. And within a while came king Arthur, and met with Sir Lomarok, and justified with him, and there smote down Sir Lomarok, and wounded him sore with a spear, and so he rode from him, wherefore Sir Lomarok was wroth that he would not fight with him on foot; how be it that Sir Lomarok knew not king Arthur.

CHAP. XV.

How Sir Kay met with Sir Tristram, and after of the blame spoken of the knights of Cornwall, and how they justified.

Now leave we of this tale, and speak we of Sir Tristram, that as he rode he
Sir Kay the seneschal, and Kay asked Sir Tristram of try he was. He answered s of the country of Cornwall. ll be, said Sir Kay, for yet that ever good knight of Cornwall. That is evil id Sir Tristram, but and it to tell me your name I re-Sir, wit ye well, said Sir Kay, me is Sir Kay the seneschal. ir name? said Sir Tristram; well ye are named the st knight of your tongue that ag, how be it ye are called a nt, but ye are called unforl passing overthrowt of your nd thus they rode together time to a bridge. And there ght would not let them pass them justed with him. And night justed with Sir Kay, that knight gave Sir Kay a name was Sir Tor, Sir Lambrother. And then they two heir lodging, and there they Brandiles; and Sir Tor came n after.

they sat at supper, these four рее of them spake all shame knights. Sir Tristram heard y said, and he said but little, ought the more; but at that covered not his name. Upon Sir Tristram took his horse them upon their way; and randles proffered to just with m, and Sir Tristram smote horse and all, to the earth. For le Fise de Vayshoure en- with Sir Tristram, and there am smote him down. And de his way, and Sir Kay fol- t, but he would not of his

Then Sir Brandiles came to and said, I would wit fain at knight's name. Come on sad Sir Kay, and we shall to tell us his name. So together till they came nigh then they were ware where a well, and had put off his rink at the well. And when he saw them come; he laced on his helm lightly, and took his horse, and proffered them to just. Nay, said Sir Brandiles, we justed late enough with you; we come not in that intent. But for this we come, to require you of knighthood to tell us your name. My fair knights, since that is your desire, and to please you, ye shall wit that my name is Sir Tristram de Liones, nephew unto king Mark of Cornwall. In good time, said Sir Brandiles, and well ye be found; and wit ye well that we be right glad that we have found you, and we be of a fellowship that would be right glad of your company. For ye are the knight in the world that the noble fellowship of the Round Table most desireth to have the company of. I thank them, said Sir Tristram, of their great goodness; but as yet I feel well that I am unable to be of their fellowship. For I was never of such deeds of worthiness to be in the company of such a fellow-ship. Ah, said Sir Kay, and ye be Sir Tristram de Liones, ye are the man now called most of prowess, except Sir Launcelot du Lake. For he beareth not the life, christian ne heathen, that can find such another knight, to speak of his prowess, and of his hands, and his truth withal. For yet could there never creature say of him dishonour and make it good. Thus they talked a great while; and then they departed either from other, such ways as them seemed best.

CHAP. XVI.

How king Arbur was brought into the forest perilous, and how Sir Tristram saved his life.

Now shall ye hear what was the cause that king Arthur came into the forest perilous, that was in North Wales, by the means of a lady. Her name was Annowre, and this lady came to king Arthur at Cardiff, and she, by fair promise and fair behests, made king Arthur to ride with her into that forest perilous; and she was a great sorceress, and many days she had loved king Ar- thur, and therefore she came into that
country. So when the king was gone with her, many of his knights followed after king Arthur when they missed him, as Sir Launcelot, Brandle, and many other. And when she had brought him to her tower, she desired him to love her. And then the king remembered him of his lady, and would not love her for no craft that she could do. Then every day she would make him ride into that forest with his own knights, to the intent to have had king Arthur slain. For when this lady Annoure saw that she might not have him at will, then she laboured by false means to have destroyed king Arthur and slain. Then the Lady of the lake, that was alway friendly to king Arthur, she understood by her subtle crafts that king Arthur was like to be destroyed. And therefore this Lady of the lake, that night Nimue, came into that forest to seek after Sir Launcelot du Lake, or Sir Trismar, for to help king Arthur; for as that same day this Lady of the lake knew well that king Arthur should be slain, unless that he had help of one of these two knights. And thus she rode up and down till she met with Sir Trismar, and anon as she saw him she knew him. O my lord Sir Trismar, she said, well be ye met, and blessed be the time that I have met with you; for this same day, and within these two hours, shall be done the foulest deed that ever was done in this land. O fair damsel, said Sir Trismar, may I amend it? Come on with me, she said, and that in all the haste ye may, for ye shall see the most worshippilessest knight of the world hard bested. Then said Sir Trismar, I am ready to help such a noble man. He is neither better nor worse, said the Lady of the lake, but the noble king Arthur himself. God defend, said Sir Trismar, that ever he should be in such distress. Then they rode together a great pace, until they came to a little turret or castle, and underneath that castle they saw a knight standing upon foot fighting with two knights; and so Sir Trismar beheld them, and at the last the two knights smote down the one knight, and that one of the lanced his helm to have slain him the lady Annoure got king a sword in her hand to have striked his head. And therewithal came Trismar with all his might, Traitress, traitress, leave that anon there Sir Trismar smote of the knights through the body he fell dead; and then he ran the other and smote his back, and in the mean while the of the lake cried to king. Let not that false lady escape. king Arthur overtook her, and the same sword he smote off her and the Lady of the lake took head, and hung it up by the her saddle bow. And then S tram horsed king Arthur, and row with him, but he charged the the lake not to discover his man that time. When the king was he thanked heartily Sir Trismar desired to wit his name; but he not tell him, but that he was knight adventurous. And so king Arthur fellowship till he met some of his knights. And with he met with Sir Ector de Maris, knew not king Arthur nor Sir Trismar and he desired to just with one. Then Sir Trismar rode unto Sir Trismar, and smote him from his horse when he had done so he came a the king, and said: My lord, yo one of your knights, he may in fellowship; and another day I deed that I have done for you, ye shall understand that I would service. Alas, said king Arthur, wit what ye are. Not at this tin Sir Trismar. So he departed, king Arthur and Sir Ector togot

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Trismar came to La Isoud, and how Kehydus began La Beale Isoud, and of a let Trismar found.

And then at a day set Sir T and Sir Lamorak met at the we
OF THE MADNESS OF SIR TRISTRAM.

ok Kehydius at the forester's so they rode with him to here they left dame Braguouernail, and so they sailed all wholly together; and d information of dame Brag they were landed they rode nas the seneschal, a trusty Tristram's. And so dame and Sir Dinas rode to the g Mark, and told the queen, Isoud, that Sir Tristram was that country. Then for very Beale Isoud swooned: and right speak, she said, Gentle chal, help that I might speak: else my heart will brast. Dinas and dame Bragwaine Tristram and Kehydius the court, unto a chamber Beale Isoud assigned it; and joy that was between La and Sir Tristram, there is an tell it, nor heart think it, ite it. And, as the French h mention, at the first time Sir Kehydius saw La Beale as so enamoured upon her pure love he might never. And at the last, as ye or the book be ended, Sir ed for the love of La Beale l then privily he wrote unto ballads of the most good- re used in those days. And Beale Isoud understood his had pity of his complaint, ed she wrote another letter him withal. And Sir Tris- ll this while in a turret, at adment of La Beale Isoud, he might she came unto Sir So on a day king Mark he chess under a chamber id at that time Sir Tristram dydius were within the cham- g Mark, and as it mishappened found the letter that Ke- to La Beale Isoud; also he re letter that she wrote unto nd at that same time La was in the same chamber.

Isoud, and said; Madam, here is a letter that was sent unto you, and here is the letter that ye sent unto him that sent you that letter. Alas, madam, the good love that I have loved you, and many lands and riches have I forsaken for your love, and now ye are a traitress to me, the which doth me great pain. But as for thee, Sir Kehydius, I brought thee out of Britanny into this country, and thy father, king Howel, I won his lands; howbeit, I wedded thy sister, Isoud la Blanche Mains, for the goodness which she did to me: but wit thou well Sir Kehydius for this falsehood and treason thou hast done me, I will revenge it upon thee. And therewithal Sir Tristram drew out his sword, and said, Sir Kehydius keep thee, and then La Beale Isoud swooned to the earth. And when Sir Kehydius saw Sir Tristram come upon him, he saw none other boot, but leapt out at a bay window, even over the head where sat king Mark playing at the chess. And when the king saw one come hurling over his head, he said, Fellow, what art thou, and what is the cause thou leapest out of that window? My lord the king, said Kehydius, it fortuned me that I was asleep in the window above your head, and as I slept I slumbered, and so I fell down. And thus Sir Kehydius excused him.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Tristram departed from Tintagil, and bow he sorrowed, and was so long in a forest till he was out of his mind.

Then Sir Tristram dread sore lest he were discovered unto the king that he was there, wherefore he drew him to the strength of the tower, and armed him in such armour as he had, for to fight with them that would withstand him. And so when Sir Tristram saw there was no resistance against him, he sent Gouvernail for his horse and for his spear, and knightly he rode forth out of the castle openly that was called the castle of Tintagil. And even at the gate he met with Gingalin, Sir Gawaine's
son. And anon Sir Gingalin put his spear in his rest, and ran upon Sir Tristram, and brake his spear, and Sir Tristram at that time had but a sword, and gave him such a buffet upon the helm that he fell down from his saddle, and his sword slid down and carved asunder his horse neck. And so Sir Tristram rode his way into the forest, and all this doing saw king Mark. And then he sent a squire unto the hurt knight, and commanded him to come to him, and so he did. And when king Mark wist that it was Sir Gingalin, he welcomed him, and gave him a horse, and asked him what knight it was that had encountered with him. Sir, said Sir Gingalin, I wot not what knight he was, but well I wot that he sigheth, and maketh great dole. Then Sir Tristram within a while met with a knight of his own, that hight Sir Fergus. And when he had met with him he made great sorrow, insomuch that he fell down off his horse in a swoon, and in such sorrow he was in three days and three nights. Then at the last Sir Tristram sent unto the court by Sir Fergus, for to ask what tidings. And so as he rode by the way he met with a damsel that came from Sir Palamides, to know and seek how Sir Tristram did. Then Sir Fergus told her how he was almost out of his mind. Alas, said the damsel, where shall I find him? In such a place, said Sir Fergus. Then Sir Fergus found queen Isould sick in her bed, making the greatest dole that ever any earthly woman made. And when the damsel found Sir Tristram, she made great dole because she might not amend him; for the more she made of him the more was his pain. And at the last Sir Tristram took his horse and rode away from her. And then was it three days or that she could find him, and then she brought him meat and drink, but he would none. And then another time Sir Tristram escaped away from the damsel, and it happed him to ride by the same castle where Sir Palamides and Sir Tristram did battle when La Beale Isould departed them. And there by for-

CHAP. XIX.

How Sir Tristram souse Dagonwell, and how Palamides sent to seek Tristram, and how P met with king Mark.

And upon a day Sir Dagon Arthur's fool, came into Cornwall two squires with him, and as they went through that forest they came well where Sir Tristram was be, and the weather was hot, a
ink of that well, and in the
their horses brake loose.
Sir Tristram came unto them,
soused Sir Dagonet in that
ter his squires, and thereat
shepherds, and forthwithal
their horses, and brought
one by one, and right so,
were, he made them leap up
ir ways. Thus Sir Tristram
re an half year naked, and
come in town nor village.
while the damsel that Sirent to seek Sir Tristram she
Sir Palamides, and told him
chief that Sir Tristram en-
s, said Sir Palamides, it is
that ever so noble a knight
to mischieved for the love of :
nevertheless I will go and
comfort him and I may.
be before that time La Beale
commanded Sir Kehydius out
ary of Cornwall. So Sir Ke-
tured with a dolorous heart.
venture he met with Sir
and they enfellowshipped
nd either complained to
ir love, that they loved La
.
Now let us, said Sir Pal-
Sir Tristram that loved her
ve, and let us prove whether
over him. So they rode into
and three days and three
would never take their lodg-
sought Sir Tristram. And
by adventure they met with
that was ridden from his
. When they saw him, Sir
new him, but Sir Kehydius
ot. Ah, false king, said Sir
is pity thou hast thy life,
a destroyer of all worship,
and by thy mischief, and
ce, thou hast destroyed that
knight Sir Tristram de
therefore defend thee, said
les, for thou shalt die this
were shame, said king Mark,
are armed, and I am un-
for that, said Sir Palamides,
a remedy therefore. Here
with me, and thou shalt
have his harness. Nay, said king Mark,
I will not have ado with you, for cause
have ye none to me. For all the misea-
that Sir Tristram hath was for a letter
that he found; for, as to me, I did to
him no displeasure, and I am full sorry
for his disease and malady. So when the
king had thus excused him, they were
friends, and king Mark would have had
them unto Tintagil, but Sir Palamides
would not, but turned unto the realm of
Logris, and Sir Kehydius said he would
go into Brittany.

Now turn we unto Sir Dagonet again,
then when he and his squires were upon
horseback, he deemed that the shepherds
had sent that fool to array them so be-
cause that they laughed at them, and so
they rode unto the keepers of beasts,
and all to beat them. Sir Tristram saw
them beaten that were wont to give him
meat and drink, then he ran thither and
gat Sir Dagonet by the head, and gave
him such a fall to the earth that he
bruised him sore, so that he lay still.
And then he wrast his sword out of his
hand and therewith he ran to one of
his squires and smote off his head, and
the other fled. And so Sir Tristram took
his way with that sword in his hand,
running as he had been wild wood.
Then Sir Dagonet rode to king Mark
and told him how he had sped in that
forest. And therefore, said Sir Dagonet,
beware, king Mark, that thou come not
about that well in the forest, for there is
a fool naked, and that fool and I fool
met together, and he had almost slain
me. Ah, said king Mark, that is Sir
Matto le Breune, that fell out of his wit
because he lost his lady. For when Sir
Gaheris smote down Sir Matto and won
his lady of him, never since was he in
his mind, and that was pity, for he was
a good knight.

CHAP. XX.

How it was noiseyd how Sir Tristram was
dead, and how La Beale Iwasd would
have slain herself.

Then Sir Andred that was cousin
unto Sir Tristram, made a lady that was
his paramour to say and noise it that she was with Sir Tristram or ever he died. And this tale she brought unto king Mark's court, that she buried him by a well, and that or he died he besought king Mark to make his cousin, Sir Andred, king of the country of Liones, of the which Sir Tristram was lord of. All this did Sir Andred because he would have had Sir Tristram's lands. And when king Mark heard tell that Sir Tristram was dead, he wept and made great dole. But when queen Isoud heard of these tidings, she made such sorrow that she was nigh out of her mind. And so upon a day she thought to slay herself, and never to live after Sir Tristram's death. And so upon a day La Beale Isoud gat a sword privily, and bare it into her garden, and there she pight the sword through a plum tree up to the hilt, so that it stack fast, and it stood breast high. And as she would have run upon the sword and to have slain herself, all this espied king Mark, how she kneeled down and said, Sweet Lord Jesu have mercy upon me, for I may not live after the death of Sir Tristram de Liones, for he was my first love, and he shall be the last. And with these words came king Mark and took her in his arms, and then he took up the sword, and bare her away with him into a strong tower, and there he made her to be kept, and watched her surely. And after that she lay long sick, nigh at the point of death. This mean while ran Sir Tristram naked in the forest with the sword in his hand, and so he came to an hermitage, and there he laid him down and slept, and in the mean while the hermit staled away his sword, and laid meat down by him. Thus was he kept there a ten days, and at the last he departed and came to the herdmen again. And there was a giant in that country that nigh Tauleas, and for fear of Sir Tristram more than seven years he durst never much go at large, but for the most part he kept him in a sure castle of his own. And so this Tauleas heard tell that Sir Tristram was dead, by the noise of the court of king Mark. Then this Tauleas went daily at large. And so it happed upon a day he came to the herdmen wandering and lingering, and there he set him down to rest among them. The mean while there came a knight of Cornwall that led a lady with him, and his name was Sir Dinant. And when the giant saw him, he went from the herdmen and hid him under a tree, and so the knight came to the well, and there he alight to repose him. And as soon as he was from his horse, the giant Tauleas came betwixt this knight and his horse, and took the horse and leapt upon him. So forthwith he rode unto Sir Dinant and took him by the collar, and pulled him afore him upon his horse, and there would have struck off his head. Then the herdmen went unto Sir Tristram, Help yonder knight: Help ye him, said Sir Tristram. We dare not, said the herdmen. Then Sir Tristram was ware of the sword of the knight there as it lay, and so thither he ran, and took up the sword and stroke off Sir Tauleas's head, and so he went his way to the herdmen again.

CHAP. XXI.

How king Mark found Sir Tristram naked, and made him to be borne home to Tintagil, and how he was there known by a bracket.

Then the knight took up the giant's head, and bare it with him unto king Mark, and told him what adventures betid him in the forest, and how a naked man rescued him from the grimly giant Tauleas. Where had ye this adventure? said king Mark. Forsooth, said Sir Dinant, at the fair fountain in your forest where many adventurous knights meet, and there is the mad man. Well, said king Mark, I will see that wild man. So within a day or two King Mark commanded his knights and his hunters, that they should be ready on the morn for to hunt, and on the morn he went unto that forest. And when the king came to that well, he found there lying by that well a fair naked
HOW SIR TRISTRAM WAS BANISHED.

swoon, and so lay a great while; and when she might speak, she said, My lord Sir Tristram, blessed be God ye have your life; and now I am sure ye shall be discovered by this little brachet, for she will never leave you: and also I am sure as soon as my lord king Mark do know you, he will banish you out of the country of Cornwall, or else he will destroy you. Therefore mine own lord, grant king Mark his will, and then draw you unto the court of king Arthur, for there are ye beloved. And ever when I may I shall send unto you, and when ye list ye may come to me, and at all times early and late I will be at your commandment to live as poor a life as ever did queen or lady. O madam, said Sir Tristram, go from me, for mickle anger and danger have I escaped for your love.

CHAP. XXII.

How king Mark, by the advice of his council, banished Sir Tristram out of Cornwall the term of ten years.

Then the queen departed, but the brachet would not from him. And therewithal came king Mark, and the brachet sat upon him, and bayed at them all. Therewithal Sir Andred spake and said, Sir, this is Sir Tristram, I see by the brachet. Nay, said the king, I cannot suppose that. So the king asked him upon his faith what he was, and what was his name. Truly, said he, my name is Sir Tristram de Liones, now do by me what ye list. Ah, said king Mark, me repenteth of your recovery. And then he let call his barons to judge Sir Tristram to death. Then many of his barons would not assent thereto, and in especial Sir Dinas the seneschal and Sir Fergus. And so by the advice of them all Sir Tristram was banished out of the country for ten year, and thereupon he took his oath upon a book before the king and his barons. And so he was made to depart out of the country of Cornwall, and there were many barons brought him into his ship, of the which
some were his friends, and some his foes. And in the mean while there came a knight of king Arthur's, his name was Dinadan, and his coming was to seek after Sir Tristram. Then they shewed him where he was armed at all points, going to the ship. Now, fair knight, said Sir Dinadan, or ye pass this court, that ye will just with me I require you. With a good will, said Sir Tristram, and these lords will give me leave. Then the barons granted thereto, and so they ran together, and there Sir Tristram gave Sir Dinadan a fall. And then he prayed Sir Tristram to give him leave to go in his fellowship. Ye shall be right welcome, said then Sir Tristram. And so they took their horses and rode to their ships together. And when Sir Tristram was in the sea, he said, Greet well king Mark and all mine enemies, and say them I will come again when I may. And well am I rewarded for the fighting with Sir Marhaus, and delivering all this country from servage, and well I am rewarded for the fetching and costs of La Beale Isoud out of Ireland, and the danger that I was in first and last, and by the way coming home what danger I had to bring again queen Isoud from the castle Pluere. And well am I rewarded when I fought with Sir Bleoberis for Sir Segwarides' wife. And well am I rewarded when I fought with Sir Blamor de Ganis for king Anguish, father unto La Beale Isoud. And well am I rewarded when I smote down the good knight Sir Lamorak de Galis at king Mark's request. And well am I rewarded when I fought with the king with the hundred knights, and the king of Northgalis, and both these would have put his land in servage, and by me they were put to a rebuke. And well am I rewarded for the slaying of Tau-leas the mighty giant, and many more deeds have I done for him, and now have I my warison. And tell king Mark that many noble knights of the Table Round have spared the barons of this country for my sake. Also am I not well rewarded when I fought with the good knight Sir Palamides, and rescued queen Isoud from him. And at that time king Mark said afore all his barons, I should have been better rewarded. And forthwithal he took the sea.

CHAP. XXIII.

How a damsel sought help to help Sir Launcelot against thirty knights, and how Sir Tristram fought with them.

And at the next landing, fast by the sea, there met with Sir Tristram and with Sir Dinadan Sir Ector de Maris and Sir Bors de Ganis. And there Sir Ector justed with Sir Dinadan and he smote him and his horse down. And then Sir Tristram would have justed with Sir Bors, and Sir Bors said he would not just with no Cornish knights, for they are not called men of worship. And all this was done upon a bridge. And with this came Sir Bleoberis and Sir Driant, and Sir Bleoberis preferred to just with Sir Tristram, and there Sir Tristram smote down Sir Bleoberis. Then said Sir Bors de Ganis, I will never Cornish knight of so great valour nor so valiant as that knight that beareth the trappours embroidered with crowns. And then Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan departed from them into a forest, and there met them a damsel that came for the love of Sir Launcelot to seek after some noble knights of king Arthur's court for to rescue Sir Launcelot. And so Sir Launcelot was ordained, for by the treason of queen Morgan le Fay to have slain Sir Launcelot, and for that cause she ordained thirty knights for to lie in a wait for Sir Launcelot, and this damsel knew this treason. And for this cause the damsel came for to seek noble knights to help Sir Launcelot. For that night, or the day after, Sir Launcelot should come where these thirty knights were. And so this damsel met with Sir Bors, Sir Bleoberis, Sir Ector, and Sir Driant, and there she told them all four of the treason of Morgan le Fay. And then they promised her that they would be nigh where Sir Launcelot should meet.
hirty knights, and if so be
don him we will do rescues as
so the damsel departed, and
ere the damsel met with Sir
and with Sir Dinadan, and
amsel told them all the trea-
us ordained for Sir Launcelot.
el, said Sir Tristram, bring
same place where they should
Sir Launcelot. Then said
un, What will ye do? it is
to fight with thirty knights,
well I will not thereof, as
one knight two or three is
ld they be men. But for to
en knights, that will I never
Fie for shame, said Sir
lo but your part. Nay, said
n, I will not thereof, but if
me your shield, for ye bear
Cornwall, and for the cow-
is named to the knights of
by your shields ye be ever
Nay, said Sir Tristram, I will
from my shield for her sake
it me. But one thing, said
n, I promise thee Sir Dina-
f thou wilt promise me to
me, here I shall slay thee:
re no more of thee but to
l knight, and if thy heart will
bee, stand by and look upon
em. Sir, said Sir Dinadan,
you to look upon and to do
; to save myself, but I would
met with you. So then
the thirty knights came fast
our knights, and they were
m, and either of other. And
hirty knights let them pass
ause, that they would not
n if cause be that they had
Sir Launcelot, and the four
em to this intent, would see and behold what
do with Sir Launcelot. And
y knights past on, and came
ram and Sir Dinadan. And
ram cried on high, Lo here
against you for the love of
lot. And there he slew two
pear, and ten with his sword.
came in Sir Dinadan, and he
did passing well. And so of the thirty
knight there went but ten away, and
they fled. All this battle saw Sir Boris
de Ganis, and his three fellows. And
then they saw well it was the same
knight that justed with them at the
bridge. Then they took their horses
and rode unto Sir Tristram, and praised
him, and thanked him of his good deeds,
and they all desired Sir Tristram to go
with them to their lodging. And he
said nay, he would not go to no lodg-
ing. Then they all four knights prayed
him to tell them his name. Fair lords,
said Sir Tristram, as at this time I will
not tell you my name.

CHAP. XXIV.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan came
to a lodging where they must just with
two knights.

Then Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan
rode forth their way till they came to
the shepherds and to the herdmen, and
there they asked them if they knew any
lodging or harbour there nigh hand.
Forsooth sirs, said the herdmen, hereby
is good lodging in a castle, but there is
such a custom that there shall no knight
be harboured but if he just with two
knights, and if he be but one knight he
must just with two. And as ye be
therein, soon shall ye be matched.
There is shrewd harbour, said Sir
Dinadan, lodge where ye will, for I
will not lodge there. Fie for shame,
said Sir Tristram, are ye not a knight
of the Table Round, wherefore ye may
not with your worship refuse your lodg-
ing. Not so, said the herdmen, for and
ye be beaten and have the worse ye
shall not be lodged there, and if ye beat
them ye shall be well harboured. Ah,
said Sir Dinadan, they are two sure
knights. Then Sir Dinadan would not
lodge there in no manner, but as Sir
Tristram required him of his knight-
hood, and so they rode thither. 'And
to make short tale, Sir Tristram and Sir
Dinadan smote them down both, and
so they entered into the castle, and
had good cheer as they could think or
And when they were unarmed, and thought to be merry and in good rest, there came in at the gates Sir Palamides and Sir Gaheris, requiring to have the custom of the castle. What array is this? said Sir Dinadan, I would have my rest. That may not be, said Sir Tristram; now must we needs defend the custom of this castle, insomuch as we have the better of the lords of this castle, and therefore, said Sir Tristram, needs must ye make you ready. In the devil's name, said Sir Dinadan, came I into your company. And so they made them ready. And Sir Gaheris encountered with Sir Tristram, and Sir Gaheris had a fall, and Sir Palamides encountered with Sir Dinadan, and Sir Dinadan had a fall; then was it fall for fall. So then must they fight on foot. That would not Sir Dinadan, for he was so sore bruised of the fall that Sir Palamides gave him. Then Sir Tristram unlaced Sir Dinadan's helm, and prayed him to help him. I will not, said Sir Dinadan, for I am sore wounded of the thirty knights that we had but late ago to do withal. But ye fare, said Sir Dinadan unto Sir Tristram, as a mad man, and as a man that is out of his mind, that would cast himself away, and I may curse the time that ever I saw you. For in all the world are not two such knights that be so wood as is Sir Launcelot and ye Sir Tristram: for once I fell in the fellowship of Sir Launcelot as I have now done with you, and he set me a work that a quarter of a year I kept my bed. Defend me, said Sir Dinadan, from such two knights, and specially from your fellowship. Then, said Sir Tristram, I will fight with them both. Then Sir Tristram bad them come forth both, for I will fight with you. Then Sir Palamides and Sir Gaheris dressed them and smote at them both. Then Dinadan smote at Sir Gaheris a stroke or two, and turned from him. Nay, said Sir Palamides, it is too much shame for us two knights to fight with one. And then he did bid Sir Gaheris stand aside with that knight that hath no list to fight. Then they rode together and fought long, and at the last Sir Tristram doubled his strokes and drove Sir Palamides a back more than three strides. And then by one assent Sir Gaheris and Sir Dinadan went betwixt them and departed them in sunder. And then by assent of Sir Tristram, they would have lodged together. But Sir Dinadan would not lodge in that castle, and then he cursed the time that ever he came in their fellowship. And so he took his horse and his harness and departed. Then Sir Tristram prayed the lords of that castle to lend him a man to bring him to a lodging. And so they did, and overtook Sir Dinadan, and rode to their lodging two miles thence with a good man in a priory, and there they were well at ease. And that same night, Sir Bors, and Sir Bleoberis, and Sir Ector, and Sir Driant, abide still in the same place there as Sir Tristram fought with the thirty knights, and there they met with Sir Launcelot the same night, and had made promise to lodge with Sir Colgreave the same night.

CHAP. XXV.

How Sir Tristram justed with Sir Kay and Sir Sagramor le Desirous, and how Sir Gawaine turned Sir Tristram from Morgan le Fay.

But anon as the noble knight Sir Launcelot heard of the shield of Cornwall, then wist he well that it was Sir Tristram that fought with his enemies. And then Sir Launcelot praised Sir Tristram, and called him the man of most worship in the world. So there was a knight in that priory that hight Pellinore, and he desired to wit the name of Sir Tristram, but in no wise he could not. And so Sir Tristram departed and left Sir Dinadan in the priory, for he was so weary and so sore bruised that he might not ride. Then this knight, Sir Pellinore, said to Sir Dinadan, Sithen that ye will not tell me that knight's name, I will ride after him and make him to tell me his name, or he shall die therefore. Beware, sir.
Sir Dinadan, for and ye ye shall repent it. So that Pelisson, rode after Sir and required him of justs. Tristram smote him down, ed him through the shoulder, past on his way. And on the following Sir Tristram met ivants, and they told him that made a great cry of tourna-teen king Carados of Scotland of North Wales, and either against other at the Castle of And these pursuivants sought intry after the good knights, sociel king Carados let make Sir Launcelot, and the king ildis let seek after Sir Tristram And at that time Sir Tris-ight to be at that justs, and so were they met with Sir Kay the und Sir Sagraror le Desirous, lay required Sir Tristram to Sir Tristram in a manner re- because he would not be hurt d against the great justs that before the Castle of Maidens, ore he thought to repose him, st him. And alway Sir Kay knight of Cornwall, just with yield thee to me as recreant. Tristram heard him say so, to him, and then Sir Kay n, and turned his back. Then um said, As I find thee shall I Then Sir Kay turned with and Sir Tristram smote Sir t, and so he rode forth. Then nor le Desirous rode after Sir und made him to just with him. Sir Tristram smote down Sir le Desirous from his horse, his way, and the same day he damsel that told him that he n great worship of a knight us, that did much harm in all try. Sir Tristram heard her say so, glad to go with her to win. So Sir Tristram rode with sel a six mile, and then met Gawaine, and therewithal Sir knew the damsel, that she was a damsel of queen Morgan le Fay. Then Sir Gawaine understood that she led that knight to some mischief. Fair knight, said Sir Gawaine, whither ride you now with that damsel? Sir, said Sir Tris- trom, I wot not whither I shall ride, but as the damsel will lead me. Sir, said Sir Gawaine, ye shall not ride with her, for she and her lady did never good, but ill. And then Sir Gawaine pulled out his sword, and said, Damself, but if thou tell me anon for what cause thou leaidest this knight with thee, thou shalt die for it right anon. I know all your lady's treason and yours. Mercy, Sir Gawaine, she said, and if ye will save my life I will tell you. Say on, said Sir Gawaine, and thou shall have thy life. Sir, she said, queen Morgan le Fay, my lady, hath ordained a thirty ladies to seek and espy after Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristram, and by the trains of these ladies, who that may first meet with any of these two knights, they should turn them unto Morgan le Fay's castle, saying that they should do deeds of worship, and if any of those two knights came there, there be thirty knights lying and watching in a tower to wait upon Sir Launcelot, or upon Sir Tristram. Fie for shame, said Sir Gawaine, that ever such false treason should be wrought or used in a queen and a king's sister, and a king and queen's daughter.

CHAP. XXVI.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Gawaine rode to have fought against the thirty knights, but they durst not come out.

Sir, said Sir Gawaine, will ye stand with me, and we will see the malice of these thirty knights? Sir, said Sir Tristram, go ye to them and it please you, and ye shall see I will not fail you, for it is not long ago since I and a fellow met with thirty knights of that queen's fellowship; and God speed us so that we may win worship. So then Sir Ga- waine and Sir Tristram rode toward the castle where Morgan le Fay was, and ever Sir Gawaine deemed well that he was Sir Tristram de Liones, because
he heard that two knights had slain and beaten thirty knights. And when they came afore the castle Sir Gawaine spake on high, and said, Queen Morgan le Fay, send out your knights that ye have laid in a watch for Sir Launcelot, and for Sir Tristram. Now, said Sir Gawaine, I know your false treason, and through all places where that I ride men shall know of your false treason. And now let see Sir Gawaine whether ye dare come out of your castle ye thirty knights. Then the queen spake and all the thirty knights at once, and said, Sir Gawaine, full well wotest thou what thou dost and sayest; for we know thee passing well; but all that thou speakest and dost thou sayest it upon pride of that good knight that is there with thee. For there be some of us that know full well the hands of that knight over all well, and wit thou well, Sir Gawaine, it is more for his sake than for thine that we will not come out of this castle. For wit ye well, Sir Gawaine, that knight that beareth the arms of Cornwall we know him, and what he is. Then Sir Gawaine and Sir Tristram departed, and rode on their ways a day or two together, and there by adventure they met with Sir Kay and Sir Sagramor le Desirous. And then they were glad of Sir Gawaine, and he of them, but they wist not what he was with the shield of Cornwall but by deeming. And thus they rode together a day or two. And then they were ware of Sir Breuse Sance Pithe chasing a lady for to have slain her, for he had slain her lover before. Hold ye all still, said Sir Gawaine, and shew none of you forth, and ye shall see me reward yonder false knight, for and he espy you he is so well harsked that he will escape away. And then Sir Gawaine rode betwixt Sir Breuse and the lady, and said, False knight, leave her and have ado with me. When Sir Breuse saw no more but Sir Gawaine he feutred his spear, and Sir Gawaine against him, and there Sir Breuse overthrew Sir Gawaine, and then he rode over him and overthwart him twenty times, to have destroyed him; and when Sir Tristram saw him do so villainous a deed, he hurled out against him. And when Sir Breuse saw him with the shield of Cornwall, he knew him well that it was Sir Tristram, and then he fled, and Sir Tristram followed after him. And Sir Breuse Sance Pithe was so harsked that he went his way quite. And Sir Tristram followed him long, for he would fain have been avenged upon him. And so when he had long chased him he saw a fair well, and thither he rode to repose him, and tied his horse to a tree.

CHAP. XXVII.

How damsel Bragwaine found Tristram sleeping by a well, and bow she delivered letters to him from La Beale Isoud.

And then he pulled off his helm, and washed his visage and his hands, and so he fell on sleep. In the mean while came a damsel that had sought Sir Tristram many ways and days within this land. And when she came to the well she looked upon him, and had forgotten him as in remembrance of Sir Tristram, but by his horse she knew him, that might Passe-Brewel, that had been Sir Tristram's horse many years. For when he was mad in the forest, Sir Fergus kept him. So this lady dame Bragwaine abode still till he was awake. So when she saw him wake she saluted him, and he her again, for either knew other of old acquaintance. Then she told him how she had sought him long and broad, and there she told him how she had letters from queen La Beale Isoud. Then anon Sir Tristram read them, and wit ye well he was glad, for therein was many a piteous complaint. Then Sir Tristram said, Lady Bragwaine, ye shall ride with me till that tournament be done at the Castle of Maidens; and then shall ye hear letters and tidings with you. And then Sir Tristram took his horse and sought lodging, and there he met with a good ancient knight that prayed him to lodge with him. Right so came Gouvernail unto
Tristram, that was glad of that lady. This old knight's name was Sir Pellines, and he told of the great tournament that should be at the Castle of Maidens. And there Sir Launcelot and sixty-two knights of his blood had adorned shields of Cornwall. And right there came one unto Sir Pellounes, I told him that Sir Persides de Blois come home, and then that knight did up his hands and thanked God of coming home, and there Sir Pellounes told Sir Tristram that in two urs he had not seen his son Sir Persides. Sir, said Sir Tristram, I know yr son well enough for a good knight.

On a time Sir Tristram and Sir Persides came to their lodging both at a, and so they unarmed them, and upon them their clothing. And then see two knights each welcomed other. And when Persides understood that Sir Tristram was of Cornwall, he said he was see in Cornwall—and there I justed ore king Mark, and so it happened me ; that time to overthrow ten knights, nd then came to me Sir Tristram de Jones and overthrew me, and took my sty from me, and that I shall never wget, but I shall remember me nd see I see my time. Ah, said Sir Tristram, now I understand that ye hate Sir Tristram. What deem ye, ween ye that for Tristram is not able to withstand your malice? Yes, said Sir Persides, I know well that Sir Tristram is a noble knight, and a much better knight than I yet shall I not owe him my good will. ight as they stood thus talking at a bay window of that castle, they saw many knights riding to and fro toward the tournament. And then was Sir Tristram ware of a likely knight riding upon a great black horse, and a black armored shield. What knight is that, said Sir Tristram, with the black horse and the black shield? He seemeth to a good knight. I know him well, said Sir Persides, he is one of the best knights of the world. Then is it Sir Launcelot, said Sir Tristram. Nay, said Sir Persides, it is Sir Palamides, that is t unchristened.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How Sir Tristram had a fall of Sir Palamides, and how Launcelot overthrew two knights.

Then they saw much people of the country salute Sir Palamides. And within a while after there came a squire of the castle that told Sir Pellounes, that was lord of that castle, that a knight with a black shield had smitten down thirteen knights. Fair brother, said Sir Tristram unto Sir Persides, let us cast upon us our cloaks, and let us go see the play. Not so, said Sir Persides, we will not go like knaves thither, but we will ride like men and good knights to withstand our enemies. So they armed them, and took their horses, and great spears, and thither they went, there as many knights assayed themselves before the tournament. And anon Sir Palamides saw Sir Persides, and then he sent a squire unto him, and said, Go thou to the yonder knight with a green shield and therein a lion of gold, and say to him I require him to just with me, and tell him that my name is Sir Palamides. When Sir Persides understood that request of Sir Palamides he made him ready. And there anon they met together, but Sir Persides had a fall. Then Sir Tristram dressed him to be revenged upon Sir Palamides. And that saw Sir Palamides, that was ready, and so was not Sir Tristram, and took him at advantage, and smote him over his horse tail when he had no spear in his rest. Then start up Sir Tristram, and took his horse lightly, and was wrought out of measure, and sore ashamed of that fall. Then Sir Tristram sent unto Sir Palamides by Gouvenail his squire, and prayed him to just with him at his request. Nay, said Sir Palamides, as at this time I will not just with that knight, for I know him better than he weeneth. And if he be wrought, he may right it to-morn at the Castle of Maidens, where he may see me and many other knights. With that came Sir Dinadan, and when he saw Sir Tris-
trum wroth he list not to jest. Lo, said Sir Dinadan, here may a man prove, be a man never so good yet may he have a fall, and he was never so wise but he might be overseen, and he rideth well that never fell. So Sir Tristram was passing wroth, and said to Sir Persides and Sir Dinadan, I will revenge me. Right so as they stood talking there, there came by Sir Tristram a likely knight, riding passing soberly and heavily, with a black shield. What knight is that? said Sir Tristram unto Sir Persides. I know him well, said Sir Persides, for his name is Sir Briant of North Wales; so he past on among other knights of North Wales. And there came in Sir Launcelot du Lake with a shield of the arms of Cornwall, and he sent a squire unto Sir Briant, and required him to just with him. Well, said Sir Briant, since I am required to just I will do what I may. And there Sir Launcelot smote down Sir Briant from his horse a great fall. And then Sir Tristram marvelled what knight he was that bare the shield of Cornwall. Whosoever he be, said Sir Dinadan, I warrant you he is of king Ban's blood, the which be knights of the most noble prowess in the world, for to account so many for so many. Then there came two knights of Northgalis, the one hight Hew de la Montaine, and the other Sir Madok de la Montaine, and they challenged Sir Launcelot foot hot. Sir Launcelot not refusing them, but made him ready, with one spear he smote them down both over their horse croups, and so Sir Launcelot rode his way. By my faith, said Sir Tristram, he is a good knight that beareth the shield of Cornwall, and me seemeth he rideth in the best manner that ever I saw knight ride. Then the king of Northgalis rode unto Sir Palamides, and prayed him heartily for his sake to just with that knight that hath done us of Northgalis despite. Sir, said Sir Palamides, I am full loth to have ado with that knight, and cause why is for as to-morn the great tournament shall be, and therefore I will keep myself fresh by my will. Nay, said the king of Northgalis, I pray you require him of justs. Sir, said Sir Palamides, I will just at your request, and require that knight to just with me; and often I have seen a man have a fall at his own request.

CHAP. XXIX.

How Sir Launcelot justed with Palamides and overthrew him, and after he was assailed with twelve knights.

Then Sir Palamides sent unto Sir Launcelot a squire, and required him of justs. Fair fellow, said Sir Launcelot, tell me thy lord's name. Sir, said the squire, my lord's name is Sir Palamides the good knight. In good hour, said Sir Launcelot, for there is no knight that I saw this seven years that I had ever have ado withal than with him. And so either knights made them ready with two great spears. Nay, said Sir Dinadan, ye shall see that Sir Palamides will quit him right well. It may be so, said Sir Tristram, but I undertake that knight with the shield of Cornwall shall give him a fall. I believe it not, said Sir Dinadan. Right so they spurred their horses, and feuted their spears, and either hit other, and Sir Palamides brake a spear upon Sir Launcelot, and he sat and moved not, but Sir Launcelot smote him so lightly that he made his horse to avoid the saddle, and the stroke brake his shield and the hauberck, and had he not fallen he had been slain. How now, said Sir Tristram, I wist well by the manner of their riding both that Sir Palamides should have a fall. Right so Sir Launcelot rode his way, and rode to a well to drink and to repose him, and they of Northgalis espied him whither he rode, and then there followed him twelve knights for to have mischieved him, for this cause, that upon the morn, at the tournament of the Castle of Maidens, that he should not win the victory. So they came upon Sir Launcelot suddenly and scarcely he might put upon him his helm and take his horse but they were in hands with him. And then Sir Lam-
THE FIRST DAY OF THE TOURNAMENT.

his spear and rode through there he slew a knight, and spear in his body. Then he sword and smote upon the hand upon the left hand, so a few strokes he had slain the knights, and the remnant he wounded them sore, all abide. Thus Sir Launcelot estab his enemies of North Wales, he rode forth on his way to a lodged him till on the morn, not the first day have ado- nament, because of his great and on the first day he was Arthur, there as he was set upon a scaffold, to discern who worthy of his deeds. So Sir was with king Arthur, and the first day.

CHAP. XXX.

Tristram behaved him the first the tournament, and there be bad. 

Now we unto Sir Tristram deat commanded Gouverneil his ordain him a black shield other remembrance therein. Sir Persides and Sir Tristram from their host Sir Pellones rode early toward the turnament then they drew them to king side of Scotland: and anon began the field, what of the orthgalis' part, and what of dos' part, and there began y. Then there was hurling. Right so came in Sir Per Sir Tristram, and so they did they put the king of North- k. Then came in Sir Ble- lies and Sir Galahis with them alis, and then was Sir Persides own and almost slain, for more horsemen went over him. For lies did great deeds of arms, theris failed him not. When beheld them, and saw them deeds of arms, he marvelled were. Also Sir Tristram came that Sir Persides was so done to; and then he gat a great spear in his hand, and then he rode to Sir Galahis and smote him down from his horse. And then was Bleoberis wroth, and gat a spear and rode against Sir Tristram in great ire, and there Sir Tristram met with him, and smote Sir Bleoberis from his horse. So then the king with the hundred knights was wroth, and he horsed Sir Bleoberis and Sir Galahis again, and there began a great meddle; and ever Sir Tris- tram held them passing short, and ever Sir Bleoberis was passing busy upon Sir Tristram. And there came Sir Dinadan against Sir Tristram, and Sir Tristram gave him such a buffet that he swooned in his saddle. Then anon Sir Dinadan came to Sir Tristram, and said, Sir, I know thee better than thou weenest, but here I promise thee my troth I will never come against thee more, for I promise thee that sword of thine shall never come on my helm. With that came Sir Bleoberis, and Sir Tristram gave him such a buffet that down he laid his head: and then he caught him so sore by the helm that he pulled him under his horse feet. And then king Arthur blew to lodging. Then Sir Tristram departed to his pavilion, and Sir Dinadan rode with him. And Sir Persides and king Arthur then, and the kings upon both parties, marvelled what knight that was with the black shield. Many said their advice, and some knew him for Sir Tris- tram, and held their peace, and would nought say. So that first day king Arthur and all the kings and lords that were judges gave Sir Tristram the prize, how be it they knew him not, but named him the knight with the black shield.

CHAP. XXXI.

How Sir Tristram returned against king Arthur's party, because he saw Sir Palamides on that party.

Then upon the morn Sir Palamides returned from the king of Northgalis, and rode to king Arthur's side, where
was king Carados, and the king of Ireland, and Sir Launcelot's kin, and Sir Gawaine's kin. So Sir Palamides sent the damsel unto Sir Tristram that he sent to seek him when he was out of his mind in the forest; and this damsel asked Sir Tristram what he was, and what was his name. As for that, said Sir Tristram, tell Sir Palamides he shall not wit as at this time, unto the time I have broken two spears upon him. But let him wit thus much, said Sir Tristram, that I am the same knight that he smote down in over evening at the tournament, and tell him plainly, on what part that Sir Palamides be I will be on the contrary part. Sir, said the damsel, ye shall understand that Sir Palamides will be on king Arthur's side, where the most noble knights of the world be. Then, said Sir Tristram, will I be with the king of Northgalis, because Sir Palamides will be on king Arthur's side, and else I would not but for his sake. So when king Arthur was come they blew unto the field, and then there began a great party, and so king Carados justed with the king with the hundred knights, and there King Carados had a fall; then there was hurling and rasing, and right so came in knights of king Arthur's, and they bare back the king of Northgalis' knights. Then Sir Tristram came in, and began so roughly and so bigly that there was none might withstand him, and thus Sir Tristram endured long. And at the last Sir Tristram fell among the fellowship of king Ban, and there fell upon him Sir Bors de Ganis, and Sir Ector de Maris, and Sir Blamor de Ganis, and many other knights. And then Sir Tristram smote on the right hand and on the left hand, that all lords and ladies spake of his noble deeds. But at the last Sir Tristram should have had the worse had not the king with the hundred knights been. And then he came with his fellowship and rescued Sir Tristram, and brought him away from those knights that bare the shields of Cornwall. And then Sir Tristram saw another fellowship by themselves, and there were a forty knights together, and Sir Kay the seneschal was their governor. Thus Sir Tristram rode in amongst them, and there he smote down Sir Kay from his horse, and there he fared among the knights like a grey hound among crows. Then Sir Launcelot found a knight that was sore wounded upon the head. Sir, said Sir Launcelot, who wounded you so sore? Sir, he said, a knight that beareth a black shield, and I may curst the time that ever I met with him, for he is a devil and no man. So Sir Launcelot departed from him, and thought to meet with Sir Tristram, and so he rode with his sword drawn in his hand to seek Sir Tristram, and then he espied him how he hurled here and there, and at every stroke Sir Tristram well smote down a knight. O mercy, said the king, sith the time I bare arms saw I never no knight do so marvelous deeds of arms. And if I should set up this knight, said Sir Launcelot to himself, I did shame to myself; and therewithal Sir Launcelot put up his sword. And then the king with the hundred knights and a hundred more of North Wales set upon the twenty of Sir Launcelot's kin: and they twenty knights held them ever together as wild swine, and none would fail other. And so when Sir Tristram beheld the nobleness of these twenty knights, he marvelled of their good deeds, for he saw by their fare and by their rule, that they had lever die than avoid the field. Now, said Sir Tristram, well may he be valiant and full of prowess that hath such a sort of noble knights unto his kin, and full like is he to be a noble man that is their leader and governor. He meant it by Sir Launcelot du Lake. So when Sir Tristram had beheld them long, he thought shame to see two hundred knights battering upon twenty knights. Then Sir Tristram rode unto the king with the hundred knights and said, Sir, leave your fighting with those twenty knights, for ye win no worship of them, ye be so many, and they so few; and wit ye well they will not out of the field, I see by their cheer and
n tenance; and worship get ye none
ye slay them. Therefore leave your
ing with them, for I to increase my
ship I will ride to the twenty knights
help them with all my might and
wer. Nay, said the king with the
ired knights, ye shall not do so.
I see your courage and courtesy
will withdraw my knights for your
sure, for evermore a good knight
favour another, and like will draw
like.

CHAP. XXXII.

Sir Tristram found Palamides by a
well, and brought him with him to his
lodging.

Thus the king with the hundred
ights withdrew his knights. And all
while, and long tofore, Sir Laun-
lot had watched upon Sir Tristram
a very purpose to have fellow-
piped with him. And then suddenly
Tristram, Sir Dinadan, and Gouver-
il his man, rode their way into the
st, that no man perceived where
gent. So then king Arthur blew
lodge, and gave the king of
thugas the prize, because Sir Tris-
was upon his side. Then Sir
acelot rode here and there, so wood
on that wanted his fill, because he
lost Sir Tristram, and so he re-
ted unto king Arthur. And then in
the field was a noise that with the
it might be heard two mile thence,
the lords and ladies cried, The
ight with the black shield hath won
field. Alas, said king Arthur, where is
knight become? It is shame to all
me in the field so to let him escape
y from you; but with gentleness
 courteys ye might have brought
unto me to the Castle of Maidens.
en the noble king Arthur went unto
knightes, and comforted them in the
wise that he could, and said, My
fellows be not dismayed, howbeit
have lost the field this day. And
were hurt and sore wounded, and
were whole. My fellows, said
Arthur, look that ye be of good
er, for to-morrow I will be in the
field with you, and revenge you of your
enemies.

So that night king Arthur and his
knightes reposethemselfes. The dam-
sel that came from La Beale Isoud
unto Sir Tristram, all the while the
tournament was a doing she was with
queen Guenever, and ever the queen
asked her for what cause she came into
that country. Madam, she answered,
I come for none other cause but from
my lady La Beale Isoud to wit of your
welfare. For in no wise she would
not tell the queen that she came for
Sir Tristram's sake. So this lady, dame
Bragwaine, took her leave of queen
Guenever, and she rode after Sir Tris-
ram. And as she rode through the
forest she heard a great cry, then she
commanded her squire to go into that
forest to wit what was that noise. And
so he came to a well, and there he
found a knight bound to a tree, crying
as he had been wood, and his horse and
his harness standing by him. And when
he espied the squire, therewith he started
and brake himself loose, and took his
sword in his hand, and ran to have slain
that squire. Then he took his horse
and fled all that ever he might unto
dame Bragwaine again, and told her of
his adventure. Then she rode unto Sir
Tristram's pavilion, and told Sir Tris-
ram what adventure she had found in
the forest. Alas, said Sir Tristram,
upon my head there is some good
knight at mischief. Then Sir Tristram
took his horse and his sword and rode
thither, and there he heard how the
knight complained unto himself, and
said, I, woeful knight, Sir Palamides,
what misadventure befalleth me, that
thus am defoiled with falsehood and
treason, through Sir Bors and Sir Ector.
Alas, he said, why live I so long! And
then he gat his sword in his hands, and
made many strange signs and tokens,
and so through his raging he threw his
sword into that fountain. Then Sir
Palamides wailed and wrang his hands.
And at the last, for pure sorrow, he ran
into that fountain over his middle, and
sought after his sword. Then Sir Tris-
tram saw that, and ran upon Sir Palamides, and held him in his arms fast. What art thou, said Sir Palamides, that holdeth me so? I am a man of this forest that would thee none harm. Alas, said Sir Palamides, I may never win worship where Sir Tristram is, for ever where he is and I be there then get I no worship, and if he be away for the most part I have the gree, unless that Sir Launcelot du Lake be there or Sir Lamorak. Then Sir Palamides said: Once in Ireland Sir Tristram put me to the worse, and another time in Cornwall, and in other places in this land. What would ye do, said Sir Tristram, and ye had Sir Tristram? I would fight with him, said Sir Palamides, and ease my heart upon him, and yet, to say the sooth, Sir Tristram is the gentlest knight in this world living. What will ye do? said Sir Tristram, will ye go with me to your lodging? Nay, said he, I will go to the king with the hundred knights, for he rescued me from Sir Bors de Ganis and Sir Ector, and else had I been slain traitourly. Sir Tristram said him such kind words that Sir Palamides went with him to his lodging. Then Gouernail went afore and charged dame Bragwaine to go out of the way to her lodging, and bid ye Sir Persides that he make him no quarrels. And so they rode together till they came to Sir Tristram's pavilion, and there Sir Palamides had all the cheer that might be had all that night. But in no wise Sir Palamides might not know what was Sir Tristram. And so after supper they went to rest, and Sir Tristram for great travail slept till it was day. And Sir Palamides might not sleep for anguish, and in the dawning of the day he took his horse privily and rode his way unto Sir Gaheris and to Sir Sagramor le Desirous, where they were in their pavilions, for they three were fellows at the beginning of the tournament. And then upon the morn the king blew unto the tournament upon the third day.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Sir Tristram smote down Palamides, and how he was justed by Arthur, and other feats.

So the king of Northgalis, king with the hundred knights, encountered with king Carados, the king of Ireland, and there with the hundred knights smote king Carados, and the king of Galis smote down the king of Conall. With that came in Sir Palamides when he came he made great war by his indented shield he was known. So came in king Arthur did great deeds of arms together put the king of Northgalis and with the hundred knights to the earth. With this came in Sir Tristram black shield, and anon he smote Sir Palamides, and there by Sir Tristram smote Sir Palamides his horse croup. Then king cried, Knight with the black make thee ready to me. And same wise Sir Tristram smote Arthur. And then by force Arthur's knights the king: Palamides were horded against king Arthur with a great eaglet a spear in his hand, and thus the one side he smote Sir Tristram his horse. Then foot-hors Sir Tristram came upon Sir Tristram as he foot, to have over-ridden him. Tristram was ware of him, and stooped aside, and with great might impaled him by the arm, and pulled him from his horse. Then Sir Tristram lightly arose, and then they did together mightily with their swords many kings, queens, and lords, and beheld them. And at the Tristram smote Sir Palamides helm three mighty strokes, and stroke that he gave him he saw this for Sir Tristram's sake. With Sir Palamides fell to the ear the king. And then came the king hundred knights and brought Tristram an horse, and so was he again. By then was Sir I
and with great ire he justed Tristram with his spear as it e rest, and gave him a great his spear. Then Sir Tristram his spear and gat him by the his both hands, and pulled out of his saddle, and so he afore him the length of ten then in the presence of them him fall at his adventure. Then was ware of king Arthur his sword in his hand, and spear Sir Tristram ran upon hur, and then king Arthur ode him, and with his sword a-two his spear, and there- Tristram was astonished, and Arthur gave him three or four skes or he might get out hisid at the last Sir Tristram sword and assailed other pass-

With that the great press en Sir Tristram rode here and did his great pain, that eleven ed knights of the blood of king was of Sir Launcelot’s kin, sir Tristram smote down, that states marvelled of his great d all cried upon the knight black shield.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Launcelot hurt Sir Tristram, and Sir Tristram smote downes.

his cry was so large that Sir heard it. And then he gat a ir in his hand, and came to cry. Then Sir Launcelot knight with the black shield, is ready to just with me. When am heard him say so, he gat n his hand, and either abashed r heads, and came together as Tristram’s spear brake and Sir Launcelot by mal-fork Sir Tristram on the side a nd nigh to the death. But yet am avoided not his saddle, and spear brake: therewithal Sir that was wounded gat out his d he rash’d to Sir Launcelot, and gave him three great strokes upon the helm that the fire spang there out, and Sir Launcelot abashed his head lowly toward his saddle-bow. And therewithal Sir Tristram departed from the field, for he felt him so wounded that he wend he should have died. And Sir Dinadan espied him, and followed him into the forest. Then Sir Launcelot abode and did many marvellous deeds. So when Sir Tristram was departed by the forest side, he alight, and unlaced his harness and refreshed his wound. Then wend Sir Dinadan that he should have died. Nay, nay, said Sir Tristram, Di-
nadan never dread thee, for I am heart whole, and of this wound I shall soon be whole by the mercy of God. By that Sir Dinadan was ware where came Sir Palamides riding straight upon them. And then Sir Tristram was ware that Sir Palamides came to have destroyed him. And so Sir Dinadan gave him warning and said, Sir Tristram, my lord, ye are so sore wounded that ye may not have ado with him, therefore I will ride against him and do to him what I may; and if I be slain ye may pray for my soul, and in the meanwhile ye may withdraw you and go into the castle, or into the forest, that he shall not meet with you. Sir Tristram smiled and said, I thank you, Sir Dinadan, of your good will, but ye shall wit that I am able to handle him. And then anon hastily he armed him and took his horse and gat a great spear in his hand, and said to Sir Dinadan, Adieu, and rode toward Sir Palamides a soft pace.

Then when Sir Palamides saw that, he made countenance to amend his horse; but he did it for this cause, for he abode Sir Gaheris that came after him. And when he was come, he rode toward Sir Tristram. Then Sir Tristram sent unto Sir Palamides and required him to just with him; and if he smote down Sir Palamides he would do no more to him; and if it so happened that Sir Palamides smote down Sir Tris- tram he bad him do his utterance. So they were accorded. Then they met to- gether, and Sir Tristram smote down Sir
Palamides, that he had a grievous fall, so that he lay still as he had been dead. And then Sir Tristram ran upon Sir Galahis, and he would not have justed, but whether he would or not Sir Tristram smote him over his horse croup, that he lay still as though he had been dead. And then Sir Tristram rode his way, and left Sir Persides' squire within the pavilions, and Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan rode to an old knight's place to lodge them. And that old knight had five sons at the tournament, for whom he prayed heartily for their coming home. And so, as the French book saith, they came home all five well beaten.

And when Sir Tristram departed into the forest, Sir Launcelot held alway the fight like hard as a man enraged that took no heed to himself, and wit ye well there was many a noble knight against him. And when king Arthur saw Sir Launcelot do so marvellous deeds of arms, he then armed him, and took his horse and armour, and rode into the field to help Sir Launcelot, and so many knights came in with king Arthur. And to make short tale, in conclusion, the king of Northgalis and the king of the hundred knights were put to the worse, and because Sir Launcelot abode and was the last in the field, the prize was given him. But Sir Launcelot would neither for king, nor knight have the prize. But where the cry was cried through the field, Sir Launcelot, Sir Launcelot, hath won the field this day, Sir Launcelot let make another cry contrary, Sir Tristram hath won the field, for he began first, and last he hath endured, and so hath he done the first day, the second, and the third day.

CHAP. XXXV.

How the prize of the third day was given to Sir Launcelot, and Sir Launcelot gave it unto Sir Tristram.

Then all the estates and degrees high and low said of Sir Launcelot great worship for the honour that he did unto Sir Tristram, and for that honour doing to Sir Tristram he was at that time praised and renowned than if overthrown five hundred knights all the people wholly for this get first the estates both high and low after the commonalty, cried at a Launcelot hath won the field, who say nay. Then was Sir Launcelot ashamed, and so therewith rode to king Arthur. Alas, said king, we are all dismayed that Sir Tristram is thus departed from us. said king Arthur, he is one of the best knights that ever I saw him or sword in hand, and the most expert knight in his fighting, for I saw him, said king Arthur, when Sir Tristram smote Sir Palamides upon his helm his strokes, and also he said, he stroke for Sir Tristram, and that he said. Then king Arthur, Sir Launcelot, and Sir Dodinas le Sage their horses to seek Sir Tristram, by the means of Sir Persides he told king Arthur where Sir Tristram his pavilion, but when they came Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan were gone. Then king Arthur and Sir Launcelot were heavy, and return to the Castle of Maidens maker dole for the hurt of Sir Tristram his sudden departing. Truly, said king Arthur, I am more heavy than I meet with him than for all the time that all my knights have had in the tournament. Right so came Sir Galahis and told to king Arthur that Tristram had smitten down Palamides, and it was at Sir Palamides request. Alas, said king Arthur, that great dishonour to Sir Palamides as Sir Tristram was wounded, and now may we all and knights, and men of worth that Sir Tristram may be called knight, and one of the best knight ever I saw the days of my life. will that ye all kings and knight said king Arthur, that I never knight do so marvellously as done these three days, for he first that began, and that long
his last day. And though he
it was a manly adventure of
knights: and when two noble
inter needs must the one have
like as God will suffer at that
for me, said Sir Launcelot,
lands that ever my father left
d not have hurt Sir Tristram
d known him at that time.
rt him was for I saw not his
if I had seen his black shield
ot have meddled with him for
ses, for late he did as much
ever knight did, and that is
n that he had ado with thirty
nd no help save Sir Dinadan.
thing shall I promise, said Sir
, Sir Palamides shall repent it,
unkindly dealing for to follow
: knight that I by mishap hurt
Launcelot said all the word
might be said by Sir Tristram.
g; Arthur made a great feast to
ould come.
us let we pass king Arthur,
te we will turn unto Sir Pal-
at, after he had a fall of Sir
he was nigh hand enraged out
: for despite of Sir Tristram.
he followed him by adventure.
: came by a river in his wood
uld have made his horse to
over; and the horse failed
nd fell in the river, wherefore
ides was adread lest he should
drowned, and then he avoided
swam to the land, and let
: go down by adventure.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Palamides came to the castle
Sir Tristram was, and of the
Sir Launcelot and ten knights
Sir Tristram.

hen he came to the land he
his harness, and sat roaring
: as a man out of his mind.
came a damsel even by Sir
, that was sent from Sir Ga-
his brother unto Sir Mordred,
c in the same place with that
: where Sir Tristram was. For,
as the French book saith, Sir Persides
hurt so Sir Mordred a ten days afore;
and had it not been for the love of Sir
Gawaine and his brother, Sir Persides
had slain Sir Mordred. And so this
damsel came by Sir Palamides, and she
and he had language together, the
which pleased neither of them: and so
the damsel rode her ways till she came
to the old knight’s place, and there she
told that old knight how she had met
with the woodest knight by adventure
that ever she met withal. What bare
he in his shield? said Sir Tristram. It
was indented with white and black, said
the damsel. Ah, said Sir Tristram, that
was Sir Palamides the good knight, for
well I know him, said Sir Tristram, for
one of the best knights living in this
realm. Then that old knight took a little
hackney, and rode for Sir Palamides, and
brought him unto his own manor; and
then full well knew Sir Tristram Sir
Palamides, but he said but little, for at
that time Sir Tristram was walking upon
his feet, and well amended of his hurts,
and always when Sir Palamides saw Sir
Tristram he would behold him full mar-
vellously. And ever him seemed that
he had seen him. Then would he say
to Sir Dinadan, And ever I may meet
with Sir Tristram, he shall not escape
my hands. I marvel, said Sir Dinadan,
that ye boast behind Sir Tristram, for
it is but late that he was in your hands,
and ye in his hands; why would ye not
hold him when ye had him? for I saw
myself twice or thrice that ye got but
little worship of Sir Tristram. Then
was Sir Palamides ashamed. So leave
we them a little while in the castle with
the old knight Sir Darras.

Now shall we speak of king Arthur,
that said to Sir Launcelot, Had not ye
been, we had not lost Sir Tristram, for
he was here daily unto the time ye met
with him, and in an evil time, said Ar-
thur, ye encountered with him. My lord
Arthur, said Launcelot, ye put upon me
that I should be cause of his departure:
truly it was against my will. But when
men be hot in deeds of arms, often they
hurt their friends as well as their foes;
and my lord, said Sir Launcelot, ye shall understand that Sir Tristram is a man that I am loth to offend, for he hath done for me more than ever I did for him as yet. But then Sir Launcelot made to bring forth a book, and then Sir Launcelot said, Here we are ten knights that will swear upon a book never to rest one night where we rest another, this twelvemonth, until that we find Sir Tristram. And as for me, said Sir Launcelot, I promise you upon this book that and I may meet with him, either by fairness or foulness I shall bring him to this court, or else I shall die therefore. And the names of these ten knights that had undertaken this quest were these following. First was Sir Launcelot; Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Bors de Ganis, and Bleoberis, and Sir Blamor de Ganis, and Lucan the butler, Sir Uwayne, Sir Galihud, Sir Lionel, and Galliodin. So these ten noble knights departed from the court of king Arthur; and so they rode upon their quest together until they came to a cross where departed four highways, and there departed the fellowship in four, to seek Sir Tristram. And as Sir Launcelot rode by adventure he met with dame Bragwaine, that was sent into that country to seek Sir Tristram, and she fled as fast as her palfrey might go. So Sir Launcelot met with her, and asked her why she fled. Ah, fair knight, said dame Bragwaine, I flee for dread of my life, for here followeth me Sir Breuse Sance Pité to slay me. Hold you nigh me, said Sir Launcelot. Then when Sir Launcelot saw Sir Breuse Sance Pité, Sir Launcelot cried unto him and said, False knight, destroyer of ladies and damsels, now thy last days be come. When Sir Breuse Sance Pité saw Sir Launcelot's shield he knew it well, for at that time he bare not the arms of Cornwall, but he bare his own shield. And then Sir Breuse fled, and Sir Launcelot followed after him. But Sir Breuse was so well horsed, that when him list to flee he might well flee, and also abide when him list. And then Sir Launcelot returned unto dame Bragwaine, and she thanked him great labour.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How Sir Tristram, Sir Palamid Sir Dinadan were taken and prison.

Now will we speak of Sir Lu butler, that by fortune came in the same place there as was Si tram, and in he came in none intent but to ask harbour. The porter asked what was his name your lord that my name is Sir the butler, a knight of the Round So the porter went unto Sir Darr of the place, and told him wi there to ask harbour. Nay, na Sir Daname, that was nephew u Darras, say him that he shall lodged here. But let him wit Sir Daname will meet with him and bid him make him ready. Daname came forth on horseback there they met together with and Sir Lucan smote down Sir I over his horse croup, and then into that place, and Sir Lucan ro him, and asked after him many Then Sir Dinadan said to Sir Tristram It is shame to see the lord's co this place defoiled. Abide, s Tristram, and I shall redress it in the mean while Sir Dinadan horseback, and he justed with the butler, and there Sir Lucan Dinadan through the thick of the and so he rode his way, and Si tram was wroth that Sir Dinadan hurt, and followed after, and t to avenge him. And within a o overtook Sir Lucan and bade him and so they met together, so t Tristram hurt Sir Lucan passing and gave him a fall. With the Sir Uwayne, a gentle knight, and he saw Sir Lucan so hurt, he ca Tristram to just with him. Fair said Sir Tristram, tell me your require you. Sir knight, wit my name is Sir Uwayne le Fise Ureine. Ah, said Sir Tristram,
HOW TRISTRAM WAS IN PRISON AND SICK.

II.

How Tristram was in prison and sick. Then he had not ado with you at the tilt. Ye shall not so, said Sir Tristram, ye shall have ado with me. Sir Tristram saw none other knight against him, and overtook him, and hurt him in the body, and when Sir Dinadan undertook Sir Tristram had hurt Sir Dinadan, he would have ridden after Sir Tristram, but Sir Tristram had slain him, but Sir Tristram feared not to suffer him.

Sir Uwaine let ordain an horse, and brought Sir Lucan to the castle of Ganis, and the castle thereby to Sir Dinadan, of the which Uwaine was lord. And at that time Launcelot promised all his service in the quest of Sir Tristram, and when Sir Tristram was coming, there came a damsel that was a Dazam that three of his sons had fought at that tournament, and two of them were dead and wounded that they were never to see their sons, and all this was killed in that noble knight that bare the shield, and that was he that bare the shield.

Then came there one and a Dazam that was a Dazam that bare the black shield, and there Sir Darras went unto Sir Tristram's chamber, and there he found the damsel and shewed it to the damsel, and the damsel, that was he that slew their three sons, and she would have nothing to do with Sir Darras, Sir Tristram, and Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan within a strong prison, Sir Tristram was like to have died of sickness, and every day Sir Tristram would reproach Sir Tristram for being idle. And ever Sir Tristram spake fair and said little. Sir Palamides saw the falling of Sir Tristram then was he comforted him in all wise he could. And, as the damsel said, there came forty Dazams that were of his blood, and they would have slain Sir Tristram and his two fellows, but Sir Tristram would not suffer that, but kept prison, and meat and drink they had. So Sir Tristram endured and died of great pain, for sickness had undertaken him, and that is the greatest pain a prisoner may have. For all the while a prisoner may have his health of body, he may endure under the mercy of God, and in hope of good deliverance; but when sickness toucheth a prisoner's body, then may a prisoner say all wealth is him bereft, and then he hath cause to wail and to weep. And so did Sir Tristram when sickness had undertaken him, for then he took such sorrow that he had almost slain himself.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How king Mark was sorry for the good renown of Sir Tristram: some of king Arthur's knights justed with knights of Cornwall.

Now will we speak, and leave Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan in prison, and speak we of other knights that sought after Sir Tristram many divers parts of this land. And some went into Cornwall, and by adventure Sir Gaheris, nephew unto king Arthur, came unto king Mark, and there he was well received, and sat at king Mark's own table and eat of his own mess. Then king Mark asked Sir Gaheris what tidings there were in the realm of Logris. Sir, said Sir Gaheris, the king reigneth as a noble knight, and now but late there was a great justs and tournament as ever I saw any in the realm of Logris, and the most noble knights were at that justs. But there was one knight that did marvellously three days, and he bare a black shield, and of all knights that ever I saw he proved the best knight. Then said king Mark, That was Sir Launcelot, or Sir Palamides the Paynim. Not so, said Sir Gaheris, for both Sir Launcelot and Sir Palamides were on the contrary part against the knight with the black shield. Then it was Sir Tristram, said the king. Yea, said Sir Gaheris. And therewith the king smote down his head, and in his heart he feared sore that Sir Tristram should get him such worship in the realm of
Logris, where through that he himself should not be able to withstand him. Thus Sir Gaheris had great cheer with king Mark, and with queen La Beale Isoud, the which was glad of Sir Gaheris' words; for well she wist by his deeds and manners that it was Sir Tristram. And then the king made a feast royal, and unto that feast came Sir Uwaine le Fise de Roy Ureine, and some folk called him Uwaine le Blanche Mains. And this Sir Uwaine challenged all the knights of Cornwall. Then was the king wood wroth that he had no knights to answer him. Then Sir Andre, nephew unto king Mark, leapt up and said, I will encounter with Sir Uwaine. Then he went and armed him, and horseyed him in the best manner. And there Sir Uwaine met with Sir Andre and smote him down, that he swooned on the earth. Then was king Mark sorry and wroth out of measure that he had no knight to revenge his nephew Sir Andre. So the king called unto him Sir Dinas the seneschal, and prayed him for his sake to take upon him to just with Sir Uwaine. Sir, said Sir Dinas, I am full loth to have ado with any knight of the Round Table. Yet, said the king, for my love take upon thee to just. So Sir Dinas made him ready, and anon they encountered together with great spears, but Sir Dinas was overthrown, horse and man, a great fall. Who was wroth but king Mark? Alas, he said, have I no knight that will encounter with yonder knight. Sir, said Sir Gaheris, for your sake I will just. So Sir Gaheris made him ready, and when he was armed he rode into the field. And when Sir Uwaine saw Sir Gaheris' shield, he rode unto him and said, Sir, ye do not your part; for, sir, the first time ye were made knight of the Round Table ye swears that ye should not have ado with your fellowship wittingly. And pardy Sir Gaheris, ye knew me well enough by my shield, and so do I know you by your shield, and though ye would break your oath I would not break mine, for there is not one here, nor ye, that shall think I am afraid of you, but I durst right well have ado with you, but we be sisters' sons. Then was Sir Gaheris ashamed. And so there withal every knight went his way, and Sir Uwaine rode into the country. Then king Mark armed him and took his horse and his spear, with a squire with him. And then he rode afore Sir Uwaine, and suddenly at a gap he ran upon him as he that was not ware of him, and there he smote him almost through the body, and there left him. So within a while there came Sir Kay, and found Sir Uwaine, and asked him how he was hurt. I wot not, said Sir Uwaine, why, nor wherefore, but by treason I am sure I got this hurt, for here came a knight suddenly upon me or that I was ware, and suddenly hurt me. Then there was come Sir Andre to seek king Mark. Thou traitor knight, said Sir Kay, and I wist it were thou that thus traitourly hast hurt this noble knight, thou shouldst never pass my hands. Sir, said Sir Andre, I did never hurt him, and that I will report me to himself. Fie on you, false knights, said Sir Kay, for ye of Cornwall are nought worth. So Sir Kay made carry Sir Uwaine to the abbey of the black cross, and there he was healed. And then Sir Gaheris took his leave of king Mark. But or he departed he said, Sir king, ye did a foul shame unto you and your court when ye banished Sir Tristram out of this country, for ye need not to have doubted no knight and he had been here. And so he departed.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the treason of king Mark, and how Sir Gaheris smote him down and Andre his cousin.

Then there came Sir Kay the seneschal unto king Mark, and there he had good cheer shewing outward. Now fair lords, said he, will ye prove any adventure in the forest of Morris, in the which I know well is as hard an adventure as I know any. Sir, said Sir Kay, I will prove it. And Sir Gaheris said he would
d, for king Mark was ever full on. And therewithal Sir Ga-
arted and rode his way. And same way that Sir Kay should
him down to rest, charging e to wait upon Sir Kay,—and
when he cometh. So within a n Sir Kay came riding that way.
Sir Gaheris took his horse
him, and said, Sir Kay, ye are
to ride at the request of king
or he dealeth all with treason.
Sir Kay, I require you let us
is adventure. I shall not fail
Sir Gaheris. And so they
t time till a lake that was th
ed the perilous lake, and there
le under the shawe of the wood.
while king Mark within the
Tintagil avoided all his barons,
other save such as were privy
were all avoided out of his
. And then he let call his
Sir Andred, and bad arm him
him lightly, and by that time
midnight. And so king Mark
ed in black, horse and all. And
privy postern they two issued
their varletys with them, and
they came to that lake. Then
espied them first, and gat his
proffered to just. And king
le against him, and smote each
l hard, for the moon shine as
t day. And there at that justs
horse fell down, for his horse
so big as the king's horse was,
Kay's horse bruised him full
then Sir Gaheris was wroth that
had a fall. Then he cried,
sit thou fast in, thy saddle, for
venge my fellow. Then king
s afraid of Sir Gaheris, and so
will king Mark rode against
Sir Gaheris gave him such a
at he fell down. So then forth-
r Gaheris ran unto Sir Andred,
e him from his horse quite that
smote in the earth and nigh
en his neck. And therewith Sir
alight, and gat up Sir Kay.
they went both on foot to
bad them yield them and tell
their names, or else they should die.
Then with great pain Sir Andred spake
first and said, It is king Mark of Corn-
wall, therefore beware what ye do, and
I am Sir Andred his cousin. Fie on you
both, said Sir Gaheris, for a false tra-
tor, and false treason hast thou wrought
and he both, under the feigned cheer that
ye made us. It were pity, said Sir Ga-
heris, that thou shouldst live any longer.
Save my life, said king Mark, and I will
make amends; and consider that I am a
king anointed. It were the more shame,
said Sir Gaheris, to save thy life; thou
art a king anointed with crism, and
therefore thou shouldst hold with all
men of worship; and therefore thou art
worthy to die. With that he lashed at
king Mark without saying any more;
and he covered him with his shield, and
defended him as he might. And then
Sir Kay lashed at Sir Andred. And
therewithal king Mark yielded him unto
Sir Gaheris, and then he kneeled down,
and made his oath upon the cross of
the sword that never while he lived he
would be against errant knights. And
also he swore to be good friend unto
Sir Tristram, if ever he came into Corn-
wall. By then Sir Andred was on the
earth, and Sir Kay would have slay
him. Let be, said Sir Gaheris, slay him
not I pray you. It were pity, said Sir
Kay, that he should live any longer, for
this is nigh cousin unto Sir Tristram,
and ever he hath been a traitor unto
him, and by him he was exiled out of
Cornwall, and therefore I will slay him,
said Sir Kay. Ye shall not, said Sir Ga-
eris; sithen I have given the king his
life, I pray you give him his life. And
therewithal Sir Kay let him go. And so
Sir Kay and Sir Gaheris rode forth their
way unto Dinas the seneschal, for be-
cause they heard say that he loved well
Sir Tristram. So they reposed them
there. And soon after they rode unto
the realm of Logris. And so within a
little while they met with Sir Launcelot,
that had always dame Bragwaine with
him, to that intent he went to have met
sooner with Sir Tristram, and Sir Laun-
celot asked what tidings in Cornwall,
and whether they heard of Sir Tristram or not. Sir Kay and Sir Gaheris answered and said that they heard not of him. Then they told Sir Launcelot word by word of their adventure. Then Sir Launcelot smiled, and said, Hard it is to take out of the flesh that is bred in the bone. And so made them merry together.

CHAP. XL.
How after that Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan had been long in prison they were delivered.

Now leave we off this tale and speak we of Sir Dinas that loved a lady within the castle, and she loved another knight better than him. And so when Sir Dinas went out on hunting she slipped down by a towel, and took with her two braclets, and so she went to the knight that she loved. And when Sir Dinas came home and missed his lady, and his braclets, then was he more wroth for his braclets than for the lady. So then he rode after the knight that had his lady, and bad him turn and just. So Sir Dinas smote him down, that with the fall he brake his leg and his arm. And then his lady cried Sir Dinas mercy, and said she would love him better than ever she did. Nay, said Sir Dinas, I shall never trust them that once betrayed me, and therefore as ye have begun so end, for I will never meddle with you. And so Sir Dinas departed and took his braclets with him, and so rode to his castle.

Now will we turn unto Sir Launcelot, that was right heavy that he could never hear no tidings of Sir Tristram, for all this while he was in prison with Sir Darras, Palamides, and Dinadan. Then dame Bragwine took her leave to go into Cornwall, and Sir Launcelot, Sir Kay, and Sir Gaheris rode to seek Sir Tristram in the country of Surluse. Now speaketh this tale of Sir Tristram and of his two fellows, for every day Sir Palamides brawled and said language against Sir Tristram. I marvel, said Sir Dinadan, of thee Sir Palamides: and thou hadst Sir Tristram here thou wouldst do him no harm; for and a wolf and a sheep were together in prison, the wolf would suffer the sheep to be in peace. And wit thou well, said Sir Dinadan, this same is Sir Tristram at a word, and now mayes thou do thy best with him, and let see now how ye can shift it with your hands. Then was Sir Palamides abashed and said little. Sir Palamides, said Sir Tristram, I have heard much of your ill-will against me, but I will not meddle with you as at this time by my will, because I dread the lord of this place that hath us in governance, for and I dread him more than I do thee, soon should it be shift. So they appeased themselves. Right so came in a damsel and said, Knights, be of good cheer, for ye are sure of your lives, and that I heard say my lord Sir Darras. Then were they glad all three, for dally they wend they should have died. Then soon after this Sir Tristram fell sick, that he wend to have died. Then Sir Dinadan wept, and so did Sir Palamides under them both making great sorrow. So a damsel came into them, and found them mourning. Then she went to Sir Darras and told him how that mighty knight that bare the black shield was likely to die. That shall not be, said Sir Darras, for God defend when any knights come to me for succour that I should suffer them to die within my prison. Therefore, said Sir Darras to the damsel, fetch that knight and his fellows afore me. And then anon when Sir Darras saw Sir Tristram afore him, he said, Sir knight, me repenteth of thy sickness, for thou art called a full noble knight, and so it seemeth by thee. And wit ye well, it shall never be said that Sir Darras shall destroy such a noble knight as thou art in prison, howbeit that thou hast slain three of my sons, whereby I was greatly aggrieved. But now shalt thou go and thy fellows, and your harness and horses have been fair and clean kept, and ye shall go where it liketh you, upon this covenant, that
said Sir Dinadan, and because of honour of all women I will do my part. With this came Sir Breuse, and when he saw a knight with his lady, he was wood-wroth. And then he said, Sir knight, keep thee from me. So they hurled together as thunder, and either smote other passing sore. But Sir Dinadan put him through the shoulder a grievous wound, and ever Sir Dinadan might turn him, Sir Breuse was gone and fled. Then the lady prayed him to bring her to a castle there beside but four mile thence. And so Sir Dinadan brought her there, and she was welcome, for the lord of that castle was her uncle. And so Sir Dinadan rode his way upon his adventure.

Now turn we this tale unto Sir Tristram, that by adventure he came to a castle to ask lodging, wherein was queen Morgan le Fay. And so when Sir Tristram was let into that castle he had good cheer all that night. And upon the morn when he would have departed, the queen said, Wit ye well ye shall not depart lightly, for ye are here as a prisoner. God defend, said Sir Tristram, for I was but late a prisoner. Fair knight, said the queen, ye shall abide with me till that I wit what ye are, and from whence ye come. And ever the queen would set Sir Tristram on her side, and her paramour on the other side, and ever queen Morgan would behold Sir Tristram, and the knight was jealous, and was in will suddenly to have run upon Sir Tristram with a sword, but he left it for shame. Then the queen said to Sir Tristram, Tell me thy name, and I shall suffer you to depart when you will. Upon that covenant I tell you my name is Sir Tristram de Liones. Ah, said Morgan le Fay, and I had wist that thou shouldst not have departed so soon as thou shalt: but sithen I have made a promise I will hold it, with that thou wilt promise me to bear upon thee a shield that I shall deliver thee, unto the castle of the Hard Rock, where king Arthur hath cried a great tournay, and there I pray you that ye will be,
and to do for me as much deeds of arms as ye may do. For at that Castle of Maidens, Sir Tristram, ye did marvellous deeds of arms as ever I heard knight do. Madam, said Sir Tristram, let me see the shield that I shall bear. So the shield was brought forth, and the shield was goldish, with a king and a queen therein painted, and a knight standing above them, with one foot upon the king's head, and the other upon the queen's. Madam, said Sir Tristram, this is a fair shield and a mighty; but what signifieth this king and this queen and that knight standing upon both their heads. I shall tell you, said Morgan le Fay, it signifieth king Arthur and queen Guenever, and a knight that holdeth them both in bondage and servage. Who is that knight? said Sir Tristram. That shall ye not wit as at this time, said the queen. But, as the French book saith, queen Morgan loved Sir Launcelot best, and ever she desired him, and he would never love her, nor do nothing at her request, and therefore she held many knights together for to have taken him by strength. And because she deemed that Sir Launcelot loved queen Guenever, and she him again, therefore queen Morgan le Fay ordained that shield to put Sir Launcelot to a rebuke, to that intent that king Arthur might understand the love between them. Then Sir Tristram took that shield and promised her to bear it at the tournament at the castle of the Hard Rock. But Sir Tristram knew not that shield was ordained against Sir Launcelot, but afterward he knew it.

CHAP. XLIII.

How Sir Tristram took with him the shield, and also how he slew the paramour of Morgan le Fay.

So then Sir Tristram took his leave of the queen, and took the shield with him. Then came the knight that held queen Morgan le Fay, his name was Sir Hemison, and he made him ready to follow Sir Tristram. Fair friend, said Morgan, ride not after that knight, for ye shall win no worship of him on him, coward, said Sir Hemison. I wist never good knight come to Cornwall, but if it were Sir Tristram or Liones. What and that be he? said she. Nay, nay, said he, he is with Beale Isoud, and this is but a knight. Alas my fair friend, ye find him the best knight that ever met withal, for I know him better ye do. For your sake, said Sir Tristram, I shall slay him. Ah, fair fair, said the queen, me repenteth this will follow that knight, for I fear sore of your coming. With this knight rode his way wood wit ever he rode after Sir Tristram as he had been chased with knowledge. When Sir Tristram heard a knight after him so fast, he returned and saw a knight coming against him. And when he came nigh to Sir Tristram, he cried on high, Sir knight, scope from me. Then they rushed together as it had been thunders, and Hemison bruised his spear upon Sir Tristram, but his harness was so good that he might not hurt him. And Sir Tristram smote him harder, and smote him through the body, and he fell his horse croup. Then Sir Tristram turned to have done more with sword, but he saw so much blood from him, that him seemed he likely to die: and so he departed from him and came to a fair manor; and there Sir Tristram lodged.

CHAP. XLIII.

How Morgan le Fay buried her paramour and how Sir Tristram praised Sir Launcelot and his kin.

Now leave we to speak of Sir Tristram, and speak we of the knight was wounded to the death. The varlet alight, and took off his helm then he asked his master whether were any life in him. There is life, said the knight, but it is but and therefore leap thou up behind when thou hast holpen me up; and me fast that I fall not, and bring
Morgan le Fay, for deep of death draw to my heart, may not live, for I would fain her or I died. For else my be in great peril and I die. great pain his varlet brought the castle, and there Sir Hemilown dead. When Morgan le him dead, she made great sort of reason. And then she let her into his shirt, and so she put into a tomb. And about she let write: Here lieth Sir slain by the hands of Sir Tristones. Now turn we unto Sir that asked the knight, his host, late any knights adventurous. last night here lodged Sir Ector de Mari and a damsel and that damsel told me that she of the best knights of the that is not so, said Sir Tris. I know four better knights of blood; and the first is Launcake, call him the best knight; Sirors de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis, Sir Ganis, and Sir Gaheris. Nay, host, Sir Gawain is a better man he. That is not so, said Tristram, for I have met with them I felt Sir Gaheris for the knight; and Sir Lamorak, I call sood as any of them, except Sir . Why name ye not Sir Tris. his host, for I account him as any of them. I know not Sir said Tristram. Thus they jested as long as them list, went to rest. And on the morn ram departed and took his is host, and rode towards the re, and none adventure had Sir but that, and so he rested not one to the castle, where he saw ed tents.

CHAP. XLIV.

Tristram at a tournament bore'd that Morgan le Fay had de-bim.

he king of Scots and the king held against king Arthur's knights, and there began a great meddle. So came in Sir Tristram and did marvellous deeds of arms, for there he smote down many knights. And ever he was afore king Arthur with that shield. And when king Arthur saw that shield, he marvelled greatly in what intent it was made. But queen Guenever deemed as it was, wherefore she was heavy. Then was there a damsel of queen Morgan in a chamber by king Arthur, and when she heard king Arthur speak of that shield, then she spake openly unto king Arthur, Sir king, wit ye well this shield was ordained for you, to warn you of your shame and dishonour, and that longeth to you and to your queen. And then anon the damsel piked her away privily, that no man wist where she was become. Then was king Arthur sad and wroth, and asked from whence came that damsel. There was not one that knew her, nor wist where she was become. Then queen Guenever called to her Sir Ector de Maris, and there she made her complaint to him, and said, I wit well this shield was made by Morgan le Fay, in despite of me and Sir Launcelot, wherefore I dread sore lest I should be destroyed. And ever the king beheld Sir Tristram that did so marvellous deeds of arms, that he wondered sore what knight he might be, and well he wist it was not Sir Launcelot. And it was told him that Sir Tristram was in Petit Britain with Isoud la Blanche Mains, for he deemed, and he had been in the realm of Logris, Sir Launcelot or some of his fellows that were in the quest of Sir Tristram, that they should have found him or that time. So king Arthur had marvel what knight he might be. And ever Sir Arthur's eye was on that shield. All that espied the queen, and that made her sore afeard. Then ever Sir Tristram smote down knights, wonderly to behold, what upon the right hand and upon the left hand, that unneth no knight might withstand him. And the king of Scots and the king of Ireland began to withdraw them. When Arthur espied that, he thought that that knight
and my lord, said Sir Launcelot, ye shall understand that Sir Tristram is a man that I am loth to offend, for he hath done for me more than ever I did for him as yet. But then Sir Launcelot made to bring forth a book, and then Sir Launcelot said, Here we are ten knights that will swear upon a book never to rest one night where we rest another, this twelvemonth, until that we find Sir Tristram. And as for me, said Sir Launcelot, I promise you upon this book that and I may meet with him, either by fairness or foulness I shall bring him to this court, or else I shall die therefore. And the names of these ten knights that had undertaken this quest were these following. First was Sir Launcelot; Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Bors de Ganis, and Bleoberis, and Sir Blamor de Ganis, and Lucan the butler, Sir Uwayne, Sir Galihud, Sir Lionel, and Galiodin. So these ten noble knights departed from the court of king Arthur; and so they rode upon their quest together until they came to a cross where departed four highways, and there departed the fellowship in four, to seek Sir Tristram. And as Sir Launcelot rode by adventure he met with dame Bragwaine, that was sent into that country to seek Sir Tristram, and she fled as fast as her palfrey might go. So Sir Launcelot met with her, and asked her why she fled. Ah, fair knight, said dame Bragwaine, I flee for dread of my life, for here followeth me Sir Breuse Sance Pité to slay me. Hold you nigh me, said Sir Launcelot. Then when Sir Launcelot saw Sir Breuse Sance Pité, Sir Launcelot cried unto him and said, False knight, destroyer of ladies and damsels, now thy last days be come. When Sir Breuse Sance Pité saw Sir Launcelot’s shield he knew it well, for at that time he bare not the arms of Cornwall, but he bare his own shield. And then Sir Breuse fled, and Sir Launcelot followed after him. But Sir Breuse was so well horsef, that when him list to flee he might well flee, and also abide when him list. And then Sir Launcelot returned unto dame Bragwaine, and she thanked him great labour.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How Sir Tristram, Sir Palami Sir Dinadan were taken an prison.

Now will we speak of Sir Luke the butler, that by fortune came in the same place there as was Sir Tristram, and in he came in no intent but to ask harbour. The porter asked what was his name your lord that my name is Sir Luke the butler, a knight of the Round. So the porter went unto Sir Daname, that was nephew of Sir Daname, that was nephew of Sir Dinadan, say him that he shall lodged here. But let him will Sir Daname will meet with him and bid him make him ready. Daname came forth on horseback, and there they met together with Sir Luke and Sir Lucan smote down Sir Tristram over his horse croup, and then entered into that place, and Sir Lucan rode him, and asked after him man. Then Sir Dinadan said to Sir Tristram, It is shame to see the lord’s cause this place defoiled. Abide, Sir Tristram, and I shall redress it in the mean while Sir Dinadan horseback, and he justed with the butler, and there Sir Lucan and Sir Dinadan through the thick of the crowd, and so he rode his way, and Sir Tristram was wroth that Sir Dinadan hurt, and followed after, and to avenge him. And within an overtook Sir Lucan and bade him and so they met together, so Tristram hurt Sir Lucan passing, and gave him a fall. With that Sir Uwayne, a gentle knight, and he saw Sir Luke so hurt, he asked Sir Tristram to just with him. Fair Sir Tristram, said Sir Tristram, tell me your require you. Sir knight, wit my name is Sir Uwayne le Fise Ureine. Ah, said Sir Tristram,
HOW TRISTRAM WAS IN PRISON AND SICK.

They had. So Sir Tristram endured there great pain, for sickness had undertaken him, and that is the greatest pain a prisoner may have. For all the while a prisoner may have his health of body, he may endure under the mercy of God, and in hope of good deliverance; but when sickness toucheth a prisoner's body, then may a prisoner say all wealth is him bereft, and then he hath cause to wail and to weep. And so did Sir Tristram when sickness had undertaken him, for then he took such sorrow that he had almost slain himself.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How king Mark was sorry for the good renown of Sir Tristram: some of king Aribur's knights justed with knights of Cornwall.

Now will we speak, and leave Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan in prison, and speak we of other knights that sought after Sir Tristram many divers parts of this land. And some went into Cornwall, and by adventure Sir Gaheris, nephew unto king Arthur, came unto king Mark, and there he was well received, and sat at king Mark's own table and eat of his own mess. Then king Mark asked Sir Gaheris what tidings there were in the realm of Logris. Sir, said Sir Gaheris, the king reigneth as a noble knight, and now but late there was a great justs and tournament as ever I saw any in the realm of Logris, and the most noble knights were at that justs. But there was one knight that did marvellously three days, and he bare a black shield, and of all knights that ever I saw he proved the best knight. Then said king Mark, That was Sir Launcelot, or Sir Palamides the Paynim. Not so, said Sir Gaheris, for both Sir Launcelot and Sir Palamides were on the contrary part against the knight with the black shield. Then it was Sir Tristram, said the king, Yea, said Sir Gaheris. And therewith the king smote down his head, and in his heart he feared sore that Sir Tristram should get him such worship in the realm of
Logris, where through that he himself should not be able to withstand him. Thus Sir Gaheris had great cheer with king Mark, and with queen La Beale Isoud, the which was glad of Sir Gaheris' words; for well she wist by his deeds and manners that it was Sir Tristram. And then the king made a feast royal, and unto that feast came Sir Uwayne le Fise de Roy Ureine, and some folk called him Uwayne le Blanche Mains. And this Sir Uwayne challenged all the knights of Cornwall. Then was the king wood wroth that he had no knights to answer him. Then Sir Andre, nephew unto king Mark, leapt up and said, I will encounter with Sir Uwayne. Then he went and armed him, and horsed him in the best manner. And there Sir Uwayne met with Sir Andre and smote him down, that he swooned on the earth. Then was king Mark sorry and wroth out of measure that he had no knight to revenge his nephew Sir Andre. So the king called unto him Sir Dinas the seneschal, and prayed him for his sake to take upon him to just with Sir Uwayne. Sir, said Sir Dinas, I am full loth to have ado with any knight of the Round Table. Yet, said the king, for my love take upon thee to just. So Sir Dinas made him ready, and anon they encountered together with great spears, but Sir Dinas was overthrown, horse and man, a great fall. Who was wroth but king Mark? Alas, he said, have I no knight that will encounter with yonder knight. Sir, said Sir Gaheris, for your sake I will just. So Sir Gaheris made him ready, and when he was armed he rode into the field. And when Sir Uwayne saw Sir Gaheris' shield, he rode unto him and said, Sir, ye do not your part; for, sir, the first time ye were made knight of the Round Table ye swear that ye should not have ado with your fellowship wittingly. And pardy Sir Gaheris, ye knew me well enough by my shield, and so do I know you by your shield, and though ye would break your oath I would not break mine, for there is not one here, nor ye, that shall think I am afraid of you, but I durst right well have ado with you, but we be sisters' sons. Then was Sir Gaheris ashamed. And so there-withal every knight went his way, and Sir Uwayne rode into the country. Then king Mark armed him and took his horse and his spear, with a squire with him. And then he rode afore Sir Uwayne, and suddenly at a gap he ran upon him as he that was not ware of him, and there he smote him almost through the body, and there left him. So within a while there came Sir Kay, and found Sir Uwayne, and asked him how he was hurt. I wot not, said Sir Uwayne, why, nor wherefore, but by treason I am sure I gat this hurt, for here came a knight suddenly upon me or that I was ware, and suddenly hurt me. Then there was come Sir Andre to seek king Mark. Thou traitor knight, said Sir Kay, and I wist it were thou that thus traitourly hast hurt this noble knight, thou shouldst never pass my hands. Sir, said Sir Andre, I did never hurt him, and that I will report me to himself. Fie on you, false knights, said Sir Kay, for ye of Cornwall are nought worth. So Sir Kay made carry Sir Uwayne to the abbey of Cornwall and there he was healed. And then Sir Gaheris took his leave of king Mark. But or he departed he said, Sir king, ye did a foul shame unto you and your court when ye banished Sir Tristram out of this country, for ye needed not to have doubted no knight and he had been here. And so he departed.

CHAP. XXXIX.
Of the treason of king Mark, and how Sir Gaheris smote him down and Andre his cousin.

Then there came Sir Kay the seneschal unto king Mark, and there he had good cheer shewing outward. Now fair lords, said he, will ye prove any adventures in the forest of Morris, in the which I know well is as hard an adventure as I know any. Sir, said Sir Kay, I will prove it. And Sir Gaheris said he would
l for king Mark was ever full
1. And therewithal Sir Ga-
terted and rode his way. And
me way that Sir Kay should
d him down to rest, charging
to wait upon Sir Kay,—and
when he cometh. So within a
Kay came riding that way.
Sir Gaheris took his horse
him, and said, Sir Kay, ye are
t ride at the request of king
he dealeth all with treason.
Sir Kay, I require you let us
adventure. I shall not fail
Sir Gaheris. And so they
time till a lake that was that
and the perilous lake, and there
under the shawe of the wood.
while king Mark within the
Tintagil avoided all his barons,
ther save such as were privy
were all avoided out of his
And then he let call his
Sir Andre, and had arm him
him lightly, and by that time
midnight. And so king Mark
black, horse and all. And
pry postron they two issued
their varlets with them, and
they came to that lake. Then
espied them first, and gat his
uroffered to just. And king
against him, and smote each
hard, for the moon shone as
day. And there at that justs
horse fell down, for his horse
big as the king's horse was,
Kay's horse bruised him full
then Sir Gaheris was wroth that
had a fall. Then he cried,
it thou fast in, thy saddle, for
venge my fellow. Then kind
afraid of Sir Gaheris, and so
will king Mark rode against
Sir Gaheris gave him such a
it he fell down. So then forth-
Gaheris ran unto Sir Andre,
him from his horse quite that
smote in the earth and nigh
his neck. And therewith Sir
light, and gat up Sir Kay.
they went both on foot to
bad them yield them and tell
their names, or else they should die.
Then with great pain Sir Andre spake
first and said, It is king Mark of Corn-
wall, therefore beware what ye do, and
I am Sir Andre his cousin. Fie on you
both, said Sir Gaheris, for a false tra-
ior, and false treason hast thou wrought
and he both, under the feigned cheer that
ye made us. It were pity, said Sir Ga-
heris, that thou shouldest live any longer.
Save my life, said king Mark, and I will
make amends; and consider that I am a
king anointed. It were the more shame,
said Sir Gaheris, to save thy life; thou
art a king anointed with crism, and
therefore thou shouldest hold with all
men of worship; and therefore thou art
worthy to die. With that he lashed at
king Mark without saying any more;
and he covered him with his shield, and
defended him as he might. And then
Sir Kay lashed at Sir Andre. And
therewithal king Mark yielded him unto
Sir Gaheris, and then he kneeled down,
and made his oath upon the cross of the
sword that never while he lived he
would be against errant knights. And
also he sware to be good friend unto
Sir Tristram, if ever he came into Corn-
wall. By then Sir Andre was on the
earth, and Sir Kay would have slain
him. Let be, said Sir Gaheris, slay him
not I pray you. It were pity, said Sir
Kay, that he should live any longer, for
this is nigh cousin unto Sir Tristram,
and ever he hath been a traitor unto
him, and by him he was exiled out of
Cornwall, and therefore I will slay him,
said Sir Kay. Ye shall not, said Sir Ga-
heris; sithen I have given the king his
life, I pray you give him his life. And
therewithal Sir Kay let him go. And so
Sir Kay and Sir Gaheris rode forth their
way unto Dinas the seneschal, for be-
cause they heard say that he loved well
Sir Tristram. So they reposed them
there. And soon after they rode unto
the realm of Logris. And so within a
little while they met with Sir Laun-
celot, that had always dame Bragwaine
with him, to that intent he wend to have met
sooner with Sir Tristram, and Sir Laun-
celot asked what tidings in Cornwall,
and whether they heard of Sir Tristram or not. Sir Kay and Sir Gaheris answered and said that they heard not of him. Then they told Sir Launcelot word by word of their adventure. Then Sir Launcelot smiled, and said, Hard it is to take out of the flesh that is bred in the bone. And so made them merry together.

CHAP. XL.

How after that Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan had been long in prison they were delivered.

Now leave we off this tale and speak we of Sir Dinas that loved a lady within the castle, and she loved another knight better than him. And so when Sir Dinas went out on hunting she slipped down by a towel, and took with her two bracethes, and so went to the knight that she loved. And when Sir Dinas came home and missed his lady, and his bracethes, then was he more wroth for his bracethes than for the lady. So then he rode after the knight that had his lady, and bad him turn and just. So Sir Dinas smote him down, that with the fall he brake his leg and his arm. And then his lady cried Sir Dinas mercy, and said she would love him better than ever she did. Nay, said Sir Dinas, I shall never trust them that once betrayed me, and therefore as ye have begun so end, for I will never meddle with you. And so Sir Dinas departed and took his bracethes with him, and so rode to his castle.

Now will we turn unto Sir Launcelot, that was right heavy that he could never hear no tidings of Sir Tristram, for all this while he was in prison with Sir Darras, Palamides, and Dinadan. Then dame Bragwaine took her leave to go into Cornwall, and Sir Launcelot, Sir Kay, and Sir Gaheris rode to seek Sir Tristram in the country of Surluse. Now speaketh this tale of Sir Tristram and of his two fellows, for every day Sir Palamides brawled and said language against Sir Tristram. I marvel, said Sir Dinadan, of thee Sir Palamides: and thou hadst Sir Tristram here thou wouldst do him no harm; for and a wolf and a sheep were together in prison, the wolf would suffer the sheep to be in peace. And wit thou well, said Sir Dinadan, this same is Sir Tristram at a word, and now mayest thou do thy best with him, and let see now how ye can shift it with your hands. Then was Sir Palamides abashed and said little. Sir Palamides, said Sir Tristram, I have heard much of your ill-will against me, but I will not meddle with you as at this time by my will, because I dread the lord of this place that hath us in governance, for and I dread him more than I do then, soon should it be shift. So they appeased themselves. Right so came in a damsel and said, Knights, be of good cheer, for ye are sure of your lives, and that I heard say my lord Sir Darras. Then were they glad all three, for daily they wend they should have died. Then soon after this Sir Tristram fell sick that he wend to have died. Then Sir Dinadan wept, and so did Sir Palamides under them both making great sorrow. So a damsel came into them, and found them mourning. Then she went to Sir Darras and told him how that mighty knight that bare the black shield was likely to die. That shall not be, said Sir Darras, for God defend when any knights come to me for succour that I should suffer them to die within my prison. Therefore, said Sir Darras to the damsel, fetch that knight and his fellows afore me. And then anon when Sir Darras saw Sir Tristram afore him, he said, Sir knight, me repenteth of thy sickness, for thou art called a full noble knight, and so it seemeth by thee. And wit ye well, it shall never be said that Sir Darras shall destroy such a noble knight as thou art in prison, howbeit that thou hast slain three of my sons, whereby I was greatly aggrieved. But now shalt thou go and thy fellows, and your harness and horses have been fair and clean kept, and ye shall go where it liketh you, upon this covenant, that
OF SIR BREUSE SANCE PITE.

... said Sir Dinadan, and because of honour of all women I will do my part. With this came Sir Breuse, and when he saw a knight with his lady, he was wood wroth. And then he said, Sir knight, keep thee from me. So they hurled together as thunder, and either smote other passing sore. But Sir Dinadan put him through the shoulder a grievous wound, and or ever Sir Dinadan might turn him, Sir Breuse was gone and fled. Then the lady prayed him to bring her to a castle there beside but four mile thence. And so Sir Dinadan brought her there, and she was welcome, for the lord of that castle was her uncle. And so Sir Dinadan rode his way upon his adventure.

Now turn we this tale unto Sir Tristram, that by adventure he came to a castle to ask lodging, wherein was queen Morgan le Fay. And so when Sir Tristram was let into that castle he had good cheer all that night. And upon the morn when he would have departed, the queen said, Wit ye well ye shall not depart lightly, for ye are here as a prisoner. God defend, said Sir Tristram, for I was but late a prisoner. Fair knight, said the queen, ye shall abide with me till that I wit what ye are, and from whence ye come. And ever the queen would set Sir Tristram on her side, and her paramour on the other side, and ever queen Morgan would behold Sir Tristram, and thereat the knight was jealous, and was in will suddenly to have run upon Sir Tristram with a sword, but he left it for shame. Then the queen said to Sir Tristram, Tell me thy name, and I shall suffer you to depart when you will. Upon that covenant I tell you my name is Sir Tristram de Liones. Ah, said Morgan le Fay, and I had wist that thou shouldst not have departed so soon as thou shalt: but sithen I have made a promise I will hold it, with that thou wilt promise me to bear upon thee a shield that I shall deliver thee, unto the castle of the Hard Rock, where king Arthur hath cried a great tournament, and there I pray you that ye will be,

CHAP. XLI.

Dinadan rescued a lady from use Sance Pité, and bow Sir n received a shield of Morgan
and to do for me as much deeds of arms as ye may do. For that at that Castle of Maidens, Sir Tristram, ye did marvellous deeds of arms as ever I heard knight do. Madam, said Sir Tristram, let me see the shield that I shall bear. So the shield was brought forth, and the shield was goldish, with a king and a queen therein painted, and a knight standing above them, with one foot upon the king's head, and the other upon the queen's. Madam, said Sir Tristram, this is a fair shield and a mighty; but what signifieth this king and this queen and that knight standing upon both their heads. I shall tell you, said Morgan le Fay, it signifieth king Arthur and queen Guenever, and a knight that holdeth them both in bondage and servage. Who is that knight? said Sir Tristram. That shall ye not wit as at this time, said the queen. But, as the French book saith, queen Morgan loved Sir Launcelot best, and ever she desired him, and he would never love her, nor do nothing at her request, and therefore she held many knights together for to have taken him by strength. And because she deemed that Sir Launcelot loved queen Guenever, and she him again, therefore queen Morgan le Fay ordained that shield to put Sir Launcelot to a rebuke, to that intent that king Arthur might understand the love between them. Then Sir Tristram took that shield and promised her to bear it at the tournament at the castle of the Hard Rock. But Sir Tristram knew not that shield was ordained against Sir Launcelot, but afterward he knew it.

CHAP. XLII.

How Sir Tristram took with him the shield, and also how he slew the paramour of Morgan le Fay.

So then Sir Tristram took his leave of the queen, and took the shield with him. Then came the knight that held queen Morgan le Fay, his name was Sir Hemison, and he made him ready to follow Sir Tristram. Fair friend, said Morgan, ride not after that knight, for ye shall win no worship of him on him, coward, said Sir Hemison. I wist never good knight come to Cornwall, but if it were Sir Tristram or Liones. What and that be he she. Nay, nay, said he, he is with Beale Isoud, and this is but a knight. Alas my fair friend, ye find him the best knight that ever met withal, for I know him better ye do. For your sake, said Sir Tristram, I shall slay him. Ah, fairest said the queen, me repenteth that will follow that knight, for I fear sore of your again coming. With this knight rode his way wood wise, and he rode after Sir Tristram as he had been chased with knout. When Sir Tristram heard a knight after him so fast, he returned and saw a knight coming against him. And when he came nigh to Sir Tristram, he cried on high, Sir knight, thee from me. Then they rushed together as it had been thunder, and Hemison bruised his spear upon Tristram, but his harness was so strong that he might not hurt him. And Tristram smote him harder, and him through the body, and he fell his horse croup. Then Sir Tristram turned to have done, more will sword, but he saw so much blood from him, that him seemed he likely to die: and so he departed from him and came to a fair manor old knight, and there Sir Tristram lodged.

CHAP. XLIII.

How Morgan le Fay buried her paramour and bow Sir Tristram praised Sir Launcelot and his kin.

Now leave we to speak of Sir Tristram, and speak we of the knight was wounded to the death. The varlet alight, and took off his helm then he asked his master whether were any life in him. There is life, said the knight, but it is but and therefore leap thou up behind when thou hast holpen me up; and me fast that I fall not, and brin
Morgan le Fay, for deep of death draw to my heart, say not live, for I would fain die her or I died. For else my be in great peril and I die. great pain his vallet brought the castle, and there Sir Hemi own dead. When Morgan le him dead, she made great sor of reason. And then she let him unto his shirt, and so she put into a tomb. And about she let write: Here lieth Sir slain by the hands of Sir Tris- lines. Now turn we unto Sir that asked the knight, his host, late any knights adventurous, d, the last night here lodged Sir Ector de Maris and a damsel and that damsel told me that one of the best knights of the that is not so, said Sir Tris I know four better knights of good; and the first is Sir Laun- ake, call him the best knight; Sirs de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis, Sir G: Ganis, and Sir Galaheris. Nay, host, Sir Gawaine is a better an he. That is not so, said um, for I have met with them I felt Sir Galaheris for the right; and Sir Lamorak, I call od as any of them, except Sir . Why name ye not Sir Tris- his host, for I account him as any of them. I know not Sir said Tristram. Thus they jested as long as them list, went to rest. And on the morn ram departed and took his is host, and rode towards the re, and none adventure had Sir but that, and so he rested not to the castle, where he saw ed tents.

CHAP. XLIV.

Tristram at a tournament bore d that Morgan le Fay bad dem. The king of Scots and the king held against king Arthur's knights, and there began a great meddle. So came in Sir Tristram and did marvellous deeds of arms, for there he smote down many knights. And ever he was afore king Arthur with that shield. And when king Arthur saw that shield, he marvelled greatly in what intent it was made. But queen Guenever deemed as it was, wherefore she was heavy. Then was there a damsel of queen Mor- gan in a chamber by king Arthur, and when she heard king Arthur speak of that shield, then she spake openly unto king Arthur, Sir king, wit ye well this shield was ordained for you, to warn you of your Shame and dishonour, and that longeth to you and to your queen. And then anon the damsel piked her away privily, that no man wist where she was become. Then was king Ar- thur sad and wroth, and asked from whence came that damsel. There was not one that knew her, nor wist where she was become. Then queen Guenever called to her Sir Ector de Maris, and there she made her complaint to him, and said, I wot well this shield was made by Morgan le Fay, in despite of me and Sir Launcelot, wherefore I dread sore lest I should be destroyed. And ever the king beheld Sir Tristram that did so marvellous deeds of arms, that he wondered sore what knight he might be, and well he wist it was not Sir Launcelot. And it was told him that Sir Tristram was in Petit Britain with Isoud la Blanche Mains, for he deemed, and he had been in the realm of Logris, Sir Launcelot or some of his fellows that were in the quest of Sir Tristram, that they should have found him or that time. So king Arthur had marvel what knight he might be. And ever Sir Arthur's eye was on that shield. All that espied the queen, and that made her sore afeard. Then ever Sir Tris- tram smote down knights, wonderly to behold, what upon the right hand and upon the left hand, that uneth no knight might withstand him. And the king of Scots and the king of Ireland began to withdraw them. When Arthur espied that, he thought that that knight
with the strange shield should not escape him. Then he called unto him Sir Uwayne la Blanche Mains, and bade him arm him and make him ready. So anon king Arthur and Sir Uwayne dressed them before Sir Tristram, and required him to tell them where he had that shield. Sir, he said, I had it of quean Morgan le Fay, sister unto king Arthur.

Here endeth this history of this book, for it is the firste book of sire Tristram de Lyones, and the second book of sir Tristram foloweth.

Here begynneth the second book of sire Tristram. Prome spee Tristram smote doune kyng Arthur and sir Uwayne, by cause he wold not telle hem wherfor that shilde was made. But to say the sothe sire Tristram coude not telle the cause, for he knewe it not.

The Tenth Book.

CHAP. I.

How Sir Tristram justed and smote down king Arthur, because he told him not the cause why he bare that shield.

And if so be ye can describe what ye bear, ye are worthy to bear the arms. As for that, said Sir Tristram, I will answer you. This shield was given me, not desired, of quean Morgan le Fay. And as for me, I cannot describe these arms, for it is no point of my charge, and yet I trust to bear them with worship. Truly, said king Arthur, ye ought to bear none arms but if ye wist what ye bear. But I pray you tell me your name. To what intent? said Sir Tristram. For I would wit, said king Arthur. Sir, ye shall not wit as at this time. Then shall ye and I do battle together, said king Arthur. Why, said Sir Tristram, will ye do battle with me but if I tell you my name? and that little needeth you and ye were a man of worship, for ye have seen me this day have had great travail; and therefore ye are a villainous knight to ask battle of me, considering my great travail, howbeit I will not fail you, and have ye no doubt that I fear not you; though ye think ye have me at a great advantage yet shall I right well endure you. And therewithal king Arthur dressed his shield and his spear, and Sir Tristram against him, and they came so eagerly together. And there king Arthur brake his spear all to pieces upon Sir Tristram's shield. But Sir Tristram hit king Arthur again, that horse and man fell to the earth. And there was king Arthur wounded on the left side a great wound and a perilous. Then when Sir Uwayne saw his lord Arthur lie on the ground sore wounded he was passing heavy. And then he dressed his shield and spear, and cried aloud unto Sir Tristram, and said, Knight, defend thee. So they came together as thunder, and Sir Uwayne brake his spear all to pieces upon Sir Tristram's shield. And Sir Tristram smote him harder and sore, with such a might that he bare him clean out of his saddle to the earth.
at Sir Tristram turned about 1. Fair knights, I had no need with you, for I have had enough this day. Then arose Arthur to Sir Uwaine, and said Tristram, We have as we have 1, for through our pride we de-battle of you, and yet we knew ur name. Nevertheless, said Sir , by saint cross he is a strong at mine advice as any is now

Sir Tristram departed, and in place he asked and demanded r Launcelot, but in no place he ot hear of him whether he were on live, wherefore Sir Tristram great sole and sorrow. So Sir n rode by a forest, and then was of a fair tower by a marsh on e side, and on that other side a shadow. And there he saw ten fighting together. And ever rer he came he saw how ther eone knight did battle against sights, and that one knight did velously that Sir Tristram had order that ever one knight might great deeds of arms. And then a little while he had slain half orses and unhorsed them, and orses ran in the fields and forest. Sir Tristram had so great pity ut one knight that endured so un, and ever he thought it should Palamides by his shield. And so unto the knights and cried unto nd bad them cease of their battle, 'did themselves great shame, so nights to fight with one. Then x the master of those knights, he was called Breuse Sance Pité, as at that time the most mis-sest knight living, and said thus: iht, what have ye ado with us to; and therefore and ye be wise on your way as ye came, for this shall not escape us. That were id Sir Tristram, that so good a as he is should be slain so cow- And therefore I warn you I will him with all my puissance.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Tristram saved Sir Palamides' life, and how they promised to fight together within a fortnight.

So Sir Tristram alight off his horse because they were on foot, that they should not slay his horse, and then dressed his shield with his sword in his hand: and he smote on the right hand and on the left hand passing sore, that well nigh at every stroke he strike down a knight. And when they espied his strokes they fled all with Breuse Sance Pité unto the tower: and Sir Tristram followed fast after with his sword in his hand. But they escaped into the tower and shut Sir Tristram without the gate. And when Sir Tris-tam saw this he returned back unto Sir Palamides, and found him sitting under a tree sore wounded. Ah, fair knight, said Sir Tristram, well be ye found. Gramercy, said Sir Palamides, of your great goodness, for ye have rescued me of my life, and saved me from my death. What is your name? said Sir Tristram. He said, my name is Sir Palamides. Oh, said Sir Tristram, thou hast a fair grace of me this day that I should rescue thee, and thou art the man in the world that I most hate. But now make thee ready, for I will do battle with thee. What is your name? said Sir Palamides. My name is Sir Tristram, your mortal enemy. It may be so, said Sir Palamides, but ye have done overmuch for me this day that I should fight with you, for inasmuch as ye have saved my life, it will be no worship for you to have ado with me, for ye are fresh, and I am wounded sore. And therefore ye will needs have ado with me, assign me a day, and then I shall meet with you without fail. Ye say well, said Sir Tristram. Now, I assign you to meet me in the meadow by the river of Camelot, where Merlin set the peron. So they were agreed. Then Sir Tris-tram asked Sir Palamides why the ten knights did battle with him. For this cause, said Sir Palamides, as I rode on mine adventures in a forest here
beside, I espied where lay a dead knight, and a lady weeping beside him. And when I saw her making such dole, I asked her who slew her lord? Sir, she said, the falsest knight of the world now living: and he is the most villain that ever man heard speak of, and his name is Sir Breuse Sance Pité. Then for pity I made the damsel to leap on her palfrey, and I promised her to be her warrant, and to help her to inter her lord. And so, suddenly, as I came riding by this tower, there came out Sir Breuse Sance Pité, and suddenly he strake me from my horse. And then or I might recover my horse, this Sir Breuse slew the damsel. And so I took my horse again, and I was sore ashamed, and so began the meddle betwixt us. And this is the cause wherefore we did this battle. Well, said Sir Tristram, now I understand the manner of your battle. But in any wise have remembrance of your promise that ye have made with me to do battle with me this day fortnight. I shall not fail you, said Sir Palamides. Well, said Sir Tristram, as at this time I will not fail you till that ye be out of the danger of your enemies. So they mounted upon their horses, and rode together unto that forest, and there they found a fair well, with clear water bubbling. Fair sir, said Sir Tristram, to drink of that water have I courage. And then they alight off their horses. And then were they ware by them where stood a great horse tied to a tree, and ever he neighed. And then were they ware of a fair knight armed under a tree, lacking no piece of harness, save his helm lay under his head. Truly, said Sir Tristram, yonder lieth a well-faring knight, what is best to do? Awake him, said Sir Palamides. So Sir Tristram wakened him with the butt of his spear. And so the knight arose up hastily, and put his helm upon his head, and gat a great spear in his hand, and without any more words he hurled unto Sir Tristram, and smote him clean from his saddle to the earth, and hurt him on the left side, that Sir Tristram lay in great peril. Then he galloped farther, and set his course, and hurling upon Sir Palamides, and he strake him a part through the that he fell from his horse to the floor. And then this strange knight left there, and took his way through the wood. With this Sir Palamides Sir Tristram were on foot, and gat horses again, and either asked counsel of other what was best to do. For, head, said Sir Tristram, I will for this strong knight that thus hath shamed us. Well, said Sir Palamides, and repose me hereby with a friend of mine. Beware, said Sir Tristram unto the wood, that ye fail not that day that we have set with me to do battle, for if ye deem, ye will not hold your day. I am much bigger than ye. And, that, said Sir Palamides, be it as may, for I fear you not: for and ye are not sick nor prisoner I will not fail you. But I have cause for to have more cause of you that ye will not meet with. For ye ride after yonder strong knight, and if ye meet with him it is an adventure and ever ye escape his hand? Right so Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides departed, and either took their horses diverse.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Tristram sought a strong knight that bad smitten him down, and other knights of the Round Table.

So Sir Tristram rode long after a strong knight. And at the last he came to a place where lay a lady overthrow a noble knight. Fair lady, said Sir Tristram, who hath slain your lord? Sir, said she, there came a knight riding as my lord and I rested us here, and asked him whence he was, and my lord said he was at Arthur's court. Therefore, said Sir Tristram, I will just with him, and for I hate all these that be of Arthur's court. And my lord that lieth dead mounted upon his horse, an strong knight and my lord encounter together, and there he smote my Lord through out with his spear. And he hath brought me in great wo damage. That me repented, sai
OF THE KNIGHT WITH THE COVERED SHIELD.

of your great anger; and it tell me your husband’s name? me, his name was Galardoun, I have proved a good knight. ed Sir Tristram from that ady, and had much evil lodg- 1 on the third day Sir Tris- with Sir Gawaine and with eris in a forest at a lodge; were sore wounded. Then m asked Sir Gawaine and Sir if they met with such a th such a cognisance, with shield. Fair sir, said these uch a knight met with us to damage. And first he smote ellow Sir Bleoberis, and sore him because he bad me I have ado with him, for why, or strong for me. That strong ok his words at scorn, and d it for mockery. And then together, and so he hurt my ad when he had done so, I for shame but I must just And at the first course, he down and my horse to the d there he had almost slain om us he took his horse and and in an evil time we met Fair knights, said Sir Tris- e met with me and with an at that hight Palamides, and us both down with one spear, as right sore. By my faith, Gawaine, by my counsel ye him pass and seek him no r at the next feast of the able upon pain of my head ad him there. By my faith, ristram, I shall never rest till him. And then Sir Gawaine his name. Then he said, My ir Tristram. And so either their names. And then de- Tristram, and rode his way. rtune in a meadow Sir Tris- with Sir Kay the seneschal n. What tidings with you, ristram.—with you knights? said these knights. Why so? ristram, I pray you tell me, o seek a knight. What cog- nissance beareth he? said Sir Kay. He beareth, said Sir Tristram, a covered shield close with a cloth. By my head, said Sir Kay, that is the same knight that met with us, for this night we were lodged within a widow’s house, and there was that knight lodged. And when he wist we were of Arthur’s court, he spake great villainy by the king, and specially by the queen Gue- never. And then on the morrow we waged battle with him for that cause. And at the first recommencer, said Sir Kay, he smote me down from my horse, and hurt me passing sore. And when my fellow Sir Dinadan saw me smitten down and hurt, he would not revenge me, but fled from me. And thus is he departed. And then Sir Tristram re- quired them to tell him their names, and so either told other their names. And so Sir Tristram departed from Sir Kay and from Sir Dinadan, and so he passed through a great forest into a plain, till he was ware of a priory, and there he reposed him with a good man six days.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Tristram smote down Sir Sagamor le Desirous, and Sir Dodinas le Savage.

And then he sent his man that hight Gouvernail, and commanded him to go to a city there by to fetch him new harness; for it was long time afore that that Sir Tristram had been refreshed; his harness was bruised and broken. And when Gouvernail his servant was come with his apparel, he took his leave at the widow, and mounted upon his horse, and rode his way early on the morn. And, by sudden adventure Sir Tristram met with Sir Sagamor le Desirous, and with Sir Dodinas le Savage. And these two knights met with Sir Tristram and questioned with him, and asked him if he would just with them. Fair knights, said Sir Tris- tram, with a good will I would just with you, but I have promised at a day set near hand to do battle with a strong knight. And therefore I am loth to
have ado with you, for and it misfortuned me here to be hurt, I should not be able to do my battle which I promised. As for that, said Sir Sagramor, maugre your head ye shall just with us or ye pass from us. Well, said Sir Tristram, if ye enforce me thereto, I must do what I may. And then they dressed their shields, and came running together with great ire. But through Sir Tristram’s great force, he strake Sir Sagramor from his horse. Then he hurled his horse farther, and said to Sir Dodinas, Knight, make thee ready. And so through fine force Sir Tristram strake Dodinas from his horse. And when he saw them lie on the earth he took his bridle, and rode forth on his way, and his man Gouvernail with him. Anon as Sir Tristram was past, Sir Sagramor and Sir Dodinas gat again their horses, and mounted up lightly, and followed after Sir Tristram. And when Sir Tristram saw them come so fast after him, he returned with his horse to them, and asked them what they would. It is not long ago since I smote you down to the earth at your own request and desire: I would have ridden by you but ye would not suffer me, and now me seemeth ye would do more battle with me. That is truth, said Sir Sagramor and Sir Dodinas, for we will be revenged of the despite that ye have done to us. Fair knights, said Sir Tristram, that shall little need you, for all that I did to ye ye caused it, wherefore I require you of your knighthood leave me as at this time, for I am sure and I do battle with you I shall not escape without great hurts, and as I suppose ye shall not escape all lotless, And this is the cause why I am so loth to have ado with you. For I must fight within these three days with a good knight and as valiant as any is now living, and if I be hurt I shall not be able to do battle with him. What knight is that, said Sir Sagramor, that ye shall fight withal? Sir, said he, it is a good knight called Sir Palamides. By my head, said Sir Sagramor and Sir Dodinas, ye have cause to dread him, for ye shall find him a good knight and a valiant. And ye shall have ado with him we bear you as at this time, and should not escape us lightly. knight, said Sir Sagramor, tell me. Sir, said he, my name is Tram de Lion. Ah, said Sir and Sir Dodinas, well be ye for much worship have we heard And then either took leave of other departed on their way.

CHAP. V.
How Sir Tristram met at the pre
Sir Launcelot, and how they got together unknown.

Then departed Sir Tristram a straight unto Camelot, to that that Merlin had made tofore, where Lanceor, that was the king’s Ireland, was slain by the hands of And in that same place was lady Columbe slain, that was lady Sir Lanceor, for after he was down he took his sword and thrust it in her body. And by the craft of he made to inter this knight Lanceor and his lady Columbe upon stone. And at that time Merlin espied that in that same place fight two the best knights that were in Arthur’s days, and they were lovers. So when Sir Tristram came to the tomb where Lanceor and he were buried, he looked about him Sir Palamides. Then was he was seemly knight came riding again all in white, with a covered When he came nigh Sir Tristram he said on high, Ye be welcome knight, and well and truly I holden your promise. And then dressed their shields and spears came together with all their men and their horses. And they met so that both their horses and fell to the earth. And as fast they might they avoided their horses and put their shields before them, a strake together with bright sw men that were of might, and
HOW SIR TRISTRAM CAME TO THE COURT. 243

. other wonderly sore, that they
. out upon the grass. And
. two fought the space of four
. at never one would speak to
. word, and of their harness
. hewn off many pieces. Oh,
. vermail, I have marvel greatly
. strokes my master hath given
. master. By my head, said
. acelot’s servant, your master
. given so many but your mas-
. received as many or more. Oh,
. vermail, it is too much for Sir
. es to suffer, or Sir Launcelot,
. ity it were that either of these
. rights should destroy other’s
. So they stood and wept both,
. e great dole when they saw the
. word over covered with blood
. bodies. Then at the last spake
. acelot and said: Knight, thou
. wonderly well as ever I saw
. therefor and it please you tell me
. Sir, said Sir Tristram, that
. th to tell any man my name.
. said Sir Launcelot, and I were
. I was never loth to tell my
. it is well said, quoth Sir Tris-
. vian I require you to tell me your
. Fair knight, he said, my name
. uncetot du Lake. Alas, said
. ram, what have I done, for ye
. man in the world that I love
. air knight, said Sir Launcelot,
. our name. Truly, said he, my
. Sir Tristram de Liones. Oh,
. Launcelot, what adventure is
. me! And therewith Sir Laun-
. eled down and yielded him up
. d. And therewithal Sir Tris-
. eled adown, and yielded him
. ord. And so either gave other
. e. And then they both forth-
. to the stone, and set them
. on it, and took off their helms
. them, and either kissed other
. ed times. And then anon after
. k their helms and rode to
. And there they met with
. une and with Sir Gaheris that
. e promise to Arthur never to
. ain to the court till they had
. Sir Tristram with them.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Launcelot brought Sir Tristram to the court, and of the great joy that the king and other made for the coming of Sir Tristram.

Return again, said Sir Launcelot, for your quest is done, for I have met with Sir Tristram: lo here is his own person. Then was Sir Gawaine glad, and said to Sir Tristram, Ye are welcome, for now have ye eased me greatly of my labour. For what cause, said Sir Gawaine, came ye into this court? Fair sir, said Sir Tristram, I came into this country because of Sir Palamides, for he and I had assigned at this day to have done battle together at the peron, and I marvel I hear not of him. And thus by adventure my lord Sir Launcelot and I met together. With this came king Arthur. And when he wist that there was Sir Tristram, then he ran unto him and took him by the hand and said, Sir Tristram, ye be as welcome as any knight that ever came to this court. And when the king had heard how Sir Launcelot and he had foughten, and either had wounded other wonderly sore, then the king made great dole. Then Sir Tristram told the king how he came thither for to have had ado with Sir Palamides. And then he told the king how he had rescued him from the nine knights and Breuse Sance Pité, and how he found a knight lying by a well, and that knight smote down Sir Palamides and me, but his shield was covered with a cloth. So Sir Palamides left me, and I followed after that knight. And in many places I found where he had slain knights, and forjusted many. By my head, said Sir Gawaine, that same knight smote me down and Sir Bleoberis, and hurt us sore both, he with the covered shield. Ah, said Sir Kay, that knight smote me adown and hurt me passing sore, and fain would I have known him, but I might not. Mercy, said Arthur, what knight was that with the covered shield? I know not, said Sir Tristram; and so said they all. Now, said king
Arthur, then wot I, for it is Sir Launcelot. Then they all looked upon Sir Launcelot and said, Ye have beguiled us with your covered shield. It is not the first time, said Arthur, he hath done so. My lord, said Sir Launcelot, truly wit ye well I was the same knight that bare the covered shield. And because I would not be known that I was of your court I said no worship of your house. That is truth, said Sir Gawaine, Sir Kay, and Sir Bleoberis. Then king Arthur took Sir Tristram by the hand, and went to the Table Round. Then came queen Guenever and many ladies with her, and all the ladies said at one voice, Welcome, Sir Tristram. Welcome, said the damsel: Welcome, said the knights: Welcome, said Arthur, for one of the best knights and the gentlest of the world, and the man of most worship. For of all manner of hunting thou bearest the prize, and of all measures of blowing thou art the beginning, and of all the terms of hunting and hawking ye are the beginner: of all instruments of music ye are the best; therefore, gentle knight, said Arthur, ye are welcome to this court. And also I pray you, said Arthur, grant me a boon. It shall be at your commandment, said Tristram. Well, said Arthur, I will desire of you that ye will abide in my court. Sir, said Sir Tristram, thereto is me loth, for I have ado in many countries. Not so, said Arthur, ye have promised it me, ye may not say nay. Sir, said Sir Tristram, I will as ye will. Then went Arthur unto the sieges about the Round Table, and looked in every siege the which were void that lacked knights. And then the king saw in the siege of Marhaus letters that said, This is the siege of the noble knight Sir Tristram. And then Arthur made Sir Tristram knight of the Table Round with great nobley and great feast as might be thought. For Sir Marhaus was slain afore by the hands of Sir Tristram in an island, and that was well known at that time in the court of Arthur; for this Marhaus was a worthy knight. And for evil deeds that he did unto the country o' wall Sir Tristram and he fough they fought so long tracing and ing till they fell bleeding to the for they were so sore wounded they might not stand for bleeding; Sir Tristram by fortune recovered Sir Marhaus died through the stith the head. So leave we of Sir Tristram and speak we of king Mark.

CHAP. VII.

How for the despite of Sir I
king Mark came with two knight
England, and bow he slew one
knight.

Then king Mark had great de:
the renown of Sir Tristram, and chased him out of Cornwall: y
he nephew unto king Mark, but
great suspicion unto Sir Tristra
cause of his queen, La Beale Isou;
him seemed that there was too
love between them both. So wT
Tristram departed out of Cornwall: England, king Mark heard of the
prowess that Sir Tristram did
the which grieved him sore.
sent on his party men to espy
deeds he did. And the queen
privily on her part spied to know
deeds he had done, for great love
between them twain. So when the
gayers were come home, they to
truth as they had heard, that he
all other knights, but if it we
Launcelot. Then king Mark was
heavy of these tidings, and as g
La Beale Isoud. Then in great
he took with him two good knight
two squires, and disguised himself
took his way into England, to
ent for to slay Sir Tristram. A
of these two knights hight Sir Be
and the other knight was call
Amant. So as they rode, king
asked a knight that he met we
should find king Arthur. He
came to Camelot. Also he asked that
after Sir Tristram, whether he had
him in the court of king Arthur;
you well, said that knight, ye sh
OF KING MARK'S TREASONS.

require thee that thou tell not my name that I am king Mark, whatsoever come of me. As for that, said Sir Amant, I will not discover your name. And so they parted; and Amant and his fellows took the body of Bersules and buried it.

CHAP. VIII.

How king Mark came to a fountain where he found Sir Lamerak complaining for the love of king Lot's wife.

Then king Mark rode till he came to a fountain, and there he rested him, and stood in a doubt whether he would ride to Arthur's court or none, or return again to his country. And as he thus rested him by that fountain, there came by him a knight well armed on horseback, and he alight and tided his horse unto a tree, and set him down by the brink of the fountain, and there he made great languor and dole, and made the dolefullest complaint of love that ever man heard; and all this while was he not ware of king Mark. And this was a great part of his complaint, he cried and wept, saying, O fair queen of Orkney, king Lot's wife, and mother of Sir Gawaine, and to Sir Gaheris, and mother to many other, for thy love I am in great pains. Then king Mark arose, and went near him, and said, Fair knight, ye have made a piteous complaint. Truly, said the knight, it is an hundred part more ruelful than my heart can utter. I require you, said king Mark, tell me your name. Sir, said he, as for my name, I will not hide it from no knight that beareth a shield, and my name is Sir Lamerak de Galis. But when Sir Lamerak heard king Mark speak, then wist he well by his speech that he was a Cornish knight. Sir, said Sir Lamerak, I understand by your tongue ye be of Cornwall, wherein there dwelleth the shamefullest king that is now living, for he is a great enemy to all good knights; and that proveth well, for he hath chased out of that country Sir Tristram, that is the worshipfullest knight that now is living, and all knights speak of him worship,
and for jealousy of his queen he hath chased him out of his country. It is pity, said Sir Lamorak, that ever any such false knight-coward as king Mark is should be matched with such a fair lady and good as La Beale Isoud is, for all the world of him speaketh shame, and of her worship that any queen may have. I have not adoe in this matter, said king Mark, neither nought will I speak thereof. Well said, said Sir Lamorak. Sir, can ye tell me any tidings? I can tell you, said Sir Lamorak, that there shall be a great tournament in haste beside Camelot, at the castle of Jagent. And the king with the hundred knights, and the king of Ireland, as I suppose, make that tournament.

Then there came a knight, that was called Sir Dinadan, and saluted them both. And when he wist that king Mark was a knight of Cornwall, he reproved him for the love of king Mark a thousand fold more than did Sir Lamorak. Then he proffered to just with king Mark. And he was full loth thereto; but Sir Dinadan edged him so, that he justed with Sir Lamorak. And Sir Lamorak smote king Mark so sore that he bare him on his spear end over his horse tail. And then king Mark arose again, and followed after Sir Lamorak. But Sir Dinadan would not just with Sir Lamorak, but he told king Mark that Sir Lamorak was Sir Kay the seneschal. That is not so, said king Mark, for he is much bigger than Sir Kay. And so he followed and overtook him, and bad him abide. What will ye do? said Sir Lamorak. Sir, he said, I will fight with a sword, for ye have shamed me with a spear. And therewith they dashed together with swords, and Sir Lamorak suffered him and forbare him. And king Mark was passing hasty, and smote thick strokes. Sir Lamorak saw he would not stint, and waxed somewhat wroth, and doubled his strokes, for he was one of the noblest knights of the world, and he beat him so on the helm that his head hung nigh on the saddle bow.

When Sir Lamorak saw him he said, Sir knight, what seemeth ye have nigh your fill of mying; it were pity to do you an harm for ye are but a mean therefore I give you leave to go ye list. Gramercy, said king Mark, ye and I be not matches. Th Dinadan mocked king Mark and Ye are not able to match a knight. As for that, said king Mark at the first time that I justed with knight ye refused him. Think it is a shame to me? said Sir Dinan, sir, it is ever worship to a to refuse that thing that he m attend: therefore your worship has much more, to have refused him did: for I warn you plainly he to beat five such as ye and I ye knights of Cornwall are not worship, as other knights are because ye are no men of woot hate all men of worship; for not bred in your country such a knight Sir Tristram.

CHAP. IX.

How king Mark, Sir Lamorak, and Dinadan came to a castle, and bo Mark was known there.

Then they rode forth all to king Mark, Sir Lamorak, and Dinadan, till that they came to a bridge. And at the end thereof a fair tower. Then saw they a on horseback, well armed, bran a spear, crying and proffering him just. Now, said Sir Dinadan un Mark, yonder are two brethren one hight Allein, and that othe Trian, that will just with an passeth this passage. Now profit self, said Dinadan to king Mark ever ye be laid to the earth. The Mark was ashamed, and therefe feuhted his spear, and hurted Trian, and either brake their spee to pieces, and passed through. Then Sir Trian sent king Mark a spear to just more; but in no more.
the castle, all three knights, prayed the lord of the castle
sul. Ye are right welcome, knights of the castle, for the
lord of this castle, the which Tor le Fise Aries. And then
he into a fair court, well re-
And they had passing good
the lieutenant of this castle
at Berluse espied king Mark
tall. Then said Berluse, Sir
now you better than ye ween,
re mine own eyes, and me had
ad I not escaped into a wood;
well for the love of my lord
stle, I will neither hurt you
you, nor none of your fellow-
t wit ye well when ye are past
ng I shall hurt you and I may,
w my father traitourly. But
he love of my lord Sir Tor,
he love of Sir Lamorak the
le knight that here is lodged,
ave none ill lodging. For it
at ever ye should be in the
of good knights, for ye are the
inuous knight or king that is
n on live; for ye are a de-
good knights, and all that ye
 treason.

CHAP. X.
Berluse met with king Mark, and
Sir Dinadan took his part.

was king Mark sore ashamed,
but little again. But when
rak and Sir Dinadan wist
s king Mark they were sorry
owship. So after supper they
odging. So on the morn they
ly, and king Mark and Sir
rode together; and three mile
lodging there met with them
nt, and Sir Berluse was one,
other his two cousins. Sir
aw'king Mark, and then he
high, Traitor, keep thee from
it thou well that I am Berluse.
, said Sir Dinadan, I counsel
ave off at this time, for he is
king Arthur; and because I
have promised to conduct him to my
lord king Arthur, needs must I take a
part with him, howbeit I love not his
condition, and fain I would be from
him. Well Dinadan, said Sir Berluse,
me repenteth that ye will take part
with him, but now do your best. And
then he hurtled to king Mark, and
smote him sore upon the shield that he
bare him clean out of his saddle to the
earth. That saw Sir Dinadan, and he
feutred his spear, and ran to one of
Berluse's fellows, and smote him down
off his saddle. Then Dinadan turned
his horse, and smote the third knight in
the same wise to the earth, for Sir
Dinadan was a good knight on horse-
back. And there began a great battle,
for Berluse and his fellows held them
together strongly on foot. And so
through the great force of Sir Dinadan,
king Mark had Sir Berluse to the earth,
and his two fellows fled; and had not
been Sir Dinadan, king Mark would
have slain him; and so Sir Dinadan
rescued him of his life, for king Mark
was but a murderer. And then they
took their horses and departed, and left
Sir Berluse there sore wounded. Then
king Mark and Sir Dinadan rode forth
a four leagues English till that they
came to a bridge, where hoved a knight
on horseback, armed and ready to just.
Lo, said Sir Dinadan unto king Mark,
yonder hoveth a knight that will just,
for there shall none pass this bridge
but he must just with that knight. It
is well, said king Mark, for this justs
falleth with thee. Sir Dinadan knew
the knight well that he was a noble
knight, and fain he would have justed,
but he had lever king Mark had justed
with him, but by no mean king Mark
would not just. Then Sir Dinadan
might not refuse him in no manner.
And then either dressed their spears
and their shields and smote together,
so that through fine force Sir Dinadan
was smitten to the earth. And lightly
he arose up, and gat his horse, and
required that knight to do battle with
swords. And he answered and said,
Fair knight, as at this time I may not
have ado with you no more; for the custom of this passage is such. Then was Sir Dinadan passing wrath, that he might not be revenged of that knight; and so he departed. And in no wise would that knight tell his name; but ever Sir Dinadan thought that he should know him by his shield that it should be Sir Tor.

CHAP. XI.
How king Mark mocked Sir Dinadan, and how they met with six knights of the Round Table.

So as they rode by the way, king Mark then began to mock Sir Dinadan, and said, I wend you knights of the Table Round might in no wise find their matches. Ye say well, said Sir Dinadan, as for you, on my life I call you none of the best knights; but sith ye have such a despite at me, I require you to just with me, to prove my strength. Not so, said king Mark, for I will not have ado with you in no manner. But I require you of one thing, that when ye come to Arthur's court, discover not my name, for I am there so hated. It is shame to you, said Sir Dinadan, that ye govern yourself so shamefully; for I see by you ye are full of cowardice, and ye are a murderer, and that is the greatest shame that a knight may have, for never a knight being a murderer hath worship, nor never shall have. For I saw but late through my force ye would have slain Sir Berluse, a better knight than ye, or ever ye shall be, and more of prowess.

Thus they rode forth talking, till they came to a fair place where stood a knight, and prayed them to take their lodging with him. So at the request of that knight they reposed them there, and made them well at ease, and had great cheer. For all errant knights were welcome to him, and especially all those of Arthur's court. Then Sir Dinadan demanded his host, what was the knight's name that kept the bridge. For what cause ask you it? said his host. For it is not long ago, said Sir Dinadan, since he gave me a fall. Ah, fair knight, said his host, thereof have ye no marvel, for he is a passing good knight, and his name is Sir Tor, the son of Aries le Vayshier. Ah, said Sir Dinadan, was that Sir Tor, for truly so ever me thought. Right as they stood thus talking together, they saw come riding to them over a plain six knights of the court of king Arthur, well armed at all points. And there by their shields Sir Dinadan knew them well. The first was the good knight Sir Uwayne, the son of king Uriens; the second was the noble knight Sir Brandiles; the third was Ozana le Cure Hardy; the fourth was Uwayne lez Adventurous; the fifth was Sir Agravaine; the sixth Sir Mordred, brother to Sir Gawaine. When Sir Dinadan had seen these six knights, he thought in himself he would bring king Mark by some wise to just with one of them. And anon they took their horses and ran after these knights well a three mile English. Then was king Mark ware where they sat all six about a well, and eat and drank such meats as they had, and their horses walking and some tied, and their shields hung in divers places about them. Lo, said Sir Dinadan, yonder are knights errant that will just with us. God forbid, said king Mark, for they be six, and we but two. As for that, said Sir Dinadan, let us not spare, for I will assay the foremost. And therewith he made him ready. When king Mark saw him do so, as fast as Sir Dinadan rode toward them king Mark rode foward them with all his menial company. So when Sir Dinadan saw king Mark was gone, he set the spear out of the rest, and threw his shield upon his back, and came riding to the fellowship of the Table Round. And anon Sir Uwayne knew Sir Dinadan, and welcomed him, and so did all his fellowship.

CHAP. XII.
How the six knights sent Sir Dagonet to just with king Mark, and how king Mark refused him.

And then they asked him of his adventures, and whether he had seen Sir
HOW SIR DAGONET CHASED KING MARK.

Sir Launcelot. Truly, said Sir, I saw none of them since from Camelot. What knight said Sir Brandiles, that so surmonted from you, and rode over? Sir, said he, it was a Cornwall, and the most horrid that ever bestrode horse. Sir name? said all the knights. said Sir Dinadan. So when they espoused them, and spoken to they took their horses and rode where dwelled an old knight all knights errant good cheer. mean while that they were into the castle Sir Griffet Dieu, and there was he well. they asked him whether he Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristram? swered, I saw him not since d from Camelot. So as Sir alked and beheld the castle, a chamber he espied king then he rebuked him, and why he departed so? Sir, said urst not abide because they many. But how escaped ye? Mark. Sir, said Sir Dinadan, better friends than I wend een. Who is captain of that? said the king. Then for to Sir Dinadan said it was Sir Oh, said the king, might I Launcelot by his shield? Yea, an, for he beareth a shield of black bands. All this he the king, for Sir Launcelot his fellowship. Now I pray king Mark, that ye will ride whish? That is me loth to do, inadan, because ye forsook my Right so Sir Dinadan went Mark and went to his own

And so they mounted upon s, and rode on their ways, and he Cornish knight, for Dinadem that he was in the castle were lodged. It is well said, islet, for here have I brought ye of Arthur’s fool, that is how and the merriest in the ye do well? said Sir Dinavle told the Cornish knight that here is Sir Launcelot, and the Cornish knight asked me what shield he bare. Truly I told him that he bare the same shield that Sir Mordred beareth. Will ye do well? said Sir Mordred; I am hurt and may not well bear my shield nor harness, and therefore put my shield and my harness upon Sir Dagonet, and let him set upon the Cornish knight. That shall be done, said Sir Dagonet, by my faith. Then anon was Dagonet armed in Mordred’s harness and his shield, and he was set on a great horse and a spear in his hand. Now, said Dagonet, shew me the knight, and I trow I shall bear him down. So all these knights rode to a wood side, and abode till king Mark came by the way. Then they put forth Sir Dagonet, and he came on all the while his horse might run, straight upon king Mark. And when he came night king Mark, he cried as he were wood, and said, Keep thee, knight of Cornwall, for I will slay thee. Anon as king Mark beheld his shield he said to himself, Yonder is Sir Launcelot: alas, now am I destroyed. And therewithal he made his horse to run as fast as it might through thick and thin. And ever Sir Dagonet followed king Mark crying and rating him as a woodman through a great forest. When Sir Uwaine and Sir Brandiles saw Dagonet so chase king Mark, they laughed all as they were wood. And then they took their horses and rode after to see how Sir Dagonet sped. For they would not for no good that Sir Dagonet were hurt, for king Arthur loved him passing well, and made him knight with his own hands. And at every tournament he began to make king Arthur to laugh. Then the knights rode here and there crying and chasing after king Mark, that all the forest rang of the noise.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Palamides by adventure met king Mark flying, and bow he overthrew Dagonet and other knights.

So king Mark rode by fortune by a
well in the way where stood a knight errant on horseback armed at all points with a great spear in his hand. And when he saw king Mark coming flying he said, Knight, return again for shame, and stand with me, and I shall be thy warrant. Ah, fair knight, said king Mark, let me pass, for yonder cometh after me the best knight of the world, with the black bended shield. Fie for shame, said the knight, he is none of the worthy knights. And if he were Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristram I should not doubt to meet the better of them both. When king Mark heard him say that word he turned his horse and abode by him. And then that strong knight bare a spear to Dagonet, and smote him so sore that he bare him over his horse tail, and nigh he had broken his neck. And anon after him came Sir Brandiles, and when he saw Dagonet have that fall he was passing wroth, and cried, Keep thee knight! And so they hurtled together wonderous sore. But the knight smote Sir Brandiles so sore that he went to the earth, horse and man. Sir Uwayne came after and saw all this. Truly, said he, yonder is a strong knight. And then they feutred their spears, and this knight came so eagerly that he smote down Sir Uwayne. Then came Ozana with the hardy heart, and he was smitten down. Now, said Sir Griflet, by my counsel let us send to yonder errant knight, and wit whether he be of Arthur's court, for, as I deem, it is Sir Lamorak de Galis. So they sent unto him, and prayed the strange knight to tell his name, and whether he were of Arthur's court or not. As for my name they shall not wit, but tell them I am a knight errant as they are: and let them wit that I am no knight of king Arthur's court. And so the squire rode again to them, and told them his answer of him. By my head, said Sir Agravaine, he is one of the strongest knights that ever I saw, for he hath overthrown three noble knights, and needs we must encounter with him for shame. So Sir Agravaine feutred his spear, and that other was ready, and smote him down over his horse earth. And in the same wise he smote Sir Uwayne les Avoutres and Sir Griflet. Then had he served the knight but Sir Dinadan, for he was behind. Sir Mordred was unarmed, and Dagonet had his harness. So well was done this strong knight roaring his way a soft pace, and king Mark rode after him praising him much. He would answer no words, but with wonderly sore, hanging down his head, taking no heed to his words. The knight rode well a three mile English land, and this knight called to him; and gathered compound of that castle and place, and put he to send me refreshing of good drinks. And if she ask the where, am, tell her that I am the knight that followeth the glatisant beast,—that English to say the questing beast. That beast wheresoever he was quested with such a noise as there were been a thirty couple of hounds.

Then the varlet went his ways came to the manor and saluted the lord and told her from whence he came. And when she understood that he came from the knight that followed the questing beast, O sweet Lord Jesu, she asked when shall I see that noble knight, Sir Palamides. Alas, will she abide with me! And therewith swooned and wept and made a great dole. And then all so soon might she gave the varlet all she asked. And the varlet returned to the lord Palamides, for he was a varlet unto Mark. And as soon as he came to him, he asked the knight's name was Sir Palamides. I am well pleased, said king Mark, hold thee still and say nothing till they alight, and set them down and disposed them awhile. Anon with his own heart Mark fell on sleep. When Sir Palamides found him sound asleep, he mounted his horse and rode his way, and all the varlet's, I will not be in the company of a sleeping knight. And so forth a great pace.
CHAP. XIV.

Mark and Sir Dinadan heard alamides making great sorrow mourning for La Beale Isoud.

where we unto Sir Dinadan that se seven knights passing heavy. he wist how that they sped, was he. My lord Uwaine, adan, I dare lay my head it morak de Galis; I promise you I find him and he may be found country. And so Sir Dinadan er this knight. And so did erk, that sought him through t. So as king Mark rode after mides, he heard a noise of a made great dole. Then king de as nigh that noise as he id as he durst. Then was he a knight that was descended off and had put off his helm, and made a piteous complaint and is of love.

eave we that, and talk we of dan, that rode to seek Sir Palamides and he came within a forest, he a knight a chaser of a deer. Sir, Dinadan, met ye with a knight field of silver and lions’ heads? knight, said the other, with might met I with but a while straight yonder way be went. y, said Sir Dinadan, for might I, crack of his horse, I should not and that knight. Right so as dan rode in the even late, he doleful noise, as it were of a hen Sir Dinadan rode toward se. And when he came nigh se, he alight off his horse and ur him on foot. Then was he a knight that stood under a his horse tied by him, and the his head. And ever that knight loleful complaint as ever made. And always he made his com-

La Beale Isoud the queen of l, and said, Ah fair lady, why hee, for thou art fairest of all and yet shewest thou never love or bounty. Alas, yet must I 2. And I may not blame thee fair lady, for mine eyes be cause of this sorrow. And yet to love thee I am but a fool, for the best knight of the world loveth thee, and ye him again, that is Sir Tristram de Liones. And the falsest king and knight is your husband, and the most coward and full of treason is your lord king Mark. Alas, that ever so fair a lady and peerless of all other should be matched with the most villainous knight of the world. All this language heard king Mark what Sir Palamides said by him. Wherefore he was adread when he saw Sir Dinadan, lest, and he espied him, that he would tell Sir Palamides that he was king Mark; and therefore he withdrew him, and took his horse and rode to his men where he commanded them to abide. And so he rode as fast as he might unto Camelot. And the same day he found there Amant the knight ready, that before king Arthur had appealed him of treason. And so lightly the king commanded them to do battle. And by misadventure king Mark smote Amant through the body. And yet was Amant in the righteous quarrel. And right so he took his horse and departed from the court for dread of Sir Dinadan, that he would tell Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides what he was. Then were there maidens that La Beale Isoud had sent to Sir Tristram that knew Sir Amant well.

CHAP. XV.

How king Mark had slain Sir Amant wrongfully tofore king Arthur, and Sir Launcelot fetched king Mark to king Aribur.

Then by the licence of king Arthur they went to him, and spake with him, for while the truncheon of the spear stuck in his body he spake: Ah, fair damsels, said Amant, recommend me unto La Beale Isoud, and tell her that I am slain for the love of her and of Sir Tristram. And there he told the damsels how cowardly king Mark had slain him and Sir Bersules his fellow:—And for that deed I appealed him of treason, and
here I am slain in a righteous quarrel; and all was because Sir Bersules and I would not consent by treason to slay the noble knight Sir Tristram. Then the two maidens cried aloud that all the court might hear it, and said, O sweet Lord Jesu that knowest all hid things, why sufferest thou so false a traitor to vanquish and slay a true knight that fought in a righteous quarrel? Then anon it was sprung to the king and the queen, and to all lords and ladies, that it was king Mark that had slain Sir Amant, and Sir Bersules afore hand, wherefore they did their battle. Then was king Arthur wroth out of measure, and so were all the other knights.

But when Sir Tristram knew all the matter, he made great dole out of measure, and wept for sorrow for loss of the noble knights Sir Bersules and Sir Amant. When Sir Launcelot espied Sir Tristram weep, he went hastily to king Arthur, and said, Sir, I pray you give me leave to return again to yonder false king and knight. I pray you, said king Arthur, fetch him again, but I would not that ye slew him for my worship. Then Sir Launcelot armed him in all haste, and mounted upon a great horse, and took a spear in his hand and rode after king Mark. And from thence a three mile English Sir Launcelot overtook him, and bad him—Turn recreant king and knight: for whether thou wilt or not thou shalt go with me to king Arthur's court. King Mark returned and looked upon Sir Launcelot and said, Fair sir, what is your name? Wit thou well, said he, my name is Sir Launcelot, and therefore defend thee. And when king Mark wist that it was Sir Launcelot, and came so fast upon him with a spear, he cried then aloud, I yield me to thee Sir Launcelot, honourable knight. But Sir Launcelot would not hear him, but came fast upon him. King Mark saw that, and made no defence, but tumbled down out of his saddle to the earth as a sack, and there he lay still, and cried Sir Launcelot mercy.—Arise, recreant knight and king.—I will not fight, said king Mark; but whither that ye will I will go with you. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, that I may not thee one buffet for the love of Sir tram and of La Beale Isoud, an the two knights that thou hast traitourly. And so he mounted up horse, and brought him to king Arthur. And there king Mark alight in that place, and threw his helm from upon the earth, and his sword, and flat to the earth of king Arthur's and put him in his grace and in. Truly, said Arthur, ye are welcome a manner, and in a manner ye are welcome. In this manner ye are come, that ye come hither maugre head, as I suppose. That is truth, king Mark, and else I had not been for my lord Sir Launcelot brough hither through his fine force, and to am I yielden to as recreant. said Arthur, ye understand ye to do me service, homage, and feoff and never would ye do me none ever ye have been against me, a destroyer of my knights: now will ye acquit you? Sir, said Mark, right as your lordship will require me, unto my power I will a large amends. For he was a speaker and false there under. for great pleasure of Sir Tristram make them twain accorded, the withheld king Mark as at that and made a broken love day be them.

CHAP. XVI.

How Sir Dinadan told Sir Palamides, the battle between Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram.

Now turn we again unto Sir mides, how Sir Dinadan comforte in all that he might from his sorrow. What knight are ye? sa Palamides. Sir, I am a knight as ye be, that hath sought you in your shield. Here is my shield Sir Palamides, wit ye well, and aught therewith, I will defend it. said Sir Dinadan, I will not have with you but in good manner. ye will ye shall find me soon
r Dinadan, whitherward ride day? By my head, said Sir I wot not, but as fortunate. Heard ye or saw ye ought ram?—Truly of Sir Tristram and saw, and not for then not inwardly well together, nischief Sir Tristram rescued my death: and yet or he and by both our assents we assay that we should have met my grave that Merlin set beside and there to have done battle owbeit I was letted, said Sir that I might not hold my high grieveth me sore; but I ge excuse, for I was prisoner, and many other more, and Sir Tristram right well under: I brake it not of fear of And then Sir Palamides Dinadan the same day that I have met. Truly, said Sir that same day met Sir Laun-sir Tristram at the same grave.

And there was the most battle that ever was seen in twixt two knights, for they were than two hours, and there bled so much blood that all stilled that ever they might.

And so at the last by both as they were made friends brethren for ever, and no judge the better knight. And Tristram made a knight of Table, and he siteth in the noble knight Sir Marhaus. and, said Sir Palamides, Sir is far bigger than Sir Launcelot the hardier knight. Have ye am both? said Sir Dinadan. I Sir Tristram fight, said Sir but never Sir Launcelot to —But at the fountain where lot lay on sleep, there with he smote down Sir Tristram amides, but at that time they either other. Fair knight, Dinadan, as for Sir Launcelot Tristram let them be, for the them will not be lightly of no knight that I know living. No, said Sir Palamides; but and I had a quarrel to the better of them both, I would with as good a will fight with him as with you. Sir, said Sir Dinadan, I require you tell me your name, and in good faith I shall hold you company till that we come to Camelot, and there ye shall have great worship now at this great tournament; for there shall be queen Guenever and La Beale Isoud of Cornwall. Wit you well, Sir knight, said Sir Palamides, for the love of La Beale Isoud I will be there, and else not, but I will not have ado in king Arthur's court. Sir, said Dinadan, I shall ride with you and do you service, so ye will tell me your name. Sir knight, ye shall understand that my name is Sir Palamides, brother to Sir Safere, the good and noble knight, and Sir Segwardes and I we be Saracens born of father and mother. Sir, said Sir Dinadan, I thank you much for the telling of your name. For I am glad of that I know your name, and I promise you by the faith of my body ye shall not be hurt by me by my will, but rather be advanced. And thereto will I help you with all my power I promise you, doubt ye not. And certainly on my life ye shall win great worship in the court of king Arthur, and be right welcome. So then they dressed on their helms and put on their shields, and mounted upon their horses, and took the broad way toward Camelot. And then were they ware of a castle that was fair and rich, and also passing strong as any was within this realm.

CHAP. XVII.
How Sir Lamorak justed with divers knights of the castle wherein was Morgan le Fay.

Sir Palamides, said Dinadan, here is a castle that I know well, and therein dwelleth queen Morgan le Fay, king Arthur's sister, and king Arthur gave her this castle, the which he hath repented him since a thousand times; for since king Arthur and she have been at debate and strife; but this castle could he
never get nor win of her by no manner of
of engine; and ever as she might she
made war on king Arthur. And all
dangerous knights she withhouldeth with
her for to destroy all these knights that
king Arthur loveth. And there shall no
knight pass this way but he must just
with one knight, or with two or with
three. And if it hap that king Arthur's
knight be beaten, he shall lose his horse
and his harness and all that he hath,
and hard if that he escape but that
he shall be prisoner. Truly, said Pala-
mides, this is a shameful custom, and a
villainous usage for a queen to use, and,
namely, to make such war upon her
own lord that is called the flower of
civalry that is christian or heathen,
and with all my heart I would destroy
that shameful custom. And I will that
all the world wit she shall have no
service of me. And if she send out
any knights, as I suppose she will, for
to just, they shall have both their hands
full. And I shall not fail you, said Sir
Dinadan, unto my puissance, upon my
life. So as they stood on horseback
fore the castle there came a knight
with a red shield, and two squires after
him. And he came straight unto Sir
Palamides the good knight, and said to
him, Fair and gentle knight errant, I
require thee for the love thou owest
unto knighthood, that ye will not have
ado here with these men of this castle.
(For this was Sir Lamorak that thus
said.) For I came hitherto to seek this
deed, and it is my request. And there-
fore I beseech you, knight, let me deal,
and if I be beaten revenge me. Well,
said Palamides, let see how ye will
speed, and we shall behold you. Then
anon came forth a knight of the castle,
and proffered to just with the knight
with the red shield. Anon they en-
countered together, and he with the red
shield smote him so hard that he bare
him over to the earth. Therewith anon
came another knight of the castle, and
he was smitten so sore that he avoided
his saddle. And forthwith came the
third knight, and the knight with the
red shield smote him to the earth.

Then came Sir Palamides and besought
him that he might help him to just.
Fair knight, said he unto him, suffer me
as at this time to have my will, for and
they were twenty knights I shall not
doubt them. And ever there were upon
the walls of the castle many lords and
ladies that cried and said, Well have ye
justed, knight with the red shield. But
as soon as the knight had smitten them
down, his squire took their horses and
avoided the saddles and bridles of their
horses, and turned them into the forest,
and made the knights to be kept to the
end of the justs. Right so came out of
the castle the fourth knight, and freshly
proffered to just with the knight with
the red shield. And he was ready, and
he smote him so hard that horse and
man fell to the earth, and the knight's
back brake with the fall, and his neck
also. Truly, said Sir Palamides, the
yonder is a passing good knight, and
the best juster that ever I saw. By my
head, said Sir Dinadan, he is as good as
ever was Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristan,
what knight somever he be.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Palamides would have justed
Sir Lamorak with the knights of the
castle.

Then forthwith came out a knight
of the castle with a shield bended with
black and with white. And anon
the knight with the red shield and he en-
countered together so hard that he
smote the knight of the castle through
the bended shield and through the
body, and brake the horse's back.
Fair knight, said Sir Palamides, ye
have overmuch in hand, therefore I
pray you let me just, for ye had need
to be reposed. Why sir, said the knight,
seem ye that I am weak and feeble? and,
sir, me thinketh ye proffer me wrong,
and to me shame, when I do well
enough. I tell you now as I told you
erst, for and they were twenty knights
I shall beat them. And if I be beaten
or slain then may ye revenge me. And
if ye think that I be weary, and ye have
SIR LAMORAK JUSTS WITH SIR PALAMIDES.

...to just with me, I shall find

enough. Sir, said Pal-

aid it not because I would

you, but me seemeth that ye

much on hand. And therefore,

gentle, said the knight with

ield, ye should not proffer me

erefore I require you to just

ye shall find that I am

Sith ye require me, said Sir

take keep to yourself. Then

ights came together as fast

orses might run, and the
	e Sir Palamides so sore

eld that the spear went into

a great wound and a peri-

therrwithal Sir Palamides

addle. And that knight

to Sir Dinadan. And when

im coming, he cried aloud

Sir, I will not have ado with

for that he let it not, but

ght upon him. So Sir Dina-

ame put forth his spear and

ered it upon the knight. But

Sir Dinadan again so hard

to him clean from his saddle;

orses he would not suffer his

edle with, and because they

ights errant. Then he dressed

to the castle, and justed with

ights more, and there was none

ight withstand him, but he

to the earth. And of these
ights he slew in plain justs

the eight knights he made

ear on the cross of a sword

should never use the evil cus-

castle. And when he had

an to swear that oath, he let

. And ever stood the lords

adies on the castle walls cry-

aying, Knight with the red

ave marvellously well done,

aw knight do. And there-

knight out of the castle un-

d said, Knight with the red

vermuch damage hast thou

us this day, therefore return

u wilt, for here are no more

ave ado with thee, for we re-

that ever thou camest here,

is fordone the old custom of

this castle. And with that word he

turned again into the castle, and shut

the gates. Then the knight with the

red shield turned and called his squires,

and so past forth on his way, and rode a

great pace. And when he was past, Sir

Palamides went to Sir Dinadan and said,

I had never such a shame of one knight

that ever I met, and therefore I cast me

to ride after him, and to be revenged

with my sword. For a horseback I

dem I shall get no worship of him. Sir

Palamides, said Dinadan, ye shall not

edle with him by my counsel, for ye

shall get no worship of him, and for

cause,—ye have seen him this day

ave had overmuch to do, and over-

much travailed. Truly, said Sir Pa-

amides, I shall never be at ease till that

I have had ado with him. Sir, said

Dinadan, I shall give you my beholding.

Well, said Sir Palamides, then shall ye

see how we shall redress our mights.

So they took their horses of their var-

lets, and rode after the knight with the

red shield; and down in a valley be-

side a fountain they were ware where he

was alight to repose him, and had done

off his helm for to drink at the well.

CHAP. XIX.

How Sir Lamorak justed with Sir Pa-

amides and hurt him grievously.

Then Palamides rode fast till he

came nigh him. And then he said,

Knight, remember ye of the shame ye

did to me right now at the castle, therefore
dress thee, for I will have ado

with thee. Fair knight, said he unto Sir

Palamides, of me ye win no worship,

for ye have seen this day that I have

been travailed sore. As for that, said

Palamides, I will not let; for wit ye

well I will be revenged. Well, said the

knight, I may happen to endure you.

And therewithal he mounted upon his

horse, and took a great spear in his

hand, ready for to just. Nay, said Pal-

amides, I will not just, for I am sure at

justing I get no prize. Fair knight, said

that knight, it would beseeem a knight
to just and to fight on horseback. Ye
shall see what I will do, said Palamides. And therewith he alight down upon foot, and dressed his shield afore him, and pulled out his sword. Then the knight with the red shield descended down from his horse, and dressed his shield afore him, and so he drew out his sword. And then they came together a soft pace, and wonderly they lashed together passing thick, the mountenance of an hour, or ever they breathed. Then they traced and traversed, and waxed wonderly wroth, and either behight other death. They hewed so fast with their swords, that they cut in down half their swords and mails, that the bare flesh in some places stood above their harness. And when Sir Palamides beheld his fellow’s sword over covered with his blood, it grieved him sore. Somewhat they joined, somewhat they strake as wild men. But at the last Sir Palamides waxed faint, because of his first wound that he had at the castle with a spear, for that wound grieved him wonderly sore. Fair knight, said Palamides, me seemeth we have assayed either other passing sore, and if it may please thee I require thee of thy knighthood tell me thy name. Sir, said the knight to Palamides, that is me loth to do, for thou hast done me wrong and no knighthood to profer me battle, considering my great travails: but and thou wilt tell me thy name, I will tell thee mine. Sir, said he, wit thou well my name is Palamides. Ah sir, ye shall understand my name is Sir Lamorak de Galis, son and heir unto the good knight and king, king Pellinore; and Sir Tor the good knight is my half brother. When Sir Palamides heard him say so, he kneeled down and asked mercy: For outrageously have I done to you this day, considering the great deeds of arms I have seen you do, shamefully and unkindly I have required you to do battle. Ah, Sir Palamides, said Sir Lamorak, over much have ye done and said to me. And therewith he embraced him with both his hands, and said, Palamides the worthy knight, in all this land is no better than ye, nor of more prowess me repent sore that we shoul together. So it doth not me, s so Palamides, and yet am I sorier wn than ye be; but as for that, I sha thereof be whole. But certainly I not for the fairest castle in this la if thou and I had met, for I sha you the days of my life afore all knights, except my brother Sir. I say the same, said Sir Lamon. except my brother Sir Tor. Then Sir Dinadan, and he made great Sir Lamorak. Then their squires both their shields and their name stopped their wounds. And ther a priory they rested them all nigh

CHAP. XX.

How it was told Sir Launcelot that net chased king Mark, and how a overthrew him and six knights.

Now turn we again, when Sir I and Sir Brandiles with his fellow to the court of king Arthur: th with the king, Sir Launcelot, and Sir T held how Sir Dagonet the fool chase Mark through the forest, and he strong knight smote them do seven with one spear. There was laughing and jesting at king Ma at Sir Dagonet. But all these k could not tell what knight it was rescued king Mark. Then they king Mark that he knew him. A answered and said, He named the knight that followed the q beast, and on that name he set of my varlets to a place when his mother, and when she heart whence he came, she made by a great dole, and discovered to m let his name, and said, O my de Sir Palamides, why wilt thou n me? and therefore, Sir, said king it is to understand his name is Si mides, a noble knight. Then w these seven knights glad that the his name. Now turn we again, the morn they took their horses Sir Lamorak, Palamides, and Di with their squires and varlets, ti saw a fair castle that stood on a
OF SIR DINADAN AND SIR LAMORAK.

Closed. And thither they rode, they found a knight that hight that was lord of that castle. He they had great cheer, and ceased. Sir Dinadan, said Sir what will ye do? O sir, said I will to-morrow to the court of Arthur. By my head, said Sir, I will not ride these three I am sore hurt and much have and therefore I will repose myself, said Sir Lamorak, and I will here with you. And when ye will I ride, unless that ye tarry; then will I take my horse.

I pray you, Sir Dinadan, ride with us. Faithfully, said I will not abide, for I have ent to see Sir Tristram that I abide long from him. Ah, Dinadan, Sir Lamorak, now do I understand that ye love my mortal enemy, see how should I trust you? Dinadan, I love my lord Sir above all other, and him will I do honour. So shall I, said rak, in all that may lie in my so on the morn Sir Dinadan to the court of king Arthur, the way as he rode he saw od an errant knight, and made for to just. Not so, said Sir for I have no will to just. shall ye just, said the knight, pass this way. Whether ask by love or by hate? The knight, Wit ye well I ask it for love, for hate. It may well be so, Dinadan, but ye proffer me, when ye will just with me sharp spear. But fair knight, Dinadan, sit and will just with me in the court of king and there shall I just with you. I the knight, sit and will not just I pray you tell me your name. t, said he, my name is Sir Di- nh, said the knight, full well you for a good knight and a nd wit you well I love you. Then shall here be no justs, dan, betwixt us. So they de- And the same day he came to Camelot where lay king Arthur. And there he saluted the king and the queen, Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram. And all the court was glad of Sir Dinadan, for he was gentle, wise, and courteous, and a good knight. And in especial the valiant knight Sir Tristram loved Sir Dinadan passing well above all other knights save Sir Launcelot. Then the king asked Sir Dinadan what adventures he had seen. Sir, said Dinadan, I have seen many adventures, and of some king Mark knoweth, but not all. Then the king hearkened Sir Dinadan how he told that Sir Palamides and he were afore the castle of Morgan le Fay, and how Sir Lamorak took the justs afore them, and how he forjusted twelve knights, and of them four he slew, and how after he smote down Sir Palamides and me both. I may not believe that, said the king, for Sir Palamides is a passing good knight. That is very truth, said Sir Dinadan, but yet I saw him better proved hand for hand. And then he told the king all that battle, and how Sir Palamides was more weaker and more hurt, and more lost of his blood. And without doubt, said Sir Dinadan, had the battle longer lasted Palamides had been slain. Oh, said king Arthur, this is to me a great marvel. Sir, said Tristram, marvel ye no thing thereof, for at mine advice there is not a valianter knight in all the world living, for I know his might. And now I will say you, I was never so weary of knight but if it were Sir Launcelot. And there is no knight in the world except Sir Launcelot I would so well as Sir Lamorak. Truly, said the king, I would that knight Sir Lamorak came to this court. Sir, said Dinadan, he will be here in short space and Sir Palamides both. But I fear that Palamides may not yet travel.

CHAP. XXI.

How king Aribur let do cry a justs, and bow Sir Lamorak came in and over- threw Sir Gawaine and many other.

Then within three days after the king let make a justing at a priory.
And there made them ready many knights of the Round Table. For Sir Gawain and his brethren made them ready to just. But Tristram, Launcelot, nor Dinadan, would not just, but suffered Sir Gawaine, for the love of king Arthur, with his brethren, to win the gree if they might. Then on the morn they apparelled them to just, Sir Gawaine and his four brethren, and did there great deeds of arms. And Sir Ector de Maris did marvellously well; but Sir Gawaine passed all that fellowship, wherefore king Arthur and all the knights gave Sir Gawaine the honour at the beginning. Right so king Arthur was ware of a knight and two squires which came out of a forest side, with a shield covered with leather, and then he came sily and hurtled here and there, and anon with one spear he had smitten down two knights of the Round Table. Then with his hurtling he lost the covering of his shield. Then was the king and all other ware that he bare a red shield. Oh, said king Arthur, see where rideth a stout knight, he with the red shield. And there was noise and crying, Beware the knight with the red shield. So within a little while he had overthrown three brethren of Sir Gawaine’s. Truly, said king Arthur, me seemeth yonder is the best juster that ever I saw. With that he saw him encounter with Sir Gawaine, and he smote him down with so great force, that he made his horse to avoid his saddle. How now, said the king, Sir Gawaine hath a fall, well were me and I knew what knight he were with the red shield. I know him well, said Dinadan, but as at this time ye shall not know his name. By my head, said Sir Tristram, he justed better than Sir Palamides, and if ye list to know his name, wit ye well his name is Sir Lamorak de Galis. As they stood thus talking, Sir Gawaine and he encountered together again, and there he smote Sir Gawaine from his horse, and bruised him sore. And in the sight of king Arthur he smote down twenty knights beside Sir Gawaine and his brethren. And so clearly he prize given him as a knight yest. Then sily and marvellously Sir Tristram withdrew him from all the ship into the forest side. All this king Arthur, for his eye went from him.

Then the king, Sir Launcelot Tristram, and Sir Dinadan too hacknyes and rode straight after a good knight Sir Lamorak de Galis there found him. And thus said the king, Ah fair knight, well be ye. When he saw the king he put helm and saluted him. And when saw Sir Tristram he alight down horse, and ran to him for to take the thighs; but Sir Tristram would suffer him, but he alight or that he might and either took other in arm made great joy of other. The king glad, and also was all the fellow the Round Table, except Sir G and his brethren. And when the king said that he was Sir Lamorak, the great despite at him, and were wroth with him, that he had put to dishonour that day. Then G called privily in counsel all his br and to them said thus: Fair brethren may ye see whom that we king Arthur loveth, and whom he love he hateth. And wit ye were fair brethren, that this Sir Lamorak never love us, because we slew father king Pellinore, for we knew that he slew our father, king Dulli ney. And for the despite of Sir Lamorak did we a shame to mother, therefore I will be revenged. Sir, said Sir Gawaine’s brethren, how ye will or may be revenged ye shall find us ready. Well, Sir Gawaine, hold you still, and we espy our time.

CHAP. XXII.

How king Arthur made king Mac accorded with Sir Tristram, and they departed toward Cornwall.

Now pass we our matter, and we Sir Gawaine, and speak o
Launcelot departed, and came to king Mark, and said to him thus: Sir king, wit thou well, the good knight Sir Tristram shall go with thee. Beware, I counsel thee, of treason; for and thou mischieve that knight, by any manner of falsehood or treason, by the faith I owe to God and to the order of knighthood, I shall slay thee with mine own hands. Sir Launcelot, said the king, over much have ye said to me; and I have sworn and said over largely afore king Arthur, in hearing of all his knights, that I shall not slay nor betray him. It were to me overmuch shame to break my promise. Ye say well, said Sir Launcelot, but ye are called so false and full of treason that no man may believe you. Forsooth, it is known well wherefore ye came into this country, and for none other cause but for to slay Sir Tristram. So with great dole king Mark and Sir Tristram rode together; for it was by Sir Tristram's will and his means to go with king Mark, and all was for the intent to see Le Bealle Isoud; for without the sight of her Sir Tristram might not endure.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir Percivale was made knight of king Arthur, and how a dumb maid spake, and brought him to the Round Table.

Now turn we again unto Sir Lamorak, and speak we of his brethren. Sir Tor, which was king Pellinore's first son; and Sir Aglavale was his next son; Sir Lamorak, Dornar, Percivale, these were his sons too. So when king Mark and Sir Tristram were departed from the court, there was made great dole and sorrow for the departing of Sir Tristram. Then the king and his knights made no manner of joys eight days after. And at the eight days' end, there came to the court a knight, with a young squire with him; and when this knight was unarmed, he went to the king, and required him to make the young squire a knight. Of what lineage is he come? said king Arthur. Sir, said the knight, he is the son of king
Pellinore, that did you sometime good service, and he is brother unto Lamorak de Galis the good knight. Well, said the king, for what cause desire ye that of me, that I should make him knight? Wit you well, my lord the king, that this young squire is brother to me, as well as to Sir Lamorak, and my name is Aglavale. Sir Aglavale, said Arthur, for the love of Sir Lamorak, and for his father’s love, he shall be made knight to-morrow. Now tell me, said Arthur, what is his name? Sir, said the knight, his name is Percivale de Galis.

So on the morn the king made him knight in Camelot. But the king and all the knights thought it would be long or that he proved a good knight. Then at the dinner when the king was set at the table, and every knight after he was of prowess, the king commanded him to be set among mean knights; and so was Sir Percivale set as the king commanded. Then was there a maiden in the queen’s court that was come of high blood; and she was dumb, and never spake word. Right so she came straight into the hall, and went unto Sir Percivale, and took him by the hand, and said aloud, that the king and all the knights might hear it, Arise, Sir Percivale the noble knight and God’s knight, and go with me; and so he did. And there she brought him to the right side of the siege-perilous, and said, Fair knight, take here thy siege, for that siege appertaineth to thee, and to none other. Right so she departed and asked a priest. And as she was confessed and housed; then she died. Then the king and all the court made great joy of Sir Percivale.

CHAP. XXIV.

How Sir Lamorak visited king Lot’s wife, and how Sir Gaheris slew her which was his own mother.

Now turn we unto Sir Lamorak, that much was there praised. Then, by the mean of Sir Gawaine and his brethren, they sent for their mother there besides fast by a castle beside Camelot; and all was to that intent to slay Sir Lamorak.

The queen of Orkney was there a while, but Sir Lamorak was being, and was full fain; and make an end of this matter he her, and there betwix them was assigned that Sir Lamorak should to her. Thereof was Sir and there he rode afore, the saw he where he came all arm where Sir Lamorak alight, he horse to a privy postern, and went into a parlour and unarmed and then he went unto the queen she made of him passing great he of her again, for either love passing sore. So when the knight Gaheris, saw his time, he came them, all armed, with his sword and suddenly cut his mother hair, and stroke off her head. Sir Lamorak saw the blood do him all hot, the which he loved well, wit you well he was sore and dismayed of that dolorous. And therewithal Sir Lamorak lay as a knight dismayed, saying the Sir Gaheris, knight of the Tabl foul and evil have ye done, a great shame. Alas, why have your mother that bare you; why right ye should have slain one of your shame hast thou done, said notwithstanding a man is born to his service, but yet shouldest wære with whom thou medd’st thou hast put me and my father; and thou to love our shame to do much shame for us to suffer as for thy father king Pellinore brother Sir Gawaine and I slay. Ye did him the more wrong. Lamorak, for my father slew my father; it was Balan le Savage yet my father’s death is not right. Leave those words, said Gaheris, and thou speak feloniously I thee, but because thou art unam ashamed to slay thee. But well, in what place I may get shall slay thee; and now my quit of thee; and therefore v
I take thine armour, that thou ne. Sir Lamorak saw there was her boot, but fast armed him, his horse, and rode his way, great sorrow. But for the ad dolour he would not ride to thur’s court, but rode another But when it was known that had slain his mother, the king sing wroth, and commanded go out of his court. Wit ye Gawaine was wroth that Ga- d slay his mother, and let Sir escape. And for this matter king passing wroth, and so was incidence, and many other knights. Sir Launcelet, here is a great befallen by felony, and by for-ason, that your sister is thus slay slain. And I dare say that wrought by treason, and I dare shall lose that good knight Sir c. the which is great pity. I tell and am sure, and Sir Tris- it he would never more come your court, the which should you much more, and all your God defend, said the noble Arthur, that I should lose Sir or Sir Tristram, for they of my chief knights of the Table were gone. Sir, said Sir Laun- am sure that ye shall lose Morak, for Sir Gawaine and his will slay him by one mean or for they among them have con- and sworn to slay him and ever y see their time. That shall I Arthur.

CHAP. XXV.

Agravaine and Sir Mordred with a knight fleeing, and bow were overthrown, and of Sir an.

leave we of Sir Lamorak, and of Sir Gawaine’s brethren, and of Sir Agravaine and Sir Mor- As they rode on their adven- they met with a knight flying hauned, and they asked him who was. Fair knights, said he, with a knight after me that will slay me. With that came Sir Dinadan, riding to them by adventure, but he would promise them no help. But Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred promised him to rescue him. Therewithal came that knight straight unto them. And anon he proffered to just. That saw Sir Mordred, and rode to him; but he strake Sir Mordred over his horse tail. That saw Sir Agravaine, and straight he rode toward that knight. And right so as he served Mordred, so he served Agra- vaine, and said to them, Sirs, wit ye well both, that I am Breuse Sance Pité, that hath done this to you. And yet he rode over Agravaine five or six times. When Dinadan saw this, he must needs just with him for shame. And so Dinadan and he encountered together, that with pure strength Sir Dinadan smote him over his horse tail. Then he took his horse and fled. For he was on foot one of the valiantest knights in Arthur’s days, and a great destroyer of all good knights. Then rode Sir Dinadan unto Sir Mor- dred and unto Sir Agravaine. Sir knight, said they all, well have ye done, and well have ye revenged us; wherefore we pray you tell us your name. Fair sirs, ye ought to know my name, the which is called Sir Dinadan. When they understood that it was Dinadan, they were more wroth than they were before, for they hated him out of measure, because of Sir Lamorak. For Dinadan had such a custom that he loved all good knights that were valiant, and he hated all those that were destroyers of good knights. And there were none that hated Dinadan but those that ever were called murderers. Then spake the hurt knight that Breuse Sance Pité had chased, his name was Dalan, and said, If thou be Dinadan, thou slewest my father. It may well be so, said Dinadan, but then it was in my defence, and at his request. By my head, said Dalan, thou shalt die therefore. And therewith he dressed his spear and his shield. And to make the shorter tale, Sir Dinadan smote him down off his horse, that his neck was nigh broken. And in the same wise he smote Sir Mordred and
Sir Agravaine. And after, in the quest of the Sangreal, cowardly and feloniously they slew Dinadan, the which was great damage, for he was a great jester and a passing good knight. And so Sir Dinadan rode to a castle that hight Beale-Valet, and there he found Sir Palamides, that was not yet whole of the wound that Sir Lamorak gave him. And there Dinadan told Palamides all the tidingsthat he heard and saw of Sir Tristram, and how he was gone with king Mark, and with him he hath all his will and desire. Therewith Sir Palamides waxed wroth, for he loved La Beale Isoud, and then he wist well that Sir Tristram should see her.

CHAP. XXVI.

How king Arthur, the queen, and Launcelot received letters out of Cornwall, and of the answer again.

Now leave we Sir Palamides and Sir Dinadan, in the Castle of Beale-Valet, and turn we again unto king Arthur. There came a knight out of Cornwall, his name was Fergus, a fellow of the Round Table, and there he told the king and Sir Launcelot good tidings of Sir Tristram, and there were brought good letters, and how he left him in the Castle of Tintagil. Then came the damsel that brought good letters unto king Arthur and unto Sir Launcelot; and there she had passing good cheer of the king and of the queen Guenever, and of Sir Launcelot. Then they wrote good letters again. But Sir Launcelot had ever Sir Tristram beware of king Mark; for ever he called him in his letters king Fox, as who saith, He fareth all with wiles and treason: whereof Sir Tristram in his heart thanked Sir Launcelot. Then the damsel went unto La Beale Isoud, and bare her letter from the king and from Sir Launcelot, whereof she was in passing great joy. Fair damsel, said La Beale Isoud, how fareth my lord Arthur, and the queen Guenever, and the noble knight, Sir Launcelot du Lake? She answered, and to make short tale, Much the better that ye and Sir Tristram be in joy. Truly, said La Beale Isoud, Tristram suifereth great pain and I for him. So the damsel deducted and brought letters to king Mark when he had read them, and under them, he was wroth with Sir Tristram for he deemed that he had sent the said letters unto king Arthur; for Arthor, Launcelot in a manner threatened Mark. And as king Mark read the letters he deemed treason by Sir Tristram, said king Mark, ride again, and bear letters further unto king Arthur? Sir, she said, ye will be at your commandment to ride ye will. Ye say well, said the king, come again, said the king, to-morrow fetch your letters. Then she did and told them how she should ride with letters unto Arthur. Then you, said La Beale Isoud and Sir Tristram, that when ye have received letters, that ye would come by us we may see the privy of your Will that I may do, madam, ye will I must do for Sir Tristram, for he been long his own maiden. So the damsel went to king Mark and secretly he sent letters unto Arthur, and unto queen Guenever unto Sir Launcelot. So the vaunted knight parted, and found the king and queen of Wales, at Carlion. And as the king and the queen were at mass the valiant knight with the letters; and when mass was done the king and the queen opened the letters privily by themselves. A beginning of the king's letters were wondrous short unto king Arthur, he bade him intermeddle with him, and with his wife, and of his knight, he was able enough to rule and wife.

CHAP. XXVII.

How Sir Launcelot was wroth with Dinadan which made a lay of kin

When king Arthur understood the letter he mused of many thin
on his sister's words, queen Le Fay, that she had said be-
men Guenever and Sir Launcelot. This thought he studied a great
then he bethought him again sis-
er was his own enemy, and ated the queen and Sir Laun-
she put all that out of his
Then king Arthur read the
in, and the latter clause said
Mark took Sir Tristram for
enemy, wherefore he put it of doubt he would be re-
 Sir Tristram. Then was
wroth with king Mark.
queen Guenever read her
understood it, she was wroth
measure, for the letter spake
her, and by Sir Launcelot.
truly she sent the letter unto
elot. And when he wist the
letter, he was so wroth that
him down on his bed to sleep;
sir Dinadan was ware, for it
manner to be privy with all
ights. And as Sir Launcelot
tole the letter out of his hand,
it word by word; and then he
sorrow for anger. And so
elot awaked, and went to a
and read the letter again, the
d him angry. Sir, said Din-
refore be ye angry? discover
me. For sooth ye wot we
you good will, howbeit
or knight, and a servitor unto
to all good knights. For
be not of worship myself, yet
those that be of worship. It
said Sir Launcelot, ye are a
ight, and for great trust I will
my counsel. And when Din-
stood all, he said, This is my
set you right nought by these
or king Mark is so villainous
fair speech shall never man
him. But ye shall see what
We will make a lay for him,
 it is made I shall make an
sing it afore him. So anon
and made it, and taught it an
at hight Eliot, and when he
he taught it to many harpers.

And so by the will of Sir Launcelot,
and of Arthur, the harpers went straight
into Wales and into Cornwall, to sing
the lay that Sir Dinadan made by king
Mark, which was the worst lay that
ever harper sang with harp or with any
other instruments.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How Sir Tristram was hurt, and of a
war made to king Mark; and of Sir
Tristram, how he promised to rescue
him.

Now turn we again unto Sir Tristram
and to king Mark. As Sir Tristram was
at justs and at tournament it fortuned he
was sore hurt, both with a spear and
with a sword. But yet he was always
the degree. And for to repose him he
went to a good knight that dwelled in
Cornwall in a castle, whose name was
Sir Dinas the seneschal. Then by mis-
fortune there came out of Sessoin a
great number of men of arms, and an
hideous host; and they entered nigh the
castle of Tintagil; and their captain's
name was Elias, a good man of arms.
When king Mark understood his ene-
mies were entered into his land, he made
great dole and sorrow, for in no wise by
his will king Mark would not send for
Sir Tristram, for he hated him deadly.
So when his council was come, they de-
vised and cast many perils of the strength
of their enemies; and then they con-
cluded all at once, and said thus unto
king Mark, Sir, wit ye well ye must send
for Sir Tristram the good knight, or else
they will never be overcome. For by Sir
Tristram they must be fought withal, or
else we row against the stream. Well,
said king Mark, I will do by your coun-
sel. But yet he was full loth thereto,
but need constrained him to send for
him. Then was he sent for in all haste
that might be, that he should come to
king Mark. When Sir Tristram un-
stood that the king had sent for him, he
mounted upon a soft amber and rode to
king Mark. And when he was come,
the king said thus: Fair nephew Sir
Tristram, this is all: here be come our
enemies of Sessoin, that are here nigh hand; and without tarrying they must be met with shortly, or else they will destroy this country. Sir, said Sir Tristrum, wit ye well, all my power is at your commandment; and wit ye well Sir, these eight days may I bear none arms, for my wounds be not yet whole. And by that day I shall do what I may. Ye say well, said king Mark: then go ye again, and repose you, and make you fresh; and I shall go and meet the Sessoins with all my power. So the king departed unto Tintagil, and Sir Tristrum went to repose him. And the king made a great host, and departed them in three. The first part led Sir Dinas the seneschal, and Sir Andre led the second part, and Sir Arguis led the third part, and he was of the blood of king Mark. And the Sessoins had three great battles, and many good men of arms. And so king Mark, by the advice of his knights, issued out of the castle of Tintagil upon his enemies. And Dinas the good knight rode out afore, and slew two knights with his own hands; and then began the battles. And there was marvellous breaking of spears, and smiting of swords, and slew down many good knights, and ever was Sir Dinas the seneschal the best of king Mark's part. And thus the battle endured long with great mortality. But at the last king Mark and Sir Dinas, were they never so loth, they withdrew them to the castle of Tintagil, with great slaughter of people, and the Sessoins followed on fast, that ten of them were put within the gates, and four slain with the portcullis. Then king Mark sent for Sir Tristrum by a varlet, that told him all the mortality. Then he sent the varlet again, and bade him, Tell king Mark that I will come as soon as I am whole, for erst I may do him no good. Then king Mark had his answer. Therewith came Elias, and bade the king yield up the castle, for ye may not hold it no while. Sir Elias, said the king, so will I yield up the castle, if I be not soon rescued. Anon king Mark sent again for rescue to Sir Tris-

trum. By then Sir Tristrum was and he had gotten him ten good of Arthur's, and with them he rose Tintagil. And when he saw the host of Sessoins he marvelled greatly. And then Sir Tristrum by the woods and by the ditches secretely as he might, till he cam to the gates. And there dressed a to him, when he saw that Sir Tristrum would enter; and Sir Tristrum him down dead. And so he three more. And every each of ten knights slew a man of arm Sir Tristrum entered into the castle Tintagil. And when king Mark saw that Sir Tristrum was come, he was glad of his coming, and so was the fellowship, and of him they made joy.

CHAP. XXIX.

How Sir Tristrum overcame the bat bow Elias desired a man to fig for body.

So on the morn, Elias the came and bade king Mark cor and do battle, For now the good Sir Tristrum is entered, it will shame to thee, said Elias, for thy walls. When king Mark stood this, he was wroth, and word, but sent unto Sir Tristrum asked him his counsel. Sir, sa Tristrum, will ye that I give he answer? I will well, said king Then Sir Tristrum said thus to the sager, Bear thy lord word for king and me, that we will do with him to-morn in the plain What is your name? said the sager. Wit thou well my name Tristrum de Liones. Therewith messager departed, and told her Elias all that he had heard. S Sir Tristrum unto king Mark, I pray give me leave to have the rule battle, I pray you take the running Mark. Then Sir Tristrum vise the battle in what manner should be. He let depart his six parts, and ordained Sir Du seneschal to have the fore wa
How Sir Elias and Sir Tristram fought together for the truage, and how Sir Tristram slew Elias in the field.

Nor for then, when all this was said, they could find no knight that would do battle with him. Sir king, said they all, here is no knight that dare fight with Elias. Alas, said king Mark, then am I utterly shamed, and utterly destroyed, unless that my nephew Sir Tristram will take the battle upon him. Wit ye well, they said all, he had yesterday over much on hand, and he is weary for travail, and sore wounded. Where is he? said king Mark. Sir, said they, he is in his bed to repose him. Alas, said king Mark, but I have the succour of my nephew Sir Tristram I am utterly destroyed for ever. Therewith one went to Sir Tristram where he lay, and told him what king Mark had said. And therewith Sir Tristram arose lightly, and put on him a long gown, and came afore the king and all the lords. And when he saw them all so dismayed, he asked the king and the lords what tidings were with them. Never worse, said the king. And
therewith he told him all how he had
word of Elias to find a knight to fight
for the truage of Cornwall, and none
can I find; and as for you, said the
king and all the lords, we may ask no
more of you for shame, for through
your hardness yesterday ye saved all
our lives. Sir, said Sir Tristram, now I
understand ye would have my succour,
reason would that I should do all that
lieth in my power to do, saving my
worship and my life, howbeit I am
sore bruised and hurt. And sithen Sir
Elias proffereth so largely, I shall fight
with him, or else I will be slain in the
field, or else I will deliver Cornwall
from the old truage. And therefore
lightly call his messenger, and he shall
be answered: for as yet my wounds be
green, and they will be sorer a seven
night after than they be now, and there-
fore he shall have his answer, that I
will do battle to-morn with him. Then
was the messenger departed brought
before king Mark. Hark my fellow,
said Sir Tristram, go fast unto thy lord,
and bid him make true assurance on his
part, for the truage, as the king here
shall make on his part; and then tell
thy lord Sir Elias, that I, Sir Tristram,
king Arthur’s knight, and knight of the
Table Round, will as to-morn meet
with thy lord on horseback, to do battle
as long as my horse may endure, and
after that to do battle with him on foot
to the utterance. The messenger be-
held Sir Tristram from the top to the
toe; and therafter he departed, and
came to his lord, and told him how he
was answered of Sir Tristram. And
therewithal was made hostage on both
parties, and made it as sure as it might
be, that whether party had the victory,
so to end. And then were both hosts
assembled, on both parts of the field
without the castle of Tintagil, and there
was none but Sir Tristram and Sir Elias
armed. So when the appointment was
made, they departed in sunder, and they
came together with all the might that
their horses might run. And either
knight smote other so hard that both
horses and knights went to the earth.

Not for then they both lightly arose,
and dressed their shields on their shoul-
ders, with naked swords in their hands,
and they dashed together that it seemed
a flaming fire about them. Thus they
traced and traversed, and hewed on
helmis and hauberks, and cut away
many cantilis of their shields, and either
wounded other passing sore, so that the
hot blood fell freshly upon the earth.
And by then they had fought the mon-
tenance of an hour Sir Tristram with
faint and for-bled, and gave sore aback.
That saw Sir Elias, and followed fiercely
upon him, and wounded him in many
places. And ever Sir Tristram traced
and traversed, and went forward him
here and there, and covered him with
his shield as he might all weakly, that
all men said he was overcome. For
Sir Elias had given him twenty strokes
against one. Then was there laughing
of the Sessoins’ party, and great done
on king Mark’s party. Alas, said the
king, we are ashamed and destroyed all
for ever. For, as the book saith, Sir
Tristram was never so matched, but if
it were Sir Launcelot. Thus as they
stood and beheld both parties, that one
party laughing, and the other part
weeping, Sir Tristram remembered him
of his lady, La Bealle Isoud, that looked
upon him, and how he was likely never
to come in her presence. Then he
pulled up his shield, that erst hung full
low; and then he dressed up his shield
unto Elias, and gave him many sad
strokes, twenty against one, and all to-
brake his shield and his hauberk, that
the hot blood ran down to the earth.
Then began king Mark to laugh and all
Cornish men, and that other party to
weep. And ever Sir Tristram said to
Sir Elias, Yield thee! Then when Sir
Tristram saw him so staggering on the
ground, he said, Sir Elias, I am right
sorry for thee, for thou art a passing
good knight as ever I met within, except
Sir Launcelot. Therewithal Sir Elias
fell to the earth, and there died. What
shall I do? said Sir Tristram unto king
Mark, for this battle is at an end.
Then they of Elias’s party departed;
Mark took of them many to redress the harms and the nut he had of them, and the he sent into their country to ed their fellows. Then was Sir searched and well healed. Yet s king Mark would fain have Tristram. But for all that Tristram saw or heard by king he would never beware of his but ever he would be there as Isoud was.

CHAP. XXXI.

a great feast that king Mark an harper came and sang the Dinadan had made.

ill we pass of this matter, and of the harper that Sir Laun Sir Dinadan had sent into. And at the great feast that made for joy that the Ses put out of his country, then of the harper, with the lay adan had made, and secretly it unto Sir Tristram, and told lay that Dinadan had made by rk. And when Sir Tristram he said: That Dinadan can underly well and ill, there as it Sir, said Eliot, dare I sing afore king Mark? Yea, on my d Sir Tristram, for I shall be unt. Then at the meat came he harper, and because he was harper men heard him sing: lay that Dinadan had made, he spake the most villainy by k of his treason that ever man When the harper had sung his the end, king Mark was woth, and said, Thou harper, at thou be so bold on thy head his song before me? Sir, said you well I am a minstrel, and as I am commanded of these I bear the arms of. And, sir, well that Sir Dinadan, a knight ble Round, made this song, and to sing it afore you. Thou ell, said king Mark, and be art a minstrel thou shalt go quit, but I charge thee hie thee fast out of my sight. So the harper departed, and went to Sir Tristram, and told him how he had sped. Then Sir Tristram let make letters, as goodly as he could, to Launcelot, and to Sir Dinadan. And so he let conduct the harper out of the country. But to say that king Mark was wonderly wroth, he was; for he deemed that the lay that was sung afore him was made by Sir Tristram’s counsel, wherefore he thought to slay him and all his well-willers in that country.

CHAP. XXXII.

How king Mark slew by treason his brother Boudwin, for good service that he had done to him.

Now turn we to another matter, that fell between king Mark and his brother that was called the good prince Sir Boudwin, that all the people of the country loved passing well. So it be fell upon a time, that the miscreants Saracens landed in the country of Cornwall, soon after these Sessoins were gone. And then the good prince Sir Boudwin, at the landing, he raised the country privily and hastily. And or it were day he let put wild-fire in three of his own ships, and suddenly he pulled up the sail, and with the wind he made those ships to be driven among the navy of the Saracens; and to make short tale, those three ships set on fire all the ships, that none were saved. And at the point of the day the good prince Boudwin, with all his fellowship, set on the miscreants, with shouts and cries, and slew to the number of forty thousand, and left none alive. When king Mark wist this, he was wonderly wroth that his brother should win such worship. And because this prince was better beloved than he in all that country, and that also Sir Boudwin loved well Sir Tristram, therefore he thought to slay him. And thus hastily as a man out of his wit, he sent for prince Boudwin, and Anglides his wife, and bad them bring their young son with them, that he might see him. All
this he did to the intent to slay the child as well as his father, for he was the falsest traitor that ever was born. Alas, for his goodness and for his good deeds this gentle prince Boudwin was slain. So when he came with his wife Anglides, the king made them fair semblant till they had dined. And when they had dined, king Mark sent for his brother, and said thus: Brother, how sped you when the miscreants arrived by you? Me seemeth it had been your part to have sent me word, that I might have been at that journey, for it had been reason that I had had the honour, and not you. Sir, said the prince Boudwin, it was so that and I had tarried till that I had sent for you, those miscreants had destroyed my country. Thou liest, false traitor, said king Mark, for thou art ever about for to win worship from me, and put me to dishonour, and thou cherishest that I hate. And therewith he struck him to the heart with a dagger, that he never after spake word. Then the lady Anglides made great dole and swooned, for she saw her lord slain afore her face. Then was there no more to do, but prince Boudwin was despoiled and brought to burial. But Anglides privily got her husband's doublet and his shirt, and that she kept secretly. Then was there much sorrow and crying, and great dole made Sir Tristram, Sir Dinah, Sir Fergus, and so did all the knights that were there, for that prince was passingly well beloved. So La Beale Isoud sent unto Anglides, the prince Boudwin's wife, and bad her avoid lightly, or else her young son Alisander le Orphelin should be slain. When she heard this, she took her horse and her child, and rode her way with such poor men as durst ride with her.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Anglides, Boudwin's wife, escaped with her young son, Alisander le Orphelin, and came to the castle of Arundel.

NOTWITHSTANDING, when king Mark had done this deed, yet he thought to do more vengeance; and with his sword in his hand he sought from chamber to chamber, to find Anglides and her young son. And when she was missed, he called a good knight that hight Sir Sadok, and charged him, by pain of death, to fetch Anglides again, and her young son. So Sir Sadok departed, and rode after Anglides. And within ten mile he overtook her, and bade her turn again, and ride with him to king Mark. Alas, fair knight, she said, what shall ye win by my son's death, or by mine? I have had over much harm, and too great a loss. Madam, said Sadok, of your loss is dole and pity; but, madam, said Sadok, would ye depart out of this country with your son, and keep him till he be of age, that he may revenge his father's death, then would I suffer you to depart from me, so ye promise me for to revenge the death of prince Boudwin. Ah, gentle knight, Jesu thank thee, and if ever my son Alisander le Orphelin live to be a knight, he shall have his father's doublet and his shirt with the bloody marks; and I shall give him such a charge that he shall remember it while he liveth. And therewithal Sadok departed from her, and either betook other to God. And when Sadok came to king Mark, he told him faithfully that he had drowned young Alisander, her son; and thereof king Mark was full glad.

Now turn we unto Anglides, that rode both night and day by adventure out of Cornwall, and little and in few places she rested. But ever she drew southward to the sea side, till by fortune she came to a castle that is called Magouns, and now it is called Arundel in Southsex. And the constable of the castle welcomed her, and said she was welcome to her own castle; and there was Anglides worshipfully received, for the constable's wife was nigh her cousin. And the constable's name was Bellangere, and that same constable told Anglides that the same castle was hers by right inheritance. Thus Anglides endured years and winters, till
er was big and strong. There
se so wight in all that country,
there was none that might do
ner of mastery afore him.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Anglides gave the bloody doublet to
nder her son the same day that he
ade knight, and the charge withal.

upon a day Bellangere the
le came to Anglides and said,
, it were time that my lord
er were made knight, for he is
strong young man. Sir, said
ould he were made knight; but
st I give him the most charge
 sinful mother gave to her
Do as ye list, said Bellangere,
hall give him warning that he
made knight. Now it will be
that he may be made knight
Ladyday in Lent. Be it so, said
is, and I pray you make read-
e. So came the constable to
er, and told him that he should
Ladyday in Lent be made

I thank God, said Alisander,
e the best tidings that ever
me. Then the constable o-
forty of the greatest gentle-
s, and the best born men
ountry, that should be made
that same day that Alisander
deknight. So on the same day
isander and his twenty fellows
ade knights, at the offering of
 was there Anglides unto her
aid said thus: O fair sweet son, I
nee upon my blessing, and of
order of chivalry that thou
ere this day, that thou under-
that I shall say and charge thee

Therewithal she pulled out a
doublet and a bloody shirt, that
bled with old blood. When
er saw this, he start back and
le, and said, Fair mother, what
mean? I shall tell thee, fair son;
s thine own father's doublet and
at he were upon him that same
t he was slain. And there she
why and wherefore: and how

for his goodness king Mark slew him
with his dagger afore mine own eyes.
And therefore this shall be your charge,
that I shall give thee. Now I require
thee and charge thee upon my blessing,
and upon the high order of knighthood,
that thou be revenged upon king Mark
for the death of thy father. And there-
withal she swooned. Then Alisander
leaped to his mother, and took her up
in his arms, and said, Fair mother, ye
have given me a great charge, and here
I promise you I shall be avenged upon
king Mark when that I may, and that
I promise to God and to you. So this
feast was ended. And the constable,
by the advice of Anglides, let purvey
that Sir Alisander was well horsed and
harnessed. Then he justed with his
twenty fellows that were made knights
with him. But, for to make a short tale,
he overthrew all those twenty, that none
might withstand him a buffet.

CHAP. XXXV.

How it was told to king Mark of Sir
Alisander, and bow he would have
slain Sir Sadok for saving of his life.

Then one of those knights departed
unto king Mark, and told him all how
Alisander was made knight, and all the
charge that his mother gave him, as ye
have heard afore time. Alas, false trea-
son, said king Mark, I wend that young
traitor had been dead. Alas, whom
may I trust? And therewithal king
Mark took a sword in his hand, and
sought Sir Sadok from chamber to
chamber to slay him. When Sir Sadok
saw king Mark come with his sword in
his hand, he said thus: Beware, king
Mark, and come not nigh me, for wit
thou well that I saved Alisander his
life, of which I never repent me, for wit
thou falsely and cowardly slewest his
father Boudwin traitorly for his good
deeds. Wherefore I pray almighty Jesu
send Alisander might and strength to be
revenged upon thee. And now beware
king Mark of young Alisander, for he
is made a knight. Alas, said king Mark,
that ever I should hear a traitor say so
aføre me. And therewith four knights
of king Mark drew their swords to slay Sir Sadok. But anon Sir Sadok slew them all in king Mark's presence. And then Sir Sadok passed forth into his chamber, and took his horse and his harness, and rode on his way a good pace. For there was neither Sir Tristram, nor Sir Dinas, nor Sir Fergus, that would Sir Sadok any evil will. Then was king Mark wroth, and thought to destroy Sir Alisander, and Sir Sadok that had saved him, for king Mark dread and hated Sir Alisander most of any man living. When Sir Tristram understood that Alisander was made knight, anon forthwith he sent him a letter, praying him and charging him that he would draw him to the court of king Arthur, and that he put him in the rule and in the hands of Sir Launcelot. So this letter was sent to Alisander from his cousin Sir Tristram. And at that time he thought to do after his commandment. Then king Mark called a knight that brought him the tidings from Alisander, and bade him abide still in that country. Sir, said that knight, so must I do, for in mine own country I dare not come. No force, said king Mark. I shall give thee here double as much lands as thou haddest of thine own. But within short space Sir Sadok met with that false knight and slew him. Then was king Mark wood wroth out of measure. Then he sent unto queen Morgan le Fay and to the queen of Northgalis, praying them in his letters that they two sorceresses would set all the country in fire, with ladies that were enchantresses, and by such that were dangerous knights, as Malgrin, and Breuse Sance Pité; that by no means Alisander le Orphelin should escape, but either he should be taken or slain. This ordinance made king Mark for to destroy Alisander.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How Sir Alisander won the prize at a tournament, and of Morgan le Fay. And how he fought with Sir Malgrin and slew him.

Now turn we again unto Sir Alisander, that at his departing from his took with him his father's blood. So that he bare with him always death day, in tokening to think father's death. So was Alisander posed to ride to London by the of Sir Tristram to Sir Launcelot by fortune he went by the se and rode wrong. And there he at a tournament the gree, that Carados made. And there he down king Carados, and twenty knights, and also Sir Safeere a knight, that was Sir Palamides' the good knight. All this saw sal, and saw the best knight just ever she saw. And ever as he down knights he made them to to wear no harness in a twelve and a day. This is well said, said gan le Fay, this is the knight would fain see. And so she to palfrey and rode a great while, an she rested her in her pavilion. So came four knights; two were and two were unarmed, and the Morgan le Fay their names. That was Elias de Gomeret, the second Car de Gomeret; those were that other twain were of Cap cousins unto queen Guenever that one hight Sir Guy, and that hight Garaunt; those were un. There these four knights told Morgan le Fay how a young knight had them down before a castle. Maiden of that castle said that but last made knight and young as we suppose, but if it were Sir Tristan, or Sir Launcelot, or Sir Le the good knight, there is non might sit him a buffet with a Well, said Morgan le Fay, I shall that knight or it be long time, dwell in that country.

So turn we to the damsel castle, that when Alisander le O had forsworn the four knight called him to her, and said that knight, wilt thou for my sake fight with a knight of this count: is and hath been long time: neighbour to me, his name is M
will not suffer me to be married
nearer wise for all that I can do,
knights for my sake. Damsel, Alisander, and he come while I
will fight with him, and my
body for your sake I will jeopard.

therewithal she sent for him, for
she at her commandment. And
neither had a sight of other they
prepared for to just, and they
together eagerly, and Malgrin
his spear upon Alisander, and
her smote him again so hard that
him quite from his saddle to the

But this Malgrin arose lightly
shook his shield and drew his
and bad him alight, saying,
shalt thou have the better of me on
check, shalt thou find that I shall
like a knight on foot. It is well
Alisander. And so lightly he
his horse, and betook him to his

And then they rashed together
to boars, and laid on their helms
elds long time by the space of
ours, that never man could say
was the better knight. And in
unwhile came Morgan le Fay to
use of the castle, and they beheld
battle. But this Malgrin was an
x. knight, and he was called one
dangerous knights of the world
attle on foot: but on horseback
ere many better. And ever this
awaited to slay Alisander, and
nded him wonderly sore, that it
ulve that ever he might stand,
had bled so much blood: for
ought wildly and not witilly,
at other was a felonious knight,
aided him, and smote him sore.
netime they rashed together with
ields like two boars or rams, and
veling both to the earth. Now
said Malgrin, hold thy hand
and tell me what thou art. I
; said Alisander, but if me list.
im me thy name, and why thou
this country, or else thou shalt
my hands. Wit thou well, said
, that for this maiden's love of
ke I have slain ten good knights
ap; and by outrage and pride of

myself I have slain ten other knights.
 Truly, said Alisander, this is the foulest
confession that ever I heard knight
make, nor never heard I speak of other
men of such a shameful confession;
wherefore it were great pity and great
shame to me that I should let thee live
any longer; therefore keep thee as well
as ever thou mayest, for as I am true
knight, either thou shalt slay me or
else I shall slay thee, I promise thee
faithfully. Then they lashed together
fiercely. And at the last Alisander
smote Malgrin to the earth, and then
he raced off his helm, and smote off his
head lightly. And when he had done
and ended this battle, anon he called to
him his varlet, the which brought him
his horse. And then he weening to be
strong enough would have mounted.
And so she laid Sir Alisander in a horse-
litter, and led him into the castle, for
he had no foot nor might to stand upon
the earth. For he had sixteen great
wounds, and in especial one of them
was like to be his death.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How queen Morgan le Fay bad Alisander in her castle, and how she healed his wounds.

Then queen Morgan le Fay searched
his wounds, and gave such an ointment
unto him that he should have died. And
on the morn when she came to him, he
complained him sore; and then she put
other ointments upon him, and then he
was out of his pain. Then came the
damsel of the castle, and said unto Mor-
gan le Fay, I pray you help me that
this knight might wed me, for he hath
won me with his hands. Ye shall see,
said Morgan le Fay, what I shall say.
Then Morgan le Fay went to Sir Ali-
sander and bad in any wise that he
should refuse this lady—if she desire to
wed you, for she is not for you. So the
damsel came and desired of him mar-
riage. Damsel, said Orphelin, I thank
you, but as yet I cast me not to marry
in this country. Sir, said she, sithen ye
will not marry me, I pray you, insomuch
as ye have won me, that ye will give me to a knight of this country that hath been my friend and loved me many years. With all my heart, said Alisander, I will assent thereto. Then was the knight sent for; his name was Sir Gerine le Grose. And anon he made them handfast and wedded them. Then came queen Morgan le Fay to Alisander, and bad him arise, and put him in a horse-litter: and gave him such a drink that in three days and three nights he waked never but slept: and so she brought him to her own castle, that at that time was called La Beale Regard. Then Morgan le Fay came to Alisander, and asked him if he would fain be whole. Who would be sick, said Alisander, and he might be whole? Well, said Morgan le Fay, then shall ye promise me by your knighthood that this day twelvemonth and a day ye shall not pass the compass of this castle, and without doubt ye shall lightly be whole. I assent, said Sir Alisander. And there he made her a promise. Then was he soon whole. And when Alisander was whole then he repented him of his oath, for he might not be revenged upon king Mark. Right so there came a damsel that was cousin to the Earl of Pase, and she was cousin to Morgan le Fay. And by right that castle of La Beale Regard should have been hers by true inheritance. So this damsel entered into this castle where lay Alisander, and there she found him upon his bed, passing heavy and all sad.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How Alisander was delivered from the queen Morgan le Fay by the means of a damsel.

Sir knight, said the damsel, and ye would be merry, I could tell you good tidings. Well were me, said Alisander, and I might hear of good tidings, for now I stand as a prisoner by my promise. Sir, said she, wit you well that ye be a prisoner, and worse than ye ween. For my lady, my cousin queen Morgan le Fay, keepeth you here for none other intent but for to do her pleasure with you, when it liketh her. Defend me, said Alisander, from such pleasure, for I had lever die than I would do her such pleasure. Truly, said the damsel, and ye would lose me and be ruled by me, I shall make your deliverance with your worship. Tell me, said Alisander, by what mean, and ye shall have my love. Fair knight, said she, this castle of right ought to be mine, and I have an uncle the which is a mighty earl, he is earl of Pase, and of all folks he hateth most Morgan le Fay, and I shall send unto him, and pray him for my sake to destroy this castle for the evil customs that be used therein; and then will he come and set wild fire on every part of the castle, and I shall get you out at a privy postern, and there shall ye have your horse and your harness. Ye say well, damsel, said Alisander. And then she said, Ye may keep the room of this castle this twelvemonth and a day, then break ye not your oath. Truly, fair damsel, said Alisander, ye say sooth. And then he kissed her. So anon she sent unto her uncle, and bad him come and destroy that castle; for as the book saith, he would have destroyed that castle afore time, had not that damsel been. When the earl understood her letters he sent her word again, that on such a day he would come and destroy that castle. So when that day came, she showed Alisander a postern where through he should flee into a garden, and there he should find his armour and his horse. When the day came that was set, thither came the earl of Pase with four hundred knights, and set on fire all the parts of the castle, that, or they ceased, they left not a stone standing. And all this while that the fire was in the castle, he abode in the garden. And when the fire was done, he let make a cry that he would keep that piece of earth, there as the castle of La Beale Regard was, a twelvemonth and a day, from all manner knights that would come.

So it happed there was a duke that
sirius, and he was of the kin of 
celot. And this knight was a 
grim, for every third year he 
: at Jerusalem. And because 
il his life to go in pilgrimage, 
ed him duke Ansirus the pil-
ned this duke had a daughter 
t Alice, that was a passing fair 
and because of her father she 
ed Alice La Beale Pilgrim. 
on as she heard of this cry, 
unto Arthur's court, and said 
a hearing of many knights, 
at knight may overcome that 
that keepeth that piece of earth 
e me and all my lands. When 
ests of the Round Table heard 
thus, many were glad, for she 
king fair, and of great rents. 
t she let cry in castles and 
fast on her side as Sir Alisan- 
on his side. Then she dressed 
tion straight by the piece of 
t Alisander kept. So she was 
oon there but there came a 
f Arthur's court, that hight 
le Desirous, and he prof-
just with Alisander, and they 
red, and Sagramor le Desirous 
is spear upon Sir Alisander, 
Alisander smote him so hard 
ained his saddle. And when 
 Alice saw him just so well, she 
him a passing goodly knight 
back. And then she kept out 
avilion and took Sir Alisan-
bride, and thus she said: 
hght, I require thee of thy 
, shew me thy visage. I 
il, said Alisander, shew my 
And then he put off his helm; 
saw his visage she said, 
se I must love and never other. 
me your visage, said he.

CHAP. XXXIX.
nder met with Alice la Beale 
, and how he justed with two 
: and after of him and of Sir 
d.
he unwimpled her visage. And 
saw her he said, Here have 
I found my love and my lady. Truly, 
fair lady, said he, I promise you to be 
your knight, and none other that bear-
the life. Now, gentle knight, said 
she, tell me your name. My name is, 
said he, Alisander le Orphelin. Now, 
damsel, tell me your name, said he. 
My name is, said she, Alice la Beale 
Pilgrim. And when we be more at 
our heart's ease, both ye and I shall 
tell each other of what blood we be 
come. So there was great love betwixt 
them. And as they thus talked, there 
came a knight that hight Harsouse le 
Berbuse, and asked part of Sir Alisan-
der's spears. Then Sir Alisander en-
countered with him, and at the first Sir 
Alisander smote him over his horse 
croup. And then there came another 
knight that hight Sir Hewgon. And 
Sir Alisander smote him down as he 
did that other. Then Sir Hewgon pro-
ferred to do battle on foot. Sir Alisan-
der overcame him with three strokes, 
and there would have slain him had he 
not yielded him. So then Alisander 
made both those knights to swear to 
wear none armour in a twelvemonth and 
a day. Then Sir Alisander alight down, 
and went to rest him and repose him. 
Then the damsel that halp Sir Alisan-
der out of the castle, in her play told 
dame Alice altogether how he was 
prisoner of the castle of La Beale Re-
gard: and there she told her how 
she got him out of prison. Sir, said 
Alice la Beale Pilgrim, me seemeth ye 
are much beholden to this maiden. 
That is truth, said Sir Alisander. And 
there Alice told him of what blood she 
was come. Sir, wit ye well, she said, 
that I am of the blood of king Ban, 
that was father unto Sir Launcelot. 
Ye wis, fair lady, said Alisander, my 
mother told me that my father was 
brother unto a king, and I am nigh 
cousin to Sir Tristram. Then this while 
came there three knights, that one 
hight Vains, and that other hight Har-
vis de les Marches, and the third hight 
Perin de la Montaine. And with one 
spear Sir Alisander smote them down 
all three, and gave them such falls that
they had no list to fight upon foot. So he made them to swear to wear no arms in a twelvemonth. So when they were departed, Sir Alisander beheld his lady Alice on horseback as he stood in her pavilion. And then he was so enamoured upon her, that he wist not whether he were on horseback or on foot. Right so came the false knight Sir Mordred, and saw Sir Alisander was assayed upon his lady: and therewithal he took his horse by the bridle and led him here and there, and had cast to have led him out of that place to have shamed him. When the damsel that halp him out of that castle saw how shamefully he was led, anon she let arm her, and set a shield upon her shoulder. And therewith she mounted upon his horse, and gat a naked sword in her hand, and she thrust unto Alisander with all her might, and she gave him such a buffet that he thought the fire flew out of his eyes. And when Alisander felt that stroke he looked about him, and drew his sword. And when she saw that, she fled, and so did Mordred into the forest, and the damsel fled into the pavilion. So when Sir Alisander understood himself how the false knight would have shamed him, had not the damsel been, then was he wroth with himself that Sir Mordred was so escaped his hands. But then Sir Alisander and dame Alice had good game at the damsel, how sadly she hit him upon the helm. Then Sir Alisander jested thus day by day, and on foot he did many battles with many knights of king Arthur’s court, and with many knights strangers. Therefore to tell all the battles that he did it were overmuch to rehearse, for every day within that twelvemonth he had ado with one knight or with other, and some day he had ado with three or with four. And there was never knight that put him to the worse. And at the twelvemonth’s end he departed with his lady Alice la Beale Pilgrim. And the damsel would never go from him: and so they went into their country of Benoye, and lived there in great joy.

CHAP. XL.

How Sir Galahalt did do cry at Surluse, and queen Guenever should just against all that would never stint till he had sinned by treason. And by Alice his child which hight Bellengerus I.

And by good fortune he came to court of king Arthur, and passing good knight: and he in his father’s death; for the faith Mark slew both Sir Tristram Alisander falsely and feloniously, happed so that Alisander had grace nor fortune to come unto Arthur’s court. For and he had to Sir Launcelot, all knights saw knew him, he was one of the six knights that was in Arthur’s day, great dole was made for him.

So let we of him pass, and turn another tale. So it befell that Surluse, whereof can good knights. And this noble was a passing good man of all who ever he held a noble fellowship to. And then he came to Arthur and told him his intent, how his will, how he would let cry for the country of Surluse, that land was within the lands of Arthur, and there he asked him to let cry a justs. I will give you said king Arthur. But wit the said king Arthur, I may not to Sir, said queen Guenever, please to give me leave to be at that. With right good will, said Art Sir Galahalt the haut prince shou you in governance. Sir, said C. I will as ye will. Sir, then thou shalt take with me, and such as please me best. Do as said king Arthur. So anon demanded Sir Launcelot to make ready with such knights as he best. So in every good town of this land was made a cry, the country of Surluse Sir Galahalt make a justs that should last eigh
OF THE GREAT JUSTS IN SURLUSE.

the haut prince with the help Guenever's knights should just all manner of men that would when this cry was known, kings be, dukes and earls, barons and knights, made them ready to be stis. And at the day of justing me in Sir Dinadan disguised, many great deeds of arms.

CHAP. XLI.

Launcelot fought in the tour, and bow Sir Palamides did bese for a damsel.

At the request of queen Guenever Bagdemagus, Sir Launcelot the range, but he was disad that was the cause that few w him. And there met with Ector de Maris his own brother, r brake their spears upon other hands. And then either gat spear, and then Sir Launcelot Sir Ector de Maris his own That saw Sir Bleoberis, and Sir Launcelot such a buffet helm that he wist not well was. Then Sir Lannecot was nd smote Sir Bleoberis so sore helm that his head bowed backward. And he smote eft buffet that he avoided his sad d so he rode by and thrust the thickest. When the king galis saw Sir Ector and Sir lie on the ground, then he derous wroth, for they came x against them of Surluse. ring of Northgalis ran to Sir t, and brake a spear upon him ces. Thereswith Sir Launcelot the king of Northgalis and m such a buffet on the helm sword that he made him to horse; and anon the king was gain. So both the king Bag and the king of Northgalis dled together: and then began meddle, but they of Northgalis bigger.

Sir Launcelot saw his party worst, he thronged into the thickest press with a sword in his hand, and there he smote down on the right hand and on the left hand, and pulled down knights, and rased off their helms, that all men had wonder that ever one knight might do such deeds of arms. When Sir Meliagant, that was son unto king Bagdemagus, saw how Sir Launcelot fared, he marvelled greatly. And when he understood that it was he, he wist well that he was disguised for his sake. Then Sir Meliagant prayed a knight to slay Sir Launcelot's horse, either with sword or with spear. At that time king Bagdemagus met with a knight that hight Sauseise, a good knight, to whom he said, Now fair Sauseise, encounter with my son Meliagant, and give him large payment; for I would he were well beaten of thy hands, that he might depart out of the field. And then Sir Sauseise encountered with Sir Meliac gant, and either smote other down. And then they fought on foot, and there Sauseise had won Sir Meliagant had not there come rescues. So then the haut prince blew to lodging. And every knight unarmed him and went to the great feast. Then in the meanwhile there came a damsel unto the haut prince, and complained that there was a knight that hight Goneries, that withheld her all her lands. Then the knight was there present, and cast his glove to him, or to any that would fight in her name. So the damsel took up the glove all heavily for default of a champion. Then there came a varlet to her and said, Damsel, will ye do after me? Full fain, said the damsel. Then go ye unto such a knight that lyeth here beside in an hermitage, and that followeth the questing beast, and pray him to take the battle upon him, and anon I wot well he will grant you.

So anon she took her palfrey, and within awhile she found that knight, that was Sir Palamides. And when she required him, he armed him and rode with her, and made her to go to the haut prince, and to ask leave for her knight to do battle. I will well, said the haut prince. Then the knights
were ready in the field to just on horseback: and either gat a spear in their hands, and met so fiercely together that their spears all to-shivered. And then they flung out swords, and Sir Palamides smote Sir Goneries down to the earth, and then he rased off his helm, and smote off his head. Then they went to supper. And the damsel loved Sir Palamides, but the book saith she was of his kin. So then Sir Palamides disguised him in this manner; in his shield he bear the questing beast, and in all his trappings. And when he was thus ready, he sent to the haut prince to give him leave to just with other knights, but he was doubted of Sir Launcelot. The haut prince sent him word again that he should be welcome, and that Sir Launcelot should not just with him. Then Sir Galahalt the haut prince let cry what knight soever he were that smote down Sir Palamides should have his damsel to himself.

CHAP. XLII.

How Sir Galahalt and Palamides fought together, and of Sir Dinadan and Sir Galahalt.

Here beginneth the second day. Anon as Sir Palamides came into the field, Sir Galahalt the haut prince was at the range end, and met with Sir Palamides, and he with him, with great spears. And then they came so hard together that their spears all to-shivered. But Sir Galahalt smote him so hard that he bare him backward over his horse, but yet he lost not his stirrups. Then they drew their swords and lashed together many sad strokes that many worshipful knights left their business to behold them. But at the last Sir Galahalt the haut prince smote a stroke of might unto Sir Palamides sore upon the helm, but the helm was so hard that the sword might not bite, but slipped and smote off the head of the horse of Sir Palamides. When the haut prince wist, and saw the good knight fall unto the earth, he was ashamed of that stroke. And therewith he alighted down off his own horse, and prayed the good Sir Palamides to take that horse, and to forgive him that he said Palamides, I thank you. That great goodness, for ever of a worship a knight shall never discover. And so he mounted on his horse, and the haut prince had anon. Now, said the haut prince, release to you that maiden, she have won her. Ah, said Palamides, damsel and I be at your command. So they departed, and Sir Galahalt had such great deeds of arms. And came Dinadan and encountered Sir Galahalt, and either came so fast with their spears, that their spears brake to their hands. Dinadan had wend the haut prince but more weary than he was. And smote many sad strokes at the prince. But when Dinadan might not get him to the earth, My lord, I pray you leave me but another. The haut prince knew Dinadan, and left goodly for words, and so they departed. And there came another, and told the prince that it was Dinadan sooth, said the prince, therefore heavy that he is so escaped for with his mocks and jests thereof. I never have done with him. At Galahalt rode fast after him, him, Abide, Dinadan, for king sake. Nay, said Sir Dinadan, no more together this day. That wrath the haut prince might, Meliagant, and he smote his throat, that and he had fallen had broken, and with the same he smote down another knight came in they of Northgalis, and strangers, and were like to him of Surluse to the worse. Galahalt the haut prince had ever in hand. So there came in the knight Semound the Valiant, with knights, and he beat them all. Then the queen Guenever and Launcelot let blow to lodging: and knight unarmed him, and drest to the feast.
OF THE THIRD DAY OF JUSTING.

CHAP. XLIII.

Arcadé appealed Sir Palamides son, and bow Sir Palamides im.

Palamides was unarmed, he going for himself and the damon the haut prince commanded lodging. And he was not so his lodging, but there came a that bight Archade; he was unto Gonerics, that Sir Palæw afore in the damsel’s guard this knight Archade called nides traitor, and appealed him death of his brother. By the the haut prince, said Sir Palashall answer thee. When the ice understood their quarrel, he go to dinner, and as soon as dined, look that either knight y in the field. So when they ed, they were armed both, and sir horses; and the queen, and ice, and Sir Launcelot, were ehold them. And so they let r horses, and there Sir Palære Archade on his spear over e tail. And then Palamides und drew his sword; but Sir might not arise, and there mides raised off his helm, and ff his head. Then the haut and queen Guenever went to.

Then king Bagdemagus sent s son Meliagant, because Sir not should not meet with him,uested Sir Launcelot, and that
not.

CHAP. XLIV.

third day, and bow Sir Palamides with Sir Lamorak, and others beginmeth the third day of justi at that day king Bagdemale him ready, and there came him king Marsil, that had in island of Sir Galahalt the haut and this island had the name 1. Then it befell that king agus and king Marsil of Pomi-

tain met together with spears, and king Marsil had such a buffet that he fell over his horse croup. Then there came in a knight of king Marsil, to revenge his lord: and king Bagdemagus smote him down, horse and man, to the earth. So there came an earl that hight Arrouse, and Sir Breuse, and an hundred knights with them of Pomitain, and the king of Northgalis was with them; and all these were against them of Sur luse. And then there began great battle, and many knights were cast under horse feet. And ever king Bagdemagus did best, for he first began, and ever he held on. Gaheris, Gawaine’s brother, smote ever at the face of king Bagdemagus: and at the last king Bagdemagus hurled down Gaheris, horse and man. Then, by adventure, Sir Palamides, the good knight, met with Sir Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis’ brother, and there either smote other with great spears, that both their horses and knights fell to the earth. But Sir Bla mor had such a fall that he had almost broken his neck; for the blood brast out at nose, mouth, and his ears; but at the last he recovered well by good surgeons. Then there came in duke Chaleins of Clarance, and in his government there came a knight that hight Elis la Noire; and there encountered with him king Bagdemagus, and he smote Elis that he made him to avoid his saddle. So the duke Chaleins of Clarance did there great deeds of arms; and of so late as he came in the third day there was no man did so well, except king Bagdemagus and Sir Palamides; that the prize was given that day unto king Bagdemagus. And then they blew unto lodging, and unarmed them, and went to the feast. Right so there came Sir Dinadan, and mocked and jested with king Bagdemagus, that all knights laughed at him; for he was a fine jester, and well loving all good knights. So anon as they had dined there came a varlet, bearing four spears on his back, and he came to Palamides and said thus: Here is a knight by hath sent you the choice of four spears, and
requireth you for your lady’s sake to take that one half of these spears, and just with him in the field. Tell him, said Palamides, I will not fail him. When Sir Galahalt wist of this, he bad Palamides make him ready. So the queen Guenever, the haut prince, and Sir Launcelot, they were set upon scaffolds to give the judgment of these two knights.

Then Sir Palamides and the strange knight ran so eagerly together that their spears brake to their hands. Anon withal either of them took a great spear in his hand and all to-shivered them in pieces. And then either took a greater spear. And then the knight smote down Sir Palamides, horse and man, to the earth. And as he would have passed over him, the strange knight’s horse stumbled, and fell down upon Palamides. Then they drew their swords, and lashed together wonderly sore a great while. Then the haut prince and Sir Launcelot said they saw never two knights fight better than they did. But ever the strange knight doubled his strokes, and put Palamides aback. Therewith the haut prince cried, Ho; and then they went to lodging. And when they were unarmèd they knew it was the noble knight Sir Lamorak. When Sir Launcelot knew that it was Sir Lamorak he made much of him; for above all earthly men he loved him best except Sir Tristram. Then queen Guenever commended him, and so did all other good knights make much of him, except Sir Gawaine’s brethren. Then queen Guenever said unto Sir Launcelot, Sir, I require you that and ye just any more, that ye just with none of the blood of my lord Arthur. So he promised he would not as at that time.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the fourtib day, and of many great feats of arms.

Here beginneth the fourth day. Then came into the field the king with the hundred knights, and all they of Northgalis, and the duke Chaleins of Cla-
k. Therewithal then Sir Gala-
blow to lodging, and all the
gave Sir Lamorak the prize.
this while fought Palamides,
eris, Sir Safere, Sir Ector, on
ever were there four knights
watched. And then they were
had unto their lodging, and
them, and so they went to the
st.
then Sir Lamorak was come
court, queen Guenever took
her arms, and said, Sir, well
lone this day. Then came the
ice, and he made of him great
so did Dinadan, for he wept.
But the joy that Sir Launcelot
Sir Lamorak there might no
. Then they went unto rest;
the morn the haut prince let
the field.

CHAP. XLVI.

fifth day, and bow Sir Lamorak
beavest him.

beginneth the fifth day. So it
at Sir Palamides came in the
e and proffered to just there as
hus was, in a castle there be-
urse; and there encountered
a worshipful duke, and there
ides smote him over his horse
And this duke was uncle unto
thur. Then Sir Elise's son
to Palamides, and Palamides
lise in the same wise. When Sir
aw this, he was wroth. Then
his horse, and encountered with
mides, and Palamides smote
ard that he went to the earth,
man. And for to make a
, he smote down three bre-
Sir Gawaine's, that is for to
red, Galeris, and Agrawaine.
said Arthur, this is a great
for a Saracen, that he shall smite
blood. And therewithal
thur was wood wroth, and
to have made him ready to
at espied Sir Lamorak, that
nd his blood were discomfited.
he was ready, and asked
as if he would any more just.

Why should I not? said Palamides. Then they hurtled together, and brake
their spears and all to-shivered them,
that all the castle rang of their dints.
Then either got a greater spear in his
hand, and they came so fiercely to-
gether; but Sir Palamides' spear all
to-brast, and Sir Lamorak's did hold.
Therewithal Sir Palamides lost his
stirrups and lay upright on his horse's
back. And then Sir Palamides returned
again, and took his damsel, and Sir
Safer returned his way. So when he
was departed, king Arthur came to Sir
Lamorak, and thanked him of his good-
ness, and prayed him to tell him his
name. Sir, said Lamorak, wit you well,
I owe you my service: but as at this
time I will not abide here, for I see of
mine enemies many about me. Alas,
said Arthur, now wot I well it is Sir
Lamorak de Galis. O, Lamorak, abide
with me, and by my crown I shall never
fail thee: and not so hardy in Ga-
waine's head, nor none of his brethren,
to do thee any wrong. Sir, said Sir La-
морak, wrong have they done me and
to you both. That is truth, said king
Arthur, for they slew their own mother
and my sister, which me sore grieved.
It had been much fairer and better
that ye had wedded her, for ye are a
king's son as well as they. Truly, said
the noble knight Sir Lamorak unto
Arthur, her death shall I never forget;
I promise you and make mine avow I
shall avenge her death as soon as I see
time convenient. And if it were not at
the reverence of your highness I should
now have been revenged upon Sir Ga-
waine and his brethren. Truly, said
Arthur, I will make you at accord. Sir,
said Lamorak, as at this time I may
not abide with you, for I must to the
justs, where is Sir Launcelot and the
haut prince Sir Galahalt.

Then there was a damsel that was
daughter to king Bandes; and there was
a Saracen knight that hight Corsabrin,
and he loved the damsel, and in no wise
he would suffer her to be married. For
ever this Sir Corsabrin defamed her,
and named her that she was out of her
mind; and thus he let her that she might not be married.

CHAP. XLVII.

How Sir Palamides fought with Corsabin for a lady, and how Palamides slew Corsabin.

So by fortune this damsel heard tell that Palamides did much for damsels’ sakes; so she sent to him a pensel, and prayed him to fight with Sir Corsabin for her love, and he should have her, and her lands of her father’s that should fall to her. Then the damsel sent unto Corsabin, and bad him go unto Sir Palamides, that was a Paynim as well as he: and she gave him warning that she had sent him her pensel; and if he might overcome Palamides she would wed him. When Corsabin wist of her deeds, then was he wood wroth and angry, and rode unto Surluse, where the haut prince was, and there he found Sir Palamides ready, the which had the pensel. So there they waged battle either with other afore Galahalt. Well, said the haut prince, this day must noble knights just, and at after dinner we shall see how ye can speed. Then they blew to justs. And in came Dinadan, and met with Sir Gerin, a good knight, and he threw him down over his horse croup: and Sir Dinadan overthrew four knights more; and there he did great deeds of arms. For he was a good knight, but he was a scoffer, and a jester, and the merriest knight among fellowship that was that time living. And he had such a custom that he loved every good knight, and every good knight loved him again. So then when the haut prince saw Dinadan do so well, he sent unto Sir Launcelot, and bade him strike down Sir Dinadan:—And when that ye have done so, bring him afore me and the noble queen Guenever. Then Sir Launcelot did as he was required. Then Sir Lamorak and he smote down many knights, and rased off helms, and drove all the knights afore them. And so Sir Launcelot smote down Sir Dinadan, and made his men to unarm him, and so brought him to the queen and the prince, and then laughed at Sir Dinadan so sore that they might not. Well, said Sir Dinadan, yet his shame, for the old shrew Sir Launcelot smote me down. So they went one, and all the court had good Dinadan. Then when the thing was done, they blew to the field, to where Palamides pight his pensel in the field, and then they hurtled with their spears as it were, and either smote other to the ground. And then they pulled their swords, and dressed their shields, and got together mightily as mighty knights well nigh there was no piece of would hold them. For this was a passing felonious knight Corsabin, said Palamides, wilt thou make me yonder damsel, and the ord then was Corsabin wrought measure, and gave Palamides a buffet that he bowed on his horse. Then Palamides arose lightly upon the helm his head down right to the earth. And with he rased off his helm, a Corsabin, yield thee, or else I die of my hands. Fie on thee; Corsabin, do thy worst. Then I off his head. And therewith a stench of his body when the he departed, so that there might abide the savour. So was the fair had away and buried in a wood he was a Paynim.

Then they blew unto lord Palamides was unarmed, went unto queen Guenever, to the prince, and to Sir Launcelot the haut prince, here have this day a great miracle by what savour there was when departed from the body. Then we will require you to take the upon you: and I promise that knights will set the more by say more worship by you. Palamides, I will that ye all keep into this land I came to be chryst and in my heart I am christe
ed will I be. But I have made avow, that I may not be chris-
ll I have done seven true battles s' sake. And then will I be chris-
And I trust God will take mine or I mean truly. Then Sir Pala-
rayed queen Guenever and the ince to sup with him. And so
both, Sir Launcelot, and Sir k, and many other good knights.
he morn they heard their mass, w the field; and then knights
them ready.

CHAP. XLVIII.

sixth day, and what then was
done.

beginneth the sixth day. Then
ere in Sir Gaheris, and there
ed with him Sir Ossaise of
and Sir Gaheris smote him over
croup. And then either party
ed with other, and there was
ears broken, and many knights
der feet. So there came Sir
and Sir Aglovale, that were
unto Sir Lamorak, and they
other two knights, and either
ther so hard that all four knights
ses fell to the earth. When
orak saw his two brethren
was wroth out of measure.
he got a great spear in his
and therewithal he smote down
od knights, and then his spear
Then he pulled out his sword,
te about him on the right hand
the left hand, and rased off
nd pulled down knights, that all
velled of such deeds of arms
id, for he fared so that many
ed. Then he horded his bre-
gain, and said, Brethren, ye
to be ashamed to fall so off
ses; what is a knight but when
horseback? I set not by a
when he is on foot, for all
on foot are but pelowres bat-
or there should no knight fight
, but if it were for treason, or
were driven thereto by force:
e, brethren, sit fast upon your
horses, or else fight never more afore me. With that came in duke Chal-
leins of Clarance; and there encoun-
tered with him the eal Ulbawes of
Surluse, and either of them smote other
down. Then the knights of both par-
ties horded their lords again; for Sir
ctor and Bleoberis were on foot, wait-
ing on the duke Chaleins; and the
king with the hundred knights was with
the eal of Ulbawes. With that came
Gaheris, and lashed to the king with
the hundred knights, and he to him
again. Then came the duke Chaleins
and departed them. Then they blew
to lodging, and the knights unarmed
them, and drew them to their dinner;
and at the midst of their dinner in came
Dinadan, and began to rail. Then he
beheld the haut prince, that seemed
wroth with some fault that he saw.
For he had a custom he loved no fish;
and because he was served with fish, the
which he hated, therefore he was not
merry. When Sir Dinadan had espied
the haut prince, he espied where was a
fish with a great head, and that he get
betwixt two dishes, and served the haut
prince with that fish. And then he
said thus: Sir Galahalt, well may I
 liken you to a wolf, for he will never
eat fish, but flesh. Then the haut
prince laughed at his words. Well, well,
said Dinadan to Launcelot, what do
ye in this country; for here may no
mean knights win no worship for thee?
Sir Dinadan, said Launcelot, I ensure
thee that I shall no more meet with
thee, nor with thy great spear, for I
may not sit in my saddle when that
spear hitteth me. And if I be happy,
I shall beware of that boisterous body
that thou bearest. Well, said Laun-
celot, make good watch ever. God
forbid that ever we meet, but if it be
at a dish of meat. Then laughed the
queen and the haut prince, that they
might not sit at their table. Thus they
made great joy till on the morn. And
then they heard mass, and blew to field.
And queen Guenever and all the estates
were set, and judges armed clean with
their shields to keep the right.
CHAP. XLIX.
Of the seventh battle, and how Sir Launcelot, being disguised like a maid, smote down Sir Dinadan.

Now beginneth the seventh battle. There came in the duke Cambines, and there encounters with him Sir Arisstance, that was counted a good knight, and they met so hard that either bare other down, horse and man. Then came there the earl of Lambail, and helped the duke again to horse. Then came there Sir Osaise of Surluse, and he smote the earl Lambail down from his horse. Then began they to do great deeds of arms, and many spears were broken, and many knights were cast to the earth. Then the king of Northgalis and the earl Ulbawes smote together, that all the judges thought it was like mortal death. This mean while queen Guenever and the high prince and Sir Launcelot made there Sir Dinadan make him ready to just. I would, said Sir Dinadan, ride into the field, but then one of you twain will meet with me. Perdy, said the high prince, ye may see how we sit here as judges with our shields, and always mayest thou behold whether we sit here or not. So Sir Dinadan departed, and took his horse, and met with many knights, and did passing well. And as he was departed, Sir Launcelot disguised himself, and put upon his armour a maiden's garment freshly attired. Then Sir Launcelot made Sir Galihodin to lead him through the range, and all men had wonder what damsel it was. And so as Sir Dinadan came into the range, Sir Launcelot, that was in the damsel's array, gat Galihodin's spear, and ran unto Sir Dinadan. And always Sir Dinadan looked up there as Sir Launcelot was, and then he saw one sit in the stead of Sir Launcelot, armed. But when Dinadan saw a manner of a damsel, he dread perils that it was Sir Launcelot disguised. But Sir Launcelot came on him so fast that he smote him over his horse croup. And then with great scorns they gat Sir Dinadan into the forest there beside, and there they despoiled him unto his shirt, and put upon him a woman's garment, and so brought him into the field, and so they blew unto lodging. And every knight went and unarmed him. Then was Sir Dinadan brought in among them all. And when queen Guenever saw Sir Dinadan brought so among them all, then she laughed that she fell down, and so did all that were there. Well, said Dinadan to Launcelot, thou art so false that I can never beware of thee. Then, by all the assent, they gave Sir Launcelot the prize: the next was Sir Lamorak de Galis; the third was Sir Palamides; the fourth was king Bagdemagus. So these four knights had the prize. And there was great joy and great nobly in all the court. And on the morn queen Guenever and Sir Launcelot departed unto king Arthur; but in no wise Sir Lamorak would not go with them. I shall undertake, said Sir Launcelot, that, and ye will go with us, king Arthur shall charge Sir Gawaine and his brethren never to do you hurt. As for that, said Sir Lamorak, I will not trust Sir Gawaine, nor none of his brethren; and wit ye well Sir Launcelot, and it were not for my lord king Arthur's sake, I should match Sir Gawaine and his brethren well enough. But to say that I should trust them, that shall I never. And therefore I pray you recommend me unto my lord Arthur, and unto all my lords of the Round Table. And in what place that ever I come I shall do you service to my power: and, sir, it is but late that I revenged that when my lord Arthur's kin were put to the worse by Sir Palamides. Then Sir Lamorak departed from Sir Launcelot, and either wept at their departing.

CHAP. L.
How by treason Sir Tristram was brought to a tournament for to have been slain, and how he was put in prison.

Now turn we from this matter, and speak we of Sir Tristram, of whom this
principally of; and leave we the queen, Sir Launcelot, and Sirorak. And here beginneth the tale of king Mark that he ordained Sir Tristram. There was cried on the coasts of Cornwall a great tourney and justs. And all was done by Galahalt the haut prince, and Gudemagus, to the intent to slay Launcelot, or else utterly destroy him, because Sir Launcelot always was the higher degree than this prince and this king made was against Sir Launcelot. And their counsel was discovered unto king Mark, whereof he was full glad. So king Mark bethought him that he gave Sir Tristram unto that tourney disguised that no man should have him, to that intent that the haut prince should see that Tristram was Sir Launcelot. So at these justs Sir Tristram. And at that time Launcelot was not there, but when he saw a knight disguised do such feats of arms, they wend it had been Launcelot. And in especial king Mark said it was Sir Launcelot plainly. He set upon him, both king Mark's party and the haut prince, and knights, that it was wonder that Sir Tristram might endure that. Nevertheless for all the pain had, Sir Tristram wan the day at that tournament, and there he hurt many knights, and bruised them, so in all the justs the next day, they knew well that it was Sir Tristram. And all that were there were glad that Sir Tristram was hurt, and the remnant of his hurt; for Sir Tristram was so behated as was Sir Launcelot in the realm of England. Then king Mark unto Sir Tristram, and Sir nephew, I am sorry of your Gramercy, my lord, said Sir Mark. Then king Mark made Sir Tristram to be put in a horse bier, sign of love, and said, Fair I have never been your leech myself. Sir he rode forth with Sir Tristram, and brought him to a castle by daylight. And then king Mark made Sir Tristram to eat, and then after he gave him a drink, the which as soon as he had drunk he fell on sleep; and when it was night he made him to be carried to another castle, and there he put him in a strong prison, and there he ordained a man and a woman to give him his meat and drink. So there he was a great while. Then was Sir Tristram missed, and no creature wist where he was become. When La Beale lans heard how he was missed, privily she went unto Sir Sadok, and prayed him to espy where was Sir Tristram. Then when Sadok wist how Sir Tristram was missed, and anon espied that he was put in prison by king Mark and the traitors of Magons, then Sadok and two of his cousins laid them in ambushment, fast by the castle of Tintagil, in arms. And as by fortune there came riding king Mark and four of his nephews, and a certain of the traitors of Magons. When Sir Sadok espied them he brake out of the bushment, and set there upon them. And when king Mark espied Sir Sadok he fled as fast as he might. And there Sir Sadok slew all the four nephews unto king Mark. But these traitors of Magons slew one of Sadok's cousins, with a great wound in the neck, but Sadok smote the other to death. Then Sir Sadok rode upon his way unto a castle that was called Liones, and there he espied of the treason and felony of king Mark. So they of that castle rode with Sir Sadok till they came to a castle that hight Arbray. And there in the town they found Sir Dinas the seneschal, that was a good knight. But when Sir Sadok had told Sir Dinas of all the treason of king Mark, he defied such a king, and said he would give up his lands that he held of him. And when he said these words all manner knights said as Sir Dinas said. Then by his advice, and of Sir Sadok's, he let stuff all the towns and castles within the country of Liones, and assembled all the people that they might make.
CHAP. LI.

How King Mark let the counterfeit letters from the Pope, and how Sir Percivale delivered Sir Tristram out of prison.

Now turn we unto King Mark, that when he was escaped from Sir Sadok he rode unto the castle of Tintagil, and there he made great cry and noise, and cried unto harness all that might bear arms. Then they sought and found where were dead four cousins of King Mark's, and the traitors of Magons. Then the king let inter them in a chapel. Then the king let cry in all the country that held of him, to go unto arms, for he understood to the war he must needs. When King Mark heard and understood how Sir Sadok and Sir Dinas were risen in the country of Liones, he remembered of wiles and treason. Lo, thus he did: he let make and counterfeit letters from the Pope, and did make a strange clerk to bear them unto King Mark. The which letters specified, that King Mark should make him ready, upon pain of cursing, with his host to come to the Pope, to help to go to Jerusalem, for to make war upon the Saracens. When this clerk was come by the mean of the king, anon withal King Mark sent these letters unto Sir Tristram, and bad him say thus; That and he would go war upon the miscreants, he should be had out of prison, and to have all his power. When Sir Tristram understood this letter, then he said thus to the clerk: Ah, King Mark, ever hast thou been a traitor, and ever wilt be: but clerk, said Sir Tristram, say thou thus unto King Mark. Since the apostle Pope hath sent for him, bid him go thither himself, for tell him, traitor king as he is, I will not go at his command, get I out of my prison as I may. For I see I am well rewarded for my true service. Then the clerk returned unto King Mark, and told him of the answer of Sir Tristram. Well, said King Mark, yet shall he be beguiled. So he went into his chamber, and counterfeited letters, and the letters specified that the Pope desired Sir Tristram to come him make war upon the miscreants. the clerk was come again unto S tristram and took him these letter Sir Tristram beheld these letter anon espied they were of king counterfeiting. Ah, said Sir Tristram false hast thou been ever, king and so wilt thou end. Then th departed from Sir Tristram, and to king Mark again. By there were come four wounded knights the castle of Tintagil, and one of his neck was nigh broken in another had his arm stricken aw third was borne through with a the fourth had his teeth strict twain. And when they came afor Mark they cried and said, King fleest thou not, for all this com arisen clearly against thee. The king Mark wroth out of measure in the mean while there came to country Sir Percivale de Galis, Sir Tristram. And when he hea Sir Tristram was in prison, Sir Percivale made clearly the deliverance of S tram by his knightly means. And he was so delivered he made go of Sir Percivale, and so each other. Sir Tristram said unto Sir vale, And ye will abide in these m I will ride with you. Nay, said vale, in this country may I not for I must needs into Wales. Percivale departed from Sir Tristram rode straight unto king Mark told him how he had delivered S tram. And also he told the king he had done himself a great sh to put Sir Tristram in prison, it now the knight of most renown this world living. And wit the the most noble knights of the love Sir Tristram, and if he wil war upon you ye may not al That is truth, said king Mark may not love Sir Tristram bec loveth my queen and my wife, L Isoud. Ah fie for shame, said Sir vale, say ye never so more. Are uncle unto Sir Tristram, and I nephew? Ye should never think
knights as Sir Tristram, who did do himself so great a villany in his uncle’s wife, howbeit, said of her, he may love your queen because she is called one of the adies of the world. Then Sir e departed from king Mark, n he was departed king Mark ht him of more treason, noting king Mark granted Sir e never by no manner of means Sir Tristram. So anon king nt unto Sir Dinas the seneschal, should put down all the people had raised, for he sent him an he would go himself unto the of Rome to war upon the mis and this is a fairer war than raise the people against your When Sir Dinas the seneschal told that king Mark would goe miscreants, then Sir Dinas in haste put down all the people; then the people were departed an to his home, then king Mark where was Sir Tristram with La Beale Isoud. And there by treason king et take him and put him in contrary to his promise that he unto Sir Percivale. When queen understood that Sir Tristram was n she made as great sorrow as de lady or gentlewoman. Then Tristram sent a letter unto La Beale and prayed her to be his good nd if it pleased her to make a ready for her and him, he would her unto the realm of Logris, his land. When La Beale Isoud read Sir Tristram’s letters and that, she sent him another, and be of good comfort, for she do make the vessel ready, and gs to purpose. Then La Beale sent unto Sir Dinas, and to and prayed them in any wise: king Mark and put him in unto the time that she and Sir n were departed unto the realm Tris. When Sir Dinas the second understood the treason of king ese promised her again, and sent word that king Mark should be put in prison. And as they devised it so it was done. And then Sir Tristram was delivered out of prison, and anon in all the haste queen Isoud and Sir Tristram went and took their counsel with that they would have with them when they departed.

CHAP. LII.

How Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud came into England, and how Sir Launcelot brought them to Joyous Gard.

Then La Beale Isoud and Sir Tristram took their vessel, and came by water into this land. And so they were not in this land four days but there came a cry of a justs and tournament that king Arthur let make. When Sir Tristram heard tell of that tournament, he disguised himself and La Beale Isoud, and rode unto that tournament. And when he came there he saw many knights just and tourney, and so Sir Tristram dressed him to the range. And to make short conclusion, he overthrow fourteen knights of the Round Table. When Sir Launcelot saw these knights thus overthrown Sir Launcelot dressed him to Sir Tristram. That saw La Beale Isoud, how Sir Launcelot was come into the field. Then La Beale Isoud sent unto Sir Launcelot a ring, and bad him wit that it was Sir Tristram de Liones. When Sir Launcelot understood that there was Sir Tristram, he was full glad, and would not just. Then Sir Launcelot espied whither Sir Tristram went, and after him he rode, and then either made of other great joy. And so Sir Launcelot brought Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud unto Joyous Gard, that was his own castle that he had won with his own hands. And there Sir Launcelot put them in to weld for their own. And wit ye well that castle was garnished and furnished for a king and a queen royal there to have sojourned. And Sir Launcelot charged all his people to honour them and love them as they would do himself.

So Sir Launcelot departed unto king Arthur; and then he told queen Guenever how he that justed so well at the
last tournament was Sir Tristram. And there he told her how he had with him La Beale Isoud, maugre king Mark; and so queen Guenever told all this unto king Arthur. When king Arthur wist that Sir Tristram was escaped, and come from king Mark, and had brought La Beale Isoud with him, then was he passing glad. So because of Sir Tristram king Arthur let make a cry, that on May-day should be a justs, before the castle of Lonazep; and that castle was fast by Joyous Gard. And thus king Arthur devised, that all the knights of this land, and of Cornwall, and of North Wales, should just against all these countries.—Ireland, Scotland, and the remnant of Wales, and the country of Gore, and Surluse, and of Listinoise, and they of Northumberland, and all they that held lands of king Arthur on this half the sea. When this cry was made, many knights were glad and many were unglad. Sir, said Launcelot unto Arthur, by this cry that ye have made, ye will put us that be about you in great jeopardy, for there be many knights that have great envy to us, therefore when we shall meet at the day of justs, there will be hard shift among us. As for that, said Arthur, I care not, there shall we prove who shall be the best of his hands. So when Sir Launcelot understood wherefore king Arthur made this justing, then he made such purveyance that La Beale Isoud should behold the justs in a secret place that was honest for her estate.

Now turn we unto Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud, how they made great joy daily together with all manner of mirths that they could devise; and every day Sir Tristram would go ride on hunting, for Sir Tristram was that time called the best chaser of the world, and the noblest blower of an horn of all manner of measures. For, as books report, of Sir Tristram came all the good terms of venery and hunting, and all the sizes and measures of blowing of an horn; and of him we had first all the terms of hawking, and which were beasts of chase, and beasts of venery, and which were vermins; and all the blasts that belong to all manner of games. First to the uncoupling, to the seeking, to the rechate, to the flight, to the death, and to strake; and many other blasts and terms, that all manner of gentlemen have cause to the world's end to praise Sir Tristram and to pray for his soul.

CHAP. LIII.

How by the counsel of La Beale Isoud Sir Tristram rode armed, and how he met with Sir Palamides.

So on a day La Beale Isoud said unto Sir Tristram, I marvel me much, said she, that ye remember not yourself, how that ye be here in a strange country, and here be many perilous knights, and well ye wote that king Mark is full of treason, and that ye will ride thus to chase and hunt unarmed; ye might be destroyed. My fair lady and my love, I cry you mercy, I will no more so. So then Sir Tristram rode daily on hunting armed, and his men bearing his shield and his spear. So on a day, a little afore the month of May, Sir Tristram chased an hart passing eagerly, and so the hart passed by a fair well. And then Sir Tristram alighted, and put off his helm to drink of that bubley water. Right so he heard and saw the questing beast come to the well. When Sir Tristram saw that beast, he put on his helm, for he deemed he should hear of Sir Palamides, for that beast was his quest. Right so Tristram saw where came a knight armed, upon a noble courser, and he saluted him, and they spake of many things; and this knight's name was Breuse Sance Pité. And right so withal there came unto them the noble knight Sir Palamides, and either saluted other, and spake fair to other. Fair knights, said Sir Breuse Sance Pité, I can tell you tidings. What is that? said those knights. Sirs, wit ye well that king Mark is put in prison by his own knights, and all was for love of Sir Tristram: for king Mark had put Sir Tristram twice in prison; and once
ivale delivered the noble knight tram out of prison; and at the quee La Beale Isoud de-him, and went clearly away with o this realm: and all this whileark the false traitor is in prison. truth? said Sir Palamides; then hastily ear Sir Tristram. for to say that I love La Beale dare make good that I do, and that my service above all other and shall have the term of my nd right so as they stood talking w afore them where came a all armed on a great horse, and his men bare his shield, and the is spears. And anon as that espied them, he gat his shield spear, and dressed him to just. lows, said Sir Tristram, yonder ight will just with us; let see of us shall encounter with him, as well he is of the court of king. It shall not be long or he be that, said Sir Palamides, for I never no knight in my quest of sting beast but, and he would never refused him. As well may Breuse Sance Pité, follow that s ye. Then shall ye do bat- me, said Sir Palamides. So amides dressed him unto the night, Sir Bleoberis, that was a ble knight, nigh kin unto Sir lot. And so they met so hard r Palamides fell to the earth, and all. Then Sir Bleoberis cried and said thus: Make thee ready, ise traitor knight, Breuse Sance wit thou certainly I will have thee to the utterance, for the nights and ladies that thou hast betrayed. When this false knight itor, Breuse Sance Pité, heard y so, he took his horse by the and fled his way as fast as his ight run, for sore he was of him. When Sir Bleoberis saw him followed fast after him, through od through thin. And by for- Sir Breuse fled, he saw even im three knights of the Table of which the one hight Sir Ector de Maris, the other hight Sir Percivale de Galis, the third hight Sir Harry le Fise Lake, a good knight and an hardy. And as for Sir Percivale, he was called that time of his time one of the best knights of the world, and the best assured. When Breuse saw these knights, he rode straight unto them, and cried unto them, and prayed them of rescues. What need have ye? said Sir Ector. Ah, fair knights, said Sir Breuse, here followeth me the most traitor knight and most coward, and most of villainy: his name is Breuse Sance Pité; and if he may get me, he will slay me without mercy and pity. Abide with us, said Sir Percivale, and we shall warrant you. Then were they ware of Sir Bleoberis, that came riding all that he might. Then Sir Ector put himself forth for to just afore them all. When Sir Bleoberis saw that they were four knights, and he but himself, he stood in a doubt whether he would turn or hold his way. Then he said to himself, I am a knight of the Table Round, and rather than I should shame mine oath and my blood I will hold my way whatsoever fall thereof. And then Sir Ector dressed his spear, and smote either other passing sore, but Sir Ector fell to the earth. That saw Sir Percivale, and he dressed his horse toward him all that he might drive; but Sir Percivale had such a stroke that horse and man fell to the earth. When Sir Harry saw that they were both to the earth, then he said to himself, Never was Breuse of such prowess. So Sir Harry dressed his horse, and they met together so strongly that both the horses and knights fell to the earth; but Sir Bleoberis's horse began to recover again. That saw Sir Breuse, and he came hurtling, and smote him over and over, and would have slain him as he lay on the ground. Then Sir Harry le Fise Lake arose lightly, and took the bridle of Sir Breuse's horse, and said, Fie for shame, strike never a knight when he is at the earth; for this knight may be called no shameful knight of his deeds: for yet as men
may see there as he lieth on the ground, he hath done worshipfully, and put to the worse passing good knights. Therefore will I not let, said Sir Breuse. Thou shalt not choose, said Sir Harry, as at this time. Then when Sir Breuse saw that he might not choose, nor have his will, he spake fair. Then Sir Harry let him go. And then anon he made his horse to run over Sir Bleoberis, and rashed him to the earth like if he would have slain him. When Sir Harry saw him do so villainously, he cried, Traitor knight, leave off for shame. And as Sir Harry would have taken his horse to fight with Sir Breuse, then Sir Breuse ran upon him as he was half upon his horse, and smote him down horse and man to the earth, and had near slain Sir Harry the good knight. That saw Sir Percivale, and then he cried, Traitor knight what dost thou? And when Sir Percivale was upon his horse, Sir Breuse took his horse, and fled all that ever he might, and Sir Percivale and Sir Harry followed after him fast, but ever the longer they chased the further were they behind. Then they turned again, and came to Sir Ector de Maris and to Sir Bleoberis. Ah fair knights, said Bleoberis, why have ye succoured that false knight and traitor? Why, said Sir Harry, what knight is he? for well I wot it is a false knight, said Sir Harry, and a coward, and a felonious knight. Sir, said Bleoberis, he is the most coward knight, and a devourer of ladies, and a destroyer of good knights, and specially of Arthur's. What is your name? said Sir Ector. My name is Sir Bleoberis de Ganis. Alas, fair cousin, said Ector, forgive it me, for I am Sir Ector de Maris. Then Sir Percivale and Sir Harry made great joy that they met with Bleoberis, but all they were heavy that Sir Breuse was escaped them, whereof they made great dole.

CHAP. LIV.

Of Sir Palamides, and how he met with Sir Bleoberis and with Sir Ector, and of Sir Percivale.

Right so as they stood thus, there came Sir Palamides; and when the shield of Bleoberis lie on th then said Palamides, He that that shield, let him dress him to he smote me down here fast a fountain, and therefore I will fig him on foot. I am ready, said Soberis, here to answer thee; for well, sir knight, it was I, and m is Bleoberis de Ganis. Well a met, said Palamides, and wit the my name is Sir Palamides the S And either of them hated other death. Sir Palamides, said Ector thou well, there is neither thou, nor knight that beareth the life, th eth any of our blood, but he sl for it; therefore, and thou list to go seek Sir Launcelot, or Sir Tr and there shall ye find your With them have I met, said Pal but I had never no worship of Was there never no manner of said Sir Ector, but they, that matched with you? Yes, said mides, there was the third, a knight as any of them, and of he was the best that ever I found and he might have lived till he been an hardier man, there live knight now such, and his name was Lamorak de Galis. And as I justed at a tournament, there he threw me and thirty knights more there he won the degree. And departing, there met him Sir G and his brethren, and with gre they slew him feloniously, unto a knights' great damage. And wil Percivale heard that his broth dead, Sir Lamorak, he fell over his mane swooning, and there he made greatest dole that ever made. And when Sir Percivale arose, Alas, my good and noble brot Lamorak, now shall we never me I trow in all the wide world might not find such a knight as of his age; and it is too much to the death of our father King Pe and now the death of our good Sir Lamorak. Then in the mea there came a varlet from the c
HUR, and told them of the great
ent that should be at Lonazep,
these lands, Cornwall, and
his, should be against all them
ld come.

CHAP. LV.

Tristram met with Sir Dinadan,
t heir devices, and what be said
Gawaine's brethren.

urn we unto Sir Tristram, that
on hunting he met with Sir
, that was come into that
to seek Sir Tristram. Then
dan told Sir Tristram his
at Sir Tristram would not tell
e, wherefore Sir Dinadan was
For such a foolish knight as
aid Sir Dinadan, I saw but late
lying by a well, and he fared
pt, and there he lay like a fool,
, and would not speak, and his
y by him, and his horse stood
and well I wot he was a lover.

ir, said Sir Tristram, are
a lover? Marry, fie on that
aid Sir Dinadan. That is evil
d Sir Tristram, for a knight
er be of prowess, but if he be a
It is well said, said Sir Din-
w tell me your name, sith ye be
or else I shall do battle with
for that, said Sir Tristram, it
son to fight with me but I tell
name: and as for that, my name
not writ as at this time. Fie
, said Dinadan, art thou a
and darest not tell thy name to
repose I will fight with thee. As
said Sir Tristram, I will be ad-
 will not fight but if me list;
do battle, said Sir Tristram, ye
able to withstand me. Fie on
ward, said Sir Dinadan. And
they hoved still, they saw a
me riding against them. Lo,
Tristram, see where cometh a
ding will just with you. Anon
Dinadan beheld him, he said,
the same doted knight that I
by the well, neither sleeping
. Well, said Sir Tristram, I
know that knight well with the covered
shield of azure, he is the king's son of
Northumberland, his name is Épinegris,
and he is as great a lover as I know, and
he loveth the king's daughter of Wales,
a full fair lady. And now I suppose,
said Sir Tristram, and ye require him
he will just with you; and then shall ye
prove whether a lover be a better knight
or ye that will not love no lady. Well,
said Sir Dinadan, now shalt thou see
what I shall do. Therewithal Sir Din-
dan spake on high and said, Sir knight,
make thee ready to just with me, for it
is the custom of errant knights one to
just with other. Sir, said Épinegris, is
it the rule of you errant knights for
to make a knight to just will he or
nill? As for that, said Dinadan, make
thee ready, for here is for me. And
therewithal they spurred their horses,
and met together so hard that Épinegris
smote down Sir Dinadan. Then Sir
Tristram rode to Sir Dinadan, and said,
How now? meeteth the lover hath
well sped. Fie on thee coward, said
Sir Dinadan, and if thou be a good
knight revenge me. Nay, said Sir Tris-
tram, I will not just as at this time, but
take your horse, and let us go hence.
Defend me, said Sir Dinadan, from thy
fellowship, for I never sped well since I
met with thee. And so they departed.
Well, said Sir Tristram, peradventure I
could tell you tidings of Sir Tristram.
Defend me, said Dinadan, from thy fel-
lowship, for Sir Tristram were mickle
the worse and he were in thy company.
And then they departed. Sir, said Sir
Tristram, yet it may happen I shall
meet with you in other places. So rode
Sir Tristram unto Joyous Gard, and
there he heard in that town great noise
and cry. What is this noise, said Sir
Tristram. Sir, said they, here is a
knight of this castle that hath been
long among us, and right now he is
slain with two knights, and for none
other cause but that our knight said
that Sir Launcelot were a better knight
than Sir Gawaine. That was a simple
cause, said Sir Tristram, for to slay a
good knight for to say well by his
master. That is little remedy to us, said the men of the town, for and Sir Launcelot had been here, soon we should have been revenged upon the false knights. When Sir Tristram heard them say so, he sent for his shield and for his spear, and lightly within a little while he had overthrown them, and bade them turn and amend what they had misdone. What amends wouldest thou have? said the one knight. And therewith they took their course, and either met other so hard, that Sir Tristram smote down that knight over his horse tail. Then the other knight dressed him to Sir Tristram; and in the same wise he served the other knight. And then they gat off their horses as well as they might, and dressed their shields and swords to do their battle to the utterance. Knights, said Sir Tristram, ye shall tell me of whence ye are and what be your names; for such men ye might be ye should hard escape my hands; and ye might be such men of such a country that for all your evil deeds ye should pass quit. Wit thou well, sir knight, said they, we fear us not to tell thee our names, for my name is Sir Agravaine, and my name is Gaheris, brethren unto the good knight Sir Gawaine, and we be nephews unto king Arthur. Well, said Sir Tristram, for king Arthur's sake I shall let you pass as at this time. But it is shame, said Sir Tristram, that Sir Gawaine and ye that be come of so great a blood, that ye four brethren are so named as ye be. For ye be called the greatest destroyers and murderers of good knights that be now in this realm; for it is but as I heard say, that Sir Gawaine and ye slew among you a better knight than ever ye were, that was the noble knight Sir Lamorak de Galis; and it had pleased God, said Sir Tristram, I would I had been by Sir Lamorak at his death. Then shouldst thou have gone the same way, said Sir Gaheris. Fair knight, said Sir Tristram, there must have been many more knights than ye are. And therewithal Sir Tristram departed from them toward Joyous Gard. And when he was departed they took their horses, and the one to the other, We will overtake him and revenged upon him in the deep. Lamorak.

CHAP. LVI.

How Sir Tristram smote down Sir Agravaine and Sir Gaheris, and Dinadan was sent for by La Beale Isoud.

So when they had overtaken Sir Tristram, Sir Agravaine bade his traitor knight. That is evil said Sir Tristram; and therewith he pulled his sword, and smote Sir Agravaine buffet upon the helm that he fell down of his horse in a swoon, had a grievous wound. And turned to Gaheris, and Sir Tristram smote his sword and his helm with such a might that Gaheris saw his saddle; and so Sir Tristram unto Joyous Gard, and there he disarmed him. So Sir told La Beale Isoud of all his adventures as ye have heard tofore. And when he had heard him tell of Sir Dinadan, he said, is not that he that made the speech by king Mark? That same is he that harrowed Tristram, for he is the best jest, and a noble knight of his age, and the best fellow that I know. Sir, said Sir Tristram, good knights love his fellowship. Sir, said she, why brought ye them? Have ye no care, Sir Tristram, for he rideth to seek for me in this country, and therefore he shall be away till he have met with me. And there Sir Tristram told La Beale how Sir Dinadan held against all. Right so there came in a varlet Sir Tristram how there was errant knight into the town with several colours upon his shield. That is evil, said Sir Tristram. Whose shall I do? said Sir Tristram; for him, my lady Isoud, and I shall be seen, and ye shall hear the knight that ever ye spake with the maddest talker, and I pray heartily that ye make him good. Then anon La Beale Isoud sent
and prayed Sir Dinadan that he
woulde come into the castle and repose at his grace, with a lady. With a good heart Sir Dinadan. And so he set upon his horse, and rode into the castle, and there he alighted, and was armed, and brought into the chamber. La Beale Isoud came unto him, and saluted him. Then he bade him of whencesoever he was. He said Dinadan, I am of the court of Arthur, and knight of the Table, and my name is Sir Dinadan. What say ye in this country? said La Beale Isoud. Madam, said he, I seek Sir Tristram the good knight, for it was tell me that he was in this country. But well, said La Beale Isoud, I am not aware of him. Madam, said Dinadan, I marvel of Sir Tristram and more other lovers, what aileth them to be so mad and so sotted upon.

Why, said La Beale Isoud, a knight and be no lover? It be to you: wherefore ye may called a good knight but if a quarrel for a lady. Nay, Dinadan, for the joy of love is sweet, and the sorrow thereof, and meth thereof, endureth over long. I La Beale Isoud, say ye not so, the fast by was the good knight Oberis, that fought with three at once for a damsel's sake, and her afore the king of Northumbria. It was so, said Sir Dinadan, for him well for a good knight and come of noble blood, for noble knights of whom he is come is Sir Launcelot du Lake. Now thou, said La Beale Isoud, tell me fight for my love with three that done me great wrong? and such as ye be a knight of kings. I require you to do battle for me. Sir Dinadan said, I shall say as fair a lady as ever I saw any, ch fairer than is my lady queen, but, wit ye well at one word, not fight for you with three.

Heaven defend me. Then laughed, and had good game at it so he had all the cheer that she might make him; and there he lay all that night. And on the morn early Sir Tristram armed him, and La Beale Isoud gave him a good helm; and then he promised her that he would meet with Sir Dinadan, and they two would ride together unto Lonazep, where the tournament should be; and there shall I make ready for you, where ye shall see the tournament. Then departed Sir Tristram with two squires that bare his shield and his spears that were great and long.

CHAP. LVII.

How Sir Dinadan met with Sir Tristram, and with justing with Sir Palamides Sir Dinadan knew him.

Then after that, Sir Dinadan departed and rode his way a great pace until he had overtaken Sir Tristram. And when Sir Dinadan had overtaken him, he knew him anon, and he hated the fellowship of him above all other knights. Ah, said Sir Dinadan, art thou that coward knight that I met with yesterday, keep thee, for thou shalt just with me, maugre thy head. Well, said Sir Tristram, and I am loth to just. And so they let their horses run, and Sir Tristram missed of him a purpose, and Sir Dinadan brake a spear upon Sir Tristram; and therewith Sir Dinadan dressed him to draw out his sword. Not so, said Sir Tristram, why are ye so wroth? I will not fight. Fie on thee, coward, said Sir Dinadan, thou shamest all knights. As for that, said Sir Tristram, I care not, for I will wait upon you and be under your protection, for because ye are so good a knight ye may save me. The devil deliver me of thee, said Sir Dinadan, for thou art as goodly a man of arms and of thy person as ever I saw, and the most coward that ever I saw. What wilt thou do with those great spears that thou carriest with thee? I shall give them, said Sir Tristram, to some good knight when I come to the tournament: and if I see you do best I shall give them to you. So thus as they rode talking they saw where came an errant knight afore
them, that dressed him to just. Lo, said Sir Tristram, yonder is one will just, now dress thee to him. A shame betide thee, said Sir Dinadan. Nay not so, said Tristram, for that knight be-seemeth a shrew. Then shall I, said Sir Dinadan. And so they dressed their shields and their spears, and they met together so hard that the other knight smote down Sir Dinadan from his horse. Lo, said Sir Tristram, it had been better ye had left. Fie on thee, coward, said Sir Dinadan. Then Sir Dinadan started up, and gat his sword in his hand, and proffered to do battle on foot. Whether in love or in wrath, said the other knight. Let us do battle in love, said Sir Dinadan. What is your name? said that knight, I pray you tell me. Wit ye well my name is Sir Dinadan. Ah Dinadan, said that knight, and my name is Gareth, the youngest brother unto Sir Gawaine. Then either made of other great cheer, for this Gareth was the best knight of all the brethren, and he proved a good knight. Then they took their horses, and there they spake of Sir Tristram, how such a coward he was: and every word Sir Tristram heard, and laughed them to scorn. Then were they ware where there came a knight afore them well horded and well armed, and he made him ready to just. Fair knights, said Sir Tristram, look betwixt you who shall just with yonder knight, for I warn you I will not have ado with him. Then shall I, said Sir Gareth: and so they encountered together, and there that knight smote down Sir Gareth over his horse croup. How now, said Sir Tristram unto Sir Dinadan, dress thee now, and revenge the good knight Gareth. That shall I not, said Sir Dinadan, for he hath stricken down a much bigger knight than I am. Ah, said Sir Tristram, now Sir Dinadan I see and feel your heart faileth you, therefore now shall ye see what I shall do. And then Sir Tristram hurtled unto that knight, and smote him quite from his horse. And when Sir Dinadan saw that he marvelled greatly: and then he deemed that it was Sir Tristram. Then this knight that was on foot pulled sword to do battle. What is you said Sir Tristram. Wit ye w the knight, my name is Sir Palamides. What knight hate ye most? Tristram. Sir knight, said he Sir Tristram to the death, for as meet with him the one of us shall. Ye say well, said Sir Tristram, ye well that I am Sir Tristram dead, and now do your worst. W Palamides heard him say so astonished, and then he said pray you, Sir Tristram, forgive mine evil will, and if I live I will you service above all other knight be living, and there as I have one evil will me sore repenteth. I what aileth me, for me seemeth you are a good knight, and none knight that named himself a knight should not hate you; therefore I require you, Sir Tristram, to displease at mine unkind word. Palamides, said Sir Tristram, well, and well I wot ye are knight, for I have seen you prove many great enterprises have you upon you, and well achieved therefore, said Sir Tristram, I have any evil will to me, now right it, for I am ready at your Not so, my lord Sir Tristram; I you knightly service in all thing will command. And right so take you, said Sir Tristram they rode forth on their ways, took many things. O my lord Sir Tr Dinadan, foul have ye mocks for truly I came into this country for your sake, and by the advice of Sir Launcelot, and yet would Launcelot tell me the certainty where I should find you. Truly Sir Tristram, Sir Launcelot was where I was, for I abode within own castle.

CHAP. LVIII.

How they approached the castle and of other devices of the death Lamorak.

Thus they rode until they went...
castle Lonzep; and then were are of four hundred tents and
is, and marvellous great ordi-
Truly, said Sir Tristram, yon-
see the greatest ordinance that saw, Sir, said Palamides, me
there was as great an ordinance castle of Maidens upon the rock ye won the prize, for I saw my-
ere ye forjusted thirty knights.
d Dinadan, and in Surluse at
ournament that Sir Galahalt of ng Isles made, the which there even days, was as great a gather-
is here, for there were many
. Who was the best? said Sir n.
Sir, it was Sir Launcelot du x the noble knight Sir Lamorak l. And Sir Launcelot won the
I doubt not, said Sir Tristram, won the degree, so he had not vermatched with many knights.
the death of Sir Lamorak, said stram, it was over great pity, for day he was the cleanest mighted nd the best winded of his age s on live, fur I knew him that he biggest knight that ever I met but if it, were Sir Launcelot. d Sir Tristram, full woe is me death. And if they were not ains of my lord Arthur that m, they should die for it, and all hat were consenting to his death. r such things, said Sir Tristram, to draw unto the court of my arthur: I will that ye wit it, r Tristram unto Gareth. Sir, I you not, said Gareth, for well erstand the vengeance of my n Sir Gawaine, Sir Agravaine, k, and Mordred. But as for me, Gareth, I meddle not of their, therefore is none of them that me; and for I understand they be ers of good knights I left their ry, and God would I had been by, ret, when the noble knight Sir uk was slain. Now, truly, said Sir n, it is well said of you, for I had an all the gold betwixt this and had been there. Yea, said Sir Pa, and so would I had been there, and yet had I never the degree at no justs nor tournament there as he was, but he put me to the worse or on foot or on horseback, and that day that he was slain he did the most deeds of arms that ever I saw knight do in all my life days. And when him was given the degree by my lord Arthur, Sir Gawaine and his three brethren, Agravaine, Gaheris, and Sir Mordred, set upon Sir Lamorak in a privy place, and there they slew his horse, and so they fought with him on foot more than three hours, both before him and behind him; and Sir Mordred gave him his death's wound behind him at his back, and all to-hewed him: for one of his squires told me that saw it. Fie upon treason, said Sir Tristram, for it killeth my heart to hear this tale. So doth it mine, said Gareth; brethren as they be mine I shall never love them, nor draw in their fellowship, for that deed. Now speak we of other deeds, said Sir Palamides, and let him be, for his life ye may not get again. That is the more pity, said Dinadan, for Sir Gawaine and his brethren, except you, Sir Gareth, hate all the good knights of the Round Table for the most part; for well I wot, and they might privily, they hate my lord Sir Launcelot, and all his kin, and great privy despite they have at him, and that is my lord Sir Launcelot well ware of, and that causeth him to have the good knights of his kin about him.

CHAP. LIX.

How they came to Humber bank, and how they found a ship there, wherin lay the body of king Hermance.

Sir, said Palamides, let us leave off this matter, and let us see how we shall do at this tournament. By mine advice, said Palamides, let us four hold together against all that will come. Not by my counsel, said Sir Tristram, for I see by their pavilions there will be four hundred knights, and doubt ye not, said Sir Tristram, but there will be many good knights, and be a man never so valiant nor so big yet he may be over-
matched. And so have I seen knights done many times: and when they bend best to have won worship they lost it. For manhood is not worth but if it be meddled with wisdom: and as for me, said Sir Tristram, it may happen I shall keep mine own head as well as another. So thus they rode until that they came to Humber bank, where they heard a cry and a doleful noise. Then were they ware in the wind where came a rich vessel covered over with red silk, and the vessel landed fast by them. Therewith Sir Tristram alight and his knights. And so Sir Tristram went afore and entered into that vessel. And when he came within, he saw a fair bed richly covered, and thereupon lay a dead seemly knight, all armed, save the head was all be-bled, with deadly wounds upon him: the which seemed to be a passing good knight. How may this be, said Sir Tristram, that this knight is thus slain? Then Sir Tristram was ware of a letter in the dead knight's hand. Master mariners, said Sir Tristram, what meaneth that letter? Sir, said they, in that letter ye shall hear and know how he was slain, and for what cause, and what was his name; but sir, said the mariners, wit ye well that no man shall take that letter and read it but if he be a good knight, and that he will faithfully promise to revenge his death, else shall there no knight see that letter open. Wit ye well, said Sir Tristram, that some of us may revenge his death as well as others, and if it be so as ye mariners say, his death shall be revenged. And therewith Sir Tristram took the letter out of the knight's hand; and it said thus:—Hermance king and lord of the Red City, I send unto all knights errant recommending unto you noble knights of Arthur's court, I beseech them all among them to find one knight that will fight for my sake with two brethren that I brought up of nought, and feloniously and traitorly they have slain me, wherefore I beseech one good knight to revenge my death. And he that revengeth my death, I will that he have my Red City and all my castles. Sir, said the mariners, wit ye well this king and knight that here lieth was a full worshipful man, and of full great prowess, and full well he loved all manner of knights errant. Truly, said Sir Tristram, here is a piteous case, and full fain I would take this enterprise upon me, but I have made such a promise that needs I must be at this great tournament or else I am shamed. For well I wot for my sake in especial my lord Arthur let make this justs and tournament in this country; and well I wot that many worshipful people will be there at that tournament for to see me. Therefore I fear me to take this enterprise upon me, that I shall not come again betimes to this justs. Sir, said Palamides, I pray you give me this enterprise, and ye shall see me achieve it worshipfully, or else I shall die in this quarrel. Well, said Sir Tristram, and this enterprise I give you, with this that ye be with me at this tournament, that shall be as at this day seven night. Sir, said Palamides, I promise you that I shall be with you by that day if I be unslain or unmaimed.

CHAP. LX.

How Sir Tristram with his fellowship came and were with an host which after fought with Sir Tristram; and other matters.

Then departed Sir Tristram, Gareth, and Sir Dinadan, and left Sir Palamides in the vessel; and so Sir Tristram beheld the mariners how they sailed over long Humber. And when Sir Palamides was out of their sight, they took their horses, and beheld about them. And then were they ware of a knight that came riding against them unarmed, and nothing about him but a sword. And what this knight came nigh them he saluted them, and they him again. Fair knights, said that knight, I pray you insomuch as ye be knights errant, that ye will come and see my castle, and take such as ye find there; I pray you heartily. And so they rode with him into his
and there they were brought hall, that was well appareled, they were there unarmed and set rd. And when this knight saw tram, anon he knew him; and s knight waxed pale and wroth Tristram. When Sir Tristram host make such cheer, he mar- and said, Sir, mine host, what nake you? Wit thou well, said he, the worse for thee, for I know Tristram de Liones, thou slewest her. And therefore I give thee us I will slay thee, and ever I may e at large. Sir knight, said Sir n, I am never advised that ever I y brother of yours; and if ye say id I will make you amends unto yer. I will none amends, said right, but keep thee from me. So ere had dined, Sir Tristram asked es and departed. And so they their ways; and within a little ir Dinadan saw where came a well armed, and well horsed, shield. Sir Tristram, said Sir n, take keep to yourself, for I ke yonder cometh your host I have ado with you. Let him said Sir Tristram, I shall abide well as I may. Anon the knight, e came nigh Sir Tristram, he d bade him abide and keep him. hurtled together, but Sir Tris- note the other knight so sore bare him over his horse croup. night arose lightly and took his gain, and so rode fiercely to Sir n, and smote him twice hard e helm. Sir knight, said Sir n, I pray you leave off and smite more, for I would be loth to deal a and I might choose, for I have eat and your drink within my For all that he would not leave, a Sir Tristram gave him such a upon the helm, that he fell up so from his horse, that the blood but at the ventails of his helm, he lay still, likely to have been Then Sir Tristram said, Me re-sore of this buffet that I smote  to, for as I suppose he is dead. And so they left him and rode on their ways. So they had not ridden but a while, but they saw coming against them two full likely knights, well armed and well horsed, and goodly servants about them. The one was Berrant le Apres, and he was called the king with the hundred knights, and the other was Sir Segwarides, which were renowned two noble knights. So as they came either by other, the king looked upon Sir Dinadan, that at that time had Sir Tristram's helm upon his shoulder, the which helm the king had seen before with the queen of Northgalis, and that queen the king loved, and that helm the queen of Northgalis had given unto La Beale Isoud, and the queen La Beale Isoud gave it to Sir Tristram. Sir knight, said Berrant, where had ye that helm? What would ye? said Sir Di- nadan. For I will have ado with thee, said the king, for the love of her that owned that helm, and therefore keep you. So they departed and came to-gether with all the mights of their horses; and there the king with the hundred knights smote Sir Dinadan, horse and all, to the earth; and then he commanded his servant, Go and take thou his helm off, and keep it. So the varlet went to unbuckle his helm. What helm? What wilt thou do? said Sir Tristram; leave that helm. To what intent, said the king, will ye, sir knight, meddle with that helm? Wit you well, said Sir Tristram, that helm shall not depart from me, or it be dearer bought. Then make you ready, said Sir Berrant unto Sir Tristram. So they hurtled together, and there Sir Tristram smote him down over his horse tail. And then the king arose lightly, and gat his horse lightly again, and then he strake fiercely at Sir Tristram many great strokes. And then Sir Tristram gave Sir Berrant such a buffet upon the helm that he fell down over his horse, sore stunned. Lo, said Sir Dinadan, that helm is unhappy to us twain, for I had a fall for it, and now, sir king, have ye another fall. Then Segwarides asked, Who shall just with me? I pray
thee, said Sir Gareth unto Dinadan, let me have this jests. Sir, said Dinadan, I pray you take it as for me. That is no reason, said Tristram, for this jests should be yours. At a word, said Sir Dinadan, I will not thereof. Then Gareth dressed him to Sir Segwarides, and there Sir Segwarides smote Sir Gareth and his horse to the earth. Now, said Sir Tristram to Dinadan, just with yonder knight. I will not thereof, said Dinadan. Then will I, said Sir Tristram. And then Sir Tristram ran to him and gave him a fall, and so they left them on foot. And Sir Tristram rode unto Joyous Gard, and there Sir Gareth would not of his courtesy have gone into this castle, but Sir Tristram would not suffer him to depart. And so they alight and unarmed them, and had great cheer. But when Dinadan came afore La Beale Isoud, he cursed the time that ever he bare Sir Tristram's helm, and there he told her how Sir Tristram had mocked him. Then was there laughing and jesting at Sir Dinadan, that they wist not what to do with him.

CHAP. LXI.

How Palamides went for to fight with two bretbren for the death of king Hermance.

Now will we leave them merry within Joyous Gard, and speak we of Sir Palamides. Then Sir Palamides sailed even along Humber to the coasts of the sea, where was a fair castle. And at that time it was early in the morning afore day. Then the mariners went unto Sir Palamides, that slept fast. Sir knight, said the mariners, ye must arise, for here is a castle, there ye must go into. I assent me, said Sir Palamides. And therewithal he arrived. And then he blew his horn, that the mariners had given him. And when they within the castle heard that horn, they put forth many knights, and there they stood upon the walls, and said with one voice, Welcome be ye to this castle. And then it waxed clear day, and Sir Palamides entered into the castle. And within a while he was served with many divers meats. Then Sir Palamides heard about him much weeping and great dole. What may this mean? said Sir Palamides: I love not to hear such a sorrow, and I would know what it meaneth. Then there came afore him one whose name was Sir Ebel, that said thus, Wit ye well, sir knight, this dole and sorrow is here made every day, and for this cause: we had a king that hight Hermance, and he was king of the Red City, and this king that was lord was a noble knight, large and liberal of his expense. And in the world he loved nothing so much as he did errant knights of king Arthur's court, and all justing, hunting, and all manner of knightly games; for so kind a king and knight had never the rule of poor people as he was; and because of his goodness and gentleness we bemoan him and ever shall. And all kings and estates may beware by our lord, for he was destroyed in his own default, for bad he cherished them of his blood he had yet lived with great riches and rest; but all estates may beware of our king. But alas, said Ebel, that we shall give all other warning by his death. Tell me, said Palamides, in what manner was your lord slain, and by whom? Sir, said Sir Ebel, our king brought up of children two men that now are perilous knights, and these two knights our king had so in charity, that he loved no man nor trusted no man of his blood, nor none other that was about him. And by these two knights our king was governed: and so they ruled him peaceably, and his lands, and never would they suffer none of his blood to have no rule with our king. And also he was so free and so gentle and they so false and deceivably, that they ruled him peaceably; and that espied the lords of our king's blood, and departed from him unto their own livelihood. Then when these two traitors understood that they had driven all the lords of his blood from him, they were not pleased with that rule, but
1. THE LETTER TELLING OF KING HERMANCE'S DEATH. 257

...thought to have more, as ever old saw, Give a churl rule, and he will not be sufficed; for he be that is ruled by a born, and the lord of the soil gentleman born, the same vil-Il destroy all the gentlemen im; therefore all estates and ware whom ye take about you. ye be a knight of king Arthur's member this tale, for this is the conclusion. My lord and king o the forest hereby, by the ad- these false traitors; and there x'd at the red deer, armed at all ill like a good knight; and so ur he waxed dry, and then he nd drank at a well; and when alight, by the assent of these tors, that one that hight Helius my smote our king through the th a spear, and so they left him and when they were departed, fortune I came to the well, and y lord and king wounded to the And when I heard his com- let bring him to the wat safe side, at same ship I put him alive; n my lord king Hermance was vessel, he required me for the h I owed unto him for to write n this manner:—

CHAP. LXII.

of the letter written for to revenge g's death, and bow Sir Palamides for to have the battle.

EMENDING unto king Arthur and his knights errant, beseeching . that insomuch as I king Her- king of the Red City, thus am felony and treason through two of mine own, and of mine own up, and of mine own making, e worshipful knight will revenge i, insomuch I have been ever to er well willing unto Arthur's nd who that will adventure his these two traitors for my sake battle, I king Hermance, king ed City, freely give him all my yd rents that ever I held in my life. This letter, said Ebel, I wrote by my lord's commandment; and then he received his Creator, and when he was dead he commanded me or ever he was cold to put that letter fast in his hand; and then he commanded me to put forth that same vessel down Hum- ber, and I should give these mariners in commandment never to stint until that they came unto Logris, where all the noble knights shall assemble at this time;—And there shall some good knight have pity on me to revenge my death, for there was never king nor lord falseleyer ne traitorlyer slain than I am here to my death. Thus was the com- plaint of our king Hermance. Now, said Sir Ebel, ye know all how our lord was betrayed, we require you for God's sake have pity upon his death, and wor- shipfully revenge his death, and then may ye hold all these lands. For we all wit well that, and ye may slay these two traitors, the Red City and all those that be therein will take you for their lord. Truly, said Sir Palamides, it grieveth my heart for to hear you tell this doleful tale. And to say the truth, I saw the same letter that ye speak of; and one of the best knights on the earth read that letter to me, and by his com- mandment I came hither to revenge your king's death; and therefore have done, and let me wit where I shall find those traitors, for I shall never be at ease in my heart till that I be in hands with them. Sir, said Sir Ebel, then take your ship again, and that ship must bring you unto the Delectable Isle, fast by the Red City, and we in this castle shall pray for you and abide your again-coming; for this same castle, and ye speed well, must needs be yours; for our king Hermance let make this castle for the love of the two traitors, and so we kept it with strong hand, and therefore full sore are we threatened. Wot ye what ye shall do, said Sir Palamides; whatsoever come of me, look ye keep well this castle. For, and it mis- fortune me so to be slain in this quest, I am sure there will come one of the best knights of the world for to revenge my
death, and that is Sir Tristram de Liones, or else Sir Launcelot du Lake.

Then Sir Palamides departed from that castle. And as he came nigh the city, there came out of a ship a goodly knight armed against him, with his shield on his shoulder, and his hand upon his sword. And anon as he came nigh Sir Palamides he said, Sir knight, what seek ye here? Leave this quest, for it is mine, and mine it was or ever it was yours, and therefore I will have it. Sir knight, said Palamides, it may well be that this quest was yours or it was mine, but when the letter was taken out of the dead king's hand, at that time by likelihood there was no knight had undertaken to revenge the death of the king. And so at that time I promised to revenge his death. And so I shall, or else I am ashamed. Ye say well, said the knight, but wit ye well then will I fight with you, and who be the better knight of us both, let him take the battle upon hand. I assent me, said Sir Palamides. And then they dressed their shields and pulled out their swords, and lashed together many sad strokes as men of might; and this fighting was more than an hour; but at the last Sir Palamides waxed big and better winded, so that then he smote that knight such a stroke that he made him to kneel upon his knees. Then that knight spake on high and said, Gentle knight, hold thy hand. Sir Palamides was goodly, and withdrew his hand. Then this knight said, Wit ye well, knight, that thou art better worthy to have this battle than I, and I require thee of knighthood tell me thy name. Sir, my name is Palamides, a knight of king Arthur, and of the Table Round, that hither I came to revenge the death of this dead king.

CHAP. LXIII.
Of the preparation of Sir Palamides and the two brethren that should fight with him.

Well be ye found, said the knight to Palamides, for of all knights that be on live, except three, I had levest he. The first is Sir Launcelot du Lake, the second is Sir Tristram de Liones, the third is my nigh cousin Sir Lam Galis. And I am brother unto Hermance that is dead, and more is Sir Hermind. Ye say well, said Palamides, and ye shall see how speed. And if I be there slaying my lord Sir Launcelot, or else my lord Sir Tristram, and pray then venge my death, for as for Sir Lam Galis, him shall ye never see in this world.

Alas, said Sir Hermind, how may this be? He is slain, said Sir Palamides by Gawaine and his brother. Truly, said Hermind, there was one for one that slew him. I told ye, said Sir Palamides, for the four dangerous knights that slew Arthur, as Sir Gawaine, Sir Agravaine, Sir Bors, and Sir Mordred; but Sir Hermind was the fifth brother was away, the knight of them all. And so Sir Palamides told Hermind all the manner how they slew Sir Lamorak and Sir Ywain by treason. So Sir Palamides took his ship, and arrived up at the Del Isle. And in the meanwhile Sir Hermind, that was the king's brother, arrived up at the Red City, and there told them how there was come a knight of king Arthur's to avenge knighthood's death; and his name was Palamides the good knight, that most part he followeth the beast. Then all the city made great ado For mickle had they heard of Sir Palamides, and of his noble prowess, and they made a messenger an unto the two brethren, and bade them to make them ready, for there would come a knight that would fight with both. So the messenger went there where they were at a castle beside. And there he told them there was a knight come of king Arthur's court to fight with them. He is welcome, said they, tell us, we pray you, if it be Sir Launcelot, or any of his blood. He is that blood, said the messenger, we care the less, said the two brethren.
none of the blood of Sir Launcelot, keep not to have ado withal. Well, said the messenger, that is Sir Palamides, that yet is not christened, a noble knight. Well, said Sir Launcelot, be now unchristened he be christened. So they ap-} 

hen Sir Palamides was come, they made passing great joy and then they beheld him and he was well made, cleanly and unmarred of his limbs, and so young nor too old; and so ope praised him. And though not christened, yet he believed st manner, and was full faithful of his promise, and well con-

And because he made his y, they would never be christened time that he had achieved the sitant, which was a wonderful and a great signification, for prophesied much of that beast.

Sir Palamides avowed never all christendom unto the time that had done seven battles within.

So within the third day there the city these two brethren, hight Helius, the other hight the which were men of great howbeit that they were false of treason, and but poor men were they noble knights of their. And with them they brought rights to that intent that they e big enough for the Red City. ne the two brethren with great and pride, for they had put the y in fear and damage. Then re brought to the lists. And nides came into the place, and is: Be ye the two brethren, and Helake, that slew your lord, Sir Hermance, by nd treason, for whom that I e hither to revenge his death? and well, said Sir Helius and Sir that we are the same knights w king Hermance. And wit ll Sir Palamides, Saracen, that handle thee so or thou depart

that thou shalt wish that thou werest christened. It may well be, said Sir Palamides, for yet I would not die or I were christened, and yet so am I not afraid of you both, but I trust to God that I shall die a better christian man than any of you both; and doubt ye not, said Sir Palamides, either ye or I shall be left dead in this place.

CHAP. LXIV.

Of the battle between Sir Palamides and the two brethren, and how the two brethren were slain.

Then they departed, and the two brethren came against Sir Palamides, and he against them, as fast as their horses might run. And by fortune Sir Palamides smote Helake through his shield, and through the breast more than a fathom. All this while Sir Helius held up his spear, and for pride and presumption he would not smite Sir Palamides with his spear. But when he saw his brother lie on the earth, and saw he might not help himself, then he said unto Sir Palamides, Help thyself: and therewith he came hurrying unto Sir Palamides with his spear, and smote him quite from his saddle. Then Sir Helius rode over Sir Palamides twice or thrice. And therewith Sir Palamides was ashamed, and got the horse of Sir Helius by the bridle, and therewithal the horse areared, and Sir Palamides halp after, and so they fell both to the earth, but anon Sir Helius start up lightly, and there he smote Sir Palamides a mighty stroke upon the helm, so that he kneeled upon his own knee. Then they lashed together many sad strokes, and traced and traversed, now backward, now sideling, hurrying together like two boars, and that same time they fell both groveling to the earth. Thus they fought still without any reposing two hours, and never breathed, and then Sir Palamides waxed faint and weary, and Sir Helius waxed passing strong, and doubled his strokes, and drove Sir Palamides overthwart and endlong all the field, that they of the city, when they
saw Sir Palamides in this case, they wept, and cried, and made great dole, and the other party made as great joy. Alas, said the men of the city, that this noble knight should thus be slain for our king's sake. And as they were thus weeping and crying, Sir Palamides that had suffered an hundred strokes, that it was wonder that he stood upon his feet, at the last, Sir Palamides beheld as he might the common people how they wept for him, and then he said to himself, Ah, he for shame, Sir Palamides, why hangest thou thy head so low? And therewith he bear up his shield, and looked Sir Helius in the visage, and he smote him a great stroke upon the helm, and after that another and another. And then he smote Sir Helius with such a might that he fell to the earth groveling; and then he rased off his helm from his head, and there he smote him such a buffet that he departed his head from the body. And then were the people of the city the joyfulllest people that might be. So they brought him to his lodging with great solemnity, and there all the people became his men. And then Sir Palamides prayed them all to take keep unto all the lordship of king Hermance;—For, fair sirs, wit ye well, I may not as at this time abide with you, for I must in all haste be with my lord king Arthur at the castle of Lonzep, the which I have promised.

Then were the people full heavy at his departing. For all that city proffered Sir Palamides the third part of their goods so that he would abide with them: but in no wise as at that time he would not abide. And so Sir Palamides departed. And so he came unto the castle, there as Sir Euel was lieutenant. And when they in the castle wist how Sir Palamides had sped there was a joyful company. And so Sir Palamides departed, and came to the castle of Lonzep. And when he wist that Sir Tristram was not there, he took his way over Humber, and came unto Joyous Gard where as Sir Tristram was, and La Beale Isoud. Sir Tristram had commanded that what knight errant came within the Joyous Gard, as in the art that they should warn Sir Tristram: so there came a man of the town and told Sir Tristram how there was a man in the town a passing goodly. What manner of man is he? Sir Tristram, and what sign beareth? So the man told Sir Tristram of tokens of him. That is Palamides Dinadan. It may well be, saith Sir Tristram: go ye to him, said Sir Tristram unto Dinadan. So Dinadan went unto Sir Palamides, and there he made of other great joy, and they lay together that night, and in the morn early came Sir Tristram and Gareth, and took them in their hands, and so they arose and brake their.

CHAP. LXV.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides Breuse Sance Pité, and how Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud went to Lonzep.

And then Sir Tristram desired Palamides to ride into the field of woods; so they were accorded together in the forest. And when they played them a great while, then unto a fair well, and anon the armes of an armed knight that was riding against them, and there saluted other. Then this armed knight spake to Sir Tristram, and asked whose were those knights that were lodging about Joyous Gard. I wot not what they said Sir Tristram. What knight ye, said that knight, for me that ye be no knights errant, but ye ride unarmed? Whether knights or not, we list not to tell our name. Wilt thou not tell thy name, said that knight, then kene for thou shalt die of my hands therewith he gat his spear in his hand and would have run Sir Tristram thru. That saw Sir Palamides, and so he horse traverse in midst of the six men and horse fell to the earth therewith Sir Palamides alight pulled out his sword to have slain. Let be, said Sir Tristram, slay h
it but a fool, it were shame
. But take away his spear,
ristram, and let him take his
go where that he will. So
knight arose he groaned sore
and so he took his horse, and
was up, he turned then his
and required Sir Tristram and
ides to tell him what knights
. Now wit ye well, said Sir
that my name is Sir Tristram
ly, and this knight’s name is
ides. When he wist what
, he took his horse with the
hese they should not ask him
and so rode fast away through
thin. Then came there by
ight with a bended shield of
ose name was Epinogris, and
toward them a great wallop.
ere ye riding? said Sir Tris-
y fair lords, said Epinogris, I
falsest knight that beareth
therefore I require tell me
ye saw him, for he beareth a
in a case of red over it. Truly,
nam, such a knight departed
ot a quarter of an hour ago;
you tell us his name. Alas,
ogris, why let ye him escape
and he is so great a foe unto
knights: his name is Breuse
. Ah fie for shame, said Sir
, alas that ever he escaped my
he is the man in the world
most. Then every knight
at sorrow to other, and so
departed, and followed the
m him. Then Sir Tristram and
efors rode unto Joyous Gard,
Sir Tristram talked unto Sir
of his battle, how he sped at
City; and as ye have heard
was it ended. Truly, said
am, I am glad ye have well
ye have done worshipfully.
Sir Tristram, we must
orn. And then he devised
should be, and Sir Tristram
send his two pavilions to set
by the well of Lonazep.—and
shall be the queen La Beale
is well said, said Sir Dinadan.

But when Sir Palamides heard of that,
his heart was ravished out of measure:
notwithstanding he said but little. So
when they came to Joyous Gard, Sir
Palamides would not have gone into the
castle, but as Sir Tristram took him by
the finger, and led him into the castle.
And when Sir Palamides saw La Beale
Isoud, he was so ravished that he
might scarcely speak. So they went
unto meat, but Palamides might not eat,
and there was all the cheer that might
be had. And on the morn they were
apparelled to ride towards Lonazep.

So Sir Tristram had three squires, and
La Beale Isoud had three gentlewomen,
and both the queen and they were richly
apparelled; and other people had they
none with them, but varlets to bear their
shields and their spears. And thus they
rode forth. So as they rode they saw
 afore them a rout of knights: it was
the knight Galihodin with twenty
knights with him. Fair fellows, said
Galihodin, yonder come four knights,
and a rich and a well fair lady: I am in
will to take that lady from them. That
is not of the best counsel, said one of
Galihodin's men, but send ye to them
and wit what they will say. And so
it was done. There came a squire to
Sir Tristram and asked him whether
they would just, or else to lose their
lady? Not so, said Sir Tristram, tell
your lord, I bid him come as many
as we be, and win her and take her.
Sir, said Palamides, and it please you,
let me have this deed, and I shall
undertake them all four. I will that
ye have it, said Sir Tristram, at your
pleasure. Now go and tell your lord
Galihodin, that this same knight will
encounter with him and his fellows.

CHAP. LXVI.
How Sir Palamides justed with Sir Gali-
hoodin and after with Sir Gawaine, and
smote them down.

Then this squire departed and told
Galihodin, and then he dressed his
shield, and put forth a spear, and Sir
Palamides another, and there Sir Pal-
amides smote Galihodin so hard that he
smote both horse and man to the earth. And there he had an horrible fall. And then came there another knight, and in the same wise he served him, and so he served the third and the fourth, that he smote them over their horse croupes: and always Sir Palamides' spear was whole. Then came six knights more of Galihodin's men, and would have been avenged upon Sir Palamides. Let be, said Sir Galihodin, not so hardy! None of you all meddle with this knight, for he is a man of great bounty and honour; and if he would, ye were not able to meddle with him. And right so they held them still. And ever Sir Palamides was ready to just. And when he saw they would no more, he rode unto Sir Tristram. Right well have ye done, said Sir Tristram, and worshipfully have ye done as a good knight should. This Galihodin was nigh cousin unto Galahalt the haut prince. And this Galihodin was a king within the country of Surlose. So as Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and La Beale Isoud rode together, they saw afore them four knights, and every man had his spear in his hand. The first was Sir Gawaine, the second Sir Uwayne, the third Sir Sagramor le Desirous, and the fourth was Dodinas le Savage. When Sir Palamides beheld them, that the four knights were ready to just, he prayed Sir Tristram to give him leave to have ado with them all so long as he might hold him on horseback:—And if that I be smitten down, I pray you revenge me. Well, said Sir Tristram, I will as ye will, and ye are not so fain to have worship, but I would as fain increase your worship. And there withal Sir Gawaine put forth his spear, and Sir Palamides another, and so they came so eagerly together that Sir Palamides smote Sir Gawaine to the earth, horse and all; and in the same wise he served Uwayne, Sir Dodinas, and Sagramor. All these four knights Sir Palamides smote down with divers spears. And then Sir Tristram departed toward Lonzep. And when they were departed, then came thither Galihodin with his ten knights unto Sir Gawaine, and there he told him all how it sped. I marvel, said Sir Gawaine, knights they be that are so arrayed. And that knight upon the horse smote me down, said Galihodin, and my three fellows. And so he, Tristram, said Gawaine, and well I wot Sir Gawaine, that either he upon his white horse is Sir Tristram, or Sir Palamides, and that gaybesent queen Isoud. Thus they talked of thing and of other. And in the while Sir Tristram passed on, till he came to the well where his pavilions were set, and there he alighted, and there they saw pavilions and great array. Then Tristram left there Sir Palamides, Sir Gareth with La Beale Isoud, Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan to Lonazep to hearken tidings; and Tristram rode upon Sir Palamides horse. And when he came into the land of Dinadan heard a great horn, and to the horn drew many knights. Then Sir Tristram asked a knight meaneth the blast of that horn. Sir said that knight, it is all that shall hold against Arthur in tournament. The first is the king of Ireland, and the king of Surluse, and the king of Linnoise, the king of Northumberland, and the king of the land of Wales, with many other courtiers, and these draw them to a council to understand what governance they shall be of. But the king of Ireland, his name was Marhault, and another good knight Sir Mahaus that Sir Tristram slew, had all the speech, the Tristram might hear it. He said, and fellows, let us look to ourself, wit ye well king Arthur is sure of good knights, or else he would not with so few knights have ado with Arthur. Therefore, by my counsel, let every knight have a standard and a cognizant of himself, that every knight draw upon the natural lord, and then may every knight and captain help his knights, they shall have need. When Sir Tristram heard all their counsel, he rode to king Arthur for to hear of his c...
CHAP. LXVII.

Tristan and his fellowship came tournament of Lonazep; and of
r Tristram was not so soon
r place, but Sir Gawain
din went to king Arthur, him, That same green knight
n harness, with the white
te us two down, and six of
s, this same day. Well, said
d then he called Sir Tris-
asked him what was his
r, said Sir Tristram, ye shall
xused as at this time, for ye
it my name. And there Sir
turned and rode his way. I
, said Arthur, that yonder
Il not tell me his name, but
Grifet le Fise de Dieu, and
to speak with me betwixt us.
Grifet rode after him, and
m, and said to him that king
eried him for to speak with
ly apart. Upon this cove-
Tristram, I will speak
will that I will turn again, so that
sure me not to desire to hear
shall undertake, said Sir
at he will not greatly desire it
So they rode together until
e to king Arthur. Fair sir,
Arthur, what is the cause ye
tell me your name? Sir, said
am, without a cause I will not
name. Upon what party will
said king Arthur. Truly, my
Sir Tristram, I wot not yet on
y I will be on until I come to
and there as my heart giveth
hold: but to-morrow ye
prove on what party I
ne. And therewithal he re-
d went to his pavilions. And
morn they armed them all in
d came into the field; and
ng knights began to just, and
worshipful deeds. Then spake
Sir Tristram, and prayed
ve him leave to break his
him thought shame to bear
whole again. When Sir Tris-

CHAP. LXVIII.

How Sir Tristram and his fellowship
justed, and of the noble feats that they
did in that tourneying.

Now upon what party, said Sir Tris-
tram, is it best we be withal as to-
morn? Sir, said Palamedes, ye shall
have mine advice to be against king
Arthur as to-morn, for on his party will
be Sir Launcelot, and many good knights
of his blood with him. And the more
men of worship that they be, the more
worship we shall win. That is full
knightly spoken, said Sir Tristram,
right so as ye counsel me, so will we do. So be it, said they all. So that night they were lodged with the best. And on the morn when it was day, they were arrayed in green trappings, shields, and spears; and La Beale Isoud in the same colour, and her three damsels. And right so these four knights came into the field endlong and through. And so they led La Beale Isoud thither as she should stand and behold all the justs in a bay window; but always she wimpled that no man might see her visage. And then these three knights rode straight unto the party of the king of Scots.

When king Arthur had seen them do all this, he asked Sir Launcelot what were these knights and that queen? Sir, said Sir Launcelot, I cannot say in certain, but if Sir Tristram be in this country, or Sir Palamides, wit ye well it be they in certain, and La Beale Isoud. Then Arthur called to him Sir Kay, and said, Go lightly and wit how many knights there be here lacking of the Table Round, for by the sieges thou mayest know. So went Sir Kay, and saw by the writing in the sieges that there lacked ten knights.—And these be their names that be not here, Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, Sir Percivale, Sir Gaheris, Sir Echinogris, Sir Mordred, Sir Dinadan, Sir La Cote Male Tale, and Sir Pelleas the noble knight. Well, said Arthur, some of these I dare undertake are here this day against us. Then came therein two brethren, cousins unto Sir Gawaine, the one hight Sir Edward, that other hight Sir Sadok, the which were two good knights, and they asked of king Arthur that they might have the first justs, for they were of Orkney. I am pleased, said king Arthur. Then Sir Edward encountered with the king of Scots, in whose party was Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides; and Sir Edward smote the king of Scots quite from his horse; and Sir Sadok smote down the king of North Wales, and gave him a wonder great fall, that there was a great cry on king Arthur's party, and that made Sir Palamides passing wroth; and so Sir Palamides dressed his shield and his spere with all his might he met with Edward of Orkney, that he smote him so hard that his horse might not hold on his feet, and so they hurtle earth: and then with the same Sir Palamides smote down Sir over his horse croup. Oh, said Sir Gawaine, what knight is that arrayed in green? he justeth mightily. Well, said Sir Gawaine, he is a knight, and yet shall ye see if he better or he depart; and yet ye see, said Sir Gawaine, another knight in the same colour than he that same knight, Sir Gawaine smote down right now my two; he smote me down within the days, and seven fellows more, meanwhile, as they stood thus there came into the place Sir Tristram upon a black horse, and ordering the stall he smote down with one four good knights of Orkney, the chief of the kin of Sir Gawaine; and Gareth and Sir Dinadan even of them smote down a good knight. Truly, said Arthur, yonder knight on the black horse doth mightily array his warlike shield, and smote all the men in every part of the press against Sir Gawaine, and there he smote down the good knights, and rushed off helms, pulled away their shields, and smote down many knights: he fared with Sir Arthur and all knights have marvel, when they saw one knight do so great deeds of arms. And Sir Palamides had not upon the other but did so marvellously well that Sir Gawaine had wonder. For there king Arthur likened Sir Tristram, that was on the black horse, like to a wood leaved likeness Sir Palamides, upon the black horse, unto a wood leddy, and seeing Sir Gawaine, Sir Dinadan them, and wolves. But the custom war
em, that none of the kings
ip other, but all the fellow-
ey standard to help other as
t. But ever Sir Tristram did
deeds of arms that they of
axed weary of him, and so
them unto Lonazep.

CHAP. LXIX.

Tristram was unhorsed and
down by Sir Launcelot, and
at Sir Tristram smote down
thor.

as the cry of heralds and all
common people, The green
th done marvellously, and
them of Orkney. And there
numbered that Sir Tristram,
upon the black horse, had
twenty knights; and Sir
had smitten down twenty
and the most part of these
were of the house of king
and proved knights. Truly,
unto Sir Launcelot, this is
ame to us to see four knights
any knights of mine; and
make you ready, for we will
with them. Sir, said Sir Laun-
ve well that there are two
od knights, and great worship
us now to have ado with
they have this day sore tra-
s for that, said Arthur, I will
nd, and therefore take with
 eoberis and Sir Ector, and I
fourth, said Arthur. Sir, said
ye shall find me ready, and
Sir Ector, and my cousin
ris. And so when they were
on horseback, Now choose,
Arthur unto Sir Launcelot, with
at ye will encounter withal.
Launcelot, I will meet with the
ht upon the black horse (that
Tristram), and my cousin Sir
shall match the green knight
white horse (that was Sir Pa-
and my brother Sir Ector
h with the green knight upon
horse (that was Sir Gareth).
I, said Sir Arthur, have ado
with the green knight upon the grisled
horse (and that was Sir Dinadan). Now
every man take heed to his fellow, said
Sir Launcelot. And so they trotted on
together; and there encountered Sir
Launcelot against Sir Tristram. So Sir
Launcelot smote Sir Tristram so sore
upon the shield that he bare horse and
man to the earth; but Sir Launcelot
wend it had been Sir Palamides, and so
he passed forth. And then Sir Bleoberis
encountered with Sir Palamides, and
he smote him so hard upon the shield
that Sir Palamides and his white horse
rusted to the earth. Then Sir Ector
de Maris smote Sir Gareth so hard that
down he fell off his horse. And the
noble king Arthur encountered with
Sir Dinadan, and he smote him quite
from his saddle. And then the noise
turned awhile how the green knights
were slain down. When the king of
Northgalis saw that Sir Tristram had
fall, then he remembered him how
great deeds of arms Sir Tristram had
done. Then he made ready many
knights, for the custom and cry was
such, that what knight were smitten
down, and might not be horsed again
by his fellows, or by his own strength,
that as that day he should be prisoner
unto the party that had smitten him
down. So came in the king of North-
galis, and he rode straight unto Sir
Tristram. And when he came nigh
him he alight down suddenly, and be-
took Sir Tristram his horse, and said
thus: Noble knight, I know thee not
of what country thou art, but for the
noble deeds that thou hast done this
day take there my horse, and let me
do as well as I may; for truly thou
art better worthy to have mine horse
than I myself. Gramercy, said Sir Tris-
tram, and if I may I shall requite you.
Look that ye go not far from us, and,
as I suppose, I shall win you another
horse. And therewith Sir Tristram
mounted upon his horse, and there he
met with king Arthur, and he gave him
such a buffet upon the helm with his
sword that king Arthur had no power
to keep his saddle. And then Sir Tris-
tram gave the king of Northgalis king Arthur's horse. Then was there great press about king Arthur for to horse him again. But Sir Palamides would not suffer king Arthur to be horsed again: but ever Sir Palamides smote on the right hand and on the left hand mightily as a noble knight. And this mean while Sir Tristram rode through the thickest of the press, and smote down knights on the right and on the left hand, and rased off helms, and so passed forth unto his pavilions, and left Sir Palamides on foot. And Sir Tristram changed his horse, and disguised himself all in red, horse and harness.

CHAP. LXX.

How Sir Tristram changed his harness and it was all red, and bow be demeaned him, and bow Sir Palamides slew Launcelot's horse.

And when the queen La Beale Isoud saw that Sir Tristram was unhorsed, and she wist not where he was, then she wept greatly. But Sir Tristram, when he was ready, came dashing lightly into the field, and then La Beale Isoud espied him. And so he did great deeds of arms, with one spear that was great Sir Tristram smote down five knights or ever he stint. Then Sir Launcelot espied him readily that it was Sir Tristram, and then he repented that he had smitten him down. And so Sir Launcelot went out of the press to repossom, and lightly he came again. And now when Sir Tristram came unto the press, through his great force he put Sir Palamides upon his horse, and Sir Gareth, and Sir Dinadan, and then they began to do marvellously. But Sir Palamides nor none of his two fellows knew not who had holpen them on horseback again. But ever Sir Tristram was nigh them and succoured them, and they not him, because he was changed into red armour. And all this while Sir Launcelot was away. So when La Beale Isoud knew Sir Tristram again upon his horse back she was passing glad, and then she laughed and made good cheer. And as it is Sir Palamides looked up town where she lay in the window, espied how she laughed; and with he took such a rejoicing he smote down, what with his hand and with his sword, all that he met; for through the sight of her so enamoured in her love, that he at that time that, and both Sir and Sir Launcelot had been both of him, they should have won not of him. And in his heart, as the saith, Sir Palamides wished the his worship he might have at Sir Tristram before all men before La Beale Isoud. Then Sir Pal began to double his strength, did so marvellously that all marveled of him. And ever he his eye unto La Beale Isoud, and he saw her make such cheer as if he was a lion, that there might no withstand him. And then Sir Tristram beheld him how that Sir Palamides bestirred him, and then he said Sir Dinadan, Truly, Sir Palamides passing good knight, and a welling: but such deeds saw I him do, nor never heard I tell that he did so much in one day. It is said Sir Dinadan: and he would more unto Sir Tristram; but to he said, And if ye knew for who he doth all these deeds of arms, would Sir Tristram abate his courage? Alas, said Sir Tristram, that Sir Palamides is not christened. So saith Arthur, and so said all those that held him. Then all people gave the prize as for the best knight that day, that he passed Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram. Well, said Dinadan, himself, all this worship that Sir Palamides hath here this day, he may the queen Isoud; for had she not away this day, Sir Palamides had not gotten the prize this day.

Right so came into the field Sir Launcelot du Lake, and saw and heard noise and cry and the great sight that Sir Palamides had. He him against Sir Palamides with
SIR PALAMIDES WINS THE PRIZE.

...and a long, and thought him down. And when Sir Palamides saw Sir Lancelot come upon him, he ran upon Sir Lancelot with his sword as he might. And Lancelot should have stricken his horse on side, and two with his sword. And Sir Lancelot rode upon, and Lancelot fell to the earth. The cry huge and great;—See Palamides the Saracen hath down Sir Lancelot’s horse. There were many knights in Sir Palamides, because he was against that it was done in a tournament to kill illfully, but that it had been in battle, life for life.

CHAP. LXXI.

Lancelot said to Sir Palamides, the prize of that day was given Palamides.

Sir Ector de Maris saw Sir his brother have such a day set on foot, then he gat agerly and ran against Sir and he smote him so hard he smote him quite from his horse. Sir Tristram that was in red he smote down Sir Ector quite from his horse. Then Lancelot dressed his shield upon him, and with his sword naked, and so came straight upon him fiercely, and said, Wit thou hast done me this day despite that ever any worth did to me in tournament s, and therefore I will be upon thee, therefore take keep! Ah mercy, noble knight, harken, and forgive me mine deeds, for I have no power to withstand you. And I shall in my life days. And therefore, most noble knight, I require thee spare me as at this day, and I promise you I shall ever be your knight while I live. And ye put me from my worship now, ye put me from the greatest worship that I had, or ever shall have, in my life days. Well, said Sir Lancelot, I see, for to say the sooth, ye have done marvellously well this day, and I understand a part for whose love ye do it, and well I wot that love is a great mistress. And if my lady were here as she is not, wit you well that ye should not bear away the worship. But beware your love be not discovered; for and Sir Tristram may know it ye will repent it. And since my quarrel is not here, ye shall have this day the worship as for me; considering the great travail and pain that ye have had this day, it were no worship for me to put you from it. And therewithal Sir Lancelot suffered Sir Palamides to depart. Then Sir Lancelot by great force and might gat his own horse, maugre twenty knights. So when Sir Lancelot was horsed he did many marvels, and so did Sir Tristram, and Sir Palamides in likewise. Then Sir Lancelot smote down with a spear Sir Dinadan, and the king of Scotland, and the king of Wales, and the king of Northumberland, and the king of Lus tinoise. So then Sir Lancelot and his fellows smote down well a forty knights. Then came the king of Ireland and the king of the Straight Marches to rescue Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides. There began a great meddle, and many knights there were smitten down on both parties, and always Sir Lancelot spared Sir Tristram, and he spared him. And Sir Palamides would not meddle with Sir Lancelot. And so there was hurtling here and there. And then king Arthur sent out many knights of the Table Round. And Sir Palamides was ever in the foremost front. And Sir Tristram did so strongly well that the king and all other had marvel. And then the king let blow to lodging. And because Sir Palamides began
first, and never he went nor rode out of the field to repose, but ever he was doing marvellously well, either on foot or on horseback, and longest enduring, king Arthur and all the kings gave Sir Palamides the honour and the gree as for that day. Then Sir Tristram commanded Sir Dinadan to fetch the queen La Beale Isoud, and bring her to his two pavilions that stood by the well. And so Dinadan did as he was commanded. But when Sir Palamides understood and wist that Sir Tristram was in the red armour, and on the red horse, wit ye well that he was glad, and so was Sir Gareth, and Sir Dinadan. For they all wend that Sir Tristram had been taken prisoner.

And then every knight drew to his inn. And then king Arthur and every knight spake of those knights. But above all men they gave Sir Palamides the prize, and all knights that knew Sir Palamides had wonder of his deeds. Sir, said Sir Launcelot unto Arthur, as for Sir Palamides, and he be the green knight, I dare say as for this day he is best worthy to have the degree, for he reposed him never, ne never changed his weeds. And he began first and longest held on. And yet well I wot, said Sir Launcelot, that there was a better knight than he, and that shall be proved or we depart, upon pain of my life. Thus they talked on either party, and so Sir Dinadan railed with Sir Tristram and said, What the devil is upon thee this day, for Sir Palamides' strength feebled never this day, but ever he doubled his strength.

CHAP. LXXII.

How Sir Dinadan provoked Sir Tristram to do well.

And thou Sir Tristram farest all this day as thou hast been asleep, and therefore I call thee coward. Well, Dinadan, said Sir Tristram, I was never called coward or now, of none earthly knight, in my life: and, wit thou well, sir, I call myself never the more coward though Sir Launcelot gave me a fall, for I outcept him of all knights doubt ye not, Sir Dinadan, and Launcelot have a quarrel good, he over good for any knight that living; and yet of his sufferance, in bounty, and courtesy, I call him peerless. And so Sir Tristram manner wroth with Sir Dinadan all this language Sir Dinadan said, cause he would anger Sir Tristram to cause him to awake his spirit to be wroth. For well knew Sir Dinadan that and Sir Tristram were thorn wroth, Sir Palamides should not prize upon the morn. And if Sir Dinadan said all this language against Sir Tristram, Truly, said Sir Palamides, as Sir Launcelot, of his noble knightly courtesy, and prowess, and gent from I know not his peer: for this said Sir Palamides, I did full unrighteously unto Sir Launcelot, and unrighteously and full knightly and unrighteously he did to me again: for he had been as ungentle to me as I to him, this day I had won no prize. And therefore, said Palamides, be Sir Launcelot's knight while life lasteth. This talking was at houses of kings. But all kings, and knights said, of clear knightly and pure strength, of bounty, and courtesy, Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram bare the prize above all knight ever were in Arthur's days. And there were never knights in Arthur's days that did half so many deeds as they did as the book saith, no ten knights not half the deeds that they did, there was never knight in their shame, but they perform desire.

CHAP. LXXIII.

How king Arthur and Sir Launcel to see La Beale Isoud, and how Sir Palamides smote down king Arthur.

So on the morn Sir Launcel parted, and Sir Tristram was read La Beale Isoud with Sir Palami
th. And so they rode all in
freshe, unto the forest.
Tristram left Sir Dinadan sleep-
bed. And so as they rode, it
the king and Launcelot stood in
y, and saw Sir Tristram ride
d. Sir, said Sir Launcelot, with
the fairest lady of the
cept your queen dame Guene-
5 is that? said Sir Arthur. Sir,
it is queen Isoud, that, out-
lady your queen, she is match-
take your horse, said Arthur, and
at all rights, as I will do, and
you, said the king, I will see
an anon they were armed and
and either took a spear and rode
forest. Sir, said Launcelot, it
d that ye go too nigh them,
well there are two as good
as now are living; and there-
I pray you be not too hasty.
dventure there will be some
be displeased and we come
up on them. As for that, said
will see her, for I take no
on I grieve. Sir, said Laun-
put yourself in great jeopardy.
at, said the king, we will take
ature. Right so anon the king
a to her, and saluted her, and
d you save. Sir, said she, ye
to me. Then the king beheld
her wonderly well. With
Sir Palamides unto Arthur and
courteous knight, what seeketh
Thou art uncourteous, to
a lady thus suddenly; there-
draw thee. Sir Arthur took
of Sir Palamides’ words, but
ooked still upon queen Isoud.
as Sir Palamides wroth, and
he took a spear and came
upon king Arthur, and smote
w a spear. When Sir
saw that despite of Sir Pal-
se said to himself, I am loth to
with yonder knight, and not
sake but for Sir Tristram.
things I am sure of, if I smite
Palamides I must have ado
Tristram, and that were over
me to match them both, for
they are two noble knights: notwith-
standing, whether I live or die, needs
must I revenge my lord, and so will I
whatsoever befal of me. And there-
with Sir Launcelot cried to Sir Pal-
mides, Keep thee from me! And then
Sir Launcelot and Sir Palamides rashed
together with two spears strongly. But
Sir Launcelot smote Sir Palamides so
hard that he went quite out of his sadder,
and had a great fall. When Sir
Tristram saw Sir Palamides have that
fall, he said to Sir Launcelot, Sir knight
keep thee, for I must just with thee.
As for to just with me, said Sir Laun-
celot, I will not fail you for no dread I
have of you, but I am loth to have ado
with you and I might choose: for I will
that ye wit that I must revenge my
special lord, that was unhorsed unwarily
and unknighthly. And therefore, though
I have revenged that fall, take ye no
displeasure therein, for he is to me such
a friend that I may not see him shamed.
Anon Sir Tristram understood by his
person and by his knightly words that
it was Sir Launcelot du Lake, and
verily Sir Tristram deemed that it was
king Arthur, he that Sir Palamides had
smitten down.

And then Sir Tristram put his spear
from him, and put Sir Palamides again
on horseback; and Sir Launcelot put
king Arthur on horseback, and so de-
parted. Truly, said Sir Tristram unto
Palamides, ye did not worshipfully
when ye smote down that knight so
suddenly as ye did. And wit ye well
ye did yourself great shame: for the
knights came hither of their gentleness
to see a fair lady, and that is every
good knight’s part to behold a fair
lady, and ye had not ado to play such
masteries afore my lady. Wit thou well
it will turn to anger, for he that ye
smote down was king Arthur, and that
other was the good knight Sir Laun-
celot. But I shall not forget the words of
Sir Launcelot, when that he called him
a man of great worship: thereby I wist
that it was king Arthur. And as for
Sir Launcelot, and there had been five
hundred knights in the meadow he would
not have refused them, and yet he said he would refuse me; by that again I wist that it was Sir Launcelot, for ever he forbeareth me in every place, and sheweth me great kindness; and of all knights—I out-take none, say what men will say—he beareth the flower of all chivalry, say it him whosoever will, and he be well angered, and that him list to do his utterance without any favour, I know him not on live but Sir Launcelot is over hard for him, be it on horseback or on foot. I may never believe, said Sir Palamides, that king Arthur will ride so privily as a poor errant knight. Ah, said Sir Tristram, ye know not my lord Arthur, for all knights may learn to be a knight of him. And therefore ye may be sorry, said Sir Tristram, of your unkindly deeds to so noble a king. And a thing that is done may not be undone, said Sir Palamides. Then Sir Tristram sent queen Isoud unto her lodging in the priory, there to behold all the tournament.

CHAP. LXXIV.
How the second day Palamides forsook Sir Tristram, and went to the contrary part against him.

Then there was a cry unto all knights, that when they heard an horn blow they should make justs as they did the first day. And like as the brethren Sir Edward and Sir Sadok began the justs the first day, Sir Uwaine, the king's son Urein, and Sir Lucanere de Butelere, began the justs the second day. And at the first encounter Sir Uwaine smote down the king's son of Scots, and Sir Lucanere ran against the king of Wales, and they brake their spears all to pieces, and they were so fierce both, that they hurtled together that both fell to the earth. Then they of Orkney horsed again Sir Lucanere. And then came in Sir Tristram de Liones; and then Sir Tristram smote down Sir Uwaine and Sir Lucanere; and Sir Palamides smote down other two knights; and Sir Gareth smote down other two knights. Then said Sir Arthur unto Sir Launcelot, See yonder three knights do passing well, and namely the first that justed. Sir, said Launcelot, that knight began not yet, but ye shall see him this day do marvellously. And then came into the place the duke's son of Orkney, and then they began to do many deeds of arms. When Sir Tristram saw them so begin, he said to Palamides, How feel ye yourself? may ye do this day as ye did yesterday? Nay, said Palamides, I feel myself so weary and so sore bruised of the deeds of yesterday, that I may not endure as I did yesterday. That me repenteth, said Sir Tristram, for I shall lack you this day. Sir Palamides said, Trust not to me, for I may not do as I did. All these words said Palamides for to beguile Sir Tristram. Sir, said Sir Tristram unto Sir Gareth, then must I trust upon you; wherefore I pray you be not far from me to rescue me. And need be, said Gareth, I shall not fail you in all that I may do.

Then Sir Palamides rode by himself, and then in despite of Sir Tristram he put himself in the thickest press among them of Orkney: and there he did so marvellous deeds of arms that all men had wonder of him, for there might none stand him a stroke. When Sir Tristram saw Sir Palamides do such deeds he marvelled, and said to himself, He is weary of my company. So Sir Tristram beheld him a great while, and did but little else, for the noise and cry was so huge and great that Sir Tristram marvelled from whence came the strength that Sir Palamides had there in the field. Sir, said Sir Gareth unto Sir Tristram, remember ye not of the words that Sir Dinadan said to you yesterday, when he called you coward? For sooth, Sir, he said it for none ill; for ye are the man in the world that he most loveth, and all that he said was for your worship. And therefore, said Sir Gareth to Sir Tristram, let me know this day what ye be; and wonder ye not so upon Sir Palamides, for he enforceth himself to win all the worship and honour from you. I may well believe it, said Sir Tristram, and since I understand his
THE SECOND DAY OF THE TOURNAMENT.

And his envy ye shall see, if force myself, that the noise that now is upon him. Sir Tristram rode into the press, and then he did wisely well, and did so great arms, that all men said that he did double so much deeds that Sir Palamides had done. And then the noise went Sir Palamides, and all the dam upon Sir Tristram. See, people, how Sir Tristram went with his spear so many and see, they said all, how he smiteth down with his of how many knights he their helms and their shields. beat them all of Orkney.

How now, said Sir Launcelot, I told you that there would a knight play his yonder rideth a knight ye doth knightly, for he hath wind. Truly, said Arthur, for he doth not, ye shall sooth, for I saw knight for he passeth Palamides. Sir, wit ye well, elot, it must be so of right, myself that noble knight Sir I may right well believe it. But when Sir Palamides noise and the cry was him he rode out on a part, Sir Tristram. And when Sir saw Sir Tristram do so marvell, he wept passing sore for he wist well he should win that day. For well alamides, when Sir Tristram forth his strength and his he should get but little worry.

CHAP. LXXV.

Tristram departed out of the awaked Sir Dinadan, and his array into black.

e king Arthur, and the king tris, and Sir Launcelot du Sir Bleoberis, Sir Bors de Ector de Maris, these three knights came into the field with Sir Launcelot. And then Sir Launcelot with the three knights of his kin did so great deeds of arms, that all the noise began upon Sir Launcelot. And so they beat the king of Wales and the king of Scots far aback, and made them to avoid the field. But Sir Tristram and Sir Gareth abode still in the field, and endured all that ever there came, that all men had wonder that any knight might endure so many strokes. But ever Sir Launcelot and his three kinsmen, by the commandment of Sir Launcelot, forbade Sir Tristram. Then said Sir Arthur, Is that Sir Palamides that endureth so well? Nay, said Sir Launcelot, wit ye well it is the good knight Sir Tristram, for yonder ye may see Sir Palamides beheldeth, and hoveth, and doth little or nought. And, sir, ye shall understand that Sir Tristram weeneth this day to beat us all out of the field. And as for me, said Sir Launcelot, I shall not beat him, beat him who so will. Sir, said Launcelot unto Arthur, ye may see how Sir Palamides hoveth yonder as though he were in a dream; wit ye well he is full heavy that Tristram doth such deeds of arms. Then is he but a fool, said Arthur, for never was Sir Palamides, nor never shall be, of such prowess as Sir Tristram. And if he have any envy at Sir Tristram, and cometh in with him upon his side, he is a false knight. As the king and Sir Launcelot thus spake, Sir Tristram rode privily out of the press, that none espied him but La Beale Isoud and Sir Palamides, for they two would not let of their eyes upon Sir Tristram.

And when Sir Tristram came to his pavilions, he found Sir Dinadan in his bed asleep. Awake, said Tristram, ye ought to be ashamed so to sleep, when knights have ado in the field. Then Sir Dinadan arose lightly, and said, What will ye that I shall do? Make you ready, said Sir Tristram, to ride with me into the field. So when Sir Dinadan was armed he looked upon Sir Tristram's helm and on his shield, and when he saw so many strokes upon his
helm and upon his shield, he said, In
good time was I thus asleep; for had I
been with you I must needs for shame
there have followed you, more for shame
than any prowess that is in me, that
I see well now by those strokes, that I
should have been truly beaten as I was
yesterday. Leave your jests, said Sir
Tristram, and come off, that we were
in the field again. What, said Sir
Dinadan, is your heart up? Yesterday
ye fared as though ye had dreamed. So
then Sir Tristram was arrayed in black
harness. Oh, said Sir Dinadan, what
aileth you this day? me seemeth ye
be wilder than ye were yesterday.
Then smiled Sir Tristram, and said to
Dinadan, Await well upon me: if ye
see me over-matched look that ye be
ever behind me, and I shall make you
ready way. So Sir Tristram and Sir
Dinadan took their horses. All this
espied Sir Palamides, both their going
and their coming, and so did La Beale
Isoud, for she knew Sir Tristram above
all other.

CHAP. LXXVI.
How Sir Palamides changed his shield
and his armour for to hurt Sir Tris-
tram, and how Sir Launcelot did to Sir
Tristram.

Then when Sir Palamides saw that
Sir Tristram was disguised, then he
thought to do him a shame. So Sir
Palamides rode to a knight that was
sore wounded, that sat under a fair
well from the field. Sir knight, said
Sir Palamides, I pray you to lend me
your armour and your shield, for
mine is over well known in this field,
and that hath done me great damage,
ye shall have mine armour and
my shield, that is as sure as yours. I
will well, said the knight, that ye have
mine armour and my shield, if they may
do you any avail. So Sir Palamides
armed him hastily in that knight's ar-
mour, and his shield that shone as any
crystal or silver, and so he came riding
into the field. And then there was
neither Sir Tristram nor none of king
Arthur's party that knew Sir Palamides.

And right so as Sir Palamides was
come into the field Sir Tristram met
down three knights, even in the sight of
Sir Palamides. And then Sir Palamides
rode against Sir Tristram, and either
met other with great spears, that they
brast to their hands. And then they
dashed together with swords eagerly.
Then Sir Tristram had marvel what
knight he was that did battle so knightly
with him. Then was Sir Tristram
wroth, for he felt him passing strong,
so that he deemed he might not have
ado with the remnant of the knights
because of the strength of Sir Pal-
amides. So they lashed together, and gave
many sad strokes together, and many
knights marvelled what knight he might
be that so encountered with the black
knight, Sir Tristram. Full well knew
La Beale Isoud that there was Sir Pal-
amides that fought with Sir Tristram, for
she espied all in her window where she
stood, as Sir Palamides changed his
harness with the wounded knight. And
then she began to weep so heartily for
the despite of Sir Palamides that she
swooned. Then came in Sir Laun-
celot with the knights of Orkney, and
when the other party had espied Sir
Launcelot they cried, Return, return,
here cometh Sir Launcelot du Lake.
So there came knights and said, Sir
Launcelot, ye must needs fight with yonder knight in the black harness
(that was Sir Tristram), for he hath
almost overcome that good knight that
fighteth with him with the silver shield
(that was Sir Palamides). Then Sir Laun-
celot rode betwixt Sir Tristram and Sir
Palamides, and Sir Launcelot said to
Palamides, Sir knight, let me have the
battle, for ye have need to be reposed.
Sir Palamides knew Sir Launcelot well,
and so did Sir Tristram. But because
Sir Launcelot was a far hardier knight
than himself therefore he was glad, and
suffered Sir Launcelot to fight with Sir
Tristram. For well wist he that Sir
Launcelot knew not Sir Tristram, and
there he hoped that Sir Launcelot should
beat or shame Sir Tristram, whereof Sir
Palamides was full fain. And so Sir
gave Sir Tristram many sad -
Sir Launcelot knew not Sir but Sir Tristram knew well lot. And thus they fought -er, that La Beale Isoud was her mind for sorrow. Then a told Sir Gareth how that the black harness was Sir and this is Launcelot that h him, that must needs have of him, for Sir Tristram hath such travail this day. Then, him down, said Sir Gareth. etter that we do, said Sir van Sir Tristram be shamed. : hoveth the strong knight Iver shield to fall upon Sir need be. Then forthwithal red upon Sir Launcelot, and great stroke upon his helm at he was astonied. And Sir Dinadan with a spear, -ote Sir Launcelot such a horse and all fell to the s, said Sir Tristram to Sir. Sir Dinadan, fie for shame, smite down so good a knight ad namely when I had ado. Now ye do yourself great him no dis-worship: for I asonable hot though ye had me. Then came Sir Pal -was disguised, and smote Dinadan from his horse. auncelot, because Sir Dyn -itten him aforehand, then ot assailed Sir Dinadan passed Sir Dinadan defended him but well understood Sir Tris -ir Dinadan might not endure lot, wherefore Sir Tristram Then came Sir Palamides - Sir Tristram. And when Sir aw him come, he thought to at once, because that he Sir Dinadan, because he eat peril with Sir Launcelot. Tristram hurtled unto Sir Pal -gave him a great buffet, and Tristram gat Sir Palamides, him down underneath him. Sir Tristram with him, and leapt up lightly, and left Sir -Palamides, and went betwixt Sir Laun -celot and Dinadan, and then they began to do battle together. Right so Sir Dinadan gat Sir Tristram’s horse, and said on high, that Sir Launcelot might hear it, My lord Sir Tristram, take your horse. And when Sir Launcelot heard him name Sir Tristram, Alas, said Sir Launcelot, what have I done? I am dishonoured. Ah, my lord Sir Tristram, said Launcelot, why were ye disguised? ye have put yourself in great peril this day. But, I pray you, noble knight, to pardon me, for and I had known you we had not done this battle. Sir, said Sir Tristram, this is not the first kindness ye shewed me. So they were both horsed again. Then all the people on the one side gave Sir Laun -celot the honour and the degree, and on the other side all the people gave to the noble knight Sir Tristram the honour and the degree. But Launcelot said nay thereto:—For I am not worthy to have this honour, for I will report me unto all knights that Sir Tristram hath been longer in the field than I, and he hath smitten down many more knights this day than I have done; and therefore I will give Sir Tristram my voice and my name, and so I pray all my lords and fellows so to do. Then there was the whole voice of dukes and earls, barons and knights, that Sir Tristram this day is proved the best knight.

CHAP. LXXVII.

How Sir Tristram departed with La Beale Isoud, and how Palamides followed and excused him.

Then they blew unto lodging, and queen Isoud was led unto her pavilions. But wit you well she was wroth out of measure with Sir Palamides, for she saw all his treason from the beginning to the ending. And all this while neither Sir Tristram, neither Sir Gareth, nor Dinadan, knew not of the treason of Sir Palamides. But afterward ye shall hear that there befel the greatest debate betwixt Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides that might be. So
when the tournament was done, Sir Tristram, Gareth, and Dinadan rode with La Beale Isoud to these pavilions. And ever Sir Palamides rode with them in their company disguised as he was. But when Sir Tristram had espied him, that he was the same knight with the shield of silver that held him so hot that day, Sir knight, said Sir Tristram, wit you well here is none that hath need of your fellowship, and therefore I pray you depart from us. Sir Palamides answered again, as though he had not known Sir Tristram, Wit ye well, sir knight, from this fellowship will I never depart, for one of the best knights of the world commanded me to be in this company, and till he discharge me of my service I will not be discharged. By that Sir Tristram knew that it was Sir Palamides. Ah Sir Palamides, said the noble knight Sir Tristram, are ye such a knight? Ye have been named wrong, for ye have long been called a gentle knight, and as this day ye have shewed me great ungentleness, for ye had almost brought me unto my death. But as for you I suppose I should have done well enough, but Sir Launcelot with you was overmuch, for I know no knight living but Sir Launcelot is over good for him, and he will do his uttermost. Alas, said Sir Palamides, are ye my lord Sir Tristram? Yea, sir, and that ye know well enough. By my knighthood, said Palamides, until now I knew you not, for I wend that ye had been the king of Ireland, for well I wot that ye bare his arms. His arms I bare, said Sir Tristram, and that will I stand by, for I won them once in a field of a full noble knight, his name was Sir Marhaus, and with great pain I won that knight, for there was none other recover, but Sir Marhaus died through false leeches, and yet was he never yielden to me. Sir, said Palamides, I wend ye had been turned upon Sir Launcelot's party, and that caused me to turn. Ye say well, said Sir Tristram, and so I take you, and I forgive you. So then they rode into their pavilions, and when they were alight they unarmed them, and washed their hands, and so went to meat that were set at their table. But the queen Isoud saw Sir Palamides she espied, then her colours, and for what cause she might not speak. Anon Sir Tristram espied her countenance, and Madam, for what cause make such cheer? we have been so vailed this day. Mine own love, said La Beale Isoud, be ye not displease with me, for I may none other. For I saw this day how ye were betrayed, and nigh brought to your death. Truly, sir, I saw every deal, he said in what wise; and therefore, said Sir Tristram, should I suffer in your presence as a felon and traitor as Sir Palamides? I saw him with mine eyes how he held you when ye went out of the hall. For ever he hove still upon him till he saw you come in again. And then forthwith I saw him make the hurt knight, and change with him, and then straight I saw how he rode into the field. And as he had found you he encounter with you, and thus wilfully Sir Palamides did battle with you, and him, sir, I was not greatly afraid, for dread sore Launcelot, that knew not. Madam, said Palamides, I say what so ye will, I may not charge you, but by my knighthood ye are not Sir Tristram. Sir Palamides, said Sir Tristram, I will take your word, but well I wot ye spared me but all is pardoned on my part. La Beale Isoud held down her head, and said no more at that time.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

How king Aribur and Sir Launcelot came into their pavilions as they sat at table of Palamides.

And therewithal two knight came unto the pavilion, and they alight both, and came in arme pieces. Fair knights, said Sir Tristram, ye are to blame to come thus all pieces upon me while we are meat. If ye would anything, ye were in the field there might
our hearts. Not so, said the one knights, we come not for that but wit ye well, Sir Tristram, come hither as your friends. Then come here, said the one, for you, and this knight is come for a Beale Isoud. Then, said Sir, I require you do off your hat I may see you. That will your desire, said the knights. Then their helms were off, Sir thought he should know then said Sir Dinadan privily Tristram, Sir, that is Sir Launcel. Lake that spake unto you first, other is my lord king Arthur. d Sir Tristram unto La Beale fadam, arise, for here is my g Arthur. Then the king and then kissed, and Sir Launcelot Tristram braced either other and then there was joy without and at the request of La Beale king Arthur and Launcelot were . And then there was merry

n, said Sir Arthur, it is many hen that I have desired to see or ye have been praised so far, 'I dare say ye are the fairest I saw; and Sir Tristram is as good a knight as any that I therefore me beseemeth ye are at together. Sir, I thank you, noble knight Sir Tristram, and of your great goodness and ye are peerless. Thus they f many things, and of all the st. But for what cause, said thur, were ye, Sir Tristram, us? Ye are a knight of the sound; of right ye should have h us. Sir, said Sir Tristram, Dinadan and Sir Gareth your new caused me to be against y lord Arthur, said Gareth, I bear the blame, but it were man's own deeds. That may I said Sir Dinadan, for this unr Tristram brought us to this ent, and many great buffets he s to have. Then the king and t laughed that they might not sit. What knight was that, said Arthur, that held you so short, this with the shield of silver? Sir, said Sir Tristram, here he sitteth at this board. What, said Arthur, was it Sir Palamides? Wit ye well it was he, said La Beale Isoud. Truly, said Arthur, that was unkindly done of you of so good a knight, for I have heard many people call you a courteous knight. Sir, said Palamides, I knew not Sir Tristram, for he was so disguised. Truly, said Launcelot, it may well be, for I knew not Sir Tristram, but I marvel why ye turned on our party. That was done for the same cause, said Launcelot. As for that, said Sir Tristram, I have pardoned him, and I would be right loth to leave his fellow- ship, for I love right well his company. So they left off, and talked of other things. And in the evening king Arthur and Sir Launcelot departed unto their lodging. But wit ye well Sir Palamides had envy heartily, for all that night he had never rest in his bed, but wailed and wept out of measure. So on the morn Sir Tristram, Gareth, and Dinadan arose early, and then they went unto Sir Palamides' chamber, and there they found him fast on sleep, for he had all night watched. And it was seen upon his cheeks that he had wept full sore. Say nothing, said Sir Tristram, for I am sure he hath taken anger and sorrow for the rebuke that I gave to him, and La Beale Isoud.

CHAP. LXXIX.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides did the next day, and bow king Arthur was unborsd.

Then Sir Tristram let call Sir Palamides, and bade him make him ready, for it was time to go to the field. When they were ready they were armed and clothed all in red, both Isoud and all they. And so they led her passing freshly through the field, into the priory where was her lodging. And then they heard three blasts blow, and every king and knight dressed him unto the field; and the first that was ready to just was Sir Palamides and Sir Kainus le Strange,
a knight of the Table Round. And so they two encountered together, but Sir Palamides smote Sir Kainus so hard, that he smote him quite over his horse croup: and forthwith Sir Palamides smote down another knight, and brake then his spear, and pulled out his sword and did wonderly well. And then the noise began greatly upon Sir Palamides. Lo, said king Arthur, yonder Palamides beginneth to play his pageant. Truly, said Arthur, he is a passing good knight. And right as they stood talking thus, in came Sir Tristram as thunder, and he encountered Sir Kay the seneschal, and there he smote him down quite from his horse, and with that same spear Sir Tristram smote down three knights more; and then he pulled out his sword and did marvellously. Then the noise and cry changed from Sir Palamides and turned to Sir Tristram, and all the people cried, O Tristram! O Tristram! And then was Sir Palamides clean forgotten. How now, said Launcelot unto Arthur, yonder rideth a knight that playeth his pageants. Truly, said Arthur to Launcelot, ye shall see this day that yonder two knights shall here do this day wonders. Sir, said Launcelot, the one knight waiteth upon the other, and enforceth himself through envy to pass the noble knight Sir Tristram, and he knoweth not of the privy envy the which Sir Palamides hath to him. For all that the noble Sir Tristram doth is through clean knighthood. And then Sir Gareth and Dinadan did wonderly great deeds of arms as two noble knights, so that king Arthur spake of them great honour and worship; and the kings and knights of Sir Tristram's side did passing well, and held them truly together. Then Sir Arthur and Sir Launcelot took their horses and dressed them, and got into the thickest of the press. And there Sir Tristram unknowing smote down king Arthur, and then Sir Launcelot would have rescued him, but there were so many upon Sir Launcelot that they pulled him down from his horse. And then the king of Ireland and the king of Scots, with their knights, did their pain to take king Arthur and Sir Launcelot prisoner. When Sir Launcelot heard them say so, he fared as it had been an hungry lion, for he fared so that no knight durst nigh him. Then came Sir Ector de Maris, and he bare a spear against Sir Palamides, and brake it upon him all to shivers. And then Sir Ector came again, and gave Sir Palamides such a dash with a sword that he stooped down upon his saddle-bow. And forthwith Sir Ector pulled down Sir Palamides under his feet. And then Sir Ector de Maris gat Sir Launcelot de Lake an horse, and brought it to him, and bad him mount upon him. But Sir Palamides leapt afore, and gat the horse by the bridle, and leapt into the saddle. Truly, said Launcelot, ye are better worthy to have that horse than I. Then Sir Ector brought Sir Launcelot another horse. Gramercy, said Launcelot unto his brother. And so when he was horded again, with one spear he smote down four knights. And then Sir Launcelot brought to king Arthur one of the best of the four horses. Then Sir Launcelot with king Arthur and a few of his knights of Sir Launcelot's kin, did marvellous deeds; for that time, as the book recordeth, Sir Launcelot smote down and pulled down thirty knights. Notwithstanding the other part held them so fast together that king Arthur and his knights were overmatched. And when Sir Tristram saw that, what labour king Arthur and his knights, in especial the noble deeds that Sir Launcelot did with his own hands, he marvelled greatly.

CHAP. LXXX.

How Sir Tristram turned to king Arthur's side, and how Sir Palamides would not.

Then Sir Tristram called unto him Sir Palamides, Sir Gareth, and Sir Dinadan, and said thus to them, My fair fellows, wit ye well that I will turn unto king Arthur's party, for I saw never so few men do so well, and it will be shame unto us knights that be of the Round Table to see our lord king Arthur, and
WHAT SIR PALAMIDES DID.

knight Sir Launcelot, to be d. It will be well done, said and Sir Dinadan. Do your alamides, for I will not change that I came in withal. That ake, said Sir Tristram: speed your journey. And so de-
alamides from them. Then m, Sir Gareth, and Sir Din-
d with Sir Launcelot. And Launcelot smote down the king quite from his horse; and so elot smote down the king of the king of Wales. And arthur ran unto Sir Palamides, him quite from his horse.

Sir Tristram bare down all. Sir Gareth and Sir Din-
dere as noble knights. Then ties began to flee. Alas, said , that ever I should see this ow have I lost all the worship n. And then Sir Palamides way wailing, and so withdrew came to a well, and there he rse from him, and did off his ad wailed and wept like as he a wood man.

any knights gave the prize to mm, and there were many that prize unto Sir Launcelot. Fair Sir Tristram, I thank you of ye would give me, but I pray ily that ye would give your Sir Launcelot, for by my faith, ristram, I will give Sir Laun-
voice. But Sir Launcelot t have it. And so the prize a betwixt them both. Then rode to his lodging. And eris and Sir Ector rode with am and La Beale Isoud unto ons. Then as Sir Palamides well, wailing and weeping, e by him fleeing the king of Scotland, and they saw Sir in that rage. Alas, said they, noble a man as ye be should be ray. And then those kings alamides' horse again, and made m him and mount upon his so he rode with them, making . So when Sir Palamides came nigh the pavilions there as Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud were in, then Sir Palamides prayed the two kings to abide him there the while that he spake with Sir Tristram. And when he came to the port of the pavilions, Sir Pal-
almides said on high, Where art thou, Sir Tristram de Liones? Sir, said Dinadan, that is Palamides. What, Sir Palamides, will ye not come in here among us? Fie on thee traitor, said Sir Palamides, for wit you well, and it were daylight as it is night, I would slay thee with mine own hands. And if ever I may get thee, said Pal-
almides, thou shalt die for this day's deed. Sir Palamides, said Sir Tristram, ye blame me with wrong, for had ye done as I did ye had won worship. But since ye give me so large warning I shall be well ware of you. Fie on thee traitor, said Palamides, and therewith departed. Then on the morn Sir Tris-
tram, Bleoberis, and Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Gareth, Sir Dinadan, what by water and what by land, they brought La Beale Isoud unto Joyous Gard, and there reposed them a seven night, and made all the mirths and disports that they could devise. And king Arthur and his knights drew unto Camelot, and Sir Palamides rode with the two kings; and ever he made the greatest dole that any man could think. For he was not all only so dolorous for the departing from La Beale Isoud, but he was a part as sorrowful for depart from the fellow-
ship of Sir Tristram, for Sir Tristram was so kind and so gentle that when Sir Palamides remembered him thereof he might never be merry.

CHAP. LXXXI.

How Sir Bleoberis and Sir Ector reported to queen Guenever of the beauty of La Beale Isoud.

So at the seven night's end Sir Bleo-
beris and Sir Ector departed from Sir Tristram and from the queen, and these two good knights had great gifts, and Sir Gareth and Sir Dinadan abode with Sir Tristram. And when Sir Bleoberis
and Sir Ector were come there as the queen Guenevery was lodged in a castle by the sea side, and through the grace of God the queen was recovered from her malady, then she asked the two knights from whence they came. They said they came from Sir Tristram and from La Beale Isoud. How doth Sir Tristram, said the queen, and La Beale Isoud? Truly, said those two knights, he doth as a noble knight should do, and as for the queen Isoud, she is peerless of all ladies; for to speak of her beauty, bounty, and mirth, and of her goodness, we saw never her match as far as we have ridden and gone. Oh mercy, said queen Guenevery, so saith all the people that have seen her and spoken with her. Would that I had part of her conditions. And it is misfortuned me of my sickness while that tournament endured; and, as I suppose, I shall never see in all my life such an assembly of knights and ladies as ye have done. Then the knights told her how Sir Palamides wan the degree at the first day with great noblesse; and the second day Sir Tristram wan the degree; and the third day Sir Launcelot wan the degree. Well, said queen Guenevery, who did best all these three days? Truly, said these knights, Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram had least dishonour. And wit ye well Sir Palamides did passing well and mightily, but he turned against the party that he came in withal, and that caused him to lose a great part of his worship, for it seemed that Sir Palamides is passing envious. Then shall he never win worship, said queen Guenevery, for, and it happened an envious man once to win worship, he shall be dishonoured twice therefore. And for this cause all men of worship hate an envious man, and will shew him no favour. And he that is courteous, kind, and gentle, hath favour in every place.

CHAP. LXXXII.

How Sir Palamides complained by a well, and how Epinogris came and found him, and of their both sorrows.

Now leave we of this matter, and speak we of Sir Palamides the king of Ireland sent a man to Sir Palamides, and gave him a courser. And the king of Ireland gave him great gifts, and faith of the kings were heavy. And the king of Ireland would have had Sir Palamides abide with them, but in no wise would abide, and so he departed. As adventures would guide, till it was nigh noon. And this was the forest by a well Sir Palamides saw, and lay a fair wounded knight, and his horse bound by him, and that knight was the greatest dole that ever he had seen, for ever he wept and sighed, though he would die. Then Sir Palamides rode near him, and saluted him mildly and said, Fair knight, why dost thou weep so? let me lie down and wall with ye, for doubt ye not I am much more than ye are; for I dare say, said Sir Palamides, that my sorrow is an hundred fold more than yours is, and thus let us complain either to other. Then said the wounded knight, I require ye first to tell me your name, for and though I am one of the noble knights of the Round Table, thou shalt never know my name, nor ever come of me. Fair knight, said Sir Palamides, such as I am, be it better for thy sake, thou art Sir Palamides, son and heir unto Astlabor, and Sir Safore and Sir Palamides are my two brethren, and we are as well as for myself I was never christened, but my two brethren are truly christened. Oh noble knight, said that knight, that is me that I have met with ye, for wit ye well my name is Epinogris, king's son of Northumberland. Sit down, said Epinogris, and let us either complain to other. Then Palamides began his complaint. Oh shall I tell you, said Palamides, when I endure. I love the fairest of all ladies that ever bare life, and wit her name is La Beale Isoud, for one of the best knight in the world loveth her, that is S
Liones. That is truth, said Sir Epinogris; for no man knoweth that I said better than I do, for I have been in Tristram’s fellowship this month, and La Beale Isoud together; and I have lost the fellowship of them for ever, and the love of Isoud for ever, and I am never to see her more, and Sir Tristram is to other mortal enemies. Epinogris, sith that ye loved Isoud, loved she you ever anything that ye could think yea, by my knighthood, said I, I never espied that ever she was more than all the world. But here she gave me the greatest at ever I had, the which shall from my heart, and yet I well hat rebuke, for I had not done and therefore I have lost the r and of Sir Tristram for ever. We many times enforced myself my deeds for La Beale Isoud’s I she was the causer of my winning. Alas, said Sir Palamedes, have I lost all the worship I wan, for never shall me bebrowess as I had in the fellowship of Tristram.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Palamedes brought to Sir Epinogris, and how Sir Palamedes was saved.

Liones, said Epinogris, your sorrow shall be to my sorrow, for I rejoiced in her. I have been to my lady’s daughter, and as the earl and his came from the tournament, she her sake I set upon Tristram, and in his two knights, myself being present, and so by force I slew the earl and one of the and the other knight fled, and my lady. And on the morn, as I reposed us at this well side, there to me an errant knight, Sir Helior le Preuse, an hardy knight; and this Sir Helior challenged me to fight for my lady. And then we went to battle, first upon horse and after on foot. But at the last Sir Helior wounded me so that he left me for dead, and so he took my lady with him. And thus my sorrow is more than yours, for I have rejoiced, and ye rejoiced never. That is truth, said Sir Palamedes, but sith I can never recover myself, I shall promise you, if I can meet with Sir Helior I shall get you your lady again, or else he shall beat me. Then Sir Palamedes made Sir Epinogris to take his horse, and so they rode to an hermitage, and there Sir Epinogris rested him. And in the mean while Sir Palamedes walked privately out, to rest him under the leaves; and there beside he saw a knight come riding with a shield that he had seen Sir Ector de Maris bear aforehand, and there came after him a ten knights, and so these ten knights hoved under the leaves for heat. And anon after there came a knight, with a green shield and therein a white lion, leading a lady upon a palfrey. Then this knight with the green shield, that seemed to be master of the ten knights, he rode fiercely after Sir Helior; for it was he that hurt Sir Epinogris. And when he came nigh Sir Helior he bad him defend his lady. I will defend her, said Helior, unto my power. And so they ran together so mightily that either of these two knights smote other down, horse and all, to the earth, and then they wan up lightly and drew their swords and their shields, and lashed together mightily more than an hour. All this Sir Palamedes saw and beheld, but ever at the last the knight with Sir Ector’s shield was bigger, and at the last this knight smote Sir Helior down, and then that knight unlaced his helm to have stricken off his head. And then he cried mercy, and prayed him to save his life, and bad him take his lady.

Then Sir Palamedes dressed him up, because he wiseth well that that same lady was Epinogris’ lady, and he promised him to help him. Then Sir Palamedes
went straight to that lady, and took her by the hand, and asked her whether she knew a knight that hight Epinogris. Alas, she said, that ever he knew me, or I him, for I have for his sake lost my worship, and also his life grieveth me most of all. Not so, lady, said Palamides, come on with me, for here is Epinogris in this hermitage. Ah, well is me, said the lady, and he be on live. Whither wilt thou with that lady? said the knight with Sir Ector’s shield. I will do with her what me list, said Palamides. Wit you well, said that knight, thou speakest over large, though thou seemest me to have at advantage, because thou sawest me do battle but late. Thou weenest, sir knight, to have that lady away from me so lightly; nay, think it never not, and thou were as good a knight as is Sir Launcelot, or as is Sir Tristram, or Sir Palamides, but thou shalt win her dearer than ever did I. And so they went unto battle upon foot, and there they gave many sad strokes, and either wounded other passing sore; and thus they fought still more than an hour. Then Sir Palamides had marvel what knight he might be that was so strong and so well breathed during, and thus said Palamides: Knight, I require thee tell me thy name. Wit thou well, said that knight, I dare tell thee my name, so that thou wilt tell me thy name. I will, said Palamides. Truly, said that knight, my name is Safere, son of king Astlabor, and Sir Palamides and Sir Segwarides are my brethren. Now, and wit thou well my name is Sir Palamides. Then Sir Safere kneeled down upon his knees, and prayed him of mercy; and then they unlaced their helms, and either kissed other weeping. And in the mean while Sir Epinogris arose out of his bed, and heard them by the strokes, and so he armed him to help Sir Palamides if need were.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

How Sir Palamides and Sir Safere conducted Sir Epinogris to his castle, and of other adventures.

Then Sir Palamides took the lady by the hand and brought her to Sir Epinogris, and there was great joy between them, for either swooned for joy. When they were met,—Fair knight and lady, said Sir Safere, it were pitty to depart you, Heaven send you joy either of other. Gramercy, gentle knight, said Epinogris, and much more thank be to my lord Sir Palamides, that thus hath through his prowess made me to get my lady. Then Sir Epinogris required Sir Palamides and Sir Safere his brother to ride with them unto his castle, for the safeguard of his person. Sir, said Palamides, we will be ready to conduct you, because that ye are sore wounded. And so was Epinogris and his lady horse, and his lady behind him, upon a soft ambler.

And then they rode unto his castle, where they had great cheer, and joy as great as ever Sir Palamides and Sir Safere ever had in their life days. So on the morn Sir Safere and Sir Palamides departed, and rode as fortune led them: and so they rode all that day until afternoon. And at the last they heard a great weeping and a great noise down in a manor. Sir, said then Sir Safere, let us wit what noise this is. I will well, said Sir Palamides. And so they rode forth till that they came to a fair gate of a manor, and there sat an old man saying his prayers and beads. Then Sir Palamides and Sir Safere alight, and left their horses, and went within the gates, and there they saw full many goody men weeping. Fair sirs, said Sir Palamides, wherefore weep ye, and make this sorrow? anon one of the knights of the castle beheld Sir Palamides and knew him, and then went to his fellows and said, Fair fellows, wit ye well all, we have in this castle the same knight that slew our lord at Lonazep, for I know him well, it is Sir Palamides. Then they went unto harness all that might bear harness, some on horseback and some on foot, to the number of threescore. And when they were ready, they came freshly upon Sir Palamides and upon Sir Safere with a great noise, and said thus, Keep thee,
HOW SIR PALAMIDES WAS RESCUED.

Of thee, for thou art known, and thou must be dead, for thou our lord, and therefore, wit ye ill slay thee, therefore defend Sir Palamides and Sir Saure set his back to other, and great strokes, and took many staves; and thus they fought many knights and forty gentleman, nigh two hours. But, though they were loth, Sir and Sir Saure were taken, and put in a strong prison. In three days twelve knights on them, and they found Sir Saure guilty, and Sir Saure not heir lord's death. And when should be delivered. There dole betwixt Sir Palamides and many piteous complaints were made at his departing, is no maker can rehearse the. Fair brother, said Palamides, my dole and my sorrow, if I be ordained to die a death, welcome be it; but wist of this death that I am to, I should never have been so Sir Saure departed from with the greatest dole of that ever made knight. The morn they of the castle twelve knights to ride with them unto the father of the knight that Sir Palamides slew; they bound his legs under an belly. And then they rode Palamides unto a castle by the at hight Pelowimes, and there he should have justice: thus ordain he. And so they rode Palamides fast by the castle of Lord, and as they passed by, there came riding out of by them one that knew Sir Palamides, and when that knight saw that he was bound upon a crooked staff; knight asked Sir Palamides cause he was led so. Ah, said Sir Palamides, toward my death, for the knight at a tournament of and if I had not departed from my lord Sir Tristram, as I ought not to have done, now might I have been sure to have had my life saved. But I pray you, sir knight, recommend me unto my lord Sir Tristram, and unto my lady queen Isoud, and say to them, if ever I trespassed to them I ask them forgiveness. And also, I beseech you, recommend me unto my lord king Arthur, and unto all the fellowship of the Round Table, unto my power. Then that knight wept for pity of Sir Palamides; and therewithal he rode unto Joyous Gard as fast as his horse might run. And lightly that knight descended down off his horse, and went unto Sir Tristram, and there he told him all as ye have heard: and ever the knight wept as he had been mad.

CHAP. LXXXV.

How Sir Tristram made him ready to rescue Sir Palamides, but Sir Launcelot rescued him or he came.

When Sir Tristram heard how Sir Palamides went to his death, he was heavy to hear that, and said, Howbeit that I am wrath with Sir Palamides, yet will not I suffer him to die so shameful a death, for he is a full noble knight. And then anon Sir Tristram was armed, and took his horse, and two squires with him, and rode a great pace toward the castle of Pelowimes, where Sir Palamides was judged to death. And these twelve knights that led Sir Palamides passed by a well whereas Sir Launcelot was, which was alight there, and had tied his horse to a tree, and taken off his helm to drink of that well; and when he saw these knights, Sir Launcelot put on his helm, and suffered them to pass by him. And then was he ware of Sir Palamides bounden, and led shamefully to his death. Oh, mercy, said Launcelot, what misadventure is befallen him, that he is thus led toward his death? Forsooth, said Launcelot, it were shame to me to suffer this noble knight so to die and I might help him, therefore I will help him whatsoever come of it, or else I shall die for Sir Palamides' sake.
And then Sir Launcelot mounted upon his horse, and gat his spear in his hand, and rode after the twelve knights that led Sir Palamides. Fair knights, said Sir Launcelot, whither lead ye that knight? it beseemeth him full ill to ride bounden. Then these twelve knights suddenly turned their horses, and said to Sir Launcelot, Sir knight, we counsel thee not to meddle with this knight, for he hath deserved death, and unto death he is judged. That me repenteth, said Launcelot, that I may not ransom him with fairness, for he is over good a knight to die such a shameful death. And therefore, fair knights, said Sir Launcelot, keep you as well as ye can, for I will rescue that knight, or die for it. Then they began to dress their spears, and Sir Launcelot smote the foremost down, horse and man; and so he served three more with one spear, and then that spear brake; and thereon Sir Launcelot drew his sword, and then he smote on the right hand and on the left hand: then within awhile he left none of those twelve knights but he had laid them to the earth, and the most part of them were sore wounded. And then Sir Launcelot took the best horse that he found, and loosed Sir Palamides, and set him upon that horse, and so they returned again unto Joyous Gard. And then was Sir Palamides ware of Sir Tristram how he came riding; and when Sir Launcelot saw him he knew him right well; but Sir Tristram knew not him, because Sir Launcelot had on his shoulder a golden shield. So Sir Launcelot made him ready to just with Sir Tristram, that Sir Tristram should not wend that he were Sir Launcelot. Then Sir Palamides cried on loud unto Sir Tristram, O my lord, I require you just not with this knight, for this good knight hath saved me from my death. When Sir Tristram heard him say so, he came a soft trotting pace toward them. And then Sir Palmides said, My lord Sir Tristram, much am I beholding unto you of your great goodness that would proffer your noble body to rescue me undeserved, for I have greatly offended you. Notwithstanding, said Sir Palamides, here met this noble knight, that worshipfully rescued me from twelve and smote them down all, and them sore.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Launcelot came to joyous Gard and of Palamides and Sir Tristram

Fair knight, said Sir Tristram to Sir Launcelot, of whence be ye a knight errant, said Sir Launcelot rideth to seek many adventures is your name? said Sir Tristram at this time I will not tell you. Sir Launcelot said unto Sir Tristram, and to Palamides, Now either are met together, I will depart you. Not so, said Sir Tristram, you of knighthood to ride unto my castle. Wit you we Sir Launcelot, I may not rid you, for I have many deeds to other places, that at this time not abide with you. Truly, Sir Tristram, I require you, as ye be a knight to the order of knighthood you with me this night. To Tristram had a grant of Sir La Beale, though he had not him he would have ridden with or soon would come after the Sir Launcelot came for none cause into that country but for Sir Tristram. And when the come within Joyous Gard they and their horses were led into a and then they unarmed them when Sir Launcelot was unheln Tristram and Sir Palamides knew then Sir Tristram took Sir La Beale and Sir Palamides kneeled down his knees and thanked Sir La Beale. When Sir Launcelot saw Sir Palamides kneel, he lightly took him up, and thus; Wit thou well, Sir Palamides, and any knight in this land ship, ought of very right success rescue so noble a knight as
and renowned throughout all
ld, endlong and overthwart.

was there joy among them;
ofter that Sir Palamides saw
Isoud, the heavier he waxed
day. Then Sir Launcelot within
four days departed; and with
Sir Ector de Maris: and Di-
nd Sir Palamides were there left
Tristram a two months and
But ever Sir Palamides faded
turned, that all men had marvel
he faded so away. So upon
n the dawning Sir Palamides
o the forest by himself alone,
e he found a well, and then he
nto the well, and in the water
his own visage, how he was
and defaded, nothing like
was. What may this mean?
Palamides. And thus he said
s: Ah, Palamides, Palamides,
thou diuaded, thou that was
called one of the fairest
of the world? I will no more
r life, for I love that I may
t nor recover. And therewithal
him down by the well. And
began to make a rhyme of
Isoud and him. And in the
ile Sir Tristram was that same
en into the forest to chase the
geese. _But Sir Tristram would
on hunting never more un-
because of Sir Breuse Sance
nd so as Sir Tristram rode into
st up and down, he heard one
vellously loud; and that was
mides, that lay by the well.
en Sir Tristram rode softly
for he deemed there was some
rant that was at the well.
when Sir Tristram came nigh
descended down from his horse,
his horse fast till a tree, and
came near him on foot. And
was ware where lay Sir Pal-
y the well, and sang loud and
And ever the complaints were
noble queen La Beale Isoud,
gh was marvellously and won-
well said, and full dolefully and
made. And all the whole

song the noble knight Sir Tristram
heard from the beginning to the ending,
the which grieved and troubled him
sore. But then at the last, when Sir
Tristram had heard all Sir Palamides'
complaints, he was wrought out of mea-
sure, and thought for to slay him there
as he lay. Then Sir Tristram remem-
bered himself that Sir Palamides was
unarmed, and of the noble name that
Sir Palamides had, and the noble name
that himself had, and then he made a
restraint of his anger, and so he went
unto Sir Palamides a soft pace, and
said, Sir Palamides, I have heard your
complaint, and of thy treason that thou
hast owed me so long. And wit thou
well therefore thou shalt die. And if
it were not for shame of knighthood
thou shouldest not escape my hands,
for now I know well thou hast awaited
me with treason. Tell me, said Sir
Tristram, how thou wilt acquit thee.
Sir, said Palamides, thus I will acquit
me:—as for queen La Beale Isoud, ye
shall wit well that I love her above all
other ladies of the world; and well I
wot it shall befall me as for her love as
befel to the noble knight Sir Kehidius,
that died for the love of La Beale Isoud;
and now, Sir Tristram, I will that ye
wit that I have loved La Beale Isoud
many a day, and she hath been the
causer of my worship. And else I had
been the most simplest knight in the
world. For by her, and because of her,
I have won the worship that I have:
for when I remembered me of La Beale
Isoud, I won the worship wheresoever
I came, for the most part; and yet had
I never reward nor bounty of her the
days of my life, and yet have I been
her knight guerdonless: and therefore
Sir Tristram, as for any death I dread
not, for I had as lief die as to live. And
if I were armed as thou art, I should
lightly do battle with thee. Well have
ye uttered your treason, said Tristram.
I have done to you no treason, said
Sir Palamides, for love is free for all
men, and though I have loved your
lady she is my lady as well as yours:
howbeit I have wrong if any wrong be,
for ye rejoice her, and have her love, and so had I never, nor never am like to have. And yet shall I love her to the uttermost days of my life as well as ye.

CHAP. LXXXVII.
How there was a day set between Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides for to fight, and how Sir Tristram was hurt.

Then, said Sir Tristram, I will fight with you unto the uttermost. I grant, said Palamides, for in a better quarrel keep I never to fight, for, and I die of your hands, of a better knight’s hands may I not be slain. And sithen I understand that I shall never rejoice La Beale Isoud, I have as good will to die as to live. Then set ye a day, said Sir Tristram, that we shall do battle. This day fifteen days, said Palamides, will I meet with you here by, in the meadow under Joyous Gard. Fie for shame, said Sir Tristram, will ye set so long day? let us fight to-morn. Not so, said Palamides, for I am meagre, and have been long sick for the love of La Beale Isoud, and therefore I will repose me till I have my strength again. So then Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides promised faithfully to meet at the well that day fifteen days. I am remembered, said Sir Tristram to Palamides, that ye brake me once a promise when that I rescued you from Breuse Sance Pitt and nine knights, and then ye promised me to meet at the peron and the grave beside Camelot, whereas at that time ye failed of your promise. Wit you well, said Palamides unto Sir Tristram, I was at that day in prison, so that I might not hold my promise. Truly, said Sir Tristram, and ye had holden your promise, this work had not been here now at this time. Right so departed Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides. And so Sir Palamides took his horse and his harness, and he rode unto king Arthur’s court, and there Sir Palamides gat him four knights and four serjeants of arms, and so he returned againward unto Joyous Gard. And in the mean while Sir Tristram chased and hunted at all manner of venery, and about three hours afore the battle should be, as Sir Tristram chased an hart, there an archer shot at the hart, and fortune he smote Sir Tristram thick of the thigh, and the arm Sir Tristram’s horse, and hurt it. When Sir Tristram was so hurt, passing heavy, and wit ye well sore. And then he took another and rode unto Joyous Gard with heaviness, more for the promise made with Sir Palamides, as to do with him within three days after for any hurt of his thigh. Whilom there was neither man nor woman could cheer him with anything they could make to him, neither La Beale Isoud, for ever he deemed Sir Palamides had smitten him he should not be able to do battle him at the day set.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.
How Sir Palamides kept his day foughten, but Sir Tristram not come; and other things.

But in no wise there was nor was about Sir Tristram that would that ever Sir Palamides would trim Sir Tristram, neither by his own hand, neither by none other consenting. Then the fifteenth day was come, Palamides came to the well with nine knights with him of Arthur’s court, with three serjeants of arms. And intent Sir Palamides brought the helm, the shield, and the three serjeants of arms they should bear record of the betwixt Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides. And the one serjeant brought the helm, the other his spear, the third his sword. So thus Sir Palamides into the field, and there he abode two hours. And then he sent unto Sir Tristram, and desired him to come into the field to hold his peace. When the squire was come to Joyous Gard, anon as Sir Tristram heard his coming, he let command the squire should come to his place there as he lay in his bed.
...THE END OF THE BOOK OF SIR TRISTRAM.

...letter to country, and all strange adventures he achieved wheresoever he rode, and always he enquired for Sir Palamides, but of all that quarter of summer Sir Tristram could never meet with Sir Palamides. But thus as Sir Tristram sought and enquired after Sir Palamides, Sir Tristram achieved many great battles, wherethrough all the noise fell to Sir Tristram, and it ceased of Sir Launcelot; and therefore Sir Launcelot's brethren and his kinsmen would have slain Sir Tristram, because of his fame. But when Sir Launcelot wist how his kinsmen were set, he said to them openly, Wit you well, that and the envy of you all be so hardy to wait upon my lord Sir Tristram with any hurt, shame, or villainy, as I am true knight I shall slay the best of you with mine own hands. Alas, fie for shame, should ye for his noble deeds await upon him to slay him. Jesu defend, said Launcelot, that ever any noble knight as Sir Tristram is should be destroyed with treason. Of this noise and fame sprang into Cornwall, and among them of Liones, whereof they were passing glad and made great joy. And then they of Liones sent letters unto Sir Tristram of recommendation, and many great gifts to maintain Sir Tristram's estate. And ever between Sir Tristram resorted unto Joyous Gard, where as La Beale Isoud was, that loved him as her life.

ere endeth the tenth book which is of sir Tristram.

ere followeth the Eleventh book which is of sir launcelot.

The Eleventh Book.

CHAP. I.

Launcelot rode on his adventures, how he besought a dolorous lady of pain, and how that he fought a dragon.

we we Sir Tristram de Liones, we of Sir Launcelot du Lake, and Sir Galahad, Sir Launcelot's son, how he was born, and in what manner, as the book of French rehearseth. Afore the time that Sir Galahad was born, there came in an hermit unto king Arthur, upon Whitsunday, as the knights sat at the Table Round. And when the hermit saw the siege perilous,
he asked the king and all the knights why that siege was void. Sir Arthur and all the knights answered, There shall never none sit in that siege but one, but if he be destroyed. Then, said the hermit, wot ye what is he? Nay, said Arthur and all the knights, we wot not who is he that shall sit therein. Then wot I, said the hermit, for he that shall sit there is unborn, and this same year he shall be born that shall sit there in that siege perilous, and he shall win the Sangreal. When this hermit had made this mention he departed from the court of King Arthur. And then after this feast Sir Launcelot rode on his adventures, till on a time by adventure he passed over the bridge of Corbin, and there he saw the fairest tower that ever he saw, and thereunder was a fair town full of people, and all the people, men and women, cried at once. Welcome Sir Launcelot du Lake, the flower of all knighthood, for by thee all we shall be holpen out of danger. What mean ye, said Sir Launcelot, that ye cry so upon me? Ah, fair knight, said they all, here is within this tower a dolorous lady that hath been there in pains many winters: for ever she boileth in scalding water. And but late, said all the people, Sir Gawaine was here, and he might not help her, and so he left her in pain. So may I, said Sir Launcelot, leave her in pain as well as Sir Gawaine did. Nay, said the people, we know well that it is Sir Launcelot that shall deliver her. Well, said Launcelot, then show me what I shall do. Then they brought Sir Launcelot into the tower. And when he came to the chamber there as this lady was, the doors of iron unlocked and unbolted. And so Sir Launcelot went into the chamber that was as hot as any stew, and there Sir Launcelot took the fairest lady by the hand that ever he saw, and she was naked as a needle, and by enchantment queen Morgan le Fay and the queen of Northgalis had put her there in that pains because she was called the fairest lady of that country. And there she had been five years, and never might she be delivered out of her great pains unto the best knight of the world had to by the hand. Then the people her clothes. And when she was Sir Launcelot thought she was the lady of the world, but if it were Guenever. Then this lady said Launcelot, Sir, if it please you go with me hereby into a chaste we may give loving and thank God? Madam, said Sir Launcelot, I will go with thee. So when they came there, at thankings to God, all the people learned and lay, gave thankings to God and him, and said, Sir knight, ye have delivered this lady, deliver us from a serpent that is a tomb. Then Sir Launcelot took the shield, and said, Bring me this which I may do unto the people. Sir Launcelot came thither, written upon the tomb letters that said thus: Here shall com bard of king's blood and he shall this serpent, and this libbard, gender a lion in this foreign the which lion shall pass a knights. So then Sir Launcelot the tomb, and there came out a ble and a fiery dragon spit out of his mouth. Then Sir L drew out his sword and fought dragon long, and at last with great Sir Launcelot slew that dragon withal came king Pelles, the g noble knight, and saluted Sir L and he him again. Fair knight, the king, what is your name? you of your knighthood tell me.

CHAP. II.
How Sir Launcelot came to Pe of the Sangreal, and of Ela Pelles' daughter.

Sir, said Launcelot, wit you name is Sir Launcelot du Lak my name is, said the king, Pel of the foreign country, and cow unto Joseph of Arimathie. A either of them made much of o
part to wear. And when Sir Launcelot saw that token, wit ye well he was never so fain. Where is my lady? said Sir Launcelot. She is in the castle of Case, said the mesager, but five mile hence. Then Sir Launcelot thought to be there the same night. And then this Brisen, by the commandment of king Pelles, let send Elaine to this castle with twenty-five knights unto the castle of Case. Then Sir Launcelot rode unto that castle, and there anon he was received worshipfully with such people to his seeming as were about queen Guenever. So when Sir Launcelot was alight, then dame Brisen brought him a cup full of wine, and as soon as he had drank that wine he was so assotled that he wend that maiden Elaine had been queen Guenever. Wit ye well that Sir Launcelot was glad, and so was that lady Elaine, for well she knew that of them should be born Sir Galahad, that should prove the best knight of the world. And then Sir Launcelot remembered him, and he arose up and went to the window.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Launcelot was displeased when he knew that he had been deceived, and how Galahad was born.

And anon as he had unshut the window, the enchantment was gone, then he knew himself that he had been deceived. Alas, said he, that I have lived so long; now am I shamed. So then he gat his sword in his hand, and said, Thou traitress, who art thou? thou shalt die right here of my hands. Then this fair lady, Elaine, kneeled down afore Sir Launcelot and said, Fair courteous knight, come of king's blood, I require you have mercy upon me; and as thou art renowned the most noble knight of the world, slay me not, for I shall have a son by thee that shall be the most noblest knight of the world. Ah, false traitress, said Sir Launcelot, why hast thou betrayed me? Anon tell me what thou art. Sir, she said, I am Elaine, the daughter of king Pelles.
Well, said Sir Launcelot, I will forgive you this deed. And therewith he took her up in his arms and kissed her, for she was as fair a lady, and thereto young, and as wise as any was that time living. Truly, said Sir Launcelot, I may not blame this to you, but her that made this enchantment upon me, as between you and me; and I may find her, that same lady Brisen, she shall lose her head for witchcraft, for there was never knight deceived so as I am. And so Sir Launcelot armed him, and took his leave mildly at that lady, young Elaine, and so he departed. Then she said, My lord Sir Launcelot, I beseech you see me as soon as you may, for I have obeyed me unto the prophecy that my father told me, and by his commandment to fulfil this prophecy I have given the greatest riches and the fairest flower that ever I had, and that is my maiden love and faith, and therefore, gentle knight, owe me your good will. And so Sir Launcelot arrayed him, and was armed, and took his leave mildly of that young lady Elaine, and so he departed, and rode till he came to the castle of Corbin where her father was. And as soon as her time came she was delivered of a fair child, and they christened him Galahad. And wit ye well that child was well kept and well nourished, and he was named Galahad, because Sir Launcelot was so named at the fontain stone; and after that, the Lady of the lake confirmed him Sir Launcelot du Lake. Then after this lady was delivered and church'd there came a knight unto her, his name was Sir Bromel la Pleche, the which was a great lord, and he had loved that lady long, and he evermore desired her to wed her, and so by no means she could put him off, till on a day she said to Sir Bromel, Wit thou well, sir knight, I will not love you, for my love is set upon the best knight of the world. Who is he? said Sir Bromel. Sir, said she, it is Sir Launcelot du Lake that I love, and none other, and therefore woo me no longer. Ye say well, said Sir Bromel, and since ye have told me so much, ye shall have but little joy of Sir Launcelot, for I shall say him wheresoever I meet him. Sir, said the lady Elaine, do to him no treason. Wit ye well, my lady, said Bromel, and I promise you this twelvemonth I shall keep the bridge of Corbin for Sir Launcelot's sake, that he shall neither come nor go unto you but I shall meet with him.

CHAP. IV.
How Sir Bors came to Dame Elaine, and saw Galahad, and how he was fed with the Sangreal.

Then, as it befell by fortune and adventure, Sir Bors de Ganis, that was nephew unto Sir Launcelot, came over that bridge, and there Sir Bromel and Sir Bors justed, and Sir Bors smote Sir Bromel such a buffet that he bare him over his horse croup. And then Sir Bromel, as an hardy knight, pulled out his sword and dressed his shield, to do battle with Sir Bors. And then Sir Bors alight and avoided his horse, and there they dashed together many sad strokes, and long thus they fought, till at the last Sir Bromel was laid to the earth, and then Sir Bors began to unlace his helm to slay him. Then Sir Bromel cried Sir Bors' mercy, and yielded him. Upon this covenant thou shalt have thy life, said Sir Bors, so thou go unto Sir Launcelot upon Whitsunday that next cometh, and yield thee unto him as knight recreant. I will do it, said Sir Bromel: and that he sware upon the cross of the sword, and so he let him depart. And Sir Bors rode unto king Pelles that was within Corbin. And when the king and Elaine his daughter wist that Sir Bors was nephew unto Sir Launcelot, they made him great cheer. Then said dame Elaine, We marvel where Sir Launcelot is, for he came never here but once. Marvel not, said Sir Bors, for this half year he hath been in prison with queen Morgan le Fay, king Arthur's sister. Alas, said dame Elaine, that me repenteth. And ever Sir Bors beheld that child in her arms, and ever him seemed it was passing like Sir Launcelot. Truly, said dame Elaine.
OF KING PELLES AND SIR BORS.

Tell this is his child. Then Sir Bors sent for joy, and he prayed to God to prove as good a knight as he was. And so came in a white and she bare a little censer of gold, and there was all manner of drinks, and a maiden bare cregale, and she said openly, Wit. Sir Bors that this child is Galatea shall sit in the siege perilous, and he shall be better than ever was Sir Lancelot, that is his own father. When they kneeled down and made devotions, and there was such a fire as all the spicery in the world was there. And when the dove or flight, the maiden vanished as Sancregale as she came. Sir, Bors unto king Pelles, this may be named the castle adventure here be many strange adventures. That is sooth, said the king. All may this place be called the rous place, for there come but oftentimes that go away with any: be he never so strong, here he proved, and but late Sir Gawain did knight gat but little worship for. I let you wit, said king here shall no knight win no but if he be of worship himself, good living, and that loveth God, adeth God, and else he geteth ship here, he be never so hardy. a wonderful thing, said Sir Bors. The man in this country I wot not, have many strange adventures, before I will lie in this castle this Ye shall not do so, said king by my counsel, for it is hard and be without a shame. I shall take venture that will befall me, said Sir. Then I counsel you, said the king, confessed clean. As for that, said Sir, I will be shriven with a good Sir Bors was confessed, and for ten Sir Bors was a virgin, save that was the daughter of king is, and their child hight Helin, th for her Sir Bors was a pure. And so he was led unto bed in a chamber, and many doors were shut about the chamber. When Sir Bors espied all those doors, he avoided all the people, for he might have nobody with him; but in no wise Sir Bors would unarm him, but so he laid him down upon the bed. And right so he saw come in a light that he might well see a spear great and long, that came straight upon him pointing, and to Sir Bors seemed that the head of the spear burnt like a taper. And anon, or Sir Bors wist, the spear head smote him into the shoulder an hand breadth in deepness, and that wound grieved Sir Bors passing sore. And then he laid him down again for pain, and anon therewithal came a knight armed with his shield on his shoulder, and his sword in his hand, and he bad Sir Bors, Arise sir knight, and fight with me. I am sore hurt, he said, but yet I shall not fail thee. And then Sir Bors start up and dressed his shield, and then they slashed together mightily a great while. And at the last Sir Bors bare him backward, until that he came unto a chamber door, and there that knight went into that chamber, and rested him a great while. And when he had reposed him he came out freshly again, and began new battle with Sir Bors mightily and strongly.

CHAP. V.

How Sir Bors made Sir Pedivere to yield him, and of marvellous adventures that be bad, and how be achieved them.

Then Sir Bors thought he should no more go into that chamber to rest him, and so Sir Bors dressed him betwixt the knight and that chamber door, and there Sir Bors smote him down, and then that knight yielded him. What is your name? said Sir Bors. Sir, said he, my name is Pedivere of the Straight Marches. So Sir Bors made him to swear at Whitsunday next coming to be at the court of king Arthur and yield him there as a prisoner, as an overcome knight by the hands of Sir Bors. So thus departed Sir Pedivere of the Straight Marches. And then Sir Bors laid him down to rest, and then he heard and felt much noise in that
chamber; and then Sir Bors espied that there came in, he wist not whether at the doors or windows, shot of arrows and of quarrels, so thick that he marvelled, and many fell upon him and hurt him in the bare places. And then Sir Bors was ware where came in an hideous lion; so Sir Bors dressed him unto the lion, and anon the lion bereft him of his shield, and with his sword Sir Bors smote off the lion’s head.

Right so Sir Bors forthwithal saw a dragon in the court, passing horrible, and there seemed letters of gold written in his forehead; and Sir Bors thought that the letters made a signification of king Arthur. Right so there came an horrible libard and an old, and there they fought long, and did great battle together. And at the last the dragon spit out of his mouth as it had been an hundred dragons, and lightly all the small dragons slew the old dragon, and tare him all to pieces. Anon withal there came an old man into the hall, and he sat him down in a fair chair, and there seemed to be two adders about his neck, and then the old man had an harp, and there he sang an old song, how Joseph of Aramathie came into this land. Then when he had sung, the old man bad Sir Bors—Go from thence, for here shall ye have no more adventures, and full worshipfully have ye done, and better shall ye do hereafter. And then Sir Bors seemed that there came the whitest dove with a little golden censer in her mouth; and anon therewithal the tempest ceased and passed that afore was marvellous to hear. So was all that court full of good savours. Then Sir Bors saw four children bearing four fair tapers, and an old man in the midst of the children with a censer in his one hand, and a spear in his other hand, and that spear was called the spear of vengeance.

CHAP. VI.
How Sir Bors departed; and how Sir Launcelot was rebuked of queen Guenever, and of his excuse.

Now, said that old man to Sir Bors, go ye to your cousin Sir Launcelot, and tell him of this adventure, the which had been most convenient for him of all earthly knights, but sin is so foul in him he may not achieve such holy deeds; for, had not been his sin, he had passed all the knights that ever were in his days. And tell thou Sir Launcelot, of all worldly adventures he passeth in manhood and prowess all other, but in these spiritual matters he shall have many his better. And then Sir Bors saw four gentlewomen coming by him poorly beseeen, and he saw where that they entered into a chamber where was great light, as it were a summer light, and the women kneeled down afore an altar of silver with four pillars, and as it had been a bishop kneeled down afore that table of silver. And as Sir Bors looked over his head, he saw a sword like silver, naked, hoiving over his head, and the clearness thereof smote so in his eyes that at that time Sir Bors was blind, and there he heard a voice that said, Go hence, thou Sir Bors, for as yet thou art not worthy to be in this place. And then he went backward to his bed till on the morn. And on the morn king Pelles made great joy of Sir Bors, and then he departed and rode to Camelot, and there he found Sir Launcelot du Lake, and told him of the adventures he had seen with king Pelles at Corbin. So the noise sprang in king Arthur’s court that Sir Launcelot had a child by Elaine, the daughter of king Pelles, wherefore queen Guenever was wroth and gave many rebukes to Sir Launcelot, and called him false knight. And then Sir Launcelot told the queen all, and how he was made to meet her by enchantment, in likeness of the queen. So the queen held Sir Launcelot excused. And, as the book saith, king Arthur had been in France, and had made war upon the mighty king Claudas, and had won much of his lands; and when the king was come again he let cry a great feast, that all lords and ladies of all England should be there, but if it were such as were rebellious against him.
CHAP. VII.

Elaine, Galbad's mother, came to Camelot, and bow was brought unto queen Guenever, either made other good cheer by countenance, but nothing with hearts. But all men and women spake of the beauty of dame Elaine, and of her great riches. Then the queen commanded that dame Elaine should sleep in a chamber nigh unto her chamber, and all under one roof. And so it was done as the queen had commanded. Then the queen sent for Sir Launcelot, and bid him come to her, or else, I am sure, said the queen, that ye will go to your lady, dame Elaine, by whom ye had Galahad. Ah, madam, said Sir Launcelot, never say ye so; for that was against my will. Then, said the queen, look that ye come to me when I send for you. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, I shall not fail you, but I shall be ready at your commandment. This bargain was soon done and made between them, but dame Brisen knew it by her crafts, and told it to her lady dame Elaine. Alas, said she, how shall I do. Let me deal, said dame Brisen, for I shall bring him by the hand, even to you, and he shall ween that I am queen Guenever's messenger. Now well is me, said dame Elaine, for all the world I love not so much as I do Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. VIII.

How dame Brisen by enchantment brought Sir Launcelot to dame Elaine, and bow was brought unto queen Guenever, either made other good cheer by countenance, but nothing with hearts. But all men and women spake of the beauty of dame Elaine, and of her great riches. Then the queen commanded that dame Elaine should sleep in a chamber nigh unto her chamber, and all under one roof. And so it was done as the queen had commanded. Then the queen sent for Sir Launcelot, and bid him come to her, or else, I am sure, said the queen, that ye will go to your lady, dame Elaine, by whom ye had Galahad. Ah, madam, said Sir Launcelot, never say ye so; for that was against my will. Then, said the queen, look that ye come to me when I send for you. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, I shall not fail you, but I shall be ready at your commandment. This bargain was soon done and made between them, but dame Brisen knew it by her crafts, and told it to her lady dame Elaine. Alas, said she, how shall I do. Let me deal, said dame Brisen, for I shall bring him by the hand, even to you, and he shall ween that I am queen Guenever's messenger. Now well is me, said dame Elaine, for all the world I love not so much as I do Sir Launcelot.

How dame Brisen by enchantment brought Sir Launcelot to dame Elaine, and bow was brought unto queen Guenever, either made other good cheer by countenance, but nothing with hearts. But all men and women spake of the beauty of dame Elaine, and of her great riches. Then the queen commanded that dame Elaine should sleep in a chamber nigh unto her chamber, and all under one roof. And so it was done as the queen had commanded. Then the queen sent for Sir Launcelot, and bid him come to her, or else, I am sure, said the queen, that ye will go to your lady, dame Elaine, by whom ye had Galahad. Ah, madam, said Sir Launcelot, never say ye so; for that was against my will. Then, said the queen, look that ye come to me when I send for you. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, I shall not fail you, but I shall be ready at your commandment. This bargain was soon done and made between them, but dame Brisen knew it by her crafts, and told it to her lady dame Elaine. Alas, said she, how shall I do. Let me deal, said dame Brisen, for I shall bring him by the hand, even to you, and he shall ween that I am queen Guenever's messenger. Now well is me, said dame Elaine, for all the world I love not so much as I do Sir Launcelot.
away: so she came to the queen and told her all. Alas, said the queen, where is that false knight become? Then the queen was nigh out of her wit, and then she writhed and weltered as a mad woman; and at the last the queen met with Sir Launcelot, and thus she said, False traitor knight that thou art, look thou never abide in my court, and not so hardly, thou false traitor knight that thou art, that ever thou come in my sight. Alas, said Sir Launcelot: and therewith he took such an heartily sorrow at her words that he fell down to the floor in a swoon. And therewithal queen Guenever departed. And when Sir Launcelot awoke of his swoon he leapt out at a bay window into a garden, and there with thorns he was all to-scratched in his visage and his body, and so he ran forth he wist not whither, and was wild wood as ever was man; and so he ran two year, and never man might have grace to know him.

CHAP. IX.

How dame Elaine was commanded by queen Guenever to avoid the court, and how Sir Launcelot became mad.

Now turn we unto queen Guenever and to the fair lady Elaine. When dame Elaine heard the queen so to rebuke Sir Launcelot, and also she saw how he swooned, and how he leapt out at a bay window, then she said unto queen Guenever, Madam, ye are greatly to blame for Sir Launcelot, for now ye have lost him; for I saw and heard by his countenance that he is mad for ever. Alas, madam, ye do great sin, and to yourself great dishonour, for ye have a lord of your own, and therefore it is your part to love him; for there is no queen in this world hath such another king as ye have. And if ye were not, I might have the love of my lord Sir Launcelot; and cause I have to love him, for I am his, and by him I have borne a fair son, and his name is Galahad, and he shall be in his time the best knight of the world. Dame Elaine, said the queen, I charge you and command you to avoid my court; and for the love ye owe unto Sir Launcelot discover not his counsel, for and ye do it will be his death. As for that, said dame Elaine, I dare undertake he is married for ever, and that have ye made, for ye nor I are like to rejoice him; for he made the most piteous groans when he leapt out at yonder bay window that ever I heard man make. Alas I said fair Elaine, and alas I said the queen Guenever, for now I wot well we have lost him for ever. So on the morrow dame Elaine took her leave to depart, and she would no longer abide. Then king Arthur brought her on her way with more than an hundred knights through a forest. And by the way she told Sir Bors de Ganis all how it betid, and how Sir Launcelot leapt out at a bay window araged out of his wit. Alas, said Sir Bors, where is my lord Sir Launcelot become? Sir, said Elaine, I wot never. Alas, said Sir Bors, betwixt you both ye have destroyed that good knight. As for me, said dame Elaine, I said never nor did never thing that should in any wise displease him; but with the rebuke that queen Guenever gave him I saw him swoon to the earth; and when he awoke he took his sword in his hand, and leapt out at a window, with the grisliest groan that ever I heard man make. Now farewell, dame Elaine, said Sir Bors, and hold my lord Arthur with a tale as long as ye can, for I will turn again unto queen Guenever and give her a heat: and I require you as ever ye will have my service, make good watch, and espy if ever ye may see my lord Sir Launcelot. Truly, said fair Elaine, I shall do all that I may do, for as fain would I know and wit where he is become as you or any of his kin, or queen Guenever, and cause great enough have I thereto as well as any other. And wit ye well, said fair Elaine to Sir Bors, I would lose my life for him rather than he should be hurt: but alas, I cast me never for to see him; and the chief causer of this is dame Guenever. Madam, said dame Brisen, the which had made the en-
OF THE SORROW FOR SIR LAUNCELOT.

nt before betwixt Sir Launcelot I pray you heartily let Sir Bors nd hie him with all his might, as he may, to seek Sir Launcelot. arm you he is clean out of his nd yet he shall be well holpen, by miracle. Then wept dame and so did Sir Bors de Ganis, they departed; and Sir Bors night unto queen Guenever, and e saw Sir Bors she wept as she od. Fie on your weeping, said s, for ye weep never but when no boot. Alas, said Sir Bors, Sir Launcelot's kin saw you. have ye lost the best knight of good, and he that was all our nd our succour. And I dare make it good, that all kings, nor heathen, may not find such , for to speak of his nobleness rtesy with his beauty and his ss. Alas, said Sir Bors, what do that be of his blood? Alas, or de Maris. Alas, said Lionel.

CHAP. X.

arrow queen Guenever made for zuncelot, and bow he was sought fts of bis kin.

when the queen heard them say ell to the earth in a dead swoon. m Sir Bors took her up, and er, and when she was awakened she aore the three knights, and held her hands, and besought them him, and spare not for no goods he be founden, for I wot he is smind. And Sir Bors, Sir Ector, Lionel departed from the queen, might not abide no longer for And then the queen sent them enough for their expenses, and took their horses and their and departed. And then they m country to country, in forests wildernesses and in wastes, and they laid watch as well both at nd at all manner of men as they hearken and enquire after him, it was a naked man in his shirt, sword in his hand. And thus they rode nigh a quarter of a year, endlong and overthwart, in many places, forests and wildernesses, and oftentimes were evil lodged for his sake, and yet for all their labour and seeking could they never hear word of him. And wit you well these three knights were passing sorry. Then at the last Sir Bors and his fellows met with a knight, that hight Sir Melion de Tartare. Now, fair knight, said Sir Bors, whither be ye away? for they knew either other aforetime. Sir, said Sir Melion, I am in the way toward the court of king Arthur. Then we pray you, said Sir Bors, that ye will tell my lord Arthur, and my lady queen Guenever, and all the fellowship of the Round Table, that we cannot in no wise hear tell where Sir Launcelot is become. Then Sir Melion departed from them, and said that he would tell the king and the queen and all the fellowship of the Round Table, as they had desired him. So when Sir Melion came to the court of king Arthur, he told the king and the queen and all the fellowship of the Round Table, what Sir Bors had said of Sir Launcelot. Then Sir Gawaine, Sir Uwaine, Sir Agamor le Desirous, Sir Aglovale, and Sir Percival de Galis, took upon them by the great desire of king Arthur, and in especial by the queen, to seek throughout all England, Wales, and Scotland, to find Sir Launcelot. And with them rode eighteen knights more to bear them fellowship. And wit ye well they lacked no manner of spending: and so were they three and twenty knights.

Now turn we to Sir Launcelot, and speak we of his care and woe and what pain he there endured, for cold, hunger, and thirst he had plenty. And thus as these noble knights rode together, they by one assent departed, and then they rode by two, by three, and by four, and by five; and ever they assigned where they should meet. And so Sir Aglovale and Sir Percival rode together unto their mother that was a queen in those days. And when she saw her two sons, for joy she wept tenderly. And then she
said, Ah, my dear sons, when your father was slain he left me four sons, of the which now be twain slain; and for the death of my noble son Sir Lamorak shall my heart never be glad. And then she kneeled down upon her knees tofore Aglovale and Sir Percivale, and besought them to abide at home with her. Ah, sweet mother, said Sir Percivale, we may not; for we be come of king’s blood of both parties, and therefore, mother, it is our kind to haunt arms and noble deeds. Alas, my sweet sons, then she said, for your sakes I shall lose my liking and joy, and then wind and weather I may not endure, what for the death of your father king Pellinore, that was shamefully slain by the hands of Sir Gawaine and his brother Sir Galahist, and they slew him not manly, but by treason. Ah, my dear sons, this is a piteous complaint for me of your father’s death, considering also the death of Sir Lamorak, that of knighthood had but few fellows. Now, my dear sons, have this in your mind. Then there was but weeping and sobbing in the court when they should depart, and she fell in swooning in midst of the court.

CHAP. XI.

How a servant of Sir Aglovale’s was slain, and what vengeance Sir Aglovale and Sir Percivale did therefore.

And when she was awaked she sent a squire after them with spending enough. And so when the squire had overtaken them, they would not suffer him to ride with them, but sent him home again to comfort their mother, praying her meekly of her blessing. And so this squire was benighted, and by misfortune he happened to come unto a castle where dwelled a baron. And so when the squire was come into the castle, the lord asked him from whence he came, and whom he served? My lord, said the squire, I serve a good knight that is called Sir Aglovale. The squire said it to good intent, weening unto him to have been more forborne for Sir Aglovale’s sake than if he had said served the queen, Aglovale’s. Well, my fellow, said the lord of the castle, for Sir Aglovale’s sake they have evil lodging, for Aglovale’s brother, and therefore thou shalt have part of payment. And then the lord commanded his men to have him and so pulled him out of the castle where they slew him without Right so on the morn came Sir Aglovale and Sir Percivale riding church-yard, where men and were busy, and beheld the dead and they thought to bury him. is there, said Sir Aglovale, that hold so fast? A good man was and said, Fair knight, here squire slain shamefully this night was he slain, fair fellow? said Sir Aglovale. My fair sir, said the lord of this castle lodged this squire this night, and because he said he wanted unto a good knight that king Arthur, his name is Sir Aglovale, therefore the lord commanded him, and for this cause is he Gramercy, said Sir Aglovale, shall see his death revenged. I am that same knight for whom squire was slain. Then Sir A called unto him Sir Percivale, a him alight lightily, and so they both, and betook their horses to men, and so they went on foot into castle. And all so soon as the within the castle gate Sir Aglovale the porter, Go thou unto thy lord tell him that I am Sir Aglovale, whom this squire was slain this. Anon the porter told this to his whose name was Goodewin: a armed him, and then he came into court and said, Which of you Aglovale? Here I am, said Aglovale for what cause slewest thou this my mother’s squire? I slew him, Goodewin, because of thee; for thickest my brother Sir Gawdelin. As brother, said Sir Aglovale, I avowed him, he was a false knight a betrayer of ladies and of good knight and for the death of my squire
I defy thee, said Sir Goode-
hen they lashed together as
as it had been two lions: and
civale he fought with all the
at that would fight. And within
Sir Percivale had slain all that
withstand him; for Sir Percivale
his strokes that were so rude
durst no man abide him.
thin a while Sir Aglovale had
dewin at the earth, and there he
his helm and stroke off his
And then they departed and took
horses. And then they let carry
I squire unto a priory, and there
fered me to be her paramour and I re-
fused her, she set her men upon me
suddenly or ever I might come to my
weapon, and thus they bound me, and
here I wot well I shall die, but if some
man of worship break my bands. Be
ye of good cheer, said Sir Percivale, and
because ye are a knight of the Round
Table as well as I, I trust to God to
break your bands. And therewith Sir
Percivale drew out his sword, and stroke
at the chain with such a might that he
cut a-two the chain, and through Sir
Persides’ hauber, and hurt him a little.
Truly, said Sir Persides, that was a
mighty stroke as ever I felt one, for had
not the chain been, ye had slain me.
And therewithal Sir Persides saw a
knight coming out of the castle all that
ever he might flying. Beware Sir, said
Sir Persides, yonder cometh a man
that will have ado with you. Let him
come, said Sir Percivale, and so he met
with that knight in the midst of the
bridge, and Sir Percivale gave him such
a buffet that he smote him quite from
his horse, and over a part of the bridge,
that had not been a little vessel under
the bridge that knight had been drowned.
And then Sir Percivale took the knight’s
horse, and made Sir Persides to mount
upon him, and so they rode unto the
castle, and bad the lady deliver Sir
Persides’ servants, or else he would slay
all that ever he found. And so for fear
she delivered them all. Then was Sir
Percivale ware of a lady that stood in
that tower. Ah, madam, said Sir Per-
civale, what use and custom is that in
a lady to destroy good knights but if
they will be your paramour? forsooth
this is a shameful custom of a lady.
And if I had not a great matter in my
hand, I should foredo your evil customs.
And so Sir Persides brought Sir Per-
civale unto his own castle, and there he
made him great cheer all that night.
And on the morn, when Sir Percivale
had heard mass and broken his fast,
he bad Sir Persides, Ride unto king
Arthur, and tell the king how that ye
met with me, and tell my brother Sir
Aglovale how I rescued you, and bid
him seek not after me, for I am in the quest to seek Sir Launcelot du Lake. And though he seek me he shall not find me, and tell him I will never see him, nor the court, till I have found Sir Launcelot. Also tell Sir Kay the seneschal, and to Sir Mordred, that I trust to God to be of as great worthiness as either of them. For tell them I shall never forget their mocks and scorns that they did to me that day that I was made knight. And tell them I will never see that court till men speak more worship of me than ever men did of any of them both. And so Sir Persides departed from Sir Percivale, and then he rode unto king Arthur, and told there of Sir Percivale. And when Sir Aglovale heard him speak of his brother Sir Percivale, he said, He departed from me unkindly. Sir, said Sir Persides, on my life he shall prove a noble knight as any now is living. And when he saw Sir Kay and Sir Mordred, Sir Persides said thus: My fair lords both, Sir Percivale greeteth you well both, and he sent you word by me that he trusteth to God or ever he come to the court again to be of as great nobleness as ever were ye both, and more men to speak of his nobleness than ever they did you. It may well be, said Sir Kay and Sir Mordred, but at that time when he was made knight he was full unlikely to prove a good knight. As for that, said king Arthur, he must needs prove a good knight, for his father and his brethren were noble knights.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Percivale met with Sir Ector, and how they fought long, and each had almost slain other.

And now will we turn unto Sir Percivale that rode long, and in a forest he met a knight with a broken shield and a broken helm, and as soon as either saw other readily, they made them ready to just, and so hurtled together with all the might of their horses, and met together so hard that Sir Percivale was smitten to the earth. And then Sir Percivale arose lightly and cast his on his shoulder and drew his sword, and he smote the other knight alight, and fought to the uttermost. Will ye say that knight, and therewith he and put his horse from him, and they came together an easy pace, there they lashed together with swords, and sometime they strove sometimes they joined, and either other many great wounds. This fought near half a day, and never but right little, and there was them both that had less wounds teen, and they blded much that marvel they stood on their feet. A knight that fought with Sir Percivale was a proved knight and a wise knight, and Sir Percivale was yet strong, not knowing in fighting other was. Then Sir Percivale first, and said, Sir knight, hold thither a while still, for we have fought a simple matter and quarrel over and therefore I require thee tell me name, for I was never or this matched. Truly, said that knight never or this time was there never that wounded me so sore as the done, and yet have I foughten in battles; and now shalt thou with am a knight of the Table Round, name is Sir Ector de Maris, unto the good knight Sir Launcelot Lake. Alas, said Sir Percivale, name is Sir Percivale de Galath, hath made my quest to seek Sir Launcelot; now I am siker that I shall finish my quest, for ye have slain with your hands. It is not so, said Ector, for I am slain by your hand may not live; therefore I require said Sir Ector unto Sir Percivale ye hereby to a priory, and bring a priest that I may receive my S for I may not live. And when ye to the court of king Arthur, tell to brother Sir Launcelot how ye slew me, for then he would be mortal enemy; but ye may say was slain in my quest as I sought. Alas, said Sir Percivale, ye said thing that never will be, for I
or bleeding that I may scarcely
how should I then take my

CHAP. XIV.

They were both made whole,
coming of the holy vessel of San-
l.

They made both great dole out
true. This will not avail, said
ke and then he kneeled down
ade his prayer devoutly unto
ly Jesu; for he was one of the
ights of the world that at that
as, in whom the very faith stood
. Right so there came by, the
essel of the Sangreal with all
r of sweetness and savour, but
uld not readily see who that
essel, but Sir Percivale had a
ring of the vessel, and of the
that bare it, for he was a perfect
aiden. And forthwith they both
whole of hide and limb as ever
ere in their life days; then they
gave thankings to God with great mild-
ness. O Jesu! said Sir Percivale, what
may this mean that we be thus healed,
and right now we were at the point of
dying? I wot full well, said Sir Ector,
what it is. It is an holy vessel that is
borne by a maiden, and therein is a part
of the holy blood of our Lord Jesus Christ,
blessed might He be! but it may not be
seen, said Sir Ector, but if it be by a
perfect man. Truly, said Sir Percivale,
I saw a damsel, as me thought, all in
white, with a vessel in both her hands,
and forthwith I was whole. So then
they took their horses and their harness,
and amended their harness as well as
they might that was broken, and so
they mounted upon their horses and
rode talking together. And there Sir
Ector de Maris told Sir Percivale how
he had sought his brother Sir Launcelot
long, and never could hear writting of
him:—In many strange adventures have
I been in this quest. And so either told
other of their adventures.

Here endeth the eleuenthe booke. And here foloweth the
twelveth book.

The Twelveth Book.

CHAP. I.

Sir Launcelot in his madness took a
and fought with a knight, and
left into a bed.

Now leave we of a while of Sir
and of Sir Percivale, and speak
Sir Launcelot, that suffered and
d many sharp showers, that ever
ld wood from place to place, and
y fruit and such as he might get,
ink water two year, and other
g had he but little but his shirt
h breeches. Thus as Sir Launcelot
edered here and there, he came in
meadow where he found a pavi-

lion, and there by upon a tree there hung
a white shield, and two swords hung
thereby, and two spears leaned there by
a tree. And when Sir Launcelot saw
the swords, anon he leant to the one
sword, and took it in his hand and drew
it out. And then he lashed at the shield
that all the meadow range of the dints,
that he gave such a noise as ten knights
had foughten together. Then came forth
a dwarf and leant unto Sir Launcelot, and
would have had the sword out of his
hand, and then Sir Launcelot took him
by the both shoulders, and threw him to
the ground upon his neck, that he had
almost broken his neck, and therewithal
the dwarf cried, Help. Then came forth a likely knight, and well appareled in scarlet furred with meniver. And anon as he saw Sir Launcelot, he deemed that he should be out of his wit: and then he said with fair speech, Good man, lay down that sword, for, as me seemeth, thou hast more need of sleep, and of warm clothes, than to wield that sword. As for that, said Sir Launcelot, come not too nigh; for, and thou do, wilt thou well I will slay thee. And when the knight of the pavilion saw that, he start backward within the pavilion. And then the dwarf armed him lightly, and so the knight thought by force and might to take the sword from Sir Launcelot, and so he came stepping out, and when Sir Launcelot saw him come so all armed with his sword in his hand, then Sir Launcelot flew to him with such a might, and hit him upon the helm such a buffet that the stroke troubled his brains, and therewith the sword brake in three. And the knight fell to the earth as he had been dead, the blood brasting out of his mouth, the nose, and the ears. And then Sir Launcelot ran into the pavilion, and rushed even into the warm bed: and there was a lady in that bed, and she gat her smock, and ran out of the pavilion. And when she saw her lord lie on the ground like to be dead, then she cried and wept as she had been mad. Then with her noise the knight awaked out of his swoon, and looked up weakly with his eyes, and then he asked her where was that mad man that had given him such a buffet? for such a buffet had I never of man’s hand. Sir, said the dwarf, it is not worship to hurt him, for he is a man out of his wit, and doubt ye not he hath been a man of great worship, and for some heartily sorrow that he hath taken he is fallen mad: and me seemeth, said the dwarf, he resembleth much unto Sir Launcelot; for him I saw at the great tournament beside Lonazep. Jesu defend, said that knight, that ever that noble knight Sir Launcelot should be in such a plight. But whatever he be, said that knight, harm will I none do him. And this knight’s name was Bliant. Then he said unto the dwarf, Go thou fast on horseback unto my brother Sir Seliavant, that is at the Castle Blank, and tell him of mine adventure, and bid him bring with him an horse-litter, and then will we bear this knight unto my castle.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Launcelot was carried in a horse-litter, and how Sir Launcelot rescued Sir Bliant his host.

So the dwarf rode fast, and he came again and brought Sir Seliavant with him, and six men with an horse-litter. And so they took up the feather-bed with Sir Launcelot, and so carried all away with them unto the Castle Blank, and he never awaked till he was within the castle. And then they bound his hands and his feet, and gave him good meats and good drinks, and brought him again to his strength and his fairness, but in his wit they could not bring him again, nor to know himself. That was Sir Launcelot there more than a year and an half, honestly arrayed, and fair fared withal. Then upon a day this lord of that castle, Sir Bliant, took his arms on horseback with a spear to seek adventures. And as he rode in a forest there met him two knights adventurous. The one was Breuse Sance Pit, and his brother, Sir Bertelot, and these two ran both at once upon Sir Bliant, and brake their spears upon his body. And then they drew out swords, and made great battle, and fought long together. But at the last Sir Bliant was sore wounded, and felt himself faint, and then he fled on horseback toward his castle. And they came hurling under the castle where as Sir Launcelot lay in a window, and saw how two knights laid upon Sir Bliant with their swords. And when Sir Launcelot saw that, yet as wood as he was, he was sorry for his lord Sir Bliant. And then Sir Launcelot brake his chains from his legs and off his arms, and in the breaking he hurt his hands sore: and so Sir Launcelot ran out
OF SIR LAUNCELOT'S MADNESS.

tern, and there he met with the
glits that chased Sir Bliant, and
pulled down Sir Bertelot with
hands from his horse, and there-
re he wrothe his sword out of his
and so he leapt unto Sir Breuse,
re him such a buffet upon the
at he tumbled backward over
ecoup. And when Sir Bertelot
he his brother have such a fall,
spear in his hand, and would
Sir Launcelot through. That
Bliant, and strake off the hand
ertelot: and then Breuse and
telot gat their horses and fled
When Sir Selivant came, and
at Sir Launcelot had done for
her, then he thanked God, and
his brother, that ever they did
y good. But when Sir Bliant
Sir Launcelot was hurt with
king of his irons, then was he
hat ever he bound him. Bind
more, said Sir Selivant, for he
and gracious. Then they made
y of Sir Launcelot, and they
um no more. And so he abode
half year and more. And on
early, Sir Launcelot was ware
ame a great boar with many
nigh him. But the boar was so
might no hounds tear him, and
iters came after blowing their
oth on horseback and on foot:
Sir Launcelot was ware where
ht, and tied his horse to a tree,
ed his spear against the tree.

CHAP. III.

*Launcelot fought against a boar
lew him, and bow he was hurt, and
unto an hermitage.*

me Sir Launcelot, and found the
ounced till a tree, and a spear
against a tree, and a sword tied
addle bow. And then Sir Laun-
ct into the saddle, and gat that
his hand, and then he rode after
r. And then Sir Launcelot was
ere the boar set his back to a
it by an hermitage. Then Sir
ot ran at the boar with his
spear. And therewith the boar turned
him nimbly, and rove out the lungs and
the heart of the horse, so that Launcelot
fell to the earth, and or ever Sir Launc-
elot might get from the horse, the boar
rove him on the brawn of the thigh,
up to the hough bone. And then Sir
Launcelot was wroth, and up he gat
upon his feet, and drew his sword, and
he smote off the boar's head at one
stroke. And therewithal came out the
hermit, and saw him have such a
wound; then the hermit came to Sir
Launcelot and bemoaned him, and
would have had him home unto his
hermitage. But when Sir Launcelot
heard him speak, he was so wroth with
his wound that he ran upon the hermit
to have slain him, and the hermit ran
away, and when Sir Launcelot might
not overget him he threw his sword
after him, for Sir Launcelot might go no
farther for bleeding. Then the hermit
turned again, and asked Sir Launcelot
how he was hurt. Fellow, said Sir
Launcelot, this boar hath bitten me
sore. Then come with me, said the
hermit, and I shall heal you. Go thy
way, said Sir Launcelot, and deal not
with me. Then the hermit ran his way,
and there he met with a good knight
with many men. Sir, said the hermit,
here is fast by my place the goodliest
man that ever I saw, and he is sore
wounded with a boar, and yet he hath
slain the boar. But well I wot, said
the hermit, and he be not holpen, that
goodly man shall die of that wound,
and that were great pity. Then that
knight, at the desire of the hermit, gat
a cart, and in that cart that knight put
the boar and Sir Launcelot, for Sir
Launcelot was so feeble that they might
right easily deal with him. And so Sir
Launcelot was brought unto the her-
mitage, and there the hermit healed him
of his wound. But the hermit might
not find Sir Launcelot's sustenance, and
so he impaired and waxed feeble, both
of his body and of his wit, for the de-
fault of his sustenance: he waxed more
wooder than he was aforehand. And
then, upon a day, Sir Launcelot ran his
way into the forest, and by adventure he came to the city of Corbin where dame Elaine was, that bare Galahad, Sir Launcelot's son. And so when he was entered into the town, he ran through the town to the castle, and then all the young men of that city ran after Sir Launcelot, and there they threw turves at him, and gave him many sad strokes. And ever as Sir Launcelot might overreach any of them he threw them, so that they would never come in his hands no more, for of some he brake the legs and arms, and so fled into the castle, and then came out knights and squires and rescued Sir Launcelot. And when they beheld him, and looked upon his person, they thought they saw never so goodly a man. And when they saw so many wounds upon him, all they deemed that he had been a man of worship. And then they ordained him clothes to his body, and straw underneath him, and a little house. And then every day they would throw him meat, and set him drink, but there was but few would bring meat to his hands.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Launcelot was known by dame Elaine, and was borne into a chamber, and after sealed by the Sangreal.

So it befel, that king Pelles had a nephew, his name was Castor, and so he desired of the king to be made knight, and so at the request of this Castor, the king made him knight at the feast of Candlemas. And when Sir Castor was made knight, that same day he gave many gowns. And then Sir Castor sent for the fool, that was Sir Launcelot. And when he was come afore Sir Castor, he gave Sir Launcelot a robe of scarlet and all that belonged unto him. And when Sir Launcelot was so arrayed like a knight, he was the seemliest man in all the court, and none so well made. So when he saw his time he went into the garden, and there Sir Launcelot laid him down by a well and slept. And so at afternoon, dame Elaine and her maidens came into the garden to play them, and as they roamed up and down one of dame Elaine's maidens espied where lay a goodly man by the well sleeping, and anon shewed him to dame Elaine. Peace, said dame Elaine, and say no word; and then she brought dame Elaine where he lay. And when that she beheld him, anon she fell in remembrance of him, and knew him verily for Sir Launcelot, and therewithal she fell on weeping so heartily that she sank even to the earth. And when she had thus wept a great while, then she arose and called her maidens, and said she was sick. And so she went out of the garden, and she went straight to her father, and there she took him apart by herself, and then she said, Oh father, now have I need of your help, and be it that ye help me, farewell my good days for ever. What is that, daughter, said king Pelles. Sir, she said, thus is it: in your garden I went for to sport, and there by the well I found Sir Launcelot du Lake sleeping. I may not believe that, said king Pelles. Sir, she said, truly he is there, and me seemeth he should be distract out of his wit. Then hold you still, said the king, and let me deal. Then the king called to him such as he most trusted, a four persons, and dame Elaine his daughter. And when they came to the well and beheld Sir Launcelot, anon dame Brisay knew him. Sir, said dame Brisay, we must be wise how we deal with him, for this knight is out of his mind, and if we awake him rudely, what he will do we all know not. But ye shall abide, and I shall throw such an enchantment upon him that he shall not awake within the space of an hour; and so she did. Then within a little while after king Pelles commanded that all people should avoid, that none should be in that way there as the king would come. And so when this was done, these four men and these ladies laid hand on Sir Launcelot. And so they bare him into a tower, and so into a chamber where was the holy vessel of the Sangreal, and by force Sir Launcelot was laid by that holy vessel, and
HOW HE WAS RECOVERED.

Sir Launcelot, after that he was well, and had his mind, he was waked, and how that Elaine desired to have himself recovered. And when he was awaked he groaned and complained greatly that he should sing sore.

CHAP. V.

Sir Launcelot saw king Arthur, and Elaine, and how he was ashamed, and thus: Oh Lord Jesu, how here? For God's sake, my lord, vit how I came here? Sir, said Elaine, into this country ye came and man clean out of your wit. ye have ye been kept as a fool, creature here knew what ye did by fortune a maiden of mine: me unto you, where as ye lay; by a well, and anon, as I verily you, I knew you. And then I father, and so were ye brought is holy vessel, and by the virtue of ye were ye healed. O, said Sir Launcelot, if this be sooth, how many e that know of my woodness. said Elaine, no more but my nd I and dame Brisen. Now, I u, said Sir Launcelot, keep it in, and let no man know it in the for I am sore ashamed that I en thus miscarried, for I am out of the country of Logris; that is for to say, the country and. And so Sir Launcelot lay an a fortnight, or ever that he tir for soreness. And then upon he said unto dame Elaine these Lady Elaine, for your sake I much travel, care, and anguish, th not to rehearse it, ye know. notwithstanding I know well I me foul to you, when that I drew rd to you, for to have slain you. was the cause that ye and dame received me. That is truth, said Elaine. Now will ye for my love, said Sir Launcelot, go unto your father, and get me a place of him wherein I may dwell: for in the court of king Arthur may I never come. Sir, said dame Elaine, I will live and die with you, and only for your sake, and if my life might not avail you, and my death might avail you, wit ye well I would die for your sake. And I will go to my father, and I am sure there is nothing that I can desire of him but I shall have it. And where ye be, my lord Sir Launcelot, doubt ye not but I will be with you with all the service that I may do. So forthwith she went to her father, and said, Sir, my lord Sir Launcelot desireth to be here by you in some castle of yours. Well, daughter, said the king, sith it is his desire to abide in these marches, he shall be in the castle of Blint, and there shall ye be with him, and twenty of the fairest ladies that be in this country, and they shall all be of the great blood; and ye shall have ten knights with you. For, daughter, I will that ye wit we all be honoured by the blood of Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Launcelot came into the Joyous Isle, and there be named himself Le Chevaler Mal Fet.

Then went dame Elaine unto Sir Launcelot, and told him all how her father had devised for him and her. Then came the knight Sir Castor, that was nephew unto king Pelles, unto Sir Launcelot, and asked him what was his name? Sir, said Sir Launcelot, my name is Le Chevaler Mal Fet, that is to say, the knight that hath trespassed. Sir, said Sir Castor, it may well be so, but ever me seemeth your name should be Sir Launcelot du Lake, for or now I have seen you. Sir, said Launcelot, ye are not as a gentle knight: I put case my name were Sir Launcelot, and that it list me not to discover my name; what should it grieve you here to keep my counsel, and ye not hurt thereby? But wit thou well, and ever it lie in my
power I shall grieve you, and that I promise you truly. Then Sir Castor kneeling down and besought Sir Launcelot of mercy:—For I shall never utter what ye be while that ye be in these parts. Then Sir Launcelot pardoned him. And then after this king Pelles with ten knights, and dame Elaine and twenty ladies, rode unto the castle of Blant, that stood in an island enclosed in iron, with a fair water, deep and large. And when they were there Sir Launcelot let call it the Joyous Isle, and there was he called none otherwise but Le Chevaler Mal Fet, the knight that hath trespassed. Then Sir Launcelot let make him a shield of sable, and a queen crowned in the midst all of silver, and a knight, clean armed, kneeling before her; and every day once, for any mirths that all the ladies might make him, he would once every day look towards the realm of Logris where king Arthur and queen Guenever were. And then would he fall upon a weeping as though his heart should to-brast. So it fell that time that Sir Launcelot heard of a justing fast by his castle, within three leagues. Then he called unto him a dwarf, and he bade him go unto that justing, and, or ever the knights depart, look thou make there a cry in the hearing of all the knights, that there is one knight in the Joyous Isle, that is the castle Blant, and say that his name is Le Chevaler Mal Fet, that will just against knights that will come; and who that puteth that knight to the worse shall have a fair maid and a j erfalcon.

CHAP. VII.

Of a great tourneying in the Joyous Isle, and how Sir Percivale and Sir Ector came thither, and Sir Percivale fought with him.

So when this cry was made, unto Joyous Isle drew knights to the number of five hundred. And wit ye well there was never seen in Arthur's days one knight that did so much deeds of arms as Sir Launcelot did three days together. For, as the book maketh truly mention, he had the best the five hundred knights, and not one slain of them. And Sir Launcelot made them all feast. And in the meanwhile Sir Percivale de Galis and Sir Maris under that castle that was the Joyous Isle. And as the that gay castle they would hit to that castle, but they might the broad water, and bridge no find none. Then they saw on side a lady with a sperhawl hand, and Sir Percivale called and asked that lady who was castle. Fair knight, she said within this castle is the fairest this land, and her name is Ela we have in this castle the faire and the mightiest man that in say, living, and he calleth him Chevaler Mal Fet. How came these marches? said Sir I Truly, said the damsel, he is this country like a mad man, and boys chasing him through of Corbin; and by the holy of the Sangreal he was brought wit again, but he will not with no knight but by under noon. And if ye list to come to castle, said the lady, ye must to the further side of the castle, and shall ye find a vessel that will and your horse. Then they and came unto the vessel. Sir Percivale alight, and said: Sir Ector de Maris. Ye shall all here until that I wit what knight he is. For it were shus, inasmuch as he is but one and we should both do battle. Do ye as ye list, said Sir Maris, and here I shall abide, that I hear of you. Then pere Percivale the water. And when to the castle-gate, he had the Go thou to the good knight w castle, and tell him here is errant knight to just with him said the porter, ride ye within the and there is a common place for that lords and ladies may be
as Sir Launcelot had warning, soon ready; and there Sir Per-
and Sir Launcelot encountered, each a might, and their spears
broke, that both the horses and
horses fell to the earth. Then they
their horses and slung out noble
and hewed away cantels of
knightly, and hurtled together with
knightly like two boars, and either
other passing sore. At the
Percivale spake first, when they
ught, there more than two
Fair knight, said Sir Percivale,
be thee tell me thy name, for I
ver with such a knight. Sir, said
necelot, my name is Le Chevaler-
t: now tell me your name, said
ncelot, I require you gentle
Truly, said Sir Percivale, my
Sir Percivale de Galis, that was
unto the good knight Sir La-
de Galis, and king Pellinore
father; and Sir Aglovale is my
. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, what
done to fight with you that art
of the Table Round, that some-
is your fellow!

CHAP. VIII.

uch of them knew other, and of
great courtesy. And how his
Sir Ector came unto him, of
their joy.
herewithal Sir Launcelot kneeled
pon his knees, and threw away
el and his sword from him.
Sir Percivale saw him do so, he
ed what he meant. And then
said, Sir knight, whatsoever
require thee upon the high
of knighthood tell me thy true
Then he said, Truly my name
Launcelot du Lake, king Ban's
Benoy. Alas, said Sir Percivale,
ave I done! I was sent by the
or to seek you, and so I have
h this two year; and
Sir Ector de Maris your bro-
deth me on the other side of the
water. Now, said Sir Percivale,
you forgive me mine offence that

I have here done. It is soon forgiven,
said Sir Launcelot. Then Sir Percivale
sent for Sir Ector de Mari. And when
Sir Launcelot had a sight of him, he
ran unto him and took him in his arms,
and then Sir Ector kneeled down and
either wept upon other, that all had
pity to behold them. Then came
ame Elaine, and she there made them
great cheer as might lie in her power; and
there she told Sir Ector and Sir Perci-
vale how and in what manner Sir Laun-
celot came into that country, and how
he was healed. And there it was known
how long Sir Launcelot was with Sir
Blant and with Sir Selivant, and how
he first met with them, and how he
departed from them because of a boar;
and how the hermit healed Sir Laun-
celot of his great wound, and how that
he came to Corbin.

CHAP. IX.

How Sir Bors and Sir Lionel came to
king Brandegore, and how Sir Bors
took his son Helin le Blank, and of
Sir Launcelot.

Now leave we Sir Launcelot in the
Joyous Isle with the lady dame Elaine,
and Sir Percivale and Sir Ector playing
with them, and turn we to Sir Bors de
Ganis and Sir Lionel, that had sought
Sir Launcelot nigh by the space of two
years, and never could they hear of
him. And as they thus rode by adven-
ture, they came to the house of Brin-
degore, and there Sir Bors was well
known, for he had a child of the king's
daughter fifteen years before, and his
name was Helin le Blank. And when
Sir Bors saw that child it liked him
passing well. And so those knights
had good cheer of the king Brandegore.
And on the morn Sir Bors came afore
king Brandegore, and said, Here is my
son Helin le Blank, that as it is said
he is my son; and since it is so, I will
that ye wit I will have him with me
unto the court of king Arthur. Sir,
said the king, ye may well take him
with you, but he is over tender of age.
As for that, said Sir Bors, I will have
him with me, and bring him to the house of most worship of the world. So when Sir Bors should depart, there was made great sorrow for the departing of Helin le Blank, and great weeping was there made. But Sir Bors and Sir Lionel departed. And within a while they came to Camelot, where was king Arthur. And when king Arthur understood that Helin le Blank was Sir Bors' son, and nephew unto king Brandegore, then king Arthur let him make knight of the Round Table; and so he proved a good knight and an adventurous.

Now will we turn to our matter of Sir Launcelot. It befell upon a day Sir Ector and Sir Percivale came to Sir Launcelot and asked him what he would do, and whether he would go with them unto king Arthur or not? Nay, said Sir Launcelot, that may not be by no mean; for I was so entertained at the court that I cast me never to come there more. Sir, said Sir Ector, I am your brother, and ye are the man in the world that I love most, and if I understood that it were your disworship, ye may understand I would never counsel you thereto; but king Arthur and all his knights, and in especial queen Guenever, made such dole and sorrow that it was marvel to hear and see. And ye must remember the great worship and renown that ye be of, how that ye have been more spoken of than any other knight that is now living; for there is none that beareth the name now but ye and Sir Tristram; therefore, brother, said Sir Ector, make you ready to ride to the court with us, and I dare say there was never knight better welcome to the court than ye: and I wot well, and can make it good, said Sir Ector, it hath cost my lady the queen twenty thousand pound the seeking of you. Well, brother, said Sir Launcelot, I will do after your counsel, and ride with you. So then they took their horses, and made them ready, and took their leave at king Pelles and at dame Elaine. And when Sir Launcelot should depart, dame Elaine made great sorrow. Sir Launcelot, said dame Elaine, the same feast of Pentecost shall ye and mine, Galahad, be made for he is fully now fifteen weeks. Do as ye list, said Sir Launcelot, give him grace to prove a good man. As for that, said dame Elaine, not he shall prove the best man in kin, except one. Then shall he have a worthy man good enough, said Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. X.

How Sir Launcelot with Sir Percivale came to the court, and great joy of him.

Then they departed, and with three days' journey they came to Camelot; and there Sir Percivale de Galis, and Sir Ector de Maris began and told the whole adventures, that Sir Launcelot had been out of his mind the whole time of his absence, how he called him Chevaler Mal Pet, the knight that trespassed, and in three days Sir Launcelot smote down five hundred. And ever, as Sir Ector and Sir Percivale told these tales of Sir Launcelot, queen Guenever wept as she should have done. Then the queen made great cheer to Sir Launcelot, I marvel for the cause ye Sir Launcelot went out of my mind? I and many others dear to the love of fair Elaine, the daughter of king Pelles, by whom ye are, ye have a child, and his name is Galahad; and men say he is a marvel. My lord, said Sir Launcelot, if I did any folly, I have that I can make it good. And therewithal the king spake more; but all Sir Launcelot's kindred were glad for whom he went out of his mind. And then there were great feast and great joy. And many great men and ladies, when they heard Sir Launcelot was come to the court, they made great joy.
CHAP. XI.

Beale Isoud counselled Sir Tristram to go unto the court to the great Pentecost.

will we leave of this matter, and of Sir Tristram and of Sir Pa that was the Saracen unchris When Sir Tristram was come unto Joyous Gard from his adventure, this while that Sir Launcelot was missed two year and more, and bare the renown through all land of Logris, and many strange tales befell him, and full well and worshipfully he brought an end. So when he was come to Beale Isoud told him of the feast that should be at Pentecost, and there she told him that Launcelot had been missed two years and all that while he had been out of bound, and how he was holpen by the vessel the Sangreal. Alas, Sir Tristram, that cause some displeasure him and queen Guenevereres Dame Isoud, I know it all, for Guenever sent me a letter, in which she wrote me all how it was that she required you to seek him; now, blessed be God, said La Isoud, he is whole and sound, and again to the court. Thereof she, said Sir Tristram, and now we are ready, for both of us will be at the feast. Sir, said La Isoud, and it please you I will not be more through me ye be marked of good knights, and that causeth me much more labour for my death. Then will I not ye, said Sir Tristram, but if ye be. Not so, said La Beale Isoud, that shall I be spoken of shame, all queens and ladies of estate, that are called one of the noblest of the world, and ye a knight of and Table, how may ye be missed by a feast? What shall be said among us?—See how Sir Tristram hunteth and cobereth within with his lady, and forsaketh worship. Alas, shall some say, it is pity that ever he was made knight, or that ever he should have the love of a lady. Also what shall queens and ladies say of me?—It is pity that I have my life, that I will hold so noble a knight as ye are from his worship. Truly, said Sir Tristram unto La Beale Isoud, it is passing well said of you, and nobly counselled, and now I well understand that ye love me; and like as ye have counselled me, I will do a part thereafter. But there shall no man nor child ride with me, but myself. And so will I ride on Tuesday next coming, and no more harness of war but my spear and my sword.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Tristram departed unarméd, and met with Sir Palamides, and how they smote each other, and how Sir Palamides forbears him.

And so when the day came, Sir Tristram took his leave at La Beale Isoud; and she sent with him four knights, and within half a mile he sent them again; and within a mile after Sir Tristram saw afore him where Sir Palamides had stricken down a knight, and almost wounded him to the death. Then Sir Tristram repented him that he was not armed, and then he hove still. With that Sir Palamides knew Sir Tristram, and cried on high, Sir Tristram, now be we met, for or we depart we will redress our old sores! As for that, said Sir Tristram, there was never yet Christian man that might make his boast that ever I fled from him; and wit ye well Sir Palamides, thou that art a Saracen shall never make thy boast that Sir Tristram de Lions shall flee from thee. And therewith Sir Tristram made his horse to run, and with all his might he came straight upon Sir Palamides, and brast his spear upon him in an hundred pieces. And forthwith Sir Tristram drew his sword. And then he turned his horse and struck at Palamides six great strokes upon his helm, and then Sir Palamides stood still and beheld Sir Tristram, and marvelled of his woodness and of his folly. And then Sir Palamides
said to himself, And Sir Tristram were armed it were hard to cease him of this battle, and if I turn again and slay him I am shamed wheresoever that I go. Then Sir Tristram spake, and said, Thou coward knight, what castest thou to do? why wilt thou not do battle with me, for have thou no doubt I shall endure all thy malice. Ah, Sir Tristram, said Sir Palamides, full well thou wotest I may not fight with thee for shame, for thou art here naked, and I am armed, and if I slay thee dishonour shall be mine. And well thou wotest, said Sir Palamides to Sir Tristram, I know thy strength and thy hardiness to endure against a good knight. That is truth, said Sir Tristram. I understand thy valiantness well. Ye say well, said Sir Palamides, now I require you tell me a question that I shall say to you. Tell me what it is, said Sir Tristram, and I shall answer you the truth. I put the case, said Sir Palamides, that ye were armed at all rights as well as I am, and I naked as ye be, what would ye do to me now by your true knighthood? Ah, said Sir Tristram, now I understand thee well, Sir Palamides, for now must I say my own judgment, and, as God me bless, that I shall say shall not be said for no fear that I have of thee. But this is all; wit, Sir Palamides, as at this time thou shouldest depart from me, for I would not have ado with thee. No more will I, said Sir Palamides, and therefore ride forth on thy way. As for that I may choose, said Sir Tristram, either to ride or to abide. But Sir Palamides, said Sir Tristram, I marvel of one thing, that thou that art so good a knight, that thou will not be christened, and thy brother Sir Safere hath been christened many a day.

CHAP. XIII.

How that Sir Tristram gat him harness of a knight which was hurt, and how he overbrow Sir Palamides.

As for that, said Sir Palamides, I may not yet be christened, for one avow that I have made many years agone; howbeit in my heart I believe in Jesus Christ and his mild mother Mary; but I have but one battle to do, and when that is done I will be baptised with a good will. By my head, said Sir Tristram, for one battle thou shalt not seek it no longer. For God defend, said Sir Tristram, that through my default thou shouldest longer live thus a Saracen. For yonder is a knight that ye, Sir Palamides, have hurt and smitten down; now help me that I were armed in his armour, and I shall soon fulfill thine avows. As ye will, said Sir Palamides, so it shall be. So they rode unto that knight that sat upon a bank, and then Sir Tristram saluted him, and he weakly saluted him again. Sir knight, said Sir Tristram, I require you tell me your right name. Sir, he said, my name is Sir Galleron of Galway, and knight of the Table Round. Truly, said Sir Tristram, I am right heavy of your hurts: but this is all, I must p'ay you to lend me all your whole armour, for ye see I am unarmed, and I must do battle with this knight. Sir, said the hurt knight, ye shall have it with a good will; but ye must beware, for I warn you that knight is wight. Sir, said Galleron, I pray you tell me your name, and what is that knight's name that hath beaten me. Sir, as for my name, it is Sir Tristram de Lion, and as for the knight's name that hath hurt you, it is Sir Palamides, brother unto the good knight Sir Safere, and yet is Sir Palamides unchristened. Also, said Sir Galleron, that is pity that so good a knight and so noble a man of arms should be unchristened. Truly, said Sir Tristram, either he shall slay me, or I him, but that he shall be christened or ever we depart in sunder. My lord Sir Tristram, said Sir Galleron, your renown and worship is well known through many realms, and God save you this day from shenship and shame. Then Sir Tristram unarmed Galleron, the which was a noble knight and had done many deeds of arms, and he was a large knight of flesh and bone. And when he was unarmed he stood upon his feet, for he
HOW SIR PALAMIDES WAS CHRISTENED.

Now, said Sir Tristram unto Palamides, now have I thee at advantage as thou hadst me this day, but it shall never be said in no court, nor among good knights, that Sir Tristram shall slay any knight that is weaponless, and therefore take thou thy sword, and let us make an end of this battle. As for to do this battle, said Palamides, I dare right well end it; but I have no great lust to fight no more, and for this cause, said Palamides, mine offence to you is not so great but that we may be friends. All that I have offended is and was for the love of La Beale Isould. And as for her, I dare say she is peerless above all other ladies, and also I proffered her never no dishonour; and by her I have gotten the most part of my worship, and sithen I offended never as to her own person. And as for the offence that I have done, it was against your own person, and for that offence ye have given me this day many sad strokes, and some I have given you again; and now I dare say I felt never man of your might, nor so well breathed, but if it were Sir Launcelot du Lake. Wherefore I require you, my lord, forgive me all that I have offended unto you. And this same day have me to the next church, and first let me be clean confessed, and after see you now that I be truly baptized. And then will we all ride together unto the court of Arthur, that we be there at the high feast. Now take your horse, said Sir Tristram, and as ye say, so it shall be; and all your evil will God forgive it you, and I do. And here, within this mile, is the suffragan of Carlisle, that shall give you the sacrament of baptism. Then they took their horses, and Sir Galleron rode with them. And when they came to the suffragan Sir Tristram told him their desire. Then the suffragan let fill a great vessel with water. And when he had hallowed it, he then confessed clean Sir Palamides, and Sir Tristram and Sir Galleron were his godfathers. And then soon after they departed, riding towards Camelot, where king Arthur and queen Guenever was, and for the most part all the knights of
the Round Table. And so the king and all the court were glad that Sir Palamides was christened. And at the same feast in came Galahad and sat in the Siege Perilous.

And so therewithal departed severall all the knights of the Table. And Sir Tristram again unto Joyous Gard, and Palamides followed the questing beast.

Here endeth the second book of sir Tristram that was drawne of Frensshe in to Englysshe.

But here is no reversion of the third book. And here foloweth noble tale of the Sanctreal that called is the holy vessel at syngnefyeacyon of the blessed blood of our lord Ihesu Criste; note it be, the which was brought in to this land by Joseph sathye, therefor on al synful souls blessed lord have thon mercy.

Explicit liber xii. Et incipit Decemusterius.

The Thirteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

How at the Vigil of the feast of Pentecost entered into the hall, before king Arthure, a damsel, and desired Sir Launcelot for to come and dub a knight, and bow he went with her.

At the vigil of Pentecost, when all the fellowship of the Round Table were come unto Camelot, and there heard their service, and the tables were set ready to the meat, right so entered into the hall a full fair gentlewoman on horseback, that had ridden full fast, for her horse was all besweat. Then she thare alight, and came before the king, and saluted him; and then he said, Damsel, God the bless! Sir, said she, I pray you say me where Sir Launcelot is? Vonder ye may see him, said the king. Then she went unto Launcelot and said, Sir Launcelot, I salute you on king Pelles' behalf, and I require you come on with me hereby into a forest. Then Sir Launcelot asked her with whom she dwelled? I dwell, said she, with king Pelles. What will ye with me? said Sir Launcelot. Ye shall know, said she, when ye come thither. Well, said he, I will gladly go with you. Launcelot bade his squire saddle his horse and bring his arms; and he did his commandment. And when the queen came to Launcelot and said, Will ye leave us at this high dinner-time? If I wist, said she, that he should not be with us till morn, he should not go with my good will.

Right so departed Sir Launcelot the gentlewoman, and rode unto a valley, where they saw an abbeyn, and there was a squire that opened the gates; and so they descended off their horse, and there came a fair fellowship at Launcelot and welcomed him, and was passing glad of his coming. And there they led him into the Abbess's claustre, and unarmed him, and right sore ware upon a bed lying two cousins, Sir Boris and Sir Lion. Then he waked them, and when they saw them they made great joy. And Sir Boris unto Sir Launcelot, what
ere hath brought thee hither, for we
end to-morrow to have found you at
Camehot? Truly, said Sir Launcelot, a
gentlewoman brought me hither, but
I know not the cause. In the mean-
while, as they thus stood talking to-
gether, there came twelve nuns which
brought with them Galahad, the which
was passing fair and well made, that
meth in the world men might not
his match; and all those ladies
pt. Sir, said the ladies, we bring
here this child, the which we have
nourished, and we pray you to make
him a knight; for of a more worthier
man's hand may he not receive the
order of knighthood. Sir Launcelot be-
that young squire, and saw him
seemly and demure as a dove, with all
manner of good features, that he wend
of his age never to have seen so fair a
man of form. Then said Sir Launcelot,
Cometh this desire of himself? He and
all they said, Yea. Then shall he, said
Sir Launcelot, receive the high order of
knighthood as to-morrow at the revere-
ce of the high feast. That night Sir
Launcelot had passing good cheer, and
son the morn at the hour of prime, at
Galahad's desire, he made him knight,
and said, God make him a good man,
For beauty faileth you not as any that
liveth.

CHAP. II.

How the letters were found written in the
siege perilous, and of the marvellous
adventure of the sword in a stone.

Now, fair sir, said Sir Launcelot, will
ye come with me unto the court of
king Arthur? Nay, said he, I will not
go with you as at this time. Then
he departed from them and took his
two cousins with him, and so they came
unto Camelot by the hour of undorne
on Whitsunday. By that time the king
and the queen were gone to the minster
to hear their service: then the king and
the queen were passing glad of Sir Bors
and Sir Lionel, and so was all the fel-
lowship. So when the king and all the
knights were come from service, the
barons espied in the sieges of the Round
Table, all about written with gold let-
ters. Here ought to sit he, and he
ought to sit here. And thus they went
so long until that they came to the siege
perilous, where they found letters newly
written of gold, that said: Four hun-
dred winters and fifty-four accom-
plished after the passion of our Lord
Jesu Christ ought this siege to be ful-
filled. Then all they said, This is a
marvellous thing, and an adventurou-
In the name of God, said Sir Launcelot;
and then he accounted the term of the
writing, from the birth of our Lord unto
that day. It seemeth me, said Sir
Launcelot, this siege ought to be ful-
filled this same day, for this is the feast
of Pentecost after the four hundred and
four and fifty year; and if it would
please all parties, I would none of these
letters were seen this day, till he be
come that ought to achieve this adven-
ture. Then made they to ordain a
cloth of silk for to cover these letters in
the siege perilous. Then the king bad
haste unto dinner. Sir, said Sir Kay
the steward, if ye go now unto your
meat, ye shall break your old custom of
your court. For ye have not used on
this day to sit at your meat or that ye
have seen some adventure. Ye say sooth,
said the king, but I had so great joy
of Sir Launcelot and of his cousins,
which be come to the court whole and
sound, that I bethought me not of my
old custom. So as they stood speaking,
I came a squire, and said unto the
king, Sir, I bring unto you marvellous tidings. What be they? said the
king. Sir, there is here beneath at the
river a great stone, which I saw fleet
above the water, and therein saw I
sticking a sword. The king said,
I will see that marvel. So all the
knights went with him, and when they
came unto the river, they found there a
stone fleeting, as it were of red mar-
ble, and therein stack a fair and a rich
sword, and in the pomell thereof were
precious stones, wrought with subtil let-
ters of gold. Then the barons read the
letters, which said in this wise: Never
shall man take me hence but only he by whose side I ought to hang, and he shall be the best knight of the world. When the king had seen these letters, he said unto Sir Launcelot, Fair sir, this sword ought to be yours, for I am sure ye be the best knight of the world. Then Sir Launcelot answered full soberly: Certes, sir, it is not my sword: also, sir, wit ye well I have no hardiness to set my hand to, for it longed not to hang by my side. Also who that assayeth to take that sword, and feltheth of it, he shall receive a wound by that sword, that he shall not be whole long after. And I will that ye wit that this same day will the adventures of the Sangreal, that is called the holy vessel, begin.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Gawaine assayed to draw out the sword, and how an old man brought in Galahad.

Now, fair nephew, said the king unto Sir Gawaine, assay ye for my love. Sir, he said, save your good grace, I shall not do that. Sir, said the king, assay to take the sword, and at my commandment. Sir, said Gawaine, your commandment I will obey. And therewith he took up the sword by the handles, but he might not stir it. I thank you, said the king to Sir Gawaine. My lord Sir Gawaine, said Sir Launcelot, now wit ye well, this sword shall touch you so sore that ye shall will ye had never set your hand thereto, for the best castle of this realm. Sir, he said, I might not withsay mine uncle’s will and commandment. But when the king heard this, he repented it much, and said unto Sir Percivale that he should assay for his love. And he said, Gladly, for to bear Sir Gawaine fellowship. And therewith he set his hand on the sword, and drew it strongly, but he might not move it. Then were there more that durst be so hardy to set their hands thereto. Now may ye go to your dinner, said Sir Kay unto the king, for a marvellous adventure have ye seen. So the king and all went unto the court, and every knight knew his ow

and set him therein, and yet that were knights served th
when they were served, and a
fulfilled, save only the siege
anon there befell a marvellous
ature, that all the doors and the
of the place shut by themself
for then the hall was not grea
tened, and therewith they abash
one and other. Then king Arh
first, and said, Fair fellows as
we have seen this day marvels
night I suppose we shall see
marvels. In the mean while ca
good old man, and an ancient,
all in white, and there was no
knew from whence he came. A
him he brought a young knight
foot, in red arms, without a
shield, save a scabbard hanging
side. And these words he said
be with you, fair lords. Then
man said unto Arthur, Sir,
here a young knight the whi
king’s lineage, and of the kn
Joseph of Arimathie, whereby
vels of this court and of strang
shall be fully accomplished.

CHAP. IV.

How the old man brought Ga
the siege perilous and set bin
and how all the knights marve

The king was right glad of his
and said unto the good man, S
right welcome, and the young
with you. Then the old man t
young man to unarm him; and
in a coat of red sendel, and
mantle upon his shoulder th
furred with ermine, and put th
him. And the old knight said
young knight, Sir, follow m
anon he led him unto the sie
ous, where beside sat Sir La
and the good man lift up th
and found there letters that sa
This is the siege of Galahad t
prince. Sir, said the old knig
well that place is yours. And
set him down surely in that sieg
aid to the old man, Sir, ye may our way, for well have ye done were commanded to do. And ad me unto my grandsire king nd unto my lord Petchere, them on my behalf, I shall I see them as soon as ever I the good man departed, and him twenty noble squires, and their horses and went their way. All the knights of the Table marvelled them greatly of Sir that he durst sit there in that lous, and was so tender of age, not from whence he came, but my God, and said, This is he by the Sangreal shall be achieved, sat never none but he, but he achieved. Then Sir Launcelot is son, and had great joy of en Sir Bors told his fellows, n of my life this young knight ne unto great worship. This great in all the court, so that to the queen. Then she had that knight it might be that venture him to sit in the siege. Many said unto the queen, he did much unto Sir Launcelot. tell suppose, said the queen, son of Sir Launcelot and king daughter, and his name is Gala would fain see him, said the or he must needs be a noble so is his father; I report all the Table Round. Some meat was done, that the all were risen, the king went siege perilous, and lift up the and found there the name of Ga then he shewed it unto Sir, and said, Fair nephew, now among us Sir Galahad the ght, that shall worship us all, n pain of my life he shall the Sangreal, right so as Sir hath done us to understand. ne king Arthur unto Galahad, Sir, ye be welcome, for ye ye many good knights to the the Sangreal, and ye shall hat never knights might bring l. Then the king took him by the hand, and went down from the palace to shew Galahad the adventures of the stone.

CHAP. V.

How king Arthur shewed the stone, boving on the water, to Galahad, and bow he drew out the sword.

The queen heard thereof, and came after with many ladies, and shewed them the stone where it hove on the water. Sir, said the king unto Sir Galahad, here is a great marvel as ever I saw, and right good knights have assayed and failed. Sir, said Galahad, that is no marvel, for this adventure is not theirs, but mine, and for the surety of this sword I brought none with me; for here by my side hangeth the scabbard. And anon he laid his hand on the sword, and lightly drew it out of the stone, and put it in the sheath and said unto the king, Now it goeth better than it did aforesaid. Sir, said the king, a shield God shall send you. Now have I, said Sir Galahad, that sword that sometime was the good knight's Balin le Savage, and he was a passing good man of his hands. And with this sword he slew his brother Balan, and that was great pity, for he was a good knight, and either slew other through a dolorous stroke that Balan gave unto my grandfather king Pelles, the which is not yet whole, nor not shall be till I heal him. Therewith the king and all espied where came riding down the river a lady on a white palfrey toward them. Then she saluted the king and the queen, and asked if that Sir Launcelot was there? And then he answered himself, I am here, fair lady. Then she said, all with weeping, How your great doing is changed sith this day in the morn. Damsel, why say ye so? said Launcelot. I say you sooth, said the damsel, for ye were this day the best knight of the world, but who should say so now should be a liar, for there is now one better than ye. And well it is proved by the adventures of the sword whereto ye durst not set your hand, and that is
the change and leaving of your name; wherefore I make unto you a remembrance, that ye shall not ween from henceforth that ye be the best knight of the world. As touching unto that, said Launcelot, I know well I was never the best. Yes, said the damsel, that were ye, and are yet of any sinful man of the world. And sir king, Nacien the hermit sendeth thee word, that thee shall befall the greatest worship that ever befell king in Britain; and I say you wherefore, for this day the Sangreal shall appear in thy house, and feed thee and all thy fellowship of the Round Table. So she departed and went that same way that she came.

CHAP. VI.

How king Arthur had all the knights together, for to just in the meadow beside Camelot or they departed.

Now, said the king, I am sure at this quest of the Sangreal shall all ye of the Table Round depart, and never shall I see you again whole together, therefore I will see you all whole together in the meadow of Camelot, to just and to tourney, that after your death men may speak of it, that such good knights were wholly together such a day. As unto that counsel, and at the king's request, they accorded all, and took on their harness that longed unto justing. But all this moving of the king was for this intent, for to see Galahad proved, for the king deemed he should not lightly come again unto the court after his departing. So were they assembled in the meadow, both more and less. Then Sir Galahad, by the prayer of the king and the queen, did upon him a noble jessurance, and also he did on his helm, but shield would he take none for no prayer of the king. And then Sir Gawaine and other knights prayed him to take a spear. Right so he did; and the queen was in a tower with all her ladies for to behold that tournament. Then Sir Galahad dressed him in the midst of the meadow, and began to break spears marvellously, that all men had wonder of him, for he there surmounted other knights, for within a whil y be thrown down many good knight Table Round save twain, that Launcelot and Sir Percivale.

CHAP. VII.

How the queen desired to see and how after all the knights were punished with the holy Sangreal, how they avowed the enquest of

Then the king, at the queen's made him to alight and to wassail helm, that the queen might see the visage. And when she beheld her she said, Soothly, I dare well. Sir Launcelot is his father, for two men resembled more in it, therefore it is no marvel though of great prowess. So a lady that by the queen said, Madam, ought right to be so good a knight forsooth, said the queen, for he parties come of the best knight world, and of the highest lines. Sir Launcelot is come but of the degree from our Lord Jesu Christ. Sir Galahad is of the ninth degree, our Lord Jesu Christ; therefore say they be the greatest gentle of the world. And then the king's estates went home unto Camelot, so went to evensong to the minster. And so after upon that paper, and every knight sat in his place as they were toforehand. anon they heard cracking and clashing thunder, that them thought they should all to-drive. In the midst a blast entered a sun-beam more; by seven times than ever they saw; and all they were alighted of the image of the Holy Ghost. Then began it knight to behold other, and either knew their knight by their seeming fairer than they saw afore. Not for then ther was no knight might speak one word while, and so they looked every other, as they had been dumb, there entered into the hall the Grail covered with white San; there was none might see it, i
And there was all the hall full of good odours, and every one such meats and drinks as he did this world: and when the sile had been borne through then the holy vessel departed, that they wist not where it. Then had they all breath to And then the king yielded himself unto God of his good grace ad sent them. Certes, said the ought to thank our Lord Jesu or that he hath shewed us this reverence of this high feast of t. Now, said Sir Gawaine, we a served this day of what meats we thought on, but one guiled us, we might not see Grailie, it was so preciously co- herefore I will make here avow, mor, without longer abiding, bour in the quest of the Sanc- rt I shall hold me out a twelve. zd a day, or more if need be, ar shall I return again unto the I have seen it more openly uth been seen here: and if I speed, I shall return again as may not be against the will of Jesu Christ. When they of le Round heard Sir Gawaine hey arose up the most party, le such avows as Sir Gawaine e.
as king Arthur heard this he tly displeased, for he, wist well my might not againsay their Alas! said king Arthur unto aine, ye have nigh slain me avow and promise that ye have For through you ye have be of the fairest fellowship and the knighthood that ever were seen in any realm of the world. n they depart from hence, I am all shall never meet more in Ud, for they shall die many in t. And so it forethinketh me for I have loved them as wel fe, wherefore it shall grieve me the departure of this fellow- or I have had an old custom them in my fellowship.

CHAP. VIII.

How great sorrow was made of the king and the queen and ladies for the departing of the knights, and how they departed.

And therewith the tears filled in his eyes. And then he said, Gawaine, Gawaine, ye have set me in great sorrow. For I have great doubt that my true fellowship shall never meet here more again. Ah, said Sir Launcelot, comfort yourself, for it shall be unto us as a great honour, and much more than if we died in any other places, for of death we be sure. Ah Launcelot, said the king, the great love that I have had unto you all the days of my life maketh me to say such doleful words; for never christian king had never so many worthy men at this table as I have had this day at the Round Table, and that is my great sorrow. When the queen, ladies, and gentlewomen wist these tidings, they had such sorrow and heaviness that there might no tongue tell it, for those knights had holden them in honour and charity. But among all other queen Guenever made great sorrow. I marvel, said she, my lord would suffer them to depart from him. Thus was all the court troubled, for the love of the departure of those knights. And many of those ladies that loved knights would have gone with their lovers; and so had they done, had not an old knight come among them in religious clothing, and then he spake all on high and said, Fair lords which have sworn in the quest of the Sangreal, thus sendeth you Nacien the hermit word, that none in this quest lead lady nor gentlewoman with him, for it is not to do in so high a service as they labour in, for I warn you plain, he that is not clean of his sins he shall not see the mysteries of our Lord Jesu Christ; and for this cause they left these ladies and gentlewomen. After this the queen came unto Galahad, and asked him of whence he was, and of what country? He told her of whence he was. And son unto
Sir Launcelot, she said he was: as to that he said neither yea nor nay. Truly, said the queen, of your father ye need not to shame you, for he is the goodliest knight and of the best men of the world come, and of the stock, of all parties, of kings. Wherefore ye ought of right to be of your deeds a passing good man, and certainly, she said, ye resemble him much. Then Sir Galahad was a little ashamed, and said, Madam, sith ye know in certain, wherefore do ye ask it me? for he that is my father shall be known openly, and all betimes. And then they went to rest them. And in the honour of the highness of Galahad he was led into king Arthur’s chamber, and there rested in his own bed. And as soon as it was day the king arose, for he had no rest of all that night for sorrow. Then he went unto Gawaine and to Sir Launcelot, that were arisen for to hear mass. And then the king again said, Ah Gawaine, Gawaine, ye have betrayed me. For never shall my court be amended by you, but ye will never be sorry for me, as I am for you. And therewith the tears began to run down by his visage. And therewith the king said, Ah knight, Sir Launcelot, I require thee thou counsel me, for I would that this quest were undone, and it might be. Sir, said Sir Launcelot, ye saw yesterday so many worthy knights that then were sworn, that they may not leave it in no manner of wise. That wot I well, said the king, but it shall so heavy me at their departing, that I wot not there shall no manner of joy remedy me. And then the king and the queen went unto the minster. So anon Launcelot and Gawaine commanded their men to bring their arms. And when they all were armed, save their shields and their helms, then they came to their fellowship, which all were ready in the same wise for to go to the minster to hear their service.

Then after the service was done, the king would wit how many had taken the quest of the holy Graile, and to account them he prayed them all. Then found they by tale an hundr and all were knights of Table. And then they put helms, and departed, and reth them all wholly unto the there was weeping and go. Then the queen departed chamber so that no man receiv her great sorrows.

Launcelot missed the queen into her chamber, and wher him she cried aloud, O, Sir ye have betrayed me and death, for to leave thus my madam, said Sir Launcelot, be not displeased, for I s again as soon as I may wit ship. Alas, said she, that you! but He that suffered on the cross for all mankind, I good conduct and safety, a whole fellowship. Right so Sir Launcelot, and found his that abode his coming. A mounted upon their horses through the streets of Car there was weeping of the rich and the king turned away, not speak for weeping. So while they came to a city a that hight Vagon: there th into the castle, and the lo castle was an old man that hi and he was a good man of and set open the gates, and all the good cheer that he m so on the morrow they wcorded that they should d each from other. And the parted on the morrow with w mourning cheer, and every f the way that him best liked.

CHAP. IX.

How Galabad gat him a sbiei they sped that presumed to the said shield.

Now rideth Sir Galahad y shield, and so he rode four out any adventure. And at day after even-song he came abbey, and there he was ret
OF GALAHAD'S WHITE SHIELD.

... and led to a chamber, where was unarmed, and then of two knights of the table, one was king Bagdemagus; that other was Sir Uwaine. They saw him they went unto him, great solace, and Supper. Sirs, said Sir that adventure brought you; they, it is told us this place is a shield that bear about his neck but mischieved or dead within or else mad for ever.

king Bagdemagus, I shall narrow for to assay this entwined. In the name of Sir Galahad, Sir, said Bagdemagus I may not achieve the this shield ye shall take for I am sure ye shall not fail Galahad, I agree right well for I have no shield. So they arose and heard mass.

Bagdemagus asked where such shield was. Anon a man behind an altar where hung as white as any snow, midst was a red cross. Sir, ask, this shield ought not to about no knight's neck, but they called the knight's neck, and I counsel you knights to make. Well, said king Bagdemagus, well that I am not of the world, but yet shall bear it. And so he bare it on a monastery; and then he said Galahad, If it will please you, bide here still, till ye have the speed. I shall abide you Galahad. Then king Bagdemagus with him a squire, the and bring tidings unto Sir he sped. Then when they a two mile, and came in a wood, an hermitage, then a goodly knight come from white armour, horse and came as fast as his horse with his spear in the rest, Bagdemagus dressed his spear and brake it upon the...
Uwaine said he would bear him fellowship if it pleased him. Sir, said Galahad, that may ye not, for I must go alone, save this squire shall bear me fellowship: and so departed Uwaine. Then within a while came Galahad there as the white knight abode him by the hermitage, and every each saluted other courteously. Sir, said Galahad, by this shield been many marvels fallen. Sir, said the knight, it befell after the passion of our Lord Jesu Christ thirty-two year, that Joseph of Armathie, the gentle knight the which took down our Lord off the holy cross, at that time he departed from Jerusalem with a great party of his kindred with him. And so he laboured till that they came to a city that hight Sarras. And at that same hour that Joseph came to Sarras, there was a king that hight Evelake, that had great war against the Saracens, and in especially against one Saracen, the which was the king Evelake's cousin, a rich king and a mighty, which marched nigh this land, and his name was called Tolleme la Feintes. So on a day this two met to do battle. Then Joseph, the son of Joseph of Armathie, went to king Evelake, and told him he should be discomfit and slain, but if he left his belief of the old law, and believed upon the new law. And then there he shewed him the right belief of the Holy Trinity, to the which he agreed unto with all his heart, and there this shield was made for king Evelake, in the name of Him that died upon the cross. And then through his good belief he had the better of king Tolleme. For when Evelake was in the battle, there was a cloth set afore the shield, and when he was in the greatest peril he let put away the cloth, and then his enemies saw a figure of a man on the cross, where through they all were discomfit. And so it befell that a man of king Evelake's was smitten his hand off, and bare that hand in his other hand. And Joseph called that man unto him, and bad him, Go with good devotion, touch the cross. And as soon as that man had touched the cross with his was as whole as ever it was. Then soon after there fell a great vel, that the cross of the shield time vanished away, that no man where it became. And then king Evelake was baptised, and for the part all the people of that city soon after Joseph would depart. king Evelake would go with whether he would or nould. by fortune they came into this that at that time was called Britain. And there they found felon paynim, that put Joseph prison. And so by fortune came unto a worthy man that Mondrames, and he assembled people, for the great renown heard of Joseph, and so he car the land of Great Britain, and inherited this felon paynim an sumed him, and therewith did Joseph out of prison. And after all the people were turned to the Christian faith.

CHAP. XI.

How Joseph made a cross on the shield with his blood, and how labad was by a monk brought to the tomb.

Nor long after that Joseph was in his deadly bed. And when king Evelake saw that, he made much said, For I love I have I country, and sith ye shall depart this world leave me some token yours, that I may think on you. said, that will I do full gladly. bring me your shield that I took when ye went into battle and king Tolleme. Then Joseph broke it at the nose that he might not means be stanch. And then that shield he made a cross of his blood. Now may ye see a remembrance that I love you, for ye shall never this shield but ye shall think on me it shall be always as fresh as it is and never shall no man bear this about his neck but he shall rea
the time that Galahad the good bear it, and the last of my shall have it about his neck, Il do many marvellous deeds. id king Evelake, where shall I shield, that this worthy knight e it? Ye shall leave it there as the hermit shall be put after h. For thither shall that good ome the fifteenth day after that receive the order of knighthood. that day that they set is this it ye have his shield. And in e abbey lieth Nacien the hermit. en the white knight vanished Anon, as the squire had heard ords, he alight of his hackney, sled down at Galahad's feet, and nim that he might go with him had made him knight.—If I not refuse you?—Then will ye be a knight, said the squire, t order, by the grace of God, well set in me. So Sir Galahad him, and turned again unto the here they came from. And there ide great joy of Sir Galahad. on as he was alight, there was brought him unto a tomb in h-yard, where that was such that who that heard it should gh be mad or lose his strength. r, they said, we deem it is a

CHAP. XII.

Marvel that Sir Galahad saw and in the tomb, and bow he made a knight.

lead me thither, said Galahad. they did, all armed save his Now, said the good man, go to b and lift it up. So he did, and great noise, and piteously he t all men might hear it, Sir i, the servant of Jesu Christ, on not nigh me, for thou shalt e go again there where I have long. But Galahad was nothing but lift up the stone, and there t so foul a smoke, and after he foulest figure leap thereout that ever he saw in the likeness of a man; and then he blessed him, and wist well it was a fiend. Then heard he a voice say, Galahad, I see there environ about thee so many angels that my power may not dare thee. Right so Sir Galahad saw a body all armed lie in that tomb, and beside him a sword. Now, fair brother, said Galahad, let us remove this body, for it is not worthy to lie in this church-yard, for he was a false Christian man. And therewith they all departed and went to the abbey. And anon as he was unarmed, a good man came and set him down by him, and said, Sir, I shall tell you what betokeneth all that ye saw in the tomb: For that covered body betokeneth the duress of the world, and the great sin that our Lord found in the world, for there was such wretchedness that the father loved not the son, nor the son loved not the father, and that was one of the causes that our Lord took flesh and blood of a clean maiden; for our sins were so great at that time that well nigh all was wickedness. Truly, said Galahad, I believe you right well. So Sir Galahad rested him there that night. And upon the morn he made the squire knight, and asked him his name, and of what kindred he was come. Sir, said he, men call me Melias de Lile, and I am the son of the king of Denmark. Now, fair sir, said Galahad, sith ye be come of kings and queens, now look that knighthood be well set in you, for ye ought to be a mirror unto all chivalry. Sir, said Melias, ye say sooth. But, sir, sithen ye have made me a knight, ye must of right grant me my first desire that is reasonable. Ye say sooth, said Galahad. Then Melias said, that ye will suffer me to ride with you in this quest of the Sangreal till that some adventure depart us.—I grant you, sir. Then men brought Sir Melias his armour, and his spear, and his horse; and so Sir Galahad and he rode forth all that week ere they found any adventure. And then upon a Monday, in the morning, as they were departed from an abbey, they came to a
cross which departed two ways; and in that cross were letters written, that said thus: Now ye knights errant, the which goeth to seek knights adventurous, see here two ways; that one way defendeth thee that thou ne go that way, for he shall not go out of the way again, but if he be a good man and a worthy knight; and if thou go on the left hand, thou shalt not there lightly win prowess, for thou shalt in this way be soon assayed. Sir, said Melias to Galahad, if it like you to suffer me to take the way on the left hand, tell me, for there I shall well prove my strength. It were better, said Galahad, ye rode not that way, for I deem I should better escape in that way than ye. — Nay, my lord, I pray you let me have that adventure. — Take it, in God's name, said Galahad.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the adventure that Melias bad, and how Galahad revenged him, and how Melias was carried into an abbey.

And then rode Melias into an old forest, and therein he rode two days and more. And then he came into a fair meadow, and there was a fair lodge of boughs. And then he espied in that lodge a chair, wherein was a crown of gold subtly wrought. Also there were clothes covered upon the earth, and many delicious meats were set thereon. Sir Melias beheld this adventure, and thought it marvellous, but he had no hunger, but of the crown of gold he took much keep, and therewith he stooped down, and took it up, and rode his way with it. And anon he saw a knight came riding after him that said, Knight, set down that crown which is not yours, and therefore defend you. Then Sir Melias blessed him, and said, Fair Lord of heaven, help and save thy new-made knight. And then they let their horses run as fast as they might, so that the other knight smote Sir Melias through hauberker and through the left side, that he fell to the earth nigh dead. And then he took crown and went his way, and Sir Galahad found him in peril of death. And then he said, Ah, Melias, who hath wounded you, therefore it had been better ridden that other way. And when Melias heard him speak, Sir, for God's love let me not die in forest, but bear me unto the abbot beside, that I may be confessed and have my rites. It shall be done, said Galahad, but where is he that wounded you? With that Sir Galahad heard the leaves cry on high, keep thee from me! Ah sir, Melias, beware, for that is he that slain me. Sir Galahad answered, knight, come on your peril. The dressed to other, and came to him, and drew out his sword and smote through his shoulder, and smote he fell down off his horse, and in the Galahad's spear brake. With that another knight out of the earth and brake a spear upon Galahad, ever he might turn him. Then he drew out his sword and smote left arm of him, so that it fell earth. And then he fled, and Sir Melias had sued fast after him. And he turned again unto Sir Melias, and said, Sir, let death come when it will him. And therewith he drew truncheon of the spear out of him and then he swooned. Then came an old monk, which sometime he was a knight, and beheld Sir Melias anon he ransacked him, and said unto Sir Galahad, I shall live of this wound, by the grace
the term of seven weeks. Then Galahad glad, and unarmèd said he would abide there layes. And then he asked Sir how it stood with him. Then he was turned unto helping, thanked.

CHAP. XIV.

in Galabad departed, and how he commanded to go to the castle of men to destroy the wicked custom.

will I depart, said Galahad, for much on hand, for many good be full busy about it, and this and I were in the same quest of regreat. Sir, said a good man, sin he was thus wounded: and I said the good man, how ye take upon you so rich a thing as a order of knighthood without confession, and that was the cause bitterly wounded. For the way right hand betokeneth the high our Lord Jesu Christ, and the a true good liver. And the other tokeneth the way of sinners and believers. And when the devil our pride and presumption for to you in the quest of the holy Sanc-hat made you to be overthrown, may not be achieved but by living. Also, the writing on was a signification of hea-leads, and of knightly deeds in works, and no knightly deeds in works; and pride is head of all sins, that caused this knight to from Sir Galahad: and where lookest the crown of gold thou art in covetise and in theft. All here no knightly deeds. And this the holy knight, the which with the two knights, the two signify the two deadly sins which wholly in this knight Sir Melias, might not withstand you, for ye without deadly sin. Now departed and from thence, and betaught all unto God. Sir Melias said, and Galahad, as soon as I may ride seek you. God send you health, said Galahad; and so took his horse and departed and rode many journeys forward and backward, as adventure would lead him. And at the last it happened him to depart from a place or a castle, the which was named Abblasoure, and he had heard no mass, the which he was wont ever to hear or that he departed out of any castle or place, and kept that for a custom. Then Sir Galahad came unto a mountain, where he found an old chapel, and found there nobody, for all was desolate, and there he kneeled tofore the altar, and besought God of wholesome counsel. So, as he prayed, he heard a voice that said, Go thou now, thou adventurous knight, to the Castle of Maidens, and there do thou away the wicked customs.

CHAP. XV.

How Sir Galahad fought with the knights of the castle, and destroyed the wicked custom.

When Sir Galahad heard this he thanked God, and took his horse, and he had not ridden but half a mile, he saw in a valley afore him a strong castle with deep ditches, and there ran beside it a fair river, that hight Severn, and there he met with a man of great age, and either saluted other, and Galahad asked him the castle's name? Fair sir, said he, it is the Castle of Maidens. That is a cursed castle, said Galahad, and all they that be conversant therein; for all pity is out thereof, and all hardiness and mischief is therein.—Therefore I counsel you, sir knight, to turn again. Sir, said Galahad, wit you well I shall not turn again. Then looked Sir Galahad on his arms that nothing failed him, and then he put his shield afore him, and anon there met him seven fair maidens, the which said unto him, Sir knight, ye ride here in a great folly, for ye have the water to pass over. Why should I not pass the water? said Galahad. So rode he away from them, and met with a squire that said, Knight, those knights in the castle defy you, and forbid you, yc
go no further till that they wit what ye would. Fair sir, said Galahad, I come for to destroy the wicked custom of this castle.—Sir, and ye will abide by that, ye shall have enough to do.—Go you now, said Galahad, and haste my needs. Then the squire entered into the castle. And anon after there came out of the castle seven knights, and all were brethren. And when they saw Galahad, they cried, Knight, keep thee, for we assure thee nothing but death. Why, said Galahad, will ye all have ado with me at once? Yea, said they, thereto mayest thou trust. Then Galahad put forth his spear, and smote the foremost to the earth, that near he brake his neck. And therewith all the other smote him on his shield great strokes, so that their spears brake. Then Sir Galahad drew out his sword, and set upon them so hard that it was marvel to see it, and so, through great force, he made them to forsake the field; and Galahad chased them till they entered into the castle, and so passed through the castle at another gate. And there met Sir Galahad an old man, clothed in religious clothing, and said, Sir, have here the keys of this castle. Then Sir Galahad opened the gates, and saw so much people in the streets that he might not number them, and all said, Sir, ye be welcome, for long have we abidden here our deliverance. Then came to him a gentlewoman, and said, These knights be fled, but they will come again this night, and here to begin again their evil custom. What will ye that I shall do? said Galahad. Sir, said the gentlewoman, that ye send after all the knights hither that hold their lands of this castle, and make them to swear for to use the customs that were used heretofore of old time. I will well, said Galahad. And there she brought him an horn of ivory, bounden with gold richly, and said, Sir, blow this horn, which will be heard two mile about this castle. When Sir Galahad had blown the horn he set him down upon a bed. Then came a priest unto Gala-

had, and said, Sir, it is past a short time that these seven brethren came into this castle, and harboured the lord of this castle, that duke Lianour, and he was lord of this country. And when the duke's daughter was a maiden, then by their false and false estimation debate between themselves about the duke of his goodness went undated them; and there the duke and his eldest son. And there took the maiden, and the treasure of the castle. And then by great fort held all the knights of this castle and their under their obeisance. great servage and truage, robbing the poor common people that they had. So it happeneth the day the duke's daughter said, done unto me great wrong to my own father and my brother, and hold our lands: not for then, ye shall not hold this castle for years, for by one knight ye overcome. Thus she prophesieth years agone. Well, said the knights, sithen ye say so, th never lady nor knight pass thither; but they shall abide maugre this or die therefore, till that I come by whom we shall lose the Castle. And therefore it is called the Castle, for they have devoured maidens. Now, said Sir Galahad, she here for whom this castle is. Nay, said the priest, she within these three nights at she was thus enforced; and sit they kept her younger sister, which dureth great pains with many ladies. By this were the knights of the country come. And then them do homage and fealty done to the castle's daughter, and set them ease of heart. And in the meantime came one to Galahad, and told that Gawaine, Gareth, and Uw slain the seven brethren. I well, said Sir Galahad: and armour and his horse and cot them unto God.
CHAP. XVI.

Sir Galahad rode, and there every each of them departed from other, and Sir Gawaine rode till he came to an hermitage, and there he found the good man saying his even-song of Our Lady. And there Sir Gawaine asked harbour for charity, and the good man granted it him gladly. Then the good man asked him what he was? Sir, he said, I am a knight of king Arthur's, that am in the quest of the Sangrereal, and my name is Sir Gawaine. Sir, said the good man, I would wit how it standeth betwixt God and you? Sir, said Sir Gawaine, I will with a good will shew you my life, if it please you. And there he told the hermit how a monk of an abbey called me wicked knight. He might well say it, said the hermit, for when ye were first made knight, ye should have taken you to knightly deeds and virtuous living, and ye have done the contrary, for ye have lived mischievously many winters, and Sir Galahad is a maid, and sinned never, and that is the cause he shall achieve where he goeth that ye nor none such shall not attain, nor none in your fellowship; for ye have used the most untruest life that ever I heard knight live. For, certes, had ye not been so wicked as ye are, never had the seven brethren been slain by you and your two fellows. For Sir Galahad, himself alone, beat them all seven the day before, but his living is such he shall slay no man lightly. Also I may say you, the Castle of Maidens betokeneth the good souls that were in prison afore the Incarnation of Jesu Christ. And the seven knights betoken the seven deadly sins that reigned that time in the world. And I may liken the good Galahad unto the Son of the High Father, that light within a maid, and bought all the souls out of thrall: so did Sir Galahad deliver all the maidens out of the woful castle. Now, Sir Gawaine, said the good man, thou must do penance for thy sin.—Sir, what penance shall I do?—Such as I will give, said the good man. Nay, said Sir Gawaine, I may do no penance; for we knights adventurous often suffer
great woe and pain. Well, said the good man, and then he held his peace. And on the morn Sir Gawaine departed from the hermit, and betaught him unto God. And by adventure he met with Sir Aglovale and Sir Griflet, two knights of the Table Round. And they two rode four days without finding of any adventure, and at the fifth day they departed. And every each held as fell them by adventure.

Here leaveth the tale of Sir Gawaine and his fellows, and speak we of Sir Galahad.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Galahad met with Sir Launcelot and with Sir Percivale, and smote them down, and departed from them.

So when Sir Galahad was departed from the Castle of Maidens, he rode till he came to a waste forest, and there he met with Sir Launcelot and Sir Percivale, but they knew him not, for he was new disguised. Right so, Sir Launcelot his father dressed his spear, and brake it upon Sir Galahad, and Sir Galahad smote him so again, that he smote down horse and man. And then he drew his sword, and dressed him unto Sir Percivale, and smote him so on the helm that it rove to the coif of steel, and had not the sword swerved Sir Percivale had been slain, and with the stroke he fell out of his saddle. This justs was done tofore the hermitage where a recluse dwelled. And when she saw Sir Galahad ride, she said, God be with thee, best knight of the world. Ah certes, said she all aloud, that Launcelot and Percivale might hear it, and yonder two knights had known thee as well as I do, they would not have encountered with thee. When Sir Galahad heard her say so he was sore adread to be known: therewith he smote his horse with his spurs, and rode a great pace froward them. Then perceived they both that he was Galahad, and up they gat on their horses, and rode fast after him, but in a while he was out of their sight.

And then they turned again with cheer. Let us spere some tidings, Percivale, at yonder recluse. I list, said Sir Launcelot. When Percivale came to the recluse, shewed him well enough, and Sir Launcelot took no path, but as wild adventured him. And at the last he came to a stony cross, which departed two in waste land, and by the cross stone that was of marble, but it was so dark that Sir Launcelot might not find it. Then Sir Launcelot saw by him, and saw an old chaplain there he wend to have found. And Sir Launcelot tied his horse to a tree, and there he did off his armor and hung it upon a tree. And he went to the chapel door, and he had the waste and broken. And within he saw a fair altar full richly arrayed with clean silk, and there stood a clean candlestick which bare six candles, and the candlestick was of silver. And when Sir Launcelot saw this light, he had great will for to enter into the chapel, but he could not place where he might enter: then he passing heavy and dismayed, he returned and came to his horse; he did off his saddle and bridles; and unlace his harness, ungirded his sword, and laid him down to sleep upon his shield to a cross.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Launcelot, half sleeping and waking, saw a sick man borne on litter, and how he was healed in Sangreal.

And so he fell on sleep, and waking and half sleeping he saw by him two palfreys all fair and gay, and the which bare a litter, therein a sick knight. And when he was on cross, he there abode still. Sir Launcelot saw and beheld, slept not verily; and he heard him speak. Oh, sweet Lord, when shall this leave me? and when shall the
come by me where through I bless'd? For I have endured singer for little trespass. A full hile complained the knight thus, Sir Launcelot heard it. Sir Launcelot saw the candle- eth the six tapers come before, and he saw nobody that it. Also there came a table of and the holy vessel of the Sanc- which Sir Launcelot had seen in king Pescoun's house. therewith the sick knight set him held up both his hands, and air sweet Lord, which is here this holy vessel, take heed unto I may be whole of this malady. therewith on his hands and on ses he went so nigh that he: the holy vessel, and kissed it, on he was whole, and then he ord God I thank thee, for I am of this sickness. So when the vessel had been there a great while unt onto the chapel, with the ier and the light, so that Laun- ist not where it was become, for overtaken with sin that he had ever to arise against the holy wherefore after that many men him shame, but he took repent- ter that. Then the sick knight him up, and kissed the cross. is squire brought him his arms, ed his lord how he did? Certes, I thank God right well, through vessel I am healed. But I have arvel of this sleeping knight, that power to awake when this holy was brought hither. I dare right, said the squire, that he dwelleth the deadly sin, whereof he was onfessed. By my faith, said the whatsoever he be he is unhappy, deem he is of the fellowship of Table, the which is entered the quest of the Sangreal. Sir, squire, here I have brought you arms, save your helm and your and therefore by my asent now take this knight's helm and his And so he did. And when he an armed he took Sir Laun- celot's horse, for he was better than his own: and so departed they from the cross.

CHAP. XIX.

How a voice spake to Sir Launcelot, and bow he found his horse and his helm borne away, and after went afoot.

Then anon Sir Launcelot waked, and set him up, and bethought him what he had seen there, and whether it were dreams or not. Right so heard he a voice that said, Sir Launcelot, more harder than is the stone, and more bitter than is the wood, and more naked and barer than is the leaf of the fig-tree, therefore go thou from hence. and withdraw thee from this holy place. And when Sir Launcelot heard this he was passing heavy, and wist not what to do, and so departed, sore weeping, and cursed the time that he was born. For then he deemed never to have had worship more. For those words went to his heart, till that he knew wherefore he was called so. Then Sir Launcelot went to the cross, and found his helm, his sword, and his horse, taken away. And then he called himself a very wretch, and most unhappy of all knights: and there he said, My sin and my wickedness have brought me unto great dishonour. For when I sought worldly adventures for worldly desires I ever achieved them, and had the better in every place, and never was I discomflet in no quarrel, were it right or wrong. And now I take upon me the adventures of holy things, and now I see and understand that mine old sin hindereth me, and shameth me, so that I had no power to stir nor to speak when the holy blood appeared afore me. So thus he sorrowed till it was day, and heard the fowls sing: then somewhat he was comforted. But when Sir Launcelot missed his horse and his harness, then he wist well God was displeased with him. Then he departed from the cross on foot into a forest. And so by prime he came to an high hill, and found an hermitage, and an hermit therein, which was going
unto mass. And then Launcelot kneeled down and cried on our Lord mercy for his wicked works. So when mass was done, Launcelot called him, and prayed him for charity for to hear his life. With a good will, said the good man. Sir, said he, be ye of king Arthur's court, and of the fellowship of the Round Table? Yea forsooth, and my name is Sir Launcelot du Lake, that hath been right well said of, and now my good fortune is changed, for I am the most wretch of the world. The hermit beheld him, and had marvel how he was so abashed. Sir, said the hermit, ye ought to thank God more than any knight living; for He hath caused you to have more worldly worship than any knight that now liveth. And for your presumption to take upon you in deadly sin for to be in His presence, where His flesh and His blood was, that caused ye ye might not see it with worldly eyes, for He will not appear where such sinners be, but if it be unto their great hurt, and unto their great shame. And there is no knight living now that ought to give God so great thanks as ye; for He hath given you beauty, seemliness, and great strength, above all other knights, and therefore ye are the more beholding unto God than any other man to love Him and dread Him; for your strength and manhood will little avail you and God be against you.

CHAP. XX.

How Sir Launcelot was shriven, and what sorrow be made; and of the good examples which were shewed him.

Then Sir Launcelot wept with heavy cheer, and said, Now I know ye say me sooth. Sir, said the good man, hide none old sin from me. Truly, said Sir Launcelot, that were me full loth to discover. For this fourteen years I never discovered one thing that I have used, and that may I now blame my shame and my misadventure. And then he told there that good man all his life, and how he had loved a queen unmeasurably, and onto long;—and all my great deeds that I have done, I did the more for the queen's sake, and for her sake I do battle were it right and never did I battle all God's sake, but for to win won to cause me to be the better and little or nought I thanked it. Then Sir Launcelot said, you counsel me. I will counsel the hermit, if ye will ever that ye will never come in that fellowship, as much as ye may. And then Sir Launcelot pronounced he would not, by the faith of God. Look that your heart and your accord, said the good man, and ye shall have more worship than ever ye had. Honorable said Sir Launcelot, I marvele of voice that said to me marvellous love as ye have heard toforehand. no marvel, said the good man. But for it seemeth well God loveth men may understand a stone of kind, and namely one another, and that is to understand thee Sir Launcelot, for thou leave thy sin for no goodness hast sent thee, therefore thou hast not been made soft nor by wot of the Ghost may not enter in thee take heed; in all the world not find one knight to whom hath given so much of grace hath given you: for He hath you fairness with seemliness; given thee wit, discretion to keep from evil: He hath given the and hardiness; and given thee so largely that thou hast help days the better whereover thou And now our Lord will not no longer, but that thou shall Him, whether thou wilt or no. why the voice called thee bitt the wood, for where overmuch sin there may be but little sweetness before thou art likened to an e tree. Now have I shewed
SIR PERCIVALE FINDS HIS AUNT.

...good thought nor good will, and de-
fouled with lechery. Cer-tes, said Sir
Launcelot, all that ye have said is true,
and from henceforward I cast me by
the grace of God never to be so wicked
as I have been, but as to follow knight-
hood, and to do feats of arms. Then
the good man enjoined Sir Launcelot
such penance as he might do, and to
sue knighthood, and so he assoiled
him and prayed Sir Launcelot to abide
with him all that day. I will well,
said Sir Launcelot, for I have neither
helm, nor horse, nor sword. As for
that, said the good man, I shall help
you or to-morn at even of an horse,
and all that longeth unto you. And
then Sir Launcelot repented him
greatly.

...of the history of syr launcelot. And here foloweth
...syr Percivale de galys which is the xiii. book.

The Fourteenth Book.

CHAP. I

Percivale came to a reclus, and
knew; and how she told him
is his aunt.

...the tale, that when Sir
Launcelot, all that was in her power was at his
commandment. So, on the morn, Sir
Percivale went to the reclus, and asked
her if she knew that knight with the
white shield? Sir, said she, why would
ye wit? Truly, madam, said Sir Per-
civale, I shall never be well at ease till
that I know of that knight's fellowship,
and that I may fight with him, for I
may not leave him so lightly, for I have
the shame yet. Ah, Percivale, said she,
would ye fight with him? I see well ye
have great will to be slain as your
father was, through outrageousness.
Madam, said Sir Percivale, it seemeth
by your words that ye know me? Yea,
said she, I well ought to know you, for
I am your aunt, although I be in a
priory place. For some called me
some time the queen of the Waste Lands,
and I was called the queen of most
riches in the world; and it pleased me never my riches so much as doth my poverty. Then Sir Percivale wept for very pity, when he knew it was his aunt. Ah, fair nephew, said she, when heard ye tidings of your mother? Truly, said he, I heard none of her, but I dream of her much in my sleep, and therefore I wot not whether she be dead or on live. Certes, fair nephew, said she, your mother is dead; for after your departing from her, she took such a sorrow that anon after she was confessed she died. Now God have mercy on her soul, said Sir Percivale, it sore forethinketh me; but all we must change the life. Now fair aunt, tell me what is the knight? I deem it be he that bare the red arms on Whitsunday. Wit you well, said she, that this is he, for otherwise ought he not to do, but to go in red arms, and that same knight hath no peer, for he worketh all by miracle, and he shall never be overcome of no earthly man's hand.

CHAP. II.

How Merlin likened the Round Table to the world, and how the knights that should achieve the Sangreal should be known.

Also Merlin made the Round Table in tokening of the roundness of the world, for by the Round Table is the world signified by right. For all the world, christian and heathen, repair unto the Round Table, and when they are chosen to be of the fellowship of the Round Table, they think them more blessed, and more in worship, than if they had gotten half the world; and ye have seen that they have lost their fathers and their mothers, and all their kin, and their wives and their children, for to be of your fellowship. It is well seen by you; for since ye departed from your mother ye would never see her, ye found such a fellowship at the Round Table. When Merlin had ordained the Round Table, he said, by them which should be fellows of the Round Table the truth of the Sangreal should be well known.

And men asked him how me know them that should best do achieve the Sangreal? Then there should be three white birds should achieve it, and the two be maidens, and the third shust and hardness. That they heard say so, said thus unto Merlin: there shall be such a knight shouldst ordain by thy craft that no man should sit in it but he that shall pass all other knights. Merlin answered that he would And then he made the siege in which Galahad sat in meat on Whitsunday last past madam, said Sir Percivale, have I heard of you, that by will I will never have ado with lahad, but by way of kindness. God's love, fair aunt, can ye tell me some way where I may find much would I love the fellow him? Fair nephew, said she, ride unto a castle the which is Goothe, where he hath a cousin and there may ye be lodged there. And as he teacheth you, sue fast as ye can, and if he can tell tidings of him, ride straight unto castle of Carbonek, where the king is there lying, for there hear true tidings of him.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Percivale came into a mountain where be found king Evelake, w an old man.

Then departed Sir Percivale his aunt, either making great sorrow, he rode till evensong time, then he heard a clock smite. A he was ware of a house closed walls and deep ditches, and he knocked at the gate, and was let he alight, and was led unto a castle and soon he was unarmed. As he had right good cheer all the and on the morn he heard his mo
monastery he found a priest ready at the altar. And on the right side he saw a rich bed and a fair, looth of silk and gold. Then Sir Percivale espied that therein was a man, for the visage was covered. He left off his looking, and heard a voice. And when it came to the ear, he that lay within that perclose him up, and uncovered his head, and then he seemed to be of the passing on, and he had a crown of gold, his head, and his shoulders were covered up. Then Sir Percivale espied his body full of great wounds, both on the hands and visage and visage. And ever he cried, Fair sweet Father Jesu, to forget not me, and so he lay but always he was in his prayers. And he seemed to be of the three hundred winter. And he was done, the priest took his body and bare it to the sick. And when he had used it, he did place it, and commanded the to be set on the altar. Then Sir Percivale asked one of the brethren that was. Sir, said the good man, he heard much of Joseph of Arimathea, how he was sent by Jesu Christ was, for to teach and preach Christian faith, and therefore he had many persecutions, the which he suffered. Then Sir Percivale smote the first to the earth, and his horse upon him. Then Sir Percivale smote the first to the earth, and his horse upon him. So had they slain him or taken him, had not the good knight Sir Galahad, with the red arms, come there by adventure into those parts. And when he saw all those knights upon one knight, he cried, Save me that knight's life. And then he dressed him toward the twenty men of arms as fast as his horse might drive, with his spear in the rest, and smote the foremost horse and man to the earth. And when his spear was broken he set his hand to his sword, and smote on the right hand and on the left hand, that it was marvel to see. And at every stroke he smote one down, or put...
him to a rebuke, so that they would fight no more, but fled to a thick forest, and Sir Galahad followed them. And when Sir Percivale saw him chase them so, he made great sorrow that his horse was away. And then he wist well it was Sir Galahad. And then he cried aloud, Ah fair knight, abide and suffer me to do thankings unto thee, for much have ye done for me! But ever Sir Galahad rode so fast, that at the last he passed out of his sight. And as fast as Sir Percivale might he went after him on foot, crying. And then he met with a yeoman riding upon a hackney, the which led in his hand a great black steed, blacker than any bear. Ah fair friend, said Sir Percivale, as ever I may do for you, and to be your true knight in the first place ye will require me, that ye will lend me that black steed, that I might overtake a knight, the which rideth afore me. Sir knight, said the yeoman, I pray you hold me excused of that, for that I may not do. For wit ye well, the horse is such a man’s horse, that, and I lent it you or any other man, that he would slay me. Alas, said Sir Percivale, I had never so great sorrow as I have had for losing of yonder knight. Sir, said the yeoman, I am right heavy for you, for a good horse would beseeem you well, but I dare not deliver you this horse, but if ye would take him from me. That will I not do, said Sir Percivale. And so they departed, and Sir Percivale sat him down under a tree, and made sorrow out of measure. And as he was there, there came a knight riding on the horse that the yeoman led, and he was clean armed.

CHAP. V.

How a yeoman desired him to get again an horse, and how Sir Percivale’s hackney was slain, and bow he gat an horse.

And anon the yeoman came prickling after as fast as ever he might, and asked Sir Percivale if he saw any knight riding on his black steed? Yea sir, forsooth, said he, why ask ye me that? Ah, sir, that steed he hath taken from me with strength, wherefore my lord will me in what place he findeth me. And the yeoman, said Sir Percivale, what would that I did? thou seest well thou on foot, but and I had a good horse, and did the best ye can, and follow ye on foot, to wit how shall speed. Then Sir Percivale upon that hackney, and rode as he might. And at the last he saw a knight. And then he cried, I turn again; and he turned, and smote the hackney in the midst breast, that he fell down dead earth, and there he had a great for the other rode his way. And that Percivale was wood wroth, and Abide, wicked knight, coward and hearted knight, turn again and fig me on foot. But he answered not past on his way. When Sir Percivale saw he would not turn, he cast away helm and sword, and said, Now I am a very wretch, cursed, and most un above all other knights. So in the row he abode all that day till night, and then he was faint, and fell down and slept till it was midnight. And then he awaked, and saw him a woman which said unto him right fiercely, Sir Percivale, what thou here? He answered and said neither good nor great ill. If thine ensure me, said she, that thou will my will when I summon thee, lend thee mine own horse, which I bear thee whither thou wilt. Sir Percivale was glad of her proffer, assured her to fulfil all her desire. abide me here, and I shall go find an horse. And so she came soon and brought an horse with her chiefly black. When Sir Percivale saw that horse, he marvelled that it was great and so well apparelled: for then he was so hardy, and upon him, and took none heed of himself. And so anon as he was up he thrust to him with his spurs, rode by a forest, and the moon
PERCIVALE SEES A LION AND SERPENT FIGHT.

After an hour and less, he four days' journey thence, till to a rough water the which and his horse would have borne it.

CHAP. VI.

Great danger that Sir Percivale by his horse, and bow he saw a and a lion fight.

Then Sir Percivale came nigh, and saw the water so boisterous doubted to overpass it. And made a sign of the cross in his hand. When the fiend felt him so he shook off Sir Percivale, and into the water, crying and making great sorrow; and it unto him that the water burnt.

Percivale perceived it was a which would have brought his perdition. Then he com- mended himself unto God, and prayed to keep him from all such perils. And so he prayed all that on the morn that it was day. Saw that he was in a wild mountain which was closed with the sea about, that he might see no tint him which might relieve him. And then he went and there he saw a young lion and a great lion crying and roaring. And so fast as Sir saw this, he marvelled, and found, but anon the lion had the serpent, and began battle. And then Sir Percivale to help the lion, for he was the natural beast of the two; and he drew his sword, and set afore him, and there gave the such a buffet that he had a round. When the lion saw that, no semblance to fight with made him all the cheer that a fight make a man. Then Sir perceived that, and cast down, which was broken, and then his helm for to gather wind, as greatly enchaîned with the

And the lion went alway about him fawning as a spaniel. And then he stroked him on the neck and on the shoulders. And then he thanked God of the fellowship of that beast. And about noon, the lion took his little whelp, and trussed him, and bare him there he came from. Then was Sir Percivale alone. And as the tale telles, he was one of the men of the world at that time that most believed in our Lord Jesu Christ. For in these days there were few folks that believed in God perfectly. For in those days the son spared not the father no more than a stranger. And so Sir Percivale comforted himself in our Lord Jesu, and besought God that no temptation should bring him out of God's service, but to endure as his true champion. Thus when Sir Percivale had prayed, he saw the lion come toward him, and then he couched down at his feet. And so all that night the lion and he slept together: and when Sir Percivale slept he dreamed a marvellous dream, that there two ladies met with him, and that one sat upon a lion, and that other sat upon a serpent, and that one of them was young, and the other was old, and the youngest him thought said, Sir Percivale, my lord saluteth thee, and sendeth thee word that thou array thee and make thee ready, for to-morn thou must fight with the strongest champion of the world. And if thou be overcome, thou shalt not be quit for losing of any of thy members, but thou shalt be shamed for ever to the world's end. And then he asked her what was her lord. And she said, the greatest lord of all the world. And so she departed suddenly, that he wist not where.

CHAP. VII.

Of the vision that Sir Percivale saw, and bow his vision was expounded, and of his lion.

Then came forth the other lady that rode upon the serpent, and she said, Sir Percivale, I complainte of you that ye have done unto me, and have not offended
unto you. Certes, madam, said he, unto you nor no lady I never offended. Yes, said she, I shall tell you why. I have nourished in this place a great while a serpent, which served me a great while, and yesterday ye slew him as he gat his prey. Say me for what cause ye slew him, for the lion was not yours? Madam, said Sir Percivale, I know well the lion was not mine, but I did it, for the lion is of a more gentler nature than the serpent, and therefore I slew him; me seemeth I did not amiss against you. Madam, said he, what would ye that I did? I would, said she, for the amends of my beast that ye become my man. And then be answered, That will I not grant you. No, said she, truly ye were never but my servant, since ye received the homage of our Lord Jesu Christ. Therefore I ensure you in what place I may find you without keeping, I shall take you as he that sometime was my man. And so she departed from Sir Percivale, and left him sleeping, which was sore travailed of his vision. And on the morn he rose and blessed him, and he was passing feeble. Then was Sir Percivale ware in the sea, and saw a ship come sailing toward him, and Sir Percivale went unto the ship, and found it covered within and without with white samite. And at the board stood an old man clothed in a surplice in likeness of a priest. Sir, said Sir Percivale, ye be welcome. God keep you, said the good man. Sir, said the old man, of whence ye are? Sir, said Sir Percivale, I am of King Arthur’s court, and a knight of the Table Round, the which am in the quest of the Sangreall, and here I am in great duress, and never like to escape out of this wilderness. Doubt not, said the good man, and ye be so true a knight as the order of chivalry requireth, and of heart as ye ought to be, ye should not doubt that none enemy should slay you. What are ye? said Sir Percivale. Sir, said the old man, I am of a strange country, and hither I come to comfort you. Sir, said Sir Percivale, what signifieth my dream that I dreamed this night? And there he told him alto-

gather. She which rode upon said the good man, betokeneth law of holy Church, that is stand faith, good hope, belief, tism. For she seemed younger other, it is great reason, for she in the resurrection and the pass Lord Jesu Christ. And for she came to thee, to warn thee of the great battle that shall befall thee. Whom, said Sir Percivale, shall With the most champion of said the old man, for, as the but if thou quit thee well, thou not be quit by losing of one but thou shalt be shamed to the end. And she that rode serpent signifieth the old law serpent betokeneth a fiend. she blamed thee that thou sl servant, it betokeneth nothing pent that thou slewest betok devil that thou rodest upon to and when thou madest a s the cross, there thou slewest him away his power. And when thee amends and to become and thou saidest thou would that was to make thee to believe and leave thy baptism. So maned Sir Percivale to depart so he leapt over the board, andall went away he wist not. Then he went up unto the found the lion, which alway fellowship, and he stroked the the back, and had great joy of CHAP. VIII. How Sir Percivale saw a ship to him-ward, and how the ship told him of her disberita By that Sir Percivale had there till midday he saw a rowing in the sea as all the world had driven it. And so under that rock. And when vale saw this, he hied him the found the ship covered with blacker than any bier, and the a gentlemawoman of great beauty was clothed richly that none better. And when she saw
said, Who brought you in this mess where ye be never like to rise? for ye shall die here for treachery. Damself, said Sir, I serve the best man of all the world, and in his service he will not die, for who that knocketh at the door shall not asketh, and who that seeketh him, he cometh not. But then she said, Sir, what am I? Yea, said she, who taught you my name? Now, said Sir Percivale, I know you better than ye ween. And I came out of the waste forest, where the red knight with the white said the damsel. Ah damsel, with that knight would I meet again. Sir, said she, and ye will see, by the faith that ye owe unto God, that ye shall do my will, ye I summon you, I shall bring to that knight. Yea, said he, I promise you to fulfill your desire. And she, now shall I tell you, I was in the forest chasing two to a water, the which is called thee, and he drove them into that dread of death, and the two passed over, and the red knight after, and there his horse was 1, and he through great strength unto the land. Thus she told Sir Percivale was passing glad.

Then she asked him if he had any meat late? Nay madam, nay no meat nigh these three late here I spake with a good knight, and refreshed me with his good words, and refreshed me greatly. Knight, said she, that same man unchancer, and a multiplier of For, and ye believe him, ye be shamed, and die in this pure hunger, and be eaten with sins, and ye be a young man and a knight, and I shall help you will. What are ye? said Sir, that proffereth me thus great a I am, said she, a gentlewoman, that was the richest woman of the Damself, said Sir Percivale, who hath diserited you, for I have great pity of you? Sir, said she, I dwelled with the greatest man of the world, and he made me so fair and so clear that there was none like me, and of that great beauty I had a little pride, more than I ought to have had. Also, I said a word that pleased him not. And then he would not suffer me to be any longer in his company, and so drove me from mine heritage, and so diserited me, and he had never pity of me nor of none of my council, nor of my court. And sithen, sir knight, it hath befallen me so, and through me and mine I have taken from him many of his men, and made them to become my men. For they ask never nothing of me but I give it them, that and much more. Thus I and all my servants war against him night and day. Therefore I know now no good knight, nor no good man, but I get them on my side and I may. And for that I know that thou art a good knight. I beseech you to help me. And ye be a fellow of the Round Table, wherefore ye ought not to fail no gentlewoman which is diserited, and she besought you of help.

CHAP. IX.

How Sir Percivale promised her help, and bow he required her of love, and bow he was saved from the fiend.

Then Sir Percivale promised her all the help that he might. And then she thanked him. And at that time the weather was hot, and then she called unto her a gentlewoman, and bad her bring forth a pavilion; and so she did, and pight it upon the gravel. Sir, said she, now may ye rest you in this heat of the day. Then he thanked her, and she put off his helm and his shield, and there he slept a great while. And then he awoke, and asked her if she had any meat, and she said, Yea, also ye shall have enough; and so there was set enough upon the table, and thereon so much that he had marvel, for there was all manner of meats that he could think on. Also he drank there the strongest wine that ever he drank, him thought,
and therewith he was a little heated more than he ought to be. With that he beheld the gentlewoman, and him thought that she was the fairest creature that ever he saw. And then Sir Percivale proffered her love, and prayed her that she would be his. Then she refused him in a manner when he required her, for the cause he should be the more ardent on her, and ever he ceased not to pray her of love. And when she saw him well enchaifed, then she said, Sir Percivale, wit ye well, I shall not fulfil your will, but if ye swear from henceforth ye shall be my true servant, and to do nothing but that I shall command you: will ye ensure me this as ye be a true knight? Yea, said he, fair lady, by the faith of my body. Well, said she, now shall ye do with me whatso it please you, and now wit ye well that ye are the knight in the world that I have most desire to. And then Sir Percivale came near to her, to profer her love, and by adventure and grace he saw his sword lie upon the ground all naked, in whose pomnuel was a red cross, and the sign of the crucifix therein, and bethought him on his knighthood, and his promise made toforehand unto the good man. Then he made the sign of the cross in his forehead, and therewith the pavilion turned up so down, and then it changed unto a smoke and a black cloud, and then he was adread, and cried aloud,—

CHAP. X.

How Sir Percivale for penance rowe himself through the thigh; and how she was known for the devil.

Fair sweet Father, Jesu Christ, ne let me not be shamed, the which was near lost had not thy good grace been! And then he looked into a ship, and saw her enter therein, which said, Sir Percivale, ye have betrayed me. And so she went with the wind roaring and yelling, that it seemed that all the water burnt after her. Then Sir Percivale made great sorrow, and drew his sword unto him, saying, Sithen my flesh will be my master, I shall punish it. And therewith he rove himself through the thigh, that the blood start about him, and said, O good Lord, take this in recompensation of that I have done against thee my Lord. So then he clothed him and armed him, and called himself a wretch, saying, How nigh was I lost, and to have lost that I should never have gotten again, that was my virginity, for that may never be recovered after it is once lost. And then he stopped his bleeding wound with a piece of his shirt. Thus as he made his moan, he saw the same ship come from the Orient that the good man was in the day before; and the noble knight was ashamed with himself, and therewith he fell in a swoon. And when he awoke he went unto him weakly, and there he saluted this good man. And then he asked Sir Percivale, How hast thou done sith I departed? Sir, said he, here was a gentlewoman, and led me into deadly sin: and then he told him altogether. Knew ye not the maid? said the good man, Sir, said he, nay: but well I wot the fiend sent her hither to shame me. Oh, good knight, said he, thou art a fool, for that gentlewoman was the master fiend of hell, the which hath power above all devils, and that was the old lady that thou sawest in thy vision riding on the serpent. Then he told Sir Percivale how our Lord Jesu Christ beat him out of heaven for his sin, the which was the most brightest angel of heaven, and therefore he lost his heritage, and that was the champion that thou foughst withal, the which had overcome thee, had not the grace of God been: now beware, Sir Percivale, and take this for an ensample. And then the good man vanished away. Then Sir Percivale took his arms, and entered into the ship, and so departed from thence.

Here endeth the fourteenth booke, whiche is of syr Perciyual. And here foloweth of syre Launcelot whiche is the fiftenth book.
The Fifteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Sir Launcelot came into a chapel, where he found dead, in a white shirt, a hermit of an hundred winters old. The hermit had kept Sir Launcelot days, the hermit gave him an helm, and a sword. And then he turned about the hour of noon. Then he saw a little house, and he came near he saw a chapel, where beside he saw an old man clothed all in white full richly. In Sir Launcelot said, God save God keep you, said the good man, and make you a good knight. Sir Launcelot alight, and entered the chapel, and there he saw an old man, in a white shirt of passing th. Sir, said the good man, this is dead ought not to be in such a place see him in, for in that place the oath of his order. For he was more than an hundred winters of a religion. And then the good Sir Launcelot went into the chapel, and the good man took a stole is neck, and a book, and then he d on that book, and with that in an hideous figure and an x, that there was no man so hard nor so hard but he should have feared. Then said the fiend, Thou availed me greatly, now tell at thou wilt with me? I will, the good man, that thou tell me thy fellow became dead, and the he be saved or damned? Then with a horrible voice, He is not saved. How may that be? said x; it seemed to me that I not well, for he brake his order wear a shirt, where he ought to one: and who that trespasseth our order doth not well. Not the fiend, this man that lieth here dead was come of a great lineage. And there was a lord that hight the earl de Vale, that held great war against this man's nephew, the which hight Aguarius. And so this Aguarius saw the earl was bigger than he, then he went for to take counsel of his uncle, the which lieth here dead as ye may see. And then he asked leave, and went out of his hermitage for to maintain his nephew against the mighty earl. And so it happed that this man that lieth here dead did so much by his wisdom and hardiness that the earl was taken, and three of his lords, by force of this dead man.

CHAP. II.

Of a dead man, how men would have bewen him, and it would not be, and how Sir Launcelot took the hair of the dead man.

Then was there peace betwixt the earl and this Aguarius, and great surety that the earl should never war against him. Then this dead man that here lieth came to this hermitage again, and then the earl made two of his nephews for to be avenged upon this man. So they came on a day, and found this dead man at the sacrying of his mass, and they abode him till he had said mass. And then they set upon him and drew out swords to have slain him. But there would no sword bite on him, more than upon a gad of steel, for the high Lord which he served he him preserved. Then made they a great fire, and did off all his cloathes and the hair off his back; and then this dead man hermit said unto them, Ween ye to burn me? It shall not lie in your power, nor to perish me as much as a thread, and there were any on my body. No! said one of them, it shall be assayed. And then they despoiled him, and put upon him this shirt, and cast him in a fir-
and there he lay all that night till it was
day, in that fire, and was not dead.
And so in the morn I came and found
him dead, but I found neither thread
nor skin perished; and so took him out
of the fire with great fear, and laid him
here as ye may see. And now may ye
suffer me to go my way, for I have said
you the truth. And then he departed
with a great tempest. Then was the
good man and Sir Launcelot more
gladder than they were tofore. And
then Sir Launcelot dwelled with that
good man that night. Sir, said the
good man, be ye not Sir Launcelot du
Lake? Yea, sir, said he. What seek
ye in this country? Sir, said Sir Laun-
celot, I go to seek the adventures of
the Sancgreal. Well, said he, seek it ye may
well, but though it were here ye shall
have no power to see it, no more than
a blind man should see a bright sword,
and that is long on your sin, and else
ye were more abler than any man living.
And then Sir Launcelot began to weep.
Then said the good man, Were ye con-
fessed sith ye entered into the quest of
the Sancgreal? Yea, sir, said Sir Laun-
celot. Then upon the morn, when the
good man had sung his mass, then they
buriad the dead man. Then Sir Laun-
celot said, Father, what shall I do? Now,
said the good man, I require you
take this hair that was this holy man's,
and put it next thy skin, and it shall
prevail thee greatly. Sir, and I will
do it, said Sir Launcelot. Also I charge
you that ye eat no flesh as long as ye
be in the quest of the Sancgreal, nor ye
shall drink no wine, and that ye hear
mass daily and ye may do it. So he
took the hair and put it upon him, and
so departed at evensong time. And so
rode he into a forest, and there he met
with a gentlewoman riding upon a white
palfrey, and then she asked him, Sir
knight, whither ride ye? Certes dam-
sel, said Launcelot, I wit not whither I
ride, but as fortune leadeth me. Ah,
Sir Launcelot, said she, I wit what
adventure ye seek, for ye were afore-
time nearer than ye be now, and yet
shall ye see it more openly than ever
ye did, and that shall ye understand
short time. Then Sir Launcelot
her where he might be harbour
night? Ye shall not find this
d night, but to-morn ye shall find
thee.
good, and ease of that ye be in
of. And then he commended his
God. Then he rode till that he
to a cross, and took that for
as for that night.

CHAP. III.

Of a vision that Sir Launcelot
how he told it to an hermit, and
counsel of him.

And so he put his horse to
and did off his helm and his shi
made his prayers unto the cross;
he never fell in deadly sin.
And so he laid him down to
die. And anon as he was asleep it be
there a vision, that there came
before him all by compass of st
that man had a crown of gold
head, and that man led in his fel
seven kings and two knights.
these worshipped the cross, butt
upon their knees, holding their
hands towards the heaven; and
said, Fair sweet Father of heaven,
and visit us, and yield unto us
each as we have deserved. Then
Launcelot up to the heaven, and
seemed the clouds did open, and
man came down with a company
angels, and alight among them, and
unto every one his blessing, and
them his servants, and good as
knight. And when this old man
said thus, he came to one of
knight and said, I have lost the
I have set thee, for thou hast
thee against me as a warrior, and
the pleasure of the world than to me,
therefore thou shalt be content
without thou yield me my treasure.
this vision saw Sir Launcelot
this cross. And on the morn he
his horse and rode till mid day, and
by adventure, he met with that
knight that took his horse, hi
sword, when he slept when the
al appeared afore the cross. Sir Launcelot saw him sa-
im not fair, but cried on high,
keep thee, for thou hast done reat unkindness. And then they
re them their spears, and Sir
ot came so fiercely upon him
smote him and his horse down
arth, that he had nigh broken his
Then Sir Launcelot took the
horse, that was his own afore
and descended from the horse he
on, and tied the knight's own
to a tree, that he might find that
hen that he was arisen.
Sir Launcelot rode till night,
adventure he met an hermit, and
them saluted other, and there-
d with that good man all night,
ve his horse such as he might
then said the good man unto
lot, Of whence be ye? Sir, said
um of Arthur's court, and my
; Sir Launcelot du Lake, that
ke quest of the Sangreal. And
he I pray you to counsel me of
is, which I had at the cross.
he told him all.

CHAP. IV.

The hermit expounded to Sir Laun-
vision, and told him that Sir
had was bis son.

Sir Launcelot, said the good man,
ou mightest understand the high
that thou art come of, and thy
etokeneth: After the passion of
rist forty years, Joseph of Ara-
preached the victory of king
; that he had in the battles the
of his enemies. And of the seven
and the two knights: the first of
called Nappus, an holy man;
second hight Nacien, in remem-
of his grandsire, and in him
our Lord Jesu Christ; and the
is called Hellias le Grose; and
n hight Lisais; and the fifth
onas, he departed out of his
and went into Wales, and took
ughter of Manuel, whereby he
had the land of Gaul, and he came to
dwell in this country, and of him came
king Launcelot thy grandsire, which
there wedded the king's daughter of
Ireland, and he was as worthy a man
as thou art, and of him came king Ban
thy father, the which was the last of
the seven kings. And by thee, Sir
Launcelot, it signifieth that the angels
said thou were none of the seven fel-
lowships. And the last was the ninth
knight, he was signified to a lion, for
he should pass all manner of earthly
knight, that is Sir Galahad, the which
thou gat of king Pelles' daughter, and
thou ought to thank God more than
any other man living; for of a sinner
earthly thou hast no peer as in knight-
hood, nor never shall be. But little
thank hast thou given to God for all
the great virtues that God hath lent
thee.

Sir, said Launcelot, ye say that that
good knight is my son. That oughtest
thou to know, and no man better, said
the good man, for by the daughter of
king Pelles thou hadst Galahad, and
that was he that at the feast of Pentecost
sat in the siege perilous, and there-
fore make thou it known openly that he
is thy son, for that will be your worship
and honour, and to all thy kindred.
And I counsel you in no place press
not upon him to have ado with him.
Well, said Launcelot, me seemeth that
good knight should pray for me unto
the high Father that I fall not to sin
again. Trust thou well, said the good
man, thou fairest much the better for
his prayer; but the son shall not bear
the wickedness of the father, nor the
father shall not bear the wickedness of
the son, but every each shall bear his
own burthen; and therefore beseech
thou only God, and he will help thee in
all thy needs. And then Sir Launcelot
and he went to supper, and so laid him
to rest, and the hair pricked so Sir
Launcelot's skin, which grieved him full
sore, but he took it meekly, and suffered
the pain. And so on the morn he
heard his mass, and took his arms, and
so took his leave.
CHAP. V.

How Sir Launcelot justed with many knights, and how he was taken.

And then he mounted upon his horse and rode into a forest, and held no highway. And as he looked afores him he saw a fair plain, and beside that a fair castle, and afores the castle were many pavilions of silk and of divers hue. And him seemed that he saw there five hundred knights riding on horseback, and there were two parties; they that were of the castle were all on black horses, and their trappings black. And they that were without were all on white horses and trappings: and every one hurtled to other, that it marvelled Sir Launcelot. And at the last him thought they of the castle were put to the worse. Then thought Sir Launcelot for to help there the weaker party, in increasing of his chivalry. And so Sir Launcelot thrust in among the party of the castle, and smote down a knight, horse and man, to the earth. And then he rashed here and there, and did marvellous deeds of arms. And then he drew out his sword and strake many knights to the earth, so that all those that saw him marvelled that ever one knight might do so great deeds of arms. But always the white knights held them nigh about Sir Launcelot, for to tire him and wind him.

But at the last, as a man may not ever endure, Sir Launcelot waxed so faint of fighting and travelling, and was so weary of his great deeds, that he might not lift up his arms for to give one stroke, so that he went never to have borne arms: and then they all took him and led him away into a forest, and there made him to alight and to rest him. And then all the fellowship of the castle were overcome for the default of him, and then they said all unto Sir Launcelot, Blessed be God that ye be now of our fellowship, for we shall hold you in our prison. And so they left him with few words. And then Sir Launcelot made great sorrow,—For never or now was I never at tournament nor justs but I best, and now I am shame then he said, Now I am sure more sinner than ever I was he rode sorrowing, and half a he out of despair, till that he a deep valley, and when Sir I saw he might not ride up a mountain, he there alight up an apple-tree, and there he left his shield, and put his horse to pasture. And then he laid him sleep. And then him though came an old man afores him, till said, Ah, Launcelot, of evil for poor belief, wherefore is thy wise so lightly towards thy deadly sin when he had said thus he away, and Launcelot wist not where he was become. Then he took him and armed him. And as he rode away he saw a chapel, where it close, which had a window might see up to the altar, aloud she called Launcelot, for seemed a knight errant. And came, and she asked him what and of what place, and where he went to seek.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Launcelot told his who a woman, and how she expou him.

And then he told her altogether by word, and the truth how it at the tournament. And after his vision, that he had had that his sleep, and prayed her to what it might mean, for he was content with it. Ah, Launcel she, as long as ye were knight of knighthood, ye were the most man of the world, and most turuous. Now, said the lady, set among the knights of he adventures, if adventure fell the at that tournament, have thou vel; for that tournament yester but a tokening of our Lord. And then there was none enchant they at the tournament were
The tournament was a token that thou shouldest know good from evil and vain glory of the world, the which is not worth a pear. And for great pride thou madest great sorrow that thou hadst not overcome all the white knights with the covering of white, by whom was betokened virginity and chastity, and therefore God was wroth with you, for God loveth no such deeds in this quest; and this vision signifieth that thou were of evil faith and of poor belief, the which will make thee to fall into the deep pit of hell, if thou keep thee not. Now have I warned thee of thy vain glory and of thy pride, that thou hast many times erred against thy Maker. Beware of everlasting pain, for of all earthly knights I have most pity of thee, for I know well thou hast not thy peer of any earthly sinful man. And so she commanded Sir Launcelot to dinner; and after dinner he took his horse and commended her to God, and so rode into a deep valley, and there he saw a river and an high mountain. And through the water he must needs pass, the which was hideous; and then in the name of God he took it with good heart. And when he came over he saw an armed knight, horse and man black as any bear: without any word he smote Sir Launcelot's horse to the earth, and so he passed on: he wist not where he was become. And then he took his helm and his shield, and thanked God of his adventure.

Leueth of the story of SIR LAUNCELOT. And speke we of Sir Gawayne, the whiche is the xvi. book.

The Sixteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Gawaine was nigh weary of the the Sangreal, and of his martreem.

Sir Gawaine was departed fellowship, he rode long with adventure. For he found not the tenth part of adventure as he was wont to do. For Sir Gawaine rode from Whitsunday unto Michaelmas, and found none adventure that pleased him. So on a day it befell Gawaine met with Sir Ector de Maris, and either made great joy of other, that it were marvel to tell. And so they told every each
other, and complained them greatly that they could find none adventure.

Truly, said Sir Gawaine unto Sir Ector, I am nigh weary of this quest,
and loth I am to follow further in strange countries. One thing marvelled me, said Sir Ector, I have met with twenty knights, fellows of mine, and all they complain as I do. I marvel, said Sir Gawaine, where that Sir Launcelot your brother is. Truly, said Sir Ector, I cannot hear of him, nor of Sir Galahad, Percival, nor Sir Bors. Let them be, said Sir Gawaine, for they four have no peers. And if one thing were not in Sir Launcelot, he had no fellow of none earthly man; but he is as we be, but if he took more pain upon him. But and these four be met together, they will be loth that any man meet with them; for, and they fail of the Sangreal, it is in waste of all the remnant to recover it. Thus as Ector and Gawaine rode more than eight days. And on a Saturday they found an old chapel, the which was wasted that there seemed no man thither repaired, and there they alight, and set their spears at the door, and in they entered into the chapel, and there made their orisons a great while, and then set them down in the sieges of the chapel. And as they spake of one thing and other, for heaviness they fell on sleep, and there befell them both marvellous adventures. Sir Gawaine him seemed he came into a meadow full of herbs and flowers. And there he saw a rack of bulls an hundred and fifty, that were proud and black, save three of them were all white, and one had a black spot, and the other two were so fair and so white that they might be no whiter. And these three bulls which were so fair were tied with two strong cords. And the remnant of the bulls said among them, Go we hence to seek better pasture. And so some went, and some came again; but they were so lean that they might not stand upright; and of the bulls that were so white, that one came again, and no more. But when this white bull was come again among these other, there arose up a great wind that failed them; departed, one here and a

CHAP. II.

Of the vision of Sir Ector juxted with Sir Uwaine Is sworn brother.

But to Sir Ector de another vision, the contr these seemed him that his broth elot and he alight out of a two horses, and to the other, Go we seek and he came to the fairest well he saw, and Sir Launcelot alight have drunk of that well. A stooped to drink of the water sank from him. And when lot saw that, he turned and as the head came from meanwhile he trowed that Sir Ector rode till that the rich man’s house, where a wedding. And there he the which said, Sir knight place for you: and then again unto the chair that he Thus within a while bo and Ector awakened, and either of their vision, the which them greatly. Truly, said I never be merry till I hear the brother Launcelot.

Now as they sat thus I saw an hand shewing unto and was covered with red upon that hung a bridle held within the fist a great burnt right clear, and so them, and entered into the them then vanished away, and not where. And anon a voice which said, Knight, evil faith and poor belief things have failed you, and
me to the adventures of the
Then first spake Gawaine Ector, have ye heard these
tea truly, said Sir Ector, I
Now go we, said Sir Ector,
hermit that will tell us of
for it seemeth we will labour.
And so they departed and
valley, and there met with a
h rode on an hackney, and
him fair. Sir, said Gawaine,
teach us to any hermit?
in a little mountain, said
but it is so rough that there
se go thither; and therefore
en foot: there shall ye find
se, and there is Nacien the
ch is the holliest man in this
And so they departed either.
And then in a valley they
knight all armed, which
em to just as far as he saw
ily, said Sir Gawaine, sith I
om Camelot there was none
me to just but once. And
said Ector, let me just with
, said Gawaine, ye shall
be beaten, it shall not for-
en if ye go after me. And
embraced other to just, and
her as fast as their horses
and brast their shields and
and the one more than the
Gawaine was wounded in
, but the other knight was
ough the breast, and the
out on the other side, and
th both out of their saddles,
alling they brake both their
non Gawaine arose, and set
 to his sword, and cast his
n him. But all for nought
the knight had no power
against him. Then said Ga-
must yield you as an over-
, or else I may slay you.
right, said he, I am but dead; 
take, and of your gentleness,
 unto an abbey, that I may
Creator. Sir, said Gawaine,
house of religion hereby.
he knight, set me on an
you, and I shall teach you.
Gawaine set him up in the saddle, and
he lept up behind him for to sustain
him, and so came to an abbey, where
they were well received; and anon he
was unarmed, and received his Creator.
Then he prayed Gawaine to draw the
truncheon of the spear out of his body.
Then Gawaine asked him what he was,
that knew him not? I am, said he,
of king Arthur's court, and was a fellow
of the Round Table, and we were bre-
thren sworn together, and now, Sir Ga-
waine, thou hast slain me, and my name
is Uwayne les Avoutures, that sometime
was son unto king Uriens, and was in
the quest of the Sangreal; and now
forgive it thee God, for it shall ever be
said that the one sworn brother hath
slain the other.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector came
to an hermitage to be confessed, and how
they told to the hermit their visions.

Alas, said Sir Gawaine, that ever this
misadventure is befallen me. No force,
said Uwayne, sith I shall die this death,
of a much more worshipfuller man's
hands might I not die; but when ye
come to the court, commend me unto
my lord king Arthur, and all those that
be left onlive, and for old brotherhood
think on me. Then began Gawaine to
weep, and Ector also. And then Uwayne
himself, and Sir Gawaine, drew out the
truncheon of the spear; and anon de-
parted the soul from the body. Then
Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector buried him,
as men ought to bury a king's son, and
made written upon his name, and by
whom he was slain.

Then departed Gawaine and Ector, as
heavy as they might for their misad-
vventure; and so rode till that they came
unto the rough mountain, and there
they tied their horses, and went on foot
to the hermitage. And when they were
come up, they saw a poor house, and
beside the chapel a little courtilage,
where Nacien the hermit gathered worts,
as he which had tasted none other meat
of a great while. And when he saw
the errant knights, he came toward them
and saluted them, and they him again.
Fair lords, said he, what adventure
brought you hither? Sir, said Gawaine,
to speak with you, for to be confessed.
Sir, said the hermit, I am ready. Then
they told him so much that he wist
well what they were, and then he
thought to counsel them if he might.
Then began Gawaine first, and told
him of his vision that he had had in the
chapel: and Ector told him all as it is
afore rehearsed. Sir, said the hermit
unto Sir Gawaine, the fair meadow and
the rack therein ought to be understood
the Round Table, and by the meadow
ought to be understood humility and
patience, those be the things which be
always green and quick; for men may
no time overcome humility and pa-
tience, therefore was the Round Table
founded, and the chivalry hath been at
time, so by the fraternity which
was there that she might not be
overcome. For men said she was
founded in patience and in humility.
At the rack ate an hundred and fifty
bulls, but they ate not in the meadow,
for their hearts should be set in hu-
mility and patience, and the bulls were
proud and black, save only three. By
the bulls is to understand the fellow-
ship of the Round Table, which for
their sin and their wickedness be black.
Blackness is to say without good or
virtuous works. And the three bulls
which were white, save only one which
was spotted;—the two white betoken
Sir Galahad and Sir Percivale, for they
be maidens clean and without spot;
and the third that had a spot signifieth
Sir Bors de Ganis, which trespassed
but once in his virginity, but since he
kept himself so well in chastity that all
is forgiven him, and his misdeeds. And
why those three were tied by the necks,
they be three knights in virginity and
chastity, and there is no pride smitten
in them. And the black bulls which
said, Go we hence, they were those
which at Pentecost, at the high feast,
took upon them to go in the quest of
the Sangreal without confession: they
might not enter in the
humility and patience.
They returned into waste
signifeth death, for the
many of them: every one
shall slay other for sin,
shall escape shall be:
it shall be marvel to see
of the three bulls without
one shall come again, a
two never.

CHAP. IV.
How the hermit expounded his vision.

Then spake Nacien unto
it is that Launcelot and y
of one chair: the chair
mastership and lordship, were
down from. But ye two
the hermit, ye go to seek
never find, that is the Sa
it is the secret thing of
Christ. What is to me
Launcelot fell down off h
hath left pride, and to
humility, for he hath crie
for his sin, and sore repen
our Lord hath cloathed
him with clothing, which is full of
the hair which he weareth
the ass that he rode upon
of humility. For God w
upon no steed, nor upon
So in ensample that an a
meekness, that thou savest
lot ride on in thy sleep:
where as the water sank
when he should have ta
and when he saw he mi
it, he returned thither from
and came, for the well betoken
grace of God, the more t
take it, the more shall desire. So when he ca
Sanegreal, he meeked him
him not a man worthy to
the holy vessel, for he
defouled in deadly sin by
many years, yet when he
drink of the well, there
providence of the Sanegr
ved so long the devil, he vengeance four and twenty for that he hath been the ant four and twenty years. soon after he shall return ot out of this country, and a part of such things as he

I tell you what betokeneth th the candle and the bridle; understand the Holy Ghost, ity is ever, and the bridle bstinence. For when she is christian man's heart, she is so short that he falleth not in. And the candle which earneth and sight, signifieth way of Jesu Christ. And went, and said, Knights of and of wicked belief,—these are failed, charity, abstinence, therefore ye may not attain dventure of the Sacrengreal.

CHAP. V.

God counsel that the hermit gave to him.

said Gawaine, soothe have at I see it openly. Now I good man and holy father, we met not with so many as we were wont to do, and have the better. I shall tell you, said the good man: The of the Sacrengreal, which ye and have undertaken the quest find it not, the cause is, for it not to sinners. Wherefore though ye fail thereof, and r. For ye be an untrue I a great murderer, and to signifieth other things than I dare say, as sinful as lot hath been, sith that he the quest of the Sacrengreal ever man, nor nought shall come unto Camelot again. I taken upon him for to for. And were not that he is not by his thought he is likely to he should be next to achieve alahad his son. But God knoweth his thought, and his unsteadiness, and yet shall he die right an holy man; and no doubt he hath no fellow of no earthly sinful man. Sir, said Gawaine, it seemeth me by your words, that for our sins it will not avail us to travail in this quest. Truly, said the good man, there be an hundred such as ye be, that never shall prevail but to have shame. And when they had heard these voices, they commanded him unto God.

Then the good man called Gawaine, and said, It is long time passeth sith that ye were made knight, and never since thou servest thy Maker, and now thou art so old a tree, that in thee there is neither life nor fruit; wherefore bethink thee that thou yield unto our Lord the bare rind, sith the fiend hath the leaves and the fruit. Sir, said Gawaine, and I had leisure I would speak with you, but my fellow here, Sir Ector, is gone, and abideth me yonder beneath the hill. Well, said the good man, thou were better to be counselled. Then departed Gawaine, and came to Ector, and so took their horses, and rode till they came to a foster's house which harbour them right well. And on the morn they departed from their host, and rode long or they could find any adventure.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Bors met with an hermit, and how he was confessed to him, and of his penance enjoined to him.

When Bors was departed from Camelot, he met with a religious man riding on an ass, and Sir Bors saluted him. Anon the good man knew him that he was one of the knights errant that was in the quest of the Sacrengreal. What are ye? said the good man. Sir, said he, I am a knight that fain would be counselled in the quest of the Sacrengreal: for I shall have much earthly worship that may bring it to an end. Certes, said the good man, that is sooth, for he shall be the best knight of the world, and the fairest of all the
fellowship. But wit you well, there shall none attain it but by cleanness, that is, pure confession. So rode they together till that they came to an hermitage. And there he prayed Bors to dwell all that night with him: and so he alight, and put away his armour, and prayed him that he might be confessed; and so they went into the chapel, and there he was clean confessed: and they eat bread, and drank water, together. Now, said the good man, I pray thee that thou eat none other, till that thou sit at the table where the Sangreall shall be. Sir, said he, I agree me thereto; but how wit ye that I shall sit there? Yes, said the good man, that know I, but there shall be but few of your fellows with you. All is welcome, said Sir Bors, that God sendeth me. Also, said the good man, instead of a shirt, and in sign of chastisement, ye shall wear a garment; thereof I pray you do off all your clothes and your shirt, and so he did. And then he took him a scarlet coat, so that should be instead of his shirt, till he had fulfilled the quest of the Sangreall. And the good man found him in so marvellous a life, and so stable, that he marvelled, and felt that he was never corrupt in fleshly lusts, but in one time that he begat Elian le Blank. Then he armed him, and took his leave, and so departed. And so a little from thence he looked up into a tree, and there he saw a passing great bird upon an old tree, and it was passing dry, without leaves, and the bird sat above, and had birds, the which were dead for hunger. So smote he himself with his beak, the which was great and sharp. And so the great bird bled till that he died among his birds. And the young birds took the life by the blood of the great bird. When Bors saw this, he wist well it was great tokening. For when he saw the great bird arose not, then he took his horse and went his way. So by evensong, by adventure he came to a strong tower, and an high, and there was he lodged gladly.

CHAP. VII.

How Sir Bors was lodged, and how he took on him his against a champion for her life.

And when he was unarme him into an high tower, where lady, young, lusty, and fair, received him with great joy, him to sit down by her, and set to sup with flesh and mar. And when Sir Bors saw them brought him, and he made so good and ate them. Ah, said the lady, ye like not my meat. Yes, Sir Bors, God thank you me, I may eat none other meat. Then she spake no more a time, for she was loth to him.

Then after supper they spake of thing and other. With that to a squire, and said, Madam, reverently you to-morn for another; for else your sister will be castile, and also your lands, can find a knight that will marry in your quarrel against Noire. Then she made some said, Ah Lord God, wherefore ye to hold my land, wherefore I shall now be disherited without a right. And when Sir Bors heard her say thus, he said, I shall be with you. Sir, said she, I shall tell you, there was here a king that had great cause, which held all this land in keeping. So it mishapped her gentlewoman, a great deal else. So took he her all this land in keeping, and all his men to go with her, she brought up many evil whereby she put to death a man of his kinsmen. And when that, he let chase her out of her house and betook it me, and all the which was my charge: but anon, as the king was dead, this other lady war upon me, and hath destroyed of my men, and turned them all that I have well nigh no ma...
nought else but this high she left me. And yet she ed me to have this tower, an find a knight to fight mpion. Now tell me, said at is that Pridam le Noire? e, he is the most doubted land.—Now may ye send at ye have found a knight ight with that Pridam le l's quarrel and yours. Thes not a little glad, and sent he was provided. And that tors had good cheer, but in ould come, but laid him on r never would do otherwise had met with the quest of

CHAP. VIII.
ich Sir Bors had that night, be fought and overcame bis

as he was asleep, him on, that there came to him one as white as a swan, r was marvellous black, but gr great as the other, but in of a raven. Then the white o him, and said, And thou me meat and serve me, I thee all the riches of the shall make thee as fair and I am. So the white bird d there came the black bird said, And thou wilt serve ow, and have me in no gh I be black, for wit thou ore availleth my blackness, her's whiteness. And then 1. And he had another thought that he came to e, which seemed a chapel, h found a chair set on the hich was worm-eaten and 1 on the right hand were like a lily, and the one taken the other's whiteness, man parted them, that the not the other, and then out ever came out many flowers, at plenty. Then him thought an said, Should not he do great folly, that would let these two flowers perish for to succour the rotten tree, that it fell not to the earth? Sir, said he, it seemeth me that this wood might not avail. Now keep thee, said the good man, that thou never see such adventure befall thee. Then he awaked and made a sign of the cross in the midst of the forehead, and so rose and clothed him, and there came the lady of the place, and she saluted him, and he her again, and so went to a chapel, and heard their service. And there came a company of knights that the lady had sent for, to lead Sir Bors unto battle. Then asked he his arms. And when he was armed, she prayed him to take a little morsel to dine. Nay, madam, said he, that shall I not do, till I have done my battle, by the grace of God. And so he kept upon his horse, and departed all the knights and men with him. And as soon as these two ladies met together, she which Bors should fight for, complained her, and said, Madam, ye have done me wrong to bereave me of my lands that king Aniause gave me, and full loth I am there should be any battle. Ye shall not choose, said the other lady, or else your knight withdraw him. Then there was the cry made, which party had the better of those two knights, that this lady should enjoy all the land. Now departed the one knight here, and the other there. Then they came together with such force that they pierced their shields and their hauberks, and the spears flew in pieces, and they wounded either other sore. Then hurtled they together so that they fell both to the earth, and their horses betwixt their legs. And anon they arose, and set hands to their swords, and smote each one other upon the heads, that they made great wounds and deep, that the blood went out of their bodies. For there found Sir Bors greater defence in that knight more than he wend. For that Pridam was a passing good knight, and he wounded Sir Bors full evil, and he him again. But ever this Sir Pridam held the stour in like hard.
That perceived Sir Bors, and suffered him till he was nigh attaind, and then he ran upon him more and more, and the other went back for dread of death. So in his withdrawing he fell upright, and Sir Bors drew his helm so strongly that he rent it from his head, and gave him great strokes with the flat of his sword upon the visage, and bade him yield him, or he should slay him. Then he cried him mercy, and said, Fair knight, for God’s love slay me not, and I shall ensure thee never to war against thy lady, but be alway toward her. Then Bors let him be. Then the old lady fled with all her knights.

CHAP. IX.

How the lady was restored to her lands by the battle of Sir Bors, and of his departing, and bow he met Sir Lionel taken and beaten with thorns, and also of a maid which should have been disbonoured.

So then came Bors to all those that held lands of his lady, and said he should destroy them but if they did such service unto her as belonged to their lands. So they did their homage, and they that would not be chased out of their lands. Then befell that young lady to come to her estate again, by the mighty prowess of Sir Bors de Ganis. So when all the country was well set in peace, then Sir Bors took his leave and departed, and she thanked him greatly, and would have given him great riches, but he refused it. Then he rode all that day till night, and came to an harbour, to a lady which knew him well enough, and made of him great joy. Upon the morn, as soon as the day appeared, Bors departed from thence, and so rode into a forest unto the hour of mid-day, and there befell him a marvellous adventure. So he met at the departing of the two ways two knights, that led Lionel his brother all naked, bounden upon a strong hacket, and his hands bounden tofore his breast: and every each of them held in his hand thorns, wherewith they went beating him so sore that the blood trailed down more than in an hundred places of his body, so that he was all blood tofore and behind, but he said never a word, as he which was great of heart; he suffered all that ever they did to him as though he had felt none anguish. Anon Sir Bors dressed him to rescue him that was his brother: and so he looked upon the other side of him, and saw a knight which brought a his gentlewoman, and would have set her in the thickest place of the forest, for to have been the more surer out of the way from them that sought him. And she, which was nothing assured, cried with an high voice, Saint Mary, succour your maid!

And anon she espied where Sir Bors came riding. And when she came nigh him, she deemed him a knight of the Round Table, whereof she hoped to have some comfort; and then she conjured him, by the faith that he owed unto Him in whose service thou art entered in, and for the faith ye owe unto the high order of knighthood, and for the noble king Arthur’s sake, that I suppose that made thee knight, that thou help me, and suffer me not to be shamed of this knight!

When Bors heard her say thus, he had so much sorrow there he nist not what to do. For if I let my brother be in adventure he must be slain, and that would I not for all the earth. And if I help not the maid, she is shamed for ever, and also she shall lose her honour, the which she shall never get again. Then lift he up his eyes, and said weeping, Fair sweet Lord Jesu Christ, whose liege man I am, keep Lionel my brother, that these knights slay him not; and for pity of you, and for Mary’s sake, I shall succour this maid.

CHAP. X.

How Sir Bors left to rescue his brother, and rescued the damsel; and bow it was told him that Lionel was dead.

Then dressed he him unto the knight which had the gentlewoman, and
ried, Sir knight, let your hand
naiden, or ye be but dead.
he set down the maiden and
at all pieces, save he lacked
Then he dressed his shield,
out his sword, and Bors smote
that it went through his
haberjon on the left shoulder;
gh great strength he beat him
he earth; and at the pulling
s' spear there he swooned.
ane Bors to the maid, and
v seemeth it you? Of this
be delivered at this time.
said she, I pray you lead
as this knight had me.—
I do gladly: and took the
the wounded knight, and set
ewoman upon him, and so
er as she desired. Sir knight,
ye have better sped than ye
or if ye had not saved me five
men should have died for it.
knight was he that had you
rest?—By my faith, said
my cousin. So wot I never
at craft the fiend enchafed
esterdag he took me from my
ivily; for I nor none of my
en mistrusted him not. And
shamed me, he should have
he sin, and his body shame
oured for ever. Thus as she
king with him, there came
ights seeking after her, and
told them all how Bors had
her; then they made great
besought him to come to her
great lord, and he should be
come. Truly, said Bors, that
be at this time, for I have a
venture to do in this country,
mmended them unto God, and

Then Sir Bors rode after
brother by the trace of their
Thus he rode seeking a great
hen he overtook a man clothed
ious clothing, and rode on a
ack horse, blacker than a bery.
Sir knight, what seek you? Sir,
seek my brother, that I saw
while beaten with two knights.
comfort you not, nor fall

into no vain hope, for I shall tell you
tidings such as they be; for truly he is
dead. Then shewed he him a new slain
body, lying in a bush, and it seemed him
well that it was the body of Lionel.
And then he made such a sorrow that
he fell to the earth all in a swoon, and
lay a great while there. And when he
came to himself he said, Fair brother,
sith the company of you and me is
parted, shall I never have joy in my
heart; and now He which I have taken
unto my Master, He be my help. And
when he had said thus, he took his body
lightly in his arms, and put it upon the
bow of his saddle. And then he said to
the man, Canst thou tell me unto some
chapel, where that I may bury this
body? Come on, said he, here is one
fast by. And so long they rode till
they saw a fair tower, and afore it there
seemed an old feele chapel. And then
they alight both, and put him into a
tomb of marble.

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Bors told his dream to a priest
which he had dreamed, and of the coun-
self that the priest gave to him.

Now leave we him here, said the
good man, and go we to harbour till
to-morrow, we will come here again to
do him service. Sir, said Bors, be ye a
priest? Yea, forsooth, said he.—Then
I pray you tell me a dream that befell to
me the last night.—Say on, said he.
Then he began so much to tell him of
the great bird in the forest: and after
told him of his birds, one white, another
black; and of the rotten tree, and of
the white flowers. Sir, said the priest,
I shall tell you a part now, and the
other deal to-morrow. The white fowl
betokeneth a gentlewoman, fair and
rich, which loveth thee, and hath loved
thee long; and if thou refuse her love,
she shall go die anon, if thou have no
pity on her. That signifieth the great
bird, the which shall make thee for to
refuse her. Now, for no fear nor for
no dread that thou hast of God, thou
shalt not refuse her, but thou wouldest
not do it for to be holden chaste, for to conquer the praise of the vain-glorious of the world; for that shall befall thee now, and thou refuse her, that Launcelot, the good knight thy cousin, shall die. And therefore men shall now say that thou art a manslayer, both of thy brother Sir Lionel, and of thy cousin Sir Launcelot du Lake, the which thou mightest have saved and rescued full easily. But thou weenedst to rescue a maid, which pertained nothing to thee. Now look thou whether it had been greater harm of thy brother's death, or else to have suffered her for to have lost her honour. Then asked he him, Hast thou heard the tokens of thy dream, the which I have told to you? Yea forsooth, said Sir Bors, all your exposition and declaring of my dream I have well understood and heard. Then said the man in this black clothing, Then is it in thy default if Sir Launcelot thy cousin die. Sir, said Bors, that were me loot; for wit ye well there is nothing in the world but I had ever do it than to see my lord Sir Launcelot du Lake to die in my default. Choose ye now the one or the other, said the good man. And then he led Sir Bors into an high tower, and there he found knights and ladies. Those ladies said he was welcome, and so they unarmed him. And when he was in his doublet, men brought him a mantle furred with ermine, and put it about him, and then they made him such cheer that he had forgotten all his sorrow and anguish, and only set his heart in these delights and dainties, and took no more thought for his brother Sir Lionel, neither of Sir Launcelot du Lake his cousin. And anon came out of a chamber to him the fairest lady that ever he saw, and more richer beseech than ever he saw queen Guenever, or any other estate. Lo! said they, Sir Bors, here is the lady unto whom we all owe our service, and I trauw she be the richest lady, and the fairest of all the world, and the which loveth you best above all other knights, for she will have no knight but you. And when he understood that language, he was abashed. Not for then she him, and he her; and they down together, and spake of things, insomuch that she beseeched to be her love, for she had known above all earthly men, and she made him richer than ever was his age. When Sir Bors with her words he was right evil which in no manner would a chastity, so wist not he how to her.

CHAP. XII.

How the devil in a woman's heart have tempted Sir Bors, and long grace be escaped.

Alas! said she, Bors, shall my will? Madam, said Sir Bors, there is no lady in this world who will fulfil as of this thing, for he lieth dead which was slain. Ah, Bors, said she, I have longed for the great beauty I have you, and great hardiness I have of you, that needs ye must give love, and, therefore, I pray you me. Truly, said he, I shall no manner of wise. Then him such sorrow as though have died. Well, Bors, said this have ye brought me night and end. And therewith she took the hand, and bade him beware. And ye shall see how I shall your love. Ah, said then he. I never see. Then she depart went up into a high battlement with her twelve gentlewomen when they were above, one of the women cried and said, Ah, gentle knight, have mercy on, we suffer my lady to have her will ye do not, we must suffer death lady, for to fall down of this height. And if ye suffer us thus to die, little a thing, all ladies and gentlemen will say of you dishonour. There he upward: they seemed all to great estate and richly and we. Then had he of them great pity that he was un-counselled with
SIR BORS FINDS AN HOLY ABBOT.

ver he had they all had lost their
han he is; and with that they
own all at once unto the earth.
then he saw that, he was all
and had thereof great mar-
that he blessed his body and
and an he heard a great
d a great cry, as though all the
of hell had been about him, and
th he saw neither tower, ne-
egentlewoman, nor no chapel
brought his brother to. Then
he put both his hands to the hea-
said, Fair Father God, I am
esly escaped. And then he took his
nd his horse, and rode on his
Then he heard a clock smite on
it hand, and thither he came to
on his right hand, closed with
als, and there was let in. Then
posed that he was one of the
of the Sangreal. So they led
to a chamber, and unarmed him.
Sir Bors, if there be any holy
in this house, I pray you let me
him with him. Then one of them led
nto the abbot, which was in a
And then Sir Bors saluted him,
him again. Sir, said Bors, I am
nt errant, and told him all the
re which he had seen. Sir
said the abbot, I wot not what
for I wend never that a knight
age might have been so strong
 grace of our Lord Jesu Christ.
then ye shall go unto your rest,
il not counsel you this day, it is
, and to-morrow I shall counsel
I can.

CHAP. XIII.

holy communication of an abbot
r Bors, and how the abbot coun-
d him.

that night was Sir Bors served
and on the morn early he heard
and the abbot came to him and
a good morrow, and Bors to him
And then he told him he was a
of the quest of the Sangreal, and
had charge of the holy man to
and water. Then [said the

abbot] our Lord Jesu Christ shewed
Him unto you, in the likeness of a soul
that suffered great anguish for us since
He was put upon the cross, and bled
His heart blood for mankind: there was
the token and the likeness of the Sang-
greal that appeared afore you, for the
blood that the great fowl bled revived
the chickens from death to life. And
by the bare tree is betokened the world,
which is naked and without fruit, but if
it come of our Lord. Also the lady for
whom ye fought for, and king Aniause,
which was lord there tofore, betokeneth
Jesu Christ, which is the King of the
world; and that ye fought with the
champion for the lady, this it betoken-
eth: for when ye took the battle for the
lady, by her ye shall understand the new
law of Jesu Christ and holy Church;
and by the other lady ye shall under-
stand the old law and the fiend, which
all day warreth against holy Church,
therefore ye did your battle with right.
For ye be Jesu Christ's knights, therefore
ye ought to be defenders of holy Church.
And by the black bird might ye un-
derstand the holy Church, which saith
I am black, but he is fair. And by the
white bird might men understand the
fiend. And I shall tell you how the
swan is white without forth, and black
within; it is hypocrisy which is without
yellow or pale, and seemeth without
forth the servants of Jesu Christ, but
they be within so horrible of shith and
sin, and beguile the world evil. Also
when the fiend appeared to thee in like-
ess of a man of religion, and blamed
thee that thou left thy brother for a
lady, so led thee where thou seemed
thy brother was slain, but he is yet on
live, and all was for to put thee in
error, and bring thee unto vain hope
and lechery, for he knew thou were
tender hearted, and all was for thou
shouldest not find the blessed adventure
of the Sangreal. And the third fowl
betokeneth the strong battle against the
fair ladies which were all devils. Also
the dry tree, and the white lily—the
dry tree betokeneth thy brother Sir
Lionel, which is dry without virtue, and
therefore many men ought to call him the rotten tree, and the worm-eaten tree, for he is a murderer and doth contrary to the order of knighthood. And the two white flowers signify two maidens, the one is a knight which was wounded the other day, and the other is the gentlewoman which ye rescued; and why the other flower drew nigh the other, that was the knight which would have dishonoured her, and himself both. And, Sir Bors, ye had been a great fool, and in great peril, to have seen those two flowers perish for to succour the rotten tree, for and they had sinned together they had been damned: and for that ye rescued them both, men might call you a very knight and servant of Jesu Christ.

CHAP. XIV.

How Sir Bors met with his brother Sir Lionel, and how Sir Lionel would have slain Sir Bors.

Then went Sir Bors from thence, and commended the abbot unto God. And then he rode all that day, and harboured with an old lady. And on the morn he rode to a castle in a valley, and there he met with a yeoman going a great pace toward a forest. Say me, said Sir Bors, canst thou tell me of any adventure? Sir, said he, here shall be under this castle a great and a marvellous tournament. Of what folks shall it be? said Sir Bors. The earl of Plains (said he) shall be on the one party, and the lady's nephew of Hervin on the other party. Then Bors thought to be there, if he might meet with his brother Sir Lionel, or any other of his fellowship which were in the quest of the Sangreal. And then he turned to an hermitage that was in the entry of the forest. And when he was come thither, he found there Sir Lionel his brother, which sat all armed at the entry of the chapel door, for to abide there harbour till on the morn that the tournament shall be. And when Sir Bors saw him he had great joy of him, that was it marvel to tell of his joy. And then he alighted off his horse and said, Fair sweet brother, when came ye hither? Anon as Sir Lionel saw him he said, Ah Bors, ye may not make none avaunt, but, as for you, I might have been slain; when ye saw two knights leading me away, beating me, ye left me to succour a gentlewoman, and suffered me in peril of death: for never erst me did no brother to another so great an untruth. And for that misdeed now I ensure you but death, for well have ye deserved it; therefore keep thee from henceforward, and that shall ye find as soon as I am armed. When Sir Bors understood his brother's wrath, he kneeled down to the earth, and cried him mercy, holding up both his hands, and prayed him to forgive him his evil will. Nay, said Lionel, that shall never be, and I may have the higher hand, that I make mine avow to God: thou shalt have death for it, for it were pity ye lived any longer. Right so he went in, and took his harness, and mounted upon his horse, and came tofore him and said, Bors, keep thee from me, for I shall do to thee as I would to a felon or a traitor, for ye be the untrust knight that ever came out of so worthy an house as was king Bors de Ganis, which was our father; therefore start upon thy horse, and so shall ye be most at your advantage. And but if ye will, I will run upon thee there as ye stand upon foot, and so the shame shall be mine and the harm yours; but of that shame reck I nought. When Sir Bors saw that he must fight with his brother or else to die, he nist not what to do. Then his heart counselled him not thereto, in as much as Lionel was born or he, wherefore he ought to bear him reverence; yet kneeld he down afore Lionel's horse feet, and said, Fair sweet brother, have mercy upon me and slay me not, and have in remembrance the great love which ought to be between us twain. What Sir Bors said to Lionel he recked not, for the fiend had brought him in such a will that he should slay him. Then when Lionel saw he would none other, and that he would not have risen to give him battle, he rushed over him, so that he
Sirs with his horse feet upward earth, and hurt him so sore that mended of distress, the which he felt self to have died without conclusion.

So when Lionel saw this, he off his horse, to have smitten off his arm. And so he took him by the hand would have rent it from his arm. Then came the hermit running unto him, which was a good man of great age, and well had all the words that were between, and so fell down upon his knees.

CHAP. XV.

Sir Colgrevance fought against Sir Ior for to save Sir Bors, and how the hermit was slain.

He said to Lionel, Ah, gentle heart, have mercy upon me and on thy heart, for if thou slay him thou shalt make sin, and that were sorrowful; for he is one of the worthiest knights of the world, and of the best conditions. He said, help, said Lionel, Sir priest, I flee from him I shall slay you, and never the sooner be quit. He said the good man, I had rather ask me than him, for my death shall not be great harm, not half so much as his. Well, said Lionel, I am set his hand to his sword, he saw him so hard that his head was backward. Not for that he receiveth him of his evil will, but took him by the helm, and unlaced it: stricken off his head, and had it without fail, but so it happened, a chance, a fellow of the Round came at that time thither, as our will was. And when he saw the man slain, he marvelled much what it was. And then he beheld Lionel have slain his brother, and knew which he loved right well.

Said he down and took Lionel by the shoulders, and drew him strongly from Bors, and said, Lionel, will your brother, the worthiest of the world one? and that no good man suffer. Why, said Sir Lionel, will ye let me? therefore if ye intermit you in this, I shall slay you, and him after. Why, said Colgrevance, is this sooth, that ye will slay him? Slay him I will, I said, he, who so say the contrary; for he hath done so much against me that he hath well deserved it; and so ran upon him, and would have smitten him through the head; and Sir Colgrevance ran betwixt them and said, And ye be so hardy to do so more, we two shall meddle together. When Lionel understood his words, he took his shield afore him, and asked him what he was; and he told him Colgrevance, one of his fellows. Then Lionel defied him, and gave him a great stroke through the helm. Then he drew his sword, for he was a passing good knight, and defended him right manfully. So long endured the battle that Sir Bors rose up all anguishly, and beheld Sir Colgrevance, the good knight, fight with his brother for his quarrel. Then was he full sorry and heavy, and thought, if Colgrevance slew him that was his brother he should never have joy, and if his brother slew Colgrevance the shame should ever be his. Then would he have risen to have departed them, but he had not so much might to stand on foot: so he abode him so long till Colgrevance had the worse, for Sir Lionel was of great chivalry and right hardy, for he had pierced the hauberk and the helm, that he abode but death. For he had lost much of his blood, that it was marvellous that he might stand upright. Then beheld he Sir Bors, which sat dressing him upward, and said, Ah Bors, why come ye not to cast me out of peril of death, wherein I have put me to succour you, which were right now nigh the death? Certes, said Lionel, that shall not avail you, for none of you shall bear other's warrant, but that ye shall die both of my hand. When Bors heard that, he did so much he rose and put on his helm. Then perceived he first the hermit priest which was slain, then made he a marvellous sorrow upon him.
CHAP. XVI.

How Sir Lionel slew Sir Colgrevance, and how after be would have slain Sir Bors.

Then oft Colgrevance cried upon Sir Bors, Why will ye let me die here for your sake? if it please you that I die for you the death, it will please me the better for to save a worthy man. With that word Sir Lionel smote off the helm from his head. Then Colgrevance saw that he might not escape; then he said, Fair sweet Jesu, that I have misdone have mercy upon my soul; for such sorrow that my heart suffereth for goodness, and for alms deed that I would have done here, be to me aligement of penance unto my soul’s health. At these words Lionel smote him so sore that he bare him to the earth. So when he had slain Colgrevance, he ran upon his brother as a fiendly man, and gave him such a stroke that he made him stoop; and he, that was full of humility, prayed him, for God’s love to leave this battle: For and it befell, fair brother, that I slew you, or ye me, we should be dead of that sin. Never God me help but if I have on you mercy, and I may have the better hand. Then drew Bors his sword, all weeping, and said, Fair brother, God knoweth mine intent. Ah, fair brother, ye have done full evil this day to slay such an holy priest, the which never trespassed. Also ye have slain a gentle knight, and one of our fellows. And well wot ye that I am not afeard of you greatly, but I dread the wrath of God; and this is an unkindly war, therefore God shew miracle upon us both. Now God have mercy upon me, though I defend my life against my brother. With that Bors lift up his hand, and would have smitten his brother.

CHAP. XVII.

How there came a voice which charged Sir Bors to touch not him, and of a cloud that came between them.

And then he heard a voice that said, Flee, Bors, and touch him not, or else thou shalt slay him. Right so alight a cloud betwixt them in likeness of a fire, and a marvellous flame, that both their two shields burnt. Then were they sore afraid, that they fell both to the earth, and lay there a great while in a swoon. And when they came to themselves, Bors saw that his brother had no harm: then he held up both his hands, for he dread God had taken vengeance upon him. With that he heard a voice say, Bors, go hence and bear thy brother no longer fellowship, but take thy way anon right to the sea, for Sir Percivale abideth thee there. Then he said to his brother, Fair sweet brother, forgive me, for God’s love, all that I have trespassed unto you. Then he answered, God forgive it thee, and I do gladly. So Sir Bors departed from him, and rode the next way to the sea. And at the last, by fortune he came to an abbey which was nigh the sea. That night Bors rested him there, and in his sleep there came a voice to him, and bad him go to the sea; then he start up, and made a sign of the cross in the midst of his forehead, and took his harness, and made ready his horse, and mounted upon him. And at a broken wall he rode out, and rode so long till that he came to the sea. And on the strand he found a ship covered all with white samite. And he alighted, and betook him to Jesu Christ. And as soon as he entered into the ship, the ship departed into the sea, and went so fast that him seemed the ship went flying, but it was soon dark, so that he might know no man, and so he slept till it was day. Then he awakened, and saw in the midst of the ship a knight lie, all armed save his helm. Then knew he that it was Sir Percivale of Wales, and then he made of him right great joy. But Sir Percivale was abashed of him, and he asked him what he was. Ah, fair sir, said Bors, know ye me not? Certes, said he, I marvel how ye came hither, but if our Lord brought you hither himself: then Sir Bors smiled, and did off his helm. Then Percivale knew him, and either made great joy of other, that it was marvell
en Bors told him how he
the ship, and by whose ad-
nt. And either told other of
stations, as ye have heard to-
So went they downward in
the sea, one while backward another
while forward, and every each comforted
other, and oft were in their prayers.
Then said Sir Percivale, We lack no-
thing but Galahad the good knight.

& endeth the sixteenth book whiche is of syre Gawayne, Ector
de marys, and syre Bors de ganys and sir perchayaul.

& foloweth the seventeenth book whiche is of the noble knyghte
syre Galahad.

The Seventeenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Galahad fought at a tourna-
ent bow he was known of Sir
Ector de Maris.

With this story, when Galahad
rode Percivale from the twenty
rode then into a vast forest,
rode many journeys, and he
ny adventures, the which he
no end, whereof the story
ere no mention. Then he
ay to the sea on a day, and it
he passed by a castle where
nder tournament, but they
ad done so much that they
re put to the worse, yet were
good knights enough. When
aw that those within were at
mischief that men slew them
try of the castle, then he
help them, and put a spear
smote the first that he fell to
and the spear brake to pieces.
rew his sword, and smote
hey were thickest, and so he
eful deeds of arms, that all
elled. Then it happe that
and Sir Ector de Maris were
ights without; but when they
white shield with the red
one said to the other, Yonder
knight Sir Galahad the haut
prince: now he should be a great fool
which should meet with him to fight.
So by adventure he came by Sir Ga-
waine, and he smote him so hard that
he clave his helm, and the coif of iron
unto his head, so that Gawaine fell to
the earth: but the stroke was so great,
that it slanted down to the earth, and
carved the horse shoulder in two. When
Ector saw Gawaine down, he drew him
aside, and thought it no wisdom for to
abide him, and also for natural love,
that he was his uncle. Thus through
his great hardiness he beat aback all the
knights without. And then they within
came out and chased them all about.
But when Galahad saw there would
none turn again, he stole away privily,
so that none wist where he was become.
Now by my head, said Gawaine to
Ector, now are the wonders true that
were said of Launcelot du Lake, that
the sword which stuck in the stone
should give me such a buffet that I
would not have it for the best castle in
this world, and soothly now it is proved
true, for never before had I such a
stroke of man's hand. Sir, said Ector,
me seemeth your quest is done. And
yours is not done, said Gawaine, but
mine is done; I shall seek no further.
Then Gawaine was borne into a castle,
aqd unarmed him, and laid him in a
rich bed, and a leech found that he might live, and to be whole within a month. Thus Gawaine and Ector abode together. For Sir Ector would not away till Gawaine were whole. And the good knight Galahad rode so long till he came that night to the castle of Carboneck; and it befall him thus that he was benighed in an hermitage. So the good man was fain when he saw he was a knight errant. Then when they were at rest, there came a gentlewoman knocking at the door, and called Galahad, and so the good man came to the door to wit what she would. Then she called the hermit, Sir Ulfin, I am a gentlewoman that would speak with the knight that is with you. Then the good man awaked Galahad, and bad him arise, and speak with a gentlewoman that seemeth hath great need of you. Then Galahad went to her, and asked her what she would. Galahad, said she, I will that ye arm you, and mount upon your horse, and follow me, for I shall shew you within these three days the highest adventure that ever any knight saw. Anon Galahad armed him, and took his horse and commended him to God, and bad the gentlewoman go, and he would follow there as she liked.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Galahad rode with a damsel, and came to the ship whereas Sir Bors and Sir Percivale were in.

So she rode as fast as her palfrey might bear her, till that she came to the sea the which was called Collibe. And at the night they came unto a castle in a valley, was closed with a running water, and with strong walls and high. And so she entered into the castle with Galahad, and there had he great cheer, for the lady of that castle was the damsel's lady. So when he was unarmed, then said the damsel, Madam, shall we abide here all this day? Nay, said she, but till he hath dined, and till he hath slept a little. So he eat and slept a while, till that the maid called him, and armed him by torchlight. And when the maid was horsed, and he both, the lady took Galahad a fair child and rich, and so they departed from the castle, till they came to the sea-side; and there they found the ship where Bors and Percivale were in, the which cried on the ship's board, Sir Galahad, ye be welcome, we have abides you long. And when he heard them, he asked them what they were. Sir, said she, leave your horse here, and I shall leave mine; and took their saddles and their bridles with them, and made a cross on them, and so entered into the ship. And the two knights received them both with great joy, and every one knew other. And so the wind arose, and drove them through the sea in a marvellous place. And within a while it dawned. Then did Galahad take his helm and his sword, and asked of his fellows from whence came that fair ship. Truly, said they, ye wot as well as we, but of God's grace. And then they told every each to other of all their hard adventures, and of their great temptation. Truly, said Galahad, ye are much bounden to God, for ye have escaped great adventures: and had not the gentlewoman been I had not come here; for as for you, I wend never to have found you in these strange countries. Ah, Galahad, said Bors, if Lancelot your father were here then were we well at ease, for then me seemed we failed nothing. That may not be, said Galahad, but if it please our Lord. By then the ship went from the land of Logris, and by adventure it arrived up betwixt two rocks passing great and marvellous, but there they might not land, for there was a swallow of the sea, save there was another ship, and upon it they might go without danger. Go we thither, said the gentlewoman, and there shall we see adventures, for so is our Lord's will. And when they came thither, they found the ship rich enough, but they found neither man nor woman therein. But they found in the end of the ship two fair letters written, which said a dreadful word and a marvellous:—Thou man
OF SIR PERCIVALE’S SISTER.

393

shall enter into this ship, beware in steadfast belief, for I am Faith; fore beware how thou enterest; thou fail I shall not help thee. said the gentlewoman, Percivale, what am I? Certes, said he, my witting. Wit thou well, said at I am thy sister, which am ye well ye are the man in the hat I most love. And if ye be perfect belief of Jesu Christ, enter no manner of wise, for then ye perish in the ship, for he is act he will suffer no sin in him. Percivale understood that she was my sister, he was inwardly glad, id, Fair sister, I shall enter for if I be a mis-creature, or an knight, there shall I perish.

CHAP. III.

r Galahad entered into the ship, of a fair bed therein, with other allus things, and of a sword.

e mean while Galahad blessed entered therein, and then next tlewman, and then Sir Bors and civale. And when they were it was so marvellous fair and at they marvelled. And in the f the ship was a fair bed, and lahad went thereto, and found crown of silk. And at the feet sword rich and fair, and it was out of the sheath half a foot and nd the sword was of divers fand the pommel was of stone, and as in him all manner of colours man might find, and every each colours had divers virtues, and es of the haft were of two ribs of beasts. The one beast was a which was conversant in Cali- nad is called the serpent of the And the bone of him is of such; that there is no hand that in him shall never be weary nor nd the other beast is a fish, which right great, and haunteth the Euprates; and that fish is called, and his bones be of such a manner of kind, that who that handleth them shall have so much will that he shall never be weary, and he shall not think on joy nor sorrow that he hath had, but only that thing that he beholdeth before him. And as for this sword there shall never man begripe it at the handle but one, but he shall pass all other. In the name of God, said Percivale, I shall essay to handle it. So he set his hand to the sword, but he might not begripe it. By my faith, said he, now have I failed. Bors set his hand thereto and failed. Then Galahad beheld the sword, and saw the letters like blood, that said, Let see who shall assay to draw me out of my sheath, but if he be more hardier than other, and who that draweth me, wit ye well that he shall never fail of shame of his body, or to be wounded to the death. By my faith, said Galahad, I would draw this sword out of the sheath, but the offending is so great, that I shall not set my hand thereto. Now sir, said the gentlewoman, wit ye well that the drawing of this sword is forbidden to all men, save all only unto you. Also this ship arrived in the realm of Logris, and that time was deadly war between king Labor, which was father unto the maimed king, and king Hurlame, which was a Saracen. But then was he newly christened, so that men held him afterwards one of the Wittiest men of the world. And so upon a day it befell that king Labor and king Hurlame had assembled their folk upon the sea, where this ship was arrived, and there king Hurlame was discomfit, and his men slain, and he was afeard to be dead, and fled to his ship, and there found this sword, and drew it, and came out and found king Labor, the man in the world of all Christendom in whom was then the greatest faith. And when king Hurlame saw king Labor, he dressed this sword, and smote him upon the helm so hard, that he clave him and his horse to the earth with the first stroke of his sword. And it was in the realm of Logris; and so befell great pestilence and great harm to both realms. For
sithen increased neither corn nor grass, nor well nigh no fruit, nor in the water was no fish, wherefore men call it the lands of the two marches, the waste land, for that dolorous stroke. And when king Hurlame saw this sword so carving, he turned again to fetch the scabbard: and so came into this ship, and entered, and put up the sword in the sheath. And as soon as he had done it, he fell down dead afore the bed. Thus was the sword proved, that none drew it but he were dead or maimed. So lay he there till a maiden came into the ship, and cast him out, for there was no man so hardy of the world to enter into that ship for the defence.

CHAP. IV.
Of the marvels of the sword and of the scabbard.

And then beheld they the scabbard; it seemed to be of a serpent's skin. And thereon were letters of gold and silver. And the girdle was but poorly to come to, and not able to sustain such a rich sword, and the letters said: He which shall wield me, ought to be more harder than any other, if he bear me as truly as I ought to be borne. For the body of him which I ought to hang by, he shall not be shamed in no place while he is gird with this girdle, nor never none so hardy to do away this girdle for it ought not to be done away, but by the hands of a maid, and that she be a king's daughter, and queen's, and she must be a maid all the days of her life, both in will and in deed; and if she break her virginity, she shall die the most villainous death that ever did any woman. Sir, said Percivale, turn this sword, that we may see what is on the other side. And it was red as blood, with black letters as any coal, which said, He that shall praise me most, most shall he find me to blame at a great need, and to whom I should be most debonair shall I be most felon, and that shall be at one time. Fair brother, said she to Percivale, it befell about a forty year after the passion of Jesu Christ,
OF THE MARVELS OF THE SHIP.

Chap. V.

Pelles was smitten through both because he drew the sword, and marvellous histories.

id she, there was a king that Pelles the maimed king. And might ride, he supported much omm, and holy Church. So upon hunted in a wood of his which to the sea, and at the last he hounds and his knights, save and there he and his knight that they came toward Ireland, he found the ship. And when he letters and understood them, tered, for he was right perfect, but his knight had none harren, and there found he this and drew it out as much as ye.

So therewith entered a spear, which he was smitten him through thighs, and never sith might saled, nor nought shall tofore to him. Thus, said she, was Pelles, your grandsire, maimed for nness. In the name of God, said Galahad. So they went he bed to behold all about it, the head there hung two

Also there were two spindles are as white as any snow, and at ware as red as blood, and ever green as any emerald: of ve colours were the spindles, natural colour within, and withouting. These spindles, said el, were when sinful Eve came r fruit, for which Adam and she were put out of paradise, she took with her the bough on which the apple hung on. Then perceived she that the branch was fair and green, and she remembered her the loss which came from the tree. Then she thought to keep the branch as long as she might. And for she had no cofer to keep it in, she put it in the earth. So by the will of our Lord the branch grew to a great tree within a little while, and was as white as any snow, branches, boughs, and leaves, that was a token a maiden planted it. But after the tree which was white became green as any grass, and all that came out of it. And in the same time there was Abel begotten; thus was the tree long of green colour. And so it befell many days after, under the same tree Cain slew Abel, whereof befell great marvel. For anon as Abel had received the death under the green tree, it lost the green colour and became red, and that was in tokening of the blood. And anon all the plants died thereof, but the tree grew and waxed marvellously fair, and it was the fairest tree and the most delectable that any man might behold and see, and so died the plants that grew out of it tofore the time that Abel was slain under it. So long endured the tree till that Solomon king David's son reigned, and held the land after his father. This Solomon was wise, and knew all the virtues of stones and trees, and so he knew the course of the stars, and many other diverse things.

This Solomon had an evil wife, where through he wend that there had never been no good woman, and so he despaired them in his books. So answered a voice him once, Solomon, if heaviness come to a man by a woman, ne reck thou never. For yet shall there come a woman whereof there shall come greater joy unto man an hundred times more than this heaviness giveth sorrow, and that woman shall be born of thy lineage. Then when Solomon heard these words, he held himself but a fool, and the truth he perceived by old books. Also the Holy Ghost shewed him the
coming of the glorious Virgin Mary. Then asked he of the voice if it should be in the end of his lineage. Nay, said the voice, but there shall come a man which shall be a maid, and the last of your blood, and he shall be as good a knight as duke Josua thy brother-in-law.

CHAP. VI.
How Solomon took David's sword by the counsel of his wife, and of other matters marvellous.

Now have I certified thee of that thou stoodst in doubt. Then was Solomon glad that there should come any such of his lineage, but ever he marvelled and studied who that should be, and what his name might be. His wife perceived that he studied, and thought that she would know it at some season, and so she waited her time, and asked of him the cause of his studying, and there he told her altogether how the voice told him. Well, said she, I shall let make a ship of the best wood and most durable that men may find. So Solomon sent for all the carpenters of the land and the best. And when they had made the ship, the lady said to Solomon, Sir, said she, since it is so that this knight ought to pass all other knights of chivalry which have been tofore him, and shall come after him, moreover I shall tell you, said she, ye shall go into our Lord's temple, whereas is king David's sword, your father, the which is the marvellousetest and sharpest that ever was taken in any knight's hand. Therefore take that, and take off the pommel, and thereto make ye a pommel of precious stones, that it be so subtilly made that no man perceive it but that they be all one. And after make there an hilt so marvellously and wonderly that no man may know it. And after make a marvellous sheath. And when ye have made all this, I shall let make a girdle thereto, such as shall please me. All this king Solomon did let make as she devised, both the ship and all the remnant. And when the ship was ready in the sea to sail, the lady let make a great bed, and marvellous rich, and set her up bed's head covered with silk, at the sword at the feet, and the were of hemp, and therewith th was angry. Sir, wit ye well, sa that I have none so high a thing were worthy to sustain so high a and a maid shall bring other thereto, but I wot not when it shall nor what time. And there's make a covering to the ship, of silk that should never rot manner of weather. Yet went th and made a carpenter to come tree which Abel was slain under. said she, carve me out of this much wood as will make me a: Ah, madam, said he, this is the which our first mother planted. said she, or else I shall destro Anon as he began to work then out drops of blood, and then we have left, but she would not suff and so he took away as much w might make a spindle, and so sh him to take as much of the gre and of the white tree. And when three spindles were shapen, sht them to be fastened upon the ce the bed. When Solomon saw t said to his wife, Ye have done lously, for though all the work here right now, they could not wherefore all this was made, b Lord himself, and thou that has it wotest not what it shall be. Now let it be, said she, for y hear tidings sooner than ye wene Now shall ye hear a wonder of king Solomon and his wife.

CHAP. VII.
A wonderful tale of king Solomon's wife.

That night lay Solomon be ship with little fellowship. And he was on sleep, him though came from heaven a great com angels, and alight into the sh took water which was brought angel in a vessel of silver, and sp all the ship. And after he cam
nd drew letters on the hilt. I went to the ship's board, and there other letters, which said: 

'an that wilt enter within me, that thou be full within the 

I ne am but faith and belief. 

Solomon espied these letters he 

shed, so that he durst not enter, 

drew him back, and the ship 

was shoven in the sea, and he went 

that he lost sight of him within 

while. And then a little voice 

Solomon, the last knight of thy 

shall rest in this bed. Then 

Solomon and awaked his wife, 

her of the adventures of the 

saith the history, that a great 

e three fellows beheld the bed 

three spindles. Then they 

certain that they were of 

colours, without painting. Then 

up a cloth which was above 

and, and there they found a 

se by seeming. And Percivale 

and found therein a writ, 

he read it, and devised the 

of the spindles, and of the 

ence it came, and by whom it 

de. Now, said Galahad, where 

find the gentlewoman that 

ake new girdles to the sword. 

said Percivale's sister, dismay 

, for by the leave of God I 

ake a girdle to the sword, 

shall belong thereto. And 

opened a box, and took out 

which were seemly wrought 

ilden threads, and upon that 

ull precious stones, and a rich 

of gold. Lo lords, said she, 

a girdle that ought to be set 

sword. And wit ye well the 

part of this girdle was made 

air, which I loved well while 

as a woman of the world. But 

as I wist that this adventure 

ined me, I clipped off my hair 

le this girdle in the name of 

be well found, said Sir Bors, 

you have put us out of great 

erein we should have entered 

our tidinges been. Then went 

the gentlewoman and set it on the girdle 

of the sword. Now, said the fellow-

ship, what is the name of the sword, 

and what shall we call it? Truly, said 

she, the name of the sword is, the sword 

with the strange girdles, and the sheath, 

mover of blood; for no man that hath 

blood in him shall never see the one 

part of the sheath which was made of 

the tree of life. Then they said to 

Galahad, In the name of Jesu Christ, 

and pray you that ye gird you with 

this sword, which hath been desired 

so much in the realm of Logris. Now 

let me begin, said Galahad, to gripe 

this sword for to give you courage: 

but wit ye well it belongeth no more 

to me then it doth to you. And then 

he gripped about it with his fingers 
a great deal. And then she girt him 

about the middle with the sword:—Now 

reck I not though I die, for now I hold 

me one of the blessed maidens of the 

world, which hath made the worthiest 

knight of the world. Damsel, said 

Galahad, ye have done so much that 

shall be your knight all the days of 

my life. Then they went from that 

ship, and went to the other. And anon 

the wind drove them into the sea a 
great pace, but they had no victual: 

but it befell that they came on the morn 
to a castle that men call Carteloise, 

that was in the marches of Scotland. 

And when they had passed the port, the 
gentlewoman said, Lords, here be men 
arriven that, and they wist that ye were 
of king Arthur's court, ye should be 
assailed anon. Damsel, said Galahad, 
he that cast us out of the rock shall 

deliver us from them.

CHAP. VIII.

How Galahad and his fellows came to a 
castle, and how they were fought withal, 
and how they slew their adversaries, 
and other matters.

So it befell, as they spake thus there 
came a squire by them, and asked what 
they were. And they said they were 
of king Arthur's house. Is that sooth? 
said he. Now by my head, said he, ye
be ill arrayed; and then turned he again unto the cliff fortress. And within a while they heard a horn blow. Then a gentlewoman came to them, and asked them of whence they were, and they told her. Fair lords, said she, for God's love turn again if ye may, for ye be come unto your death. Nay, they said, we will not turn again, for He shall help us in whose service we be entered in. Then as they stood talking, there came knights well armed, and bad them yield them, or else to die. That yielding, said they, shall be noyous to you; and therewith they let their horses run, and Sir Percivale smote the foremost to the earth, and took his horse and mounted thereupon, and the same did Galahad. Also Sir Bors served another so. For they had no horses in that country, for they left their horses when they took their ship in other countries. And so when they were horsed then began they to set upon them. And they of the castle fled into the strong fortress, and the three knights after them, into the castle, and so alight on foot, and with their swords slew them down, and got into the hall. Then when they beheld the great multitude of people they had slain, they held themselves great sinners. Certes, said Bors, I ween and God had loved them that we should not have had power to have slain them thus, but they have done so much against our Lord that he will not suffer them to reign no longer. Say ye not so, said Galahad, for if they misdid against God the vengeance is not ours, but to Him which hath power thereof. So came there out of a chamber a good man which was a priest, and bear God's body in a cup. And when he saw them which lay dead in the hall, he was all abashed. And Galahad did off his helm and kneeled down, and so did his two fellows. Sir, said they, have ye no dread of us, for we be of king Arthur's court. Then asked the good man how they were slain so suddenly; and they told it him. Truly, said the good man, and ye might live as long as the world might endure, never might ye have done so galmes-deed as this. Sir, said God I repent me much, inasmuch as ye were christened. Nay, repent ye said he, for they were not christened and I shall tell you how that I be this castle. Here was lord earl not but one year, and he had the good knights of arms, and a daugher the fairest gentlewoman that men were. So those three knights loved her so sore that they burnt in love, they dishonoured her, maugre her will. And for she cried to her father, they took her, and took their father and put him in prison, and wounded him night and day, and his death, but a cousin of hers rescued. And then did they great untruly slew clerks and priests, and went down chapels, that our Lord's might not be served nor said; a same day their father sent to me be confessed and houseled, but shame had never man as I have had to day with the three brethren: earl bad me suffer, for he should not long endure, for the want of our Lord should destroy and now it is brought to an end by this ye may wit that our Lord displeased with your deeds. said Galahad, and it had not our Lord, never should we have so many men in so little a while; then they brought the earl Hen of prison into the midst of the hall, and knew Galahad anon, and yet him never afore but by revela our Lord.

CHAP. IX.

How the three knights, with Pe sister, came into the waste forest an bart and four lions and other

Then began he to weep right true and said, Long have I abiden young, but for God's love hold me arms, that my soul may depart my body in so good a man's arms be. Gladly, said Galahad. And one said on high that all heart had, well hast thou avenged
THE STRANGE CUSTOM OF A CASTLE.

He is old he waxeth young again in his white skin: right so cometh again our Lord from death to life, for he lost earthly flesh, that was the deadly flesh which he had taken in the womb of the blessed virgin Mary; and for that cause appeared our Lord as a white hart without spot. And the four that were with him is to understand the four evangelists, which set in writing a part of Jesu Christ's deeds that he did some time when he was among you earthly man. For wit ye well erst might no knight know the truth, for, oftimes or this, our Lord shewed him unto good men and unto good knights in likeness of an hart. But I suppose from henceforth ye shall see no more. And then they joyed much, and dwelled there all that day. And upon the morrow, when they had heard mass they departed, and commended the good man to God. And so they came to a castle, and passed by. So there came a knight armed after them, and said, Lords, hark what I shall say to you.

CHAP. X.

How they were desired of a strange custom, the which they would not obey; and how they fought and slew many knights.

This gentlewoman that ye lead with you is a maid? Sir, said she, a maid I am. Then he took her by the bridle and said, By the holy cross ye shall not escape me tofore ye have yeldien the custom of this castle. Let her go, said Percivale; ye be not wise, for a maid in what place she cometh is free. So in the meanwhile there came out a ten or twelve knights armed, out of the castle, and with them came gentlewomen which held a dish of silver, and then they said, This gentlewoman must yield us the custom of this castle. Sir, said a knight, what maid passeth hereby shall give this dish full of blood of her right arm. Blame have ye, said Galahad, that brought up such customs, and I ensure you of this gentlewoman ye shall fail while that I live. Truly, said Sir Percivale, I had lever be slain. And
I also, said Sir Bors. By my truth, said the knight, then shall ye die, for ye may not endure against us, though ye were the best knights of the world. Then let them run each to other, and the three fellows beat the ten knights, and then set their hands to their swords, and beat them down and slew them. Then there came out of the castle well a threescore knights armed. Fair lords, said the three fellows, have mercy upon yourselves, and have not ado with us. Nay, fair lords, said the knights of the castle, we counsel you to withdraw you, for ye are the best knights of the world, and therefore do no more, for ye have done enough. We will let you go with this harm, but we must needs have the custom. Certes, said Galahad, for nought speak ye. Well, said they, will ye die? We be not yet come thereto, said Galahad. Then began they to meddle together, and Galahad drew his sword with the strange girdles, and smote on the right hand and on the left hand, and slew what that ever abode him, and did such marvels that there was none that saw him but they wend he had been none earthly man but a monster. And his two fellows halp him passing well, and so they held the journey every each in like hard, till it was night. Then must they needs part. So came a good knight and said to the three fellows, If ye will come in to night, and take such harbour as here is, ye shall be right welcome, and we shall ensure you by the faith of our bodies, as we are true knights, to leave you in such estate to-morrow as we find you, without any falsehood. And as soon as ye know of the custom we dare say ye will accord. Therefore, for God’s love, said the gentlewoman, go thither, and spare not for me. Go we, said Galahad, and so they entered into the castle. And when they were alight, they made great joy of them. So within a while the three knights asked the custom of the castle, and wherefore it was. What it is, said they, we will say you sooth.

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Percivale’s sister bled a dish full of blood for to heal a lady; wherefore she died; and how that the body was put in a ship.

There is in this castle a gentlewoman which we and this castle is hers, and many other. So it befell many years agone there fell upon her a malady. And when she had lain a great while, she fell into a measle, and of no leech she could have no remedy. But at the last an old man said, and she might have a dish full of blood of a maid and a clean virgin in will and in work, and a king’s daughter, that blood should be her health, and for to anoint her withal: and for this thing was this custom made. Now, said Percivale’s sister, Fair knights, I see well that this gentlewoman is but dead Certes, said Galahad, and if ye bleed so much, ye may die. Truly, said she, and I die for to heal her, I shall get me great worship and soul’s health, and worship to my lineage, and better is one harm than twain. And therefore there shall be no more battle, but to-morn I shall yield you your custom of this castle. And then there was great joy, more than there was tofore. For else had there been mortal war upon the morn; notwithstanding she would none other, whether they would or nold. That night were the three fellows eased with the best, and on the morn they heard mass, and Sir Percivale’s sister bad bring forth the sick lady. So she was, the which was evil at ease. Then said she, Who shall let me blood? So one came forth and let her blood, and she bled so much that the dish was full. Then she lift up her hand and blessed her. And then she said to the lady, Madam, I am come to the death, for to make you whole; for God’s love pray for me. With that she fell in a swoon. Then Galahad and his two fellows start up to her, and lift her up, and stanch her, but she had bled so much that she might not live. Then she said, when she was awakened, Fair brother


CHAP. XII.

How Galahad and Percivale found in a castle many tombs of maidens that had bled to death.

Now saith the story that all night Galahad and Percivale were in a chapel in their prayers, for to save Sir Bors. So on the morrow they dressed them in their harness toward the castle, to wit what was fallen of them therein. And when they came there, they found neither man nor woman that he ne was dead by the vengeance of our Lord. With that they heard a voice that said, This vengeance is for blood shedding of maidens. Also they found at the end of the chapel a churchyard, and therein might they see a threescore fair tombs, and that place was so fair and so delectable that it seemed them there had been none tempest. For there lay the bodies of all the good maidens which were martyred for the sick lady's sake. Also they found the names of every each, and of what blood they were come, and all were of kings’ blood, and twelve of them were kings’ daughters. Then they departed, and went into a forest. Now, said Percivale unto Galahad, we must depart; so pray we our Lord that we may meet together in short time. Then they did off their helms, and kissed together, and wept at their departing.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Launcelot entered into the ship where Sir Percivale’s sister lay dead; and how he met with Sir Galahad his son.

Now saith the history, that when Launcelot was come to the water of Mortoise, as it is rehearsed before, he was in great peril, and so he laid him down and slept, and took the adventure that God would send him.

So when he was asleep, there came a vision unto him and said, Launcelot, arise up, and take thine armour, and enter into the first ship that thou shalt find. And when he had heard these words, he start up and saw great clear-
ness about him. And then he lift up his hand and blessed him, and so took his arms, and made him ready; and so by adventure he came by a strand, and found a ship, the which was without sail or oar. And as soon as he was within the ship, there he felt the most sweetness that ever he felt; and he was fulfilled with all thing that he thought on or desired. Then said he, Fair sweet Father Jesu Christ, I wot not in what joy I am, for this joy passeth all earthly joys that ever I was in. And so in this joy he laid him down to the ship’s board, and slept till day. And when he awoke, he found there a fair bed, and therein lying a gentlewoman dead, the which was Sir Percivale’s sister. And as Launcelot devised her, he espied in her right hand a writ, the which he read, the which told him all the adventures that ye have heard to fore, and of what lineage she was come. So with this gentlewoman Sir Launcelot was a month and more. If ye would ask how he lived, He that fed the people of Israel with manna in the desert, so was he fed. For every day, when he had said his prayers, he was sustained with the grace of the Holy Ghost. So on a night he went to play him by the water side, for he was somewhat weary of the ship. And then he listened, and heard an horse come, and one riding upon him. And when he came nigh he seemed a knight. And so he let him pass, and went there as the ship was, and there he alighted, and took the saddle and the bridle and put the horse from him, and went into the ship. And then Launcelot dressed unto him and said, Ye be welcome. And he answered and saluted him again, and asked him, What is your name? for much my heart giveth unto you. Truly, said he, my name is Launcelot du Lake. Sir, said he, then be ye welcome, for ye were the beginner of me in this world. Ah, said he, are ye Galahad? Yea forsooth, said he. And so he kneeled down and asked him his blessing, and after took off his helm and kissed him. And there was great joy between them, for there is no tongue can tell the joy that they made either of other, and many a friendly word spoken between, as kind would, the which is no need here to be rehearsed. And there every one told other of their adventures and marvels that were befallen to them in many journeys, sith that they departed from the court. Anon as Galahad saw the gentlewoman dead in the bed, he knew her well enough, and told great worship of her, and that she was the best man living, and it was great pity of her death. But when Launcelot heard how the marvellous sword was gotten, and who made it, and all the marvels rehearsed afore, then he prayed Galahad his son that he would shew him the sword, and so he did. And anon he kissed the pomell, and the hilts, and the scabbard. Truly, said Launcelot, never erst knew I of so high adventures done, and so marvellous and strange. So dwelled Launcelot and Galahad within that ship half a year, and served God daily and nightly with all their power. And often they arrived in isles far from folk, where there repaired none but wild beasts; and there they found many strange adventures and perilous, which they brought to an end. But because the adventures were with wild beasts, and not in the quest of the Sangreall, therefore the tale maketh here no mention thereof, for it would be too long to tell of all those adventures that befell them.

CHAP. XIV.

How a knight brought unto Sir Galahad an horse, and bad him come from his father Sir Launcelot.

So after, on a Monday, it befell that they arrived in the edge of a forest, tofore a cross, and then saw they a knight, armed all in white, and was richly hossed, and led in his right hand a white horse. And so he came to the ship, and saluted the two knights on the high Lord’s behalf, and said, Galahad, sir, ye have been long enough with your father, come out of the ship, and start upon this horse, and go where the adventures shall lead thee in the quest of the Sangreall. Then he went to his
I kissed him sweetly, and said, 
father, I wot not when I 
you more, till I see the body 
hrist. I pray you, said Laun-
cy to the high Father that He 
in his service. And so he took 
and there they heard a voice, 
Think for to do well, for the 
ever see the other before the 
ay of doom. Now, son Galad- 
Launcelot, since we shall de- 
ever see other, I pray to the 
er to preserve both me and 
Sir, said Galahad, no prayer 
o much as yours. And there- 
that entered into the forest. 
rind arose, and drove Laun- 
han a month throughout the 
he slept but little, but prayed 
at he might see some tidings of 
real. So it befell on a night, 
at he arrived afore a castle, on 
side, which was rich and fair. 
was a postern opened towards 
was open without any keep- 
two lions kept the entry; and 
shone clear. Anon Sir Laun- 
d a voice that said, Launcelot, 
ship, and enter into the 
ere thou shalt see a great part 
here. Then he ran to his arms, 
ed him, and so he went to 
and saw the lions. Then set 
to his sword, and drew it. 
came a dwarf suddenly, and 
 on the arm so sore that the 
out of his hand. Then heard 
say, Oh man of evil faith and 
, wherefore tr Hewou more 
ness than in thy Maker? for 
t more avail thee than thine 
 whose service thou art set. 
Launcelot, fair Father Jesu, 
 hank thee of thy great mercy, 
 repeal me of my misdeed. 
 that ye hold me for your 
 Then took he again his sword, 
 up in his sheath, and made a 
is forehead, and came to the 
 they made semblant to do. 
Notwithstanding he passed 
without hurt, and entered into 
to the chief fortress, and there 
were they all at rest. Then Launcelot 
entered in so armed, for he found no 
gate nor door but it was open. And at 
the last he found a chamber whereof 
the door was shut, and he set his hand 
there to have opened it, but he might 

CHAP. XV.

How Sir Launcelot was tofore the door of 
the chamber wherein the holy Sangreal 
was.

Then he enforced him mickle to undo 
the door. Then he listened, and heard 
a voice which sang so sweetly that it 
seemed none earthly thing; and him 
thought the voice said, Joy and honour 
be to the Father of Heaven! Then 
Launcelot kneeled down tofore the 
chamber, for well wist he that there 
was the Sangreal within that chamber. 
Then said he, Fair sweet Father Jesu 
Christ, if ever I did thing that pleased 
the Lord, for thy pity have me not in 
despite for my sins done aforetime, and 
that thou shew me something of that I 
seek! And with that he saw the cham- 
ber door open, and there came out a 
great clearness, that the house was as 
bright as all the torches of the world 
had been there. So came he to the 
chamber door, and would have entered. 
And anon a voice said to him, Flee 
Launcelot, and enter not, for thou 
oughtest not to do it: and if thou enter 
 thou shalt forthink it. Then he with- 
drew him aback right heavy. Then 
looked he up in the midst of the cham-
ber, and saw a table of silver, and the 
holy vessel covered with red samite, and 
many angels about it, whereof one held 
a candle of wax burning, and the other 
held a cross, and the ornaments of an 
altar. And before the holy vessel he 
saw a good man clothed as a priest, 
and it seemed that he was at the sacri- 
fing of the mass. And it seemed to Laun-
celot that above the priest's hands there 
were three men, whereof the two put the 
youngest by likeness between the priest's 
hands, and so he lift it up right high, 
and it seemed to shew so to the people. 
And then Launcelot marvelled not a
littie, for him thought that the priest was so greatly charged of the figure, that him seemed that he should fell to the earth. And when he saw none about him that would help him, then came he to the door a great pace, and said, Fair Father Jesu Christ, ne take it for no sin though I help the good man, which hath great need of help. Right so entered he into the chamber, and came toward the table of silver; and when he came nigh he felt a breath that him thought it was intermeddled with fire, which smote him so sore in the visage that him thought it burnt his visage; and therewth he fell to the earth, and had no power to arise, as he that was so araged that had lost the power of his body, and his hearing, and his saying. Then felt he many hands about him, which took him up and bare him out of the chamber door, without any amending of his swoon, and left him there seeming dead to all people. So upon the morrow, when it was fair day, they within were arisen, and found Launcelot lying afore the chamber door. All they marvelled how that he came in. And so they looked upon him, and felt his pulse, to wit whether there were any life in him; and so they found life in him, but he might neither stand, nor stir no member that he had; and so they took him by every part of the body, and bare him into a chamber, and laid him in a rich bed, far from all folk, and so he lay four days. Then the one said he was on live, and the other said nay. In the name of God, said an old man, for I do you verily to wit he is not dead, but he is so full of life as the mightiest of you all, and therefore I counsel you that he be well kept till God send him life again.

CHAP. XVI.
How Sir Launcelot had lain fourteen days and as many nights as a dead man, and other divers matters.

In such manner they kept Launcelot four and twenty days, and also many nights, that ever he lay still as a dead man; and at the twenty-fifth day before him after midday that he opened his eyes. And when he saw folk he made great sorrow and said, Why have ye awaked me? for I was more at ease than I am now. Oh Jesu Christ, who might be so blessed that might see openly thy great marvels of secretness there where no sinner may be. What have ye seen? said they about him. I have seen, said he, so great marvels that no tongue may tell, and more than any heart can think, and had not my son been here afore me I had seen much more. Then they told him how he had lain there four and twenty days and nights. Then him thought it was punishment for the twenty-four years that he had been a sinner, wherefore our Lord put him in penance four and twenty days and nights. Then looked Sir Launcelot before him, and saw the hair which he had borne nigh a year, for that he forethought him right much that he had broken his promise unto the hermit, which he had avowed to do. Then they asked him how he stood with him. Forsooth, said he, I am whole of body, thanked be our Lord; therefore, sirs, for God’s love tell me where that I am? Then said they all that he was in the castle of Carboked. Therewith came a gentlewoman, and brought him a shirt of small linen cloth, but he changed not there, but took the hair to him again. Sir, said they, the quest of the Sangreal is achieved right now in you, that never shall ye see of the Sangreal no more than ye have seen. Now I thank God, said Launcelot, of His great mercy, of that I have seen, for it sufficeth me, for, as I suppose, no man in this world hath lived better than I have done to achieve that I have done. And therewith he took the hair, and clothed him in it, and above that he put a linen shirt, and after a robe of scarlet, fresh and new. And when he was so arrayed, they marvelled all, for they knew him that he was Launcelot, the good knight. And then they said all, O my lord Sir Launcelot, be that ye? And he said, Truly...
HOW LAUNCELOT RETURNED TO CAMELOT. 405

Then came word to king the knight that had lain so was Sir Launcelot; then was knight glad, and went to see when Launcelot saw him essed him against him, and the king great joy of him. the king told him tidings, daughter was dead. Then was right heavy of it, and the forthketh the death of her, for she was a full fair and young. And well I wit the best knight that is now or that ever was since God. So the king held him there And on the morrow he took king Pelles, and at all the that were there, and thanked great labour. Right so as dinner in the chief hall, then refallen that the Sangreal was the tables with all manner that any heart might think. sat, they saw all the doors of the place were shut man’s hand, whereof they were none wist what to do. happed suddenly a knight chief door, and knocked, Undo the door; but they. And ever he cried, Undo, could not. And at the last hem so much, that the king se, and came to a window night called. Then he said, ye shall not enter at this the Sangreal is here, and into another. For certes of the knights of the quest, hem which hath served the last left the service of our he was passing wroth at words. Sir knight, said the would so fain enter, say me ntry ye be? Sir, said he, I of Logris, and my name Maris, and brother unto my ncelot. Truly, said the king, e’th of that I have said, for is here within. And when Maris understood that his there, for he was the man in the world that he most dread and loved, and then he said, Alas, now doubleth my sorrow and shame, full truly said the good man of the hill unto Gawaine and to me of our dreams. Then went he out of the court as fast as his courser might run, and so through out the castle.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Launcelot returned towards Logris, and of other adventures which be saw in the way.

Then king Pelles came to Sir Launcelot, and told him tidings of his brother, whereof he was sorry that he wist not what to do. So Sir Launcelot departed, and took his armour, and said that he would go see the realm of Logris—which I have not seen in a twelvemonth. And therewith commended the king to God, and so rode through many realms. And at the last he came to a white abbey, and there they made him that night great cheer. And on the morn he arose and heard mass, and afore an altar he found a rich tomb which was newly made, and then he took heed, and saw the sides written with letters of gold, which said, Here lieth king Bagdemagus of Gore, the which king Arthur’s nephew slew—and named him Sir Gawaine. Then was not he a little sorry, for Launcelot loved him much more than any other, and had it been any other than Gawaine he should not have escaped from death to life—said to himself, Alas, this is a great hurt to king Arthur’s court, the loss of such a man. And then he departed, and came to the abbey where Galahad did the adventure of the tombs, and wan the white shield with the red cross, and there had he great cheer all that night. And on the morn he turned unto Camelot, where he found king Arthur and the queen. But many of the knights of the Round Table were slain and destroyed, more than half. And so three were come home, Ector, Gawaine, and Lionel, and many other that need not to be rehearsed.
And all the court was passing glad of Sir Launcelot; and the king asked him many tidings of his son Galahad. And there Launcelot told the king of his adventures that had befallen him since he departed. And also he told him of the adventures of Galahad, Percivale, and Bors, which that he knew by the letter of the dead damsel, and as Galahad had told him. Now, God would, said the king, that they were all three there. That shall never be, said Launcelot, for two of them shall ye never see, but one of them shall come again.

Now leave we this story, and speak we of Galahad.

CHAP. XVIII.
How Galahad came to king Mordraines, and of other matters and adventures.

Now saith the story that Galahad rode many journeys in vain. And at the last he came to the abbey where king Mordraines was, and when he heard that, he thought he would abide to see him. And upon the morn, when he had heard mass, Galahad came unto king Mordraines, and anon the king saw him, the which had lain blind of long time. And then he dressed him against him, and said, Galahad, the servant of Jesu Christ, whose coming I have abiden so long, now embrace me, and let me rest on thy breast, so that I may rest between thine arms, for thou art a clean virgin above all knights, as the flower of the lily, in whom virginity is signified, and thou art the rose, which is the flower of all good virtue, and in colour of fire. For the fire of the Holy Ghost is taken so in thee, that my flesh, which was all dead of oldness, is become young again. When Galahad heard his words, then he embraced him and all his body. Then said he, Fair Lord Jesu Christ, now I have my will, now I require thee in this point that I am in, thou come and visit me. And anon our Lord heard his prayer. Therewith the soul departed from the body. And then Galahad put him in the earth as a king ought to be: and so departed, and came into a perilous forest, where he found the well the which boiled with great waves, as the tale telleth tofore. And as soon as Galahad set his hand thereto, it ceased, so that it burnt no more, and the heat departed: for that it burnt was a sign of lust; but that heat might not abide his pure virginity. And that was taken in the country for a miracle, and so ever after was it called Galahad's well. Then by adventure he came into the country of Gore, and into the abbey where Sir Launcelot had been toforehand, and found the tomb of king Bagdemagus (but was founder thereof Joseph of Armathie's son) and the tomb of Simeon where Launcelot had failed. Then he looked into a crypt under the minster, and there he saw a tomb which burnt full marvely. Then asked he the brethren what it was Sir, said they, a marvellous adventure that may not be brought unto none else, but by him that passeth of bounty of knighthood all them of the Rose Table. I would, said Galahad, that ye would lead me thereto. Gladly, said they: and so led him till a cave; and he went down upon steps and came nigh the tomb, and then the flame failed and the fire staunched, the which many a day had been great. Then came there a voice that said, Much ye beholden to thank our Lord, the which hath given you a good hour, that ye may draw out the souls of earthly pain, and to put them into the joys of paradise. I am of your kindred, the which have dwelt in this heat this three hundred winter and four and fifty, to be purged of the sin that I did against Joseph of Armathie. Then Galahad took the body in his arms, and bear it into the minster. And that night lay Galahad in the abbey: and on the morn he gave him service, and put him in the earth, afore the high altar.

CHAP. XIX.
How Sir Percivale and Sir Bors met with Sir Galahad, and how they came to the castle of Carbonek, and other matters.

So departed he from thence, and commended the brethren to God. And so
OF GALAHAD AND HIS FELLOWS.

He days till that he came to the king, and ever followed five days, asking where he and so one told him how the of Logris were achieved. So t'fell that they came out forest, and there they met with Sir Bors, the which rode is no need to tell if they and him saluted, and d' him honour and good adder every each other. Then it is more than a year and a ne lay ten times where men ut in wild forests and in but God was ever my com-de they a great while till me to the castle of Carbonek. they were entered within the Pelles knew them. Then great joy, for they wist well coming that they had fulfilled the Sangreel. Then Eliazar, son, brought afore them the ord wherewith Joseph was through the thigh. Then Bors thereto, if he might have again, but it would not be. ook it to Percivale, but he ore power thereto than he, ye it again, said Percivale to or and it be ever achieved by man, ye must do it. And he the pieces and set them und they seemed that they been broken, and as well as in first forged. And when espied that the adventure of was achieved, then they gave to Bors, fur it might not be or he was a good knight, and man. And a little afore even arose great and marvellous, ill of great heat, that many dread. And anon alight a among them, and said, They that to sit at the table of Jesu for now shall very knights they went thence all save and Eliazar his son, the holy men, and a maid which piece. And so these three fellows and they three were there; no more. Anon they saw knights all armed come in at the hall door, and did off their helms and their arms, and said unto Galahad, Sir, we have hied right much for to be with you at this table, where the holy meet shall be parted. Then said he, Ye be welcome: but of whence be ye? So three of them said they were of Gaul, and other three said they were of Ireland, and the other three said they were of Denmark. So as they sat thus, there came out a bed of tree of a chamber, the which four gentlewomen brought, and in the bed lay a good man sick, and a crown of gold upon his head; and there in the midst of the place they set him down, and went again their way. Then he lift up his head and said, Galahad, knight, ye be welcome, for much have I desired your coming, for in such pain and in such anguish I have been long. But now I trust to God the term is come that my pain shall be allayed, that I shall pass out of this world, so as it was promised me long ago. Therewith a voice said, There be two among you that be not in the quest of the Sangreel, and therefore depart ye.

CHAP. XX.

How Galahad and his fellows were fed of the holy Sangreel, and how our Lord appeared to them, and other things.

Then king Pelles and his son departed. And therewithal beseeemed them that there came a man and four angels from heaven, clothed in likeness of a bishop, and had a cross in his hand, and these four angels bare him up in a chair, and set him down before the table of silver whereupon the Sangreel was, and it seemed that he had in midst of his forehead letters that said, See ye here Joseph the first bishop of Christendom, the same which our Lord succoured in the city of Sarras, in the spiritual place. Then the knights marvelled, for that bishop was dead more than three hundred year tofore. Oh knights, said he, marvel not, for I was sometime an earthly man. With that they heard the
chamber door open, and there they saw angels, and two large candles of wax, and the third a towel, and the fourth a spear which bled marvellously, that three drops fell within a box which he held with his other hand. And they set the candles upon the table, and the third the towel upon the vessel, and the fourth the holy spear even upright upon the vessel. And then the bishop made semblant as though he would have gone to the sacring of the mass. And then he took an ubbl, which was made in likeness of bread; and at the lifting up there came a figure in likeness of a child, and the visage was as red and as bright as any fire, and smote himself into the bread, so that they all saw it, that the bread was formed of a fleshy man, and then he put it into the holy vessel again. And then he bid that longed to a priest to do to a mass. And then he went to Galahad and kissed him, and bid him go and kiss his fellows, and so he did anon. Now, said he, servants of Jesu Christ, ye shall be fed afore this table with sweet meats, that never knights tasted. And when he had said, he vanished away; and they set them at the table in great dread, and made their prayers. Then looked they, and saw a man come out of the holy vessel, that had all the signs of the passion of Jesu Christ, bleeding all openly, and said, My knights and my servants and my true children, which be come out of deadly life into spiritual life, I will now no longer hide me from you, but ye shall see now a part of my secrets and of my hid things: now hold and receive the high meat which ye have so much desired. Then took he himself the holy vessel, and came to Galahad, and he kneeled down and there he received his Saviour, and after him so received all his fellows; and they thought it so sweet that it was marvellous to tell. Then said he to Galahad, Son, wotest thou what I hold betwixt my hands? Nay, said he, but if ye will tell me. This is, said he, the holy dish wherein I ate the lamb on Sher-thursday. And now hast thou seen that thou most desiredst to see, but yet hast thou not seen it so openly as thou shalt see it in the city of Sarra, in the spiritual place. Therefore thou must go hence, and bear with thee this holy vessel, for this night it shall depart from the realm of Logris, that it shall never be seen more here, and wotest thou wherefore? for he is not served nor worshipped to his right, by them of this land, for they be turned to evil living, therefore I shall disherit them of the honour which I have done them. And therefore go ye three to-morrow unto the sea, where ye shall find your ship ready, and with you take the sword with the strange girdles, and no more with you, but Sir Percivale and Sir Bors. Also I will that ye take with you of the blood of this spear, for to anoint the maimed king, both his leg and all his body, and he shall have his health. Sir, said Galahad, why shall not these other fellows go with us? For this cause, for right as I departed mine apostles, one here and another there, so I will that ye depart. And two of you shall die in my service, but one of you shall come again, and tell tidings. Then gave he them his blessing and vanished away.

CHAP. XXI.

How Galahad anointed with the blood of the spear the maimed king, and other adventures.

And Galahad went anon to the spear which lay upon the table, and touched the blood with his fingers, and came after to the maimed king, and anointed his legs. And therewith he clothed him anon, and start upon his feet out of his bed as an whole man, and thanked our Lord that he had healed him. And that was not to the world-ward, for anon he yield him to a place of religion of white monks, and was a full holy man. That same night, about midnight came a voice among them, which said, My sons and not my chieftains, my friends and not my warriors, go ye hence, where ye hope best to do, and as I bad you.—
How they were fed with the Sangreal while they were in prison, and how Galahad was made king.

But as soon as they were there, our Lord sent them the Sangreal, through whose grace they were always fulfilled while that they were in prison. So at the year's end it befell that this king Estorause lay sick, and felt that he should die. Then he sent for the three knights, and they came afore him, and
he cried them mercy of that he had done to them, and they forgave it him goodly, and he died anon. When the king was dead, all the city was dismayed, and wist not who might be their king. Right so as they were in counsel, there came a voice among them, and bad them choose the youngest knight of them three to be their king, for he shall well maintain you and all yours. So they made Galahad king by all the assent of the whole city, and else they would have slain him. And when he was come to behold the land, he let make about the table of silver a chest of gold and of precious stones that covered the holy vessel, and every day early the three fellows would come afere it and make their prayers. Now at the year's end, and the self day after Galahad had borne the crown of gold, he arose up early, and his fellows, and came to the palace, and saw tofere them the holy vessel, and a man kneeling on his knees, in likenes of a bishop, that had about him a great fellowship of angels, as it had been Jesu Christ himself. And then he arose and began a mass of Our Lady. And when he came to the sacrament of the mass, and had done, anon he called Galahad, and said to him, Come forth, the servant of Jesu Christ, and thou shalt see that thou hast much desired to see. And then he began to tremble right hard, when the deadly flesh began to behold the spiritual things. Then he held up his hands toward heaven, and said, Lord, I thank thee, for now I see that that hath been my desire many a day. Now, blessed Lord, would I not longer live, if it might please thee Lord. And therewith the good man took our Lord's body betwixt his hands, and proffered it to Galahad, and he received it right gladly and meekly. Now, wotest thou what I am? said the good man. Nay, said Galahad. —I am Joseph of Armathie, which our Lord hath sent here to thee to bear thee fellowship. And wotest thou wherefore that he hath sent me more than any other? For thou hast resembled me in two things, in that thou hast seen the marvels of the Sangreal, and in that thou hast been a clean maiden, as I have been and am. And when he had said these words, Galahad went to Percivale and kissed him, and commanded him to God. And so he went to Sir Bors and kissed him, and commanded him to God, and said, Fair lord, salute me to my lord Sir Launcelot, my father, and as soon as ye see him bid him remember of this unstable world. And therewith he kneeled down tofore the table and made his prayers, and then suddenly his soul departed to Jesu Christ, and a great multitude of angels bare his soul up to heaven, that the two fellows might well behold it. Also the two fellows saw come from heaven an hand, but they saw not the body; and then it came right to the vessel, and took it and the spear, and so bare it up to heaven. Sitten was there never man so hardy to say that he had seen the Sangreal.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the sorrow that Percivale and Bors made when Galahad was dead; and of Percivale bow he died, and other matters.

When Percivale and Bors saw Galahad dead, they made as much sorrow as ever did two men: and if they had not been good men they might lightly have fallen in despair. And the people of the country and of the city were right heavy. And then he was buried. And as soon as he was buried, Sir Percivale yielded him to an hermitage out of the city, and took a religious clothing; and Bors was alway with him, but never changed he his secular clothing, for that he purposed him to go again into the realm of Logris. Thus a year and two months lived Sir Percivale in the hermitage a full holy life, and then passed out of this world. And Bors let bury him by his sister and by Galahad in the spiritualities. When Bors saw that he was in so far countries as in the parts of Babylon, he departed from Sarras, and armed him, and came to the
entered into a ship, and so it m in good adventure he came realm of Logris. And he rode il he came to Camelot where ; was. And then was there made of him in the court, wend all he had been dead, h as he had been so long out country. And when they had e king made great clerks to ore him, that they should of the high adventures of the sights. When Bors had told the adventures of the Sancgreal, had befallen him and his three that was Launcelot, Percivale, and himself. There Launcelot adventures of the Sancgreal had seen. All this was made books, and put in almeries at . And anon Sir Bors said to celot, Galahad your own son saluted you by me, and after you king Arthur, and all the court, and so did Sir Percivale: for I buried them with mine own hands in the city of Sarras. Also, Sir Launcelot, Galahad prayeth you to remember of this uncertain world, as ye behight him when ye were together more than half a year. This is true, said Launcelot; now I trust to God his prayer shall avail me. Then Launcelot took Sir Bors in his arms, and said, Gentle cousin, ye are right welcome to me, and all that ever I may do for you and for yours, ye shall find my poor body ready at all times whilst the spirit is in it, and that I promise you faithfully, and never to fail. And wit ye well, gentle cousin Sir Bors, that ye and I will never depart in sunder whilst our lives may last. Sir, said he, I will as ye will.

Sende the thy story of the Sancgreal that was broueuly drawen freuyshe in to Englysshe, the which is a story crounced for the truest and the holgest that is in thys world, the which is book.

And here foloweth the euyghteenth book.

The Eighteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Of king Aribur and the queen the achievement of the Sancgreal; and Launcelot fell to bis old love. And the quest of the Sancgreal fell, and all knights that were were come again unto the bound, as the book of the Sanc- keth mention, then was there in the court, and in especial hur and queen Guenever made of the remnant that were come ad passing glad was the king and the queen of Sir Launcelot and of Sir Bors. For they had been passing long away in the quest of the Sancgreal. Then, as the book saith, Sir Launcelot began to resort unto queen Guenever again, and forgot the promise and the perfection that he made in the quest. For, as the book saith, had not Sir Launcelot been in his privy thoughts and in his mind so set inwardly to the queen, as he was in seeming outward to God, there had no knight passed him in the quest of the Sancgreal: but ever his thoughts were privily on the queen, and so they loved together more hotter
than they did toforehand, that many in the court spake of it, and in especial Sir Agravaine, Sir Gawaine’s brother, for he was ever open mouthed. So befell that Sir Launcelot had many resorts of ladies and damsels, that daily resorted unto him, that besought him to be their champion. And in all such matters of right Sir Launcelot appealed him daily to do for the pleasure of our Lord Jesu Christ. And ever as much as he might he withdrew him from the company and fellowship of queen Guenever, for to eschew the slander and noise: wherefore the queen waxed wroth with Sir Launcelot, and upon a day she called Sir Launcelot unto her chamber, and said thus: Sir Launcelot, I see and feel daily that thy love beginneth to slake, for thou hast no joy to be in my presence, but ever thou art out of this court, and quarrels and matters thou hast now adays for ladies and gentle-women, more than ever thou were wont to have aforehand. Ah, madam, said Launcelot, in this ye must hold me excused for divers causes. One is, I was but late in the quest of the Sancgreal, and I thank God, of his great mercy, and never of my deserving, that I saw in that my quest as much as ever saw any sinful man, and so was it told me. And if I had not had my privy thoughts to return to your love again as I do, I had seen as great mysteries as ever saw my son Galahad, or Percivale, or Sir Bors, and therefore, madam, I was but late in that quest. Wit ye well, madam, it may not be yet lightly forgotten the high service in whom I did my diligent labour. Also, madam, wit ye well that there be many men speak of our love in this court, and have you and me greatly in a wait, as Sir Agravaine, and Sir Mordred: and, madam, wit ye well, I dread them more for your sake than for any fear that I have of them myself, for I may happen to escape and rid myself in a great need, where ye must abide all that will be said unto you. And then if that ye fall in any distress through wilful folly, then is there none other remedy or help but by me and my blood. And wit ye well, madam, the boldness of you and me will bring us to great shame and slander, and that were me loth to see you dishonoured. And that is the cause that I take upon me more for to do for damsels and maidens than ever I did tofore, that men should understand my joy and my delight is my pleasure to have ado for damsels and maidens.

CHAP. II.

How the queen commanded Sir Launcelot to avoid the court, and of the wrong that Launcelot made.

All this while the queen stood still, and let Sir Launcelot say what he would. And when he had all said, he brast out on weeping, and so she sobbed and wept a great while: and when she might speak, she said, Launcelot, now I well understand that thou art a false recreant knight, and lovest and holdest other ladies, and by me thou hast disdain and scorn. For wit thou well, she said, now I understand thy falsehood, and therefore shall I never love thee no more, and never be thou so hard to come in my sight; and right here I discharge thee this court, that thou never come within it, and I forfend thee my fellowship, and upon pain of thy head that thou see me no more. Right so Sir Launcelot departed with great heaviness, that hardly he might sustain himself for great dole making. Then he called Sir Bors, Sir Ector de Maris, and Sir Lionel, and told them how the queen had forfend him the court, and so he was in will to depart into his own country. Fair sir, said Sir Bors de Ganis, ye shall not depart out of this land by mine advice; ye must remember in what honour ye are renowned, and called the noblest knight of the world, and many great matters ye have in hand, and women in their hastiness will do oftimes that sore repenteth them, and therefore by mine advice ye shall take your horse, and ride to the good hermitage here beside Windsor, that sometime was a good knight, his name is Sir
HOW THE QUEEN MADE A DINNER.

and there shall ye abide till I word of better tidings. Bro-
Sir Launcelot, wit ye well I h to depart out of this realm, queen hath defended me so t me seemeth she will never d lady as she hath been. Say so, said Sir Bors, for many his time she hath been wroth and after it she was the first sted it. Ye say well, said for now will I do by your take mine horse and my nd ride to the hermit Sir and there will I repose me ear some manner of tidings. But, fair brother, I pray you: love of my lady queen Gue- ye may. Sir, said Sir Bors, ot to move me of such mat- ell ye wot I will do what I see you. And then the noble Launcelot departed with right r, suddenly, that none earthly ist of him, nor where he was ut Sir Bors. So when Sir was departed, the queen made of sorrow in shewing, to none d, nor to none other: but, wit wardly, as the book saith, she thought, but she bare it out oud countenance, as though thing nor danger.

CHAP. III.

dinner that the queen made is a knight poisoned, which or laid on the queen.

in the queen let make a privy London unto the knights of Table. And all was for to ward that she had as great joy r knights of the Table Round l in Sir Launcelot. All only mer she had Sir Gawaine and en, that is to say, Sir Agra- Gaheris, Sir Gareth, and Sir Also there was Sir Bors de Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleo- Janis, Sir Galihud, Sir Gali- Ector de Maris, Sir Lionel, ides, Sir Saferre his brother, Sir La Cote Male Taile, Sir Persant, Sir Ironside, Sir Brandiles, Sir Kay le Sene- schal, Sir Mador de la Porte, Sir Patrise, a knight of Ireland, Aliduk, Sir Asto- more, and Sir Pinel le Savage, the which was cousin to Sir Lomarrak de Galis, the good knight that Sir Gawaine and his brethren slew by treason. And so these four and twenty knights should dine with the queen in a privy place by themselves, and there was made a great feast of all manner of dainties. But Sir Gawaine had a custom that he used daily at dinner and at supper, that he loved well all manner of fruit, and in especial apples and pears. And there fore, whosoever dined or feasted Sir Gawaine would commonly purvey for good fruit for him; and so did the queen for to please Sir Gawaine, she let purvey for him of all manner of fruit, for Sir Gawaine was a passing hot knight of nature. And this Pinel hated Sir Gawaine because of his kinsman Sir Lomar- rak de Galis, and therefore for pure envy and hate Sir Pinel enpoisoned certain apples, for to enpoison Sir Gawaine. And so this was well unto the end of the meat: and so it befell by misfor tune a good knight named Patrise, cousin unto Sir Mador de la Porte, to to take a poisoned apple. And when he had eaten it he swelled so till he brast, and there Sir Patrise fell down suddenly dead among them. Then every knight left from the board ashamed and araged for wrath, nigh out of their wits. For they wist not what to say: consid ering queen Guenever made the feast and dinner, they all had suspicion unto her. My lady, the queen, said Gawaine, wit ye well, madam, that this dinner was made for me: for all folks that know my conditions understand that I love well fruit, and now I see well I had near been slain: therefore, madam, I dread lest ye will be shamed. Then the queen stood still, and was sore abashed, that he nist not what to say. This shall not so be ended, said Sir Mador de la Porte, for here have I lost a full noble knight of my blood, and therefore upon this shame and despite I will be revenged
to the utterance. And there openly Sir Mador appealed the queen of the death of his cousin Sir Patrise. Then stood they all still, that none of them would speak a word against him. For they had a great suspicion unto the queen because she let make that dinner. And the queen was so abashed that she could none other ways do but wept so heartily that she fell in a swoon. With this noise and cry came to them king Arthur. And when he wist of that trouble, he was a passing heavy man.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Mador appeached the queen of treason, and there was no knight would fight for her at the first time.

And ever Sir Mador stood still afore the king, and ever he appealed the queen of treason: for the custom was such that time that all manner of shameful death was called treason. Fair lords, said king Arthur, me repenteth of this trouble, but the case is so I may not have ado in this matter, for I must be a rightful judge, and that repenteth me that I may not do battle for my wife: for, as I deem, this deed came never by her, and therefore I suppose she shall not be all distained, but that some good knight shall put his body in jeopardy, rather than she shall be burnt in a wrong quarrel. And therefore, Sir Mador, be not so hasty, for it may happen she shall not be all friendless, and therefore desire thou thy day of battle, and she shall purvey her of some good knight that shall answer you, or else it were to me great shame, and to all my court. My gracious lord, said Sir Mador, ye must hold me excused, for though ye be our king in that degree, ye are but a knight as we are, and ye are sworn unto knighthood as well as we, and therefore I beseech you that ye be not displeased. For there is none of the four and twenty knights that were bidden to this dinner but all they have great suspicion unto the queen. What say ye all, my lords? said Sir Mador. Then they answered by and by that they could not excuse the queen, for why she made the dinner, and either it must come by her or by her servants. Alas, said the queen, I made this dinner for a good intent, and never for none evil; so Almighty God help me in my right as I was never purposed to do such evil deeds, and that I report me unto God. My lord the king, said Sir Mador, I require you, as ye be a righteous king, give me a day that I may have justice. Well, said the king, I give the day this day fifteen days, that thou be ready armed on horseback in the meadow beside Westminster. And if it so fall that there be any knight to encounter with you, there mayest thou do the best, and God speed the right. And if it so fall that there be no knight at that day, then must my queen be burnt, and there shall she be ready to have her judgment. I am answered, said Sir Mador; and every knight went where it liked him. So when the king and the queen were together, the king asked the queen how this case befell? The queen answered, So God me help I wot not how, nor in what manner. Where is Sir Launcelot? said king Arthur, and he were here, he would not grudge to do battle for you. Sir, said the queen, I wot not where he is, but his brother and his kinsmen deem that he is not within this realm. That me repenteth, said king Arthur, for and he were here he would soon stint this strife. Then I will counsel you, said the king, and unto Sir Bors—That ye will do battle for her for Sir Launcelot's sake,—and upon my life he will not refuse you. For well I see, said the king, that none of these four and twenty knights that were with you at your dinner, where Sir Patrise was slain, will do battle for you, nor none of them will say well of you, and that shall be great slander for you in this court. Alas, said the queen, and I may not do withal, but now I miss Sir Launcelot, and he were here he would put me soon to my heart's ease. What aileth you, said the king, ye cannot keep Sir Launcelot on your side? For, wit ye well, said the king, who that
auncelot upon his party hath
man of worship in the world
ide. Now go your way, said
unto the queen, and require Sir
battle for you for Sir Laun-

CHAP. V.

queen required Sir Bors to fight
and how be granted upon con-
and how be warned Sir Laun-

queen departed from the king,
Sir Bors into her chamber. He
was come, she besought
poured. Madam, said he, what
hat I did, for I may not with
have ado in this matter,
was at the same dinner, for
any of those knights would
in suspicion. Also madam,
sirs, now miss ye Sir Laun-
not have failed you
right nor in wrong, as ye
proved when ye have been in
now ye have driven him out
notry, by whom ye and all we
worshipped by. Therefore,
marvel me how ye dare for
uire me to do any thing for
much ye have chased him
nty, by whom we were
and honoured. Alas, fair
the queen, I put me wholly
ice, and all that is done amiss
end as ye will counsel me.
with she kneeled down upon
nees, and besought Sir Bors
mercy upon her,—or I shall
ameful death, and thereto I
aded. Right so came king
nd found the queen kneeling
Bors. Then Sir Bors pulled
said, Madam, ye do to me
our. Ah, gentle knight, said
have mercy upon my queen,
 knight, for I am now in
e is untruly defamed. And
courteous knight, said the
ise her to do battle for her:
ou, for the love of Sir Laun-
ly lord, said Sir Bors, ye re-
quire me the greatest thing that any
man may require me; and wit ye well,
if I grant to do battle for the queen I
shall wrath many of my fellowship of
the Table Round; but as for that, said
Bors, I will grant my lord, for my lord
Sir Launcelot's sake, and for your sake,
I will at that day be the queen's cham-
pion, unless that there come by adven-
ture a better knight than I am to do
battle for her. Will ye promise me this,
said the king, by your faith? Yea sir,
said Sir Bors, of that will I not fail you,
nor her both, but if that there come a
better knight than I am, and then shall he
have the battle. Then was the king and
the queen passing glad, and so departed,
and thanked him heartily. So then Sir
Bors departed secretly upon a day, and
rode unto Sir Launcelot, there as he was
with the hermit Sir Brasias, and told him
of all their adventure. Ah, said Sir
Launcelot, this is come happily as I
would have it, and therefore I pray you
make you ready to do battle, but look
that ye tarry till ye see me come, as long
as ye may. For I am sure Mador is an
hot knight, when he is enchafed, for the
more ye suffer him, the hastier will he
be to battle. Sir, said Bors, let me deal
with him; doubt ye not ye shall have
all your will. Then departed Sir Bors
from him, and came to the court again.
Then was it noised in all the court that
Sir Bors should do battle for the queen:
wherefore many knights were displeased
with him, that he would take upon him
to do battle in the queen's quarrel, for
there were but few knights in the court
but they deemed the queen was in the
wrong, and that she had done that trea-
sion. So Sir Bors answered thus unto
his fellows of the Table Round: Wit ye
well, my fair lords, it were shame to us
all, and we suffered to see the most noble
queen of the world to be shamed openly,
considering her lord and our lord is the
man of most worship in the world, and
most christened, and he hath ever wor-
shipped us all, in all places. Many
answered him again:—As for our most
noble king Arthur, we love him and
honour him as well as ye do; but as for
queen Guenever we love her not, because she is a destroyer of good knights. Fair lords, said Sir Bors, me seemeth ye say not as ye should say, for never yet in my days knew I never, nor heard say, that ever she was a destroyer of any good knight: but at all times, as far as I ever could know, she was always a maintainer of good knights, and always she hath been large and free of her goods to all good knights, and the most bounteous lady of her gifts and her good grace that ever I saw or heard speak of. And therefore it were shame, said Sir Bors, to us all to our most noble king's wife, and we suffered her to be shamefully slain. And wit ye well, said Sir Bors, I will not suffer it, for I dare say so much, the queen is not guilty of Sir Patrise's death, for she owed him never none ill will, nor none of the four and twenty knights that were at that dinner; for I dare say for good love she had us to dinner, and not for no mal-engine; and that I doubt not shall be proved hereafter: for howsoever the game goeth, there was treason among us. Then some said to Sir Bors, We may well believe your words. And so some of them were well pleased, and some were not so.

CHAP. VI.

How at the day Sir Bors made him ready for to fight for the queen; and when he should fight bow another discharged him.

The day came on fast until the even that the battle should be. Then the queen sent for Sir Bors, and asked him how he was disposed. Truly madam, said he, I am disposed in likewise as I promised you; that is for to say, I shall not fail you, unless by adventure there come a better knight than I am, to do the battle for you: then, madam, am I discharged of my promise. Will ye, said the queen, that I tell my lord Arthur thus? Do as it shall please you, madam. Then the queen went unto the king, and told him the answer of Sir Bors. Have ye no doubt, said the king, of Sir Bors, for I call him now one of the best knights of the world, and the most profitablest man. And thus it pass on until the morn. And the king and the queen, and all manner of knights that were there at that time, drew them unto the meadow beside Westminster, where the battle should be. And so when the king was come with the queen, and many knights of the Round Table, then the queen was put there in the constable's ward, and a great fire made about an iron stake, that, and Sir Mador de la Porte had the better, she should be burn. Such custom was used in those days, that neither for favour, neither for love, nor affinity, there should be none other but righteous judgment, as well upon a king as upon a knight, and as well upon a queen as upon another poor lady. So in this meanwhile came in Sir Mador de la Porte, and took his oath afore the king, That the queen did this treason until his cousin Sir Patrise, and unto his oath he would prove it with his body, hand for hand, who that would say the contrary. Right so came in Sir Bors de Ganis, and said, that as for queen Guenever, she is in the right, and that will I make good with my hands, that she is not culpable of this treason that is put upon her. Then make thee ready, said Sir Mador, and we shall prove whether thou be in the right or I. Sir Mador, said Sir Bors, wit thou well I know you for a good knight: not for then I shall not fear so greatly, but I trust to God I shall be able to withstand your malice: but thus much have I promised my lord Arthur, and my lady the queen, that I shall do battle for her in this case to the uttermost, unless that there come a better knight than I am, and discharge me. Is that all, said Sir Mador, either come thou off and do battle with me, or else say nay. Take your horse, said Sir Bors, and, as I suppose, ye shall not tarry long, but ye shall be answered. Then either departed to their tents, and made them ready to horseback as they thought best. And anon Sir
SIR LAUNCELOT FIGHTS FOR THE QUEEN.

came into the field with his hand upon his shoulder, and his spear hand. And so rode about the ying unto king Arthur. Bid champion come forth and he then was Sir Bors ashamed, his horse and came to the

And then was he ware where a wood there fast by a ill armed upon a white horse, strange shield of strange arms, came riding all that he might and so he came to Sir Bors, and his knight, I pray you be not d, for here must a better knight ere have this battle; therefore I withdraw you. For wit ye have had this day a right great and this battle ought to be d so I promised you when I with you last, and with all my thank you of your good will.

Bors rode unto king Arthur, him how there was a knight that would have the battle for to the queen. What knight is he? king. I wot not, said Sir Bors, covenant he made with me to this day. Now my lord, said here am I discharged.

CHAP. VII.

Launcelot fought against Sir for the queen, and how he over Sir Mador and discharged the

the king called to that knight, x him if he would fight for the Then he answered to the king, e came I hither, and therefore, he said, tarry me no longer, ny not tarry. For anon as I shed this battle I must depart or I have ado many matters x. For wit you well, said that this is dishonour to you all of the Round Table, to see and noble a lady, and so courteous as queen Guenever is, thus to ned and shamed amongst you. ny all marvelled what knight ht be that so took the battle upon him, for there was not one that knew him, but if it were Sir Bors. Then said Sir Mador de la Porte unto the king, Now let me wit with I shall have ado withal. And then they rode to the lists' end, and there they couched their spears, and ran together with all their mights. And Sir Mador's spear brake all to pieces, but the other's spear held, and bare Sir Mador's horse and all backward to the earth a great fall. But mightily and suddenly he avoided his horse, and put his shield afore him, and then drew his sword, and bad the other knight alight and do battle with him on foot. Then that knight descended from his horse lightly like a valiant man, and put his shield afore him, and Drew his sword, and so they came eagerly unto battle, and either gave other many great strokes, tracing and traversing, raising and frowning, and hurling together with their swords, as it were wild boars. Thus were they fighting nigh an hour, for this Sir Mador was a strong knight, and mightily proved in many strong battles. But at last this knight smote Sir Mador groveling upon the earth, and the knight stept near him to have pulled Sir Mador flattling upon the ground; and therewith suddenly Sir Mador arose, and in his rising he smote that knight through the thick of the thighs, that the blood ran out fiercely. And when he felt himself so wounded, and saw his blood, he let him arise upon his feet; and then he gave him such a buffet upon the helm that he fell to the earth flattling, and therewith he strode to him for to have pulled off his helm off his head. And then Sir Mador prayed that knight to save his life, and so he yielded him as overcome, and released the queen of his quarrel. I will not grant thee thy life, said that knight, only that thou freely release the queen for ever, and that no mention be made upon Sir Patrise's tomb that ever queen Guenever consented to that treason. All this shall be done, said Sir Mador, I clearly discharge my quarrel for ever. Then the knights parted of the lists
took up Sir Mador and led him to his tent. And the other knight went straight to the stair foot where sat King Arthur, and by that time was the queen come to the king, and either kissed other heartily. And when the king saw that knight, he stooped down to him and thanked him, and in likewise did the queen; and the king prayed him to put off his helmet, and to repose him, and to take a sop of wine, and then he put off his helm to drink, and then every knight knew him that it was Sir Launcelot du Lake. Anon as the king wist that, he took the queen in his hand, and went unto Sir Launcelot, and said, Sir, grant mercy of your great travail that ye have had this day for me and for my queen. My lord, said Sir Launcelot, wit ye well I ought of right ever to be in your quarrel, and in my lady the queen's quarrel to do battle, for ye are the man that gave me the high honour of knighthood, and that day my lady your queen did me great worship, and else I had been shamed; for that same day ye made me knight through my hastiness I lost my sword, and my lady your queen found it, and lapped it in her train, and gave me my sword when I had need thereto, and else had I been shamed among all knights. And therefore, my lord Arthur, I promised her at that day ever to be her knight in right or in wrong. Grant mercy, said king Arthur, for this journey, and wit ye well, said the king, I shall acquit your goodness. And ever the queen beheld Sir Launcelot, and wept so tenderly that she sank almost to the ground for sorrow that he had done to her so great goodness, where she shewed him great unkindness. Then the knights of his blood drew unto him, and there either of them made great joy of other. And so came all the knights of the Table Round that were there at that time, and welcomed him. And then Sir Mador was had to leech-craft, and Sir Launcelot was healed of his wound. And then there was made great joy and mirths in that court.

CHAP. VIII.
How the truth was known by the men of the lake, and of divers other men.

And so it befell that the day the lake, her name was Nimue, thwedded the good knight Sir Pelte, so she came to the court, for ever great goodness unto King Arthur to all his knights, through her enchantments. And so wh heard how the queen was an of the death of Sir Patrise, th told it openly that she was never and there she disclosed by whom done, and named him Sir Pinel, what cause he did it. There openly disclosed, and so the que excused, and the knight Pinel fl his country. Then was it openly that Sir Pinel enpoisoned the at the feast, to that intent t destroyed Sir Gawaine, becat Gawaine and his brethren de Sir Lamorak de Galis, to the wh Pinel was cousin unto. Then v Patrise buried in the church of minster, in a tomb, and thereupon written, Here lieth Sir Patrise of sla'n by Sir Pinel le Savage, it poisoned apples to have slain S waine, and by misfortune Sir Pat one of those apples, and then su he brast. Also there was written the tomb, that queen Guenev appealed of treason of the death Patrise by Sir Mador de la Por there was made mention how Sir celot fought with him for queen never, and overcame him in plain All this was written upon the Sir Patrise, in excusing of the And then Sir Mador sued daily to have the queen's good grace, by the means of Sir Launcelot he him to stand in the queen's gra all was forgiven. Thus it passe till our Lady day, Assumption. a fifteen days of that feast th let cry a great justs and a tour that should be at that day at Ct that is Winchester. And the k cry that he and the king of Scots
OF THE MAIDEN OF ASTOLAT.

all that would come against
id when this cry was made,
many knights. So there
her the king of Northgalis,
Anguish of Ireland, and the
the hundred knights, and Sir
he haut prince, and the king
umberland, and many other
ands earls of divers countries.
Arthur made him ready to
these justs, and would have
seen with him: but at that
would not, she said, for she
and might not ride at that
at me repenteth, said the
this seven year ye saw not
lowship together, except at
le when Galahad departed
ort. Truly, said the queen
y, ye must hold me excused, I
there, and that me repenteth.
y deemed the queen would
be because of Sir Launcelot
for Sir Launcelot would not
he king; for he said that he
hole of the wound the which
had given him. Wherefore
ns heavy and passing wroth,
depted towards Winchester
lowship. And so by the way
aged in a town called Astolat,
w in English called Gilford,
 the king lay in the castle.
the king was departed, the
ed Sir Launcelot unto her,
sir Launcelot ye are greatly
to us to hold you behind my
trou ye, what will your
ld mine say and deem? nought
how Sir Launcelot holdeth
hind the king, and so doth
, for that they would be
and thus will they say, said
to Sir Launcelot, have ye
thereof.

CHAP. IX.

Launcelot rode to Astolat, and
a sleeve to bear upon his helm
uest of a maid.

said Sir Launcelot, I allow
is of late come sin ye were
wise, and therefore, madam, as at this
time I will be ruled by your counsel, and
this night I will take my rest, and to-
tomorrow by time will take my way
toward Winchester. But wit you well,
said Sir Launcelot to the queen, that at
that justs I will be against the king and
all his fellowship. Ye may there do as
ye list, said the queen, but by my coun-
sel ye shall not be against your king and
your fellowship, for therein be full many
hardy knights of your blood, as ye wot
well enough, it needeth not to rehearse
them. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, I
pray you that ye be not displeased with
me, for I will take the adventure that
God will send me. And so upon the
morn early Sir Launcelot heard mass,
and brake his fast, and so took his
leave of the queen, and departed. And
then he rode so much until he came
to Astolat, that is Gilford; and there
it happed him in the eventide he came
to an old baron's place, that hight
Sir Bernard of Astolat. And as Sir
Launcelot entered into his lodging,
king Arthur espied him as he did walk
in a garden beside the castle, how he
took his lodging, and knew him full
well. It is well, said king Arthur unto
the knights that were with him in that
garden beside the castle, I have now
espied one knight that will play his
play at the justs to the which we be
gone toward, I undertake he will do
marvels. Who is that, we pray you
tell us, said many knights that were
there at that time. Ye shall not wit
for me, said the king, at this time. And
so the king smiled, and went to his
lodging. So when Sir Launcelot was
in his lodging, and unarmed him in his
chamber, the old baron and hermit
came unto him, making his reverence,
and welcomed him in the best manner;
but the old knight knew not Sir Laun-
celot. Fair sir, said Sir Launcelot to
his host, I would pray you to lend me a
shield that were not openly known, for
mine is well known. Sir, said his host,
ye shall have your desire, for me seemeth
ye be one of the likeliest knights of the
world, and therefore I shall shew you
friendship. Sir, wit you well I have two sons which were but late made knights, and the eldest hight Sir Tirre, and he was hurt that same day that he was made knight, that he may not ride, and his shield ye shall have, for that is not known, I dare say, but here and in no place else. And my youngest son hight Sir Lavaine, and if it please you he shall ride with you unto that justs, and he is of his age strong and wight. For much my heart giveth unto you that ye should be a noble knight, therefore, I pray you tell me your name, said Sir Bernard. As for that, said Sir Launcelot, ye must hold me excused as at this time, and if God give me grace to speed well at the justs I shall come again and tell you. But I pray you, said Sir Launcelot, in any wise let me have your son Sir Lavaine with me, and that I may have his brother's shield. Also this shall be done, said Sir Bernard.

This old baron had a daughter that time that was called that time the fair maid of Astolat. And ever she beheld Sir Launcelot wonderfully. And, as the book saith, she cast such a love unto Sir Launcelot that she could never withdraw her love, wherefore she died; and her name was Elaine le Blank. So thus as she came to and fro, she was so hot in her love that she besought Sir Launcelot to wear upon him at the justs a token of hers. Fair damsel, said Sir Launcelot, and if I grant you that, ye may say I do more for your love than ever I did for lady or damsel. Then he remembered him that he would go to the justs disguised, and for because he had never afore that time borne no manner of token of no damsel, then he betheought him that he would bear one of her, that none of his blood thereby might know him. And then he said, Fair maiden, I will grant you to wear a token of yours upon my helmet, and therefore what it is shew it me. Sir, she said, it is a red sleeve of mine, of scarlet well embroidered with great pearls. And so she brought it him. So Sir Launcelot received it and said, Never did I erst so much for no damsel. And then Sir Launcelot betook the fair maiden his sleeve, keeping, and prayed her to keep it until that he came again. And that night he had merry rest and great. For ever the damsel Elaine was with Sir Launcelot, all the while she was suffered.

CHAP. X.

How the tourney began at Winchester what knights were at the justs, and things.

So upon a day on the most of Arthur and all his knights departed their king had tarried there that to abide his noble knights. when the king was ridden, Sir Launcelot and Sir Lavaine made them not to ride, and either of them had his shields, and the red sleeve Sir Launcelot let carry with him. And so they rode till their leave at Sir Bernard the old, and at his daughter the fair maid of Astolat. And then they rode till they came to Camelot, that was called Winchester. And there was press of kings, dukes, earls, and many noble knights. But the Launcelot was lodged privately, means of Sir Lavaine, with a gress, that no man in that town ware what they were. And sojourned there till our Lady's assumption, as the great feast she was. So then trumpets blew unto the king, and king Arthur was set on high a scaffold, to behold who did go from him, for never had Sir Launcelot the better and Sir Launcelot went to the field; and many times was Sir Galahad rebuked when Launcelot came in at the justs disguised. Then some kings, as king Anguish of Ireland, the king of Scotland, were there turned upon the side of king Arthur. And then on the other party, the king of Northgalis, and the king of the hundred knights, and the king of Northumberland, and Sir Galahad the haut prince. But these three kn
were passing weak to holding Arthur’s party: for with
the noblest knights of the
so then they withdrew them
erty from other, and every man
ready in his best manner to
might. Then Sir Launcelot
ready, and put the red sleeve
head, and fastened it fast; and
Launcelot and Sir Lavaine de
of Winchester privily, and
a little leaved wood, behind
that held against king Ar-
ty, and there they held them
the parties smote together.
came in the king of Scots and
of Ireland on Arthur’s party:
ast them came the king of
erland; and the king with
red knights smote down the
orthumberland, and the king
hundred knights smote down
push of Ireland. Then Sir
, that was on Arthur’s party,
ed with Sir Galahalt, and
them smote down other, and
thy half their lords on horse-
in. So there began a strug-
both parties. And then there
ir Brandiles, Sir Sagramor le
Sir Dodinas le Savage, Sir
ameschal, Sir Grislet le Fise de
Mordred, Sir Meliot de Logris,
le Cure Hardy, Sir Safere,
gris, and Sir Galleron of Gak
these fifteen knights were
of the Table Round. So these
others came in together, and
ack the king of Northumber-
the king of North Wales.
Launcelot saw this, as he
little leaved wood, then he said
Lavaine, See yonder is a com-
od knights, and they hold them
as boars that were chafed with
that is truth, said Sir Lavaine.

CHAP. XI.

Launcelot and Sir Lavaine en-
the field against them of king’s
court, and how Launcelot was

said Sir Launcelot, and ye will
help me a little, ye shall see yonder fel-
lowship which chaseth now these men
in our side, that they shall go as fast
backward as they went forward. Sir,
spare not, said Sir Lavaine, for I shall
do what I may. Then Sir Launcelot
and Sir Lavaine came in at the thickest
of the press, and there Sir Launcelot
smote down Sir Brandiles, Sir Sagra-
mor, Sir Dodinas, Sir Kay, Sir Grislet,
and all this he did with one spear.
And Sir Lavaine smote down Sir Lucan
le Buttelere, and Sir Bedivere. And
then Sir Launcelot gat another spear,
and there he smote down Sir Agra-
vaine, Sir Gaheris, and Sir Mordred,
and Sir Meliot de Logris. And Sir
Lavaine smote down Æanna le Cure
Hardy: and then Sir Launcelot drew
his sword, and there he smote on the
right hand and on the left hand, and by
great force he unhorsed Sir Safere, Sir
Epinogriss, and Sir Galleron. And then
the knights of the Table Round with-
drew them aback, after they had gotten
their horses as well as they might. O
mercy, said Sir Gawaine, what knight is
yonder, that doth so marvellous deeds
of arms in that field? I wot what he is,
said king Arthur. But as at this
time I will not name him. Sir, said Sir
Gawaine, I would say it were Sir Laun-
celot, by his riding and his buffets that
I see him deal: but ever me seemeth it
should not be he, for that he beareth
the red sleeve upon his head, for I wist
him never bear token, at no justs, of
lady nor gentlewoman. Let him be,
said king Arthur, he will be better
known and do more or ever he depart.
Then the party that were against king
Arthur were well comforted, and then
they held them together, that before-
hand were sore rebuked. Then Sir
Bors, Sir Ector de Maris, and Sir
Lionel, called unto them the knights of
their blood, as Sir Blamor de Ganis,
Sir Bleoberis, Sir Aliduke, Sir Galihud,
Sir Galihodin, Sir Bellangere le Beuse,
so these nine knights of Sir Launcelot’s
kin thrust in mightily, for they were all
noble knights. And they, of great hate
and despite that they had unto him,
thought to rebuke that noble knight Sir Launcelot, and Sir Lavaine, for they knew them not. And so they came hurrying together, and smote down many knights of Northgalis and of Northumberland. And when Sir Launcelot saw them fare so, he gat a spear in his hand, and there encountered with him all at once Sir Bors, Sir Ector, and Sir Lionel, and all they three smote him at once with their spears. And with force of themselves they smote Sir Launcelot's horse to the earth. And by misfortune Sir Bors smote Sir Launcelot through the shield into the side, and the spear brake, and the head left still in his side. When Sir Lavaine saw his master lie on the ground, he ran to the king of Scots, and smote him to the earth, and by great force he took his horse and brought him to Sir Launcelot, and maugre them all he made him to mount upon that horse. And then Launcelot gat a spear in his hand, and there he smote Sir Bors horse and man to the earth, in the same wise he served Sir Ector and Sir Lionel, and Sir Lavaine smote down Sir Blamor de Ganis. And then Sir Launcelot drew his sword, for he felt himself so sore and hurt that he wend there to have had his death. And then he smote Sir Bleoberis such a buffet on the helmet that he fell down to the earth in a swoon. And in the same wise he served Sir Aliduke and Sir Galihud. And Sir Lavaine smote down Sir Bellangere, that was the son of Alisander le Orphelin. And by this was Sir Bors horsed, and then he came with Sir Ector and Sir Lionel, and all they three smote with swords upon Sir Launcelot's helmet. And when he felt their buffets, and his wound the which was so grievous, then he thought to do what he might while he might endure; and then he gave Sir Bors such a buffet that he made him bow his head passing low, and therewithal he rasped off his helm, and might have slain him, and so pulled him down. And in the same wise he served Sir Ector and Sir Lionel. For, as the book saith, he might have slain them, but when he saw their visages his heart might not serve him thereto, but left them there.

And then afterward he hurled in the thickest press of them all, and did there the marvellous deeds of arms that ever man saw or heard speak of; and ever Sir Lavaine the good knight with him. And there Sir Launcelot with his sword smote and pulled down, as the French book maketh mention, more than thirty knights, and the most party were of the Table Round. And Sir Lavaine did full well that day, for he smote down ten knights of the Table Round.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Launcelot and Sir Lavaine departed out of the field, and in what jeopardy Launcelot was.

MERCY, said Sir Gawaine to Arthur, I marvel what knight that he is with the red sleeve. Sir, said king Arthur, he will be known or he depart. And then the king blew unto lodging, and the prize was given by heralds unto the knight with the white shield, that bar the red sleeve. Then came the king with the hundred knights, the king of Northgalis, and the king of Northumberland, and Sir Galahalt the haut prince, and said unto Sir Launcelot, Fair knight, God thee bless, for much have ye done this day for us, therefore we pray you that ye will come with us, that ye may receive the honour and the prize as ye have worshipfully deserved it. My fair lords, said Sir Launcelot, wit you well, if I have deserved thank I have sore bought it, and that me repenteth, for I am like never to escape with my life, therefore, fair lords, I pray you that ye will suffer me to depart where me liketh, for I am sore hurt. I take none force of none honour, for I had lever to repose me than to be lord of all the world. And therewithal he groaned piteously, and rode a great gallop away-ward from them, until he came under a wood's side; and when he saw that he was from the field nigh a mile, that he was sure he might not be
HOW LAUNCELOT WAS WOUNDED.

He said with an high voice, "Was the body of Sir Lavaine, help me, ye poor knights, were out of my sight; so sore that it nigh slay-eth mine own lord, said Sir Lancelot, I would fain do that might but I dread me sore, and I dare not truncheon, that ye shall of death. I charge you, said Sir Lancelot, as ye love me draw it; herewithal he descended from his horse, and so did Sir Lavaine, and Sir Lancelot drew the truncheon out of his side. And he gave me blood brass out nigh a hand, that at last he sank down, and pale and deadly. Alas, Sir Lavaine, what shall I do? And Sir Lancelot cast up his eyes, and Sir Lavaine, help me that I may have help; for here is fast by two mile a gentle hermit, me was a full noble knight, lord of possessions: and for his wealth he hath taken him to a city, and forsaken many lands, ne is Sir Baudewin of Briton, a full noble surgeon, a leech. Now let see, help me that I were there. For ever liveth me that I shall never use in a knight's hands. And great pain Sir Lavaine hath his horse; and then they rode together, and ever Sir Lancelot said that it ran down to the sea, by fortune they came to a great cliff on the other side, where there was a fair water running under it. Sir Lavaine, he said, at the gate butt of his spear, and cried for Jesu's sake. And there was a child to them, and asked they would? Fair son, said Sir Lavaine, go and pray thy lord the God's sake to let in here at is full sore wounded, and let thy lord that I saw him do more deeds of arms than ever I heard say that any man did. So the child went in lightly, and then he brought the hermit, the which was a passing good man. So when Sir Lavaine saw him, he prayed him for God's sake of succour. What knight is he? said the hermit, is he of the house of king Arthur or not? I wot not, said Sir Lavaine, what is he, nor what is his name, but well I wot I saw him do marvellously this day, as of deeds of arms. On whose party was he? said the hermit. Sir, said Sir Lavaine, he was this day against king Arthur, and there he won the prize of all the knights of the Round Table. I have seen the day, said the hermit, I would have loved him the worse because he was against my lord king Arthur, for sometime I was one of the fellowship of the Round Table, but I thank God now I am otherwise disposed. But where is he? let me see him. Then Sir Lavaine brought the hermit to him.

CHAP. XIII.

How Lancelot was brought to an hermit for to be sealed of his wound, and of other matters.

And when the hermit beheld him as he sat leaning upon his saddle-bow, ever bleeding piteously, and ever the knight hermit thought that he should know him, but he could not bring him to knowledge, because he was so pale for bleeding. What knight are ye? said the hermit, and where were ye born? My fair lord, said Sir Lancelot, I am a stranger, and a knight adventurous that laboureth throughout many realms for to win worship. Then the hermit advised him better, and saw by a wound on his cheek that he was Sir Lancelot. Alas, said the hermit, mine own lord, why hide you your name from me: forsooth I ought to know you of right, for ye are the most noblest knight of the world; for well I know you for Sir Lancelot. Sir, said he, sith ye know me, help me and ye may, for God's
sake; for I would be out of this pain at once, either to death or to life. Have ye no doubt, said the hermit, ye shall live and fare right well. And so the hermit called to him two of his servants, and so he and his servants bare him into the hermitage, and lightly unarmed him and laid him in his bed. And then anon the hermit stanch'd his blood, and made him to drink good wine, so that Sir Launcelot was well refreshed, and knew himself. For in those days it was not the guise of hermits as is now adays. For there were none hermits in those days but that they had been men of worship and of prowess, and those hermits held great household, and refreshed people that were in distress.

Now turn we unto king Arthur, and leave we Sir Launcelot in the hermitage. So when the kings were come together on both parties, and the great feast should be holden, king Arthur asked the king of Northealis and their fellowship where was that knight that bare the red sleeve:—Bring him before me, that he may have his laud and honour and the prize, as it is right. Then spake Sir Galahalt the haut prince and the king with the hundred knights: We suppose that knight is mischieved, and that he is never like to see you, nor none of us all, and that is the greatest pity that ever we wist of any knight. Alas, said Arthur, how may this be? is he so hurt? What is his name? said king Arthur. Truly, said they all, we know not his name, nor from whence he came, nor whither he would. Alas, said the king, these be to me the worst tidings that came to me this seven year: for I would not for all the lands I hold, to know and wit it were so that that noble knight were slain. Know ye him? said they all. As for that, said Arthur, whether I know him or know him not, ye shall not know for me what man he is, but Almighty Jesu send me good tidings of him. And so said they all. By my head, said Sir Gawaine, if it be so, that the good knight be so sore hurt, it is great damage and pity to all this land, for he is one of the noblest knights that ever I saw in a field handle a spear or a sword. And if he may be found, I shall find him, for I am sure he is not far from this town. Bear you well, said king Arthur, and ye may find him, unless that he be in such a plight that he may not hold himself. Jesu defend, said Sir Gawaine, but wit I shall what he is, and I may find him. Right so, Sir Gawaine took a squire with him, upon hackneys, and rode all about Camelot within six or seven miles. But so he came again, and could hear no word of him.

Then within two days king Arthur and all the fellowship returned unto London again. And so as they rode by the way, it hapned Sir Gawaine at Astolat to lodge with Sir Bernard, there as was Sir Launcelot lodged. And so as Sir Gawaine was in his chamber to repose him, Sir Bernard the old baron came unto him, and his daughter Elaine, for to cheer him, and to ask him what tidings, and who did best at that tournament of Winchester. Truly, said Sir Gawaine, there were two knights that bare two white shields; but the one of them bare a red sleeve upon his head, and certainly he was one of the best knights that ever I saw just in field. For I dare say, said Sir Gawaine, that one knight with the red sleeve smote down forty valiant knights of the Table Round, and his fellow did right well and worshipfully. Now blessed be God, said the fair maid of Astolat, that that knight sped so well, for he is the man in the world that I first loved, and truly he shall be the last that ever I shall love. Now fair maid, said Sir Gawaine, is that good knight your love? Certainly, sir, said she, wit ye well he is my love. Then know ye his name, said Sir Gawaine. Nay, truly, said the damsel, I know not his name, nor from whence he cometh, but to say that I love him, I promise you and God that I love him. How had ye knowledge of him first? said Sir Gawaine.


CHAP. XIV.

ow Gawaine came to Astolat.

Gawaine was lodged with the Astolat, and there bad know-

it was Sir Launcelot that red sleeve.

e told him as ye have heard. how her father betook him
r to do him service, and how

lent him her brother Sir
iel.—And here with me he

own shield. For what cause

said Sir Gawaine. For this

l the damsel, for his shield
ll known among many noble

Ah, fair damsel, said Sir Ga-

use it you let me have a sight
ld. Sir, said she, it is in my

ered with a case, and if ye

with me, ye shall see it. Not

Bernard, till his daughter

it. So when the shield was

Gawaine took off the case:
ve beheld that shield, he knew

it was Sir Launcelot’s shield,
wn arms. Ah, mercy, said

ne, now is my heart more
en ever it was tofore. Why?
e. For I have great cause,
aayne: is that knight that
is shield your love? Yea

she, my love he is, God
were his love. Truly, said

he, fair damsel, ye have right,
be your love, ye love the
urable knight of the world,
avon most worship. So me-
ver, said the damsel, for never,
ne, for no knight that ever
ed I never none erst. God

Sir Gawaine, that either of
rejoice other, but that is in

lure. But truly, said Sir
nto the damsel, ye may say
fair grace, for why, I have
oble knight this four and
r, and never or that day I nor

knight, I dare make it good,
read say that ever he bare
sign of no lady, gentlewoman,
1, at no justs nor tournament.
fore, fair maiden, said Sir Ga-
are much beholden to him to
give him thanks. But I dread me, said
Sir Gawaine, that ye shall never see
him in this world, and that is great
pity that ever was of earthly knight.
Alas, said she, how may this be? Is he
slain? I say not so, said Sir Gawaine,
but wit ye well, he is grievously wounded,
by all manner of signs, and by men’s
sight more likely to be dead then to be
on live; and wit ye well he is the noble
knight Sir Launcelot, for by this shield
I know him. Alas, said the fair maiden
of Astolat, how may this be, and what
was his hurt? Truly, said Sir Gawaine,
the man in the world that loved him
best hurt him so, and I dare say, said
Sir Gawaine, and that knight that hurt
him knew the very certainty that he
had hurt Sir Launcelot, it would be the
most sorrow that ever came to his
heart. Now, fair father, said then
Elaine, I require you give me leave to
ride and to seek him, or else I wot well
I shall go out of my mind, for I shall
never stint till that I find him and my
brother Sir Lavaine. Do as it liketh
you, said her father, for me right sore
repenteth of the hurt of that noble
knight. Right so the maid made her
ready, and before Sir Gawaine making
great dole. Then on the morn Sir Ga-
waine came to king Arthur, and told
him how he had found Sir Launcelot’s
shield in the keeping of the fair maiden
of Astolat. All that knew I aforehand,
said king Arthur, and that caused me
I would not suffer you to have ado at
the great justs: for I espied, said king
Arthur, when he came in till his lodging,
full late in the evening in Astolat. But
marvel have I, said Arthur, that ever
he would bear any sign of any damsel:
for, or now, I never heard say nor knew
that ever he bare any token of none
earthly woman. By my head, said Sir
Gawaine, the fair maiden of Astolat
loveth him marvellously well; what
it meaneth I cannot say; and she is
ridden after to seek him. So the king
and all came to London, and there
Sir Gawaine openly disclosed to all the
court that it was Sir Launcelot that
justed best.
CHAP. XV.

Of the sorrow that Sir Bors had for the burt of Launcelot; and of the anger that the queen bad because Launcelot bore the sleeve.

And when Sir Bors heard that, wit ye well he was a heavy man, and so were all his kinsmen. But when queen Guenever wist that Sir Launcelot bare the red sleeve of the fair maiden of Astolat, she was nigh out of her mind for wrath. And then she sent for Sir Bors de Ganis in all the haste that might be. So when Sir Bors was come tofore the queen, then she said, Ah, Sir Bors, have ye heard how falsely Sir Launcelot hath betrayed me? Alas, madam, said Sir Bors, I am afraid he hath betrayed himself, and us all. No force, said the queen, though he be destroyed, for he is a false traitor knight. Madam, said Sir Bors, I pray you say ye not so, for wit you well I may not hear such language of him. Why, Sir Bors, said she, should I not call him traitor, when he bare the red sleeve upon his head at Winchester, at the great justs? Madam, said Sir Bors, that sleeve-bearing repenteth me sore, but I dare say he did it to none evil intent, but for this cause he bare the red sleeve, that none of his blood should know him; for, or then, we nor none of us all never knew that ever he bare token or sign of maid, lady, ne gentlewoman. Fie on him, said the queen, yet for all his pride and boasting, there ye proved yourself his better. Nay, madam, say ye never more so, for he beat me and my fellows, and might have slain us, and he had would. Fie on him, said the queen, for I heard Sir Gawaine say before my lord Arthur, that it were marvel to tell the great love that is between the fair maiden of Astolat and him. Madam, said Sir Bors, I may not warn Sir Gawaine to say what it pleased him: but I dare say as for my lord Sir Launcelot, that he loveth no lady, gentlewoman, nor maid, but all he loveth in like much, and therefore, madam, said Sir Bors, ye may say what ye will, but wit ye well I will haste me to seek him; wheresover he be, and God good tidings of him. And when they there, and speak with Launcelot, that lay in great peril.

So as fair Elaine came to her; she sought there all about, and found Sir Gawaine was ridden to enchafe his horse. And Elaine saw him she knew then she cried on loud until he when he heard her, anon anon anon; and then she asked How did my lord, Sir? Who told you, sister, that name was Sir Launcelot? told him how Sir Gawaine knew him. So they rode that they came to the here anon she alight. So Sir Gawaine came to Sir Launcelot. And saw him lie so sick and pale she might not speak, but she fell to the earth down swoon, and there she lay a And when she was relieved and said, My lord Sir Launcelot why be ye in this plight? a swooned again. And then lot prayed Sir Gawaine to take And bring her to me. And came to herself, Sir Launcelot her, and said, Fair maiden, thus? Ye put me to pain make ye no more such cheer: be come to comfort me welcome, and of this little have, I shall be right hasting the grace of God. But I Sir Launcelot, who told you Then the fair maiden told his Gawaine was lodg'd with I And there by your shield be your name. Alas, said Sir that me repenteth, that not known, for I am sure it with anger. And then Sir Launcelot passed in his mind that Sir would tell queen Guenever in the red sleeve, and for whist well would turn unto. So this maiden, Elaine, from Sir Launcelot, but w
HOW SIR BORS FOUND LAUNCELOT.

fully set upon you and overcharged you, and where ye might have slain me, ye saved me, and so did not I: for I, and your blood, did to you our utterance. I marvel, said Sir Bors, that my heart or my blood would serve me, wherefore my lord Sir Launcelot, I ask your mercy. Fair cousin, said Sir Launcelot, ye be right welcome, and wit ye well overmuch ye say for to please me, the which pleaseth me not; for why? I have the same sought, for I would with pride have overcome you all, and there in my pride I was near slain, and that was in mine own default, for I might have given you warning of my being there. And then had I had no hurt; for it is an old said saw, there is hard battle there as kin and friends do battle either against other; there may be no mercy, but mortal war. Therefore, fair cousin, said Sir Launcelot, let this speech overpass, and all shall be welcome that God sendeth; and let us leave off this matter, and let us speak of some rejoicing; for this that is done may not be undone, and let us find a remedy how soon that I may be whole. Then Sir Bors leaneth upon his bed's side, and told Sir Launcelot how the queen was passing wroth with him, because he ware the red sleeve at the great justs. And there Sir Bors told him all how Sir Gawain discovered it by your shield that ye left with the fair maiden of Astolat. Then is the queen wroth, said Sir Launcelot, and therefore am I right heavy, for I deserved no wrath, for all that I did was because that I would not be known. Right so excused I you, said Sir Bors, but all was in vain, for she said more largely to me than I to you now. But is this she, said Sir Bors, that is so busy about you, that men call the fair maiden of Astolat? She it is, said Sir Launcelot, that by no means I cannot put from me. Why should ye put her from you? said Sir Bors, she is a passing fair damsel, and a well beseeched and well taught; and God would, fair cousin, said Sir Bors, that ye could love her, but as to that I may not, nor I dare not, counsel you. But I see well, said Sir Bors, by her

CHAP. XVI.

I sought Launcelot and found hermitage, and of the lamented them.

we unto Sir Bors de Ganis, to Winchester to seek after Sir Launcelot; and so when Winchester, anon there were Lavaine had made to lie in such a man; and anon Sir warning, and then Sir to Winchester, and found there he told him what he whom he was, and what he. Now, fair knight, said require you that ye will my lord Sir Launcelot. Lavaine, take your horse, his hour ye shall see him. y departed, and came to e.

Sir Bors saw Sir Launcelot pale and discoloured, anon his countenance, and for all pity he might not speak, tenderly a great while. And might speak he said thus: Sir Launcelot, God you bless, a hasty recovery; and full of my misfortune and of my misery, for now I may call leprous, and I dread me that by displeased with me, that may me to have such a shame to you, that are all our leader worship, and therefore I call leprous. Alas, that ever such a as I am should have power to hurt the most noblest world. Where I so shame-
diligence about you, that she loveth you entirely. That me repenteth, said Sir Launcelot. Sir, said Sir Bors, she is not the first that hath lost her pain upon you, and that is the more pity. And so they talked of many more things. And so within three days or four, Sir Launcelot was big and strong again.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Launcelot armed him to assay if he might bear arms, and bow his wound burst out again.

Then Sir Bors told Sir Launcelot how there was sworn a great tournament and justs betwixt king Arthur and the king of Northgalis, that should be on Allhallowmas day, beside Winchester. Is that truth? said Sir Launcelot, then shall ye abide with me still a little while, until that I be whole, for I feel myself right big and strong. Blessed be God, said Sir Bors. Then were they there nigh a month together; and ever this maiden Elaine did ever her diligent labour, night and day, unto Sir Launcelot, that there was never child nor wife more meeker to father and husband, than was that fair maiden of Astolat. Wherefore Sir Bors was greatly pleased with her. So upon a day, by the assent of Sir Launcelot, Sir Bors and Sir Lavaine they made the hermit to seek in woods for divers herbs. And so Sir Launcelot made fair Elaine to gather herbs for him, to make him a bath. In the mean while, Sir Launcelot made him to arm him at all pieces, and there he thought to assay his armour and his spear, for his hurt or not. And so when he was upon his horse, he stirred him fiercely, and the horse was passing lusty and fresh, because he was not laboured a month before. And then Sir Launcelot couched that spear in the rest: that coursuer leapt mightily when he felt the spurs; and he that was upon him, the which was the noblest horse of the world, strained him mightily and stably, and kept still the spear in the rest. And therewith Sir Launcelot strained himself so straitly, with so great force, to get the horse forward, that the wound burst, both within and therewithal the wound so fiercely that he felt the wound, for he was feeleth that he might not bear his horse. And then Sir Launcelot unto Sir Bors, Ah, Sir Bors and Lavaine, help, for I am come to end. And therewith he fell on one side to the earth, drunk. And then Sir Bors and Lavaine came to him, and making out of measure, fortune the maiden Elaine mourning, and then she came. And when she found Sir Launcelot there armed in that place, and wept as she had been for three days, then she kissed him, and then she would to awake him. And then she rebuked her brother and Sir Bors called them false traitors, that would take him out of her hands, and she cried, and said she would weep them of his death. With this holy hermit, Sir Baudewine came, and when he found Sir Launcelot that plight he said but little for a while, well he was wroth; and to them, Let us have him thereto, they all bare him unto the clapper, and unarmed him, and laid him in bed, and evermore his wound so piteously, but he stirred no/ Then the knight hermit put his nose, and a little deal from his mouth, and then Sir Launcelot waked of his swoon, and the hermit stanch his bleeding, and he might speak, he asked them why he put his life in jeopardy, said Sir Launcelot, because that I had been strong, and also told me that there should be a feast mass a great justs betwixt king Arthur and the king of Northgalis, I thought to assay it myself, whether I might be there or not. And then Sir Launcelot, said the hermit, you shall know, your courage will never be small. Yet your last day, but ye shall do so. Yet counsel: let Sir Bors depart with me, and let him do at that tourne.
d by the grace of God, said
ermit, by that the tourn-
me, and ye come hither again,
ot shall be as whole as ye, so
be governed by me.

CHAP. XVIII.

ors returned and told tidings of
celot, and of the tourney, and
the prize was given.

r Bors made him ready to
Sir Launcelot; and then Sir
said, Fair cousin, Sir Bors,
l me unto all them unto
ught to recommend me unto,
you enforce yourself at that
ye may be best, for my love,
tall I abide you, at the mercy
ll ye come again. And so
departed, and came to the
ng Arthur, and told them in
he had left Sir Launcelot.
epenteth, said the king, but
ll have his life, we may all
. And there Sir Bors told
what jeopardy Sir Laun-
hen he would essay his
all that he did, madam, was
e of you, because he would
at this tournament. Fie on
ant knight, said the queen,
well I am right sorry and he
his life. His life shall he
Sir Bors, and who that would
cept you, madam, we that
blood should help to short

But, madam, said Sir Bors,
en oft-times displeased with
Sir Launcelot, but at all
the end ye find him a true
And so he departed. And
knight of the Round Table
ere present at that time,
ready to be at that justs
owmass. And thither drew
hts of divers countries. And
owmass drew near, thither
king of Northgalis, and the
he hundred knights, and Sir
he haut prince of Surtle, and
king Anguish of Ireland,
g of Scots. So these three
kings came on king Arthur’s party.
And so that day Sir Gawaine did great
deeds of arms, and began first, and the
heralds numbered that Sir Gawaine
smote down twenty knights. Then Sir
Bors de Ganis came in the same time,
and he was numbered that he smote
down twenty knights. And therefore
the prize was given betwixt them both,
for they began first, and the longest
endured.

Also Sir Gareth, as the book saith,
did that day great deeds of arms, for he
smote down, and pulled down, thirty
knight. But when he had done these
deeds he tarried not, but so departed,
and therefore he lost his prize. And
Sir Palamides did great deeds of arms
that day, for he smote down twenty
knight, but he departed suddenly; and
men deemed Sir Gareth and he rode
together to some manner adventure.
So when this tournament was done,
Sir Bors departed, and rode till he
came to Sir Launcelot his cousin, and
then he found him walking on his feet,
and there either made great joy of
other. And so Sir Bors told Sir Laun-
celot of all the justs, like as ye have
heard. I marvel, said Sir Launcelot,
that Sir Gareth, when he had done such
deeds of arms, that he would not tarry.
Thereof we marvelled all, said Sir Bors,
for, but if it were you, or Sir Tristram,
or Sir Lamorak de Galis, I saw never
knight bear down so many in so little a
while as did Sir Gareth. And anon as
he was gone, he wist not where. By
my head, said Sir Launcelot, he is a
noble knight, and a mighty man, and
well breathed; and if he were well
assayed, said Sir Launcelot, I would
demn he were good enough for any
man that beareth the life; and he is a
gentle knight, courteous, true, and boun-
teous, meek and mild, and in him is
no manner of mal-engine, but plain,
faithful, and true. So then they made
them ready to depart from the hermit.
And so upon a morn they took their
horses, and Elaine le Blank with them;
and when they came to Astolat, there
they were well lodged, and had great
cheer of Sir Bernard the old baron, and of Sir Tirre his son. And so upon the morn, when Sir Launcelot should depart, fair Elaine brought her father with her, and Sir Tirre and Sir Lavaine, and thus she said:

CHAP. XIX.
Of the great lamentation of the fair maid of Astolat when Launcelot should depart, and how she died for his love.

My lord Sir Launcelot, now I see ye will depart, now, fair knight and courteous knight, have mercy upon me, and suffer me not to die for thy love. What would ye that I did? said Sir Launcelot. I would have you to my husband, said Elaine. Fair damsel, I thank you, said Sir Launcelot, but truly, said he, I cast me never to be wedded man. Then, fair knight, said she, will ye be my love? Jesu defend me, said Sir Launcelot, for then I rewarded to your father and your brother full evil for their great goodness. Alas, said she, then must I die for your love. Ye shall not so, said Sir Launcelot, for wit ye well, fair maiden, I might have been married and I had would, but I never applied me to be married yet. But because, fair damsel, that ye love me as ye say ye do, I will, for your good will and kindness, shew you some goodness, and that is this; that whereas ye will bestow your heart upon some good knight that will wed you, I shall give you together a thousand pound yearly, to you and to your heirs. Thus much will I give you, fair madam, for your kindness, and always while I live to be your own knight. Of all this, said the maiden, I will none, for, but if ye will wed me, or else be my lover, wit you well, Sir Launcelot, my good days are done. Fair damsel, said Sir Launcelot, of these two things ye must pardon me. Then she shrieked shrilly, and fell down a swoon; and then women bare her into her chamber, and there she made overmuch sorrow. And then Sir Launcelot would depart; and there he asked Sir Lavaine what he would do. What should I do, Lavaine, but follow you, but if me from you, or command me from you? Then came Sir Be Sir Launcelot, and said to him, see but that my daughter Ela die for your sake. I may not do said Sir Launcelot, for that me penteth; for I report me to that my foster is fair, and myfeth, said Sir Launcelot, that sh me as she doth: I was never told of it, for I report me to you early nor late proffered her be fair behests; and as for me, Launcelot, I dare do all that knight should do, that she is maiden, both for deed and for I am right heavy of her distres is a full fair maiden, good, an and well taught. Father, said vaine, I dare make good she is good as my lord Sir Launcelot said; but she doth as I do, for first saw my lord Sir Launcelot never depart from him, nor will and I may follow him. Launcelot took his leave, and departed, and came unto W. And when Arthur wist that Sir lot was come, whole and king made great joy of him, at Sir Gawaine, and all the knig Round Table except Sir Agrav Sir Mordred. Also queen was wood wroth with Sir I and would by no means sp him, but estranged herself fr and Sir Launcelot made all t that he might to speak with th but it would not be.

Now speak we of the fair Astolat, that made such so and night, that she never slept drank; and ever she made a plaint unto Sir Launcelot. she had thus endured a ten she feebled so that she might pass out of this world, then sh her clean, and received her And ever she complained still Launcelot. Then her ghost bade her leave such thought
Why should I leave such a woman? while the breath is in my breast, I complain of my belief, and am offended though I love an aye, and I take God to my witness, I loved none but Sir Launcelot, nor never shall; and although I am for him and for all, since it is the suffering of the soul, I beseech the High heaven to have mercy upon me, and upon mine innumerable sins. For sweet Lord Jesus, the fair maiden, I take thee to thee I was never great against thy laws, but that I take him to be a knight Sir Launcelot, and of myself, good right not withstand the fervent prayer I have made. And called her father Sir Bernard, other Sir Tirre, and heartily asked her father that her brother gave her a letter like as she did, and so her father granted when the letter was written. And so this is the right hand, and my hand is to write the letter until that, and let me be put in a fair place, all the richest clothes that I have, and so let my bed, richest clothes, be laid with my body, till the next place be a barge, and but one man in the barge trust to steer me and my barge be covered of sable, over and over. Thus, I beseech you, let it be done. Her granted it her faithfully, should be done like as she did. Then her father and her aye great dole, for, when this anon she died. And so when dead, the corpse, and the barge led the next way unto Thames, and there a man, and the corpse, and all, were put into Thames, and so the man steered the barge unto Westminster, and there he rowed a great while to and fro or any espied it.

CHAP. XX.

How the corpse of the maid of Astolat arrived tofore king Arthur, and of the burying, and how Sir Launcelot offered the mass-penny.

So by fortune king Arthur and the queen Guenever were speaking together at a window; and so as they looked into Thames, they espied this black barge, and had marvel what it meant. Then the king called Sir Kay, and shewed it him. Sir, said Sir Kay, wilt thou well there is some new tidings. Go thither, said the king to Sir Kay, and take with you Sir Brandleys and Agraves, and bring me ready word what is there. Then these three knights departed, and came to the barge, and went in; and there they found the fairest corpse lying in a rich bed, and a poor man sitting in the barge's end, and no word would he speak. So these three knights returned unto the king again, and told him what they found. That fair corpse will I see, said the king. And so then the king took the queen by the hand and went thither. Then the king made the barge to be holden fast; and then the king and the queen entered, with certain knights with them. And there he saw the fairest woman lie in a rich bed, covered unto her middle with many rich clothes, and all was of cloth of gold, and she lay as though she had smiled. Then the queen espied a letter in her right hand, and told it to the king. Then the king took it, and said, Now I am sure this letter will tell what she was, and why she is come hither. Then the king and the queen went out of the barge, and so commanded a certain man to wait upon the barge. And so when the king was come within his chamber, he called many knights about him, and said that he would wit openly what was written
within that letter. Then the king brake it, and made a clerk to read it; and this was the intent of the letter—Most noble knight, Sir Launcelot, now hath death made us two at debate for your love; I was your lover, that men called the fair maiden of Astolat; therefore unto all ladies I make my moan; yet pray for my soul, and bury me at the least, and offer ye my mass-penny. This is my last request. And a clean maiden I died, I take God to witness. Pray for my soul, Sir Launcelot, as thou art peerless.—This was all the substance in the letter. And when it was read, the king, the queen, and all the knights wept for pity of the doleful complaints. Then was Sir Launcelot sent for. And when he was come, king Arthur made the letter to be read to him; and when Sir Launcelot heard it word by word, he said, My lord Arthur, wit ye well I am right heavy of the death of this fair damsel. God knoweth I was never causer of her death by my willing, and that will I report me to her own brother; here he is, Sir Lavaine. I will not say nay, said Sir Launcelot, but that she was both fair and good, and much I was beholden unto her, but she loved me out of measure. Ye might have shewed her, said the queen, some bounty and gentleness, that might have preserved her life. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, she would none other way be answered, but that she would be my wife, or else my love, and of these two I would not grant her; but I proffered her, for her good love that she shewed me, a thousand pound yearly to her and to her heirs, and to wed any manner knight that she could find best to love in her heart. For, madam, said Sir Launcelot, I love not to be constrained to love; for love must arise of the heart, and not by no constraint. That is truth, said the king, and many knights: love is free in himself, and never will be bounden; for where he is bounden he loseth himself. Then said the king unto Sir Launcelot, It will be your worship that ye oversee that she be interred worshipfully. Sir, said Sir Launcelot, that shall be done at best devise. And so many went thither to behold that fair knight. And so upon the morn she was richly, and Sir Launcelot offered mass-penny, and all the knights of the Table Round that were there at that time offered with Sir Launcelot; and then the poor man went again over the bargent. Then the queen sent Launcelot, and prayed him of a causeless. This is not the first, said Sir Launcelot, that ye have displeased with me causeless madam, ever I must suffer ye what sorrow I endure I take not. So this passed on all that winter, all manner of hunting and hawking justs and tourneys were many great lords; and ever in Sir Lavaine gat great worship, he was nobly renowned amongst knights of the Table Round.

CHAP. XXI.

Of great justs done all a Christ of a great justs and tourney of king Arthur, and of Sir Launcelot.

Thus it passed on till Christmas, every day there was justs made, of a diamond, who that justed best have a diamond. But Sir Launcelot would not just, but if it were at all justs cried. But Sir Lavaine there all that Christmas passen and best was praised; for their was but few that did so well. With all manner of knights deemed Lavaine should be made knight at the Round Table at the next feast of cost. So at after Christmas knigh thur let call unto him many knight there they advised together to a party and a great tournament and. And the king of Northgalis Arthur he would have on his king Anguish of Ireland, and the hundred knights, and the king of Northumberland, and Sir Launcelot and the haut prince; and so the kings and this mighty duke to
Arthur and the knights of round. And the cry was on the day of the justs should be at Westminster on Candlemas, many knights were glad, ready to be at that justs maner. Then queen at for Sir Launcelot, and warn you that ye ride no justs nor tournaments, but men may know you. And that shall be, ye shall have e of gold; and I pray you, enforce yourself there that I ak of you worship. But I s e ye will have my love, that c kinsmen that ye will bear sleeve of gold upon your dam, said Sir Launcelot, it te. And so either made f other. And when Sir w his time, he told Sir would depart, and have no m but Sir Lavaine, unto the that dwelled in the forest his name was Sir Brastias, thought to repose him, and he rest that he might, be-uld be fresh at that day of Sir Launcelot and Sir Lad, that no creature wist is become, but the noble blood. And when he was hermitage, wit you well he heer. And so daily Sir ould go to a well fast by e, and there he would lie see the well spring and sometime he slept there. ae there was a lady dwelled st, and she was a great d daily she used to hunt, he bare her bow with her; went never with her, but m, and they were shooters, ell kill a deer, both at the the trest; and they daily d arrows, horns and wood-nany good dogs they had, e string and for a bait. I that this lady, the hunt-ited her dogs for the bow hind, and so this barren hid took her flight over heaths and woods, and ever this lady and part of her gentlewomen coasted the hind, and checked it by the noise of the hounds, to have met with the hind at some water. And so it happed the hind came to the well whereas Sir Launcelot was sleeping and slumbering. And so when the hind came to the well, for heat she went to soil, and there she lay a great while; and the dogs came fast after, and umbicast about, for she had lost the very perfect track of the hind. Right so, there came that lady the huntress, that knew by the dog that she had that the hind was at the soil in that well. And there she came stiffly, and found the hind, and she put a broad arrow in her bow, and shot at the hind, and overshot the hind, and so, by misfortune, the arrow smote Sir Launcelot in the thick of the thigh, over the barbs. When Sir Launcelot felt himself so hurt, he hurled up woody, and saw the lady that had smitten him. And when he saw she was a woman, he said thus, Lady, or damsels, what that thou be, in an evil time bare ye a bow, the devil made you a shooter.

CHAP. XXII.

How Launcelot after that he was hurt of a gentlewoman came to an hermit, and of other matters.

Now mercy, fair sir, said the lady, I am a gentlewoman that useth here in this forest hunting, and truly I saw you not, but as here was a barren hind at the soil in this well, and I wend to have done well, but my hand swerved. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, ye have mischieved me. And so the lady departed, and Sir Launcelot, as well as he might, pulled out the arrow, and the head abode still in his thigh; and so he went weakly to the hermitage, evermore bleeding as he went. And when Sir Lavaine and the hermit espied that Sir Launcelot was hurt, with you well they were passing heavy: but Sir Lavaine nor the hermit wist not how he was hurt, nor by whom. And then they were wroth out of measure. Then with great pain the
hermit gat out the arrow’s head out
of Sir Launcelot’s thigh, and much of
his blood he shed, and the wound
was passing sore, and unhappily smitten;
for it was in such a place that
he might not sit in no saddle. Ah,
mercy, said Sir Launcelot, I call myself
the most unhappiest man that liveth;
for ever when I would fainest have
worship, there befalleth me ever some
unhappy thing. Now, so heaven me
help, I shall be in the field upon Can-
dlemas day at the justs, whatsoever fall
of it. So all that might be gotten to
heal Sir Launcelot was had. So when
the day was come, Sir Launcelot let
device that he was arrayed, and Sir La-
vaime, and their horses, as though they
had been Saracens. And so they de-
parted, and came nigh to the field.
The king of Northgalis with an hundred
knights with him, and the king of
Northumberland brought with him an
hundred good knights, and king An-
guish of Ireland brought with him an
hundred good knights ready to just, and
Sir Galahalt the haut prince brought
with him an hundred good knights, and
the king with the hundred knights
brought with him as many; and all
these were proved good knights. Then
came in king Arthur’s party, and there
came in the king of Scots with an
hundred knights, and king Uriens of
Gore brought with him an hundred
good knights, and king Howel of Br-
tanny brought with him an hundred
knights. And Chalance of Clarance
brought with him an hundred knights,
and king Arthur himself came into the
field with two hundred knights, and the
most part were knights of the Table
Round that were proved noble knights.
And there were old knights set in scalf,
dolds, for to judge with the queen who
did best.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir Launcelot behaved him at the
justs, and other men also.

Then they blew to the field, and there
the king of Northgalis encountered with
the king of Scots, and there the king of
Scots had a fall, and the king of Ireland
smote down king Uriens, and the king
of Northumberland smote down king
Howel of Brittany, and Sir Galahalt,
the haut prince, smote down Chalance
of Clarance. And then king Arthur
was wood wroth, and ran to the king
with the hundred knights, and there
king Arthur smote him down, and after
with that same spear king Arthur smote
down three other knights. And then
when his spear was broken king Arthur
did passing well. And so therewithal
came in Sir Gawaine, and Sir Gahers,
Sir Agravaine, and Sir Mordred, and
there every each of them smote down
a knight, and Sir Gawaine smote down
four knights. And then there began a
strong meddle, for then there came in
the knights of Launcelot’s blood, and
Sir Gareth and Sir Palamides with them,
and many knights of the Table Round,
and they began to hold the four kings
and the mighty duke so hard that they
were discomfit, but this duke Galahalt
the haut prince was a noble knight, and
by his mighty prowess of arms he held
the knights of the Table Round straight
enough. All this doing saw Sir Laun-
celot, and then he came into the field
with Sir Lavaine, as it had been thunders.
And then anon Sir Bors and the knights
of his blood espied Sir Launcelot, and
said to them all, I warn you beware of
him with the sleeve of gold upon his
head, for he is himself Sir Launcelot du
Lake. And for great goodness Sir Bors
warned Sir Gareth. I am well appayed,
said Sir Gareth, that I may know him.
But who is he, said they all, that rideth
with him in the same array? That is
the good and gentle knight Sir Lavaine,
said Sir Bors. So Sir Launcelot en-
countered with Sir Gawaine, and there
by force Sir Launcelot smote down Sir
Gawaine and his horse to the earth, and
so he smote down Sir Agravaine and
Sir Gahers, and also he smote down
Sir Mordred, and all this was with one
spear. Then Sir Lavaine met with Sir
Palamides, and either met other so hard
and so fiercely that both their horses fell
to the earth. And then were they horse
hen met Sir Launcelot with
es, and there Sir Palamides
And so Sir Launcelot, or
ot, as fast as he might get
smote down thirty knights,
part of them were knights
able Round. And ever the
his blood withdrew them,
ado in other places where
not came not; and then king
st wroth when he saw Sir
lo such deeds, and then the
unto him Sir Gawaine, Sir
Kay, Sir Griflet, Sir Lucan
Sir Bedivere, Sir Palamides,
brother; and so the king
ine knights made them ready
Sir Launcelot and upon Sir
all this espied Sir Bors and
Now I dread me sore, said
hat my lord Sir Launcelot
cd matched. By my head,
eth, I will ride unto my lord
ot for to help him, fall of
ay, for he is the same man
e knight. Ye shall not so,
s, by my counsel, unless that
raised. Ye shall see me dis-
Sir Gareth; and therewith
Welsh knight where he was
mself, and he was sore hurt
r Gawaine, and to him Sir
e, and prayed him of his
le to lend him his shield for
well, said the Welsh knight.
Sir Gareth had his shield,
aith, it was green, with a
t seemed in it. Then Sir
be driving to Sir Launcelot
ught, and said, Knight,
f, for yonder cometh king
nine noble knights with
you to a rebuke, and so I
bear you fellowship for old
ve shewed me. Gramercy,
celot. Sir, said Sir Gareth,
e with Sir Gawaine, and I
iter with Sir Palamides, and
aine match with the noble
. And when we have de-
let us three hold us sadly.
Then came king Arthur with
ights with him, and Sir Laun-
celot encountered with Sir Gawaine, and
gave him such a buffet that the bow of
his saddle brast, and Sir Gawaine fell to
the earth. Then Sir Gareth encountered
with the good knight Sir Palamides, and
he gave him such a buffet that both his
horse and he dashed to the earth. Then
encountered king Arthur with Sir La-
vaine, and there either of them smote
other to the earth, horse, and all, that
they lay a great while. Then Sir Launc-
elot smote down Sir Agravaine, and
Sir Gaheris, and Sir Mordred. And Sir
Gareth smote down Sir Kay, Sir Safere,
and Sir Griflet. And then Sir Lavaine
was horsed again, and he smote down
Sir Lucan the butler, and Sir Bedivere,
and then there began great throng of
good knights. Then Sir Launcelot
hurtled here and there, and rased
and pulled off helms, so that at that
time there might none sit him a buffet with
spear nor with sword. And Sir Gareth
did such deeds of arms that all men
wondered what knight he was with the
green shield; for he smote down that
day and pulled down more than thirty
knights. And, as the French book saith,
Sir Launcelot marvelled, when he beheld
Sir Gareth do such deeds, what knight
he might be: and Sir Lavaine pulled
down and smote down twenty knights.
Also Sir Launcelot knew not Sir Gareth,
for, and Sir Tristram de Liones or Sir
Lamorak de Galis had been alive, Sir
Launcelot would have deemed he had
been one of them twain. So ever as
Sir Launcelot, Sir Gareth, Sir Lavaine,
fought, and on the one side Sir Bors,
Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Lionel, Sir La-
omorak de Galis, Sir Bleoberis, Sir Gal-
hud, Sir Galihodin, Sir Pelles, and with
more other of king Ban's blood, fought
upon another party, and held the king
with the hundred knights, and also the
king of Northumberland, right straight.

CHAP. XXIV.

How king Arthur marvelled much of the
justing in the field, and bow he rode
and found Sir Launcelot.

So this tournament and this justs
dured long, till it was near night, for the knights of the Round Table relieved ever unto king Arthur; for the king was wroth out of measure that he and his knights might not prevail that day. Then Sir Gawaine said to the king, I marvel where all this day Sir Bors de Ganis and his fellowship of Sir Launcelot’s blood be. I marvel all this day they be not about you. It is for some cause, said Sir Gawaine. By my head, said Sir Kay, Sir Bors is yonder all this day upon the right hand of this field, and there he and his blood done more worshipfully than we do. It may well be, said Sir Gawaine, but I dread me ever of guile, for on pain of my life, said Sir Gawaine, this knight with the red sleeve of gold is himself Sir Launcelot, I see well by his riding and by his great strokes, and the other knight in the same colour is the good young knight Sir Lavaine. Also that knight with the green shield is my brother Sir Gareth, and yet he hath disguised himself, for no man shall never make him be against Sir Launcelot, because he made him knight. By my head, said Arthur, nephew, I believe you, therefore tell me now what is your best counsel? Sir, said Sir Gawaine, ye shall have my counsel. Let blow unto lodging, for, and he be Sir Launcelot du Lake, and my brother Sir Gareth with him, with the help of that good young knight Sir Lavaine, trust me truly it will be no boot to strive with them, but if we should fall ten or twelve upon one knight, and that were no worship, but shame. Ye say truth, said the king, and for to say sooth, said the king, it were shame to us, so many as we be, to set upon them any more. For wit ye well, said the king, they be three good knights, and namely that knight with the sleeve of gold. So then they blew unto lodging; but forthwithal king Arthur let send unto the four kings, and to the mighty duke, and prayed them that the knight with the sleeve of gold depart not from them, but that the king may speak with him. Then forthwithal king Arthur alight, and unarmed him, and took a little hackne after Sir Launcelot, for ever spy upon him; and so he among the four kings and there the king prayed the supper. And they said they good will. And so when unarmed, then king Arthur Launcelot, Sir Lavaine, and Ah Sir Launcelot, said king day ye have heated me and So they went unto Arthur’s together, and there was a and great revel, and the pri unto Sir Launcelot, and by named him that he had sir fifty knights, and Sir Gar thirty, and Sir Lavaine four knights. Then Sir Launce king and the queen how the res shot him in the forest in the thigh with a broad how the wound thereof was six inches deep, and in like Arthur blamed Sir Gareth, left his fellowship and he Launcelot. My lord, said he made me a knight, and him so hard bestad, me thou my worship to help him, for do so much, and so many no against him. And when I that he was Sir Launcelot shamed to see so many knig him alone. Truly, said king unto Sir Gareth, ye say worshipfully have ye done, and great worship, and all the life, said king Arthur unto wit you well I shall love you the more better. For ever thur, it is a worshipful knig help another worshipful knig seeth him in a great danger worshipful shamed, and he to worship, and fareth with cow shall he shew gentleness, nor of goodness, where he seeth any danger, for then ever wi shew no mercy, and always will do ever to another man be done to himself. So then
unto kings and dukes; and
and play, and all manner
was used; and he that was
, and faithful to his friend,
cherished.

CHAP. XXV.

Love is likened to summer.

It passed on from Candelmas
Easter, that the month of
me, when every lusty heart
blossom and to bring
for like as herbs and trees
fruit and flourish in May,
every lusty heart, that is in
a lover, springeth and
lusty deeds. For it giveth
braves courage, that lusty
ay, in some thing to con-
o some manner of thing,
month than in any other
ers causes. For then all
trees renew a man and
like likewise lovers call
old gentleness and
and many kind deeds that
men by negligence. For like
ure doth always arase and
summer, so fareth it by
man and woman. For
sons there is no stability,
all day, for a little blast
sure, anon we shall deface
true love for little or
cost much thing. This is
or stability, but it is feeble-
ness of nature and great disworp
whosoever useth this. Therefore, like
as May month flowereth and flourisheth
in many gardens, so in likewise let
every man of worship flourish his heart
in this world, first unto God, and next
unto the joy of them that he promised
his faith unto, for there was never wor-
shipful man nor worshipful woman, but
they loved one better than another:
and worship in arms may never be foiled,
but first reserve the honour to God, and
secondly the quarrel must come of thy
lady: and such love I call virtuous love.
But now-a-days men cannot love seven
night but they must have all their
desires, that love may not endure by
reason; for where they be soon ac-
corded, and hasty heat, soon it cooleth.
Right so far eth love now-a-days; soon
hot, soon cold. This is no stability,
but the old love was not so. Men and
women could love together seven years,
and no wanton lusts were between
them, and then was love truth and
faithfulness. And lo in likewise was
used love in king Arthur's days. Where-
fore I liken love now-a-days unto
summer and winter. For like as the
one is hot and the other cold, so fareth
love now-a-days. Therefore all ye that
be lovers call unto your remembrance
the month of May, like as did queen
Guenever. For whom I make here a
little mention, that while she lived she
was a true lover, and therefore she had
a good end.

cit liber Octodecimus. And here followeth liber xix.

The Nineteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Guenever rode on Maying
takes of the Round Table
all in green.

All in the month of May,
called unto her knights
of the Table Round, and she gave
them warning that early upon the mor-
row she would ride on maying into
woods and fields beside Westminster.—
And I warn you that there be none of
you but that he be well horsed, and
that ye all be clothed in green, either
in silk, either in cloth, and I shall bring with me ten ladies, and every knight shall have a lady behind him, and every knight shall have a squire and two yeomen, and I will that ye all be well horsed. So they made them ready in the freshest manner, and these were the names of the knights: Sir Kay the seneschal, Sir Agravaine, Sir Brandiles, Sir Sagramor le Desirous, Sir Dodinas le Savage, Sir Ozanna le Cure Hardy, Sir Ladinias of the Forest Savage, Sir Persant of Inde, Sir Ironside that was called the knight of the red lawns, and Sir Pelleas the lover, and these ten knights made them ready in the freshest manner to ride with the queen. And so upon the morn they took their horses, with the queen, and rode on Maying in woods and meadows, as it pleased them, in great joy and delights: for the queen had cast to have been again with king Arthur at the furthest by ten of the clock, and so was that time her purpose. Then there was a knight, that hight Meliagrance, and he was son unto king Bagdemagus, and this knight had at that time a castle, of the gift of king Arthur, within seven mile of Westminster; and this knight Sir Meliagrance loved passing well queen Guenever, and so had he done long and many years. And the book saith he had lain in a wait for to steal away the queen, but evermore he forbore for because of Sir Launcelot, for in no wise he would meddle with the queen, and Sir Launcelot were in her company, or else and he were near hand her. And that time was such a custom the queen rode never without a great fellowship of men of arms about her; and they were many good knights, and the most part were young men that would have worship, and they were called the queen's knights, and never in no battle, tournament, nor justs, they bare none of them no manner of knowledging of their own arms, but plain white shields, and thereby they were called the queen's knights. And then when it happed any of them to be of great worship by his noble deeds, then at the next feast of Pentecost, if there were any slain or dead, as there was no year that there failed but some were dead, then was there chosen in his stead that was dead the most men of worship that were called the queen's knights. And thus they came up all first, or they were renowned men of worship, both Sir Launcelot and all the remnant of them. But this knight, Sir Meliagrance, had espied the queen well and her purpose, and how Sir Launcelot was not with her, and how she had no men of arms with her but the ten noble knights all arrayed in green for Maying. Then he provided him a twenty men of arms and an hundred archers, for to destroy the queen and her knights, for he thought that time was the best season to take the queen.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Meliagrance took the queen and all her knights, which were sore but in fighting.

So as the queen had mayed and all her knights, all were bedashed with herbs, mosses, and flowers, in the best manner and freshest. Right so came out of a wood Sir Meliagrance with an eight score men well harnessed, as they should fight in a battle of arrest, and bad the queen and her knights abide for maugre their heads they should abide. Traitor knight, said queen Guenever, what castest thou for to do? wilt thou shame thyself? Bethink thee how thou art a king's son, and knight of the Table Round, and thou to be about to dishonour the noble king that made thee knight: thou shames all knighthood and thyself, and me, I let thee wit, shalt thou never shame, for I had lever cut my throat in twain than thou shouldest dishonour me. As for all this language, said Sir Meliagrance, be it as it may, for wit you well, madam, I have loved you many a year, and never or now could I get you at such an advantage as I do now, and therefore I will take you as I find you. Then spake all the ten noble knights at once,
SHE IS TAKEN PRISONER.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Launcelot bad word bow the queen was taken, and bow Sir Meliagrance laid a bushement for Launcelot.

Then by the queen's commandment they left battle, and dressed the wounded knights on horseback, some sitting, some overthwart their horses, that it was pity to behold them. And then Sir Meliagrance charged the queen and all her knights that none of all her fellowship should depart from her; for full sore he drad Sir Launcelot du Lake, lest he should have any knowing. All this espied the queen, and privily she called unto her a child of her chamber, that was swiftly horse, to whom she said, Go thou, when thou seest thy time, and bear this ring unto Sir Launcelot du Lake, and pray him as he loveth me, that he will see me, and rescue me if ever he will have joy of me; and spare thou not thy horse, said the queen, neither for water, neither for land. So the child espied his time, and lightly he took his horse with the spurs, and departed as fast as he might. And when Sir Meliagrance saw him so flee, he understood that it was by the queen's commandment for to warn Sir Launcelot. Then they that were best horse chased him, and shot at him, but from them all the child went suddenly; and then Sir Meliagrance said unto the queen, Madam, ye are about to betray me, but I shall ordain for Sir Launcelot that he shall not come lightly at you. And then he rode with her and they all to his castle in all the haste that he might. And by the way Sir Meliagrance laid in an enbushment the best archers that he might get in his country, to the number of a thirty, to await upon Sir Launcelot, charging them that if they saw such a manner of knight come by the way upon a white horse, that in any wise they slay his horse, but in no manner of wise have not ado with him bodily, for he is over hard to be overcome. So this was done, and they were come to his castle, but in no wise the
queen would never let none of the ten knights and her ladies out of her sight, but always they were in her presence, for the book saith Sir Meliagrance durst make no mysteries for dread of Sir Launcelot, in so much he deemed that he had warning. So when the child was departed from the fellowship of Sir Meliagrance, within awhile he came to Westminster. And anon he found Sir Launcelot. And when he had told his message, and delivered him the queen's ring, Alas, said Sir Launcelot, now am I shamed for ever, unless that I may rescue that noble lady from dishonour. Then eagerly he asked his armour, and ever the child told Sir Launcelot how the ten knights fought marvellously, and how Sir Pelleas, and Sir Ironsida, and Sir Brandiles, and Sir Persant of Inde, fought strongly, but namely Sir Pelleas, there might none withstand him, and how they all fought till at the last they were laid to the earth, and then the queen made appointment for to save their lives, and go with Sir Meliagrance. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, that most noble lady, that she should be so destroyed! I had lever, said Sir Launcelot, than all France that I had been there well armed. So when Sir Launcelot was armed and upon his horse, he prayed the child of the queen's chamber to warn Sir Lavaine how suddenly he was departed, and for what cause,—And pray him, as he loveth me, that he will hie him after me, and that he stint not until he come to the castle where Sir Meliagrance abideth or dwelleth, for there, said Sir Launcelot, shall he hear of me and I am a man living, and rescue the queen and the ten knights the which he traitorously hath taken, and that shall I prove upon his head, and all them that hold with him.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Launcelot's horse was slain, and how Sir Launcelot rode in a cart for to rescue the queen.

Then Sir Launcelot rode as fast as he might, and the book saith he took the water at Westminster bridge, and made his horse to swim over Thames to Lambeth. And then within a while he came to the place there as the ten knights had fought with Sir Meliagrance, and then Sir Launcelot followed that track until that he came to a wood, and there was a strait way, and there the thirty archers bad Sir Launcelot turn again, and follow no longer that track. What commandment have ye thereto, said Sir Launcelot, to cause me, that am a knight of the Round Table, to leave my right way? This way shalt thou leave, or else thou shalt go it on thy foot, for wit thou well thy horse shall be slain. That is little mastery, said Sir Launcelot, to slay my horse, but as for myself, when my horse is slain, I give right nought for you, not and ye were five hundred more. So then they shot Sir Launcelot's horse, and smote him with many arrows. And then Sir Launcelot avoided his horse, and went on foot: but there were so many ditches and hedges betwixt them and him, that he might not meddle with none of them. Alas, for shame, said Launcelot, that ever one knight should betray another knight, but it is an old saw, A good man is never in danger but when he is in the danger of a coward. Then Sir Launcelot went a while, and then he was foul cumbered of his armour, his shield, and his spear, and all that longed unto him. Wit ye well he was full sore annoyed, and full loth he was to leave any thing that longed unto him, for he dread sore the treason of Sir Meliagrance. And then by fortune there came by a chariot, that came thither for to fetch wood. Say me, carter, said Sir Launcelot, what shall I give thee for to suffer me to leap into thy chariot, and that thou bring me unto a castle within this two mile? Thou shalt not come within my chariot, said the carter, for I am sent for to fetch wood for my lord Sir Meliagrance. — With him would I speak.—Thou shalt not go with me, said the carter. Then Sir Launcelot leapt to him, and gave him such a buffet that he fell to the earth stark dead.
other carter his fellow was d wend to have gone the and then he cried, Fair lord, life, and I shall bring you will. Then I charge thee, Launcelot, that thou drive me harniot, even unto Sir Meli- aete. Leap up into the cha- the carter, and ye shall be i. So the carter drove on vallopp, and Sir Launcelot's owed the chariot, with more ty arrows broad and rough and more than an hour and aume Guenever was in a bay ith her ladies, and espied an right standing in a chariot. See ild a lady, where rideth in a gooldly armed knight, I sup- deth unto hanging. Where? queen. Then she espied by his t he was there himself Sir du Lake. And then she was se came his horse ever after at, and ever he trod his en- his paunch under his feet. the queen, now I see well that well is him that hath a nd. Ha, a, most noble knight, thou art hard bestad when t in a chariot. Then she re- t lady that likened Sir Laun- le in a chariot to hanging. It ntheth, said the queen, and ad, so for to liken the most rght of the world unto such a reth. O Jesu defend him and said the queen, from all mis- nd! By this was Sir Laun- to the gates of that castle, he descended down, and cried, he castle rang of it. Where false traitor Sir Meliagrange, t of the Table Round? Now h here thou traitor knight, thy fellowship with thee: for , Sir Launcelot du Lake, that with you. And therewithal the gate wide open upon the d smote him under his ear gauntlet that his neck brast

**CHAP. V.**

*How Sir Meliagrace required forgiving-ness of the queen, and how she appeased Sir Launcelot, and other matters.*

When Sir Meliagrace heard that Sir Launcelot was there, he ran unto queen Guenever, and fell upon his knee, and said, Mercy, madam, now I put me wholly into your grace. What aileth you now? said queen Guenever. Forsooth I might well wit some good knight would revenge me, though my lord Arthur wist not of this your work. Madam, said Sir Meliagrace, all this that is amiss on my part shall be amended right as yourself will devise, and wholly I put me in your grace. What would ye that I did? said the queen. I would no more, said Meliagrace, but that ye would take all in your own hands, and that ye will rule my lord Sir Launcelot, and such cheer as may be made him in this poor castle ye and he shall have until to-morn, and then may ye and all they return unto Westminster, and my body and all that I have I shall put in your rule. Ye do well, said the queen, and better is peace than ever war, and the less noise the more is my worship. Then the queen and her ladies went down unto the knight Sir Launcelot, that stood wroth out of measure in the inner court, to abide battle; and ever he bade—Thou traitor knight, come forth! Then the queen came to him and said, Sir Launcelot, why be ye so moved? Ha, madam, said Sir Launcelot, why ask ye me that question? me seemeth, said Sir Launcelot, ye ought to be more wroth than I am, for ye have the hurt and the dishonour. For wit ye well, madam, my hurt is but little, for the killing of a mare's son; but the despite grieveth me much more than all my hurt. Truly, said the queen, ye say truth, but heartily I thank you, said the queen, but ye must come in with me peaceably, for all thing is put in my hand, and all that is evil shall be for the best, for the knight full sore repenteth him of the misadventure that is fallen him. Madam, said Sir
Launcelot, sith it is so that ye are accorded with him, as for me I may not be against it, howbeit Sir Meliagrance hath done full shamefully to me, and cowardly. Ah, madam, and I had wist ye would have been so soon accorded with him, I would not have made such haste unto you. Why say ye so? said the queen, do ye forthink yourself of your good deeds? Wit you well, said the queen, I accorded never unto him for favour nor love that I had unto him, but for to lay down every shameful noise. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, ye understand full well I was never willing nor glad of shameful slander, nor noise; and there is neither king, queen, nor knight, that beareth the life, except my lord king Arthur, and you, madam, that should let me, but I should make Sir Meliagrance's heart full cold or ever I departed from hence. That I wot well, said the queen, but what will ye more? ye shall have all thing ruled as ye list to have it. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, so ye be pleased I care not, as for my part ye shall soon please. Right so the queen took Sir Launcelot by the bare hand, for he had put off his gauntlet, and so she went with him till her chamber; and then she commanded him to be unarmed, and then Sir Launcelot asked where the ten knights were that were wounded sore. So she shewed them unto Sir Launcelot, and there they made great joy of the coming of him, and Sir Launcelot made great dole of their hurts, and bewailed them greatly; and there Sir Launcelot told them how cowardly and traitorly Meliagrance set archers to slay his horse, and how he was fain to put himself in a chariot. Thus they complained every each to other, and full fain they would have been revenged, but they peaced themself because of the queen. Then, as the French book saith, Sir Launcelot was called many a day after, Le Chevaler du Chariot, and did many deeds, and great adventures he had. And so leave we of this tale, Le Chevaler du Chariot, and turn we to this tale.

So Sir Launcelot had great cheer with the queen, and then Sir Launcelot made a promise with the queen, that the same night Sir Launcelot should come to a window outward toward a garden, and that window was y-barred with iron; and there Sir Launcelot promised to meet her when all folks were on sleep. So then came Sir Lavaine, driving to the gates, crying, Where is my lord Sir Launcelot du Lake? Then was he sent for, and when Sir Lavaine saw Sir Launcelot, he said: My lord, I found well how ye were hard bested, for I have found your horse, that was slain with arrows. As for that, said Sir Launcelot, I pray you Sir Lavaine speak ye of other matters, and let ye this pass, and we shall right it another time, when we best may.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Launcelot came in the night to the queen, and how Sir Meliagrance appeasch the queen of treason.

Then the knights that were hurt were searched, and soft salves were laid to their wounds, and so it passed on till supper time; and all the cheer that might be made them there was done unto the queen and all her knights. Then when season was they went unto their chambers. But in no wise the queen would not suffer the wounded knights to be from her, but that they were laid within draughts by her chamber, upon beds and pillows, that she herself might see to them, that they wanted nothing. So when Launcelot was in his chamber that was assigned unto him, he called unto Sir Lavaine, and told him that he must go speak with his lady, dame Guenever. Sir, said Sir Lavaine, let me go with you, and it please you, for I dread me sore of the treason of Sir Meliagrance. Nay, said Sir Launcelot, I thank you, but I will have nobody with me. Then Sir Launcelot took his sword in his hand, and privily went unto a place whereas he had espied a ladder toforehand, and that he took under his arm and bare it through the
SIR MELIAGRANCE APPEACHES THE QUEEN.

AP. VII.

The queen was ready to set him. And then they made either of their complaints of many divers things. And then Sir Launcelot wished at he might have come in to her.fit ye well, said the queen, I would as in as ye that ye might come in to me. would ye, madam, said Sir Launcelot, ith your heart that I were with you? en truly, said the queen. Now shall I rove my might, said Sir Launcelot, for our love. And then he set his hands pon the bars of iron, and pulled at sem with such a might that he brast sem clean out of the stone walls. And herewithal one of the bars of iron cut be brawn of his hands throughout to the bone, and then he kept into the chamber to the queen. Make ye no noise, said the queen, for my wounded sights lie here fast by me. And when he saw his time that he might tarry no onger, he took his leave and departed at the window, and put it together as well as he might again, and so departed into his own chamber; and there he told Sir Lavaine how he was hurt; then Sir Lavaine dressed his hand, and launched it, and put upon it a glove, bat it should not be espied. And so the queen lay long in her bed, until it was nine of the clock. Then Sir Meliagrace went to the queen's chamber, and found her ladies there ready clothed. tency, said Sir Meliagrace, what aileth ou, madam, that ye sleep thus long? and then was he ware of the blood of sir Launcelot's hurt hand. And when sir Meliagrace espied that blood, then he deemed in himself that she was false unto the king, and that it was the blood of some of the wounded knights. Ah, madam, said Sir Meliagrace, now I have found you a false traitress unto my lord Arthur; for now I prove well was not for nought that ye laid these wounded knights within the bounds of our chamber: therefore I will call you to treason before my lord king Arthur, ad now I have proved you, madam, ith a shameful deed, and that they are all false, or some of them, I will make good, for a wounded knight hath been here. That is false, said the queen, and that I will report me to them all. Then when the ten knights heard Sir Meliagrace's words, they spake all in one voice and said unto Sir Meliagrace, Thou sayest falsely, and wrongfully puttest upon us such a deed, and that we will make good any of us, choose which thou list of us, when we are whole of our wounds. Ye shall not, said Sir Meliagrace, away with your proud language, for here ye may all see that a wounded knight hath been here. Then were they all ashamed when they saw that blood, and wit you well Sir Meliagrace was passing glad that he had the queen at such an advantage, for he deemed by that to hide his treason. So with this rumour came in Sir Launcelot, and found them all at a great array.

CHAP. VII.

How Sir Launcelot answered for the queen, and waged battle against Sir Meliagrance. And how Sir Launcelot was taken in a trap.

What array is this? said Sir Launcelot. Then Sir Meliagrace told him what he had found, and shewed him the blood. Truly, said Sir Launcelot, ye did not your part nor knightly toward the queen, and therefore have ye done unworshipfully and shamefully to yourself. I wot not what ye mean, said Sir Meliagrace, but well I am sure there hath been one of her wounded knights here, and therefore I will prove with my hands that she is a traitress unto my lord Arthur. Beware what ye do, said Sir Launcelot, for and ye say so, and that ye will prove it, it will be taken at your hands. My lord Sir Launcelot, said Sir Meliagrace, I rede you beware what ye do, for though ye are never so good a knight, as ye wot well that ye are renowned the best knight of the world, yet should ye be advised to do battle in a wrong quarrel, for God will have a stroke in every battle. As for that, said Sir Launcelot, God is to be dread. But as to that
I say nay plainly, that this night none of these ten wounded knights was here with my lady queen Guenever, and that will I prove with my hands, that ye say untruly in that now. Hold, said Sir Meliagrance, here is my glove, that she is traitress unto my lord king Arthur, and that one of the wounded knights was here. And I receive your glove, said Sir Launcelot. And so they were sealed with their signets, and delivered unto the ten knights. At what day shall we do battle together? said Sir Launcelot. This day eight days, said Sir Meliagrance, in the field beside Westminster. I am agreed, said Sir Launcelot. But now, said Sir Meliagrance, sithen it is that we must fight together, I beseech you, as ye are a noble knight, await me with no treason, nor none villainy the meanwhile, nor none for you. So God me help, said Sir Launcelot, ye shall right well wit I was never of no such conditions, for I report me to all knights that ever have known me, I fared never with no treason, nor I loved never the fellowship of no man that fared with treason. Then let us go to dinner, said Meliagrance, and after dinner ye and the queen and ye may ride all to Westminster. I will well, said Sir Launcelot. And Sir Meliagrance said to Sir Launcelot, Pleaseth it you to see the esturies of this castle? With a good will, said Sir Launcelot. And then they went together from chamber to chamber, for Sir Launcelot dread no perils. For ever a man of worship and of prowess dreadeth least always perils: for they ween every man be as they be. But ever he that fareth with treason putteth oft a man in great danger. So it befell upon Sir Launcelot that no peril dread. As he went with Sir Meliagrance, he trod on a trap, and the board rolled, and therewith Sir Launcelot fell down more than ten fathom into a cave full of straw. And then Sir Meliagrance departed, and made no faire as that he nist where he was. And when Sir Launcelot was thus missed, they marvelled where he was become. And then queen Guenever and many of them deemed that he was departed as he was wont to do, suddenly. For Sir Meliagrance made suddenly to put away on side Sir Lavaine’s horse, that they might all understand that Sir Launcelot was departed suddenly. So it past on till after dinner, and then Sir Lavaine would not stint until that he ordained litter for the wounded knights, that they might be laid in them, and so with the queen and them all, both ladies and gentlewomen and other, went unto Westminster, and there the knights told king Arthur how Meliagrance had appealed the queen of high treason, and how Sir Launcelot had received the glove of him, and this day eight days they shall do battle afore you. By my head, said king Arthur, I am afraid Sir Meliagrance hath taken upon him a great charge. But where is Sir Launcelot? said the king. Sir, said they all, we wot not where he is, but we deem he is ridden to some adventures, as he is oftentimes wont to do, for he hath Sir Lavaine’s horse. Let him be, said the king, he will be founden, but if he be trapped with some treason.

CHAP. VIII.

How Sir Launcelot was delivered out of prison by a lady, and took a white courser, and came for to keep his day.

So leave we Sir Launcelot, lying within that cave in great pain, and every day there came a lady and brought him his meat and his drink, and wooed him to love her. And ever the noble knight Sir Launcelot said her nay. Sir Launcelot, said she, ye are not wise, for ye may never out of this prison but if ye have my help, and also your lady queen Guenever shall be burnt in your default, unless that ye be there at the day of battle. God defend, said Sir Launcelot, that she should be burnt in my default: and if it be so, said Sir Launcelot, that I may not be there, it shall be well understood both at the king and at the queen, and with all men of worship, that I am dead.
SIR LAUNCELOT FIGHTS FOR THE QUEEN. 445

1 prison. For all men that will say for me that I am in case, and I be not there that veil I wot there is some good ther of my blood, or some loveth me, that will take my hand: and, therefore, said Sir, wit ye well ye shall not fear if there were no more women land but you, I would not say

Then art thou shamed, said and destroyed for ever. As shame, Jesu defend me; and distress, it is welcome, what- ne that God sendeth me. So to him the same day that the would be, and said, Sir Launthinketh ye are too hard- ut worsteth thou but kiss me would deliver thee and thine and the best horse that is Meliagrance's stable. As for the said Sir Launcelot, I may and lose no worship, and wit and I understood there were worship for to kiss you, I would

Then he kissed her, and then him and brought him to his And when he was armed, she him to a stable, where stood good coursers, and bad him the best. Then Sir Launcelot on a white courser, which best, and anon he commanded rs fast to saddle him with the e of war that there was, and done as he bade. Then get ar in his hand, and his sword le, and commanded the lady , and said, Lady, for this good all do you service if ever it power.

CHAP. IX.

Launcelot came the same time Meliagrance abode him in the dressed him to battle.

Save we Sir Launcelot gallop he might, and speak we of renuer that was brought to be burnt, for Sir Meliagrance him thought, that Sir Launcelot should not be at that battle, there- fore he ever cried upon king Arthur to do him justice, or else bring forth Sir Launcelot du Lake. Then was the king and all the court full sore abashed and shamed that the queen should be burnt in the default of Sir Launcelot. My lord Arthur, said Sir Lavaine, ye may understand that it is not well with my lord Sir Launcelot, for he was on live, so that he be not sick or in prison, wit ye well he would be here, for never heard ye that ever he failed his part for whom he should do battle for. And therefore, said Sir Lavaine, my lord king Arthur, I beseech you give me licence to do battle here this day for my lord and master, and for to save my lady the queen. Gramercy, gentle knight, Sir Lavaine, said king Arthur, for I dare say all that Sir Meliagrance putteth upon my lady the queen is wrong, for I have spoken with all the ten wounded knights, and there is not one of them, and he were whole and able to do battle, but he would prove upon Sir Meliagrance's body that it is false that he putteth upon my queen. So shall I, said Sir Lavaine, in the defence of my lord Sir Launcelot, and ye will give me leave. Now I give you leave, said king Arthur, and do your best, for I dare well say there is some treason done to Sir Launcelot. Then was Sir Lavaine horsed, and suddenly at the list's end he rode to perform this battle. And right as the heralds should cry Lesse ses aler, right so came in Sir Launcelot driving with all the force of his horse. And then Arthur cried, Ho! and Abide! Then was Sir Launcelot called on horseback tofore king Arthur, and there he told openly tofore the king and all, how Sir Meliagrance had served him first and last. And when the king and the queen and all the lords know of the treason of Sir Meliagrance, they were all ashamed on his behalf. Then was queen Guenever sent for, and set by the king in great trust of her champion. And then there was no more else to say, but Sir Launcelot and Sir Meliagrance dressed them
unto battle, and took their spears, and so they came together as thunder, and there Sir Launcelot bare him down quite over his horse croup. And then Sir Launcelot alight, and dressed his shield on his shoulder with his sword in his hand, and Sir Meliagrance in the same wise dressed him unto him, and there they smote many great strokes together, and at the last Sir Launcelot smote him such a buffet upon the helmet, that he fell on the one side to the earth, and then he cried upon him aloud, Most noble knight, Sir Launcelot du Lake, save my life, for I yield me unto you, and I beseech you, as ye be a knight and fellow of the Table Round, slay me not, for I yield me as overcome. And whether I shall live or die I put me in the king’s hands and yours. Then Sir Launcelot wist not what to do, for he had lever than all the good of the world he might have been revenged upon Sir Meliagrance; and Sir Launcelot looked toward queen Guenever if he might espy any sign or countenance what she would have done. And then the queen wagged her head upon Sir Launcelot, as though she would say slay him. Full well knew Sir Launcelot by the wagging of her head that she would have had him dead: then Sir Launcelot bad him rise for shame, and perform that battle to the utterance. Nay, said Sir Meliagrance, I will never arise until ye take me as yielden and recreant. I shall proffer you large proffers, said Sir Launcelot, that is to say, I shall unarm my head and my left quarter of my body, all that may be unarmed, and let bind my left hand behind me, so that it shall not help me, and right so I shall do battle with you. Then Sir Meliagrance start up upon his legs, and said on high, My lord Arthur, take heed to this proffer, for I will take it, and let him be disarmed and bounden according to his proffer. What say ye, said king Arthur unto Sir Launcelot, will ye abide by your proffer? Yea, my lord, said Sir Launcelot, I will never go from that I have once said. Then the knights parters of the field disarmed Scelot, first his head, and sithe his arm and his left side, and the his left arm behind his back, shield or anything, and then th put together. Wit you well it many a lady and knight marvel Sir Launcelot would jeopardy in such wise. Then Sir Mel came with his sword all on h Sir Launcelot shewed him op bare head and the bare left sid when he wend to have smit upon the bare head, then l avoided the left leg and the l and put his right hand and his stoke, and so put it on a great sleight, and then with go Sir Launcelot smote him on th such a buffet that the stroke ca head in two parts. Then there more to do but he was drawn off field. And at the great instance knights of the Table Round suffered him to be interred, mention made upon him who s and for what cause he was slai then the king and the queen ma of Sir Launcelot, and more cherished, than ever he was afo

CHAP. X.

How Sir Urre came into Aribu.
for to be healed of his wounds, king Aribur would begin to bar

Then, as the French book mention, there was a good ki the land of Hungary, his na Sir Urre, and he was an adv knight, and in all places wh might hear of any deeds of th there would he be. So it hap Spain there was an earl’s son, he was Alphegus, and at a greatment in Spain this Sir Urre, kn Hungary, and Sir Alphegus of encountered together for very e so either undertook other to th ance, and by fortune Sir Urre Alphegus, the earl’s son of Spa this knight that was slain ha Sir Urre, or ever he was slain
THE ADVENTURE OF SIR URRE.

Chap. XI.

How King Arthur handled Sir Urre, and after him many other knights of the Round Table.

Then King Arthur looked upon Sir Urre, and the king thought he was a full likely man when he was whole. And King Arthur made him to be taken down off the litter, and laid him upon the earth, and there was laid a cushion of gold that he should kneel upon. And then Arthur said, Noble fair knight, me repenteth of thy hurt, and for to courage all other noble knights I will pray thee softly to suffer me to handle your wounds. Most noble christened king, said Urre, do as ye list, for I am at the mercy of God, and ness. What is his name? said Arthur. My good and gracious lord, she said, his name is Sir Urre of the Mount. In good time, said the king, and sith ye are come into this land ye are right welcome. And wit you well here shall your son be healed, and ever any christian man may heal him. And for to give all other men of worship courage I myself will assay to handle your son, and so shall all the kings, dukes, and earls that be here present with me at this time; thereto will I command them, and well I wot they shall obey and do after my commandment. And wit you well, said King Arthur unto Urre’s sister, I shall begin to handle him and search unto my power, not presuming upon me that I am so worthy to heal your son by my deeds, but I will encourage other men of worship to do as I will do. And then the King commanded all the kings, dukes, and earls, and all noble knights of the Round Table that were there that time present, to come into the meadow of Carlisle. And so at that time there were but an hundred and ten of the Round Table, for forty knights were that time away. And so here we must begin at King Arthur, as is kindly to begin at him that was the most man of worship that was christened at that time.
at your commandment. So then Arthur softly handled him, and then some of his wounds renewed upon bleeding. Then the king Cliaance of Northumberland searched, and it would not be. And then Sir Barant le Apres, that was called the king with the hundred knights, he assayed, and failed; and so did king Urience, of the land of Gore. So did king Anguissance of Ireland; so did king Nentres of Garloth; so did king Carados of Scotland; so did the duke Galahalt, the haut prince; so did Constantine, that was Sir Carados's son, of Cornwall; so did duke Chalance of Clarance; so did the earl Ulbause; so did the earl Lambaile; so did the earl Aristause. Then came in Sir Gawanine, with his three sons, Sir Gingalin, Sir Florence, and Sir Lovel; these two were begotten upon Sir Brandiles's sister; and all they failed. Then came in Sir Agravaine, Sir Gaheris, Sir Morred, and the good knight Sir Garath, which was of very knighthood worth all the brethren. So came knights of Launcelot's kin, but Sir Launcelot was not that time in the court, for he was that time upon his adventures. Then Sir Lionel, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Bors de Ganis, Sir Iblamor de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis de Ganis, Sir Gahalantine, Sir Galihodin, Sir Menaduke, Sir Villars the valiant, Sir Hebes le Renoumes. All these were of Sir Launcelot's kin, and all they failed. Then came in Sir Sagramor le Desirous, Sir Dodinas le Savage, Sir Dinadan, Sir Bruin le Noire, that Sir Kay named la Cote Male Taille, and Sir Kay the seneschal, Sir Kay de Stranges, Sir Meliot de Logris, Sir Petipase of Winchelsea, Sir Galleron of Galway, Sir Melion of the mountain, Sir Cardok, Sir Uwaine les Avoitres, and Sir Ozanna le Cure Hardy. Then came in Sir Astamore, and Sir Gromere, Grummor's son, Sir Cosselme, Sir Servause le Breuse, that was called a passing strong knight. For, as the book saith, the chief Lady of the lake feasted this Sir Launcelot, and Sir Servause le Breuse, and when she had feasted them both at sundry times, she prayed them to give her a boon, and they granted it her, and then she prayed Sir Servause that he would promise her never to do battle against Sir Launcelot du Lake; and in the same wise she prayed Sir Launcelot never to do battle against Sir Servause; and so either promised her. For the French book saith that Sir Servause had never courage nor lust to do battle against no man, but if it were against giants, and against dragons, and wild beasts. So we pass unto them that, at the king's request, made them all that were there at that high feast, as of the knights of the Table Round, for to search Sir Urre: to that intent the king did it, to wit which was the noblest knight among them.

Then there came Sir Aglovale, Sir Durnore, Sir Tor, and king Pellinore begat them all, first, Sir Tor, Sir Aglovale, Sir Durnore, Sir Lamorak, the most noblest knight, one that ever was in Arthur's days as for a worldly knight, and Sir Percivale that was peerless, except Sir Galahad, in holy deeds, but they died in the quest of the Sangreal. Then came Sir Grislet le Fise de Dieu, Sir Luca the botteler, Sir Bedivere his brother, Sir Brandiles, Sir Constantine, Sir Cador's son of Cornwall, that was king after Arthur's days, and Sir Clegis, Sir Sadok, Sir Dinas le seneschal of Cornwall, Sir Fergus, Sir Diant, Sir Lambegus, Sir Clarrus of Clermont, Sir Cloddrus, Sir Hectimeere, Sir Edward of Carnarvan, Sir Dinas, Sir Priamus, that was christened by Sir Tristram the noble knight, and these three were brethren; Sir Hellaine le Blank, that was son unto Sir Bors and king Brandegoris's daughter, and Sir Brian de Listinoise; Sir Gautere, Sir Reynold, Sir Gillemere, were three brethren that Sir Launcelot won upon a bridge in Sir Kay's arms. Sir Guiart le Petite, Sir Bellangere le Beuse, that was son to the good knight Sir Alisander le Orphelin, that was slain by the treason of king Mark. Also that traitor king slew the noble knight Sir Tristram, as he sat harping afore his lady La Beale
Sir Perimones, brother to them both, that was called the red knight, that Sir Gareth wan when he was called Beaumains. All these hundred knights and ten searched Sir Urre’s wounds, by the commandment of king Arthur.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Launcelot was commanded by Arthur to handle his wounds, and anon be was all whole, and how they thanked God.

Mercy, said king Arthur, where is Sir Launcelot du Lake, that he is not here at this time? Thus as they stood and spake of many things, there was espied Sir Launcelot, that came riding toward them, and told the king: Peace, said the king, let no manner thing be said until he be come to us. So when Sir Launcelot espied king Arthur he descended from his horse, and came to the king, and saluted him, and them all. Anon as the maid, Sir Urre’s sister, saw Sir Launcelot, she ran to her brother there as he lay in his litter, and said, Brother, here is come a knight that my heart giveth greatly unto. Fair sister, said Sir Urre, so doth my heart light against him, and certainly I hope now to be healed, for my heart giveth unto him more than to all these that have searched me. Then said king Arthur unto Sir Launcelot, Ye must do as we have done; and told Sir Launcelot what they had done, and shewed him them all that had searched him. Heaven defend me, said Sir Launcelot, when so many kings and knights have assayed and failed, that I should presume upon me to achieve that all ye my lords might not achieve. Ye shall not choose, said king Arthur, for I will command you for to do as we all have done. My most renowned lord, said Sir Launcelot, ye know well I dare not nor may not disobey your commandment, but and I might or durst, wit you well I would not take upon me to touch that wounded knight, to that intent that I should pass all other knights; heaven defend me from that shame. Ye take it wrong.
said king Arthur, ye shall not do it for no presumption, but for to bear us fellowship, insomuch ye be a fellow of the Table Round, and wit you well, said king Arthur, and ye prevail not and heal him, I dare say there is no knight in this land may heal him, and therefore I pray you do as we have done. And then all the kings and knights for the most part prayed Sir Launcelot to search him, and then the wounded knight Sir Urre set him up weakly, and prayed Sir Launcelot heartily, saying, Courteous knight, I require thee for God’s sake heal my wounds, for me thinketh, ever sithen ye came here my wounds grieve me not. Ah my fair lord, said Sir Launcelot. Jesu would that I might help you, I shame me sore that I should be thus rebuked, for never was I able in worthiness to do so high a thing. Then Sir Launcelot kneeled down by the wounded knight, saying, My lord Arthur, I must do your commandment, the which is sore against my heart. And then he held up his hands, and looked into the east, saying secretly unto himself, Thou blessed Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, I beseech thee of thy mercy, that my simple worship and honesty be saved, and thou, blessed Trinity, thou mayest give power to heal this sick knight, by thy great virtue and grace of thee, but, good Lord, never of myself. And then Sir Launcelot prayed Sir Urre to let him see his head; and then, devoutly kneeling, he ransacked the three wounds, that they bled a little, and forthwith all the wounds fair healed, and seemed as they had been whole a seven year. And in likewise he searched his body of other three wounds, and they healed in likewise. And then the last of all he searched the which was in his hand, and, anon, it healed fair. Then king Arthur, and all the kings and knights, kneeled down, and gave thanks and lovinings unto God, and to his blessed mother, and ever Sir Launcelot wept as he had been a child that had been beaten. Then king Arthur let array priests and clerks in the most devouest manner, to bring in Sir Urre within Carlisle, with singing and loving to God. And when this was done, the king let clothe him in the richest manner that could be thought; and then were but few better made knights in all the court, for he was passingly well made and bigly: and Arthur asked Sir Urre how he felt himself. My good lord, he said, I felt myself never so lusty. Will ye just, and deeds of arms? said king Arthur. Sir, said Sir Urre, and I had all that longed unto justs, I would soon be ready.

CHAP. XIII.

How there was a party made of an hundred knights against an hundred knights, and of other matters.

Then king Arthur made a party of hundred knights to be against hundred knights. And so, upon the morrow, they justed for a diamond; but there justed none of the dangerous knights; and so, for to shorten this tale, Sir Urre and Sir Lavaine justed best that day, for there was none of them but he overthrew and pulled down thirty knights; and then, by the assent of all the kings and lords, Sir Urre and Sir Lavaine were made knights of the Table Round. And Sir Lavaine cast his love to dame Felolole, Sir Urre’s sister, and then they were wedded together with great joy, and king Arthur gave to every one of them a barony of lands. And this Sir Urre would never go from Sir Launcelot, but he, and Sir Lavaine, awaited evermore upon him; and they were in all the court accounted for good knights, and full desirous in arms; and many noble deeds they did, for they would have no rest, but ever sought adventures. Thus they lived in the court, with great nobleness and joy, long time. But every night and day Sir Agravaine, Sir Gawaine’s brother, awaited queen Guenever and Sir Launcelot du Lake, to put them to a rebuke and shame. And so leave I here of this tale, and overskip great books of Sir Launcelot du Lake, what great adventures he did when he was called Le Chevaler du Chariot. For, as the French book saith, because of despite that knights and ladies called
knight that rode in the chariot, re judged to the gallows; there- despite of all them that named he was carried in a chariot a month, for but little after that he Sir Meliagrance in the queen's he never in a twelve month horseback. And, as the French book saith, he did that twelve month more than forty battles. And because I have lost the very matter of Le Chevaler du Chariot, I depart from the tale of Sir Launcelot, and here I go unto the Morte of king Arthur, and that caused Sir Agrawaine.

Explicit liber ix.
hereafter followeth the moost pytous history of the morte of kyng Arthur, the whiche is the xx. book.

The Twentieth Book.

CHAP. I.
Agravaine and Sir Mordred were pon Sir Gawaine for to disclose between Sir Launcelot and queen yer.
y, when every lusty heart flound burgeneth; for as the season to behold and comfortable, so woman rejoice and gladden of coming with his fresh flowers; er, with his rough winds and useth a lusty man and woman r and sit fast by the fire. So season, as in the month of May, a great anger and unhap that ot till the flower of chivalry of world was destroyed and slain: was long upon two unhappy the which were named Sir ne and Sir Mordred that were unto Sir Gawaine. For this vaine and Sir Mordred had ever late unto the queen dame Gue- nd to Sir Launcelot, and daily ntry they ever watched upon Sir ot. So it mis-happed Sir Gau- nd all his brethren were in king chamber, and then Sir Agra- lid thus openly, and not in no that many knights might hear vel that we all be not ashamed see and to know how Sir Laun- celot goeth with the queen, and all we know it so, and it is shamefully suffered of us all, that we all should suffer so noble a king as king Arthur is so to be shamed. Then spake Sir Gawaine, and said, Brother, Sir Agrawaine, I pray you, and charge you, move no such matters no more afore me; for wit ye well, said Sir Gawaine, I will not be of your counsel. Truly, said Sir Gaheris and Sir Gareth, we will not be knowing, brother Agrawaine, of your deeds. Then will I, said Sir Mordred. I believe well that, said Sir Gawaine, for ever, unto all unhappiness, brother Sir Mordred, thereto will ye grant, and I would that ye left all this, and made you not so busy, for I know, said Sir Gawaine, what will fall of it. Fall of it what fall may, said Sir Agrawaine, I will disclose it to the king. Not by my counsel, said Sir Gawaine, for and there rise war and wrake betwixt Sir Launcelot and us, wit you well, brother, there will many kings and great lords hold with Sir Launcelot. Also, brother Sir Agravaine, said Sir Gawaine, ye must remem- ber how oftentimes Sir Launcelot hath rescued the king and the queen, and the best of us all had been full cold at the heart-root, had not Sir Launcelot been better than we; and that hath he proved himself full oft. And as for my part,
said Sir Gawaine, I will never be against Sir Launcelot, for one day's deed, when he rescued me from king Carados of the dolorous tower, and slew him, and saved my life. Also, brother Sir Agravaine, and Sir Mordred, in likewise Sir Launcelot rescued you both, and three-score and two, from Sir Turquin. Me thinketh, brother, such kind deeds and kindness should be remembered. Do as ye list, said Sir Agravaine, for I will hide it no longer. With these words came to them king Arthur. Now, brother, stint your noise, said Sir Gawaine. We will not, said Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred. Will ye so? said Sir Gawaine, then God speed you, for I will not hear your tales, nor be of your counsel. No more will I, said Sir Gareth and Sir Gaheris, for we will never say evil by that man: for because, said Sir Gareth, Sir Launcelot made me knight, by no manner ought I to say ill of him. And therewithal they three departed, making great dole. Alas, said Sir Gawaine and Sir Gareth, now is this realm wholly mischieved, and the noble fellowship of the Round Table shall be dispersed. So they departed.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Agravaine disclosed their love to king Arthur, and how king Arthur gave them licence to take him.

And then Sir Arthur asked them what noise they made. My lord, said Agravaine, I shall tell you that I may keep no longer. Here is I and my brother, Sir Mordred, brake unto my brother Sir Gawaine, Sir Gaheris, and to Sir Gareth, how this we know all, that Sir Launcelot holdeth your queen, and hath done long, and we be your sister's sons, and we may suffer it no longer; and all we wot that ye should be above Sir Launcelot, and ye are the king that made him knight, and, therefore, we will prove it that he is a traitor to your person. If it be so, said Sir Arthur, wit you well he is none other, but I would be loth to begin such a thing, but I might have proofs upon it; for Sir Launcelot is an hardly knight, and all ye know he is the best knight among us all, and, but if be taken with the deed, he will fight with him that bringeth up the noise, and I know no knight that is able to match him. Therefore, and it be sooth as ye say, I would he were taken with the deed. For, as the French book saith, the king was full loth thereto, that any noise should be upon Sir Launcelot and his queen; for the king had a deeming, but he would not hear of it; for Sir Launcelot had done so much for him and for the queen so many times, that, wit ye well, the king loved him passingly well. My lord, said Sir Agravaine, ye shall ride to-morrow on hunting, and doubt ye not, Sir Launcelot will not go with you. Then when it draweth toward night, ye may send the queen word that ye will lie out all that night, and so may ye send for your cooks; and then, upon pain of death, we shall take him with the queen, and either we shall bring him to you dead or quick. I will well, said the king, then I counsel you, said the king, take with you sure fellowship. Sir, said Agravaine, my brother, Sir Mordred, and I will take with us twelve knights of the Round Table. Beware, said king Arthur, for I warn you ye shall find him wight. Let us deal, said Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred. So on the morn, king Arthur rode on hunting, and sent word to the queen that he would be out all that night. Then Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred got to them twelve knights, and did themselves in a chamber, in the castle of Carlisle, and these were their names: Sir Colgrevance, Sir Mador de la Porte, Sir Gingaline, Sir Meliot de Logris, Sir Petipase of Winchelsea, Sir Galleron of Galway, Sir Melion of the mountain, Sir Astamore, Sir Gromore Somir Joure, Sir Curselaune, Sir Florence, Sir Lovel. So these twelve knights were with Sir Mordred and Sir Agravaine. And all they were of Scotland, either of Sir Gawaine's kin, either well willers to his brethren. So when the night came, Sir Launcelot told Sir Bors how he would go that night, and speak with the queen. Sir,
OF THE QUEEN AND LAUNCELOT.

s, ye shall not go this night, sa. Why? said Sir Laun-
said Sir Bors, I dread me Agravaine, that waiteth you you shame, and us all, and my heart against no going went to the queen, so much I mistrust that the king is right from the queen, because, e, he hath lain some watch I the queen, and therefore I Ie of treason. Have ye no Sir Launcelot, for I shall go, gain, and make no tarrying. Bors, that me sore repented me sore that your going shalt wrath us all. Fair Ied Sir Launcelot, I marvel why ye say thus, sitten the sent for me, and wit ye well not be so much a coward, I understand I will see her. God speed you well, said send you sound and safe.

CHAP. III.
auncelot was eespied in the chamber, and bow Sir Agra-
t Sir Mordred came with gits to slay him.

Launcelot departed, and took under his arm, and so in his : noble knight put himself opardy, and so he passed to the queen's chamber. as the French book saith, Sir Agravaine, and Sir with twelve knights with e Round Table, and they rying voice, Traitor knight, lot du Lake, now art thou d thus they cried with a that all the court might nd they all fourteen were l points as they should fight. 

Alas, said queen Guenever, mischeived both. Madam, Launcelot, is there here any chin your chamber that I my poor body withal, and any, give it me, and I shall their malice. Truly, said the queen, I have none armour, shield, sword, nor spear, wherefore I dread me sore our long love is come to a mischievous end; for, I hear by their noise, there be many noble knights, and well I wot they be surely armed, against them ye may make no resistance; wherefore ye are likely to be slain, and then shall I be burnt. For, and ye might escape them, said the queen, I would not doubt but that ye would rescue me in what danger that ever I stood in. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, in all my life was I never bested that I should be thus shamefully slain for lack of mine armour. But ever in one Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred cried, Traitor knight, come out of the queen's chamber, for wit thou well thou art so beset that thou shalt not escape. Oh mercy, said Sir Launcelot, this shameful cry and noise I may not suffer, for better were death at once, than thus to endure this pain. Then he took the queen in his arms, and kissed her, and said, Most noble christian queen, I beseech you, as ye have ever been my special good lady, and I at all times your true poor knight unto my power, and as I never failed you in right nor in wrong, since the first day that king Arthur made me knight, that ye will pray for my soul if that I here be slain. For well I am well assured that Sir Bors my nephew and all the remnant of my kin, with Sir Lavaine and Sir Urre, that they will not fail you to rescue you from the fire, and therefore, mine own lady, recomfort yourself whatsoever come of me, that ye go with Sir Bors my nephew, and Sir Urre, and they all will do you all the pleasure that they can or may, that ye shall live like a queen upon my lands. Nay, Launcelot, said the queen, wit thou well I will never live after thy days, but, and thou be slain, I will take my death as meekly for Jesu Christ's sake, as ever did any Christian queen. Well, madam, said Launcelot, sith it is so that the day is come that our love must depart, wit you well I shall sell my life as dear as I may, and a thousand fold, said Sir Launcelot, I am more
heavier for you than for myself. And now I had leuer than to be lord of all Christendom, that I had sure armour upon me, that men might speak of my deeds or ever I were slain. Truly, said the queen, I would and it might please God that they would take me and slay me, and suffer you to escape. That shall never be, said Sir Launcelot. God defend me from such a shame, but Jesu be thou my shield and mine armour.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Launcelot slew Sir Colgrevance, and armed him in bis harness, and after slew Sir Agravaine and twelve of his fellows.

And therewith Sir Launcelot wrapped his mantle about his arm well and surely; and by then they had gotten a great form out of the hall, and therewithal they rashed at the door. Fair lords, said Sir Launcelot, leave your noise and your rashing, and I shall set open this door, and then may ye do with me what it liketh you. Come off then, said they all, and do it, for it availleth thee not to strive against us all, and therefore let us into this chamber, and we shall save thy life until thou comest to king Arthur. Then Launcelot unbarrèd the door, and with his left hand he held it open a little so that but one man might come in at once. And so anon, there came striding a good knight, a much man and large, and his name was Colgrevance of Gore, and he with a sword strake at Sir Launcelot mightily, and he put aside the stroke, and gave him such a buffet upon the helmet that he fell groveling dead within the chamber door, and then Sir Launcelot with great might drew that dead knight within the chamber door; and then Sir Launcelot with the help of the queen and her ladies was lightly armed in Sir Colgrevance's armour. And ever stood Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred, crying, Traitor knight, come out of the queen's chamber. Leave your noise, said Sir Launcelot unto Sir Agravaine, for wit ye well, Sir Agravaine, ye shall not prison me this night, and therefore am by my counsel, go ye all from the chamber door, and make not stir and such manner of slander, for I promise you by my hood, and ye will depart and make no more noise, I shall as to-morrow before you all, before the king then let it be seen which of ye and either else ye all, will accuse treason, and there I shall answer as a knight should, that hither to the queen for no manner engine, and that will I prove and it good upon you with mine Fie on thee traitor, said Sir Agravaine, and Sir Mordred, we will have maugre thy head, and slay thee, list, for we let thee wit, we be the choice of king Arthur, thee or to slay thee. Ah sire, Sir Launcelot, is there none other with you? then keep yourself. Sir Launcelot set all open the chamber door, and mightily and knightly strode in amongst them, and at first buffet he slew Sir Agravaine and twelve of his fellows within while after he laid them coldly on earth, for there was none of them that might stand Sir Launcelot buffet. Also Sir Launcelot went Sir Mordred, and he fled with might. And then Sir Launcelot turned again unto the queen, and Madam, now wit you well that true love is brought to an end, and will king Arthur ever be my friend therefore, madam, and it like you may have you with me, I shall suffer from all manner adventures daily. That is not best, said the queen, seemeth now ye have done soe harm, it will be best ye hold ye with this. And if ye see that as to they will put me unto the death may ye rescue me as ye think best, will well, said Sir Launcelot, for ye no doubt while I am living rescue you. And then he kissed and either gave other a ring, there he left the queen and went his lodging.
CHAP. V.

Launcelot came to Sir Bors and in bow be bad sped, and in what were be had been, and bow be it.

Sir Bors saw Sir Launcelot, he never so glad of his home coming as then. Mercy, said Sir Launcelot, be ye all armed? What this? Sir, said Sir Bors, after were departed from us, we all of your blood, and your well were so troubled, that some of out of our beds naked, and some dreams caught naked swords in lands, therefore, said Sir Bors, there is some great strife at hand; we all deemed that ye were with some treason, and therefore we made us thus ready, what need ye were in. My fair nephew, Launcelot unto Sir Bors, now wit all, that this night I was harder bested than ever I was in and yet I escaped. And so he me all how, and in what manner, he heard of before. And therefore now, said Sir Launcelot, I pray that ye will be of good heart in ed soever I stand, for now is the time to us all. Sir, said Sir Bors, welcome that God sendeth us, and had much weal with you and worship, and therefore we will woe with you as we have taken all. And therefore they said all, there many good knights, Look ye discomfort, for there nis no knights under heaven but that be able to grieve them as much may us. And therefore discom- yourself by no manner, and ye other together that we love, and eth us, and what that ye will ne shall be done. And there Launcelot, said they, we will woe with the weal. Gramercy, Launcelot, of your good com- in my great distress, my fair ye comfort me greatly, and am beholden unto you. But fair nephew, I would that ye did in all haste that ye may, or it be forth-days, that ye will look in their lodging that been lodged here night about the king, which will hold with me, and which will not, for now I would know which were my friends from my foes. Sir, said Sir Bors, I shall do my pain, and, or it be seven of the clock, I shall wit of such as ye have said before, who will hold with you.

Then Sir Bors called unto him Sir Lionel, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis de Ganis, Sir Gahalantine, Sir Galihodin, Sir Galihud, Sir Menadeuke, with Sir Villiers the Valiant, Sir Hebes le Renoumes, Sir Lavaine, Sir Ure of Hungary, Sir Nerouenus, Sir Plenorius: these two knights Sir Launcelot made, and the one he was upon a bridge, and therefore they would never be against him. And Sir Harry le Fise du Lake and Sir Selises of the dolorous tower, and Sir Melias de Lile, and Sir Bellangere le Beuse, which was Sir Alisander le Orphelin's son, because his mother, dame Alis le Beale Pilgrim, and she was kin unto Sir Launcelot, and he held with him. So there came Sir Palamides, and Sir Safere his brother, to hold with Sir Launcelot, and Sir Clegis of Sadok, and Sir Dinas, Sir Clarius of Cleremont. So these two and twenty knights drew them together; and by then they were armed on horseback, and promised Sir Launcelot to do what he would. Then there fell to them, what of Northgalis and of Cornwall, for Sir Lamorak's sake and for Sir Tristram's sake, to the number of a fourscore knights.

My lords, said Sir Launcelot, wit you well I have been, ever since I came into this country, well willed unto my lord king Arthur, and unto my lady queen Guenever, unto my power, and this night, because my lady the queen sent for me to speak with her, I suppose it was made by treason, howbeit I dare largely excuse her person, notwithstanding I was there by a forecast nigh slain, but, as God provided me, I escaped all their malice and treason. And then that noble knight, Sir Launcelot, told
they said all, We will do
I put this to you, said &
that if my lord Arthur by
will to-morn in his heat
the queen to the fire, then
—now, I pray you, couns
best to do? Then they sa
with one voice, Sir, us t
that ye knightly rescu t
somuch as she shall be b
your sake, and it is to su
might be handled, ye sh
same death, or a mor
death; and, sir, we say
have many times rescued t
for other men's quarrels,
is more your worship that
queen from this peril, i
hath it for your sake.

Then Sir Launcelot st
said, My fair lords, wit
would be loth to do th
should dishonour you or i
wit you well, I would be
lady the queen should di
death, but it be so
counsel me to rescue he
much harm or I rescue hi
venture I shall there des
my best friends, that sho
pent me: and peradven
t some, and they could v
about, or disobey my lord
ty they would soon come to:
I were loth to hurt: and
I rescue her, where shall
That shall be the least c
said Sir Bors: how di
knight Sir Tristram by yo
Kept not he with him Le
near three year in Joyo
which was done by your e
and that same place is y
in likewise may ye do, an
take the queen lightly aw:
the king will judge her to
in Joyous Gard ye may k
enough, until the heat of
past. And then shall ye
the queen to the king wi
ship, and then, peradven
t have thank for her bringi
love and thank where oth
hat is hard to do, said Sir for by Sir Tristram I may ning. For when by means Sir Tristram brought again soud unto king Mark from d, look what befell on the hamefully that false traitor slew him as he sat harping Lady La Beale Isoud, with a strowe he thrust him in behind d. It grieveth me, said Sir to speak of his death, for all may not find such a knight. truth, said Sir Bors, but there shall courage you and us all: all that king Arthur and king never like of conditions, for never yet man that could prove untrue of his promise. So, oft tale, they were all con for better or for worse, if so be queen were on that morn the fire, shortly they all she her. And so by the adLauncelot they put them all shment in a wood as nigh they might. And there they to wit what the king would should be against me. Now I am sure the noble fellowship of the Round Table is broken for ever, for with him will many a noble knight hold: and now it is fallen so, said the king, that I may not with my worship but the queen must suffer the death. So there was made great ordinance in this heat, that the queen must be judged to the death. And the law was such in those days, that whatsoever they were, of what estate or degree, if they were found guilty of treason, there should be none other remedy but death, and either the men or the taking with the deed should be cause of their hasty judgment. And right so was it ordained for queen Guenever, because Sir Mordred was escaped sore wounded, and the death of thirteen knights of the Round Table:—these proofs and experiences caused king Arthur to command the queen to the fire, there to be burnt. Then spake Sir Gawaine and said: My lord Arthur, I would counsel you not to be over hasty, but that ye would put it in respite, this judgment of my lady the queen, for many causes. One it is, though it were so that Sir Launcelot were found in the queen's chamber, yet it might be that he came thither for none evil, for ye know, my lord, said Sir Gawaine, that the queen is much beholden unto Sir Launcelot, more than unto any other knight, for oft-times he hath saved her life, and done battle for her when all the court refused the queen, and, peradventure, she sent for him for goodness and for none evil, to reward him for his good deeds that he had done to her in time past. And, peradventure, my lady the queen sent for him to that intent that Sir Launcelot should come to her good grace privily and secretly, weening to her that it was best so to do, in eschewing and dreading of slander. For oft-times we do many things that we ween it be for the best, and yet, peradventure, it turneth to the worst. For I dare say, said Sir Gawaine, that my lady your queen is to you both good and true. And as for Sir Launcelot, said Sir
Gawaine, I dare say he will make it good upon any knight living that will put upon himself villainy or shame, and in likewise he will make good for my lady dame Guenever. That I believe well, said king Arthur, but I will not that way with Sir Launcelot, for he trusteth so much upon his hands and his might that he doubteth no man, and therefore for my queen he shall never fight more, for she shall have the law. And if I may get Sir Launcelot, wit ye well he shall have a shameful death. Jesu defend, said Sir Gawaine, that I may never see it. Why say ye so? said king Arthur, for sooth ye have no cause to love Sir Launcelot, for this night last past he slew your brother Sir Agravaine, a full good knight, and also almost he had slain your other brother Sir Mordred; and also there he slew thirteen noble knights; and also, Sir Gawaine, remember ye he slew two sons of yours, Sir Florence and Sir Lovel. My lord, said Sir Gawaine, of all this I have knowledge, of whose deaths I repent me sore, but insomuch I gave them warning, and told my brethren and my sons aforehand, what would fall in the end, insomuch they would not do by my counsel I will not meddle me thereof, nor revenge me nothing of their deaths, for I told them it was no bote to strive with Sir Launcelot; howbeit I am sorry of the death of my brethren and of my sons, for they are the causers of their own death. For oft-times I warned my brother Sir Agravaine, and I told him the perils the which be now fallen.

CHAP. VIII.

How Sir Launcelot and his kinsmen rescued the queen from the fire, and bow he slew many knights.

Then said the noble king Arthur to Sir Gawaine, Dear nephew, I pray you make you ready in your best armour, with your brethren Sir Gaheris and Sir Gareth, to bring my queen to the fire, there to have her judgment, and receive the death. Nay, my most noble lord, said Sir Gawaine, that will I never do, for, wit you well, I will never be in that place where so noble a queen as is my lady dame Guenever shall take a shameful end. For wit you well, said Sir Gawaine, my heart will never serve me to see her die, and it shall never be said that even I was of your counsel of her death. Then, said the king to Sir Gawaine, suffer your brothers Sir Gaheris and Sir Gareth to be there. My lord, said Sir Gawaine, wit you well they will be loth to be there present, because of many adventures which be like there to fall, but they are young and full unable to say you nay. Then spake Sir Gaheris and the good knight Sir Gareth unto Sir Arthur, Sir, ye may well command us to be there, but wit you well it shall be sore against our will; but and we be there by your straight commandment, ye shall plainly hold us there excused, we will be there in peaceable wise, and bear none harness of war upon us. In the name of God, said the king, then make you ready, for she shall soon have her judgment anon. Alas, said Sir Gawaine, that ever I should endure to see this woeful day. So Sir Gawaine turned him, and wept heartily, and so he went into his chamber, and then the queen was led forth without Carlisle, and there she was despoiled into her smock. And so then her ghostly father was brought to her, to be shaven of her misdeeds. Then was there weeping, and wailing, and wringing of hands, of many lords and ladies. But there were but few in comparison that would bear any armour for to strength the death of the queen. Then was there one that Sir Launcelot had sent unto that place for to espy what time the queen should go unto her death. And anon, as he saw the queen despoiled into her smock, and so shaven, then he gave Sir Launcelot warning. Then was there but spurring and plucking up of horses, and right so they came to the fire, and who that stood against them, there they were slain, there might none withstand Sir Launcelot, so all that bare arms and withstood them, there were they slain—full many a noble knight. For there
OF THE SORROW OF KING ARTHUR.

Sir Belias le Orgulous, Sir Es, Sir Griffet, Sir Brandiles, Sir le, Sir Tor, Sir Gauto, Sir Sir Reynold's three brethren, as, Sir Priamus, Sir Kay the Sir Driant, Sir Lambegus, Sir e, Sir Pertilope, Sir Perimones, aren, that were called the green and the red knight. And so in ing and hurling as Sir Laun- ang here and there, it mis- him to slay Gaheris and Sir he noble knight, for they were and unaware, for, as the French th, Sir Launcelot smote Sir nd Sir Gaheris upon the brain ere through they were slain in howbeit in very truth Sir Laun- them not, and so were they ad among the thickest of the then when Sir Launcelot had e and slain, and put to flight would withstand him, then he sought unto dame Guenever, and little and a gown to be cast upon then he made her to be set him, and prayed her to be of her. Wit you well the queen that she was escaped from the and then she thanked God and celot. And so he rode his way queen, as the French book to Joyous Gard, and there he as a noble knight should do, y great lords and some kings Launcelot many good knights, y noble knights drew unto celot. When this was known hat king Arthur and Sir Laun re at debate, and many were y of their debate.

CHAP. IX.

wrow and lamentation of king for the death of bis nephews and good knights, and also for the bis wife.

we again unto king Arthur, n it was told him how, and in inner of wise the queen was avy from the fire, and when he the death of his noble knights, and in especial for Sir Gaheris' and Sir Gareth's death, then the king swooned for pure sorrow. And when he awoke of his swoon, then he said, Alas that ever I bare crown upon my head, for now have I lost the fairest fellowship of noble knights that ever held christian king to- gether. Alas, my good knights be slain away from me, now within these two days I have lost forty knights, and also the noble fellowship of Sir Launcelot and his blood, for now I may never hold them together no more with my worship. Alas, that ever this war began. Now, fair fellows, said the king, I charge you that no man tell Sir Gawaine of the death of his two brethren, for I am sure, said the king, when Sir Gawaine heareth tell that Sir Gareth is dead, he will go nigh out of his mind. Mercy, said the king, why slew he Sir Gareth and Sir Gaheris? for I dare say as for Sir Gareth he loved Sir Launcelot above all men earthly. That is truth, said some knights, but they were slain in the hurting, as Sir Launcelot thrang in the thick of the press, and as they were unarm'd he smote them, and wist not whom that he smote, and so unhappily they were slain. The death of them, said Arthur, will cause the greatest mortal war that ever was. I am sure, wist Sir Gawaine that Sir Gareth were slain, I should never have rest of him till I had destroyed Sir Launcelot's kin and himself both, or else he to destroy me; and therefore, said the king, wit you well my heart was never so heavy as it is now, and much more I am sorrier for my good knights' loss, than for the loss of my fair queen, for queens I might have enow, but such a fellowship of good knights shall never be together in no company; and now I dare say, said king Arthur, that there was never chris- tian king held such a fellowship to- gether, and alas that ever Sir Launcelot and I should be at debate. Ah, Agra- vaine, Agravaine, said the king, Jesu forgive it thy soul, for thine evil will, that thou and thy brother Sir Mor- dred hardest unto Sir Launcelot, hath caused all this sorrow. And ever
among these complaints the king wept and swooned.

Then there came one unto Sir Gawaine, and told him how the queen was led away with Sir Launcelot, and nigh a twenty-four knights slain. O Jesu defend my brethren, said Sir Gawaine, for full well wist I that Sir Launcelot would rescue her, or else he would die in that field; and to say the truth he had not been a man of worship, had he not rescued the queen that day, in so much she should have been burnt for his sake: and as in that, said Sir Gawaine, he hath done but knightly, and as I would have done myself, and I had stood in like case. But where are my brethren? said Sir Gawaine, I marvel I hear not of them. Truly, said that man, Sir Gareth and Sir Gaheris be slain. Jesu defend, said Sir Gawaine, for all the world I would not that they were slain, and in especial my good brother Sir Gareth. Sir, said the man, he is slain, and that is great pity. Who slew him? said Sir Gawaine. Sir, said the man, Launcelot slew them both. That may I not believe said Sir Gawaine, that he slew my brother Sir Gareth, for I dare say my brother Gareth loved him better than me and all his brethren, and the king both. Also I dare say, and Sir Launcelot had desired my brother Sir Gareth with him, he would have been with him against the king and us all, and therefore I may never believe that Sir Launcelot slew my brother. Sir, said this man, it is noised that he slew him.

CHAP. X.

How king Arthur at the request of Sir Gawaine concluded to make war against Sir Launcelot, and laid siege to his castle called Joyous Gard.

Alas, said Sir Gawaine, now is my joy gone. And then he fell down and swooned, and long he lay there as he had been dead. And then when he arose of his swoon, he cried out sorrowfully and said, Alas! And right so Sir Gawaine ran to the king crying and weeping, O king Arthur, mine uncle, my good brother Sir Gareth is slain; is my brother Sir Gaheris, there were two noble knights. The wept and he both, and so the swooning. And when they revived, then spake Sir Gawain will go see my brother Sir Ga may not see him, said the king caused him to be interred, and heris both; for I well under stood ye would make over much so the sight of Sir Gareth shall cause your double sorrow. lord, said Sir Gawaine, how sl brother Sir Gareth? mine c lord, I pray you tell me. T he king, I shall tell you as me, Sir Launcelot slew him at heris both. Alas, said Sir they bare none arms against neither of them both. I wot was, said the king, but, as it Launcelot slew them both in the press, and knew them therefore let us shape a reme revenge their deaths. My king and mine uncle, said Sir Gav you well, now I shall make promise that I shall hold by my word, that from this day I shall fail Sir Launcelot, until the have slain the other: and then quire you, my lord and king, to the war, for wit you well revenged upon Sir Launcelot, for as ye will have my servant love, now haste you thereto, your friends. For I promise said Sir Gawaine, for the dea brother Sir Gareth I shall Launcelot throughout seven realms but I shall slay him, I shall slay me. Ye shall not né him so far, said the king, for, say, Sir Launcelot will abide you in the Joyous Gard, a people draweth unto him as I. That may I believe, said Sir but my lord, he said, assay you and I will assay mine. It shall said the king, and, as I suppo be big enough to draw him out biggest tower of his castle.
letters and writs throughout, both in the length and
for to assammon all his
suo unto Arthur drew
dukes, and earls, so that he
ost. And when they were
the king informed them all
Launcelot had bereft him his
king and all his host
ready to lay siege about Sir
here he lay within Joyous
of heard Sir Launcelot,
him of many good knights,
held many knights, and
own sake, and some for the
Thus they were on both
ished and garnished of all
nings that longed to the war.
thur's host was so big that
would not abide him in;
was full loth to do
the king; but Sir Laun-
to his strong castle with
viclual, and as many noble
gh suffice within the town.
Then came king Arthur
waine, with an huge host,
ge all about Joyous Gard,
rown and at the castle, and
ade strong war on both
no wise Sir Launcelot
at nor go out of his castle
ether he would none of
ights to issue out, neither
town nor of the castle,
weeks were past.

CHAP. XI.

ication between king Aribur
ancelot, and bow king Aribur

fell upon a day in harvest
uncelot looked over the
ake on high unto king
ir Gawaine. My lords both,
il is in vain that ye make
for here win ye no worship,
and dishonour, for and
ome myself out, and my
, I should full soon make
ar. Come forth, said
Launcelot, and thou darest,
and I promise thee I shall meet thee in
midst of the field. God defend me, said
Sir Launcelot, that ever I should en-
counter with the most noble king that
made me knight. Fie upon thy fair
language, said the king, for wit you well,
and trust it, I am thy mortal foe, and
ever will to my death day, for thou hast
slain my good knights and full noble
men of my blood, that I shall never
recover again: also thou hast dis-
honoured my queen, and holden her
many winters, and sithen like a traitor
taken her from me by force. My most
noble lord and king, said Sir Launcelot,
ye may say what ye will, for ye wot well
with yourself I will not strive, but there
as ye say I have slain your good knights,
I wot well that I have done so, and that
me sore repenteth, but I was enforced to
do battle with them, in saving of my
life, or else I must have suffered them to
have slain me. And as for my lady
queen Guenever, except your person of
your highness, and my lord Sir Gawaine,
there is no knight under heaven that
dare make it good upon me, that ever I
was traitor unto your person. And
where it pleaseth you to say that I have
holden my lady your queen years and
winters, unto that I shall make a large
answer, and prove it upon any knight
that beareth the life, except your person
and Sir Gawaine, that my lady queen
Guenever is a true lady unto your per-
son, as any is living unto her lord, and
that will I make good with my hands;
howbeit, it hath liked her good grace
to have me in charity, and to cherish me
more than any other knight, and unto
my power I again have deserved her
love, for oft-times, my lord, ye have
consented that she should be burnt and
destroyed in your heat, and then it for-
tuned me to do battle for her, and or I
departed from her adversary they con-
fessed their untruth, and she full worship-
fully excused. And at such times, my
lord Arthur, said Sir Launcelot, ye loved
me, and thanked me when I saved your
queen from the fire, and then ye promised
me for ever to be my good lord, and
now me thinketh ye reward me full ill
for my good service: and, my good lord, me seemeth I had lost a great part of my worship in my knighthood, and I had suffered my lady your queen to have been burnt, and insomuch she should have been burnt for my sake. For sithen I have done battles for your queen in other quarrels than in mine own, me seemeth now I had more right to do battle for her in right quarrel, and therefore my good and gracious lord, said Sir Launcelot, take your queen unto your good grace, for she is both fair, true, and good. Fie on thee, false recreant knight, said Sir Gawaine, I let thee wit my lord mine uncle king Arthur shall have his queen and thee, maugre thy visage, and slay you both whether it please him. It may well be, said Sir Launcelot, but wit ye well, my lord Sir Gawaine, and me list to come out of this castle, ye should win me and the queen more harder than ever ye wan a strong battle. Fie on thy proud words, said Sir Gawaine; as for my lady the queen, I will never say of her shame, but thou false and recreant knight, said Sir Gawaine, what cause hast thou to slay my good brother Sir Gareth, that loved thee more than all my kin? Alas, thou madest him knight with thine own hands; why slewest thou him that loved thee so well? For to excuse me, said Sir Launcelot, it helpeth me not, but by the faith that I owe to the high order of knighthood, I should with as good will have slain my nephew Sir Bors de Ganis at that time: but alas, that ever I was so unhappy, said Launcelot, that I had not seen Sir Gareth and Sir Gaheris. Thou liest, recreant knight, said Sir Gawaine, thou slewest him in despite of me: and therefore wit thou well I shall make war to thee, and all the while that I may live. That me repenteth, said Sir Launcelot, for well I understand it helpeth me not to seek none accordment, while ye Sir Gawaine are so mischievously set. And if ye were not, I would not doubt to have the good grace of my lord Arthur. I believe it well, false recreant knight, said Sir Gawaine, for thou hast many long days overed me, and us all, and destroyed many of our good knights. Ye say as it pleaseth you, said Sir Launcelot, and yet may it never be said on me and openly proved, that ever I before cast of treason, slew no good knight, as, my lord Sir Gawaine, ye have done. And so did I never, but in my defence, that I was driven thereto, in saving of my life. A false knight, said Sir Gawaine, that the meanest by Sir Lamorak: wit thou well I slew him. Ye slew him not yourself, said Sir Launcelot, it had been overmuch on hand for you to have slain him, for he was one of the best knights christened of his age, and it was great pity of his death.

CHAP. XII.

How the cousins and kinsmen of Sir Launcelot excited him to go out to battle, and how they made them ready.

Well, well, said Sir Gawaine to Sir Launcelot, sithen thou upbraidest me of Sir Lamorak, wit thou well I shall never leave thee till I have thee at such avail that thou shalt not escape my hands. I trust you well enough, said Sir Launcelot, and ye may get me I shall get but little mercy. But, as the French book saith, the noble king Arthur would have taken his queen again, and have been accorded with Sir Launcelot, but Sir Gawaine would not suffer him by no manner of mean. And then Sir Gawaine made many men to blow upon Sir Launcelot, and all at once they called him False recreant knight! Then when Sir Bors de Ganis, Sir Ector de Maris, and Sir Lionel heard this outcry, they called to them Sir Palamides, Sir Saifer's brother, and Sir Lavaine, with many more of their blood, and all they went unto Sir Launcelot, and said thus, My lord Sir Launcelot, wit ye well we have great scorn of the great rebukes that we heard Gawaine say to you; wherefore we pray you and charge you, as ye will have our service, keep us no longer within these walls, for wit you well, plainly, we will ride into the field, and do battle with them. For ye fare as a man that were afeard, and for all your
OF THE WAR BETWEEN ARTHUR AND LAUNCELOT.

it will not avail you. For

1, Sir Gawaine will not suffer

recorded with king Arthur;

re fight for your life, and

and ye dare. Alas, said Sir

or to ride out of this castle

attle, I am full loth. Then

ot spake on high unto Sir Ar-

Gawaine, My lords, I require

seech you, sithen that I am

d and conjured to ride into

at neither you my lord king

you Sir Gawaine, come not

d. What shall we do then? 

vaine, is this the king's quar-

: to fight? and it is my quarrel

eth Sir Launcelot, because

of my brother Sir Gareth.

I needs unto battle, said Sir

now wit you well, my lord

Sir Gawaine, ye will repent

er I do battle with you. And

departed either from other, 

other party made them ready

orn for to do battle, and

ance was made on both

Sir Gawaine let purvey

ists for to wait upon Sir Laun-

overset him, and to slay

on the morn at undorne

was ready in the field with

hosts, and then Sir Laun-

came out at three

full good array. And Sir

e in the foremost battle, and

ot came in the middle, and

came out at the third gate.

came in order and rule as full

its. And always Sir Laun-

ed all his knights in any wise 

g Arthur and Sir Gawaine.

CHAP. XIII.

waine justed and smote down

it, and bow Sir Launcelot

g Arthur.

me forth Sir Gawaine from

ost, and he came before and

just, and Sir Lionel was a

, and lightly he encountered

waine, and there Sir Gawaine

lionel throughout the body,

that he dashed to the earth like as he

had been dead. And then Sir Ector de

Maris and other more bare him into the

castle. Then began a great stoure, and

much people was slain, and ever Sir

Launcelot did what he might to save

the people on king Arthur's party. For

Sir Palamides, and Sir Bors, and Sir

Safere overthrew many knights, for they

were deadly knights, and Sir Blamor de

Ganis, and Sir Bleoberis de Ganis, with

Sir Bellangere le Beuse, these six knights

did much harm. And ever king Arthur

was nigh about Sir Launcelot to have

slain him, and Sir Launcelot suffered

him, and would not strike again. So

Sir Bors encountered with king Arthur,

and there with a spear Sir Bors smote

him down; and so he alight and drew

his sword, and said to Sir Launcelot,

Shall I make an end of this war? and

that he meant to have slain king Arthur.

Not so hardy, said Sir Launcelot, upon

pain of thy head, that thou touch him

no more: for I will never see that most

noble king, that made me knight, neither

slain 'ne shamed. And therewithal Sir

Launcelot alight off his horse, and took

up the king, and horsed him again, and

said thus, My lord Arthur, for God's

love stint this strife, for ye get here no

worship and I would do mine utter-

ance, but always I forbear you, and ye,

nor none of yours, forbeareth me: my

lord remember what I have done in

many places, and now I am evil

rewarded.

Then when king Arthur was on

horseback, he looked upon Sir Laun-

celot, and then the tears brast out of

his eyes, thinking on the great courtesy

that was in Sir Launcelot, more than in

any other man. And therewith the

king rode his way, and might no longer

behold him, and said, Alas, that ever

this war began! And then either parties

of the battles withdrew them to repose

them, and buried the dead, and to the

wounded men they laid soft salves, and

thus they endured that night till on the

morn, and on the morn by undorne they

made them ready to do battle. And

then Sir Bors led the forward. So
upon the morn there came Sir Gawaine as brim as any boar, with a great spear in his hand, and when Sir Bors saw him, he thought to revenge his brother Sir Lionel of the despite that Sir Gawaine did him the other day. And so they that knew either other feuted their spears, and with all their might of their horses and themselves they met together so felonously that either bare other through, and so they fell both to the earth; and then the battles joined, and there was much slaughter on both parties. Then Sir Launcelot rescued Sir Bors, and sent him into the castle. But neither Sir Gawaine nor Sir Bors died not of their wounds; for they were all holpen. Then Sir Lavaine and Sir Urre prayed Sir Launcelot to do his pain, and fight as they had done:—For we see ye forbear and spare, and that doth much harm, therefore we pray you spare not your enemies no more than they do you. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, I have no heart to fight against my lord Arthur, for ever me seemeth I do not as I ought to do. My lord, said Sir Palamides, though ye spare them all this day they will never give you thank; and if they may get you at avail ye are but dead. So then Sir Launcelot understood that they said him truth, and then he strained himself more than he did aforehand, and because his nephew Sir Bors was sore wounded. And then within a little while, by even-song time, Sir Launcelot and his party better stood, for their horses went in blood past the fetlocks, there was so much people slain. And then, for pity, Sir Launcelot withheld his knights, and suffered king Arthur's party for to withdraw them on side. And then Sir Launcelot's party withdrew them into his castle, and either party buried the dead bodies and put salve unto the wounded men. So when Sir Gawaine was hurt, they on king Arthur's party were not so orgulous as they were toforehand to do battle. Of this war was noised through all Christendom, and at the last it was noised afore the Pope; and he considering the great goodness of king Arthur and of Sir Launcelot, that was the most noblest knights of the wherefore the Pope called unto noble clerk, that at that time was present,—the French book saith the bishop of Rochester—and th' gave him bulls under lead unit Arthur of England, charging him pain of interdicting of all Engla he take his queen dame Guenever him again, and accord with Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. XIV.

How the pope sent down his bulls peace, and how Sir Launcelot the queen to king Arthur.

So when this bishop was at Carlisle he shewed the king thes. And when the king understood bulls, he nist what to do: full would have been accorded w. Launcelot, but Sir Gawaine would not suffer him; but as for to have the thereto he agreed. But in no w. Gawaine would not suffer the accord with Sir Launcelot, but the queen he consented. And til the bishop had of the king his greet and his assurance, as he was anointed king, that Sir La should come safe and go safe that the queen should not be unto, of the king, nor of none for no thing done afore time past of all these appointments the brought with him sure assurance writing, to shew Sir Launcelot when the bishop was come to Gard, there he shewed Sir La how the Pope had written to and unto him, and there he tol the perils if he withheld the que the king. It was never in my th said Launcelot, to withhold the from my lord Arthur; but in so m. should have been dead for my sa seemeth it was my part to save h. and put her from that danger till recover might come. And now to God, said Sir Launcelot, that the hath made her peace; for God kn said Sir Launcelot, I will be a th
more gladder to bring her again
never I was of her taking away,—
this, I may be sure to come safe
go safe, and that the queen shall
her liberty as she had before, and
for no thing that hath been sur-
d afre this time, she never from
day stand in no peril; for else, said
Launcelot, I dare adventure me to
her from an harder shower than
I kept her. It shall not need you,
the bishop, to dread so much: for
you well the Pope must be obeyed;
its were not the Pope's worship nor
poor honesty to wit you distressed,
other the queen, neither in peril nor
named. And then shewed Sir
Launcelot all his writing, both from
Pope and from king Arthur. This
were enough, said Sir Launcelot, for
ill well I dare trust my lord's own
writing and his seal, for he was never
named of his promise.

Therefore, said Sir Launcelot unto
be bishop, ye shall ride unto the king
fore, and recommend me unto his good
pace, and let him have knowing
hat this same day eight days, by the
pace of God, I myself shall bring my
ady queen Guenever unto him. And
hen say ye unto my most redoubted
ing, that I will say largely for the
queen, that I shall none except for dread,
for fear, but the king himself, and my
lord Sir Gawaine, and that is more for
the king's love than for himself. So
he bishop departed, and came to the
ing at Carlisle, and told him all how
Sir Launcelot answered him: and then
he tears brast out of the king's eyes.
Then Sir Launcelot purveyed him an
mained knights, and all were clothed
in green velvet, and their horses trapped
to their heels, and every knight held a
branch of olive in his hand in tokening
of peace, and the queen had four and
twenty gentleswomen following her. in
the same wise, and Sir Launcelot had
twelve coursers following him, and on
every courser sat a young gentleman,
and all they were arrayed in green
velvet, with sarpis of gold about their
quarters, and the horse trapped in the
same wise down to the heels with many
ouches, set with stones and pearls in
gold, to the number of a thousand; and
she and Sir Launcelot were clothed in
white cloth of gold tissue, and right so
as ye have heard, as the French book
makheth mention, he rode with the queen
from Joyous Gard to Carlisle, and so Sir
Launcelot rode throughout Carlisle, and
so in the castle, that all men might be-
hold and wit you well there was many a
weeping eye. And then Sir Launcelot
himself alight, and avoided his horse,
and took the queen, and so led her
where king Arthur was in his seat, and
Sir Gawaine sat before him, and many
other great lords. So when Sir Laun-
celot saw the king and Sir Gawaine,
then he led the queen by the arm, and
then he kneeled down, and the queen
both. Wit you well, then was there
many bold knights there with king
Arthur that wept as tenderly as though
they had seen all their kin afore them.
So the king sat still, and said no word.
And when Sir Launcelot saw his coun-
tenance, he arose and pulled up the
queen with him, and thus he spake full
knighthly:—

CHAP. XV.

Of the deliverance of the queen to the king
by Sir Launcelot, and what language
Sir Gawaine bad to Sir Launcelot.

My most redoubted king, ye shall
understand, by the Pope's command-
ment, and yours, I have brought to you
my lady the queen, as right requireth;
and if there be any knight, of whatsoever
degree that he be, except your per-
son, that will say or dare say but that
she is true to you, I here myself, Sir
Launcelot du Lake, will make it good
upon his body that she is a true lady
unto you: but liars ye have listened, and
that has caused debate betwixt you and
me. For time hath been, my lord
Arthur, that ye have been greatly
pleased with me, when I did battle for
my lady your queen; and full well ye
know my most noble king, that she
hath been put to great wrong or this
time, and sithen it pleased you at many
times that I should fight for her, me seemeth, my good lord, I had more cause to rescue her from the fire, insomuch she should have been burnt for my sake. For they that told you those tales were liars, and so it fell upon them. For, by likelihood, had not the might of God been with me, I might never have endured fourteen knights, and they armed and afores spoken, and I unamed and not afores spoken; for I was sent for unto my lady your queen, I wit not for what cause, but I was not so soon within the chamber door, but anon Sir Agraine and Sir Mordred came me traitor and recreant knight. They called thee right, said Sir Gawaine. My lord Sir Gawaine, said Sir Launcelot, in their quarrel they proved themselves not in the right. Well, well, Sir Launcelot, said king Arthur, I have given thee no cause to do to me as thou hast done, for I have worshipped thee and thine more than any of all my knights. My good lord, said Sir Launcelot, so ye be not displeased, ye shall understand I and mine have done you oft better service than any other knights have done in many divers places; and where ye have been full hard bested divers times, I have myself rescued you from many dangers, and ever unto my power I was glad to please you, and my lord Sir Gawaine both, in justs and tourneys, and in battles set, both on horseback and on foot, I have often rescued you, and my lord Sir Gawaine, and many more of your knights in many divers places. For now I will make avaunt, said Sir Launcelot, I will that ye all wit that yet I found never no manner of knight, but that I was over-hard for him, and I had done my utterance, thanked be God; howbeit I have been matched with good knights, as Sir Tristram and Sir Lamorak, but ever I had a favour unto them, and a deeming what they were; and I take God to record, said Sir Launcelot, I never was wroth nor greatly heavy with no good knight, and I saw him busy about to win worship: and full glad I was ever when I found any knight that might endure me on horseback and on foot.

Sir Carados of the dolorous a full noble knight, and a pas man, and that wot ye, my lord waine; for he might well I noble knight, when he by pulled you out of your side bound you overthrow afore saddle bow; and there, in Gawaine, I rescued you, and aforesight. Also I brother, Sir Turquin, in like Sir Gaheris your brother afore him, and there I res brother, and slew that Sir Turquin delivered three score and four lord Arthur's knights out of. And now I dare say, said Sir I met never with so strong kind so well fighting, as was Sir Carados Turquin, for I fought with the uttermost; and therefore Launcelot unto Sir Gawaine, ye ought of right for to remember for and I might have your good would trust to God to have Arthur's good grace.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the communication between waine and Sir Launcelot, other language.

The king may do as he will. Gawaine, but wit thou well, Launcelot, thou and I shall never be while we live, for thou hast of my brethren, and twain did slew traitorly and piteously bare none harness against them would bear. God would the armed, said Sir Launcelot, for they been on live. And wit Sir Gawaine, as for Sir Gar none of my kinsmen so much him, and ever while I live, Launcelot, I will bewail Sir death, not all only for the that I have of you, but may causen me to be sorrowful. I made him knight; another well he loved me above all other and the third is, he was pass
HOW LAUNCELOT DEPARTED OVER THE SEA.

sous, and gentle, and well con-
the fourth is, I wist well, anon
that Sir Gareth was dead, I
fer after have your love, but
war betwixt us; and also I
hat ye would cause my noble
for ever to be my mortal
as Jesu be my help, said Sir
I slew never Sir Gareth
Gaheriis by my will, but
ever they were unarmed that
lay. But thus much I shall
said Sir Launcelot, if it may
king's good grace, and you,
sr Gawaine: I shall first begin
sh, and there I shall go in my
foot, and at every ten miles
found, and cause to make an
religion, of what order that ye
me, with an whole convent
and read day and night in
or Sir Gareth's sake and Sir
And this shall I perform from
unto Carlisle; and every house
sufficient livelihood, and this
form while I have any liveli-
christendom, and there is none
se religious places, but they
formed, furnished and gar-
all things as an holy place
be, I promise you faithfully.
Sir Gawaine, me thinketh
fairer, holier, and more better
suls, than ye my most noble
you, Sir Gawaine, to war
for thereby shall ye get none
en all knights and ladies that
wep as they were mad, and
fell on king Arthur's cheeks.
lot, said Sir Gawaine, I have
heard thy speech, and thy
fers, but wit thou well, let
lo as it pleaseth him, I will
ive my brothers' death, and in
he death of my brother Sir
nd if mine uncle, king Arthur,
with thee, he shall lose my
or wit thou well, thou art both
e king and to me. Sir, said
clot, he beareth not the life
make that good, and if that
waine, will charge me with so
ing, ye must pardon me, for
then needs must I answer you. Nay,
said Sir Gawaine, we are past that
this time, and that caused the Pope, for
he hath charged mine uncle the king,
that he shall take his queen again, and
to accord with thee, Sir Launcelot, as
for this season, and therefore thou shalt
go safe, as thoucamest. But in this
land thou shalt not abide past fifteen
days, such summons I give you:—so
the king and we were consented and
accorded, or thou camest hither; and
else, said Sir Gawaine, wit thou well,
that thou shouldst not have come here,
but if it were maugre thy head. And
if it were not for the Pope's command-
ment, said Sir Gawaine, I should do
battle with mine own body against thy
body, and prove it upon thee that thou
hast been both false unto mine uncle
king Arthur, and to me both, and that
shall I prove upon thy body when thou
art departed from hence, wheresoever I
find thee.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Launcelot departed from the king
and from Joyous Gard over seaward,
and what knights went with him.

Then Sir Launcelot sighed, and there-
with the tears fell on his cheeks, and then
he said thus: Alas, most noble christian
realm, whom I have loved above all
other realms, and in thee have I gotten
a great part of my worship, and now I
shall depart in this wise. Truly me
repenteth that ever I came in this realm
that should be thus shamefully banished,
undeserved and causeless. But fortune
is so variant, and the wheel so movable,
there is no constant abiding, and that
may be proved by many old chronicles
of noble Hector, and Troilus, and Ali-
sander the mighty conqueror, and many
other more. When they were most in
their royalty, they slight lowest; and
so fareth by me, said Sir Launcelot, for
in this realm I had worship, and by me
and mine all the whole Round Table
hath been increased more in worship by
me and my blood than by any other.
And therefore wit thou well, Sir Ga-
waine, I may live upon my lands as
well as any knight that here is. And if ye, most redoubted king, will come upon my lands with Sir Gawaine, to war upon me, I must endure you as well as I may. But as to you, Sir Gawaine, if that ye come there, I pray you charge me not with treason nor felony, for, and ye do, I must answer you. Do thou thy best, said Sir Gawaine, therefore he thee fast that thou were gone, and wit thou well we shall soon come after, and break the strongest castle that thou hast upon thy head. That shall not need, said Sir Launcelot, for and I were as orgulous set as ye are, wit ye well I should meet with you in midst of the field. Make thou no more language, said Sir Gawaine, but deliver the queen from thee, and pike thee lightly out of this court. Well, said Sir Launcelot, and I had wist of this short coming, I would have advised me twice or that I had come hither; for and the queen had been so dear to me as ye noise her, I durst have kept her from the fellowship of the best knights under heaven. And then Sir Launcelot said unto Guenever, in hearing of the king and them all, Madam, now I must depart from you and this noble fellowship for ever; and sithen it is so, I see you to pray for me, and say me well, and if ye be hard bested by any false tongues, lightly, my lady, let send me word, and if any knight's hands may deliver you by battle, I shall deliver you. And therewith Sir Launcelot kissed the queen, and then he said all openly, Now let see what he be in this place, that dare say the queen is not true unto my lord Arthur: let see who will speak, and he dare speak. And therewith he brought the queen to the king, and then Sir Launcelot took his leave and departed; and there was neither king, duke ne earl, baron ne knight, lady nor gentlewoman, but all they wept as people out of their mind, except Sir Gawaine; and when the noble Sir Launcelot took his horse, to ride out of Carlisle, there was sobbing and weeping for pure dole of his departing; and so he took his way unto Joyous Gard, and then ever after he called it the Dolorous Gard. And thus departed Sir Launcelot from the court for ever. And so when he came to Joyous Gard, he called his fellowship unto him, and asked them what they would do. Then they answered all wholly together with one voice, they would as he would do. My fair fellows, said Sir Launcelot, I must depart out of this most noble realm, and now I shall depart it grieve me sore, for I shall depart with no worship. For a banished man departed never out of no realm with no worship, and that is my heaviness, for ever I fear after my days that they shall chronicle upon me that I was banished out of this land; and else, my fair lords, be ye sure, and I had not dread shame, my lady queen Guenever and I should never have departed. Then spake many noble knights, as Sir Palmides, Sir Safir his brother, and Sir Bellangere le Beuse, and Sir Urre with Sir Lavaine, with many other, Sir, and ye be so disposed to abide in this country, we will never fail you; and if ye list not to abide in this land, there is none of the good knights that here be will fail you, for many causes. One is, all we that be not of your blood shall never be welcome to the court. And sithen it liked us to take a part with you in your distress and heaviness in this realm, wit you well it shall like us as well to go in other countries with you, and there to take such part as ye do. My fair lords, said Sir Launcelot, I well understand you, and, as I can, thank you: and ye shall understand such livelihood as I am born unto I shall depart with you, in this manner of wise, that is for to say, I shall depart all my livelihood and all my lands freely among you, and I myself will have as little as any of you, for have I sufficient that may long to my person, I will ask none other rich array; and I trust to God to maintain you on my lands as well as ever were maintained any knights. Then spake all the knights at once, He have shame that will leave you; for we all understand in this realm will be
How no quiet, but ever strife and debate, now the fellowship of the Round Table is broken; for by the noble fellowship of the Round Table was king Arthur born, and by their nobleness the king and all his realm was in quiet and in rest. And a great part, they said all, was because of your nobleness.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Launcelot passed over the sea, and how he made great lords of the knights that went with him.

Truly, said Sir Launcelot, I thank you all of your good sayings, howbeit, I wot well, in me was not all the stability of this realm. But in that I might I did my devoir, and well, I am sure, I knew many rebellions in my days that by me were appeased; and I trow we all shall hear of them in short space, and that sore repenteth. For ever I dread me, said Sir Launcelot, that Sir Mordred will make trouble, for he is passing envious, and applieth him to trouble. So they were accorded to go with Sir Launcelot to his lands. And to make short tale, they trussed, and paid all that would ask them. And wholly an hundred knights departed with Sir Launcelot at once, and made their avows they would never leave him for weal nor for woe; and so they shipped at Cardiff, and sailed unto Benwick: some men call it Bayonne, and some men call it Beaume, where the wine of Beaume is. But to say the sooth, Sir Launcelot and his nephews were lords of all France, and of all the lands that longed unto France, he and his kindred rejoiced it all through Sir Launcelot’s noble prowess. And then Sir Launcelot stuffed and furnished and garnished all his noble towns and castles. Then all the people of those lands came unto Sir Launcelot on foot and hands. And so when he had established all these countries, he shortly called a parliament; and there he crowned Sir Lionel king of France; and Sir Bors he crowned him king of all king Claudas’ lands; and Sir Ector de Maris, that was Sir Launcelot’s youngest brother, he crowned him king of Benwick, and also king of all Guienne, that was Sir Launcelot’s own land. And he made Sir Ector prince of them all, and thus he departed. Then Sir Launcelot advanced all his noble knights, and first he advanced them of his blood; that was Sir Blamor he made him duke of Limosin in Guienne, and Sir Bleoberis he made him duke of Poictiers, and Sir Gahalanin he made him duke of Querne, and Sir Galihodin he made him duke of Sentonge, and Sir Galihud he made him earl of Perigot, and Sir Menadeuke he made him earl of Roerge, and Sir Villiers the valiant he made him earl of Bearn, and Sir Hebes le Renoumes he made him earl of Comange, and Sir Lavaine he made him earl of Arminak, and Sir Urre he made him earl of Estrake, and Sir Neroneus he made him earl of Pardiak, and Sir Plenorius he made him earl of Foise, and Sir Selises of the dolorous tower he made him earl of Masaue, and Sir Melias de Lile he made him earl of Tursauk, and Sir Bellangere le Bewse he made him earl of the Landes, and Sir Palamides he made him duke of the Provence, and Sir Safr he made him duke of Langedok, and Sir Clegis he gave him the earldom of Agente, and Sir Sadok he gave him the earldom of Surlat, and Sir Dinas le seneschal he made him duke of Anjou, and Sir Clarus he made him duke of Normandy. Thus Sir Launcelot rewarded his noble knights, and many more, that me seemeth it were too long to rehearse.

CHAP. XIX.

How king Arthur and Sir Gawain made a great host ready to go over sea to make war on Sir Launcelot.

So leave we Sir Launcelot in his lands, and his noble knights with him, and return we again unto king Arthur and to Sir Gawaine, that made a great host ready, to the number of three score thousand, and all thing was made ready for their shipping to pass over the sea.
and so they shipped at Cardiff. And there king Arthur made Sir Mordred chief ruler of all England, and also he put queen Guenever under his governance; because Sir Mordred was king Arthur's son, he gave him the rule of his land, and of his wife, and so king Arthur passed over the sea and landed upon Sir Launcelot's lands, and there he burnt and wasted, through the vengeance of Sir Gawaine, all that they might overrun. When this word came to Sir Launcelot, that king Arthur and Sir Gawaine were landed upon his lands, and made a full destruction and waste, then spake Sir Bors and said, My lord Sir Launcelot, it is shame that we suffer them thus to ride over our lands, for wit you well, suffer ye them as long as ye will, they will do ye no favour, and they may handle you. Then said Sir Lionel, that was ware and wise, My lord Sir Launcelot, I will give you this counsel, let us keep our strong walled towns until they have hunger and cold, and blow on their nails, and then let us freshly set upon them, and shred them down as sheep in a field, that aliens may take ensample for ever how they land upon our lands. Then spake king Bagdemagus to Sir Launcelot, Sir, your courtesy will shend us all, and thy courtesy hath waked all this sorrow: for, and they thus over our lands ride, they shall by process bring us all to nought, whilst we thus in holes us hide. Then said Sir Galihud unto Sir Launcelot, Sir, here be knights come of kings' blood that will not long droop, and they are within these walls, therefore give us leave, like as we be knights, to meet them in the field, and we shall slay them, that they shall curse the time that ever they came into this country. Then spake seven brethren of North Wales, and they were seven noble knights, a man might seek in seven lands or he might find such seven knights: then they all said at once, Sir Launcelot, let us out ride with Sir Galihud, for we be never wont to cower in castles nor in noble towns. Then spake Sir Launcelot, that was master and governor of them all, My fair lords, wit you well I am full loth to ride out with my knights, for shedding of christian blood; and yet my lands I understand be full bare to sustain any host a while, for the mighty wars that whilom made king Claudus upon this country, upon my father king Ban, and on mine uncle king Bors; howbeit we will as at this time keep our strong walls, and I shall send a messenger unto my lord Arthur, a treaty for to take, for better is peace than always war. So Sir Launcelot sent forth a damsel, and a dwarf with her, requiring king Arthur to leave his warring upon his lands, and so she start upon a palfrey, and the dwarf ran by her side. And when she came to the pavilion of king Arthur, there she alight, and there met her a gentle knight Sir Lucan the butler, and said, Fair damsel, come ye from Sir Launcelot du Lake? Yea, sir, she said, therefore I come hither to speak with my lord the king. Alas, said Sir Lucan, my lord Arthur would love Launcelot, but Sir Gawaine will not suffer him. And then he said, I pray to God, damsel, ye may speed well, for all we that be about the king would that Sir Launcelot did best of any knight living. And so with this Lucan led the damsel unto the king, where he sat with Sir Gawaine for to hear what she would say. So when she had told her tale, the water ran out of the king's eyes, and all the lords were full glad for to advise the king as to be accorded with Sir Launcelot, save all only Sir Gawaine, and he said, My lord, mine uncle, what will ye do? will ye now turn again, now ye are past thus far upon this journey? all the world will speak of you villainy. Nay, said Arthur, wit thou well, Sir Gawaine. I will do as ye will advise me; and yet me seemeth, said Arthur, his fair provers were not good to be refused: but sithen I am come so far upon this journey. I will that ye give the damsel her answer, for I may not speak to her for pity, for her provers be so large.
CHAP. XX.

KING ARTHUR LAYS SIEGE TO BENWICK.

What message Sir Gawaine sent to Sir Launcelot, and king Arthur laid siege to Benwick, and other matters.

Then Sir Gawaine said to the damsel thus: Damsel, say ye to Sir Launcelot, that it is waste labour, now to sue to mine uncle. For tell him, and he would have made any labour for peace, he should have made it or this time: for tell him now it is too late. And say, that I, Sir Gawaine, so send him word, that I promise him, by the faith I owe unto God, and to knighthood, I shall never leave him till he have slain me, or I him. So the damsel wept and departed, and there were many weeping eyes: and so Sir Lucan brought the damsel to her palfrey, and so she came to Sir Launcelot, where he was among all his knights; and when Sir Launcelot had heard this answer, then the tears ran down by his cheeks. And then his noble knights strode about him, and said, Sir Launcelot, wherefore make ye such cheer: think what ye are, and what men we are, and let us noble knights match them in midst of the field. That may be lightly done, said Sir Launcelot, but I was never so loth to do battle, and therefore, I pray you, fair sirs, as ye love me, be ruled as I will have you, for I will always fee that noble king that made me knight. And when I may no farther, I must needs defend me, and that will be more worship for me, and us all, than to compare with that noble king whom we have all served. Then they held their language, and as that night they took their rest. And upon the morn, early, in the dawning of the day, as knights looked out, they saw the city of Benwick besieged round about, and fast they began to set up ladders. And then they defied them out of the town, and beat them from the walls mightily. Then came forth Sir Gawaine, well armed, upon a stiff steed, and he came before the chief gate with his spear in his hand, crying, Sir Launcelot, where art thou, is there none of you proud knights dare break a spear with me? Then Sir Bors made him ready, and came forth out of the town, and there Sir Gawaine encountered with Sir Bors; and at that time he smote Sir Bors down from his horse, and almost he had slain him, and so Sir Bors was rescued, and borne into the town. Then came forth Sir Lionel, brother to Sir Bors, and thought to revenge him, and either feutred their spears, and ran together, and there they met spitefully, but Sir Gawaine had such grace that he smote Sir Lionel down, and wounded him there passing sore, and then Sir Lionel was rescued, and borne into the town. And this Sir Gawaine came every day, and he failed not, but that he smote down one knight or other. So thus they endured half a year, and much slaughter was of people on both parties. Then it befell upon a day, Sir Gawaine came before the gates armed at all pieces, on a noble horse, with a great spear in his hand, and then he cried with a loud voice, Where art thou now, thou false traitor, Sir Launcelot? Why hidest thou thyself within holes and walls like a coward? Look out now, thou false traitor knight, and here I shall revenge upon thy body the death of my three brethren. All this language heard Sir Launcelot every deal, and his kin and his knights drew about him, and all they said at once to Sir Launcelot, Sir Launcelot, now must ye defend you like a knight, or else ye be shamed for ever: for now ye be called upon treason, it is time for you to stir, for ye have slept over long, and suffered over much. So God me help, said Sir Launcelot, I am right heavy of Sir Gawaine's words, for now he charged me with a great charge; and therefore I wot it as well as ye, that I must defend me, or else to be recreant. Then Sir Launcelot bade saddle his strongest horse, and bad let fetch his arms, and bring all unto the gate of the tower. And then Sir Launcelot spake on high unto king Arthur, and said, My lord Arthur, and noble king that made me knight, wit you well I am right heavy for your sake, that ye thus sue upon me, and
always I forbear you, for, and I would have been vengeable, I might have met you in midst of the field, and there to have made your boldest knights full tame: and now I have forborne half a year, and suffered you and Sir Gawaine to do what ye would do, and now I may endure it no longer, now must I needs defend myself, insomuch Sir Gawaine hath appealed me of treason,—the which is greatly against my will, that ever I should fight against any of your blood; but now I may not forsake it, I am driven thereto as a beast till a bay. Then Sir Gawaine said, Sir Launcelot, and thou darst do battle, leave thy babbling and come off, and let us ease our hearts. Then Sir Launcelot armed him lightly, and mounted upon his horse. And either of the knights gat great spears in their hands, and the host without stood still all apart, and the noble knights came out of the city by a great number, insomuch that when Arthur saw the number of men and knights he marvelled, and said to himself, Alas, that ever Sir Launcelot was against me, for now I see he hath forborne me. And so the covenant was made, there should no man nigh them, nor deal with them, till the one were dead or yielden.

CHAP. XXI.
How Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot did battle together, and how Sir Gawaine was overthrown and burt.

Then Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot departed a great way in sender, and then they came together with all their horses' might as they might run, and either smote other in midst of their shields, but the knights were so strong, and their spears so big, that their horses might not endure their buffets, and so the horses fell to the earth. And then they avoided their horses, and dressed their shields afore them. Then they stood together, and gave many sad strokes on divers places of their bodies, that the blood brast out on many sides and places. Then had Sir Gawaine such a grace and gift that an holy man had given to him, that every day in the year, from undene till high noon, his might increased those three hours, as much as thrice his strength, and that caused Sir Gawaine to win great honour. And for his sake King Arthur made an ordinance that all manner of battles for any quarrels that should be done before king Arthur, should begin at underne, and all was done for Sir Gawaine's love, that by likelihood if that Sir Gawaine were on the one part he should have the better in battle, while his strength endured three hours, but there were but few knights that time living that knew this advantage that Sir Gawaine had, but king Arthur all only. Thus Sir Launcelot fought with Sir Gawaine, and when Sir Launcelot felt his might evermore increase, Sir Launcelot wondered, and dread him sore to be shamed. For, as the French book saith, Sir Launcelot went, when he felt Sir Gawaine double his strength, that he had been a fiend and no earthly man, wherefore Sir Launcelot traced and traversed, and covered himself with his shield, and kept his might and his braid during three hours: and that while Sir Gawaine gave him many sad brunts and many sad strokes, that all the knights that beheld Sir Launcelot marvelled how he might endure him, but full little understood they that travail that Sir Launcelot had for to endure him. And then when it was past noon, Sir Gawaine had no more but his own might. Then Sir Launcelot felt him so come down; then he stretched him up, and stood near Sir Gawaine, and said thus, My lord Sir Gawaine, now I feel ye have done, now my lord Sir Gawaine I must do my part, for many great and grievous strokes I have endured you this day with great pain. Then Sir Launcelot doubled his strokes, and gave Sir Gawaine such a buffet on the helmet, that he fell down on his side, and Sir Launcelot withdrew him from him. Why withdrawest thou thee? said Sir Gawaine; now turn again, false traitor knight, and slay me; for and thou
SIR GAWAIN HAS THE WORSE AGAIN.

us, when I am whole I shall
with thee again.—I shall en-
sir, by God's grace, but wit
Sir Gawaine, I will never died knight. And so Sir
grew into the city, and Sir
was borne into one of king
pavilions, and leeches were
him, and searched and
soft ointments. And then
not said, Now have good day,
king, for, wit you well, ye
ship at these walls; and if
ny knights out bring, there
ny a man die. Therefore,
thur, remember you of old
nd however I fare Jesu be
in all places.

CHAP. XXII.

y that king Arthur made for
and of another battle where
Gawaine had the worse.

id the king, that ever this
war was begun, for ever Sir
forbeareth me in all places,
wis my kin, and that is seen
lay by my nephew Sir Ga-
ren king Arthur fell sick for
ir Gawaine, that he was sore
because of the war betwixt
ir Launcelot. So then they
thur's party kept the siege
war withoutforth, and they
kept their walls, and de-
n when need was. Thus Sir
ny sick about three weeks in
ith all manner of leech-craft
be had: and as soon as Sir
ight go and ride, he armed
points, and start upon a
id get a spear in his hand,
came riding afore the chief
wick, and there he cried on
ere art thou, Sir Launcelot?
ou false traitor knight,
nt, for I am here, Sir Gawaine,
this that I say on thee.
nguage Sir Launcelot heard,
said thus, Sir Gawaine, me
of your foul saying, that ye
use of your language, for you
wot well, Sir Gawaine, I know your
might, and all that ye may do, and well
ye wot, Sir Gawaine, ye may not greatly
hurt me. Come down, traitor knight,
said he, and make it good the contrary
with thy hands: for it mishap me
the last battle to be hurt of thy hands,
therefore, wit thou well, that I am come
this day to make amends, for I ween this
day to lay thee as low as thou laidest
me. Defend me, said Sir Launcelot, that
ever I be so far in your danger as ye
have been in mine, for then my days
were done. But Sir Gawaine, said Sir
Launcelot, ye shall not think that I
arry long, but sithen that ye so un-
knighthly call me of treason, ye shall
have both your hands full of me. And
then Sir Launcelot armed him at all
points, and mounted upon his horse,
and get a great spear in his hand, and
rode out at the gate. And both the
hosts were assembled, of them without,
and of them within, and stood in array
full manly. And both parties were
charged to hold them still, to see and
behold the battle of these two noble
knight. And then they laid their spears
in their rests, and they came together as
thunder. And Sir Gawaine brake his
spear upon Sir Launcelot in an hundred
pieces unto his hand, and Sir Launcelot
smote him with a greater might, that Sir
Gawaine's horse feet raised, and so the
horse and he fell to the earth. Then Sir
Gawaine deliverly avoided his horse, and
put his shield afore him, and eagerly
drew his sword, and bad Sir Launcelot,
Alight, traitor knight, for if this mare's
son hath failed me, wit thou well a king's
son and a queen's son shall not fail thee.

Then Sir Launcelot avoided his horse,
and dressed his shield afore him, and
drew his sword, and so stood they
together, and gave many sad strokes,
that all men on both parties had
thereof passing great wonder. But
when Sir Launcelot felt Sir Gawaine's
might so marvellously increase, he then
withheld his courage and his wind,
and kept himself wonder covert of his
might, and under his shield he traced
and traversed here and there, to break
Sir Gawaine's strokes and his courage; and Sir Gawaine enforced himself with all his might and power to destroy Sir Launcelot, for, as the French book saith, ever as Sir Gawaine's might increased, right so increased his wind and his evil will. Thus Sir Gawaine did great pain unto Sir Launcelot three hours, that he had great pain for to defend him. And when the three hours were passed, that Sir Launcelot felt that Sir Gawaine was come to his own proper strength, then Sir Launcelot said unto Sir Gawaine, Now have I proved you twice, that ye are a full dangerous knight, and a wonderful man of your might, and many wonderful deeds have you done in your days: for by your might increasing you have deceived many a full noble and valiant knight; and now I feel that ye have done your mighty deeds. Now wit you well I must do my deeds. And then Sir Launcelot stood near Sir Gawaine, and then Sir Launcelot doubled his strokes, and Sir Gawaine defended him mightily. But nevertheless Sir Launcelot smote such a stroke upon Sir Gawaine's helm, and upon the old wound, that Sir Gawaine sank down upon his one side in a swoon. And anon as he did awake, he waved and joined at Sir Launcelot as he lay, and said, Traitor knight, wit thou well I am not yet slain: come thou near me, and perform this battle unto the uttermost. I will no more do than I have done, said Sir Launcelot; for when I see you on foot I will do battle upon you all the while I see you stand on your feet; but for to smite a wounded man, that may not stand, God defend me from such a shame. And then he turned him and went his way toward the city, and Sir Gawaine evermore calling him traitor knight, and said, Wit thou well, Sir Launcelot, when I am whole, I shall do battle with thee again; for I shall never leave thee till that one of us be slain. Thus as this siege endured, and as Sir Gawaine lay sick near a month, and when he was well recovered, and ready within three days to do battle again with Sir Launcelot, right so came tidings unto Arthur from England, that made king Arthur and all his host to remove.

Here foloweth the xxi book.

The Twenty-first Book.

CHAP. I.

How Sir Mordred presumed and took on him to be king of England, and would have married the queen, his uncle's wife.

As Sir Mordred was ruler of all England, he did do make letters as though that they came from beyond the sea, and the letters specified that king Arthur was slain in battle with Sir Launcelot. Wherefore Sir Mordred made a Parliament, and called the lords together, and there he made them to choose him king, and so was he crowned at Canterbury, and held a feast there fifteen days, and afterward he drew him unto Winchester, and there he took the queen Guenever, and said plainly, that he would wed her which was his uncle's wife, and his father's wife. And so be made ready for the feast, and a day prefixed that they should be wedded; wherefore queen Guenever was passing heavy. But she durst not discover her heart, but spake fair, and agreed to Sir Mordred's will. Then she desired of Sir Mordred for to go to London, to buy all manner of things that longed unto the wedding. And because of her fair speech Sir Mordred trusted her well enough, and gave her leave to go. And so when she came to London, she took the tower of London, and suddenly, in all haste possible, she stuffed it with all manner of victual, and well garnished it with men, and so kept it.
when Sir Mordred wist and und
d how he was beguile, he was
wroth out of measure. And
it tale for to make, he went and
mighty siege about the tower of
, and made many great assaults
, and threw many great engines
em, and shot great guns. But
b t not prevail Sir Mordred, for
Guenever would never, for fair
or for foul, would never trust
in his hands again. And then
the bishop of Canterbury, the
was a noble clerk and an ho
ad thus he said to Sir Mordred:
ill ye do, will ye first dis-
God, and sithen shame yourself
knighthood? Is not king Arthur
icle, no further but your mother’s
, and are ye not his son, there-
bow may ye wed your father’s
Sir, said the noble clerk, leave
union, or else I shall curse you
ook, and bell, and candle. Do
my worst, said Sir Mordred, wit
ell I shall defy thee. Sir, said
shop, and wit you well I shall
r me to do that me ought to do.
d where ye noise where my lord
is slain, and that is not so, and
re ye will make a foul work in
. Peace, thou false priest, said
rdred, for, and thou chafe me any
shall make strike off thy head.
bishop departed, and did the
n the most orgulous wise that
be done. And then Sir Mordred
the bishop of Canterbury for to
ain him. Then the bishop fled,
ok part of his goods with him,
ent nigh unto Glastonbury, and
he was as priest hermit in a
and lived in poverty and in-holy
for well he understood that
rous war was at hand. Then
ordred sought on queen Gue-
ly letters and sones, and by fair
and foul means, for to have her
out of the tower of London, but
availed not, for she answered
ly, openly and privily, that she
ver slay herself than to be mar-
th him. Then came word to Sir
Mordred that king Arthur had raised
the siege from Sir Launcelot, and he
was coming homeward with a great
host, to be avenged upon Sir Mordred.
Therefore Sir Mordred made write
writs to all the barony of this land, and
much people drew to him. For then
was the common voice among them,
that with Arthur was none other
life but war and strife, and with Sir
Mordred was great joy and bliss. Thus
was Sir Arthur depraved and evil said
of. And many there were that king
Arthur had made up of nought, and
given them lands, might not then say of
him a good word.

Lo ye, all Englishmen, see ye not
what a mischief here was, for he that
was the most king and knight of the
world, and most loved the fellowship of
noble knights, and by him they were all
uphelden. Now might not these Eng-
lishmen hold us content with him. Lo,
thus was the old custom and usage of
this land. And also men say, that we
of this land have not yet lost nor for-
gotten that custom and usage. Alas,
this is a great default of all English-
men, for there may no thing please us
no term. And so fared the people at
that time; they were better pleased
with Sir Mordred than they were with
king Arthur, and much people drew
unto Sir Mordred, and said they would
abide with him for better and for worse.
And so Sir Mordred drew with a great
host to Dover, for there he heard say
that Sir Arthur would arrive, and so he
thought to beat his own father from his
lands. And the most party of all England
held with Sir Mordred, the people were so
new fangle.

CHAP. II.

How after that king Arthur bad tidings be
returned and came to Dover, where Sir
Mordred met him to let bis landing, and
of the death of Sir Gawaine.

And so as Sir Mordred was at Dover
with his host, there came king Arthur
with a great navy of ships, galleys, and
carracks. And there was Sir Mordred
ready awaiting upon his landage, to let
his own father to land upon the land that he was king over. Then there was launching of great boats and small, and full of noble men of arms, and there was much slaughter of gentle knights, and many a full bold baron was laid full low on both parties. But king Arthur was so courageous, that there might no manner of knights let him to land, and his knights fiercely followed him. And so they landed, maugre Sir Mordred and all his power, and put Sir Mordred aback, that he fled and all his people. So when this battle was done, king Arthur let bury his people that were dead, and then was the noble knight Sir Gawaine found in a great boat lying more than half dead. When Sir Arthur wist that Sir Gawaine was laid so low, he went unto him, and there the king made sorrow out of measure, and took Sir Gawaine in his arms, and thrice he there swooned. And when he awaked he said, Alas, Sir Gawaine, my sister's son, here now thou liest, the man in the world that I loved most, and now is my joy gone: for now, my nephew Sir Gawaine, I will discover me unto your person; in Sir Launcelot and you I most had my joy, and mine affection, and now have I lost my joy of you both, wherefore all mine earthly joy is gone from me. Mine uncle king Arthur, said Sir Gawaine, wit you well, my death day is come, and all is through mine own hastiness and wilfulness, for I am smitten upon the old wound the which Sir Launcelot gave me, on the which I feel well I must die, and had Sir Launcelot been with you as he was, this unhappy war had never begun, and of all this am I causer, for Sir Launcelot and his blood through their prowess held all your cankered enemies in subjection and danger: and now, said Sir Gawaine, ye shall miss Sir Launcelot. But, alas, I would not accord with him, and therefore, said Sir Gawaine, I pray you, fair uncle, that I may have paper, pen, and ink, that I may write to Sir Launcelot a schedule with mine own hands. And then when paper and ink was brought, then Gawaine was set up weakly by king Arthur, for I have shriven a little tofore, and then he saw by my days, I Sir Gawaine, Lot's son, of Orkney, sister's son to noble king Arthur, send thee gone and let thee have knowledge, the tenth day of May I was smitten with the old wound that thou gavest me, in the city of Benwick, and through same wound that thou gavest me come to my death-day. And I will all the world wit that I, Sir Gawaine, knight of the Table Round, soon to death, and not through thy death, but it was mine own seeking, wherefore I beseech thee, Sir Launcelot, to come again unto this realm, and see me, and pray some prayer, more or less, for my soul. And this same day I wrote this schedule, I was hurt with death in the same wound, that I had of thy hand, Sir Launcelot. And a more nobler man might I not have. Also, Sir Launcelot, for all the love ever was betwixt us, make no longer, but come over the sea in all hastening, thou mayest with thy noble rescue that noble king that matricides knight, that is my lord Arthur, for full straitly bested with a false man that is my half brother Sir Mordred, and he hath let crown him king, and would have wedded my lady Guenever, and so had he done, I not put herself in the tower of I, and so the tenth day of May last my lord Arthur and we all landed them at Dover, and there we put off false traitor Sir Mordred to flight there it misfortuned me to be smitten upon thy stroke, and at the date of this letter was written but two hours half afore my death, written with my own hand, and so subscribed with of my heart's blood. And I thee, most famous knight of the age, that thou wilt see my tomb.—And Sir Gawaine wept, and king wept, and then they swooned. And when they awaked both, th
OF SIR GAWAIN'S GHOST.

Sir Gawaine to receive his Saviour. Then Sir Gawaine prayed the king for Sir Launcelot, and to cherish we all other knights. And so at noon, Sir Gawaine yielded spirit. And then the king let him in a chapel within Dover, and there yet all men may see of him, and the same wound that Sir Launcelot gave him in.

Then was it told king Arthur. Mordred had pitched a new on Barham Down. And upon the king rode thither to him, there was a great battle betwixt and much people were slain on parties. But at the last Sir Arthur stood best, and Sir Mordred party fled unto Canterbury.

CHAP. III.

Sir Gawaine's ghost appeared g Arthur, and warned him that would not fight that day.

then the king let search all the for his knights that were slain, carbied them; and salved them weak that so sore were wounded. such people drew unto king Ar-And then they said that Sir gwarred upon king Arthur with.

And then king Arthur drew his host down by the sea side, toward Salisbury, and there assigned between king Arthur Mordred, and they should meet down beside Salisbury, and not the sea side, and this day was on a Monday after Trinity whereof king Arthur was pass-, that he might be avenged upon Mordred. Then Sir Mordred raiseth people about London, for they of Sussex, and Surrey, Estes, and sk, and of Northfolk, held the party with Sir Mordred, and many noble knight drew unto Sir Mordred to the king; but they that loved Launcelot drew unto Sir Mordred.

Trinity Sunday at night king dreamed a wonderful dream, and this, that him seemed he sat upon a chafet in a chair, and the chair was fast to a wheel, and thereupon sat king Arthur in the richest cloth of gold that might be made: and the king thought there was under him, far from him, an hideous deep black water, and therein were all manner of serpents, and worms, and wild beasts, foul and horrible: and suddenly the king thought the wheel turned up so down, and he fell among the serpents, and every beast took him by a limb. And then the king cried as he lay in his bed and slept, Help! And then knights, squires, and yeomen awakened the king; and then he was so amazed that he wist not where he was. And then he fell on slumbering again, not sleeping nor thoroughly waking. So the king seemed verily that there came Sir Gawaine unto him with a number of fair ladies with him. And when king Arthur saw him, then he said, Welcome, my sister's son, I wend thou hadst been dead, and now I see thee on live, much am I beholding unto Almighty Jesu. Oh, fair nephew, and my sister's son, what be these ladies that hither be come with you? Sir, said Sir Gawaine, all these be ladies for whom I have fought when I was man living: and all these are those that I did battle for in righteous quarrel. And God hath given them that grace at their great prayer, because I did battle for them, that they should bring me hither unto you, thus much had God given me leave, for to warn you of your death; for and ye fight as to-morn with Sir Mordred, as ye both have assigned, doubt ye not ye must be slain, and the most part of your people on both parties. And for the great grace and goodness that Almighty Jesu hath unto you, and for pity of you and many more other good men there shall be slain, God hath sent me to you, of his special grace, to give you warning, that in no wise ye do battle as to-morn, but that ye take a treaty for a month day; and proffer you largely, so as to-morn to be put in a delay. For within a month shall come Sir Launcelot, with all his noble knights, and rescue you worshipfully, and slay Sir Mordred and
all that ever will hold with him. Then Sir Gawaine and all the ladies vanished. And anon the king called upon his knights, squires, and yeomen, and charged them wightly to fetch his noble lords and wise bishops unto him. And when they were come, the king told them his vision, what Sir Gawaine had told him, and warned him that if he fought on the morn he should be slain. Then the king commanded Sir Lucan de butler, and his brother Sir Bedivere, with two bishops with them, and charged them in any wise and they might take a treaty for a month day with Sir Mordred;—And spare not, proffer him lands and goods, as much as ye think best. So then they departed, and came to Sir Mordred, where he had a grim host of an hundred thousand men. And there they intreated Sir Mordred long time, and at the last Sir Mordred was agreed for to have Cornwall and Kent, by king Arthur's days:—after, all England, after the days of king Arthur.

CHAP. IV.

How by misadventure of an adder the battle began, where Mordred was slain, and Arthur hurt to the death.

Then were they condescended that king Arthur and Sir Mordred should meet betwixt both their hosts, and every each of them should bring fourteen persons. And they came with this word unto king Arthur. Then said he, I am glad that this is done. And so he went into the field. And when Arthur should depart, he warned all his host that and they see any sword drawn. Look ye come on fiercely, and slay that traitor Sir Mordred, for I in no wise trust him. In like wise Sir Mordred warned his host that,—And ye see any sword drawn, look that ye come on fiercely, and so slay all that ever before you standeth: for in no wise I will not trust for this treaty: for I know well my father will be avenged upon me. And so they met as their pointment was, and so they were agreed and accorded thoroughly: and wine was fetched, and they drank. Right so came an adder out of a little heath bush, and it stung a knight on the foot. And when the knight felt him stungen, he looked down and saw the adder, and then he drew his sword to slay the adder, and thought of none other harm. And when the host on both parties saw that sword drawn, then they blew beames, trumpets, and horns, and shouted grimly. And so both hosts dressed them together. And king Arthur took his horse, and said, Alas this unhappy day, and so rode to his party: and Sir Mordred in likewise. And never was there seen a more sole fuller battle in no christian land. For there was but rushing and riding, joining and striking, and many a grim word was there spoken either to other, and many a deadly stroke. But ever king Arthur rode throughout the battle of Sir Mordred many times, and did full nobly as a noble king should; and at all times he fainted never. And Sir Mordred that day put him in devoir, and in great peril. And thus they fought all the long day, and never stinted, till the noble knights were laid to the cold ground, and ever they fought still, till it was near night, and by that time was there an hundred thousand laid dead upon the down. Then was Arthur wroth out of measure, when he saw his people so slain from him. Then the king looked about him, and then was he ware of all his host, and of all his good knights, were left no more on live but two knights, that was Sir Lucan de butler, and his brother Sir Bedivere: and they full were sore wounded. Jesu mercy, said the king, where are all my noble knights become. Alas that ever I should see this doleful day. For now, said Arthur, I am come to mine end. But would to God that I wist where were that traitor Sir Mordred, that hath caused all this mischief. Then was king Arthur ware where Sir Mordred leaned upon his sword among a great heap of dead men. Now give me my spear, said Arthur unto Sir Lucan, for yonder I have espied the traitor that all this woe hath wrought. Sir, let him be,
HOW ARTHUR WAS HURT TO THE DEATH.

ir Lucan, for he is unhappy: and wass this unhappy day, ye shall be well revenged upon him. Good remember ye of your night's dream, hat the spirit of Sir Gawaine told his night, yet God of his great ess hath preserved you hitherto. fore, for God's sake, my lord, off by this. For blessed be God won the field: for here we be on live, and with Sir Mordred is on live. And if ye leave off now, icked day of destiny is past. Tide stth, betide me life, saith the king, see him yonder alone, he shall escape mine hands, for at a better hall I never have him. God speed ell, said Sir Bedivere. Then the gat his spear in both his hands, an toward Sir Mordred, crying, r, now is thy death day come. when Sir Mordred heard Sir Ar-he ran until him with his sword in his hand. And then king r smote Sir Mordred under the with a foin of his spear through-the body more than a fathom. And Sir Mordred felt that he had his wound, he thrust himself, with sight that he had, up to the bur of Arthur's spear. And right so he his father Arthur with his sword in both his hands, on the side of mad, that the sword pierced the t and the brain-pan, and there- Sir Mordred fell stark dead to earth. And the noble Arthur fell swoon to the earth, and there he ed off-times. And Sir Lucan thre and Sir Bedivere oft-times l him up, and so weakly they led twixt them both to a little chapel r from the sea side. And when ng was there, he thought him well.

Then heard they people cry in eld. Now go thou, Sir Lucan, be king, and do me to wit what ns that noise in the field. So can departed, for he was griev-wounded in many places. And so went, he saw and hearkened by non-light, how the pillars and robere come into the field to pill and to rob many a full noble knigh broaches and beads, of many a g ring, and of many a rich jewel; who that were not dead all out, they slew them for their harness their riches. When Sir Lucan ur stood this work, he came to the kin soon as he might, and told him all he had heard and seen. Therefore mine advice, said Sir Lucan, it is that we bring you to some town. I w it were so, said the king.—

CHAP. V.

How king Arthur commanded to cas sword Excalibur into the water, and he was delivered to ladies in a borg

But I may not stand, my head w so. Ah, Sir Launcelot, said king thur, this day have I sore missed! Alas, that ever I was against thee now have I my death, whereof Gawaine me warned in my day. Then Sir Lucan took up the king one part, and Sir Bedivere the c part, and in the lifting, the swooned, and Sir Lucan fell in a sw with the lift, that the part of his bo fell out of his body, and therewith noble knight's heart brast. And king Arthur came to himself again beheld Sir Lucan how he lay foat at the mouth, and part of his bo lay at his feet. Alas, said the king, is unto me a full heavy sight to see noble duke so die for my sake, fo would have holpen me that had need of help than I. Alas, he w not complain him, his heart was so to help me. Now Jesu have m upon his soul. Then Sir Bedivere for the death of his brother. Leave mourning and weeping, said the l for all this will not avall me: wit thou well, and I might live m the death of Sir Lucan would grief evermore; but my time lieth fast, the king. Therefore, said Arthur, thou Excalibur, my good sword, an with it to yonder water side, and w thou comest there, I charge thee th my sword in that water, and c again, and tell me what thou t
seest. My lord, said Bedivere, your commandment shall be done, and lightly bring you word again. So Sir Bedivere departed, and by the way he beheld that noble sword, that the pommel and haft were all of precious stones, and then he said to himself, If I throw this rich sword in the water, thereof shall never come good, but harm and loss. And then Sir Bedivere hid Excalibur under a tree. And as soon as he might he came again unto the king, and said he had been at the water, and had thrown the sword into the water. What sawest thou there? said the king. Sir, he said, I saw nothing but waves and winds. That is untruly said of thee, said the king; therefore go thou lightly again, and do my command as thou art to me lief and dear, spare not, but throw it in. Then Sir Bedivere returned again, and took the sword in his hand; and then him thought sin and shame to throw away that noble sword; and so left he hid the sword, and returned again, and told to the king that he had been at the water, and done his commandment. What saw thou there? said the king. Sir, he said, I saw nothing but the waters war the waves war. Ah traitor, untrue, said king Arthur, now hast thou betrayed me twice. Who would have wend that thou that hast been to me so lief and dear, and thou art named a noble knight, and would betray me for the riches of the sword. But now go again lightly, for thy long tarrying puttest me in great jeopardy of my life, for I have taken cold. And but if thou do now as I bid thee, if ever I may see thee, I shall slay thee with mine own hands, for thou wouldest for my rich sword see me dead. Then Sir Bedivere departed, and went to the sword, and lightly took it up, and went to the water side, and there he bound the girdle about the hills, and then he threw the sword as far into the water as he might, and there came an arm and an hand above the water, and met it, and caught it, and so shook it thrice and brandished, and then vanished away the hand with the sword in the water.

So Sir Bedivere came again to the king, and told him what he saw. Alas, said the king, help me hence, for I dread me I have tarried over long. Then Sir Bedivere took the king upon his back, and so went with him to that water side. And when they were at the water side, even fast by the bank hove a little barge, with many fair ladies in it, and among them all was a queen, and all they had black hoods, and all they wept and shrieked when they saw king Arthur. Now put me into the barge, said the king; and so he did softly. And there received him three queens with great mourning, and so they set him down, and in one of their laps king Arthur laid his head, and then the queen said, Ah, dear brother, why have ye tarried so long from me? Alas, this wound on your head hath caught over much cold. And so then they rowed from the land; and Sir Bedivere beheld all those ladies go from him. Then Sir Bedivere cried, Ah, my lord Arthur, what shall become of me now ye go from me, and leave me here alone among mine enemies. Comfort thyself, said the king, and do as well as thou mayest, for in me is no trust for to trust in. For I will into the vale of Avalon, to heal me of my grievous wound. And if thou hear never more of me, pray for my soul. But ever the queens and the ladies wept and shrieked, that it was pity to hear. And as soon as Sir Bedivere had lost the sight of the barge, he wept and wailed, and so took the forest, and so he went all that night, and in the morning he was ware betwixt two holes hoar of a chapel and an hermitage.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Bedivere found him on the morrow dead in an hermitage, and bow he abode there with the hermit.

Then was Sir Bedivere glad, and thither he went; and when he came into the chapel, he saw where lay an hermit groveling on all four, there fast by a tomb was new graven. When the hermit saw Sir Bedivere, he knew him well, for he was but a little before
HOW GUENEWER MADE HER A NUN.

Chap. VI.

Bishop of Canterbury, that Sir Mordred vanished. Sir, said Sir Bedivere, what man is there interred that ye pray so fast for? Fair son, said the hermit, I not verily, but by deeming. But his night, at midnight, here came a number of ladies, and brought hither a dead corpse, and prayed me to bury him; and here they offered an hundred pence, and gave me an hundred besants. Alas, said Sir Bedivere, that was my lord king Arthur, that here lieth buried in this chapel! Then Sir Bedivere swooned, and when he awoke he prayed the hermit he might abide with him still there, to live with fasting and prayers. For from hence will I never go, said Sir Bedivere, by my will, but all the days of my life here to pray for my lord Arthur. Ye are welcome to me, said the hermit, for I know you better than ye ween that I do. Ye are the bold Bedivere, and the full noble duke Sir Lucan de butler was your brother. Then Sir Bedivere told the hermit all as ye have heard tofore. So there bode Sir Bedivere with the hermit, that was tofore bishop of Canterbury, and there Sir Bedivere put upon him poor clothes, and served the hermit full lowly in fasting and in prayers.

Thus of Arthur I find never more written in books that be authorized, nor more of the certainty of his death heard I never tell, but thus was he led away in a ship wherein were three queens; that one was king Arthur’s sister queen Morgan le Fay; the other was the queen of Northgalis; the third was the queen of the Waste Lands. Also there was Nimue, the chief Lady of the lake, that had wedded Pellias the good knight; and this lady had done much for king Arthur; for she would never suffer Sir Pellias to be in no place where he should be in danger of his life, and so he lived to the uttermost of his days with her in great rest. More of the death of king Arthur could I never find, but that ladies brought him to his burials; and such one was buried there, that the hermit bare witness that some time was bishop of Canterbury, but yet the hermit knew not in certain that he was verily the body of king Arthur;—for this tale Sir Bedivere, knight of the Round Table, made it to be written.

Chap. VII.

Of the opinion of some men of the death of king Arthur; and how queen Guenever made her a nun in Almesbury.

Yet some men yet say in many parts of England that king Arthur is not dead, but had by the will of our Lord Jesu in another place. And men say that he shall come again, and he shall win the holy cross. I will not say it shall be so, but rather I will say, here in this world he changed his life. But many men say that there is written upon his tomb this verse,

hic jacet Arthurus Rex quondam Rex quque futurus.

Thus I leave here Sir Bedivere with the hermit, that dwelled that time in a chapel beside Glastonbury, and there was his hermitage. And so they lived in their prayers and fastings and great abstinence. And when queen Guenever understood that king Arthur was slain, and all the noble knights, Sir Mordred and all the remnant, then the queen stole away, and five ladies with her, and so she went to Almesbury, and there she let make herself a nun, and wore white clothes and black, and great penance she took, as ever did sinful lady in this land, and never creature could make her merry, but lived in fasting, prayers, and alms-deeds, that all manner of people marvelled how virtuously she was changed. Now leave we queen Guenever in Almesbury a nun in white clothes and black, and there she was abbess and ruler, as reason would; and turn we from her, and speak we of Sir Launcelot du Lake.

Chap. VIII.


And when he heard in his country that Sir Mordred was crowned king in
England, and made war against king Arthur his own father, and would let him to land in his own land; also it was told Sir Launcelot how that Sir Mordred had laid siege about the tower of London, because the queen would not wed him; then was Sir Launcelot wroth out of measure, and said to his kinsmen, Alas, that double traitor Sir Mordred, now me repenteth that ever he escaped my hands, for much shame hath he done unto my lord Arthur. For all I feel by the doleful letter that my lord Gawaine sent me, on whose soul Jesu have mercy, that my lord Arthur is right hard bested. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, that ever I should live to hear that most noble king, that made me knight, thus to be overtaken with his subject in his own realm. And this doleful letter that my lord Sir Gawaine hath sent me afore his death, praying me to see his tomb, wit you well his doleful words shall never go from mine heart. For he was a full noble knight as ever was born, and in an unhappy hour was I born, that ever I should have that unhap to slay first Sir Gawaine, Sir Ga-heris the good knight, and mine own friend Sir Gareth, that full noble knight. Alas, I may say I am unhappy, said Sir Launcelot, that ever I should do thus unhappily; and, alas, yet might I never have hap to slay that traitor Sir Mor-dred. Leave your complaints, said Sir Bors, and first revenge you of the death of Sir Gawaine, and it will be well done that ye see Sir Gawaine's tomb, and secondly that ye revenge my lord Arthur and my lady queen Guenever. I thank you, said Sir Launcelot, for ever ye will my worship. Then they made them ready in all the haste that might be, with ships and galleys with Sir Launcelot and his host, to pass into England. And so he passed over the sea till he came to Dover: and there he landed with seven kings, and the number was hideous to behold. Then Sir Launcelot enquired of men of Dover where was king Arthur become? Then the people told him how that he was slain, and Sir Mor-dred and an hundred thousand died on
CHAP. IX.

Sir Launcelot departed to seek the Gueneever, and how he found her tymesbury.

So came Sir Bors de Ganis, and my lord Sir Launcelot, what think you, I shall find few friends. Ye may, said Sir Launcelot, keep still here, for I will forth on my way, and no man nor child shall go with me. So it was no boot to strive, departed and rode westerly, and he sought a seven or eight days, the last he came to a nunnery, and was queen Gueneever ware of Launcelot as he walked in the yard; and when she saw him there, she said, thrice, that all the ladies and gentlewomen had work enough to serve the queen up. So when she might call ladies and gentlewomen to her, and said, Ye marvel, fair lady, why I make this fare. Truly, she is for the sights of yonder knight of the world; for through our faith we have loved together is my noble lord slain. Therefore, Sir Launcelot, wit thou well I am set in plight to get my soul’s health; I trust, through God’s grace, after my death to have a sight of Christ, and at day to sit on his right side, for as ever I was are saints in heaven. Sir Launcelot, I desire thee to keep thee heartily, for all the lovers were betwixt us, that thou never more in the visage; and I commend thee on God’s behalf, that thou, my company, and to thy king, you turn again and keep well thy home from war and wrack. For as well have loved thee, mine heart will serve me to see thee; for through me is the flower of kings and knights destroyed. Therefore, Sir Launcelot, go to thy realm, and there take thee a wife, and live with her with joy and bliss, and I pray thee heartily pray for me to our Lord, that I may amend my mis-living. Now, sweet madam, said Sir Launcelot, would ye that I should return again unto my country, and there to wed a lady? Nay, madam, wit you well that shall I never do: for I shall never be so false to you of that I have promised, but the same destiny that ye have taken you to, I will take me unto, to please Jesus, and ever for you I cast me specially to pray. If thou wilt do so, said the queen, hold my promise; but I may never believe but that thou wilt turn to the world again. Well, madam, said he, ye say as pleaseth you, yet wist you me never false of my promise, and God defend me but I should forsake the world as ye have done. For in the quest of the Sangreel I had forsaken the vanities of the world, had not your lord been. And if I had done so at that time with my heart, will, and thought, I had passed all the knights that were in the Sangreel, except Sir Galahad my son. And therefore, lady, sithen ye have taken you to perfection, I must needs take me to perfection of right. For I take record of God, in you I have had mine earthly joy. And if I had found you now so disposed, I had cast me to have had you into mine own realm.

CHAP. X.

How Sir Launcelot came to the hermitage where the archbishop of Canterbury was, and how he took the habit on him.

But sithen I find you thus disposed, I desire you faithfully I will ever take me to penance, and pray while my life lasteth, if that I may find any hermit either grey or white that will receive me. Wherefore, madam, I pray you kiss me, and never no more. Nay, said the queen, that shall I never do, but abstain you from such works. And they departed. But there was never so hard an hearted man, but he would have wept to see the doolour that they made. For there
was lamentation as they had been stung with spears, and many times they swooned. And the ladies bare the queen to her chamber, and Sir Launcelot awoke, and went and took his horse, and rode all that day and all that night in a forest, weeping. And at the last he was ware of an hermitage and a chapel stood betwixt two cliffs, and then he heard a little bell ring to mass, and thither he rode and alight, and tied his horse to the gate, and heard mass. And he that sang mass was the bishop of Canterbury. Both the bishop and Sir Bedivere knew Sir Launcelot, and they spake together after mass. But when Sir Bedivere had told his tale all whole, Sir Launcelot's heart almost brast for sorrow, and Sir Launcelot threw his arms abroad, and said, Alas, who may trust this world! And then he kneeled down on his knees, and prayed the bishop to shrive him and assoit him. And then he besought the bishop that he might be his brother. Then the bishop said, I will gladly: and there he put an habit upon Sir Launcelot, and there he served God day and night with prayers and fastings.

Thus the great host abode at Dover. And then Sir Lionel took fifteen lords with him, and rode to London to seek Sir Launcelot. And there Sir Lionel was slain and many of his lords. Then Sir Bors de Ganis made the great host for to go home again. And Sir Bors, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Blamor, Sir Bleoberis, with more other of Sir Launcelot's kin, took on them to ride all England overthwart and endlong, to seek Sir Launcelot. So Sir Bors by fortune rode so long till he came to the same chapel where Sir Launcelot was. And so Sir Bors heard a little bell knell that rang to mass, and there he alight, and heard mass. And when mass was done, the bishop, Sir Launcelot, and Sir Bedivere came to Sir Bors. And when Sir Bors saw Sir Launcelot in that manner clothing, then he prayed the bishop that he might be in the same suit. And so there was an habit put upon him, and there he lived in prayers and fasting.

And within half a year there was Sir Galihud, Sir Galihodin, Sir I Sir Bleoberis, Sir Williams, Sir C, and Sir Gahalantine. So all these noble knights there abode still. When they saw Sir Launcelot had him unto such perfection, they list to depart, but took such an habit as he had. Thus they endured in penance six year, and then Sir Launcelot took the habit of priesthood, twelvemonth he sang mass. And was none of these other knights they read in books, and holp them in mass, and rang bells, and did be manner of service. And so their went where they would, for the no regard of no worldly riches when they saw Sir Launcelot such penance, in prayers and they took no force what pain endured, for to see the noblest of the world take such abstinence he waxed full lean. And thus night there came a vision to Sir Launcelot, and charged him, in remit his sins, to haste him unto Almesbury. And by then thou come there, thou shalt find queen Guenever dead: and fore take thy fellows with the purvey them of an horse bier, and thou the corpse of her, and bury her husband the noble king Arthur; this vision came to Launcelot the one night.

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Launcelot went with his fellows to Almesbury, and found queen Guenever dead, whom they to Glastonbury.

Then Sir Launcelot rose up and told the hermit. It were we said the hermit, that ye made you and that ye disobey not the. Then Sir Launcelot took his fellows with him, and on foot the from Glastonbury to Almesbury which is little more than thirty. And thither they came within two for they were weak and feeble. And when Sir Launcelot was at Almesbury, within the nunnery...
er died but half an hour before. The ladies told Sir Launcelot that Guenever told them all, or she that Sir Launcelot had been near a twelvemonth,—And hither eth as fast as he may to fetch: and beside my lord king he shall bury me. Wherefore en said in hearing of them all, ch Almighty God that I may save power to see Sir Launcelot y worldly eyes. And thus, said adies, was ever her prayer these y's, till she was dead. Then Sir lost saw her visage, but he wept not, but sighed. And so he did observance of the service himself, se Dirige, and on the morn he mass. And there was ordained an sider; and so with an hundred ever burning about the corpse of en, and ever Sir Launcelot with t fellows went about the horse and reading many an holy and frankincense upon the corpse 1. Thus Sir Launcelot and his fellows went on foot from Almes- to Glastonbury; and when they ome to the chapel and the her there she had a Dirige with devotion. And on the morn the that sometime was bishop of bury, sang the mass of Requiem eat devotion: and Sir Launcelot first that offered, and then all it fellows. And then she was d in cered cloth of Raines, e top to the toe in thirty fold, e she was put in a web of lead, m in a coffin of marble. And he was put in the earth, Sir lot swooned, and lay long still, xe hermit came out and awaked d said, Ye be to blame, for ye xe God with such manner of making. Truly, said Sir Loun trust I do not displease God, knoweth mine intent, for my was not, nor is not, for any g of sin, but my sorrow may have end. For when I re of her beauty, and of her e, that was both with her king and with her; so when I saw his corpse and her corpse so lie together, truly mine heart would not serve to sustain my careful body. Also when I re- member me, how by my default, mine orgule, and my pride, that they were both laid full low, that were peerless that ever was living of christian people, wit you well, said Sir Launcelot, this re- membered, of their kindness and mine unkindness, sank so to my heart, that I might not sustain myself. So the French book maketh mention.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Launcelot began to sicken, and after died, whose body was borne to Joyous Gard for to be buried.

Then Sir Launcelot never after eat but little meat, nor drank, till he was dead; for then he sickened more and more, and dried and dwined away; for the bishop nor none of his fellows might not make him to eat, and little he drank, that he was waxen by a cubit shorter than he was, that the people could not know him; for evermore day and night he prayed, but sometime he slumbered a broken sleep, and ever he was lying groveling on the tomb of king Arthur and queen Guenever. And there was no comfort that the bishop, nor Sir Bors, nor none of his fellows could make him, it availed not. So within six weeks after, Sir Launcelot fell sick, and lay in his bed; and then he sent for the bishop that there was hermit, and all his true fellows. Then Sir Launcelot said with dreary voice, Sir Bishop, I pray you give to me all my rights that longeth to a christian man. It shall not need you, said the hermit and all his fellows, it is but heaviness of your blood: ye shall be well amended by the grace of God to-morn. My fair lords, said Sir Launcelot, wit you well, my careful body will into the earth. I have warning more then now I will say, therefore give me my rights. So when he was houseled and enleled, and had all that a christian man ought to have, he prayed the bishop that his fellows
MORTE DARTHUR.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Ector found Sir Launcelot his brother dead. And how Constantine reigned next after Arthur, and of the end of this book.

And when Sir Ector heard such noise and light in the quire of Joyous Gard, he alight and put his horse from him, and came into the quire, and there he saw men sing and weep. And all they knew Sir Ector, but he knew not them. Then went Sir Bors unto Sir Ector, and told him how there lay his brother Sir Launcelot dead. And then Sir Ector threw his shield, sword, and helm from him; and when he beheld Sir Launcelot’s visage he fell down in a swoon. And when he awaked it were hard any tongue to tell the doleful complaints that he made for his brother. Ah, Launcelot, he said, thou were head of all Christian knights; and now I dare say, said Sir Ector, thou Sir Launcelot, there thou liest, that thou were never matched of earthly knight’s hand; and thou were the courtliest knight that ever bare shield; and thou were the truest friend to thy lover that ever bestrode horse; and thou were the truest lover of a sinful man that ever loved woman; and thou were the kindest man that ever strake with sword; and thou were the goodliest person ever came among press of knights; and thou was the meekest man and the gentlest that ever ate in hall among ladies; and thou were the sternest knight to thy mortal foe that ever put spear in the rest.

Then there was weeping and dolour out of measure. Thus they kept Sir
Thus endeth thy noble and lypous book entytled le morte Dar- hur/Noteithstondynng it treateth of the byrth/lyf/and actes of the sayd kyng Arthur/of his noble knyghtes of the rounde table/theyr teneragilous enquestes and adventures/thachyeung of the sangreal/in thende the doolourous beth & departing out of thyg world of them/Whiche book was reduced in to englysshe by spr Thomas Maleory/nught as aforesayd/and by me demydded in to xxi bookes chappited and enprynted/and engysshed in thabbev westestre the last day of/apl the yere of our lord MCCCCLXXIX/V/

Carton me fieri fecit.
NOTE A.


'On ye mighty and pompous lords, shining in the glory transitory of this unstable life, as in reigning over realms great, and mighty countries, fortified with strong castles and towers, edified with many a rich city. Ye also, ye fierce and mighty chivalers, so valiant in adventurous deeds of arms, behold, behold, see how this mighty conqueror Arthur, whom in his human life all the world doubted—ye also, the noble queen Guenever, that sometime sat in her chair adorned with gold, pearls, and precious stones, now lie full low in obscure foss or pit covered with cloths of earth and clay. Behold also this mighty champion Launcelot, peerless of knighthood, see now how he lieth groveling on the cold mould, now being so feeble and faint that sometime was so terrible, how and in what manner ought ye to be so desirous of the mundane honour so dangerous. Therefore me thinketh this present book called La Morte Darthur is right necessary often to be read, for in it shall ye find the gracious, knightly, and virtuous war of most noble knights of the world, whereby they gain praising continual. Also me seemeth by the oft reading thereof ye shall greatly desire to accustom yourself in following of those gracious knightly deeds, that is to say, to dread God, and to love rightwiseness, faithfully and courageously to serve your sovereign prince. And the more that God hath given you the triumphal honour the meeker ye ought to be, ever fearing the unstableness of this deceivable world. And so I pass over, and turn again to my matter.'

NOTE B.


For those who may care to see more of the manner in which the text of the interpolated passages has been formed, I give the following specimens in detail.

The first is from the beginning of the 11th Chapter of Book XXI.

CAXTON.

'Than syr Launcelot rose vp or day/ & tolde the heremyte/ It were wel done sayd the heremyte that ye made you rely/ & that ye dyshobeye not the ayysyon/ Than syr Launcelot toke his vii felowe with hym/ & on fote they yede from glastynburye to almysburye the whiche is lytel more than xxx myle/ & thyre they came within two dayes for they were wayke and feble to goo/ & whan syr Launcelot was come to almysburye within the Nunerye quene gwenuer dedyd but halfe an oure afore/ and the ladys tolde syr Launcelot that quene Gueneuer tolde hem al or she passyd/ that syr Launcelot had been preest nere a twelue moneythe/ & hyder he cometh as faste as he may to fetch my cors/ & bysye my lord kyng Arthur he shal berye me/'
WYNKYN DE WORDE, 1498.

' Thenne syre Launcelot rose vp or day. And tolde the heremyte. It were well doon sayd the heremyte/that ye made ye redy/and that ye dysobeye not the aduyson. Then syr Launcelot toke his viij. felowes wth hym/& on fote they yede from Glastynbury to Almesbury. the whyche is lytyl more than xxx myle. And thyer they came wythin two dayes for they were weykke feble to go. And whan syr Launcelot was come to Almesbury wythin the Nunnery/quene Gweneuer dyed but halfe an houre afore/And the ladyes tolde syr Launcelot/that quene Gweneuer tolde them all or she passyd/that syr Launcelot had be prest here a twelue moneth and hither he cometh as fast as he may/to fetche my corps. And besyde my lorde kyng Arthus/he shal bury me.'

UPCOTT.

' Than syr Launcelot rose vp or it was day, and tolde the heremyte therof. It were well done sayd the heremyte that ye made you redy, and that ye dysobeye not thys aduyson. Theñey syr Launcelot toke his viij. felawes with hym, & on foote they yede from Glastynbury to Almesbury, the whyche is lytyl more than xxx myle. And thyer they came wythin two dayes for they were weykke feble to go. And whan syr Launcelot was come to Almesbury wythin the Nonnery, quene Gweneuer dyed but halfe an houre afore. And the ladyes tolde syr Launcelot that quene Gweneuer tolde them all or she passyd, that syr Launcelot had been prest nere a twelue moneth, and hither he cometh as faste as he may for to fetche my corps. And besyde my lorde kyng Arthus he shal burye me.'

The last lines of the same Chapter are as follows:—

CAXTON.

' For whan I remembre of hir-beaulte and of hir noblesse that was bothe with hyr king & with hyr/So whan I sawe his corps and hir corps so lye togiders/truly myn herte wold not serue to susteyne my carefull body/Also whan I remëbre me how by my defaut & myn orgule and my pryde/that they were bothe layed ful lowe that were pereles that euer was lyuyng of cristene people, wyt you wel sayd syr Launcelot/this remembered of thare kyndnes and myn vnkyndnes sanke so to myn herte that I miȝt not susteyne myself so the frenshe book maketh mencyon.'

UPCOTT,

(Who follows Wynkyn de Worde exactly, except in the spelling, and in the insertion of 'me' after 'wold not serue.')

' For whan I remembre & calle to mynde her beaute, bountee & noblesse, that was as wyl wyth her kyng my lord Arthus as wyth her. And also whanne I saw the corses of that noble kinge & noble quene so lye to gyder in that colde graue made of erthe, that somtyme were so hycbly sette in moost honouable places, truly myn herte wold not serue me to susteyne my wrechyd & carefull body. Also whan I remembre me how by my defawte myn orgynte and my pride, that they were both layed full lowe whyche were pereles that euer was lyuneg of crystene peple, wyte yow wel sayd syr Launcelot, this remembered, of ther kyndnesse & of myn vnkyndnesse, sanke and enprest soo in to my herte that all my natural strengthe fayled me, so that I myghte not susteyne my selve. Soo the frenshe boke makych mencyon.'
NOTES.

The several colophons are as follows:—

CAXTON.

‘Thus endeth thys noble and Ioyous book entytled le morte Darthur/Notwithstanystondyngh it treateth of the byrth/lyf/and actes of the sayd kyngge Arthur/of his noble knyghtes of the rounde table/theyr meruyllous enquestes and adventures/thachyeuyng of the sangreall/& in thende the dolourous deth & departyng out of thys world of them al/Whiche book was reduced in to englysshe by syr Thomas Malory knyght as afore is sayd/and by me deuyded in to xxii bookes chapytred and enprented/and fynysshed in thabbeow westmestre the last day of Iuyl the yere of our lord M/CCCC/1xxx/V/ Caxton me fieri fecit.’

WYNKYN DE WORDE, 1498.


AMES.

‘Thus endeth this noble and joyous boke, entytled La morte d’Arthur. Notwithstandyng it treateth of the byrth, lyf, and actes of the sayd Kynge Arthur, of his noble knyghts of the rounde table, theyr marvayllous Enquestes and Adventures, thacheyng of the Sangreall, and in the ende the doloureus deth and departyng out of this worlde of them al; whyche boke was reduced into Englyssehe by syr Thomas Malory, Knight, as afore is sayd, and by me devyded into xxi. bookes, chapitred and enprented, and fynished in thabbeow, Westmestre, the last day of Juyl, the yere of our Lord MCCCCLXXV. Caxton me fieri fecit.’

HARLEIAN CATALOGUE.

‘The Byrth, Lyf, and Actes of Kyng Arthur; of his noble Knyghtes of the Rounde Table, theyr marvayllous Enquestes and Adventures; the Achyeuyng of the Sang real; and in the end le Morte d’Arthur, with the doloureous Deth and Departyng out of thys world of them Al. Whiche Book was reduced to the Englysshe, by Syr Thomas Malory Knyght, and by me (W. Caxton) devyded into 21 bookes, chaptyred and enprented, and fynyshed in th’ Abbey Westmestre, the last day of July, the yere of our Lord 1485.’
UPCOTT.

Thus endeth this noble & joyous booke entytled La Mort datbur. Notwithstanding it treateth of the byrth, lyf & actes of the sayd Kynge Arthur, & of his noble knyghtes of the Rounde Table, theyr marueyllous Enquestes & aduentures, acheyuyng of the Sang real, and in the ende le Morte darthurb with the dolourous th and departing out of this worlde of them al. Whiche booke was reduced in Englysshe by Syr Thomas Malory knyght as afore is sayd, and by me devyded in xxii bookes chapyred and emprynted and fynysshed in thabbey Westmes tre the 27 day of July the yere of our lord MCCCCLXXV. Caxton me fieri fecit.'

On a comparison of these colophons we see that the article La is only in Ames: the spelling of datbur is peculiar to Wynkyn de Worde, who has it also in another passage; the words le Morte darthurb with are in the Harleian Catalogue only: as afore is said is in neither of these, but it is in Ames: the peculiar mode of writing Sang real¹, and the spelling of chapyred, emprynted, July, are those of the Harleian Catalogue: the & introduced after Arthur in the second line is only in Upcott. Caxton me fieri fecit is in Ames, but not in the Harleian Catalogue.

When I say in Ames or the Harleian Catalogue only, it will be understood that I include with the colophon of the former its modernised copy in Dibdin; and with that of the latter its copies in Herbert and the Biographia Britannica; the references to all which I have given in the passage of the Introduction to which this is a Note. The first words of the colophon are omitted in the Harleian Catalogue, which gives it as the title of the book, as do the Biographia Britannica and Herbert. The framer of the Catalogue probably quotes directly, though inaccurately, from the Harleian (now the Osterley) Morte Darthur: and Ames must have made his extract independently from the same volume. Dibdin attributes both the Harleian Catalogue and the article in the Biographia Britannica to Oldys.

¹ The division of the word indicates that the writer adopts the plausible notion that Sangreal means Real (or Royal) Blood; and no doubt in ancient as well as modern times the spelling and sound would suggest this meaning: but Roquefort shows clearly that the other is the proper explanation, both in etymology and (so to speak) historically. And Helinand, a monk of Fromont (A.D. 717), gives the Latin Gradale, which supplies the link between Gradale and Crater from which Roquefort derives the former. Helinand's words are,—'Hoc tempore, in Britannia, cuidam eremita monstrata est mirabilis quaedam visio per angelum de sancto Josepho decurione nobili qui corpus Domini deposuit de cruce, et de catino illo vel paropside in quo Dominus coenavit cum discipulis suis; de quâ ab codem eremita descripta est historia quæ dicitur de Gradal. Gradalis autem vel Gradale dicitur Gallicè scutella lata et aliquantulum profunda in qua pretiosae dapes, cum suo jure, divitibus solent apponi, et dicitur nomine Graal. ... Hanc historiam latine scriptam invenire non potui, sed tantum Gallicè scripta habetur a quibusdam proceribus, nec facile ut aiunt tota inveniri potest.' Helinandi Historia, quoted in L'Essai Historique et Litteraire sur l'Abbaye de Fécamp par Leroux de Lincy, Rouen, 1840.
GLOSSARY.

...ent, alleviation. 390. etc., alleviation. 431. etc., cupboard. 411. etc., Glastonbury. 481. See Introduction, of us all. 84. etc., reckoned. 1. absolve. 365. etc., besotted, doting. 75. etc., stunned. 117. etc., fatigued, exhausted. 384. hour. 110. etc., boast. 447. etc., Avalon, the Isle of Apples, on which Glastonbury stood. 49. etc., couch spear. 62. etc., backward. 182.

...a, an outwork to defend the of a castle. 156. Down, near Canterbury. 477. Wright says it is the site of an Anglo-Saxon cemetery, which, no, suggested that a battle had fought there. armies, battalions. 105, 265. etc., trumpet. 478. etc., g. bracelet, or other ornament.

promise. 209. etc., promise. 411. etc., promise. 168. etc., See p. 469. apparently meant for Bere, bier, etc., 385. etc., a gold coin first coined at Buxton. 95. adorned, clothed. 51. etc., Bested, beset. 476. etc., recommended. 359.


GLOSSARY.

Deliverly, actively. 473.
Depart, part. 485.
Devise, look carefully at. 402.
Devoir, knightly duty. 149, 469.
Dight, dressed. 79.
Dole, grief. 45.
Draughts, apparently recesses parted off from the main room. 442.
Dress, turn towards, address. 492.
Dromon, a vessel of war. 101.
Duress, bondage. 357.
Dwine, dwindle. 485.

Enchafe, heat. 372.
Eenelled, anointed (with extreme unction). 486.

Eff, again. 480.
Effures, passages. 444.
Erst, before. 254.

Fewer, put spear in the rest. 107.
Flacket, flask. 181.
Foin, push in fencing. 142.
Forde, undo. 74.
Forthdays, late in the day. 455.
Forthink, grieve. 379; repent. 74.
Foster, forester. 381.

Gad, spike or knob of iron or steel. 373.
Gallest, reckless. 145.
Gerfalcon, the finest kind of hawk. 96.
Gest, deed, story. 123.
Gisarm, two-edged battle-axe. 96.
Glaive, a long blade at the end of a lance, a sword. 70.
Glasting. 287. See Questing.
Graale, Grail. 327. See Sangreal.
Gramercy (written Grant mercy, 418), great thanks. 71.
Gree, degree, prize. 226.
Greece, Hart of, a fat deer. 323.
Guersonless. 323.

Haberonjon, see Hauberker. When the "chausses" or mail leggings were united with the Hauberker the whole was called an Haberonjon. 385.
Hair, hair-shirt. 373.
Hale and how! pull ho! the cry of sailors. 141.
Halt, Holp, helped. 95.

Halse, embrace. 178.
Handfast, betrothed. 272.
Handsel, payment, earnest-money. 174.
Harness, armour. 111.
Harnessed, furnished, etc. 189.
Hauberker, coat or frock of mail, made of plates or chain-links sewn upon leather. 39.
Haut, high, noble. 183.
Hight, was called. 25.
Ho! halt! the word for stopping a tournament. 40, 278.
Holt, a hill with a grove on it. 481.
The "two holts hoar" are described as "two cliffs," 484.
Houselled, To be, to receive the sacrament. 260.
Hove, hover, stand. 97.
Hurtle, dash. 138.

Inde, dark blue. 137.
Intermeddle, intermix. 404.

Jesserant, a sort of cuirass, of back and breast plates. 31.
Journey, day's work. 268.

Largesse, bounty. 308.
Laton, a mixed metal, like brass. 57.
Lawn, an open space in a forest. 90.
Lazar-cote, a hut for keeping lepers in. 190.
Leech, physician, surgeon. 45.
Let to, hinder from. 476.
Lever, rather. 102.
Libbard, leopard. 207.
Lief, dear. 480.
Liones, sometimes said to be a supposed tract of country called Lionesse, between the Land's End and the Scilly Isles, now submerged. But more probably St. Pol de Leon in Brittany is meant.

Logris, Loegria, Saxon Britain. 213.
Loth, hateful. 179.
Lotless, without a share. 242.
Lowe, hillock or tumulus. 449.

Maker, author, poet. 487.
Mal-case, bad plight. 196.
Mal-engine, evil design. 416.
GLOSSARY.

d, having holes within the t of the walls for pouring or molten lead through. 135.
in spite of, 72; misfortune, nix. 294.
uch. 26.
t, unbeliever. 487.
99.
plendour. 244.
on his nose. 395.
injurious. 398.
ride. 485.
, haughty. 475.
welled ornament. 465.
urt, across. 134.

paletot), a coat with sleeves.

. Pillars, men who fight for . 281.
all flag. 280.
rcce. 184.
enclosure. 367.
Dieu), truly. 144, 155.
peregrine), a kind of falcon.
mbstone. 239.
ched. 25.
way. 237, 468.
derer. 479.
lump of trees. 40.
ght rider. 108.
iding. 368.
ote blown on the death of g. 79.
vide. 28, 49.

bolt from a crossbow. 330.
baying, giving tongue, as do. 43, 207, 250.

town in Brittany, famous for th. 485.
examine. 104.
ar off (arracher). 118. Also
recal. 286.
tle, 96. Powys Castle, so in Welsh.
insel. 157, 443.

Rivage, shore. 409.
Rome, growl, roar. 101.
Roted, practised. 271.
Rounspik, a branch with other branches growing out of it. 126.

Sacing, consecrating. 367.
Sad, heavy: Sadly, steadily. 435.
Saint Michael's Mount, a famous place of pilgrimage in Normandy. 102.
Samite, rich silk, sometimes interwoven with gold or silver. 47, 370.
Sangreal, Sangreal, the holy grail, graale, or grail. 60, 337. See Introduction, p. v.
Sarpi, girdle. 465.
Schedule, letter. 476.
Search, examine by a surgeon. 167.
Sendal, a thin silk. 106, 114.
Seneschal, the chief officer, whether of the household or of the dominions of a sovereign. 29.
Sessoin, Saxony, 264: but, 105, perhaps Soissons.
Sewer, the officer who set on the dishes and tasted them. 160.
Shaftmon, a measure from the top of the extended thumb to the other end of the fist or palm, about six inches. 147.
Shawe, thicket. 233.
Shend, damage. 470.
Shent, confounded, disgraced. 141.
Shrewd, evil. 217.
Siege, seat. 65.
Sith, since. 361.
Sithen, since. 118.
Slake, ditch, ravine. 114.
Soil, To go to, hunting term for taking to the water. 433.
Sondes, sendings, messages. 475.
Spere, ask.
Stole, part of a priest's dress, worn round the neck. 373.
Stonied, stunned. 132.
Stour, battle. 383.
Straked, blew a horn. 215.
Sue, follow. 361.
Swough, sound. 100.

Taches, qualities, disposition. 163.
Tallages, taxes. 99.
Teen, grief. 107.
| Thrull, pierce. 200. | Utas, eighth day of a festival. 16 |
| Tintagil, a castle in Cornwall, the ruins of which still exist. 25. | Utterance, uttermost (outrance). 16 |
| To-brast, To-shiver, &c., break to pieces. 331. | Varlet, servant. 290. |
| Trasing and rasing, dodging and striking. 117. | Venery, hunting. 163. |
| Travers, At, coming across them. 407. | Ventails, breathing holes. 295. |
| Trest, 433, a term of hunting, the technical meaning of which I cannot find: but the word is in Romance the participle of Trere, tirer, trahere. | Waits, watchmen. 156. |
| Truage, tribute. 98. | Wallop, gallop. 45. |
| Truss, take up, pack up, make ready. 369, 469. | Wan, go, ebb. 480. |
| Ubbley, sacramental bread. 408. | Wap, strike, move quickly. 48c |
| Umbecast, cast about. 433. | Tennyson renders ‘Wap and v ‘lapping on the crag.’ |
| Ummberere, the part of the helmet which shaded the eyes. 197. | Warison, reward. 216. |
| Underne, Undorne, nine in the morning. 144, 463. | Weld, possess. 151. |
| Unhappy, causing ill luck. 479. | Wend, thought. 97. |
| Unnette, scarcely. 92. | Werewolf, a man turned into a v magic. 449. |
| Unwrast, untwisted, unbound. 190. | Wight, active. 200. |
| | Wood, mad. 332. |
| | Worship, honour. 197, 415. |
| | Worts, herbs. 379. |
| | Wrape, wrack, destruction. 451. |
| | Yule, Christmas. 108, |
BOOKS FOR ALL READERS.

FICTION.

BY PROFESSOR KINGSLEY.
Two Years Ago. 6s.
Westward Ho. 6s.
Alton Locke. 4s. 6d.
Hereward the Wake. 6s.
Hypatia. 6s.
Yeast. 5s.

BY MISS YONGE.
The Heir of Redclyffe. 6s.
Dynevor Terrace. 6s.
The Daisy Chain. 6s.
The Trial; or, More Links of the Daisy Chain. 6s.
The Clever Woman of the Family. 6s.
Heartsease. 6s.
Hopes and Fears. 6s.
The Young Stepmother. 6s.
The Dawers Papers. 4s. 6d.
The Dove in the Eagle's Nest. 2 Vols. 12s.
The Chaplet of Pearls. 2 Vols. 12s.

BY HENRY KINGSLEY.
Ravenshoe. 6s.
Silicoe of Silicoes. 6s.
Geoffry Hamlym. 6s.
Austin Elliot. 6s.
Leighton Court. 6s.

Janet's Home. 6s.
A Son of the Soil. 6s.
Tom Brown at Oxford. 6s.
The Connells of Castle Connell. 2 Vols. 21s.
The New Landlord. 2 Vols. 21s.
Oldbury. 3 Vols. 31s. 6d.
The Lily of Lumley. 7s. 6d.

POETRY.

Poems. By MATTHEW ARNOLD. 2 Vols. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. each.
Poems of Rural Life in Common English. By the Rev. W. BARNES. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.
St. Paul. By F. W. H. MYERS. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.
The Prince's Progress, and other Poems. By CHRISTINA ROSSETTI. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.
Phantasmagoria, and other Poems. By LEWIS CARROLL. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.
Idylls and Epigrams. Chiefly from the Greek Anthology. By R. GARNETT. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.
Beatrice, and other Poems. By the Hon. RODEN NOEL. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.
Poems. By CATHERINE BARNARD SMITH. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.
Under the Willows, and other Poems. By Professor LOWELL. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.
Poems. By the ARCHBISHOP OF DUBLIN. Collected and Arranged anew. Fcap. 8vo. 7s. 6d.
My Beautiful Lady. By THOMAS WOOLNER. Third Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.
Andromeda, and other Poems. By Professor KINGSLEY. Third Edition. 5s.
The Saint's Tragedy. By Professor KINGSLEY. Third Edition. 5s.
The Angel in the House. By COVENTRY PATMORE. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.
The Lady of La Carvye. By the Hon. MRS. NOPTON. With Vignette and Frontispiece. Third Edition. Fcap 8vo. 4s. 6d.
City Poems. By ALEXANDER SMITH. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.
A Life Drama, and other Poems. By ALEXANDER SMITH. Fourth Edition. Fcap 8vo. 2s. 6d.
ESSAYS.

*Essays on a Liberal Education.* By Various Writers. Edited by the Rev. F. W. Farrar, M.A. Second Edition. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

*Habit and Intelligence in their Connexion with the Laws of Matter and Force.* A Series of Scientific Essays. By J. J. Murphy. 2 Vols. 8vo. 16s.


*Essays on Robert Browning's Poetry.* By J. T. Nettleship. Fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.


*Essays, Biographical and Critical; chiefly on the English Poets.* By David Masson, LL.D. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

*Essays on Art.* By F. T. Palgrave. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.

BOOKS OF TRAVEL.


*Albert N'yanza Great Basin of the Nile, and Exploration of the Nile Sources.* By Sir S. W. Baker. 2 Vols. Crown 8vo. 16s.


*Black and White: A Three Months' Tour in the United States.* By H. Latham. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

HISTORICAL WORKS.

*The Seven Weeks' War. Its Antecedents and Incidents.* By H. M. Hozier. 2 Vols. 8vo. 28s.


*Sir Francis Palgrave's History of Normandy and England to the Death of William Rufus.* 4 Vols. 8vo. 4l. 4s.


*Cawnpore.* By G. O. Trevelyan, M.P. Crown 8vo. 6s.


*History of the Christian Church during the Middle Ages and the Reformation.* By Archdeacon Hardwick. 2 Vols. 21s.

*History of Christian Missions during the Middle Ages.* By G. F. Maclean, M.A. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.


*The House of Austria in the Thirty Years' War. Two Lectures by Professor Ward.* Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

*The House of Commons. Illustrations of its History and Practice.* By Reginald F. D. Palgrave. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

MACMILLAN AND CO. LONDON.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NATURAL HISTORY, ETC.</th>
<th>BOOKS FOR ALL READERS—continued.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Holidays on High Lands; or, Rambles and Incidents in Search of Alpine Plants. By the Rev. Hugh Macmillan. Crown 8vo. 6s.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot-Notes from the Page of Nature; or, First Forms of Vegetation. By Hugh Macmillan, F.R.S.E. With Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lessons in Elementary Botany. By D. Oliver, F.R.S. With Illustrations. 4s. 6d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Scenery of Scotland: in Connexion with its Physical Geography. By A. Grierson. With Illustrations and Maps. 10s 6d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Story of a Boulder: Gleanings by a Field Geologist. By A. Grierson. With Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lessons in Elementary Physiology. By T. H. Huxley, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 4s. 6d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SERMONS, ETC.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BY PROFESSOR MAURICE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ground and Object of Hope for Mankind. Four Sermons preached at Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BY C. J. VAUGHAN, D.D.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twelve Discourses on Subjects connected with the Liturgy and Worship of the Church of England. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life's Work and God's Discipline. Three Sermons. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Wholesome Words of Jesus Christ. Four Sermons preached before the University of Cambridge in November, 1866. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Book and the Life, and other Sermons preached before the University of Cambridge. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lessons of Life and Godliness. A Selection of Sermons preached in the Parish Church of Doncaster. Third Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MACMILLAN AND CO. LONDON.
Bacon’s Essays and Colours of God and Evil. With Notes and Glossary. Index, by W. ALDIS WRIGHT.
The Pilgrim’s Progress. By JOHN BUNYAN.
The Adventures of Robinson Crusoe. Edited by J. W. CLARK.
The Republic of Plato. Translated by J. LL. DAVIES and D. J. VAUGHAN.
The Song Book, Words and Tunes. By JOHN HULLAH.

WORKS FOR THE YOUNG.

The Water-Babies. By Professor KINGSLEY. New Edition. With Illustrations. 6d.
Alice’s Adventures in Wonderland. With Forty-two Illustrations by TENNIEL. Sixteenth Thousand. Crown 8vo. 6d.
The Prince and the Page. By the Author of “The Heir of Redclyffe.” 18mo. Cloth extra. 3s. 6d.
The Heroes: Greek Fairy Tales for my Children. By CHARLES KINGSLEY. With Illustrations. Cloth extra. 4s. 6d.
Little Wanderlin, and other Fairy Tales. By A. and E. KEARY. Cloth extra. 3s. 6d.
Early Egyptian History for the Young. By A. and E. KEARY. Cloth extra. 5s.
The Lances of Lynwood. By the Author of “The Heir of Redclyffe.” With Illustrations. Cloth extra. 4s. 6d.
The Little Duke. By the Author of “The Heir of Redclyffe.” With Illustrations by R. FARREN. Cloth extra. 3s. 6d.
Our Year. By the Author of “John Halifax.” With Illustrations. Cloth extra. 3s. 6d.
Ruth and her Friends. Fourth Edition. Cloth extra. 3s. 6d.
Days of Old: Stories of English History. Cloth extra. 3s. 6d.
Little Estella, and other Fairy Tales. Cloth extra. 3s. 6d.

MACMILLAN AND CO. LONDON.
THE BORROWER WILL BE CHARGED AN OVERDUE FEE IF THIS BOOK IS NOT RETURNED TO THE LIBRARY ON OR BEFORE THE LAST DATE STAMPED BELOW. NON-RECEIPT OF OVERDUE NOTICES DOES NOT EXEMPT THE BORROWER FROM OVERDUE FEES.